HANDBOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY

HANDBOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY

By the Late W. D HALLIBURTON, M D
LL D , F R C P , F R S
FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF PHYSIOLOGY, UNIVERSITY OF LONDON, KING'S COLLEGE

AND

R J S McDOWALL, M.B , D Sc , F R C P (Edin)
PROFESSOR OF PHYSIOLOGY, UNIVERSITY OF LONDON, KINGS COLLEGE
AUTHOR OF "THE SCIENCE OF SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

THIRTY THIRD EDITION

WITH NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIONS IN THE TEXT, MANY OF WHICH ARE COLOURED, AND FOUR COLOURED PLATES

LONDON
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET

FIRST EDITION	1848
THIRTY THIRD EDITION	1933

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY
OLIVER AND BOYD LTD., EDINBURGH

PREFACE TO THE THIRTY-THIRD EDITION

ONCE again it has been found necessary to revise this book and to issue another edition   It is, however, impossible to do so without referring with deep regret to the death of Professor Halliburton to whom it has owed so much in the past, as indicated in the Publisher's note   It is a privilege to take up the task which Halliburton has done so long and so well, but the printing of three large editions since 1928 is an encouragement that the book continues to fill a need

Those who are responsible for the writing of text-books are in great difficulty for the teaching of Physiology is itself at the parting of the ways   Its size has become so great that it is quite impossible for the medical student to acquire in the time at his disposal anything but a small fraction of the wealth of detail now available, and parts of the subject which are of little interest from the point of view of the science of Physiology have great practical importance   This work, however, from the time of Kirkes has had one aim, the requirements of the medical student, which confers on it a limitation of material and length   It, therefore, becomes necessary to include only the barest description of method except where it is of practical use later or of strictly educational value in the fundamentals of physiological knowledge, for it must be agreed that some acquaintance with the methods of acquiring physiological knowledge is of great value subsequently in medical research

New features of the book are the insertion in **dark** type of numbers which the student ought to memorise as he goes along, and the introduction of blank pages at the end of each chapter so

that points specially referred to by individual teachers may be inserted The first three hundred pages have been completely reset and revised, and extensive additions have been made to the sections on vitamins and ductless glands Figures 38, 58, 71, 73, 143, 287 and 291 are new Yet, in spite of the large amount of alterations, the book, which has been almost completely re-written in the last three editions, has not increased in size This has only been made possible by a rigid selection of material

It is impossible to thank all the many friends to whom the book over a period of years owes so much In addition to those thanked in previous editions I should like particularly to thank Professor G A Clark, Dr Robson, and Miss Shore for many valuable suggestions For figure 138 I am indebted to Professor E D Adrian, for figure 112 to Professor Rijlant Margaret Watson has again rendered splendid service in preparing and checking the copy and index for the press and correcting proofs In the latter capacity I am also grateful to Dr H A Dunlop, to whose care the book owes much

R J S McDOWALL

1933

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

It may not be uninteresting briefly to recount something of the history of this book The original author was William Senhouse Kirkes, of St Bartholomew's Hospital, and the first edition appeared in 1848, it consisted of 705 pages, and contained 97 illustrations The title-page mentions that Dr Kirkes was assisted by Mr James Paget, who was then Lecturer on Physiology at St Bartholomew's Hospital Dr Kirkes appears to have been a student under Mr (afterwards Sir) J Paget, and to have been impressed with the need of making more permanent his spoken lectures, and in his preface he thanks Mr Paget for allowing him the free use of his manuscript lecture notes The book was, for its time, one of great excellence, reflecting the clear and accurate method of exposition which always distinguished Sir James Paget's work, and *Kirkes' Physiology* rapidly became the students' favourite text book, and new editions appeared rapidly in these the book grew a little in size and in the number of illustrations, but showed otherwise but little change until the fourth edition came out in 1860, when Mr Savory's name appeared as editor upon the title-page Mr (afterwards Sir William) Savory was another of St Bartholomew's worthies, and at that time was Lecturer on Comparative Anatomy and Physiology at that Hospital With the appearance of the sixth edition (1867), Mr Morant Baker (then Demonstrator of Anatomy) was associate editor, and by this time the book was different both in matter and arrangement, so that little of the original "Kirkes" remained Up to this time the publishers had been Taylor, Walton, & Maberly, of Gower Street In 1869, however, the book became the property of the present publisher (seventh edition), and this edition and the next (eighth, in 1872) were not much more than reprints of the sixth edition The ninth edition (1876), however, was completely revised, and Dr Klein, then the Lecturer on Physiology, appears to have been largely responsible for the improvement From the tenth to the thirteenth (1892) edition, the editorship was shared between Mr Morant Baker and Dr Vincent D Harris, his senior Demonstrator, and as successive editions appeared, the work of keeping the publication up to date fell more and more upon the shoulders of the latter

In 1896, when a new edition was necessary, Mr Baker had died, and Dr Harris was retiring from active teaching, so Mr John Murray had to look round for a new editor Acting upon the advice of his friend, the late Sir William Gowers, he applied to Professor Halliburton, and when the latter accepted the position, the long association between the book and

St Bartholomew's Hospital was severed During the fifty-four years of this association the book saw thirteen editions Under Professor Halliburton's guidance, which began in 1896, the book entered upon a new era of prosperity, in twenty-nine years seventeen editions—totalling one hundred and sixteen thousand copies—were published, so, as the book had become an entirely new one, the name of Kirkes was dropped, and *Halliburton's Physiology* became its recognised title

In 1928 another revision became necessary, and as Professor Halliburton found that he needed help in preparing it, the assistance of his successor at King's College, Professor McDowall, was secured

A small change has consequently been made in the title of the book—the name of Professor McDowall has now been added to that of Professor Halliburton as joint author

1933

CONTENTS

COLOURED PLATES

HANDBOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY

CHAPTER I

THE STRUCTURAL BASIS OF LIVING THINGS

The Cell

EVERY living organism, plant or animal, however elaborate, can be shown microscopically to be made up of cells

The higher animals and plants are always unicellular to start with, but eventually the cell divides and subdivides until there is a mass of cells, which subsequently become differentiated and carry out many different functions When cells which have similar functions become congregated together to form distinct anatomical structures we call such structures *organs* Each organ has its own work to do but acts in harmony with other organs This relationship between the organs enables us to group the organs into *systems* It is to be noted that in the *division of labour* among the different types of cells, each type becomes specialised and structurally modified, but does not acquire new properties, rather does it exalt some one of the primitive functions at the relative expense of most of the others Thus we have the *digestive system* which is concerned with the digestion of food or the preparation of substances for use in the body, the *respiratory system* (air-passages and lungs) which provides for the intake of oxygen and the excretion of carbon dioxide, the product of oxidation, the *circulatory system* (heart and blood vessels) which is the great transport system of the body, the *excretory system* which gets rid of waste products, the *muscular system* which is associated with movement, the *skeletal system* (the bones), which supports and protects the softer parts Above all, there is the *nervous system* (brain, spinal cord, and nerves) which is more immediately in contact with the outside world and which presides over, controls, and regulates the activities of the other systems In addition there are certain *glands* which assist, by virtue of the various substances which they pour into the blood

The Animal Cell

An animal cell is usually of microscopic dimensions, and in the human body varies from $\frac{1}{300}$ to $\frac{1}{3000}$ of an inch in diameter

It consists of—

1 *Cytoplasm* this makes up the main protoplasmic substance of the cell

2 *Nucleus* a vesicular body within the cytoplasm, generally situated near the centre of the cell

3 *Centriole and attraction sphere* these are contained within the cytoplasm, near the nucleus

Cytoplasm

The cytoplasm consists of a soft jelly-like material called **protoplasm** With high powers of the microscope it can be demonstrated that in many cells the protoplasm is differentiated into two parts (1) a fine network of fibrillæ in which (2) the more fluid and apparently structureless portion of the protoplasm is contained This structure is shown diagrammatically in the accompanying figure (fig 1) Some observers regard all such appearances as *artifacts*, that is, as produced artificially by methods of fixing and staining Schafer, however, has been successful in obtaining instantaneous photographs of white blood-corpuscles in the living condition entirely untreated by any reagents, and these distinctly show the presence of a fine fibrillar network in the greater extent of their protoplasm This network he calls the *spongioplasm*, and the more fluid portion *hyaloplasm*

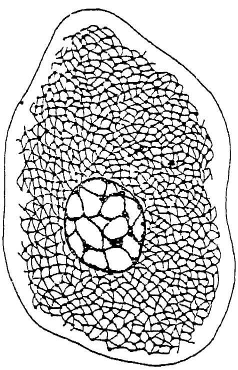


Fig 1 —Diagram of an animal cell consisting of fibrillated protoplasm, containing a nucleus

The chemical structure of protoplasm can be investigated only after the protoplasm has been killed The substances it yields are (1) **Water**—at least three-quarters of the weight, often more, consist of water, (2) **Inorganic salts**, especially phosphates and chlorides of sodium, potassium, and calcium, (3) **Proteins** or albumin-like substances which are characteristic of living things, (4) **Lipides** or fat-like substances, (5) **Carbohydrates**, starchy or sugar-like substances The nature of all these substances is described in detail in a later chapter

The Nucleus

The nucleus is generally round or oval, but it may have an irregular shape Some cells have more than one nucleus

The nucleus exercises a controlling influence over the nutrition and subdivision of the cell, any portion of a cell cut off from the nucleus undergoes degenerative changes

A nucleus consists of four parts which are represented in the next diagram

When the cell is stained with hæmatoxylin the nucleus stains more deeply than the cytoplasm, especially the nucleolus and the

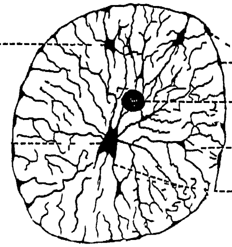


FIG 2 —The nucleus—diagrammatic (Waldeyer)

nuclear network The substance which takes up the stain is the *nuclein* of the nucleus (called *chromatin* by the histologists because of its staining properties)

The Attraction Sphere

All animal cells contain also an "attraction sphere" which consists of a minute centriole with associated fibrils and granules (fig 3) It is most prominent in cells which are dividing or about to divide The centriole, and then the attraction sphere, divides into two In all probability the centriole gives the primary impulse to cell-division Some cells, for instance the giant cells of red marrow, contain numerous centrioles

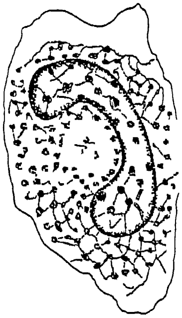


FIG 3 —A cell (semi diagrammatic) showing its attraction sphere In this, as in most cases, the attraction sphere lies near the nucleus (Schafer)

CHAPTER II

THE CHARACTERISTICS OF LIVING THINGS

All living organisms, whether unicellular or multicellular, have the power of transforming energy and show signs of activity Of these signs the most important are the following —

1 Power of assimilation to convert into protoplasm the nutrient material or food which is ingested

2 Power to excrete to give out waste materials, the products of other activities

3 Power of growth this is a natural consequence of the power of assimilation

4 Power of reproduction this is a variety of growth

5 Irritability this is the property of responding by some change to the influence of an external agent or stimulus The most obvious of these changes is movement (amœboid movement, ciliary movement, muscular movement, etc)

It should, however, be recognised that one or more of these five characteristics may be absent or latent, and yet the organism may be living Power of movement is absent in many vegetable structures Certain seeds and spores can be dried and kept for many years in an apparently dead condition, yet they will sprout and grow when placed in appropriate surroundings

Living material is in a continual state of unstable chemical equilibrium, building itself up on the one hand, breaking down on the other, the term used for the sum total of these intra-molecular rearrangements is **metabolism**

The Relation of the Cell to its Environment

The simplest animal organism, the amœba, consists of a single cell which is in immediate contact with the environment from which it receives its nutrient material and oxygen and to which it returns its waste materials Even in the most complex animal each cell is still in contact—more or less remote—with its environment Only certain cells come into immediate contact with the environment, but the other cells of the body all benefit indirectly through this contact For example, some of the cells of the respiratory tract are adapted for the passage of oxygen, while

certain cells of the digestive tract permit the intake of nutrient materials The oxygen and nourishment from the environment are transported by way of the specialised cells to every other cell in the body This transport is accomplished by the circulation of the blood

Amœbic Movement

The movement of the amœba is one of the simplest forms of animal activity which can be observed and is of unique interest If an amœba is watched under the microscope for a minute or two, an irregular projection or *pseudopodium* is seen to be thrust out from

FIG 4 —Human colourless blood corpuscle, showing its successive changes of outline within ten minutes when kept moist on a warm stage (Schofield)

the main body and retracted, a second mass is then protruded in another direction, and gradually the whole protoplasmic substance is, as it were, withdrawn. The amœba thus comes to occupy a new position, and when this proceeding is repeated several times we have locomotion in a definite direction, together with a continual change of form

FIG 5 —An amœboid corpuscle of the newt killed by instantaneous application of steam, showing the appearance of the pseudopodia (After Schafer, "Quain's Anatomy")

Amœboid movements of the colourless corpuscles of the blood may be readily seen when a drop of blood from the finger is mixed with salt solution, and examined on a warm stage with the microscope

If we adopt Schafer's views on the structure of protoplasm, then the essential act in the protrusion of a pseudopodium is the flowing of the hyaloplasm out of the spongioplasm, the retraction of the pseudopodium is a return of the hyaloplasm to the spongioplasm

Ciliary Movement

The ciliated cell is usually columnar in shape and surmounted by a bunch of fine tapering filaments which were originally called cilia because of their resemblance to eyelashes

In the larger ciliated cells, the border on which the cilia are set is bright and composed of little knobs, to each of which a cilium is attached, in some cases the knobs are prolonged into the cell protoplasm as filaments or rootlets (fig 6) The bunch of cilia is homologous with the striated border of columnar cells

The function of the cilia is to cause a movement of substances or objects along the surfaces they line For example, cilia line the air passages (but not the alveoli) and they cause a current of mucus and entangled dust to move towards the throat (fig 7) In the Fallopian tubes and upper part of the uterus they assist the movements of ova, and in the ducts of the testes those of the spermatozoa The tail of a spermatozoon may itself be regarded as a cilium, and some protozoa also move by means of cilia Cilia are found also in the ventricles of the brain and in the central canal of the spinal cord, in the gills of marine animals, and in the gullet of the frog

Ciliary motion may conveniently be studied in the latter, or in the gill of a mussel kept moist by a 0 6 per cent saline It may be observed under the microscope and, in the case of the frog, the movements of minute pieces of carbon may be studied

The cilia are seen to be in constant rapid motion, each cilium being fixed at one end, and swinging or lashing to and fro The general impression given to the eye of the observer is very similar to that produced by waves in a field of corn, and the result of their movement is to produce a continuous current in a definite direction, and this direction is always the same on the same surface, being usually in the case of a cavity towards the external orifice

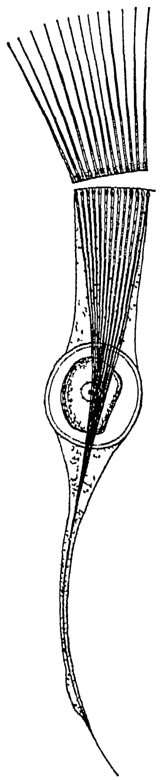


FIG 6 —Ciliated cell from the intestine of a mollusc (Engelmann)

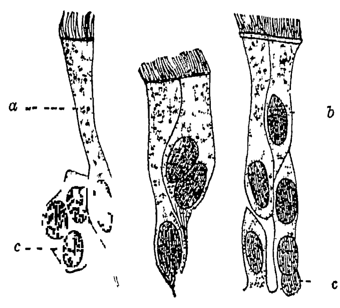


FIG 7 —Ciliated epithelium from the human trachea a, Large fully formed cell, b, shorter cell, c, developing cells with more than one nucleus (Cadiat)

The exact explanation of ciliary movement is not known, whatever may be the precise cause, the movement must depend on some

changes going on in the cell to which the cilia are attached, for, when the latter are cut off from the cell, the movement ceases, and when severed so that portions of the cilia are left attached to the cell, the attached and not the severed portions continue the movement

Sharpey Schafer has suggested that the flow of hyaloplasm backwards and forwards will explain ciliary as it will amœboid movement In an amœboid cell, the spongioplasm is irregular in arrangement, hence an outflow of hyaloplasm can occur in any direction But in the regular curved projection or cilium, the hyaloplasm can only flow directly into the cilium and back again The flow of hyaloplasm into the cilium raises the pressure there and causes it to straighten, a movement in the reverse direction causes the cilium to curve

The Effect of some External Agents on Amœboid and Ciliary Movements

Although the movements of amœboid and ciliated cells may be loosely described as spontaneous, yet they are produced and increased under the action of external agencies which excite them, and which are therefore called *stimuli*

Ciliary and amœboid movements are increased by small rises in temperature and by dilute alkalies Additional movement increases the demand for oxygen (Gray) Strong acids, strong alkalies, and temperatures above 45° C bring about a cessation of movement Cold and the lack of oxygen each cause a temporary cessation from which there is recovery if the temperature is raised or oxygen admitted Ciliary movement is stopped by dilute acids and by carbon dioxide, but if these agents are neutralised movement once more takes place Anæsthetics, by preventing the permeation of oxygen, stop ciliary activity Again, contact with foreign bodies, gentle pressure, certain salts, and electricity, produce or increase the movement in the cell protoplasm

These effects are of special importance and may be taken as indicative of the action of these agents on living organisms generally

CHAPTER III

MUSCLE

THE most important movements of the higher animals are brought about by muscular tissue It possesses the power of contraction, and is, in the higher animals, the tissue by which their movements are executed

The majority of the muscles of the body are attached to bones which act as levers Thus when we want to bend the elbow, impulses from the brain descend by way of the spinal cord and nerves to muscles which are attached to the bones of the lower arm at one end and to the bones of the upper arm or shoulder girdle at the other Since the bones of the lower and upper arms are hinged at the elbow, contraction of the muscles causes a bending of the elbow The study of the movements of muscles and their effect on the bones is now dealt with by the anatomists, and need not be entered into here In some instances muscular tissue pervades or surrounds cavities, and its contraction causes movement of the contents as in the case of the digestive tract

The Skeleton

This is the framework of bone on and in which the body is built Its detailed study concerns anatomy, while its physiological aspects are postponed until the student is familiar with the general processes on which its formation depends

Muscular Tissue

Muscle is popularly known as flesh The muscles may be divided from a physiological standpoint into two classes—the *voluntary* muscles, which are under the control of the will, and the *involuntary* muscles, which are not All muscular tissue, whether under the will or not, is controlled by means of the nervous system The involuntary muscles are controlled by a specialised part of the nervous system

When muscular tissue is examined under the microscope, it is seen to be made up of small, elongated, thread-like cells, which are called *muscle fibres* and which are bound into bundles by connective

tissue In involuntary muscles there is a certain amount of cement substance, stainable by nitrate of silver, between the fibres

There are three varieties of muscle fibres (1) striated muscle fibres, which occur in the voluntary muscles, (2) plain muscle fibres which bring about movement in the internal organs, and (3) cardiac or heart muscle fibres, which are striated like (1), but are otherwise different Both plain and cardiac muscles are involuntary

Voluntary or Striped Muscle

Voluntary muscles are sometimes called *skeletal*, and they constitute the whole of the muscular apparatus attached to the bones *

The fibres vary considerably in thickness and length, but they average $\frac{1}{500}$ inch in diameter, and are about 1 inch in length Each fibre is cylindrical in shape and has rounded ends, many become prolonged into tendon bundles by which muscle is attached to bone

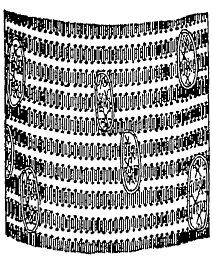


FIG 8 —Muscle fibre of a mammal highly magnified The surface of the fibre is accurately focussed. (Schafer)

Each fibre consists of a sheath, called the *sarcolemma* which encloses a soft material called the *contractile substance*

The contractile substance within the sheath is made up of alternate stripes of dark and light substance which give voluntary muscle its characteristic appearance Haycraft succeeded in making casts of muscle-fibres in collodion films and showed that the light and dark stripes appear on the casts He therefore concluded that the striped appearance was due to optical phenomena The stripes also stain differently, so presumably differ in chemical composition

Muscle fibres contain oval nuclei In mammalian muscle these are situated just beneath the sarcolemma, but in frog's muscle they occur also in the thickness of the muscle fibre

A muscle fibre is made up of *fibrils* or *sarcostyles*, which are held together by a network known as the *sarcoplasm* (represented as white lines in fig 10) By the use of certain reagents, such as osmic acid or alcohol, the fibrils may be completely separated from one another

The rapidity of muscular contraction seems to be proportional to the clearness of the cross-striation, and insects' muscles which are remarkable for perfection of mechanism have consequently been the subject of many researches In the wing muscles the sarcostyles are separated by a considerable quantity of interstitial sarcoplasm,

* The muscle-fibres of the pharynx, of part of the œsophagus, and of the middle and the external ear, though not under the control of the will, have the same structure as voluntary muscle-fibres

which may be of nutritive importance, and according to some observers possesses a certain amount of contractility, at any rate it allows the intimate structure of the individual sarcostyles to be worked out thoroughly, and Sharpey Schafer has arrived at the following conclusions —

Each sarcostyle is subdivided, by a transverse line (Krause's membrane *) in the middle of each light stripe, into successive

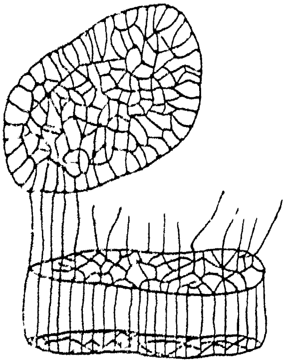


Fig 9 — Portion of muscle fibre of water beetle, treated with gold chloride to show network One of the transverse networks is split off, and some of the longitudinal bars are shown broken off (After Melland)

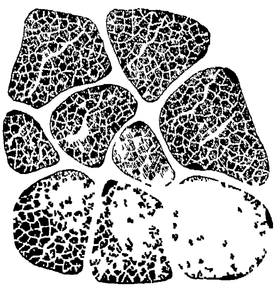


Fig 10 —Transverse section through muscle fibres of human tongue The nuclei are deeply stained, situated at the inside of the sarcolemma Each muscle fibre shows "Cohnheim's areas × 450 (Klein and Noble Smith)

portions which are termed *sarcomeres* In each sarcomere is one dark stripe or *sarcous element* The sarcous element is really in two sections which, in the stretched sarcostyle (fig 11, B), separate at the line of Hensen Between each end of the sarcous element and Krause's membrane lies a clear interval which is more evident in the extended sarcomere (fig 11, B), and which diminishes on contraction (fig 11, A) The sarcous element is pervaded with longitudinal canals or pores which are open towards Krause's membrane and closed at Hensen's line As the sarcostyle contracts, a large proportion of the clear part of the sarcomere passes into these pores and disappears into the sarcous element which swells up and becomes wider, with a consequent shortening of the sarcomere (fig 12, B) As the sarcostyle is extended the clear substance passes out from the pores of the sarcous element and lies between it and Krause's membrane There is a compensating lengthening and narrowing of the sarcomere (fig 12, A) It should be noted that the sarcous element does not

* Also called Dobie's line The membrane is probably an optical phenomenon for Kuhne discovered that a threadworm could crawl through it without difficulty and without destroying it

lie free in the middle of the sarcomere, but is attached at the sides to a fine enclosing envelope, and at either end to Krause's membrane by fine lines running through the clear substance (fig 12, A)

These conclusions are interesting, because they bring into harmony amœboid, ciliary, and muscular movement In all three instances we have protoplasm composed of two materials, spongioplasm and hyaloplasm In amœboid movement the irregular arrangement of the spongioplasm allows the hyaloplasm to flow in and out of it in any direction In ciliary movement the flow is limited by the arrangement of the spongioplasm to one direction, hence the limitation of the movement in one direction (see pp 13-14) In muscle, the definite

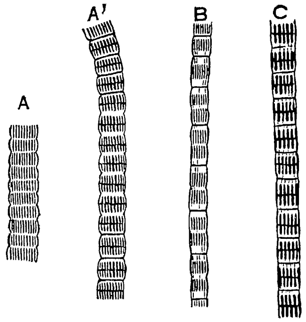


FIG 11 —Sarcostyles from the wing muscles of a wasp

A A', Sarcostyles showing degrees of con traction

B, A sarcostyle extended with the sarcous elements separated into two parts

C, Sarcostyles moderately extended (semidia grammatic) (E S Schafer)

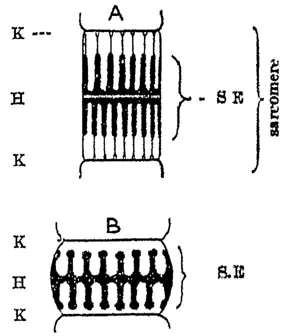


FIG 12 —Diagram of a sarcomere in a moderately extended con dition, A, and in a contracted condition, B

K, K, Krause's membranes, H, plane of Hensen, S E, poriferous sarcous ele ment (E S Schafer)

arrangement of the spongioplasm (represented by the sarcous element) in a longitudinal direction limits the movement of the hyaloplasm (represented by the clear substance of the light stripe), so that it must flow either in or out in a particular direction. The contraction of a whole muscle is the sum total of the contraction of all the constituent sarcomeres

It has been stated that in an ordinary muscle fibre during contraction, it not only becomes thicker and shorter, but the light stripes become dark and the dark stripes light This has been proved to be an optical effect (fig 14)

Red and Pale Voluntary Muscles

In many animals, such as the rabbit, and in some fishes, most of the voluntary muscles are pale, but a few (*e g*, the diaphragm, crureus, soleus, semi-membranosus, in the rabbit) are red These muscles

contract more slowly than the pale muscles, and their red tint is due to hæmoglobin contained within their contractile substance

In addition, there are histological differences between them and ordinary striped muscle fibres —

1 The muscle fibres are thinner
2 They have more sarcoplasm

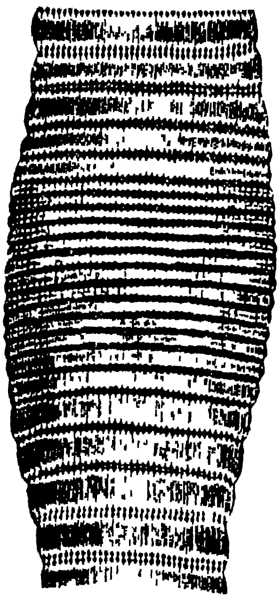


FIG 13 — Wave of contraction passing over a muscle fibre of water beetle R, R, Portions of the fibre at rest, C, contracted part, I, I, intermediate condition (Schafer)

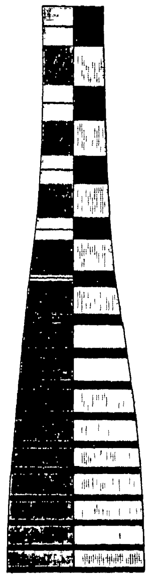


FIG 14 —This figure (after Engelmann) illustrates the appearance of a muscle fibre as examined in ordinary light (left-hand side) and in polarised light (right hand side) In the upper part of the diagram the fibre is not contracted, in the lower part it is contracted The dark bands are seen to be bright by polarised light, owing to their being largely made up of doubly refracting sarcous elements, during contraction, fluid passes from the singly refracting or isotropous light band into the doubly refracting dark band, which, in consequence, becomes widened out

3 Longitudinal striation is therefore more marked
4 Transverse striation is more irregular
5 Nuclei are situated not only under the sarcolemma, but also in the thickness of the fibre
6. The transverse loops of the network of the blood capillaries are dilated into little reservoirs, far beyond the size of ordinary capillaries

Cardiac Muscle

The muscle fibres of the heart, unlike those of other involuntary muscles, are striated, but although in this respect they resemble the skeletal muscles, they have several characteristics of their own The fibres, which lie side by side, are united at frequent intervals by short branches (fig 15) The fibres are smaller than those of the ordinary striated muscles, and their transverse striation is less clear No sarcolemma can be discerned Each fibre has only one nucleus which is situated in the middle of its substance At the junctions of the fibres there is a certain amount of cementing material, stainable by silver nitrate This is bridged across by fine fibrils from cell to cell Some physiologists hold, however, that cardiac muscle is a continuous mass of protoplasm (*syncytium*) with nuclei at intervals, the muscle fibrils being in continuity throughout

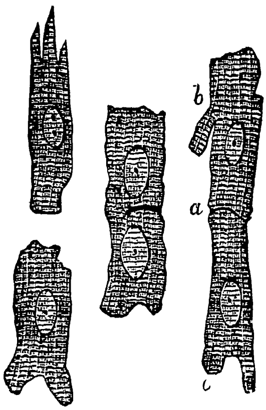


FIG 15 — Muscle fibre cells from the heart (E S Schafer)

Immediately beneath the lining membrane of the ventricles, and in the main connecting strand which links the auricles or atria to the ventricles (the auriculo-ventricular bundle), are found peculiar fibres known after their discoverer as *Purkinje's fibres*, these cells, which are striated only on their margins, are large, clear, and quadrangular with granular protoplasm containing several nuclei Here continuity of fibrils is more marked than in the rest of the cardiac musculature

Involuntary or Plain Muscle.

Plain muscle forms the proper muscular coats of the digestive canal from the middle of the œsophagus to the internal sphincter ani, of the ureters and urinary bladder, of the trachea and bronchi, of the ducts of glands, of the gall-bladder, of the vesiculæ seminales, of the uterus and oviducts, of blood-vessels and lymphatics, of the iris and the ciliary muscle of the eye This kind of tissue enters largely into the composition of the *tunica dartos* It occurs in the skin where it is found surrounding the secreting part of the sweat glands and in small bundles attached to the hair follicles, it also occurs in the areola of the nipple It is found in Muller's muscle, in the capsule and trabeculæ of the spleen, and in the stroma of the ovary, prostate, etc It is

composed of long, fusiform cells of fibres (fig 16), which are not as a rule more than $\frac{1}{600}$ inch long Each cell has an oval nucleus

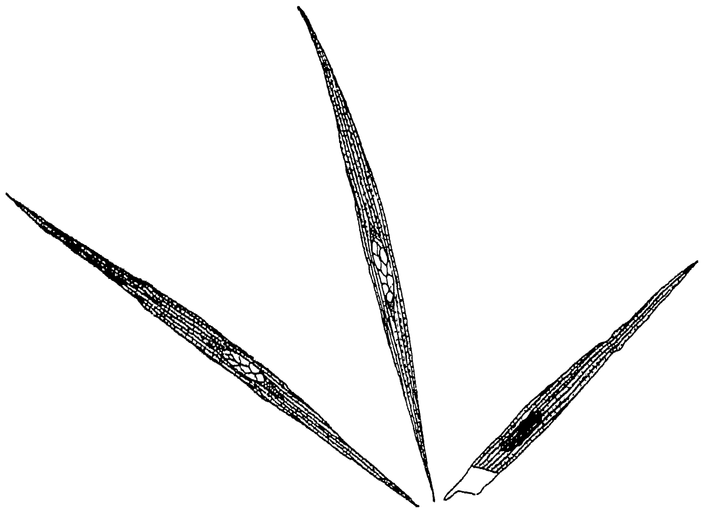


FIG 16 — Muscle fibre cells from the muscular coat of intestine—highly magnified Note the longitudinal striation, and in the broken fibre the sheath is visible

The cell substance is longitudinally but not transversely striated, and is covered by a delicate sheath The fibres are united by cementing material, which is stained by silver nitrate, and is bridged across by fine filaments passing from cell to cell

CHAPTER IV

EXCITABILITY AND STIMULATION

Excitability or **Irritability** is the power which certain tissues possess of responding by some change (transformation of energy) to the action of an external agent which, whatever its nature, we call the **stimulus**

The nature of the response depends on the nature of the tissue Some tissues move, some secrete, some discharge electricity, *e g* the electric organs of some fishes

Excitable tissues may be stimulated by mechanical or chemical agencies They may also be stimulated by suitable electrical stimuli, and in the study of excitability the latter stimuli are generally used as they do not damage the tissue and are easily controlled The tissues in the body are stimulated by nervous impulses We can see the response to such stimulation in the nerve to a muscle of a frog It may be stimulated by a tap or pinch, by a chemical agent (acid or salt), by a direct or an induced current, and normally by the nervous impulses which reach it from the nerve centres When we make a voluntary movement, we cause a nervous impulse to pass down an excitable nerve to an excitable muscle Some tissues are specially excitable to certain kinds of stimuli rather than to others For example, smooth (plain) muscle is most easily stimulated by stretching. Glycerol stimulates nerve but not muscle directly, while ammonia stimulates muscle but not nerve

We may regard stimuli as liberators of energy, muscle and nerve and other irritable structures undergo disturbances in consequence of a stimulus The disturbance is some form of movement—visible movement in muscle, molecular movement in nerve A stimulus may be regarded as added motion Gowers compared it to the blow that causes dynamite to explode, or the match applied to a train of gunpowder A very slight blow will explode a large quantity of dynamite, a very small spark will fire a long train of gunpowder So in muscle or nerve the effect is often out of all proportion to the strength of the stimulus, a light touch on the surface of the body may elicit very forcible nervous and muscular disturbances, and, moreover, the effect of the stimulus is propagated along the nerve or muscle without loss

Electrical Stimulation

Stimulation of an excitable tissue may, as we have seen above, be brought about chemically or mechanically, but most conveniently by an electric current from a cell or a battery supplying 1-2 volts This method has the great advantage that within limits it does not damage the tissue and may be repeated many times It is not necessary to describe in detail the electrical apparatus.

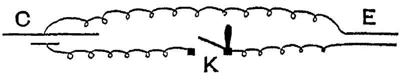


FIG 17 —Diagram of simple electrical circuit which is completed when the tissue to be stimulated is placed across the electrodes E

Wires from the positive and negative poles of the cell form the electrodes, the former being known as the anode and the latter as the cathode

If the nerve or muscle is laid across the electrodes, the electrical circuit is completed and stimulation occurs The experiment can, however, be more conveniently carried out by first laying the nerve across the electrodes, and making and breaking the circuit by means of a key (fig 17)

In many experiments it is desirable to vary the strength of stimulation, and this can be done most conveniently by using an induced current from a transformer or induction coil The two circuits are shown in fig 18 It is seen that each circuit is quite

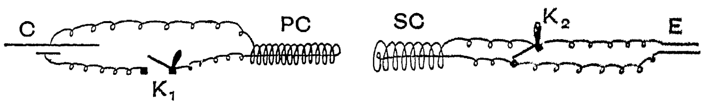


FIG 18 —Circuit to give induced currents C—cell PC—primary coil SC—secondary coil E—electrodes K_1 and K_2—keys in the primary and secondary circuits respectively Note that K_2 short circuits the electrodes

separate from the other, and it may readily be shown that a current only passes in the secondary circuit when an alteration is made in the strength of the primary A current is obtained in the secondary *only* at the "making" (closing of the key) and "breaking" (opening of the key) of the primary circuit The nearer the primary and secondary coils are to one another the stronger is the induced current in the secondary circuit The strength of the stimulating current can therefore be varied by varying the distance between the two coils It must be understood that there is no fundamental qualitative difference between a direct and an induced current. The essential differences are the short duration and the change of direction of the induced current which occurs at each make and break

It will be observed that a short-circuiting key is used in the

secondary circuit A simple key would not be so effective because of the phenomenon of unipolar induction

The "break" effects are stronger than the make effects, this is easily proved by placing the electrodes on the tongue and is due to Faraday's extra current This current is produced in the primary coil by the inductive influence of contiguous turns of its wire on each other, its direction is against that of the battery current at make, and so the make shock is lessened At the break the extra current is of such short duration (because when the circuit is broken there can be no current at all) that for all practical purposes it may be considered as non-existent

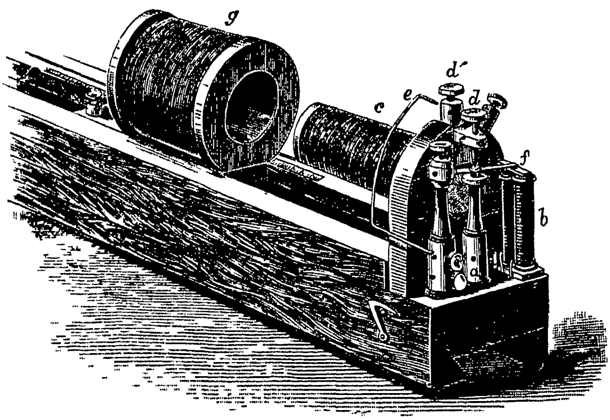


FIG 19 —Du Bois Reymond's induction coil

The Du Bois Reymond coil (fig 19) commonly employed in physiological experiments, *c* is the primary coil, and *d* and *d′* its two ends, which are attached to the battery, a key being interposed for making and breaking, *g* is the secondary coil, the two terminals of which are at its far end When one wishes to produce a rapid succession of make and break shocks the automatic interrupter or Wagner's hammer seen at the right-hand end of the diagram is included in the circuit

The same difference of strength occurs alternately in the repeated shocks produced by Wagner's hammer (*f*) This inequality is slightly reduced by Helmholtz's wire (*e*, fig 19)

The interrupter is on the same principle as an electric bell If the wires from the battery are attached to A and E (fig 20), the current passes to the primary coil by the pillar on the left and the spring or handle of the hammer as far as the screw (C), after

going round the primary coil, one turn only of which is seen, it twists round a pillar of soft iron on the right-hand side, and then to the screw E and back to the battery, the result of a current going around a bar of soft iron is to make it a magnet, so it attracts the hammer, and draws the spring away from the top screw C, and thus breaks the current, the current ceases, the soft iron

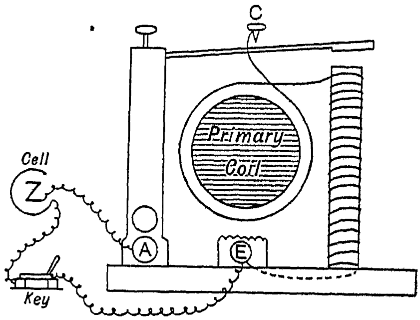


Fig 20

is no longer a magnet, so it releases the hammer, and contact is restored by the spring, then the same thing starts over again, and so a succession of break and make shocks occur alternately and automatically

Measurement of Excitability

Tissues exhibit considerable differences in excitability to different kinds of currents Smooth muscle, for example, will respond to stimulation by a direct current, but not to an induced current (see p 24) There is no fundamental qualitative difference between these two currents They are merely of different strengths and last for different times, the induced current being stronger but of very short duration Speaking generally it has been found that the shorter the period of stimulation the stronger must be the current which will produce an effect and *vice versa* It has also been shown that each tissue may be stimulated by a certain strength and duration of electrical stimulation which cannot be varied beyond certain limits It is for such reasons that a current of 10,000 volts if very rapidly alternating may not cause death, although a shock of 500 volts from the live wire or rail of an electric train may be fatal

Our knowledge of this subject we owe largely to Keith Lucas of Cambridge, and later to Lapicque, of Paris, and his co-workers

The latter have introduced the following terms for the measurement of excitability —

> **Rheobase** is the intensity in volts of the weakest constant current which, if continued indefinitely, will excite
>
> **Chronaxie** is the minimum time required for excitation by a current of twice the intensity of the rheobase

Rheobase is determined with a battery, voltmeter, and variable resistance, for chronaxie some method of stimulating for very short periods is needed A heavy pendulum or spring which knocks over a make key and a fraction of a second later breaks the circuit (Keith Lucas) may be used, but the discharge of a condenser is also employed The rheobase for the cut sciatic of the frog is 0 2 to 0 3 volt, and the chronaxie is 0 3 to 0 4 thousandths of a second

Chronaxie varies widely in different nerves even in the same animal In general it is least in rapidly contracting muscles supplied by large nerve-fibres Differences are also noticeable in nerves treated by various reagents those which swell the myelin sheath for instance increase the rheobase and shorten the chronaxie In man, Bourguignon found that the extensors have a chronaxie of 0 1 σ (σ = 001 sec) while that of the flexors is 0 4 σ or more The relation of these data to the activity of the central nervous system has not been as yet fully studied Cutting a nerve roughly doubles the chronaxie it possesses in the intact state

Difference in excitability explains why degenerated muscle fails to respond to faradic stimulation yet responds to a galvanic stimulus, also why different results may be obtained when a mixed nerve is stimulated by different currents In the latter instance it may be assumed that the nerve-fibres which compose the nerve have different chronaxies It is also claimed that fatigued or curarised * muscles have an altered chronaxie and cannot be stimulated by impulses which pass down their nerves *See* Fatigue

Refractory Phase.—After a tissue, such as a muscle or a nerve, has been excited by a stimulus it is refractory for a short space of time · that is, it fails to respond to a stimulus In ordinary muscle and nerve this refractory phase is very short, but in cardiac muscle it lasts throughout the duration of the contraction The refractory phase is of importance since it gives time in which a tissue may recover its power of activity

* The drug, curari, is a South American arrow poison

CHAPTER V

THE CONTRACTION OF MUSCLE

NORMALLY the voluntary muscles contract as a result of nervous impulses reaching them from the central nervous system by way of their nerves We can, however, set up a nervous impulse in a nerve artificially and so cause the muscle to contract For this purpose we generally use a **nerve-muscle preparation**, gastrocnemius or calf muscle and sciatic nerve of a frog, the muscles and nerves of which live for a long time after removal from the body Strips of muscle may, however, be substituted

Muscle undergoes the following changes when it contracts —

1 Changes in form
2 Changes in extensibility and elasticity
3 Changes in temperature
4 Changes in electrical condition
5 Chemical changes

Changes in Form

The Myograph — There are many different forms of this apparatus, which was originally invented by Ludwig and Helmholtz to record muscular contraction

In each type the bony origin of the gastrocnemius is held firmly, usually by a pin through the knee-joint, while the tendo Achillis is tied to a weighted lever the end of which bears a writing-point such as a piece of parchment paper (fig 21) This records the magnified contractions of the muscle on smoked paper which is wrapped round a cylinder When the cylinder is stationary the upstroke and downstroke of the writing-point fall on the same part of the surface, but if the cylinder is rotating a muscle curve or myogram is obtained If a permanent record be desired the paper may be removed from the cylinder, and the soot fixed by passing the paper through a solution of resin in spirit and allowing it to dry The screw on which the lever rests can be adjusted so that the lever rests on it till the muscle contracts, the muscle therefore does not take the weight until contraction has begun (*after-loading*) The spindle of the rotating cylinder bears two metal arms which can be brought together to form one arm if desired The free end of

each arm can be made to press over at one point in the drum's revolution a key which lies in the primary circuit of the inductorium, thus the muscle can be made to contract once or twice for each revolution The secondary coil should be pulled out until the muscle is stimulated by the break shock only The point of

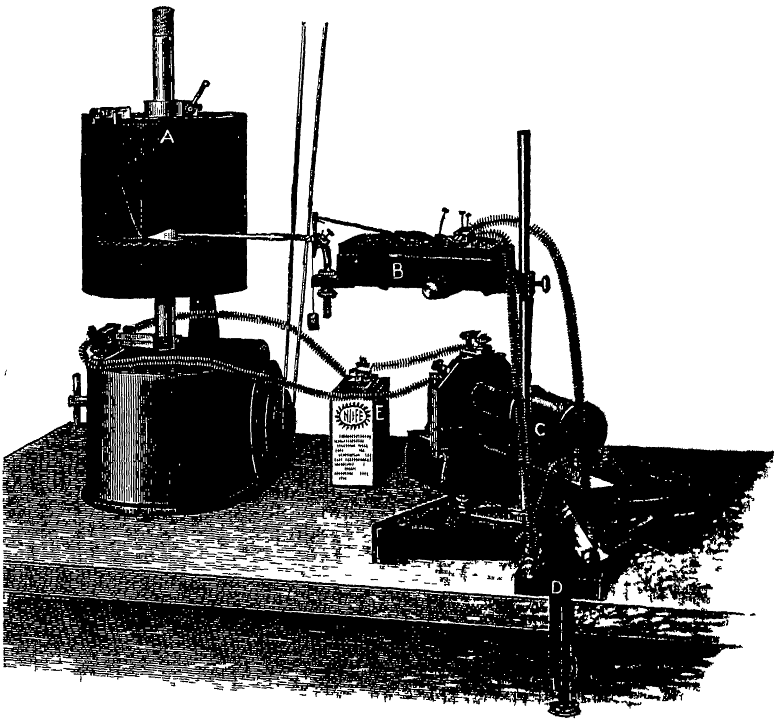


FIG 21 —The Myograph and stimulating apparatus A, Drum, B, platform with nerve-muscle preparation, C, induction coil, D, short-circuiting key in secondary circuit, E, cell The simple key usually inserted in the primary circuit is not shown but the make and break is made by the key of the drum (Kindly supplied by Mr C F Palmer)

stimulation can be marked by moving the lever by hand when the arm is in such a position that contact in the primary circuit is made

To keep the preparation fresh during an experiment, it must be moistened with **normal saline** (0 65 per cent NaCl in water for frog's muscle, this being the concentration of salts in the fluid which normally bathes it), or it may be kept in a moist chamber, *i e*, a chamber in which the air is kept saturated with moisture

The events recorded in the myogram can be timed The simplest time-marker is a tuning-fork vibrating 100 times a second. This is

struck, and by means of a writing-point fixed on to one of the prongs of the fork, these vibrations may be written beneath the myogram More elaborate forms of electrical time-markers are frequently employed

The Simple Muscle Curve—One of these is shown in fig 22 The muscle was stimulated by a single induction-shock, at the instant marked P on the base-line

It will be observed that after the stimulus has been applied there is an interval before the contraction begins This interval is called the **latent period**, and when measured by the tuning-fork tracing is seen to be about $\frac{1}{100}$ sec During the latent period there is no *visible* change in the muscle

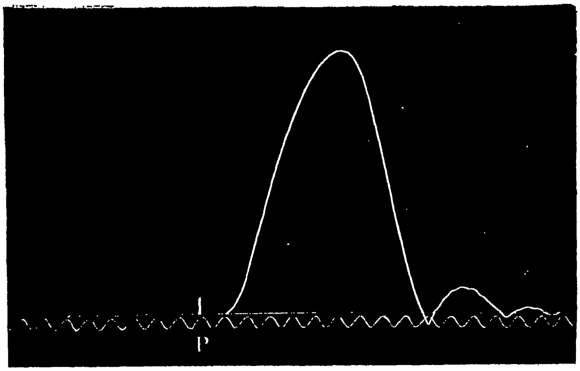


FIG 22 —Simple muscle curve

The second part is the **stage of contraction** proper The lever is raised by the shortening of the muscle The contraction is at first very rapid, but then progresses more slowly to its maximum

The next stage is the **stage of relaxation** After reaching its highest point, the lever descends in consequence of the elongation of the muscle The small waves which follow the main curve are due for the most part to the recording apparatus, and are most marked when the contraction is rapid and vigorous

With regard to the latent period, it should be pointed out that if the muscle is stimulated indirectly, *i e* through its nerve, some of the apparent lost time is occupied in the propagation of the nervous impulse along the nerve and across the end plate to the muscle To obtain the true latent period, this must be deducted Then there is latency in the apparatus It must be understood that with the ordinary class apparatus results are only approximate Errors arise from inertia and friction of the lever These errors may be excluded

by photographing the contracting muscle on a sensitive photographic plate travelling at an accurately-timed rate or by the use of the isometric lever (see pp 41, 42) By such means it is found that the true latent period is much shorter than was formerly supposed It is only $\frac{1}{500}$ of a second or less

Actually a simple twitch contraction of a frog's muscle takes only 0 06 sec and relaxation 0 13 sec A mammalian twitch is about 3 times faster Such results show the importance of the apparatus in experimentation

Factors modifying the Character of the Curve.

1 Influence of *strength of stimulus*—A minimal stimulus is that which is just strong enough to produce a contraction If the strength of stimulus is increased the amount of contraction as measured by the height of the curve is increased, until a certain point is reached (maximal stimulus), beyond which increase in the stimulus produces no increase in the amount of contraction. This is because the stronger the stimulus, the more muscle fibres are thrown into action and when all the fibres are stimulated the maximum is reached This is not to be confused with the phenomenon known as the beneficial effect of contraction (see p. 37) In this way a muscle grades its contraction for it has been observed microscopically by sprinkling finely divided mercury on the muscle that if an individual fibre contracts at all it contracts to a maximum This is known as the *all or none* phenomenon, which is discussed later in relation to cardiac muscle which acts like a single fibre

2 *Influence of load*—Increase of load, applied by weighting the lever, decreases the amount of contraction, until at last a weight is reached which the muscle is unable to lift

3 *Effect of temperature*—Cold at first increases the height of contraction, then diminishes it, otherwise the effect is very like that of fatigue, increasing the duration of all stages of the curve

Moderate warmth increases the height and diminishes the duration of all stages of the curve, latent period included. This may be shown by dropping salt solution at different temperatures on to the muscle before taking its curve (fig 23) It must, however, be understood that the increased height during the application of heat is caused mainly by the mechanical effect of the increased speed of contraction Too great heat (above 42° C) induces *heat rigor*, from the coagulation of the muscle proteins

4 *The effect of two successive stimuli*—If a second stimulus is applied less than $\frac{1}{200}$ second after the first, there is no response because the muscle is refractory during this period, but if the

second follows at a sufficient interval of time, each will cause a twitch and two simple muscle curves will be written (fig 24, A), the second is a little bigger than the first (beneficial effect of contraction) If the second stimulus arrives before the muscle has finished contracting under the influence of the first, a second curve will be added to the first (fig 24, B) This is called *superposition*, or *summation of effects* and occurs with both maximal and minimal stimuli

If the two stimuli are in such close succession that the second

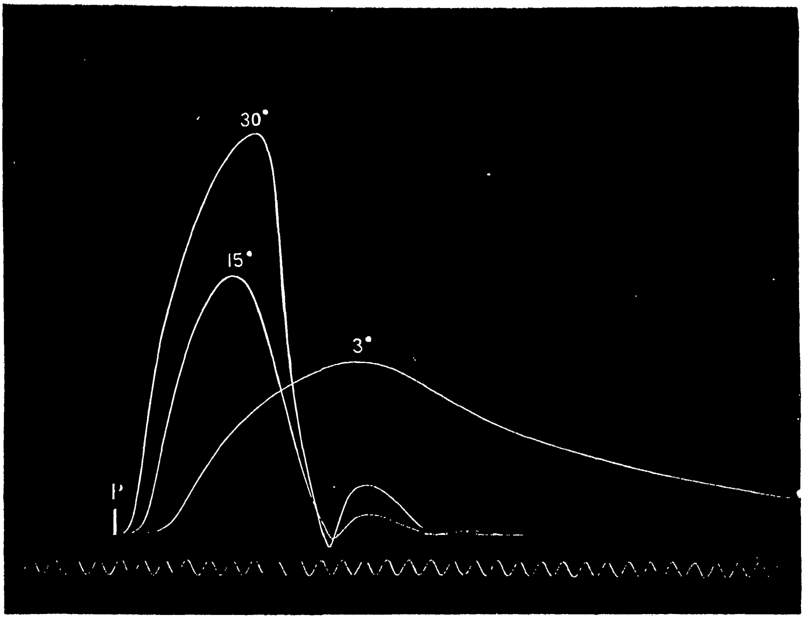


FIG 23 —Effect of temperature on the simple muscle curve The various temperatures are marked on the curves P is the point of stimulation, and the time tracing again indicates hundredths of a second (See Text)

occurs during the latent period of the first, the result will differ according as the stimuli are maximal or submaximal If they are maximal, the second stimulus is without effect, but if submaximal, the two stimuli are added together, and though producing a simple muscle curve, produce one which is bigger than either would have produced separately This is called *summation of stimuli* (fig 24, C)

5 *Effect of more than two stimuli*—If a succession of stimuli is sent into a muscle, or its nerve, the results obtained depend on the rate at which the stimuli follow one another If the time-intervals between the stimuli are sufficiently great, each stimulus will produce a simple muscular contraction A succession of twitches

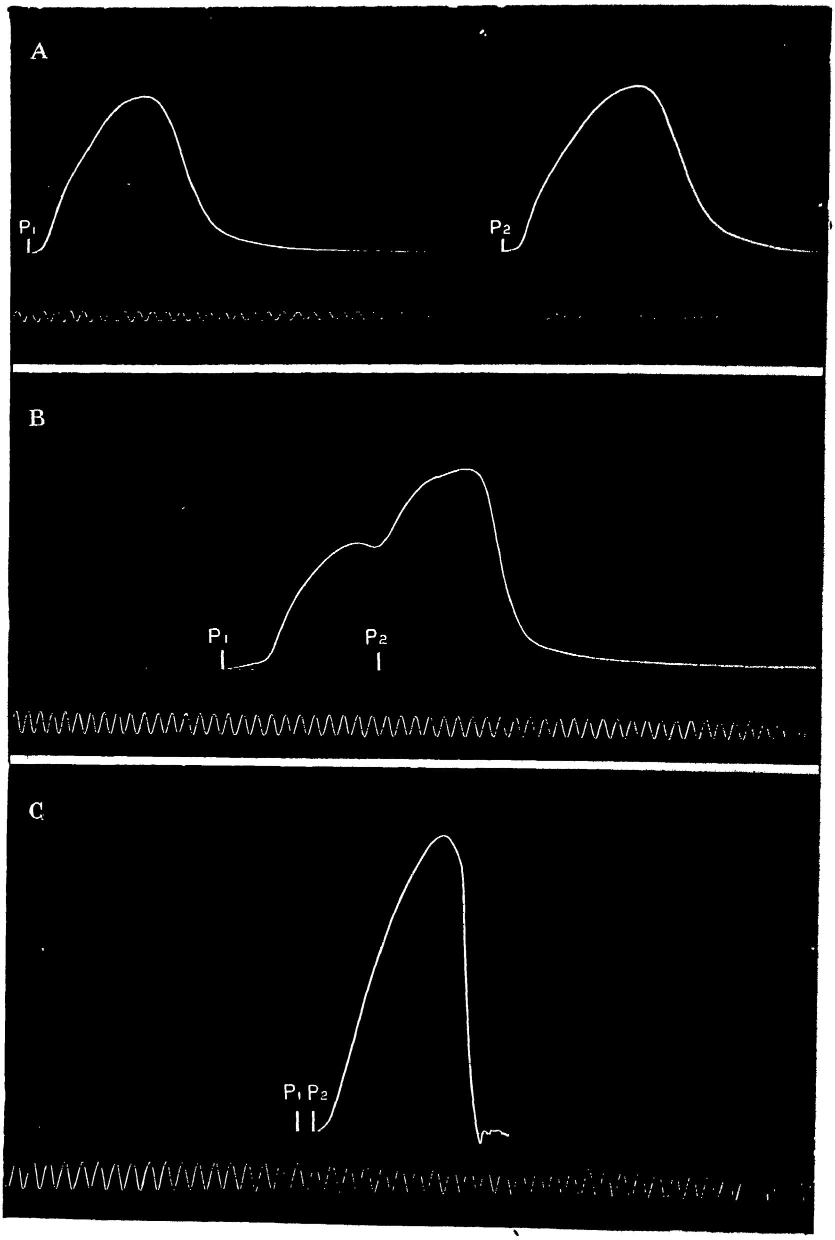


FIG 24 —Effect of two successive excitations The two points of excitation (P_1 and P_2) are marked in each case on the base-line In A, P_1 and P_2 are sufficiently far apart to give separate curves In B they are nearer together, and superposition is seen In C they are sufficiently near to give summation of stimuli Submaximal stimuli were used throughout, and the time tracing in each case shows hundredths of a second

is recorded and the *beneficial effect of previous action* is exhibited in what is known as a *staircase* (fig 25, A and B)

If the induction shocks follow each other more rapidly, the effect is a continuation of the superposition curve already described in connection with two successive stimuli Just as a second stimulus adds its curve to that written as the result of the first, so a third stimulus superposes its effect on the second, a fourth on the third, and so on Each successive increment is, however, smaller than the preceding, and at last the muscle remains at a maximum contraction, till it begins to relax from fatigue

A succession of stimuli may be sent into the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation by means of an interrupter This method of stimulation is called *faradisation* Fig 25, C to F, shows the kind of tracings obtained The number of contractions corresponds to the number of stimulations, the condition of prolonged contraction so produced, the muscle never relaxing completely between the individual contractions of which it is made up, is called *tetanus* *incomplete tetanus,* when the individual contractions are discernible (fig 25, C, D, and E), *complete tetanus,* as in fig 25, F, when the contractions are so rapid that they are completely fused to form a continuous line without waves

The rate of stimulation necessary to cause complete tetanus varies considerably, for frog's muscle it averages 15 to 20 per second, for the pale muscles of the rabbit, 20 per second, for the more slowly contracting red muscles of the same animal, 10 per second, and for the extremely slowly contracting muscles of the tortoise 2 per second is enough The rate necessary to produce complete tetanus is diminished in a fatigued muscle as its period of relaxation is prolonged

Voluntary Contraction—There is evidence that voluntary contraction, that is a human muscular contraction made by an effort of will, is essentially tetanic in nature This is best shown by counting the number of electrical variations which accompany a voluntary contraction, on the assumption that each fundamental unit of the contraction has an electrical change as its concomitant This can be accomplished by the use of a very delicate galvanometer The number of electrical variations is then found to be a high one More recently Adrian and Bronk have recorded the current of action of a single muscle-fibre by using a special electrode, which can be plunged into the muscle, and magnifying up the current produced by a valve amplifier Different muscles appear to vary but the average number of electrical variations is about 50 per second

This view of the tetanic nature of voluntary contraction is supported by the fact that some nerve-cells when stimulated reflexly do not discharge single impulses but groups of impulses

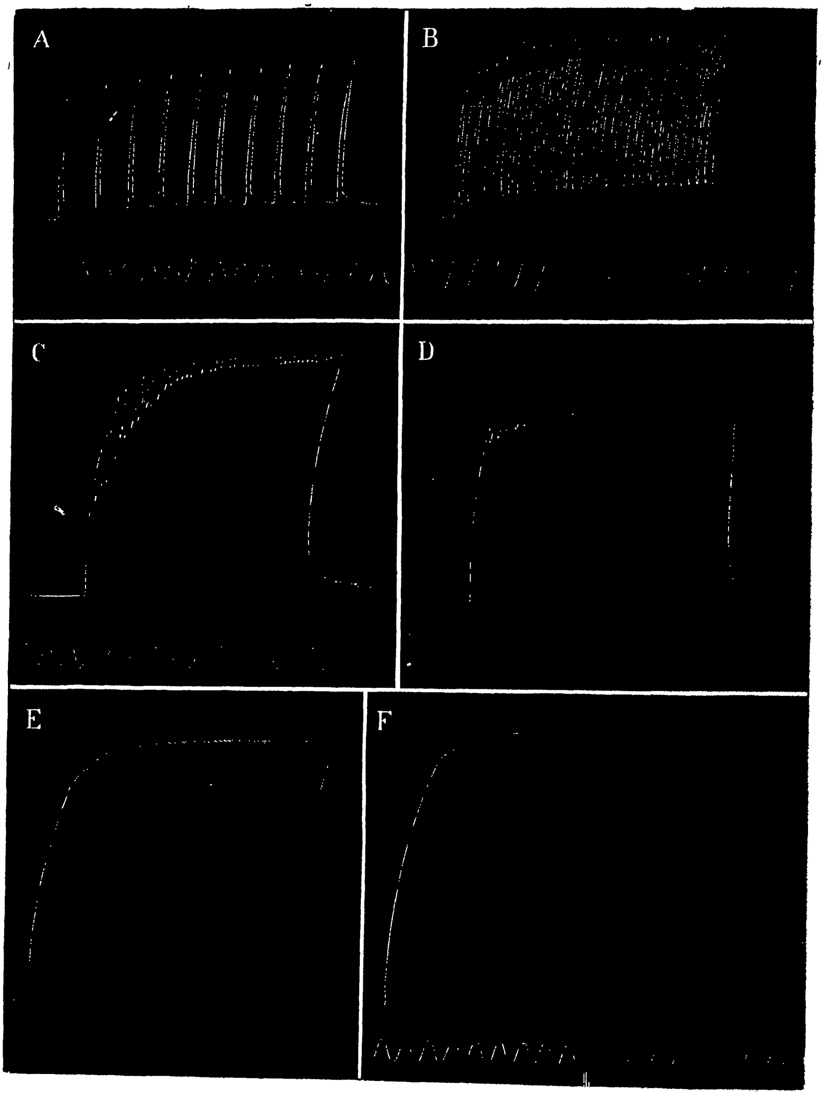


FIG 25 —Composition of tetanus These six tracings were obtained on a slowly moving drum from a frog's gastrocnemius, which was excited by a succession of induction shocks By a mechanical contrivance the rate of the vibrating spring which interrupted the primary circuit of the inductorium could be easily varied, and the rate of the hammer was increased from about 1 per second in A to 30 per second in F In A, separate twitches are seen, in B, the rate was still insufficient to cause fusion, in both A and B, the staircase effect is well seen In C and D, the rate was sufficiently great to cause incomplete tetanus, in E tetanus was nearly complete, and in F it was complete The time tracing in each case shows half seconds

There is evidence that a voluntary contraction differs from an experimental tetanus in that in the voluntary contraction the fibres are stimulated in relays This is suggested by the fact that fatigue may be produced by a subminimal stimulation, although the use of a stronger stimulation shows that all the fibres are not fatigued Also the electrical responses of an experimental tetanus are much more regular than those of a voluntary contraction

Since, as we have seen, individual muscle-fibres contract fully or not at all and since fatigue occurs with subminimal stimulation (although it is evident that all the fibres are not fatigued but may

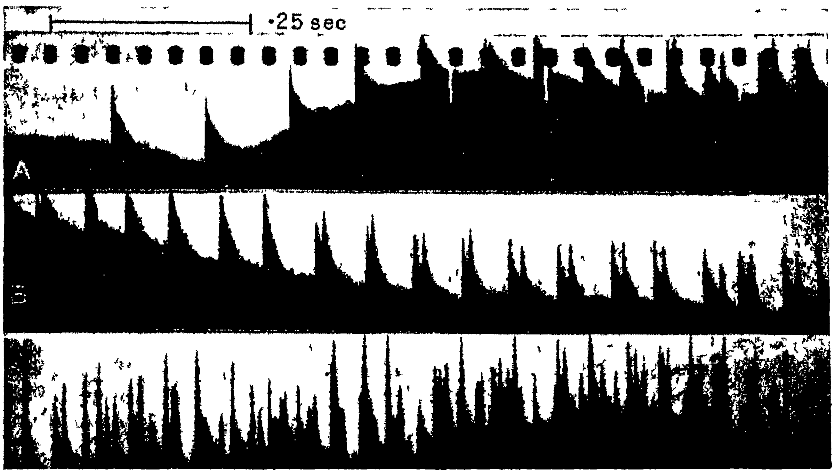


FIG 26 —Action currents from human triceps (E D A) recorded with concentric needle electrodes during voluntary contraction gradually increasing in power from A to C (Adrian and Bronk)

be made to contract by a stronger stimulus), then it is clear that a voluntary contraction differs from experimental tetanus in that in voluntary contraction the fibres of the muscle are stimulated in relays intermittently This is suggested also by the irregular nature of electrical responses of a voluntary contraction compared with the regular nature of the responses in experimental tetanus

Sherrington has found that certain nerve-cells (those concerned with extensor reflexes) have an inherent rate of rhythmic discharge which is unalterable, while others (those concerned with flexor reflexes) have a rate which, however, can be masked completely by imparting to the sensory nerve in a reflex preparation other rates up to quite high figures (100 vibrations per second or more) In fact, in the flexors the rate of the muscular contractions under artificial shocks exactly corresponds to the rate of the stimuli whether they

are applied to the motor nerve or to the sensory nerve in the reflex arc A twitch, however, is never elicited reflexly

Lever Systems—The arrangement of the muscles, tendons, and bones presents examples of the three systems of levers which will be known to anyone who has studied mechanics, the student of anatomy will have no difficulty in finding examples of all three systems in the body What is most striking is that the majority are levers of the third kind, in which there is a loss of the mechanical advantage of a lever, though a gain in the rapidity and extent of the movement

Most muscular acts involve the action of several muscles, often of many muscles The acts of walking and running are examples of very complicated muscular actions in which it is necessary not only that many muscles should take part, but that they should do so in their proper order and in due relation to the action of auxiliary and antagonistic muscles

Elasticity of Muscle

The danger of tearing in a muscle or its tendon when the muscle contracts is lessened by the fact that the muscle is elastic and extensible—and it may be shown, by measuring the increase in

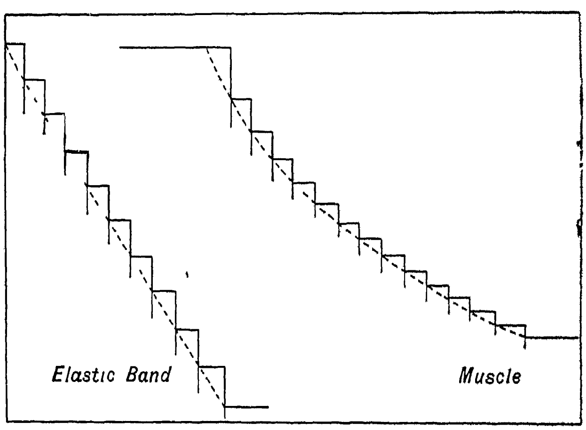


FIG 27 —(After Waller)

length which occurs when the muscle is loaded with different weights, that it is more easily stretched relatively when it is contracted than when it is relaxed Muscle is thus very different from a piece of indiarubber which stretches exactly according to the weight placed on it Fig 27 shows the effect of equal increments of weight in indiarubber and in muscle

The Work and Efficiency of Muscle

Work done by a muscle may be expressed in foot-pounds or gramme-centimetres according to the height a given weight is raised, allowance being made for the magnification by the lever This is the *isotonic method* used in most classes, but it gives only approximate results because of the work done in overcoming the inertia and friction of the lever system

In more accurate investigations, therefore, the muscle is not allowed to shorten, and the work is measured in terms of the tension exerted at its extremities This is known as the *isometric method*

The muscle is made to pull against a spring which it can only move to a very slight extent The slight movement is greatly magnified by a long lever or by a beam of light reflected from a mirror on the spring

It is considered better to regard the end-product of muscle contraction as potential energy set free (A V Hill) The results are, however, very similar to those obtained by the ordinary isotonic method in which the muscle is allowed to shorten Many attempts have been made to calculate the energy set free on contraction by making use of the heat produced during contraction The whole problem is complicated by the fact that in different circumstances different amounts of energy are at the disposal of the muscle and accurate results are therefore difficult to obtain

The isometric investigations have, however, emphasised that of the total work done by a muscle, only a part appears as external work, *e g*, the lifting of a load A large proportion is required to overcome the viscous resistance of the muscle itself We may compare the loss to the energy wasted in stirring a viscous fluid compared with a non-viscous fluid at the same speed Further, the more rapidly we stir, the more energy is wasted in this way It follows, therefore, that the more slowly a muscle contracts, the more energy may appear as external work, and there is an **optimum rate of contraction**

It can be shown that human muscles have a similar optimum rate of contraction or speed of movement and that exercise, *e g* walking faster or slower than our optimum is wasteful and involves the use of extra oxygen and fuel This fact is of great importance in industry, and in long distance racing, although other factors, such as co-ordination of muscles, also enter into the problem It is interesting to remark that the practical optimum for marching (100 paces per minute) recognised by the Army corresponds to the theoretical optimum found by physiologists The fatigue we experience from walking very slowly depends on a variety of causes

A rise of temperature, by increasing the rate of contraction, diminishes the amount of external work done

In measuring the total realisable work of a muscle accurately, a simple lever system with a fixed load is not satisfactory, since it does not permit of proper utilisation of the elastic energy This difficulty is overcome by the use of the inertia lever By it, the muscle contracts against the inertial resistance of a heavy balanced lever The muscle has to overcome the inertia of the system at the beginning of the contraction, when its force is maximal, and subsequently has only to accelerate its movement At each stage of its contraction, the muscle is opposed by a force which it can just overcome The system may be weighted and the inertia varied, so that the maximum load and the maximum shortening are obtained Since the inertia and weight of the system are known, the work done can be calculated from the height to which the lever is raised

In the body some of the muscles act isotonically and some isometrically For instance, in the muscles which move the arms shortening is important, while in those which move the jaws tension is the more important The latter are characterised by a large number of short fibres which converge like the barbs of a feather on its quill, while in muscles which shorten greatly the fibres are relatively longer, fewer, and almost parallel Some muscles are of mixed character

The effect of load on the work done depends largely on the way in which the load is applied to the muscle The weight may be allowed to stretch the resting muscle, in which case the muscle is said to be *free-weighted*, or the lever may be supported so that the muscle is not stretched until the contraction begins In the latter instance the muscle is said to be *after-loaded*

The following figures are taken from an actual experiment done with the frog's gastrocnemius by the isotonic method (Weber) —

Weight lifted	Height	Work done
5 grammes	27 6 millimetres	138 gramme-millimetres
15 ,,	25 1 ,,	376 ,,
25 ,,	11 45 ,,	286 ,,
30 ,,	7 3 ,,	219 ,,

The work done is found by multiplying the weight by the height through which it is raised In carrying out the experiment allowance must be made for magnification, which depends on the length of the lever

The work increases with the weight up to a certain maximum,

after which a diminution occurs, more or less rapidly, according as the muscle is fatigued

If the load is allowed to stretch the resting muscle it is found that the mechanical work performed is increased and it is to be observed that when we wish to obtain the maximum effect we commonly stretch our own muscles prior to use It will be seen later that this ability of muscle to respond within certain limits to increased load is of great importance in the case of the heart and the intestine

By the isometric method it is shown that there is an optimum length at which a maximum tension is produced, and it has been found by Hartree and Hill that at the optimum length the largest amount of heat is produced An increased load up to a certain point also increases the work done by slowing down the rate of contraction, for as we have seen slow contractions are more economical than fast as less heat is produced in overcoming viscosity

The muscle, regarded as a machine, is sometimes compared to artificial machines like a steam-engine A steam-engine is supplied with fuel, the latent energy of which is transformed into work and heat The carbon of the coal unites with oxygen to form carbonic acid, and it is in this process of combustion or oxidation that heat and work are liberated Although the analogy between muscle and a steam-engine is by no means an exact one, nevertheless it may stand for our present purpose

Relaxation —So far we have been speaking as though the only active phase of muscular contraction were the period of shortening It is, however, extremely probable that lengthening is also an active process This was originally mooted by Fick, who pointed out that the fall of a muscle lever during the relaxation period is of variable speed, and is obviously not due to the passive elongation of the muscle by gravity, the way in which this part of the curve is varied by such agencies as temperature, and drugs like veratrine, also indicates that relaxation is an independent process

The Electrical Phenomena of Muscle

We have seen that the chemical processes occurring in muscular contraction lead to a transformation of potential energy into work and heat These changes are accompanied by electrical disturbances also

The history of animal electricity is really part of the history of the discovery of electricity It dates from 1786, when Galvani made his first observations Galvani was Professor of Anatomy and Physiology at the University of Bologna, and his wife was one day preparing some frogs' legs for dinner, when she noticed that the apparently dead legs became convulsed when sparks were emitted from a frictional electrical machine which stood near

Galvani then wished to try the effect of lightning and atmospheric electricity on animal tissues So he hung up some frogs' legs to the iron trellis-work round the roof of his house by means of copper hooks, and saw that they contracted whenever the wind blew them against the iron He imagined this to be due to electricity secreted by the animal tissues, and this new principle was called *Galvanism* But all his contemporaries did not agree with this idea, and most prominent among his opponents was Volta, Professor of Physics at another Italian university, Pavia He showed that the muscular contractions were not due to animal electricity, but to artificial electricity produced by contact with different metals

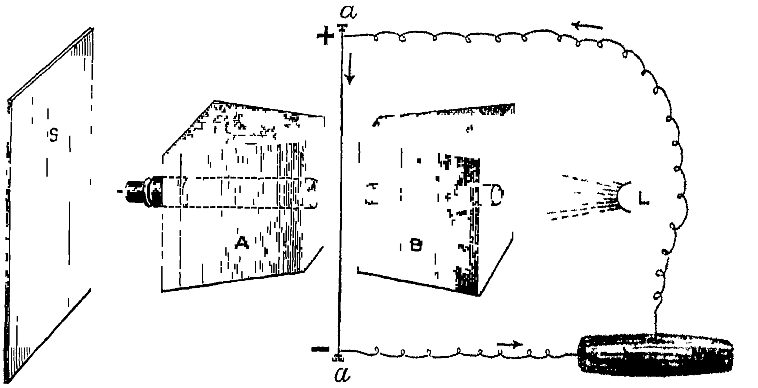


FIG 28 —Diagram of string galvanometer arranged to show [illegible] of an injured muscle *a*, *a* is the silvered quartz string, A and B are [illegible], a microscope is placed in the hole bored through A, L is a source of light, and S the screen upon which the magnified image of the string falls, M is the muscle

The controversy was a keen and lengthy one, and was terminated by the death of Galvani in 1798 Before he died, however, he gave to the world the experiment known as "contraction without metals," which we shall study presently, and which conclusively proved the existence of animal electricity Volta, however, never believed in it In his hand electricity took a physical turn, and the year after Galvani's death he invented the Voltaic pile, the progenitor of our modern batteries Volta was right in maintaining that galvanism could be produced independently of animals, but wrong in denying that electrical currents could be obtained from animal tissues. Galvani was right in maintaining the existence of animal electricity, but wrong in supposing that the contact of dissimilar metals with tissues proved his point

This conclusion has been arrived at by certain new methods of investigation In 1820 Oersted discovered electro-magnetism. when

a galvanic current passes along a wire near a magnetic needle, the needle is deflected one way or the other, according to the direction of the current This led to the invention of the astatic needle and the ordinary mirror galvanometer which is used in every physical laboratory for the detection of small electric currents

The String Galvanometer—In the ordinary galvanometer, by which electric currents may be detected, the current passes through a fixed coil of wire, and deflects a small magnetic needle suspended in the centre This arrangement can be inverted, the magnet being large and fixed, and the coil small and movable The string galvanometer of Einthoven is a development of this type The coil is reduced to a single thread of glass (*a*, *a* fig 28), coated with gold on the surface so as to conduct the current In less delicate apparatus a copper or platinum string may be used It hangs between two large electro-magnets which give a very "intense field" Whenever a current passes along the thread, it moves across the magnetic field, the side to which it moves varying according to the direction of the current The thread is illuminated by a strong light, and magnified by a microscope, which throws the image on to a screen If a record of the movements is desired, the shadow of the string is thrown upon a slit behind which is a vertically moving photographic plate

The Cathode Ray Oscillograph will probably replace all other means of electrical recording, since having no moving parts its records are instantaneous and it is much less easily broken than the extremely delicate string of the string galvanometer A cathode ray tube consists essentially of a beam of electrons emitted in a vacuum from a filament The beam passes between plates and the application of a potential difference to the plates causes the beam to be deflected, the deflection being recorded on a moving photographic film The currents must first be magnified by a valve amplifier

Many of the actual investigations have been carried out by means of the **capillary electrometer** The capillary electrometer consists essentially of a fine glass capillary containing mercury dipping into acid which flows down it as far as surface tension will allow If the mercury is connected by means of wires to two points of different potential

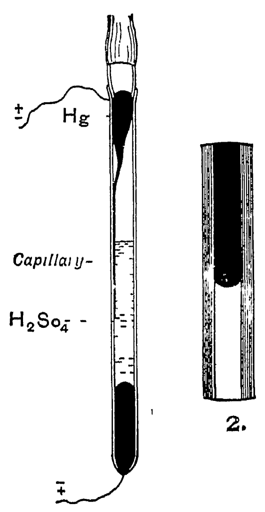


FIG 29

1 Capillary tube, fixed in outer tube containing 10 per cent sulphuric acid, the platinum wires are also shown
2 Capillary and column of mercury as seen in the field of the microscope

(fig 29), the meniscus moves to the negative pole and the movement may be photographed Records taken by this instrument have to be analysed as the inertia of the mercury causes it to move slowly Fig 31 shows an actual record, A, and its interpretation

Non-Polarisable Electrodes—If a galvanometer is connected with a muscle by wires which touch the muscle, electrical currents are obtained in the circuit which are set up by the contact of metal with muscle The currents so obtained form no evidence of electromotive force in the muscle itself Moreover, the passage of an electric current through the tissue causes electrolysis with the movement of ions, the positive ions (*e g* Na′) passing to the kathode, the negative (*e g* Cl′) to the anode There they give up their charges and chemical reactions occur, so that a minute gas battery is formed

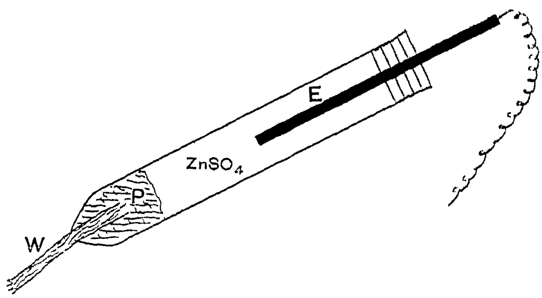


FIG 30—One of a pair of non polarisable electrodes In this form a zinc rod dips into zinc sulphate in a piece of glass tubing one end of which is closed by a cork and the other with kaolin soaked in saline Out of the latter there pass to the muscles or nerve a few strands of fat free wool soaked in saline Any Zn which is set free becomes deposited in the electrode and any SO_4 in the other electrode acts on the electrode slightly The production of gas is thereby avoided

which interferes appreciably with the current under investigation. By the use of non-polarisable electrodes this may be prevented. In modern work the silver chloride electrodes are used These consist of silver wire previously coated electrolytically with silver chloride When, therefore, sodium chloride is broken up the Na′ and Cl′ ions merely form sodium chloride and silver chloride and no further reaction takes place In the older form of Du Bois Reymond amalgamated zinc dipping into zinc sulphate solution was connected to the tissue by china clay soaked in physiological salt solution Electrodes on this principle are still used in taking records of heart currents

Fig 30 shows a convenient form of the latter variety

Current of Action—In a muscle removed from the body, it is found that on leading off two parts of its surface to a galvanometer the needle (or in the string galvanometer, the string) usually

moves, this indicates that the two parts of the muscle are not in the same state of electrical potential, and therefore a current flows when the two parts are connected by a conducting wire, the most marked result is obtained when the longitudinal surface is connected with one or other of the cut ends as in fig 28 This is *the current of injury*, an injured portion of a muscle, such as the cut end, resembles the zinc in a zinc-copper cell, and is therefore *galvanometrically negative* in contrast to the uninjured centre The longitudinal uninjured surface thus corresponds to the copper of a Daniell cell, and the electrode attached to it is the positive pole, it may therefore be spoken of as *galvanometrically positive* This is indicated in the diagram by the + and − signs, and the direction of the current is shown by arrows

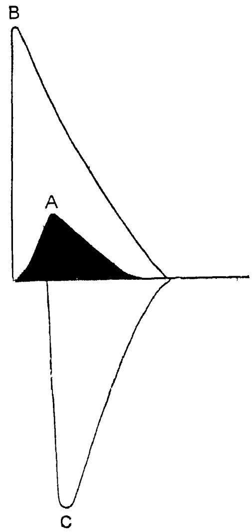


FIG 31 — The photographic electrometer curve of the diphasic variation, and its interpretation A is the actual record obtained from the electrometer, B and C indicate the changes of potential which must have occurred to produce A

Du Bois Reymond further demonstrated that when the injured muscle showing its injury current was made to contract tetanically, a current was set up in the opposite direction which caused the galvanometer needle to return towards its previous position This lessening of the injury current he spoke of as the *negative variation*, but it is now more usually termed the *current of action* The essential cause of the current of action is that active portions of a muscle become (like injured portions) galvanometrically negative in contrast with the portions of the muscle which are at rest

The electrical change during a twitch is called a *diphasic variation* The contracting part of a muscle becomes first more negative (galvanometrically), it then rapidly returns to its previous condition The change indicates a disturbance of the stability of the tissue, its disappearance is the result of a return of the muscular tissue to a state of rest If the muscle is stimulated at one end, a wave of contraction travels along it to the other end The electrical variation travels at the same rate as the visible contraction, but precedes it

Suppose two points (*p* and *d*) of the muscle (fig 32) are connected by non-polarisable electrodes to a string galvanometer, and that the muscle-wave is started by a single stimulus applied at A, just before the visible wave reaches *p* this point becomes galvanometrically negative to *d*, and therefore a current flows from

d to *p* through the galvanometer G. A moment later the two points are equi-potential and no current flows; a minute fraction of a second* later this balance is upset, for when the wave reaches the point *d*, that point undergoes the same change, and the galvanometer needle moves in the opposite direction.

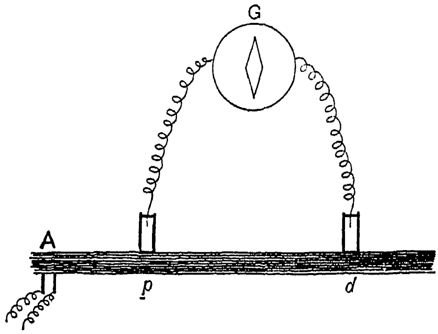


FIG. 32.

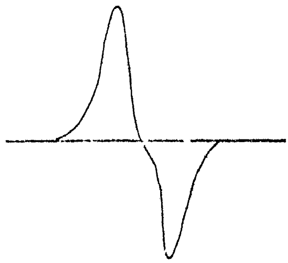


FIG. 33.—Diphasic curve of the normal sartorius. (After Keith Lucas.)

If, however, instead of examining the electrical change in the muscle in the manner depicted in fig. 32, one electrode is placed on the uninjured surface and the other on the cut end, the electrical response is a different one.

Under these conditions, the electrical change is a *monophasic variation*, for when the muscle-wave reaches the cut end, this part

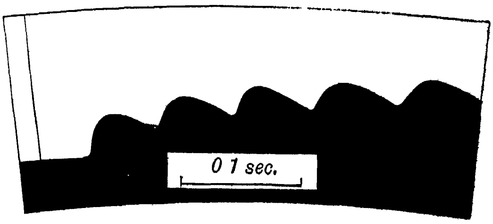


FIG. 34.—Record of injured sartorius during tetanus, taken by capillary electrometer. (Burdon Sanderson.)

of the muscle, owing to its injured state, does not respond to the excitatory condition, and the electrical response is also extinguished. If the muscle is thrown into tetanus a series of monophasic variations is produced (fig. 34).

The employment of instruments of precision, like the capillary electrometer and string galvanometer, has enabled investigators to ascertain the time of onset and duration of the electrical disturbance; this precedes the actual shortening of the muscle, occurring

* The time varies with the distance between *p* and *d*.

chiefly during the latent period, and it is completed long before the visible contraction is over This is well shown in the next diagram (fig 35) in which the muscle curve (M) is seen with its accompanying electrogram taken with the string galvanometer

Muscle is not the only tissue which exhibits electrical phenomena A nerve which is uninjured is iso-electric, injury causes a current of injury, activity is accompanied by a similar diphasic

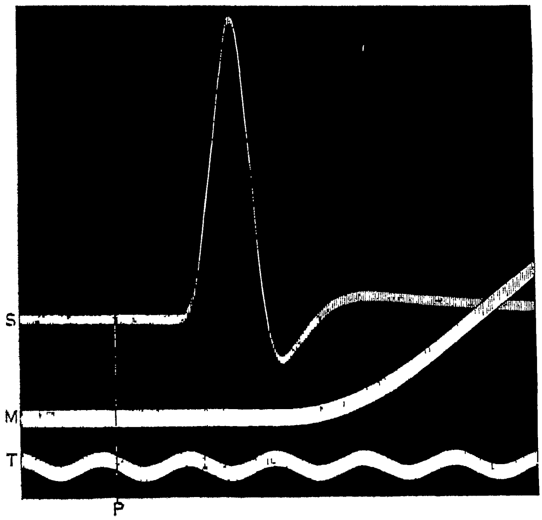


FIG 35 —Frog's gastrocnemius stimulated by an induction shock at P, applied to the sciatic nerve T is the time tracing marking $\frac{1}{100}$ sec M is the tracing of the myograph lever, and the beginning of the simple muscle curve is seen after the usual latent period S is the diphasic electrical response described by the string of a string galvanometer, this occurs during the latent period of the muscle (After Samojloff)

wave travelling along the nerve simultaneously with the nervous impulse. The activity of secreting glands, vegetable tissues, retina, etc, is accompanied with somewhat similar electrical changes, which we shall study in detail later

But the most prominent exhibition of animal electricity is seen in the electric organs of electric fishes In some of these fishes the electric organ is modified muscle, in which a series, as it were, of hypertrophied end-plates corresponds to the plates in a voltaic pile In other fishes the electric organ is composed of modified skin glands But in each case the electric discharge is the principal phenomenon that accompanies activity

Galvani's contraction without metals If the nerve of a nerve-muscle preparation A is held by a glass hook upon another muscle B (fig 36) or upon its own muscle, it will be stimulated by the

injury current of the muscle on which it is held, and this leads to a contraction of the muscle (A) which it supplies The experiment succeeds best if the nerve is dropped across a longitudinal surface and a freshly made transverse section

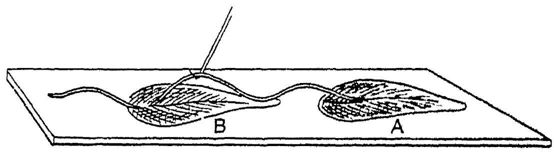


FIG 36 —Galvani's experiment without metals

Secondary contraction This is caused by the current of action If, while the nerve of A is resting on the muscle B (fig 37), the latter is made to contract by the stimulation of its nerve, the nerve of A is stimulated by the electrical variation which accompanies

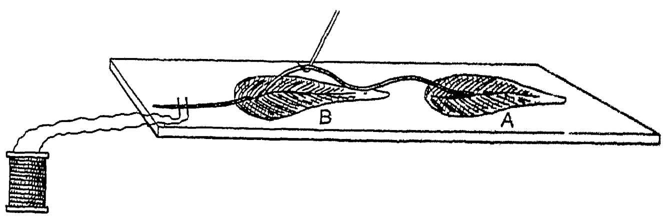


FIG 37 —Secondary contraction (After Waller)

the contraction of the muscle B, and so a contraction of muscle A is produced This is called *secondary contraction* It may be either a secondary twitch or secondary tetanus, according to whether the muscle B is made to contract singly or tetanically

Secondary contraction from the heart If an excised but still beating frog's heart is used instead of muscle B, and the nerve of A laid across it, each heart's beat, accompanied as it is by an electrical variation, will stimulate the nerve and cause a twitch in the muscle A It is interesting to remark that a nerve-muscle preparation is thus a most delicate detector of electricity and is sometimes called the *physiological rheoscope*

Chemical Changes in Muscle

The junior student who is not familiar with organic chemistry may omit this section at this stage

It has long been known that when a muscle is made to contract acid is produced For example, if frog's muscle is tetanised it

becomes acid to litmus This acid has been shown by the application of certain colour tests to be sarcolactic, and it was suspected by early workers that its accumulation was in part at least responsible for fatigue in isolated muscle It was evident also that increased respiration occurred during muscular work, but it was not until 1902 that Fletcher demonstrated that an increased amount of carbon dioxide was produced if a muscle was stimulated in oxygen Following on this came the classic observations of Fletcher and Hopkins, who found that the accumulation of lactic acid in stimulated muscle was increased by the absence and decreased by the presence of oxygen, and finally it was shown that although a muscle would contract in the absence of oxygen, it would not recover These observations have been the starting-point of a large amount of work, for it is evident that the lactic acid is a breakdown product present in muscle Some also have suggested that in some way the acid may be responsible for the active contraction, but the discovery of Lundsgaard, that if a muscle is poisoned with iodo-acetic acid which prevents the formation of lactic acid it will still contract, has shown that the rôle of lactic acid is secondary

The work of Eggleton indicates that it is the creatine-phosphate (which he calls phosphagen) rather than the lactic acid which plays the most important part The phosphagen breaks down into creatine and phosphate when a muscle contracts in the absence of oxygen, but when oxygen is present the phosphagen is rapidly resynthesised during recovery, the energy for the resynthesis being derived from the combustion of lactic acid

This acid is derived from glycogen According to Embden, glycogen is probably first resolved into lactacidogen or hexose phosphate, a compound of glucose with dipotassium phosphate Hexose phosphate in turn forms lactic acid If a prolonged contraction is made to take place in absence of oxygen, as in an excised frog's muscle kept in an atmosphere of nitrogen, lactic acid accumulates whilst glycogen diminishes proportionately, energy is set free, and appears partly in the form of heat If the muscle is subsequently allowed to rest, there is no disappearance of lactic acid and merely a small additional amount of heat is evolved If, however, during the period of rest oxygen be admitted, then a fraction of the lactic acid produced during contraction ($\frac{1}{5}$ of the total amount produced) is oxidised to carbon dioxide and water according to the equation $C_3H_6O_3+3O_2 = 3CO_2+3H_2O$ This leads to the liberation of energy, part of which is used to rebuild the remaining lactic acid into its precursor, part appearing as heat This "recovery" heat, as it is called, is half as great again as the heat set free during contraction, compared with it the heat liberated after contraction in absence of oxygen is

insignificant It is important to note that the function of oxidation is to store up energy for future activity During contraction in oxygen and therefore during contraction in the intact body, if not too violent, breakdown and reconstruction of the precursors of lactic acid proceed simultaneously, but oxidation is always secondary to the initial breaking-down If the contractions of muscles are at all violent, as in exercise, the production of lactic acid is always occurring more rapidly than its restoration, so that an "oxygen-debt" is contracted, which has to be wiped out during the resting period which follows (Hill) During exercise, moreover, the muscles lose some of their lactic acid to the blood, so that there is an increased output of lactates in the urine Thus during rest in man, only 4 milligrammes of lactic acid is excreted in the urine per hour, this is raised by severe exercise a hundredfold The lactic acid is neutralised by the proteins and alkaline salts

That carbohydrate is the chief source of muscular energy is shown by the fact that the respiratory quotient $\frac{CO_2 \text{ given out}}{O_2 \text{ retained}}$ (see p 288) during the *total* period of exercise and recovery is unity. If, however, the exercise is prolonged the respiratory quotient may be less than unity, showing that substances other than carbohydrates, notably fat, can be used During the period of actual exercise the respiratory quotient is often greater than unity, this is especially true of severe exercise, and is to be explained by the increased breathing which causes carbon dioxide to be swept out in unduly large amounts The increased breathing is due to lactic acid entering the blood and presumably raising its H-ion concentration (Hill, Long, and Lupton) Conversely, during the recovery period the R Q may fall below unity because of the retention of carbon dioxide in the body (*See* Reaction of the Blood)

Fatigue of Muscle (See p 87)

Thermal Changes in Muscle

A muscle when uncontracted may not be at absolute rest, chemical changes occur in it, and consequently heat is produced There is a transformation of the potential energy of chemical affinity into other forms of energy, especially molecular motion and heat But when muscle contracts, the liberation of energy is increased, work is done, and more heat is produced, the heat produced represents more of the energy than the work done

On a cold day one keeps oneself warm by exercise; in fact the body

temperature may go up temporarily 1° to 2° as a result of muscular activity

For the detection of small rises in temperature, a *thermopile*, and not a thermometer, is employed

A thermopile consists of a junction of two different metals such as antimony and bismuth, the metals are connected to a galvanometer If one junction is heated and the other not an electrical current passes round the circuit and is detected by the galvanometer If the number of junctions in the circuit is increased, and one set is heated, the electrical current is increased through the galvanometer The arrangement is shown in fig 38

Needle-shaped couples may be plunged into the muscles In

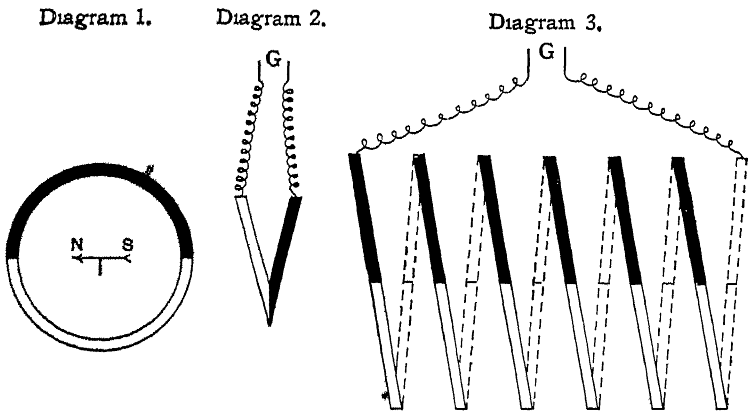


FIG 38 —Diagrams to illustrate the principle of thermopiles

modern work the muscles may be laid on a number of junctions in series and wound round a vulcanite support, and the apparatus enclosed in a chamber such as a thermos flask to prevent heat loss (Hill)

In the thermopile of A V Hill, the combination used is copper or other metal and an alloy known as constantan (an alloy of copper 60 per cent and nickel 40 per cent) By employing a large number of such junctions in connection with a mirror galvanometer, it is possible to measure the heat produced even in such small muscles as a frog's sartorius, the amount of deflection by known quantities of heat being subsequently determined The responses of this delicate instrument are recorded photographically and are so immediate, that it is also possible to ascertain the time when the heat formation occurs

The important result has been obtained that not only is heat produced during the mechanical response (initial heat), but also after (recovery heat) The latter is associated with the processes which accompany recovery and requires the presence of oxygen, but the initial heat like the contraction is produced independently of the presence of oxygen The amount of heat is approximately proportional to the duration of the stimulus and to the tension produced If a muscle is not allowed to shorten when it contracts all the energy expended appears as heat, but if it is allowed to contract at an optimum rate (see p 41) to prevent loss due to viscosity practically all the initial heat appears as work and it has been calculated that the mechanical efficiency of muscle is about 40 per cent

An ordinary locomotive wastes about 96 per cent of its available energy as heat, only 4 per cent being represented as work In the best triple-expansion steam-engine the work done rises to 12 5 per cent of the total energy

Thus muscle is more economical than the best steam-engines, but the body has this great advantage over any engine, for the heat it produces is not wasted, but is used for keeping up the body temperature, the fall of which below a certain point would lead to death, not only of the muscles but of the body generally

In most engines much heat is lost and is so much wasted energy In the body the heat is of value to maintain metabolic processes

Rigor Mortis

After death, the muscles gradually lose their irritability and pass into a contracted condition This affects all the muscles of the body, and usually fixes it in the natural posture of equilibrium or rest The general stiffening thus produced constitutes *rigor mortis* or *post-mortem rigidity*

The cause of rigor is the coagulation of the muscle-plasma, which is more fully described in the next section This coagulation results in the formation of *myosin*, and is gradual in onset Simultaneously: (a) *the muscles become shortened and opaque*, (b) *heat is evolved;* (c) *the muscles give off carbonic acid*, and (d) *become acid in reaction* (this is due in part to the formation of sarcolactic acid, and in part to the formation of acid phosphates), (e) *glycogen disappears*

After a varying interval, the rigor passes off, and the muscles are once more relaxed This sometimes occurs too quickly to be caused by putrefaction, and there is very little doubt that it is really the first stage in the self-digestion or *autolysis* which occurs in all tissues after death, owing to the presence of intra-

cellular enzymes or ferments It is known that a pepsin-like or proteolytic enzyme is present in muscle, as in many other animal tissues—kidney, spleen, etc (Hedin)—and that such enzymes act best in an acid medium The conditions for the solution of the coagulated myosin are therefore present, as the reaction of rigored muscle is acid

Order of Occurrence—All the muscles are not affected simultaneously by rigor mortis It affects the neck and lower jaw first, next, the upper extremities, extending from above downwards, and lastly, reaches the lower limbs, in some rare instances it affects the lower extremities before, or simultaneously with, the upper extremities It usually ceases in the order in which it begins first at the head, then in the upper extremities, and lastly in the lower extremities It seldom commences earlier than ten minutes, or later than seven hours after death, and its duration is greater in proportion to the lateness of its accession

The occurrence of rigor mortis is not prevented by the previous existence of paralysis in a part, provided the paralysis has not been attended with very imperfect nutrition of the muscular tissue In a deeply narcotised, *e g* chloralosed, animal the onset of rigor mortis is much delayed, and the tissues may remain excitable for long periods (Hemingway and McDowall) It has been observed by Hoet and Marks that in animals dying after prolonged thyroid feeding or after hypoglycæmic convulsions there is no increased acidity of the muscle, yet rigor occurs, it is suggested that the disappearance of glycogen rather than increased acidity is responsible for the production of rigor mortis, although in ordinary rigor both occur together Rigor occurs most readily in fatigued muscles, *e g* of hunted animals, in which the glycogen content is low and the acidity high

Chemical Composition of Muscle

The general composition of muscular tissue is —

Water		75 per cent
Solids		
Proteins	18 per cent	25 per cent
Gelatin, Fat	2 to 5 ,,	
Extractives	0 5 ,,	
Inorganic salts	1 to 2 ,,	

The extractives comprise a large number of organic substances, all present in small quantities, some of which are nitrogenous, such as creatine, creatinine, xanthine, and hypoxanthine the rest are non-nitrogenous—namely, fats, glycogen, glucose, inositol, and the variety of lactic acid known as sarcolactic acid The inorganic salts are chiefly salts of potassium, especially potassium phosphate

By fractional heat coagulation and studies of solubilities in neutral salt solutions Halliburton separated several proteins from muscle plasma—

Paramyosinogen a globulin which coagulates at 47° C.
Myosinogen a globulin-like protein which coagulates at 56 C.
Myoglobulin precipitated by heat at 63° C

In addition there are albumin and myoalbumin, nucleoprotein from the nuclei, and hæmoglobin from the blood which, with similar pigments, *e g* cytochrome, give muscle its red colour If a muscle be heated in saline while attached to a lever it is seen to go into complete heat rigor in stages corresponding to these coagulations This shows that proteins of plasma are in the actual muscle substance

The spontaneous coagulation of muscle known as *rigor mortis*, which occurs at death, is the result of changes in the paramyosinogen and myosinogen This coagulation of muscle protein corresponds to and is affected by almost the same conditions as the coagulation of the blood, except that myosinogen passes through a soluble stage during which it is coagulated at 40° C

CHAPTER VI

COMPARISON OF VOLUNTARY AND INVOLUNTARY MUSCLE

THE main difference between voluntary and involuntary muscle is the difference expressed in their names Voluntary muscle is under the control of that portion of the central nervous system whose activity is accompanied by volition Involuntary muscle, plain and cardiac, on the other hand, is, as a rule, also under the control of a portion of the central nervous system whose activity is independent of volition There appear, however, to be exceptions to this rule, and involuntary muscle may execute its contractions independently of nervous control

Another characteristic of involuntary muscle is a tendency to regular alternate periods of rest and activity, or *rhythmicality* This is best exemplified in the heart, but it is also seen in the lymphatic vessels, especially the lymph hearts of the frog, and the mesenteric lymphatic vessels (lacteals) of many animals Rhythmical contraction is seen in the veins of the bat's wing, and in the muscular tissue of the spleen, stomach, intestine, bladder, and other parts

Under the influence of certain saline solutions,* voluntary muscles may be made artificially to exhibit rhythmic contractions

The important characteristic of most plain muscle is *peristalsis* If any point of a tube of smooth muscle such as the small intestine is stimulated, a ring-like constriction, preceded by a wave of relaxation, is produced at this point After lasting some time at this spot it slowly passes along the tube at the rate of 20 to 30 millimetres per minute This advancing peristaltic wave normally takes place in one direction only, and so serves to drive on the contents of the tube The best stimulus to peristalsis is stretching of the muscle, and therefore bulky contents of the tube act as stimuli

Involuntary muscle nearly always contains numerous plexuses of non-medullated nerve-fibres with ganglion cells, so that much discussion has taken place on the question whether the phenomena of rhythmicality is a property of the muscular tissue itself or of the nerves mixed with it The evidence available (namely, that

* If one end of the sartorius of a curarised frog is dipped into *Biedermann's fluid*, it contracts rhythmically in a manner analogous to the heart. This fluid has the following composition —Sodium chloride 5 grams, alkaline sodium phosphate 2 gr, sodium carbonate 0 5 gr, water 1 litre

The phenomena of *rigor mortis* in involuntary muscle have not been so fully studied as in voluntary muscle It has, however, been shown that the chemical composition of involuntary muscle differs in no noteworthy manner from that of voluntary muscle, and on death the muscle becomes acid, such products as carbonic acid and sarcolactic acid are formed In the heart, stomach, uterus, and rectum, *post-mortem* rigidity has been noted, and it probably occurs in all varieties of plain muscle

The structure of cardiac muscle gives it very important physiological properties which are more properly studied later in relation to the heart

CHAPTER VII

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

The Structure and Function of a Nervous System

HOWEVER simple, or however complicated, the nervous system throughout the animal kingdom exists for the purpose of co-ordinating and adapting the activities of the animal to its environment, and for the internal regulation of the mechanisms of its body

A nervous system, therefore, consists essentially of afferent nerves which collect impulses from the outside world or from internal organs and transmit them to the centres, of intermediate or connecting fibres, and of efferent nerves which distribute impulses to the different parts of the body

The degree of development of the nervous system in different animals varies enormously according to their needs It is relatively simple in the lower animals which are not endowed with much power of complicated movement, while it is very elaborate in the higher animals in which there is adaptation to a vast variety of circumstances and activity

In each instance, however, the basal anatomical unit is the same, namely, the **neurone**, that is the nerve-cell and its processes or nerve-fibres which form what we call nerves By some of its processes the nerve-cell receives and by others sends out messages The processes of one cell form a **synapse** (literally *clasp*) or come into close contact with the processes of other cells, so that messages or nervous impulses may pass from one neurone to another

In order to permit an efficient interchange of impulses, certain nerve-cells and fibres have been collected together into large masses which constitute the **central nervous system** This system has been compared, very aptly, with the central telephone exchange of a town through which one part may be connected with any other This comparison is, however, very rough as it does not take into account consciousness, which depends on the activity of the brain

In man, the central nervous system consists of the brain and spinal cord

Suppose one wishes to move the arm the efferent impulse starts in the nerve-cells of the brain, but there are no fibres that go

straight from the brain to the muscles of the arm. The impulse travels down the spinal cord, by what are called pyramidal fibres,

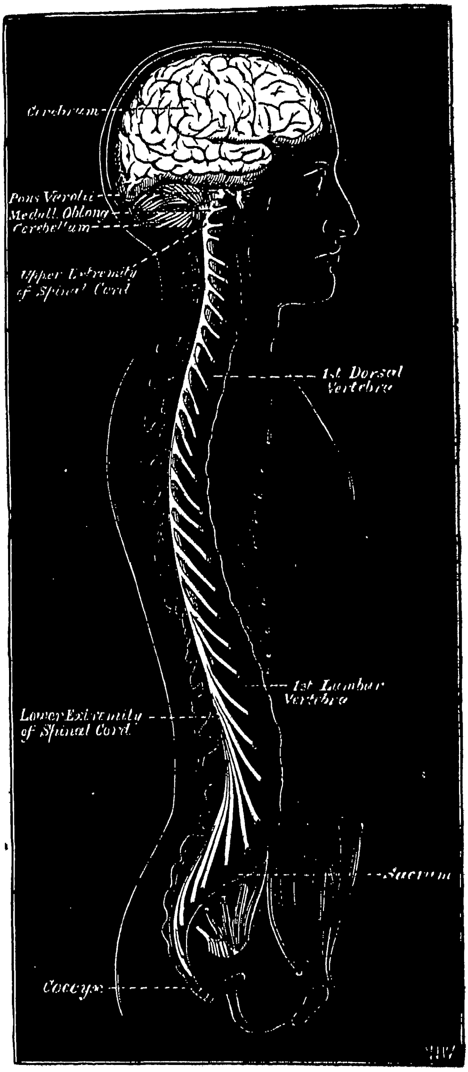


FIG 89 —View of the cerebro-spinal axis of the nervous system The right half of the cranium and trunk of the body has been removed by a vertical section, the membranes of the brain and spinal cord have also been removed, and the roots and first part of the fifth and ninth cranial, and of all the spinal nerves of the right side, have been dissected out and laid separately on the wall of the skull and on the several vertebræ opposite to the place of their natural exit from the cranio-spinal cavity. (After Bourgery)

which form synapses with the nerve-cells of the spinal cord, from these cells fresh nerve-fibres carry the impulse to the arm-muscles The path is shown in the accompanying diagram (fig 40) The cell of the motor cortex of the brain is represented by C C, and its fibre (axon) by P F This passes into the white matter of the brain, and travels down the brain stem and spinal cord until it reaches the part of the cord which controls the arm movements, where it terminates by arborising round small cells (P C C) which form a second relay, thence the impulse is transferred to the large motor-cells (A C C) whose nerve-fibres pass out to the muscles There is as it were a system of relays by which the impulses are distributed to different parts of the body

One cell may, by means of its processes, be connected with several other cells For example, the cells in the spinal cord receive messages not only from the brain but also from other parts of the body (fig 40) If the finger is pricked an impulse is set up in an afferent nerve or process of a sensory cell and is transmitted to the spinal cord, whence it is relayed to the muscles which cause the arm to be withdrawn. This is known as a reflex act since it does not involve any conscious effort but occurs quite automatically

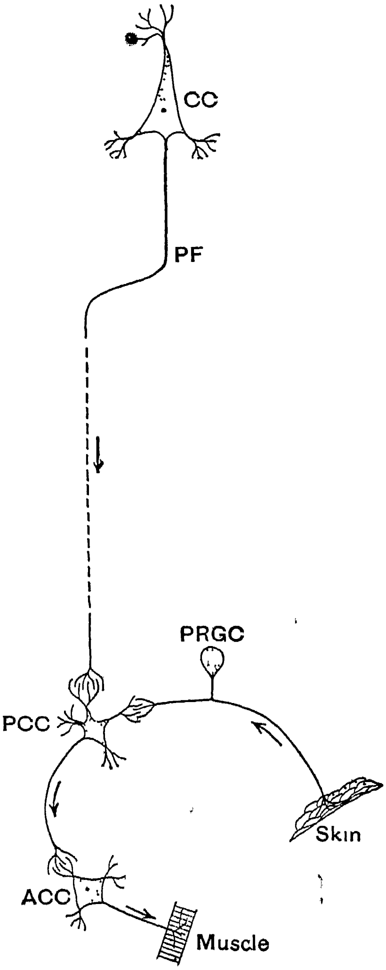


FIG 40 —Diagram of the neurone of the motor path

The nervous structures involved in such an act we call a **reflex arc**, and consist of a receiving organ and afferent nerve with its cell, an intermediate or connecting nerve and its cell, and an efferent cell and its fibre by which the impulse is sent out to the organ activated

We shall see that many of the activities of the body are brought about in this way and that the reflex may be looked upon as the **physiological unit** of the nervous system We shall

return to this subject later in considering the Central Nervous System, but meantime these facts must be kept in mind, since many of the processes of the body, *e g* the circulation of the blood, are largely controlled by such reflex mechanisms

Nerve-Cells

Nerve-cells differ both in shape and in size

In the early embryonic condition, the future nerve-cell is a small nucleated mass of protoplasm without processes As development

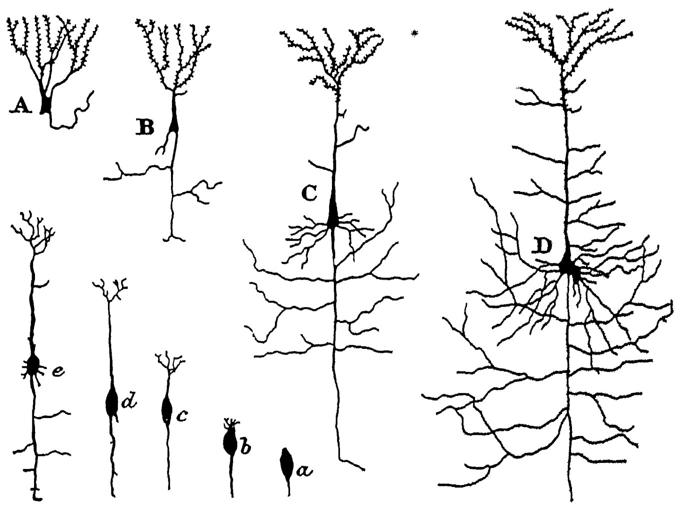


FIG 41 —Diagram after Ramon y Cajal to show the ontogenetic (or embryological) and phylogenetic (*i e* in the animal series) development of a neurone A, cerebral cell of frog, B, newt, C, mouse, D, man As the place in the zoological series rises, the neurone increases in complexity and in the number of points of contact, this complexity is produced partly by an increase of the dendrons, partly by an increase in the side branches or collaterals of the axon *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, show the early stages in the development of a similar cell in the human embryo, the first branch of the cell to appear (in *a*) is the axon, the dendrons are later outgrowths The reversal of this process takes place in primary degeneration

progresses branches grow, and by this means it is brought into contact with the branches of other nerve-cells (fig 41)

The simplest nerve-cells known are *bipolar* In the lower animals the two processes come off from the opposite ends of the cells, the cell, in other words, appears as a nucleated enlargement on the course of a nerve-fibre (fig 42, A) The cells of the Gasserian and spinal ganglia in the mammalian embryo are also

bipolar, but as development progresses, the two branches become fused for a considerable distance, so that in the fully-formed animal each cell appears to be *unipolar*

The majority of nerve-cells are *multipolar,* and have many much-branched processes or *dendrons* which bring impulses to them, but only one process, the *axon,* becomes the axis cylinder of a nerve-fibre and carries messages away (see figs 40 and 41)

By Golgi's chromate of silver method the cells and their fibres stain an intense black, and the collaterals of the axon are well seen

Fig 43 shows one of the typical multipolar cells of the spinal cord The cells have a finely fibrillar structure, and the fibrils can be traced into the axis-cylinder process and the other

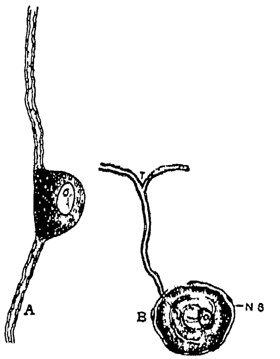


Fig 42 —Bipolar nerve cells A, from a spinal ganglion of a 4½ weeks' human embryo (after His) B, adult condition of the mammalian spinal ganglion cell N S nucleated sheath, only the nuclei seen in profile are represented. T, is the T shaped junction (After Retzius)

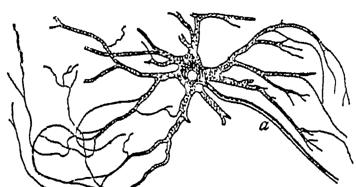


Fig 43 —Multipolar nerve cell from anterior horn of spinal cord, *a*, axis cylinder process (Max Schultze)

branches of the cell If a nerve-cell is stained with a basic aniline dye such as methylene blue there are seen *Nissl's granules,* which are considered by some to be intimately connected with the nourishment of the cells, since after fatigue they are absent and in the stained cell are represented by merely a diffuse blue haze (chromatolysis) Some writers consider Nissl's granules to be artifacts, it is more likely that even if they do not exist as definite granules in the living cell, they at least represent a precipitate produced by the action of fixatives on a pre-existing functional material

Nerve-Fibres

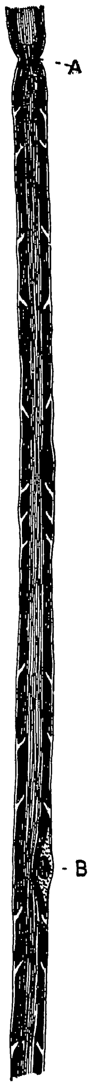


FIG 44 — Nerve fibre stained with osmic acid. A, Node, B, nucleus (Key and Retzius)

The term nerve-fibre is given to the long processes of nerve-cells They are of two histological kinds, *medullated* and *non-medullated*, but no reason for this differentiation has yet been discovered Many nerves contain both types, but the non-medullated fibres usually belong to the autonomic nervous system

The **medullated** or **white fibres** are characterised by a sheath of white colour, consisting mainly of lipoids, which stains black with osmic acid and is held together by a network of neurokeratin which suggests an ectodermal origin This *medullary sheath* covers the essential part of the fibre which is a process from a nerve-cell, and is called the *axis cylinder* Outside the medullary sheath is a thin homogeneous membrane of elastic nature called the *primitive sheath* or *neurolemma*

The axis cylinder is a soft transparent thread in the middle of the fibre, some observers believe it to be made up of exceedingly fine fibrils (fig 45), these stain readily with gold chloride *The medullary sheath* gives a characteristic double contour and tubular appearance to the fibre It is interrupted at regular intervals by the *nodes of Ranvier*, which show a cross-like arrangement if stained with silver nitrate. It is considered that the nodes may be of importance in regard to the nourishment of fibres, at this point also branching takes place The stretch of a nerve-fibre between two nodes is called an *inter-node*, and in the middle of each inter-node is a nucleus which belongs to the primitive sheath.

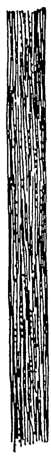


FIG 45 —Axis cylinder, highly magnified, showing its component fibrils (M Schultze)

The nerve which we see in an ordinary anatomical dissection is composed of a number of bundles or *funiculi* of nerve-fibres bound together by connective tissue The sheath of the whole nerve is called the *epineurium*, that of the funiculi the *perineurium*, that

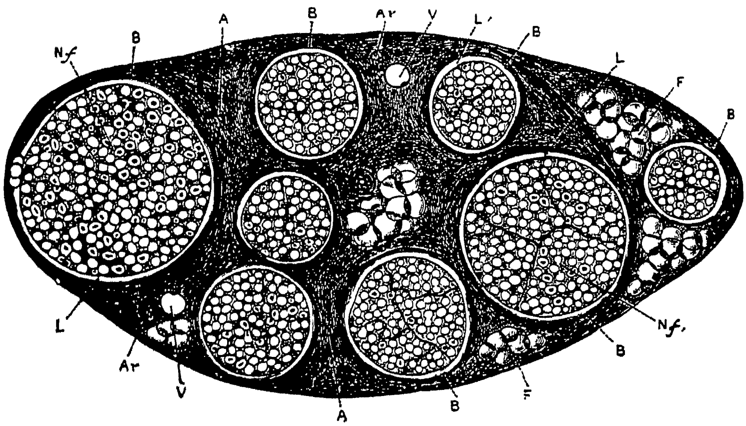


FIG 46 —Transverse section of the sciatic nerve of a cat, about × 100 It consists of bundles (*funiculi*) of nerve fibres ensheathed in a fibrous sheath or *epineurium*, A, each bundle has a special sheath (not sufficiently marked out fro[illegible] in the figure) or *perineurium* B, the nerve fibres N *f* are separated from one another by *endoneurium*, L, lymph spaces, Ar, artery, V, vein, F, fat Somewhat diagrammatic (V D Harris)

which passes between the fibres in a funiculus, the *endoneurium* (fig 46) Single nerve-fibres passing to their destination are surrounded by a continuation of the perineurium known as the *Sheath of Henle* The nerve trunks themselves receive nerve-fibres which ramify and terminate as end-bulbs in the epineurium

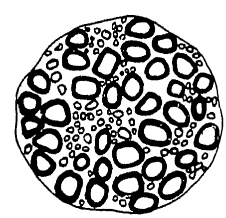


FIG 47 —Section across a nerve bundle in the second thoracic anterior root of the dog, stained with osmic acid (Gaskell)

The size of the nerve-fibres varies, the largest fibres are found in the spinal nerves, where they are 14·4 to 19 μ in diameter * Others mixed with these measure 1 8 to 3 6 μ These small nerve-fibres are the visceral nerves, they pass to collections of nerve-cells called the sympathetic ganglia, whence they emerge as non-medullated fibres, and are distributed to involuntary muscle The differences in diameter are well seen in sections stained by osmic acid, the black rings being the stained medullary sheaths (fig 47)

It is interesting that the majority of the fibres of the posterior roots are of the small variety, a fact which suggests a relationship between the sensory roots and the autonomic system

* μ = micro-millimetre = $\frac{1}{1000}$ millimetre

The **non-medullated fibres** have no medullary sheath, and are therefore devoid of the double contour of the medullated fibres

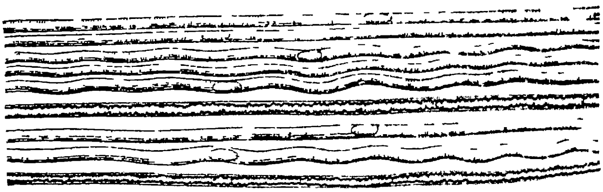


FIG 48 —Grey, or non medullated nerve fibres From a branch of the olfactory nerve of the sheep, two dark bordered or white fibres are associated with the pale olfactory fibres × 450 (Max Schultze)

Their appearance is unaffected by osmic acid They consist of an axis cylinder covered by a nucleated sheath They branch frequently, and are specially common in the autonomic nervous system

Termination of Motor Nerves in Muscle.

In the *voluntary muscles* the motor nerve-fibres have special end-organs called *end-plates* (fig 49) The fibre branches two or

FIG 49 —Motor end plates, chloride of gold preparation to show the axis cylinders and their final ramifications of fibrillæ × 170 (Szymonowicz.)

three times, and each branch goes to a muscle-fibre Here the neurolemma becomes continuous with the sarcolemma, the medullary sheath stops short, and the axis cylinder branches several times

In addition to the motor nerve-endings there are also sensory nerve-endings in muscle, but these will be dealt with later

In the *involuntary muscles*, the nerve-fibres, which are for the most part non-medullated, may reach the structures they supply by way of plexuses or networks of fibres as in the intestine (*q v*)

Neuroglia

The cells and fibres which make up the conducting systems of the central nervous system are laid down in and are held together by a supporting tissue of neuroglia This tissue is composed of

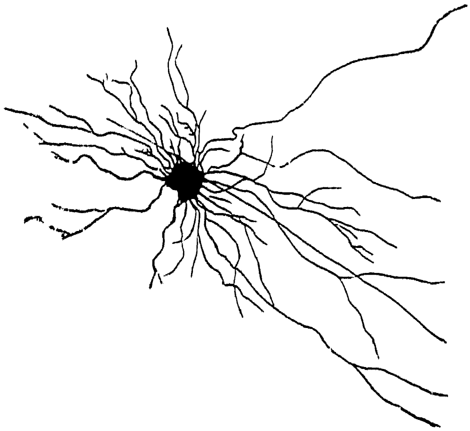


FIG 50 —Branched neuroglia cell (After Stohr)

multi-branched cells (fig 50), the innermost of which are fixed to ciliated epithelial cells which line the central canal of the spinal cord and the ventricles of the brain, those nearer the surface are attached to the pia mater, a membranous covering of the central nervous system

CHAPTER VIII

PHYSIOLOGY OF NERVE

Investigation of the Functions of a Nerve

THERE are two main methods by which the functions of a nerve may be ascertained (1) *section*, and (2) *stimulation*

Section.—If a nerve is cut the loss of function that ensues may be observed Thus, if a motor nerve is cut, motion of the muscles it supplies can no longer be produced by activity of the nerve-centre, the muscle is paralysed If a sensory nerve is cut, the result is loss of sensation in the part from which it comes

Stimulation.—In a cut motor nerve, stimulation of the central end (*i e* the end still connected with the central nervous system) produces no result, stimulation of the peripheral end produces a nervous impulse which excites the muscles to contract In a cut sensory nerve, stimulation of the peripheral end has no result, but stimulation of the central end causes a sensation, usually a painful one, and also reflex actions

Degeneration of Nerve

When a nerve is cut, there are other results than the loss of function just mentioned, for, even though the nerve is still left within the body with a normal supply of blood, it becomes less and less irritable, till at last it ceases altogether to respond to stimuli This diminution of excitability starts from the point of section and travels to the periphery, but is temporarily preceded by a wave of increased excitability travelling in the same direction (Ritter-Valli law)

The part left connected to the parent cell, usually in the central nervous system, remains healthy, but the peripheral end which is cut off from its source of nourishment undergoes what is called, after the discoverer of the process, *Wallerian degeneration* Those portions of the axis-cylinders which are cut off from their parent cells die and break up into fragments, the medullary sheath of each undergoes a process of disintegration into droplets of myelin, which are ultimately absorbed and removed by the lymphatics At the same time there is a multiplication of the nuclei of the

primitive sheath This degenerative process begins to be visible microscopically two or three days after the section has been made In the non-medullated fibres, there is no medullary sheath to exhibit the disintegrative changes just alluded to, and the nuclei

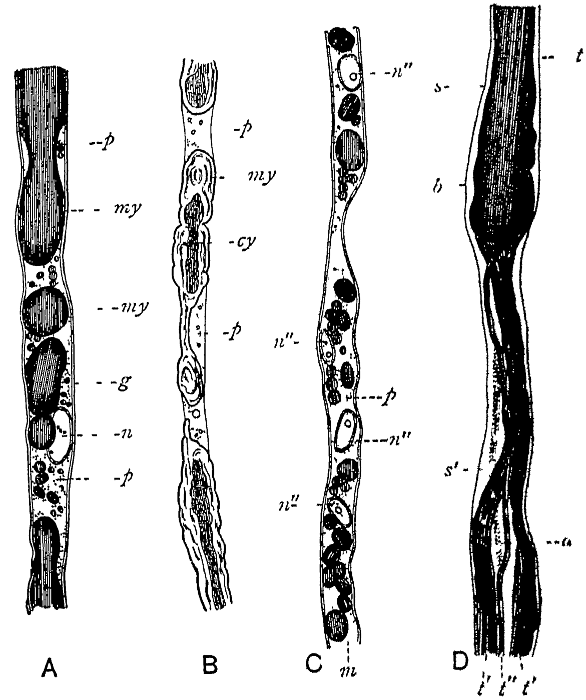


FIG 51 —Degeneration and regeneration of nerve fibres A, Nerve fibre, fifty hours after operation, *my*, medullary sheath breaking up into myelin drops, *p*, granular protoplasm, *n*, nucleus, *g*, primitive sheath or neurolemma B, Nerve fibre after four days, *cy*, axis cylinder partly broken up and enclosed in portions of myelin C, A more advanced stage in which the medullary sheath has almost disappeared, numerous nuclei, *n″*, are seen D, Commencing regeneration, several fibres (*t′*, *t″*) have sprouted from the somewhat bulbous cut end (*b*) of the nerve fibre, *a*, an axis cylinder which has not yet acquired its medullary sheath, *s*, *s′*, primitive sheath of the original fibre (Ranvier)

of the sheath do not multiply, there is simply death of the axis-cylinder The degeneration occurs simultaneously throughout the whole extent of the nerve Ranvier's original diagram is reproduced in fig 51 The myelin droplets may be stained black by osmic acid

Chemistry of Nervous Tissues

Nervous tissues contain 65 per cent to 85 per cent of water The first careful study of this subject we owe to Halliburton who showed that grey matter contained a smaller proportion of solid (16 5 per cent) than white matter (30 per cent) He showed that in the cerebral grey matter the percentage of protein in the solids was

highest (51 per cent) and consisted mainly of nucleo-protein Lipoids are also more abundant in non-medullated nerve than in medullated

In the former, as percentages of total solids, there occur cholesterol 47 per cent , lecithin 9 8 per cent , kephalin 23 7 per cent and galactosides 6 per cent Various salts and extractives are also present

When a nerve degenerates the solids become less and, after three weeks, a noticeable change is the disappearance of phosphorus

The **staining reactions of a degenerated nerve** indicate that the appearances are due to a breakdown not only in an anatomical sense, but in a chemical sense also Of these staining reactions the one most often employed is that which is associated with the name of Marchi This is the black staining which the medullary sheaths of degenerated nerve-fibres show when, after being hardened in Muller's fluid (a fluid of which potassium bichromate is the main constituent), they are treated with Marchi's reagent (a mixture of Muller's fluid and osmic acid) Healthy medullated nerve-fibres are blackened by osmic acid alone, in virtue of the phosphatides (lecithin, etc) in their medullary sheath , such phosphatides contain the oleic acid radical, and this unsaturated fatty acid is responsible for the black reaction (see p 304), after treatment with a chromic acid reagent they are not blackened, but only assume a greyish-green colour When, however, the fibres are degenerated the chemical breakdown of the myelin sheath (though not fully understood in all its details) is accompanied by an ability to reduce the osmic acid to a lower black oxide in spite of the previous treatment with chromic acid In the later stages of degeneration the Marchi reaction is not obtained, because the broken-down globules have by that time been absorbed

Regeneration of Nerve-Fibres

If a nerve is cut and allowed to heal, restoration of function occurs after the lapse of a variable time, which can be shortened if the cut ends of the nerve are sutured together This surgical assistance is of special importance when the nerve is a large one, for the formation of dense scar tissue between the ends is thus minimised The restoration of function is due to regeneration of nerve-fibres, which sprout out from the central end of the cut nerve and grow distalwards, replacing those which have degenerated The first new fibres to appear are of a much narrower diameter than those they replace, this is illustrated in fig 51, D Later the new fibres are larger It is obvious that a mass of dense scar tissue will hinder the successful growth of the nerve-fibres When regeneration does not take place, the central ends of the cut fibres and the cells from which they originate also undergo slow atropic changes (*disuse atrophy*)

It has been suggested that the new fibres really arise as a result of activity in the peripheral end, but the following facts are overwhelming in favour of the central origin of the new fibres —

(1) It is possible entirely to prevent reunion with the central end of a divided nerve by enclosing the free end of the peripheral segment in a cap of sterilised gutta-percha (Halliburton)

(2) Pieces of nerve may be transplanted under the skin, and in time a few fully-formed medullated fibres appear within the

degenerated bundle of fibres (Kennedy) These may be shown to come from adjacent nerves (Halliburton)

(3) The late appearance of the medullary sheath in those portions of the regenerating fibres which are most distant from the place where the nerve is originally cut and sutured, is a conclusive piece of evidence that the new nerve-fibres grew from the central end in a peripheral direction

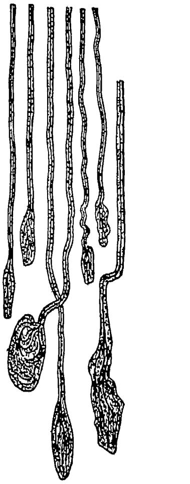


FIG 52 —Olive shaped swellings at the ends of nerve fibres growing distalwards from the central ends twenty one days after the nerve had been divided (Marinesco)

(4) If after the regeneration has taken place the nerve be cut again on the peripheral side of the original cut, degeneration takes place on the peripheral but not on the central side of the second cut (Halliburton and Mott)

(5) Histologically the outgrowing fibres with an olive-shaped swelling at the free end of each axis cylinder may be seen (fig 52) by Cajal's silver method

(6) Such outgrowths from nerve structures have been observed in embryonic tissues grown in lymph

It must not, however, be supposed that the peripheral end is entirely inactive, for while degeneration is progressing in the axons and their fatty sheath, an active multiplication of the cells of the primitive sheath or neurolemma is taking place These neurolemmal cells probably play a nutritive part towards the more important structures within them and prepare for the outgrowing fibres (Mott, Halliburton, Howell) Activity of the neurolemma is also particularly seen at the central termination of the cut nerve, *i e* the area which nourishes the growing fibres Moreover, the neurolemmal activity appears to be essential to regeneration In the white fibres of the central nervous system the neurolemma is absent, in this situation not only is the removal of the products of degeneration a very slow process, but regeneration does not occur

The Nerve Impulse.

Its Nature—When a nerve is stimulated the change produced in it is known as the nervous impulse this excitatory process travels along the nerve and the propagation of the change is evident from the effect which follows, *e g* sensation, secretion, movement, but the nature of the change produced in or on the nerve itself is, like the intimate nature of muscle contraction, unknown

It is, however, clear that, while there may be several superficial resemblances, a nerve is not merely a conductor of impulses, as a wire is of an electric current The most important fact which makes a simple physical view difficult is that conduction in a nerve apparently depends on some vital activity, and anæsthetics abolish conduction Moreover, the velocity of the nerve impulse, which is much less than that of an electric current, is influenced by change of temperature much more than a purely physical process would be (Maxwell, Keith Lucas) At the same time it should be said that there is an increasing volume of evidence, which suggests that the conduction may be a physical process superimposed on a vital structure (the nerve), which, however, ceases to conduct as soon as the chemical processes on which its vitality depends are interfered with, *e g* if it is deprived of oxygen Some believe that the nerve impulse stimulates the muscle by virtue of its action current, but there are many views on the physical processes concerned

It is important to emphasise that whatever the nature of the nerve impulse, the impulse is self-propagating, somewhat like the combustion in a train of gunpowder when ignited. Adrian has shown that if the conductivity of a nerve be locally damped down by placing a segment in a bath of dilute alcohol, the impulse as soon as it reaches an undamped region flares up to its original strength as judged by its effect on the attached muscle or the extent of the electrical change set up (see below) The effect of such a procedure depends on the length of nerve narcotised The larger the bath the more likelihood is there of the impulse being extinguished altogether (Kato) The power of a nerve to conduct is abolished by freezing, by CO_2 and anæsthetic vapours, and by the passage of a constant current which presumably acts by setting up a movement of ions in a given direction

The Changes which occur in Nerve during Activity —These are chemical, electrical, and thermal, as in muscle

The Electrical Change—The current of action of nerve may be demonstrated by means of non-polarisable electrodes and a string galvanometer It has the usual diphasic characteristic and its degree may be taken as an indication of the strength of the impulse It is propagated along the nerve at the same velocity as the impulse.

Chemical Changes—The idea that there was definite respiration in nerve was first advanced by Waller, and all subsequent work has confirmed his suggestion It has been shown that small amounts of carbon dioxide are produced and that for continued activity oxygen is necessary Like muscle, nerve can function for a time in the absence of oxygen, and although, for nerve, this period is

considerable it is not unlimited If the nerve be tetanised in an atmosphere of CO_2 or an inert gas, it ceases to conduct, but it recovers with extreme rapidity when again exposed to oxygen or air During the inactive period not only the physiological response, *e g* the contraction of muscle, disappears, but also the electrical change Both, however, return with the return of the other signs of activity Anæsthetics, which dissolve in the lipoids, of which the nerve is largely composed, appear to act by stopping oxidative processes

Thermal Changes—It is only recently that it has been possible to demonstrate the small amount of heat produced by nerve, its presence had been assumed because of the chemical changes A V Hill succeeded in doing this, using a thermopile with 300 constantan (an alloy of copper and nickel) and silver junctions and capable of recording changes of less than a millionth of a degree of temperature The effect is intensified by placing a bundle of nerves on the thermopile and utilising an extremely delicate galvanometer system He found evidence of heat production, not only during the conduction of the impulse but also during the recovery period, as in muscle The heat production in some of the nerves of crabs has been found to be relatively large.

Effects of Stimulation —Excitability and conductivity are appreciably influenced by stimulation, and Waller, who first made the suggestion, considered the effect to be due to the small amount of CO_2 produced Until 0 015 of a second after stimulation the excitability of the nerve is decreased, indeed, for 0 003 sec it will not respond at all (absolute refractory period) It gradually becomes more and more excitable and after 0 015 sec it may actually become hyperexcitable (supranormal phase), which state lasts until 0 1 sec after stimulation, when the nerve is again normal

The relative *absence of fatigue* in a nerve, as in the heart, is probably due to the fact that it is not acting continuously but intermittently and during the resting period, although this is extremely short, it is able to recover It is interesting to note that, as would be expected from the large heat production, crab nerve is fatigued comparatively quickly (Hill) An experiment to demonstrate the relative unfatigability of nerve is given on p 90

These facts in relation to excitability give us an idea of the maximum number of impulses which can pass along a nerve in a given time The production of a supranormal phase suggests a reason why a succession of subminimal stimuli may eventually evoke and propagate an impulse which will give rise to sensation or reflex action

Velocity of a Nerve Impulse.

The velocity of a nerve impulse may be measured, in motor nerves, by the method first used by Helmholtz a muscle-nerve preparation is made with as long a nerve as possible, the nerve is stimulated, first as near to the muscle and then as far from the muscle, as possible The moment of stimulation and the moment of commencing contraction are recorded by muscle-tracings on a rapidly moving surface provided with a time-tracing When the nerve is stimulated at a distance from the muscle, the contraction begins later than it does after the first stimulation, and the difference between the two is the time occupied in the passage of the impulse along the intervening piece of nerve, the length of which is known

The most accurate method is that of Bernstein, who takes the electrical change as the indication of the impulse A stimulus is applied to one end of a long nerve, and the change in the electrical condition of the nerve is recorded by a galvanometer connected to the other end of the nerve The time between the application of the stimulus and the galvanometric reply is measured

The velocity of the nerve impulse has, by such experiments, been found to vary with temperature, and to be approximately the same in both motor and sensory nerves, but in the latter instance the electrical method only is available In cold-blooded animals it is slower than in warm-blooded animals In the frog, for instance, at ordinary room-temperature it averages **27 metres per second** In man, at normal body-temperature it is **120 metres per second**

Direction of a Nerve Impulse

Nerve impulses are normally conducted in only one direction in efferent nerves from, in afferent nerves to, the nerve-centres But some experiments suggest that conduction may under certain conditions take place in both directions Thus, in the galvanometer experiment just described, if the nerve is stimulated in the middle instead of at one end, the electrical change (the evidence of an impulse) is found to be conducted towards both ends of the nerve

A nerve impulse can, however, only pass in one direction across a synapse that is only from axon to dendron This property it has been suggested depends on the exact nature of the endings of the fibrils

Crossing of Nerves.

Some experiments designed to prove the possibility of nervous conduction in both directions were performed many years ago by Paul Bert He grafted the tip of a rat's tail either to the back of the same rat, or to the nose of another When union had been

effected, the tail was amputated near its base After a time, irritation of the end of the trunk-like appendage on the back or nose of the rat gave rise to sensation The impulse thus passed from base to tip, instead of from tip to base, as formerly This experiment does not, however, prove the point at all, for all the original nerve-fibres in the tail must have degenerated, and the restoration of sensation was due to new fibres, which had grown into the tail Exactly the same objection holds to another series of experiments, in which the motor and sensory nerves of the tongue were divided and united

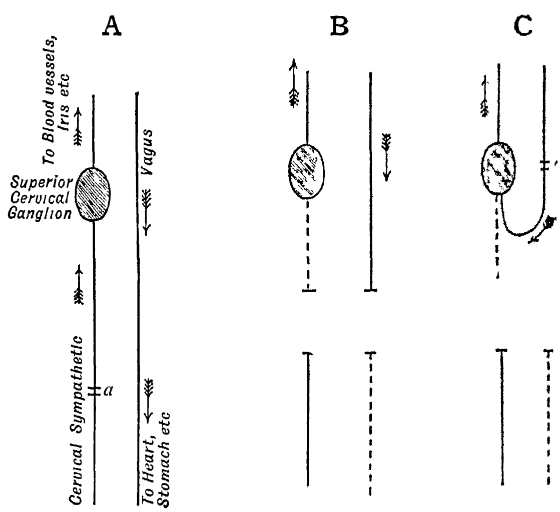


FIG 53 —Diagram to illustrate Langley's experiment on vagus and cervical sympathetic nerves In A, the two nerves are shown intact, the direction of the impulses they normally carry is shown by arrows, and the names of some of the parts they supply are mentioned In B, both nerves are cut through The degenerated portions are represented by discontinuous lines In C, the union described in the text has been accomplished, and stimulation at the point a' now produces the same results as were in the intact nerves (A) produced by stimulation at a

crosswise Restoration of both movement and sensation does occur, but is due to new nerve-fibres growing out from the central stumps of the cut nerves

Though these experiments do not prove what they were intended to, they are of considerable interest Kennedy later carried out a very careful piece of work on this question of nerve-crossing He cut in a dog's thigh the nerves supplying the flexor and the extensor muscles, and sutured them together crosswise. Regeneration of structure and restoration of function occurred as quickly as when the central ends were united to the peripheral ends of their own proper nerves On examining the cortex of the brain in those animals in which nerve-crossing had been accomplished, it was

found that stimulation of the region which in a normal animal gave flexion, now gave extension of the limb, and *vice versa*

A series of equally important experiments was carried out by Langley, in which he showed that the nerves that supply involuntary muscle behave in the same way These nerve-fibres will, under certain experimental conditions, terminate by arborising round other nerve-cells than those with which they normally form connections (synapses) * It will be sufficient to give one typical experiment If the vagus nerve is cut across in the neck, its peripheral end degenerates downwards, if the cervical sympathetic is cut across below the superior cervical ganglion, its peripheral end degenerates upwards, as far as the ganglion If subsequently the central end of the cut vagus is united to the peripheral end of the cut sympathetic, in the course of some weeks the vagus fibres grow into the sympathetic and form synapses round the cells of the superior cervical ganglion, and stimulation of the united nerve now produces such effects as are usually obtained when the cervical sympathetic is irritated, for instance, dilatation of the pupil, raising of the upper eyelid, and constriction of blood-vessels of the head and neck (fig 53)

Such experiments as these are important because they show that though the action of nerves may be so different in different instances (some being motor, some inhibitory, some secretory, some sensory, etc), what occurs in the nerve trunk itself is always the same, the difference of action is due to difference either in the origin or distribution of the nerve-fibres The familiar illustration in which nerve trunks are compared to telegraph wires, is a helpful one The destination of a certain group of telegraph wires may be altered, and the alteration may produce different consequences at different places, the electric change in the wires would, however, be the same throughout So the nerve impulse is always the same sort of molecular disturbance, if it is made, as in the experiment just described, to go by a wrong channel, it produces just the same results as though the impulse had reached its destination by the usual channel

The Effect of Electric Currents on Excitability and Conductivity.—These effects are of some interest as they may throw a light on the problem of the nature of the nerve impulse

If a constant current of about 2 volts is passed through a nerve and the excitability of the nerve tested by placing a pair of stimulating electrodes close to the positive (the anode) and to the negative (the kathode) wires, it is found that in the region of the anode the nerve is unexcitable, while in that of the kathode it is

* The meaning of the term "synapse" is fully explained in Chapter VII (p 65)

hyperexcitable These conditions are known as anelectrotonus and katelectrotonus respectively If then constant current is passed through a nerve the nerve ceases to conduct (Bernstein) because of the area of anelectrotonus at the anode Use is commonly made of this fact in physiological experiments as such a nerve-block is equivalent to nerve section with the advantage that it is only temporary

This effect on a nerve must not be confused with the momentary stimulation of a nerve which may occur the moment the circuit is made or broken according to the strength of current used and the position of the electrodes At the make the stimulating electrode is the kathode, but at the break the stimulating electrode is the anode, facts of some importance in relation to reaction of degeneration (see below) in which the excitability is altered

Reaction of Degeneration—When the nerve to a muscle becomes injured or impaired the excitability of the muscle is for a short period increased but later exhibits certain changes which appear to indicate a reduced excitability

When the nutrition of the nerves is impaired, much stronger currents of both the induced and constant kinds are necessary to evoke muscular contractions than in the normal state When the nerves are completely *degenerated* (when, for instance, they are cut off from the spinal cord, or when the cells in the cord from which they originate are themselves degenerated, as in infantile paralysis) no muscular contraction can be obtained on stimulating the nerves even with the strongest currents

When the motor nerve is degenerated and will not respond to any form of electrical stimulation, the muscle also loses all its power of response to currents of very short duration such as those produced by an induction coil The nerve-degeneration is accompanied by changes in the nutrition of the muscle-fibres, as is evidenced by their rapid wasting, and their failure also to respond to rapid induced currents A weaker constant current, however, stimulates the muscle in the normal state, because the muscle-fibres themselves are in a state of irritable weakness, but the contraction is propagated more slowly than when the nerve-fibres are intact There is, moreover, a qualitative as well as a quantitative change In health the first contraction to occur on gradually increasing the strength of the current is at the negative pole, when the circuit is closed (Pfluger's law), and a stronger current is required before closure-contraction occurs at the positive pole But in the morbid state we are discussing, closure-contraction may occur at the positive pole more readily than at the negative pole, *i e*, A C C is greater than K C C *

* A C C = Anodal closing contraction K C C = Kathodal closing contraction

The reaction of degeneration is of considerable importance in medical and surgical diagnosis as it is a convenient objective method of demonstrating whether or not the nerve supply to a muscle is intact The sluggish reaction to a constant current is specially characteristic of degeneration which does not appear for some time after voluntary movement is lost These changes are developed after a week or ten days, but after a longer period of months the muscles lose their power of contracting altogether Gradually the muscles themselves degenerate and waste away

Fatigue.

If the muscle of a nerve-muscle preparation be stimulated frequently, the muscular contractions become more prolonged, smaller in extent, and finally cease altogether This can be demonstrated by making the muscle write a curve with every revolution of a recording cylinder, until it ceases to contract at all Fig 54 shows the result. At first the contractions improve, each being a little higher than the preceding, this is due to the *beneficial effect of contraction* Then the contractions get less and less But what is most noticeable is that the curves are much more prolonged the latent period is longer, the period of contraction longer, and the period of relaxation very much longer This condition is known as *contracture*, and the original base-line may not be reached by the time the next stimulus arrives In the last stages of fatigue, contracture passes off Contracture is often absent in fatigue of mammalian muscle

Fatigue of muscle stimulated directly is due to the consumption of the substances available for the supply of energy in the muscle, but more particularly to the accumulation of waste products of contraction; of these sarcolactic acid is the most important Fatigue may be artificially induced in a muscle by supplying it with a weak solution of lactic acid, and may then be removed by washing out the muscle with salt solution containing a minute trace of alkali If the muscle is in the body, the blood-stream washes away part of the accumulation of acid products, the remainder is oxidised or resynthesised and fatigue passes off

When a nerve-muscle preparation has been fatigued by stimulation through the nerve it is found that the muscle will still contract if stimulated directly, and this raises the question whether the nerve or the nerve-ending is the seat of the fatigue That the nerve is not fatigued may be shown by the following experiment A temporary block is applied to the nerve between the point of stimulation and the muscle For blocking a piece of ice or a galvanic current (see p 86) may be used The nerve is now

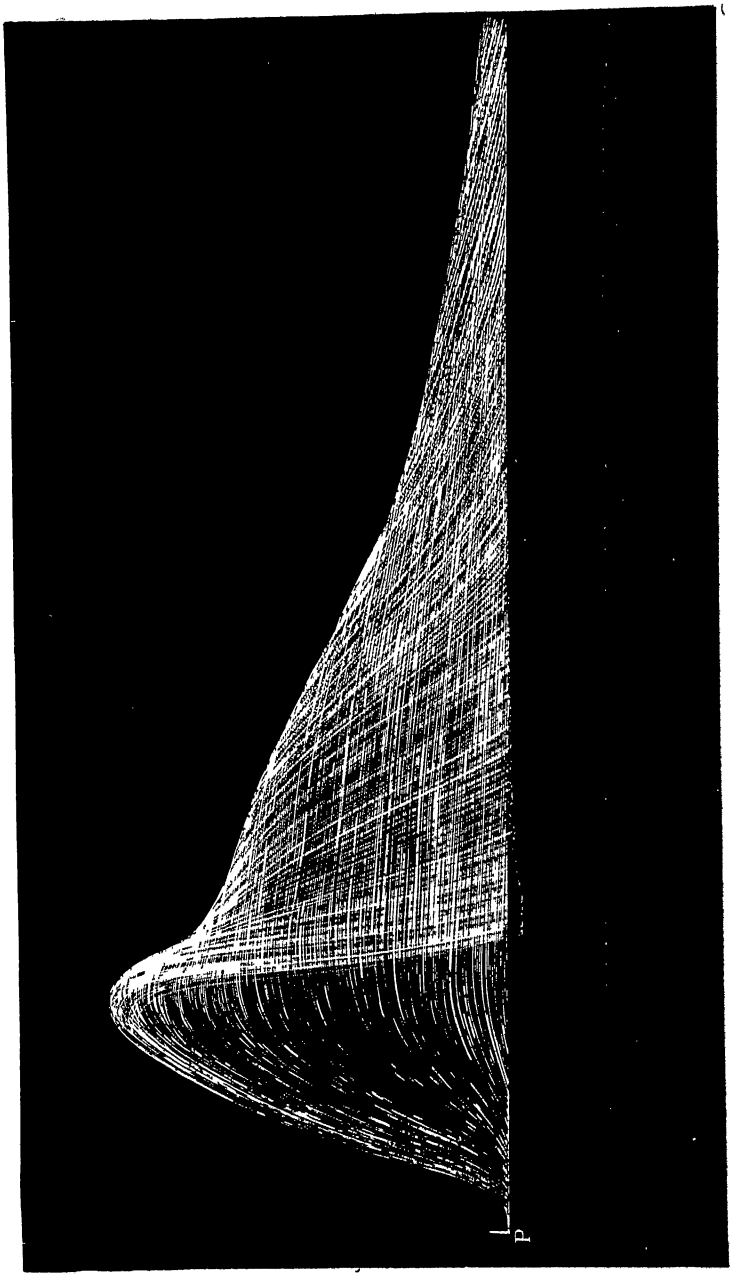


Fig 54.—Fatigue. P is the point of stimulation, the time-tracing shows hundredths of a second In this experiment the muscle was weighted to prevent the occurrence of contracture

stimulated for a period much longer than that which would be necessary to cause fatigue if contraction were occurring During such a period the nerve, if fatigable, must have become fatigued, but it is found that immediately the block is removed the nerve conducts quite normally

It used to be concluded from the above experiments that, since neither the nerve nor the muscle have been fatigued, the **seat of fatigue** must be in the nerve-endings The work of Lapicque, however, suggests that the muscle has changed its irritability (pp 26-27) and therefore can no longer be excited by impulses which pass down the nerve—although it can be excited by stronger stimuli such as are produced by an ordinary induction coil We are thus reminded that the impulse which passes down a nerve may, for reasons indicated on p 82, bear no relation to the strength of the stimulus applied to the nerve

The action of curari, the South American arrow poison, is now believed to be due to similar change in the excitability of the muscles so that they cannot be stimulated through their motor nerves When the muscles of respiration become affected and cease to act death occurs

Fatigue of Voluntary Movement

When the muscle is fatigued in the intact body, there is another factor to be considered beyond local poisoning

By the use of the ergograph (Mosso, Waller), it has been shown

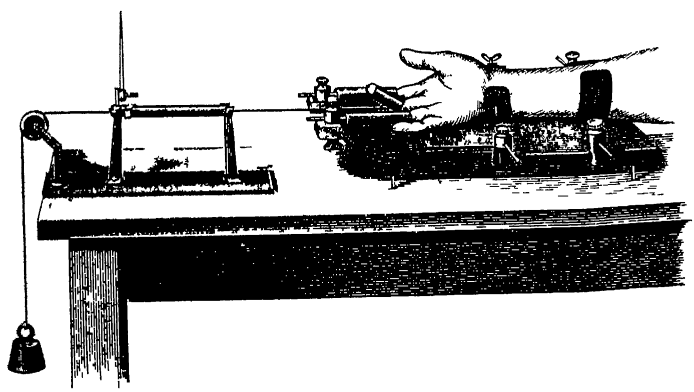


FIG 55 —Mosso's Ergograph This illustrates quite well the principles of the apparatus It has since been greatly improved in accuracy by various modifications

that the state of the brain and central nervous system generally is an important factor in fatigue

One of the most striking of Mosso's experiments illustrates in a

very forcible manner the fact that the central nervous system is more easily fatigued than muscle A person goes on lifting a weight as shown in the figure, until, under the influence of the will, he is unable to raise it any more If then, without waiting for fatigue to pass off, the nerves going to the finger muscles are stimulated artificially by induction shocks, the muscles once more enter into vigorous contraction

Mosso has also shown that the introduction of the blood of a fatigued animal into the circulation of a normal one will give rise in the latter to all the symptoms of fatigue, for the blood of the fatigued animal contains the products of activity of its muscles

It may be that the "fatigue" occurs in central synapses is a result of the formation of fatigue products locally or the exhaustion of central cells It has also been shown that if the circulation through the limbs is obstructed the liability to fatigue is not so much increased as might have been expected It has therefore been suggested (Reid) that something of the nature of a central inhibition results from impulses which pass up from the active muscles themselves It appears that normally we are capable of using only a certain proportion of the muscle-fibres at one time, because inhibitory impulses are set up by the pressure on the sensory nerve-endings, the muscle spindles of the muscles, and pass into the central nervous system (Denny Brown) The excessive strength which can be exercised by a madman or individual under severe stress may in part be due to his bringing into use more fibres than can be used normally

Rest Pauses—It may be shown on an isolated muscle or by means of the ergograph that it is not economical to fatigue a muscle to its limit and that to get the maximum work out of a muscle in a given time there should be rest pauses The pauses should, as far as possible, be evenly distributed

A good example is quoted by Myers If in an ergograph experiment the finger makes 30 contractions in 60 seconds with a certain load, two hours' rest is necessary for complete recovery If, on the other hand, the finger makes 15 contractions in 30 seconds with the same load a rest of only half an hour is necessary Hence in a two-hour period of work the second arrangement would give double the output of work

These facts which were extensively applied in munition works during war time have a wider application to industrial work generally, as they not only give more leisure to the worker but increase the quantity and quality of the work done Experiments on the learning of poetry by students, and on rats learning to get out of a maze, suggest that it is probable that the necessity for rest pauses applies to mental work also

CHAPTER IX

THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM

STUDENTS unfamiliar with elementary anatomy should read the section on the spinal cord before reading this chapter

It must be clearly understood that the autonomic nervous system is part of the general nervous system with which it works in close harmony It is described separately partly for purposes of convenience and partly because it controls certain automatic bodily activities, *e g* the circulation and digestion, over which we have no voluntary control Anatomically the system is peculiar in that the neurones of which it is composed have synaptic junctions in ganglia outside the central nervous system Moreover, the action of certain drugs appears to be related to this system rather than to the nervous system as a whole

In the chapters which immediately follow, we shall be studying the organs which carry on the vegetative functions of life as it was formerly the custom to call them It is therefore desirable that, at the outset, we should obtain some general idea of the nervous mechanism involved in controlling and regulating these functions

The autonomic nervous system is divided into at least two parts which are anatomically, pharmacologically, and physiologically more or less distinct This distinction is convenient, but it must be understood that there is no real distinction in regard to function

1 **The sympathetic** which arises from the first thoracic to the third lumbar anterior nerve-roots of the spinal cord

2 **The parasympathetic** arises in connection with certain cranial nerves, the thoracic nerves,* and second, third, and fourth sacral anterior roots of the spinal cord

In addition some authors (*e g* Langley, Gaskell) distinguish the **enteric system** which consists of ganglia and plexuses in the wall of the intestine, but these are intimately associated with the sympathetic and parasympathetic, particularly the latter

(*A*) THE SYMPATHETIC SYSTEM PROPER. It must be understood nothing more than the origin of this system has so far been established There is much evidence that the controlling fibres pass down from the brain, probably from the hypothalamic region In the spinal cord they have been found passing down in the lateral

* Prior to inclusion of these nerves in the parasympathetic, this group was known as the cranio-sacral autonomic

columns From their origin in the lateral horn of the spinal cord, the axons leave by way of the anterior roots of the spinal nerves from the first thoracic to the third lumbar segments inclusive The axons separate from the anterior roots as the white rami communicantes and join a chain of ganglia, or collections of nerve-cells, the sympathetic chain, situated on each side of the vertebral column These ganglia correspond roughly with the spinal segments from the coccygeal, or lowest, ganglion upwards, and are joined together by connecting fibres In the upper part, however, the ganglia corresponding to the upper four thoracic roots are fused to form the large stellate ganglion and the upper four cervical are fused to form the superior cervical ganglion. In man, the lower cervical ganglia form the middle and inferior cervical ganglia, but in many animals, *e g* the cat and dog, the latter is fused with the stellate

From these vertebral ganglia fibres are distributed in two main directions, to the spinal nerves and to the collateral or prevertebral ganglia, such as the cœliac from which the cœliac plexus takes origin, the superior mesenteric, and the inferior mesenteric from which the hypogastric nerves arise From these outlying ganglia fibres pass to the terminal ganglia and nerve plexuses in connection with thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic viscera Some of the fibres in the lower thoracic region which leave the lateral chain to supply the outlying ganglia of the abdomen join together to form large trunks known as the splanchnic nerves

From the ganglionic chain arise also fibres known as the grey rami, because of their colour These join the spinal nerves, and are distributed with those nerves to structures such as blood-vessels, muscles of the hairs, and sweat glands It will be noticed that, although the white rami arise only from certain spinal roots, the grey rami return to each of the spinal nerves from the nearest ganglion of the lateral chain

The impulses that pass to the involuntary musculature of the body arise in the central nervous system, and travel to the ganglia of the autonomic system by means of fine medullated nerve-fibres, the diameter of these fibres varies from 1 8 to 3 6 μ, the fibres therefore contrast with the motor fibres which pass to voluntary muscles, the diameter of these being 14 to 19 μ (see fig 49, p 72) There is a further contrast between them the motor fibres to voluntary muscles pass uninterruptedly from the central nervous system until they terminate in the end-plates of the muscles The autonomic fibres, on the other hand, terminate by arborising round cells in one or other of the autonomic ganglia, and from the ganglion cells a fresh relay of nerve-fibres carries on the impulse to the involuntary muscles There is thus an extra cell-station or synaptic

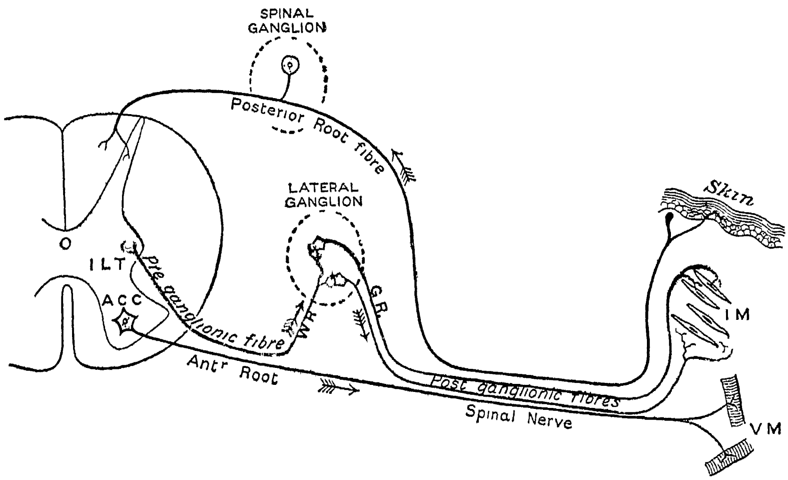


FIG 56 —Diagram of the autonomic path in the spinal region A C C, anterior cornual cell giving rise to a large motor nerve fibre which is distributed to voluntary muscle (V M) I L T, a small cell of the intermedio lateral tract giving rise to a small medullated nerve fibre which leaves the cord by an anterior root, and leaves the anterior root by the white ramus (W R), it terminates by arborising round cells in a ganglion of the sympathetic chain From these cells fresh non medullated axons continue the impulse, and return to the spinal nerve by the grey ramus (G R) being finally distributed to involuntary muscle fibres (I M) The pre-ganglionic path is coloured red, the post ganglionic blue To complete the diagram, a posterior root-fibre is also shown with its parent cell in a spinal ganglion See also fig 106 Post ganglionic fibres arising in the lateral ganglion and passing to outlying ganglia or organs are not shown

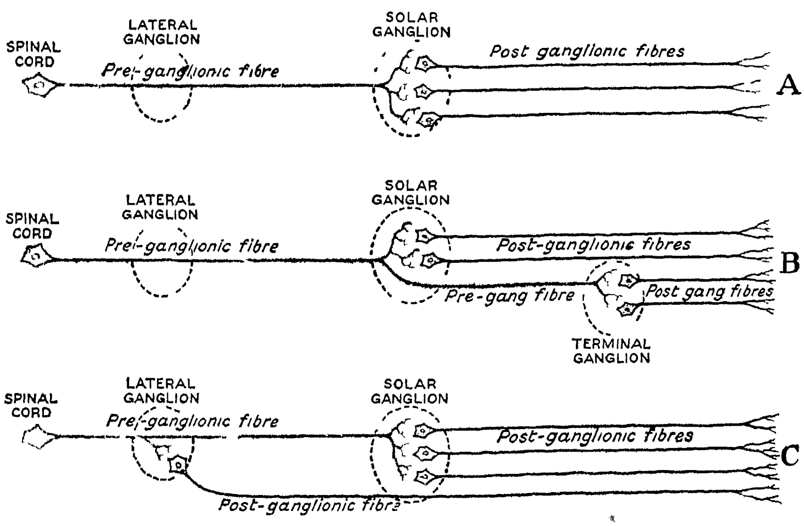


FIG 57 —Arrangement of pre and post ganglionic fibres in splanchnic and inferior splanchnic nerves (After Langley)

junction altogether outside the central nervous system The autonomic path, in other words, consists of two neurones one from the central nervous system to the ganglion, and a second from the ganglion to the peripheral tissue The first axon is termed the *pre-ganglionic fibre*, the second, the *post-ganglionic fibre* The pre-ganglionic fibres are medullated ones, and the post-ganglionic fibres are usually non-medullated, but there are exceptions to this rule

The general arrangement of such nerves is represented in fig 56

The cell-station of any particular pre-ganglionic fibre is not necessarily situated in the first ganglion to which it passes, the fibres of the white ramus communicans of the second thoracic nerve, for instance, do not all have their cell-stations in the second thoracic ganglion, but may pass upwards or downwards in the chain to a more or less distant ganglion before they terminate by arborising round its cells It therefore follows that fibres that leave any given spinal nerve by its white ramus, do not necessarily return as post-ganglionic fibres by the grey ramus to the same spinal nerve, although, for the sake of simplifying the diagram, they are represented as doing so in fig 56

Furthermore, there are many fibres of the white rami which enter the lateral chain of ganglia and pass through them without communicating with their cells at all, and never return to the spinal nerves by grey rami They pass out of the lateral chain to either collateral or even terminal ganglia before reaching their cell-stations, whence the post-ganglionic fibres emerge This is the case for the sympathetic supply of the blood-vessels and involuntary muscle fibres of the thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic viscera, and is therefore true for such important nerves as the cardiac accelerators and the splanchnics

Fig 57 shows the course of the splanchnic fibres, and will help the student to grasp this method of distribution

The great majority are arranged as in A, that is to say, they have their cell-stations in the solar [cœliac] ganglion Comparatively few are arranged as in B, where some fibres do not reach their cell-stations until they arrive at the terminal ganglion situated in the walls of the viscus (for instance, the pancreas) to which they are distributed A few possibly are arranged as in C, with a cell-station for some of their branches in the lateral sympathetic chain

It will be noticed that if any post-ganglionic fibre is traced backwards, there is one and only one cell-station between the central nervous system and the ultimate distribution of the nerve-fibres

Elucidation of these facts we owe largely to the use of **the nicotine method** originally introduced by Langley and Dickinson, and employed since by Langley mainly in conjunction with H K Anderson

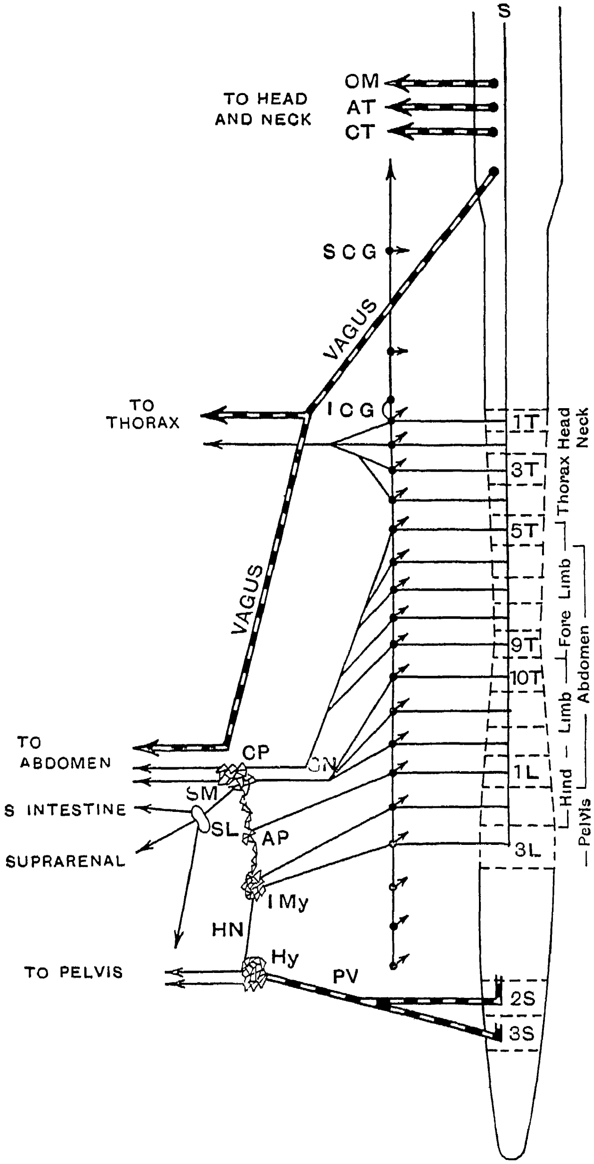


FIG 58.—Diagram of the Autonomic Nervous System, showing its origin from the Central Nervous System The small arrows from the ganglionic chain indicate branches to limbs, trunks, etc Spinal parasympathetic fibres are not shown OM, oculo motor, AT, auriculo temporal, CT, chorda tympani, SCG, sup cervical ganglion, ICG, inf cervic gang, CP, coeliac plex, SN, splanchnic nerves, SM, sup mesenteric plex, AP, aortic plex, IMy, inf mesenteric plex, HN, hypogastric nerve, Hy, hypogastric plex, PV, pelvic nerve

D

the spinal nerves for distribution to the blood-vessels of the body wall, to the muscles which erect the hairs (pilo-motor nerves), and to the sweat glands of the skin

(*B*) THE PARASYMPATHETIC The parasympathetic consists of fibres which arise from certain cranial, spinal, and sacral nerves

1 *Fibres which arise from the mid-brain*—These emerge by the third nerve, the pre-ganglionic fibres pass to the ciliary ganglion, the post-ganglionic, arising from the cells of this ganglion, run in the short ciliary nerves to supply the intrinsic muscles of the eye-ball (sphincter iridis and ciliary muscle)

2 *Fibres which arise from the medulla oblongata*—These emerge by the following nerves —

(*a*) Seventh and ninth nerves These supply the blood-vessels with vasodilator fibres and also the secreting glands in the nose and mouth region The ganglia on the course of these fibres are the spheno-palatine, otic, submaxillary, and sublingual ganglia Some of these fibres (for instance, those in the chorda tympani) get bound up with branches of the fifth nerve, and are distributed with them

(*b*) Tenth and eleventh nerves These are distributed by the branches of the tenth or vagus nerve to the œsophagus, stomach, and small intestine, to the bronchial muscles, to the heart, and to the gastric and pancreatic secretory mechanism Here our knowledge of the localisation of the cell-stations is not so exact as it is in other parts, some of the fibres appear to have their cell-stations in the ganglion on the trunk of the vagus, but in many cases they do not become post-ganglionic until the terminal ganglia in the walls of the various organs mentioned are reached

3 *The spinal fibres and vasodilator nerves*—The knowledge that certain fine medullated fibres in the posterior spinal roots when stimulated cause vasodilatation, we owe chiefly to Bayliss although their presence had been noted by Stricker These fibres have been called *antidromic* because their impulses pass out against the general afferent stream of the posterior roots They have hitherto not been considered parasympathetic because their action, unlike that of other vasodilator nerves, is not abolished by atropine They are, however, the reciprocals of the vasoconstrictor nerves The fact that they really do belong to the parasympathetic system has recently been much emphasised by Kuré and his co-workers in Japan, who claim that these fibres have a motor action on the alimentary canal * Their view is supported by the work of Dale and Gaddum which indicates that vasodilator nerves act like the vagus by producing acetyl-choline, but in such a way that the action is not

* These experiments have not, however, been confirmed by independent observers

prevented by atropine Kuré suggests also that they exert a trophic function and that the degeneration of tissues and liability to infection such as is seen in bed-sores is due to the degeneration of these fibres It is considered that some of these parasympathetic fibres join the splanchnics with which they are distributed

4 *The sacral fibres*—The pre-ganglionic fibres emerge in the white rami of the second, third, and fourth sacral nerves They pass through the sacral ganglia of the lateral chain without forming connections with any cells there, and they pass on as the nervus erigens, or pelvic nerve, to join the pelvic plexus The fibres of this nerve supply vasodilator fibres to the external generative organs (whence its name), to the rectum and anus, and motor fibres to the musculature of the descending colon and rectum, they have their cell-stations in the small scattered ganglia of the pelvic plexus, or in terminal ganglia in the walls of the viscera they supply

The Enteric System and Terminal Ganglia—This term refers to the ganglia and network of fibres in the walls of the intestine (plexuses of Auerbach and of Meissner) These apparently act as local nerve centres controlling purely local activity, but there is reason to believe that both the sympathetic and the parasympathetic bring about their intestinal effects through these plexuses Other terminal ganglia are those in the walls of the heart, bladder, and other organs, but the evidence that these can act as local nerve centres is not convincing, they seem to act chiefly as cell-stations on the course of incoming fibres especially those of the vagus (*See* Control of Intestine)

General Function of the Autonomic Nervous System—Every organ of the body over which we have no voluntary control appears to be supplied with two sets of fibres—from the sympathetic and the parasympathetic—which have opposite functions The appreciation of this fact we owe largely to Gaskell, to whom, and to Langley, is due so much of our knowledge on the subject In Gaskell's nomenclature, the sympathetic or accelerator group of nerves is termed *katabolic,* as they are concerned with general increase of work and utilisation of energy in the various parts of the body, the parasympathetic group *anabolic,* as it is more intimately concerned with the processes which take place during bodily rest

While the statement is generally true it would probably be better to say that, while the sympathetic provides for the work of to-day the parasympathetic provides for the work of to-morrow For example in relation to the heart, it may be shown that the process of physical training which promotes the muscular efficiency of the heart increases parasympathetic activity, but during the performance of the exercise the sympathetic action is increased while parasympathetic action is decreased

The *sympathetic* may be looked upon as adapting the body to the needs of muscular activity By far its most important and certain functions are to increase the heart-rate and blood-pressure, to arrest the activities of the alimentary canal, and to mobilise glucose, while increased action of the *parasympathetic*, *e g* the vagus, causes slowing of the heart and increased activity, motor and secretory, of the alimentary canal and all its associated glands

In addition to the above, the sympathetic has many other detailed functions which may be enumerated it increases the capacity for muscular work, dilates the pupil and bronchi, constricts blood-vessels, causes the secretion of sweat, and brings about the erection of hairs

Most of the actions of the sympathetic are also brought about by the injection of adrenaline into the blood-stream, and by the accumulation of carbon dioxide in the body, and there is good reason to believe that in severe physical exercise the activities of the sympathetic, adrenaline, and carbon dioxide reinforce each other The apparent object of such a mechanism is to make available for the active muscles a maximum amount of oxygen-carrying blood, at the temporary expense of those parts of the body whose activity is not immediately required, *e g* the alimentary canal This arrangement makes it possible for the body to use its already accumulated store of potential energy without having recourse to its immediate environment for anything but oxygen, which it cannot store to any appreciable extent but which is normally always available in the atmosphere

The relationship of the sympathetic system to afferent impulses—As we have said, we must look upon the nervous system as acting reflexly Our knowledge of this subject is as yet very imperfect, but it is important to note that there is much evidence that stimulation of afferent nerves, *e g* the production of pain in man, or stimulation in anæsthetised animals, causes sympathetic activity, *e g* dilatation of the pupil, acceleration of the heart, and constriction of blood-vessels The fact suggests the possibility of a connection between the posterior root-fibres and the white rami Such a connection is still further emphasised by the facts that the posterior roots, unlike the anterior roots, contain a very large number of small (autonomic) fibres, and that the lateral ganglia and the posterior root ganglia are developed from the same mass of cells on the neural crest of the embryo, from which also is developed the medulla of the suprarenal gland, the hormone of which, as we shall see, also acts like the sympathetic

The exact mechanisms by which the sympathetic is called into operation have not yet been fully elucidated, but it is evident that its activity is specially related to ~~sensation and to afferent impulses~~

which may not reach consciousness. The effect of sensory stimulation may be looked upon as reflex in nature via the posterior roots and the rami communicantes. It is interesting to note that, although anæsthesia may abolish the connection between the posterior and the anterior roots, between the posterior root and the white ramus the connection is unaffected. It seems most probable that all the actions of the sympathetic are essentially reflex and depend on afferent impulses which reach the system from the external environment or internal structures.

The Afferent Fibres from the Viscera.—It will have been noticed that the autonomic nervous system, as described, is an efferent system; but, throughout the areas supplied, there are also afferent fibres which carry impulses into the central nervous system. We have, however, no means of differentiating these fibres from those of the general nervous system, and very few of their pathways have been accurately traced. Langley has, however, attempted to do this. He utilised the movements of a limb which occurred on stimulation of an afferent nerve. It can also be shown that in the chloralosed cat, appropriate stimulation of viscera may cause dilatation of the pupil and, from the effects of nerve section, the pathways may be traced (M'Dowall). It should perhaps be stated at this point that the viscera are not sensitive to all stimuli but only to tension and pressure. Speaking generally, it appears certain that the afferent paths are by the posterior roots of all the spinal nerves which receive grey rami from all the sympathetic ganglia. Of special interest are the afferent fibres from the heart which have now been shown to pass in by the posterior roots of the upper thoracic and lower cervical region. This subject is discussed later in relation to sensation.

The Action of Drugs on the Autonomic Nervous System.—These are important from the physiological point of view, since it is largely by the use of drugs that the activities of the autonomic nervous system have been elucidated. As they are dealt with later they need only be mentioned here.

Sympathetic: *stimulant*—adrenaline. *Paralysant*—ergotoxine and ergotamine. **Parasympathetic**: *stimulant*—pilocarpine, choline, and acetyl-choline. *Paralysant*—atropine.

Adrenaline and acetyl-choline are substances produced by the body itself and are known to be intimately concerned with its regulation; indeed, there is increasing evidence (see below) that the sympathetic and parasympathetic bring about their actions by producing these substances in the region of their nerve-endings.

Nicotine, as we have seen, paralyses both systems by acting on the synapses in ganglia. The other drugs act in the region of the nerve-endings. The evidence that they do not necessarily act

directly on nerve-endings is that they still continue to act after the nerve has been cut and become degenerated, indeed, the organ may be more sensitive than before This occurs, for example, in the case of the pupil, which becomes more sensitive to adrenaline after the sympathetic supply has been cut A suggested explanation is that there may be, between the actual nerve-ending and the organ, a receptive substance on which the drugs act (Langley)

The details of the action of the drugs are to be inferred from what has been said in relation to the general function of the autonomic nervous system, and are dealt with further in relation to the special systems of organs concerned

The Mode of Action of Autonomic Nerves—There is an increasing amount of evidence that the nerves of the autonomic nervous system do not act directly on tissues but by producing chemical substances in the region of their nerve-endings The first suggestion of such activity came from Loewi who found that, when the perfused heart is inhibited by stimulation of the vagus, a chemical substance is produced which will slow another heart perfused by the fluid which has passed through the first heart The exact conditions under which this experiment may be regularly successful have been worked out by Bain in Edinburgh, who has shown that the hydrogen ion concentration of the perfusion fluid is very important In relation to the sympathetic, Finkleman demonstrated that when a piece of intestine contracting rhythmically in a bath of oxygenated saline is inhibited by stimulating its attached splanchnic nerve, there passes into the saline a chemical substance like adrenaline, which inhibits the movements of another piece of intestine in the same bath Later on, Cannon brought forward evidence to show that, when blood-vessels are caused to constrict by nerves, a chemical substance is produced which acts like adrenaline on the heart

Vasodilatation by nerves has also been shown to be similarly produced Lewis has put forward evidence that the blisters of herpes (shingles), a condition due to inflammation of the posterior root ganglia, are caused by the production of a histamine-like, "H" substance in the skin (see capillaries), while Dale and Gaddum have recently found that the vasodilatation produced by stimulation of vasodilator nerves is due to acetyl-choline, and they explain the absence of action of atropine in such vasodilatation by the suggestion that the atropine cannot reach the acetyl-choline before it stimulates the muscle This substance is of great interest, as in larger doses it slows the heart, but is rapidly destroyed in the circulation

CHAPTER X

THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

THE circulatory system consists of the *heart*, the *arteries*, or vessels which carry the blood from the heart to other parts of the body, the *veins*, or vessels which carry the blood back to the heart again, and the *capillaries*, a network of minute tubes which connect the terminations of the smallest arteries to the commencements of the smallest veins

The Heart

This is the great muscular pump of the circulatory system It lies in the chest between the right and left lungs (fig 59), and is enclosed in a bag called the *pericardium* The pericardium consists

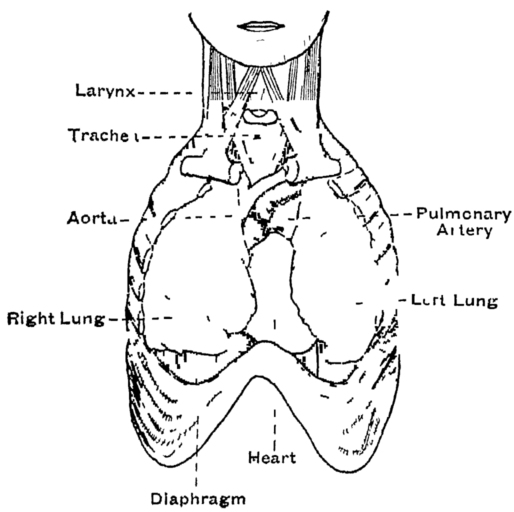


FIG 59 —View of heart and lungs *in situ* The front portion of the chest wall and the outer or *parietal* layers of the pleuræ and pericardium have been removed The lungs are partly collapsed

of two layers, one fibrous and one serous The inner serous layer becomes continuous with the serous covering of the heart or *epicardium*, the outer fibrous layer of the pericardium is attached below to the diaphragm, the partition between the thorax and

the abdomen The sac formed by the junction of the serous layer of the pericardium and the epicardium contains just enough

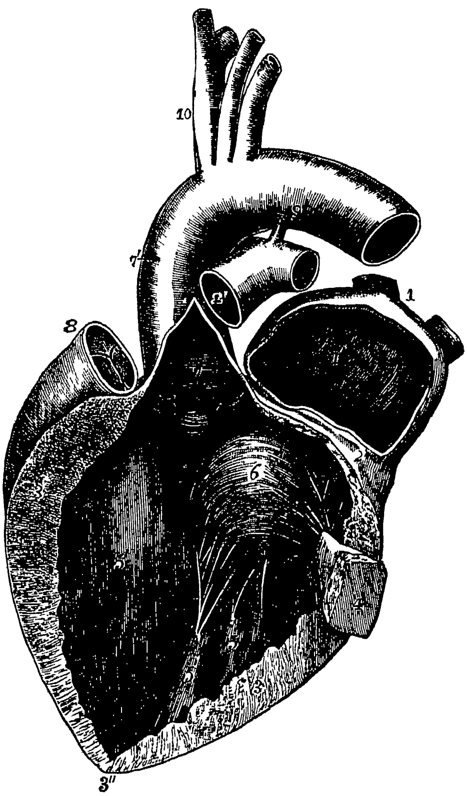


FIG 60 —The left auricle and ventricle opened and a part of their anterior and left walls removed ½ —The pulmonary artery has been divided at its commencement, the opening into the left ventricle is carried a short distance into the aorta between two of the segments of the semilunar valves, and the left part of the auricle with its appendix has been removed The right auricle is out of view 1, the two right pulmonary veins cut short, their openings are seen within the auricle, 1′, placed within the cavity of the auricle on the left side of the septum and on the part which forms the remains of the valve of the foramen ovale, of which the crescentic fold is seen towards the left hand of 1′, 2, a narrow portion of the wall of the auricle and ventricle preserved round the auriculo ventricular orifice, 3, 3′, the cut surface of the walls of the ventricle, seen to become very much thinner towards 3″, at the apex, 4, a small part of the anterior wall of the left ventricle which has been preserved with the principal anterior columna carnea or musculus papillaris attached to it, 5, 5, musculi papillares, 5′, the left side of the septum, between the two ventricles, within the cavity of the left ventricle, 6, 6′, the mitral valve, 7, placed in the interior of the aorta, near its commencement and above the three segments of its semilunar valve which are hanging loosely together, 7′, the exterior of the great aortic sinus, 8, the root of the pulmonary artery and its semilunar valves, 8′, the separated portion of the pulmonary artery remaining attached to the aorta by 9, the obliterated ductus arteriosus, 10, the arteries rising from the summit of the aortic arch (Allen Thomson)

lymph (pericardial fluid) to lubricate the two surfaces and enable them to glide over each other smoothly during the movements of

the heart The presence of numerous elastic fibres in the epicardium enables it to follow without hindrance the changing shape of the heart itself, but the parietal layer of the pericardium, surrounded as it is by a fibrous layer (fibrous pericardium), appears to be inextensible, and so limits the dilatation of the heart

The Chambers of the Heart—The interior of the heart is divided by a longitudinal partition into two muscular cavities, the right and left Each of these chambers is again subdivided transversely into an upper and a lower portion, called respectively, auricle and ventricle, which freely communicate one with the other, the aperture of communication, however, is guarded by valves, so disposed as to allow blood to pass freely from the auricle into the ventricle, but not in the opposite direction There are thus four cavities in the heart—the auricle and ventricle of one side being quite separate from those of the other (figs 60 and 61)

The chambers of the heart are lined continuously by a thin membrane, the *endocardium*, which is continuous with the endothelial lining of the blood-vessels

The **right auricle** is a thin-walled cavity, prolonged at one corner into a tongue-shaped portion, the right auricular appendix Into it open the superior and inferior venæ cavæ, or great veins, which convey the blood from all parts of the body to the heart The opening of the inferior vena cava is protected and partly covered by a membrane called the *Eustachian valve* In the posterior wall of the auricle is a slight depression called the *fossa ovalis,* where in the fœtus there was an opening between the auricles which permitted the blood to pass to the left side of the heart without passing through the lungs

The **right ventricle** occupies the chief part of the anterior surface of the heart It takes no part in the formation of the apex Blood enters it from the right auricle by the *tricuspid valve* and leaves it by the pulmonary artery which is guarded by the *pulmonary valve*

The **left auricle** receives the blood from the lungs by four pulmonary veins and passes it on through the *mitral valve* to the left ventricle

The **left ventricle** has a wall which in man is about three times as thick as that of the right ventricle since it has to pump the blood through the body generally The blood leaves by the aorta which is guarded by the *aortic valve*

Valves.—The arrangement of the heart's valves is such that the blood can pass only in one direction

The *tricuspid* valve presents *three* principal cusps or subdivisions and the mitral or *bicuspid* valve has *two* such portions (6, fig 60) Each cusp is of triangular form Its base is continuous with the

bases of the neighbouring portions, and with them forms an annular membrane round the auriculo-ventricular opening, and is fixed to the tendinous ring which encircles the orifice

While the bases of the cusps of the valves are fixed to the tendinous rings, their borders are fastened by slender tendinous fibres, the *chordæ tendineæ*, to the papillary muscles which project from the internal surface of the walls of the ventricles (see 5, fig 60)

The preceding description applies equally to both the mitral and the tricuspid valve, but it should be added that the mitral is considerably thicker and stronger than the tricuspid, in accordance with the greater force which it is called upon to resist

The *semilunar valves* guard the orifices of the pulmonary artery and of the aorta They are nearly alike on the two sides of the heart, but the aortic valves are more strongly constructed than the pulmonary valves, in accordance with the greater pressure which they have to withstand. Each valve consists of three parts which are of semilunar shape, the convex margin of each being attached to a fibrous ring at the place of junction of the artery to the ventricle, and the concave or nearly straight border being free, so as to form a little pouch like a watch-pocket (7, fig 60) In the centre of the free edge of the pouch, which contains a fine cord of fibrous tissue, is a small fibrous nodule, the *corpus Arantii*, and from this and from the attached border fine fibres extend into every part of the mid-substance of the valve, except a small lunated area just within the free edge, on each side of the corpus Arantii Here the valve is thinnest, and composed of little more than the endocardium Thus constructed and attached, the three semilunar pouches are placed side by side round the arterial orifice of each ventricle, they are separated by the blood passing out of the ventricle, but immediately afterwards are pressed together so as to prevent any return Opposite each of the semilunar cusps, both in the aorta and pulmonary artery, there is a bulging outwards of the wall of the vessel these bulgings are called the *sinuses of Valsalva* From two of these sinuses just behind the cusps open the coronary arteries which supply blood to the heart during its relaxed phase

Course of the Circulation

The blood is conveyed away from the left ventricle (as in the diagram, fig 61) by the aorta to the *arteries*, and returned to the right auricle by the *veins*, the arteries and veins being continuous with each other at the far end by means of the *capillaries*

From the right auricle the blood passes to the right ventricle, then by the pulmonary artery, which divides into two, one for each lung,

then through the pulmonary capillaries, and through the pulmonary veins (two from each lung) to the left auricle From here it passes into the left ventricle, which brings us back to our starting place

The complete circulation is thus made up of two circuits, the one, a shorter circuit from the right side of the heart to the lungs and back again to the left side of the heart, the other and longer circuit, from the left side of the heart to all parts of the body and back again to the right side The circulations through the lungs and

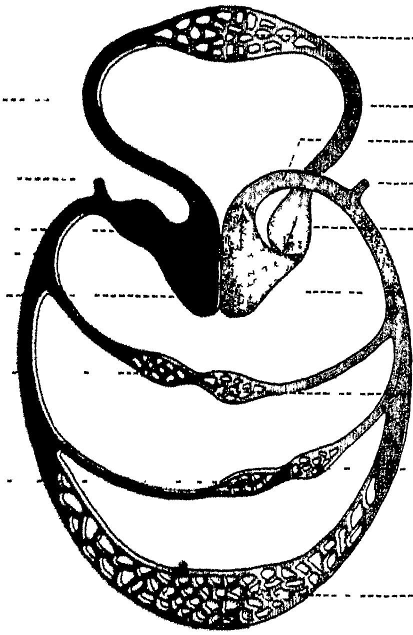


FIG 61 —Diagram of the circulation

through the system generally are respectively named the **Pulmonary** and **Systemic** or *lesser* and *greater* circulations It will be noticed also in the same figure that a portion of the stream of blood having been diverted once into the capillaries of the intestinal canal, and some other abdominal organs, and gathered up again into a single stream, is a second time divided in its passage through the liver, before it finally reaches the heart and completes a revolution This subordinate stream through the liver is called the **Portal** circulation A somewhat similar accessory circulation is that through the kidneys, called the **Renal** circulation The difference of colours in fig 61 indicates roughly the difference between *arterial* and *venous* blood

The blood is oxygenated in the lungs, and the formation of oxy-

hæmoglobin gives to the blood a bright red colour This oxygenated or arterial blood (contained in the pulmonary veins, the left side of the heart, and systemic arteries) is in part reduced in the tissues, and the deoxygenated hæmoglobin is darker in tint than the oxy-hæmoglobin, this venous blood passes by the systemic veins to the right side of the heart and thence by the pulmonary artery to the lungs, where it once more receives a fresh supply of oxygen

It should, however, be noted that the lungs, like the rest of the body, are also supplied with arterial blood, which reaches them by the bronchial arteries

The Histology of the Vessels

The Arteries —The arterial system begins at the left ventricle in a single large trunk, the aorta, which almost immediately after its origin gives off the two coronary arteries which supply the heart wall and thereafter gives off branches to every part of the body The arterial branches wherever given off divide and subdivide, until the calibre of each subdivision becomes very minute, and these minute vessels or arterioles lead into capillaries The sum of the sectional areas of the branches of an artery generally exceeds that of the parent trunk, and as the distance from the origin is increased, the area of the combined branches is increased also After death, large arteries being thick walled cannot collapse completely like the veins, and are empty It was to this fact that their name was given them, as the ancients believed they conveyed air to the various parts of the body

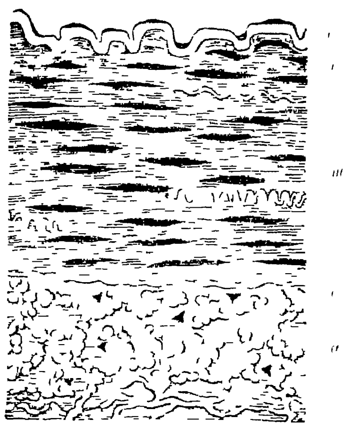


FIG 62 —Transverse section through a large branch of the inferior mesenteric artery of a pig *e*, Endothelial membrane, *i*, tunica elastica interna, no subendothelial layer is seen, *m*, muscular tunica media, containing only a few wavy elastic fibres, *e*, *e*, tunica elastica externa, dividing the media from the connective tissue adventitia, *a* (Klein and Noble Smith) × 350

Structure—The arterial wall is composed of the following coats —

(*a*) The *external coat* or *tunica adventitia* (fig 62, *a*), the strongest part of the wall of the artery, is formed of areolar tissue, with which is mingled throughout a network of elastic fibres At the inner part of this outer coat the elastic network forms, in some arteries, so distinct a layer as to be sometimes called the *external elastic coat* (fig 62, *e*)

(*b*) The *middle coat* (fig 62, *m*) is composed of both muscle and elastic fibres, with a certain proportion of areolar tissue In the larger arteries (fig 62) its thickness is comparatively as well as absolutely much greater than in the small ones, it constitutes the greater part of the arterial wall The muscle-fibres are unstriped, and are arranged for the most part transversely to the long axis of the artery, while the elastic element, taking also a transverse direction, is disposed in the form of closely interwoven and branching fibres, which intersect in all parts the layers of muscle-fibres In arteries of various sizes there is a difference in the proportion of the muscular and elastic element, elastic tissue preponderating in the largest arteries, and unstriped muscle in those of medium and small size

(*c*) The *internal coat* is formed by a layer of elastic tissue Its inner surface is lined with a delicate layer of elongated endothelial cells (fig 62, *e*), which make it smooth, so that the blood may flow with the smallest possible amount of resistance from friction Immediately external to the endothelial lining of the artery is fine connective tissue (*subendothelial layer*) with branched corpuscles Thus the internal coat consists of three parts (*a*) an endothelial lining, (*b*) the subendothelial layer, and (*c*) an elastic fenestrated layer

Vasa Vasorum —The walls of the arteries are, like other parts of the body, supplied with little arteries, ending in capillaries and veins, which, branching throughout the external coat, extend for some distance into the middle, but do not reach the internal coat These nutrient vessels are called *vasa vasorum*

Nerves —Most of the arteries are surrounded by a plexus of sympathetic nerves, which terminate in a plexus between the muscle-fibres

The Veins.—The venous system begins in small vessels which are slightly larger than the capillaries from which they spring These vessels are gathered up into larger and larger trunks until they terminate (as regards the systemic circulation) in the two venæ cavæ and the coronary veins, which enter the right auricle, and (as regards the pulmonary circulation) in four pulmonary veins, which enter the left auricle The total capacity of the veins diminishes as they approach the heart, but, as a rule, their capacity is two or three times that of the corresponding arteries The pulmonary veins, however, are an exception to this rule, as they do not exceed the pulmonary arteries in capacity

Structure —In structure the coats of veins bear a general resemblance to those of arteries (fig 63) Thus, they possess outer, middle, and internal coats

(*a*) The *outer* coat is constructed of areolar tissue like that of

the arteries, but it is thicker In some veins it contains muscle-fibres, which are arranged longitudinally

(*b*) The *middle* coat is considerably thinner than that of the arteries, it contains circular unstriped muscle-fibres, mingled with a few elastic fibres and a large proportion of white fibrous tissue In the large veins, near the heart, namely, the *venæ cavæ* and pulmonary veins, the middle coat is replaced, for some distance from the heart, by circularly arranged striped muscle-fibres, continuous with those of the auricles The veins of bones and of the central nervous system and its membranes have no muscular tissue

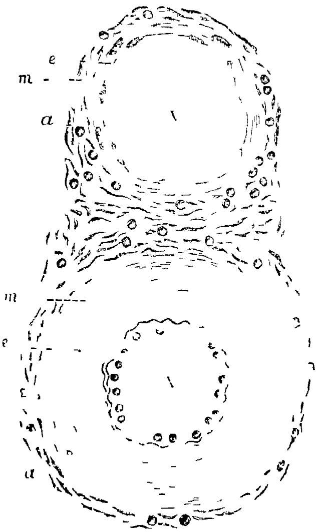


FIG 63 —Transverse section through a small artery and vein of the mucous membrane of a child's epiglottis, the artery is thick walled and the vein thin walled A Artery, the letter is placed in the lumen of the vessel *e*, Endothelial cells with nuclei clearly visible, these cells appear very thick from the contracted state of the vessel Outside them a double wavy line marks the elastic layer of the tunica intima *m* Tunica media, consisting of unstriped muscle fibres circularly arranged, their nuclei are well seen *a*, Part of the tunica adventitia showing bundles of connective tissue fibre in section, with the circular nuclei of the connective tissue corpuscles This coat gradually merges into the surrounding connective tissue V In the lumen of the vein The other letters are used as in the artery The muscular coat of the vein (*m*) is seen to be much thinner than that of the artery × 850 (Klein and Noble Smith)

(*c*) The *internal* coat of veins has a very thin fenestrated membrane, which may be absent in the smaller veins The endothelium is made up of cells elongated in the direction of the vessel, but wider than in the arteries

Valves — One main distinction between arteries and veins is the presence of valves in the latter vessels The general construction of these valves is similar to that of the semilunar valves of the aorta and pulmonary artery, already described, but their free margins are turned in the opposite direction, *i e*, *towards* the heart, so as to prevent any movement of blood backward They are commonly placed in pairs, at various distances in different veins, but almost uniformly in each (fig 64) In the smaller veins single valves are often met with, and three or four are sometimes placed together, or near one another, in the largest veins, such as the subclavian, at their junction with the jugular veins They are composed of an outgrowth of the subendothelial tissue covered with endothelium Their situation in the superficial veins of the forearm is readily discovered by pressing along their surface, in the direction opposite to the venous current, *i e* from the elbow towards the wrist, little

swellings appear in the position of each pair of valves These swellings at once disappear when the pressure is removed

Valves are not equally numerous in all veins, and in many they are absent altogether They are most numerous in the veins of the extremities, and more so in those of the leg than the arm They are

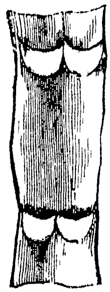


FIG 64 —Diagram showing part of a vein laid open and spread out, with two pairs of valves

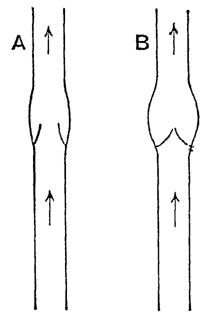


FIG 65 — A, Vein with valves open B, with valves closed, with ballooning of the vein above

commonly *absent* in veins of less than a line in diameter, and, as a general rule, there are few or none in those which are not subject to muscular pressure This fact is of considerable physiological importance, since the compression of the veins by the muscles is an important factor in assisting the return of blood to the heart

The Capillaries —In most cases the blood finds its way from the small arteries to the small veins through a network of minute

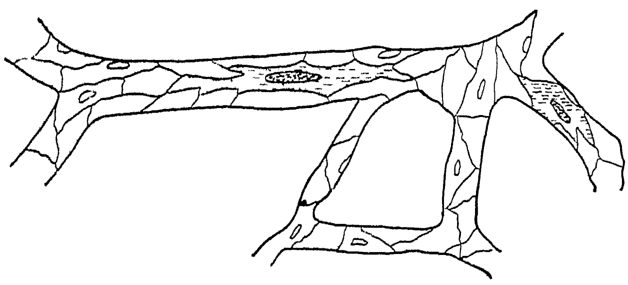


FIG. 66 —Diagram of capillary showing the nucleated endothelium of which it is composed and two Rouget cells (After Klein, Noble Smith, and Vimtrup)

cylindrical vessels called capillaries But in certain cases (parathyroid, spleen, the thyroid of some animals, erectile tissue, the placenta, and the embryonic liver and kidney) the connecting systems of vessels are larger and have an irregular shape, these vessels are termed *sinusoids*

The walls of both capillaries and sinusoids are composed of endothelium—a single layer of elongated flattened and nucleated cells, so joined and dovetailed together as to form a continuous transparent membrane (fig 66) At intervals along the capillaries lie the so-called Rouget cells which send out fine processes which closely embrace the endothelial membrane They have been likened to a thinly-spread layer of the muscular coat of the larger vessels, and it is claimed that by their contraction and relaxation the lumen of the capillaries may be diminished or increased, the endothelium has been described as wrinkled beneath the contracted Rouget cells There

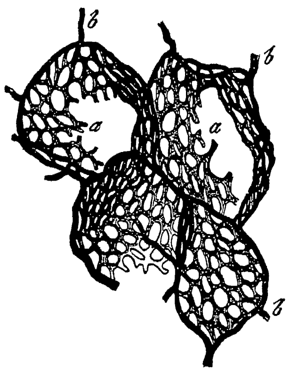


FIG 67 —Network of capillary vessels of the air cells of the horse s lung magnified *a*, *a*, Capillaries proceeding from *b*, terminal branches of the pulmonary artery (Frey)

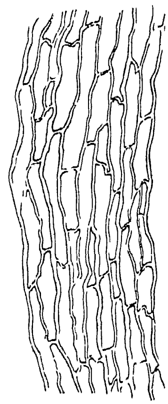


FIG 68 —Injected capillary vessels of muscle seen with a low magnifying power (Sharpey)

is, however, evidence that the cells of the capillaries can contract independently of the Rouget cells Clark has shown that if the development of a tadpole is delayed by chloretone, the contractility of the capillaries may be seen before the Rouget cells develop This power of contractility renders many capillaries invisible, so that if a piece of tissue is observed under the microscope capillaries are seen to appear and disappear

The *diameter* of the capillary vessels varies slightly in the different tissues of the body, the most common size being about $\frac{1}{2000}$th of an inch ($12\,\mu$)

The form of the capillary network and the size of the individual capillaries vary considerably in different parts of the body

It may be held as a general rule, that the more active the functions of an organ are, the more vascular it is Hence the narrowness of the interspaces in all glandular organs, in mucous

membranes, and in growing parts, and their much greater width in bones, ligaments, and other comparatively inactive tissues

Arterio-Venous Anastomosis—In some regions the arterioles and venules communicate directly, for example in the ear of the rabbit The function of these anastomoses appears to be to allow hot blood to pass freely through the part for purposes of cooling (Grant)

Collateral Circulation

When the main artery or vein of a part of the body is occluded, collateral circulations rapidly open up and quite small vessels may enlarge and take over the function of the larger vessels This is possible because of the free anastomosis of arteries and of veins, but the exact stimulus which determines the enlargement is not known

CHAPTER XI

THE CIRCULATION

PREVIOUS to the time of Harvey (1628), the vaguest notions prevailed regarding the use and movements of the blood The arteries were supposed by some to contain air, by others to contain a more subtle essence called animal spirits, the animal spirits were supposed to start from the ventricles of the brain, and they were controlled by the soul which was situated in the pineal gland How the animal spirits got into the arteries was an anatomical detail which was supplied by the imagination

There was an idea that the blood was subject to a to-and-fro movement which was confined to the veins The proofs that the movement is in a circle were discovered by William Harvey, to whom also belongs the credit of pointing out the methods by which almost every physiological problem must be studied In the first place there must be correct anatomical knowledge, and in the second there must be experiment, by which deductions from structure can be tested, this second method is the more important of the two Harvey's work on the circulation fulfilled both these requirements The structural or anatomical facts on which he relied were —

1 The existence of two distinct sets of tubes in connection with the heart the arteries and the veins

2 The existence in the heart and also in the veins, of valves which allow the passage of the blood in one direction only

His experimental findings were —

3 That the blood spurts with great force and in a jerky manner from an artery opened during life, each jerk corresponding with a beat of the heart

4 That if the large veins near the heart are tied, the heart becomes pale, flaccid, and bloodless, and on removal of the ligature blood again flows into the heart

5 If the aorta is tied, the heart becomes distended with blood, and cannot empty itself until the ligature is removed

6 The preceding experiments were performed on animals, but by the following experiment he showed that the circulation is a fact in man also, if a ligature is drawn tightly round a limb to compress the artery to the part no blood can enter it, and it becomes pale and cold If the ligature is relaxed so that only the veins are

compressed blood can enter but cannot leave and the limb becomes swollen If the ligature is removed, the limb soon regains its normal appearance

7 Harvey also measured the amount of blood which the heart could hold and the total amount in the body He reasoned that in order to make it possible for the heart to pump out such an amount at each beat the same blood must be used over and over again

8 If an artery is wounded, hæmorrhage may be stopped by pressure applied between the heart and the wound, but if the wound is in a vein, the pressure must be applied beyond the seat of injury

Since Harvey's time many other proofs have accumulated For instance —

9 Perhaps the most satisfactory proof of the circulation is one now within the reach of every student, though beyond that of Harvey It consists in actually seeing the passage of the blood from small arteries through capillaries into veins in the transparent parts of animals, such as the tail of a tadpole or the web of a frog's foot Harvey could not follow this part of the circulation, for he had no lenses sufficiently powerful to enable him to see it Harvey's idea of the circulation here was that the arteries carried the blood to the tissues, which he considered to be of the nature of a sponge, and the veins collected the blood again, much in the same way as drainage pipes would collect the water of a swamp The discovery that the ends of the arteries are connected to the beginnings of veins by a definite system of small tubes we now call capillaries, was made by Malpighi, in the year 1661 He first observed them in the lung of the frog, and Leeuwenhoek, seven years later, saw the circulation in the tail of a tadpole

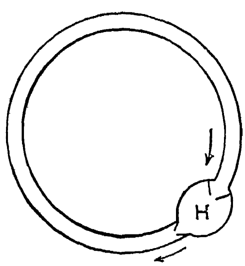


FIG 69 —Simple model of the circulation

The Principle of the Circulation — The simplest possible way in which we can represent the circulatory system is shown in fig 69 Suppose we had a ring of tubing with a bulb (H) which could be compressed by hand If the apparatus were filled with fluid and the bulb compressed there would be a to-and-fro movement of the fluid The presence of valves, however, which permit the flow in one direction only would convert the flow into a circulation as illustrated in the figure If the contraction and relaxation of the bulb which corresponds to the heart were repeated often enough the fluid would move round and round within the tubular ring

The main factor in the circulation is difference of pressure In general terms fluid flows from points of high pressure to those of lower pressure This difference of pressure is produced in the first

instance by the contraction of the heart, but we shall find in our study of the vessels that some of this pressure is stored up in the elastic arterial walls, and keeps up the circulation during the periods when the heart is resting

In worms, the circulatory system is almost as simple as in the model just described, the heart is a long contractile tube provided with valves, along which a wave of contraction passes and presses the blood forwards into the aorta at its anterior end, this divides into arteries for the supply of the body, the blood passes through

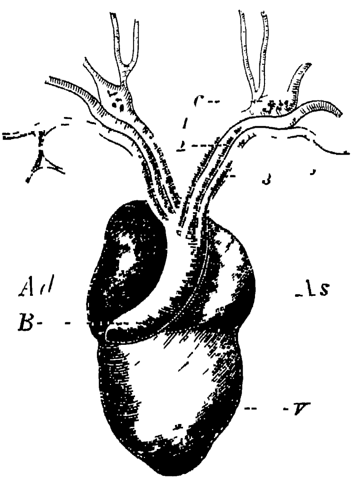


FIG 70 —The heart of a frog (Rana esculenta) from the front *V*, ventricle, *Ad*, right auricle, *As*, left auricle, *B*, bulbus arteriosus, dividing into right and left aortæ (Ecker)

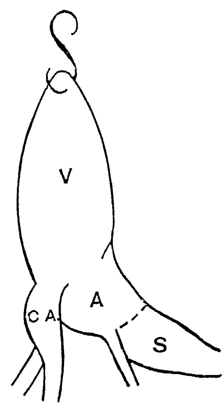


FIG 71 —Diagram of frog heart V = ventricle, A = auricle, S = sinus, C A = conus arteriosus from which the aorta originates Between the sinus and the auricle the sino auricular junction is indicated by the dotted line

these to capillaries, and is collected by veins which converge to one or two main trunks that enter the heart at its posterior end

In fishes the heart is divided into a number of chambers placed in single file, one in front of the other

Taking the frog as an instance of an amphibian, we find the heart more complex, and the simple action of the heart muscle, as we have described it in the hearts of worm and fish, is correspondingly modified There is only one ventricle, but there are two auricles, right and left

The ventricle contains mixed blood, since it receives arterial blood from the left auricle (which is the smaller of the two), and venous blood from the right auricle, the right auricle receives the venous blood from the sinus, which in turn receives it from the

systemic veins The left auricle, as in man, receives the blood from the pulmonary veins

When the ventricle contracts, it forces the blood onward into the aortic bulb which divides into branches on each side for the supply of the head (fig 70, 1), lungs and skin (fig 70, 3), and the third branch (fig 70, 2), unites with its fellow of the opposite side to form the thoracic aorta for the supply of the rest of the body

In reptiles, the division of the ventricle into two is beginning, but it is not complete till we reach the birds The heart reaches its fullest development in mammals, and we have already described the human as an example of the mammalian heart The sinus is not present as a distinct chamber in the mammalian heart (except in a very early fœtal stage), but is represented by that portion of the right auricle at which the large veins enter

CHAPTER XII

PHYSIOLOGY OF THE HEART

The Cardiac Cycle

THE series of changes which occurs in the heart constitutes the *cardiac cycle*. This must be distinguished from the course of the circulation. The term "cycle" indicates that if one observes the heart at any particular moment, the heart from that moment onwards undergoes certain changes until it once more assumes the same condition that it had at the moment when the observation commenced, when the cycle is again repeated, and so on. This series of changes consists of alternate contraction and relaxation. Contraction is known as **systole,** and relaxation as **diastole.**

The contraction of the two auricles takes place simultaneously, and constitutes the *auricular systole*; this is followed by the simultaneous contraction of the two ventricles, *ventricular systole,* after each systole the auricles and ventricles relax or go into diastole in the same order. The auricular diastole begins before ventricular systole is over and is followed by ventricular diastole. The cycle again commences with the auricular systole.

Taking 72 as an average number of heart-beats per minute, each cycle will occupy $\frac{1}{72}$ of a minute, or a little more than 0·8 of a second. This may be approximately distributed in the following way :—

Auricular systole	about 0·05 +	Auricular diastole	0·75 = 0·8
Ventricular systole	,, 0·3 +	Ventricular diastole	0·5 = 0·8

If the speed of the heart is quickened, the time occupied by each cycle is diminished, but the diminution affects chiefly the diastole. These different parts of the cycle must next be studied in detail.

Auricular Diastole.—During this time, the blood from the large veins is flowing into the auricles, the pressure in the veins though very low being greater than that in the empty auricles. The blood expands the auricles. As soon, however, as the auriculo-ventricular valves open the blood passes through into the ventricles.

These valves open as soon as the pressure in the auricles becomes

greater than that in the ventricles, that is at the beginning of ventricular diastole

The dilatation of the auricles is assisted by the negative pressure in the thorax The lungs being in a closed cavity, the thorax, and being distended with air, are in virtue of their elasticity always tending to recoil and squeeze the air out of their interior, in so doing they drag upon any other organ with which their surface is in contact this elastic traction will be greatest when the lungs are most distended, that is during inspiration, and will be more felt by the thin-walled auricles than by the thick-walled ventricles of the heart

Auricular Systole—By contracting, the auricles empty themselves into the ventricles which are already full The contraction commences at the entrance of the great veins, and is thence propagated towards the auriculo-ventricular opening Regurgitation into the veins is prevented, not by valves, but by the contraction of the muscle around the venous inlets

Ventricular Diastole—During the last part of the auricular diastole and the whole of the auricular systole, the ventricles are relaxed and then filled with blood The dilatation of the ventricles is brought about in virtue of their elasticity and by the pressure of the venous blood

Ventricular Systole—This is the contraction of the ventricles, and it occupies more time than the auricular systole, when it occurs the auriculo-ventricular valves are closed and prevent regurgitation into the auricles, and when the force of the systole is great enough, the pressure within the ventricles exceeds that in the large arteries which originate from them, the semilunar valves are opened, and the ventricles empty themselves, the left into the aorta, the right into the pulmonary artery

Action of the Valves and Filling of the Heart

1 The ventricles are filled by the pressure of the blood in the veins and the fluid ejected from the auricles during their systole causes slight additional distension of the ventricles

The auricles are therefore to be looked upon as accessory to ventricular filling but not essential In cardiac disease, *e g* auricular fibrillation, the auricles cease to act normally and ventricular filling depends solely on venous pressure The *auriculo-ventricular valves* are gradually brought into place by eddies and by blood getting behind the cusps and lifting them up, by the time diastole is complete, the valves are in apposition, and are firmly closed by the pressure set up by the systole of the ventricles The diminution in the size of the auriculo-ventricular rings which occurs during systole, renders the auriculo-ventricular valves competent to close the openings between the auricles and ventricles The margins of the cusps of the valves are still more secured in

apposition with one another, by the simultaneous contraction of the musculi papillares, whose chordæ tendineæ have a special mode of attachment for this object The cusps of the auriculo-ventricular valves meet not by their edges only, but also by the opposed surfaces of their thin outer borders

The contraction of the papillary muscles to the tip of which are attached the chordæ tendineæ prevents the auriculo-ventricular valves being pressed back into the auricles when the ventricles contract

2 *The Semilunar Valves*—The first result of the contraction of the ventricles is the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves, and as soon as this has been effected the intraventricular pressure begins to rise It quickly reaches a point at which it equals the aortic pressure, and then exceeds it, and as soon as this pressure difference has been established the aortic valves are opened and blood flows from the ventricle into the aorta The valves are kept open as long as the intraventricular pressure exceeds the aortic As soon as the heart has emptied itself, the ventricle begins to relax The valves tend to fall into position because of eddies set up by the outrushing blood, and, as soon as the pressure in the ventricles falls below the pressure in the aorta, they are closed sharply

Time Relations of the Events of the Cardiac Cycle

These have been studied by investigating the changes in pressure inside the heart (**endocardiac pressure**) and the changes in the volume of the organ A tube or sound is passed into the part of the heart concerned For the right side of the heart it may be passed down the jugular vein

Records may be taken by connecting the sound to a manometer on the principle of Marey's tambour but of stouter material (see fig 78) The Hurthle or Gadd manometer has a moving membrane of thick rubber or metal respectively so that it responds rapidly In each instance the recording apparatus is connected to the sound by tubing filled with anticoagulant fluid as in recording blood-pressure

By far the most accurate results, however, are obtained by connecting the cardiac cavity by means of a tube with an optical recorder instead of a tambour bearing a lever Recorders for the purpose were introduced by Frank, elaborated by Piper and more recently by Wiggers In this apparatus a small rubber membrane is stretched over the end of a tube with a flattened side On the membrane next the flattened side is attached a mirror from which a beam of light is reflected (fig 72) The movements of the beam are recorded on a moving photographic film, as in the electrocardiograph The apparatus is standardised by attaching it to an ordinary U-tube mercury manometer and noting the extent of

the movement of the beam when the pressure in the system is changed a known amount A record taken by an optical recorder is shown in fig 72, and from such observations the following phases of the cardiac cycle have been determined by Piper and by Wiggers The actual times need not be committed to memory, but the causes of each change of pressure should be noted

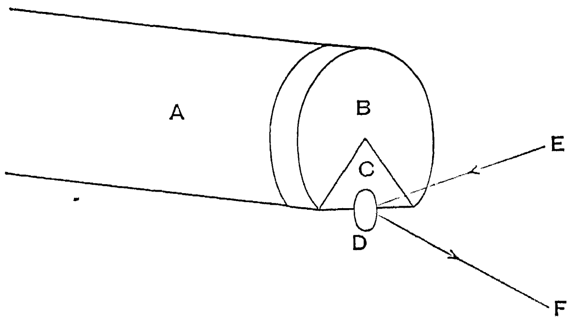


FIG 72—Modified Wiggers manometer—A, glass tube with flattened side, B, rubber membrane stretched over end of A, C, celluloid triangle cemented on to B, D, small mirror, E and F, incident and reflected rays respectively

(1) Auricular systole 0 05 sec, diastole 0 75

(2) Ventricular systole Total duration 0 33 to 0 23 sec according to the rate of the heart (I-III in Fig 73) The period between II and III is known as *systolic plateau*

During the first part of the systole the ventricle is a closed cavity and for this period Wiggers uses the term Isometric Phase* In the second part blood is expelled into the aorta (Ejection Phase)

(3) Ventricular diastole There are two distinct phases of ventricular diastole (III-I) In the first the ventricle does not fill and in the second the ventricle fills

(*a*) Early diastole (III-IV), from the beginning of relaxation till closure of aortic valves and during isometric relaxation in which the ventricle is again a closed cavity, *i e* before the auriculo-ventricular valves open

(*b*) The remainder and most important part of diastole is divided into two phases (IV-V and V-VI) during which the inflow is rapid and slow respectively At the end of the slow phase (V-VI) the contraction of the auricle occurs which hastens the last part of diastolic filling of the ventricle

The total length of diastole varies very much according to the rate of the heart The important point, however, must be noted

* So called because the ventricular muscle develops tension but has not shortened

that the main filling of the heart occurs during the first third (IV-V) of diastole and that consequently a shortening of diastole

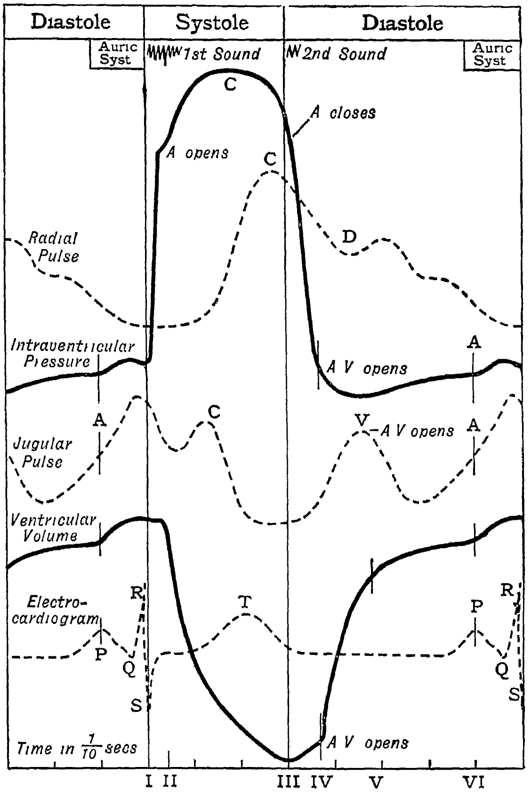


FIG 73 —Diagram showing superimposed ventricular pressure and volume records (modified from Wiggers) I II, period of isometric contraction, II III, period of ejection, III IV, early diastole, IV V, period of rapid inflow, V VI, period of slow inflow The volume record has been taken by means of a cardiometer (see fig 86) attached to an optical recorder Some similar records such as those taken by Piper show a small change between III and IV which corresponds to the closure of the aortic valves The dotted lines indicate the radial and jugular pulses and the electro cardiogram

which may occur between V and VI does not materially affect the total filling

Intra-Auricular Pressure

The chief interest in this pressure lies in the fact that the changes which occur in the auricle are similar to those which appear in a record of a venous pulse (p 172) except that in the auricular record the waves occur earlier in the cardiac cycle The changes which take place are discussed in relation to the venous pulse

The actual pressure in the auricles is not normally in excess

of 5 mm Hg This indicates the enormous effect which a leaky mitral valve must have since the systolic pressure in the left ventricle varies commonly from about 120 during rest to about 200 mm Hg during exercise The systolic pressure in the right ventricle is about a quarter of that in the left

The Sounds of the Heart

When the ear is placed over the region of the heart, two *sounds* which follow in quick succession, and are succeeded by a *pause* or period of silence may be heard at every beat of the heart The *first* or *systolic* sound is dull and prolonged, its commencement coincides with the impact of the heart against the chest wall, and it lasts during the greater part of the ventricular systole, it just precedes the pulse at the wrist The *second* or *diastolic* sound is shorter and sharper, with a somewhat flapping character, it follows the end of ventricular systole, and is audible just after the radial pulse is felt The sounds are often compared to the syllables, *lūbb—dŭp*

Causes—*First Sound*—Two factors enter into the production of this sound the muscular contraction of the heart, and the closure of the auriculo-ventricular valves The following facts are evidence that the muscular contractions are concerned (1) the sound resembles that produced by a contracting voluntary muscle, (2) the sound may be heard when the heart is empty, as in the excised heart With regard to (1) although the cardiac contraction is a twitch and that of voluntary muscle normally a tetanus, it must be borne in mind that unequal tension repeatedly set up in the intricately interlaced fibres of the ventricular wall would lead to the production of a sound It is important, however, to realise that even the valvular element in the sound depends on the muscular contraction, since the latter is indirectly responsible for the closure of the valves The loudness of the first sound is therefore to some extent an indication of the fitness of the heart-muscle and its enfeeblement may indicate approaching heart failure, *e g* in fever

The cause of the *second sound* is simpler and consists entirely of the vibration consequent on the sudden stretching of the semilunar valves when they are pressed down across the orifices of the aorta and pulmonary artery The influence of these valves in producing the sound was first demonstrated by Hope, who experimented with the hearts of calves In these experiments two delicate curved needles were inserted, one into the aorta, and another into the pulmonary artery, below the line of attachment of the semilunar valves, and, after being carried upwards about half an inch, were brought out again through the coats of the respective vessels, so that in each vessel one valve was included between the arterial

walls and the wire Upon applying the stethoscope to the vessels, after such an operation, the second sound ceased to be audible Disease of these valves, when sufficient to interfere with their efficient action, also demonstrates the same fact by modifying the second sound or destroying its distinctness The *dŭp* becomes *duff*

The contraction of the auricles is inaudible

The first sound is heard most distinctly at the apex-beat in the fifth interspace, the second sound is best heard over the second *right* costal cartilage—that is, the place where the aorta lies nearest to the surface The pulmonary and aortic valves generally close simultaneously In some cases, however, the aortic may close slightly before the pulmonary valves, giving rise to a "reduplicated second sound" The pulmonary contribution to this sound is best heard over the second *left* costal cartilage

The **apex-beat** in man is felt normally in the fifth left intercostal space three and a half inches from the middle line It is caused by two factors The heart becomes hard and tense and is therefore capable of causing an impulse against the chest-wall Its attachment to the aorta becomes more rigid, and when the aortic pressure suddenly rises during systole the aorta, tending to straighten out, causes the heart to press more firmly against the thoracic wall, the aorta cannot straighten to any extent in a backward direction because of the rigid vertebral column behind it

When the left ventricle is enlarged the apex-beat may be displaced appreciably to the left

Cardiographs

A cardiograph is an instrument for obtaining a graphic record of the heart's movements In animals the heart may be exposed,

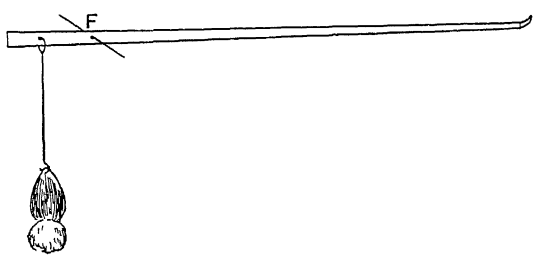


FIG 74 —Simple cardiograph for frog's heart

and levers connected to its various parts may be employed to write on a revolving blackened surface

A simple instrument for the frog's heart is shown in fig 74

The sternum of the pithed frog having been removed, the pericardium opened, and the frænum (a small band from the back of the heart to the pericardium) divided, the heart is pulled through the opening, a minute hook placed in its apex, and this is fixed by a silk thread to a lever, as in the figure The cardiac wave of contraction starts at the sinus, this is followed by the auricular systole, and that by the ventricular systole and pause This is recorded as in the next figure (fig 75) by movements of the writing-point at the end of the long arm of the lever Such apparatus is, however, not applicable to the human heart, and all the various forms of cardiograph devised for this purpose are modifications of Marey's tambours

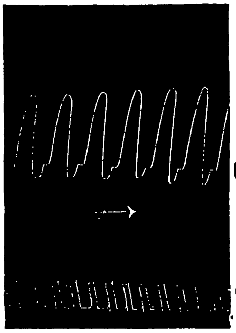


FIG 75 — Cardiogram of frog's heart C, showing auricular, followed by ventricular beat, T, time in half seconds

One (fig 76) consists of a cup-shaped metal box over the open front of which is stretched an elastic india-rubber membrane, upon which is fixed a small knob of hard wood or ivory This knob, however, may be attached, as in the figure, to the side of the box by means of a spring, and may be made to act upon a metal disc attached to the elastic membrane

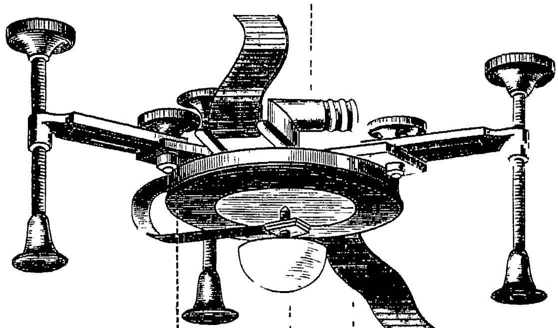


FIG 76 —Cardiograph (Sanderson's)

The knob is for application to the chest-wall over the apex-beat The box or tambour communicates by means of an air-tight tube with the interior of a second tambour, in connection with which is a long and light lever The shock of the heart's impulse being communicated to the ivory knob and through it to the first

tambour, the effect is at once transmitted by the column of air in the elastic tube to the interior of the second tambour (fig 78), also closed, and through the elastic

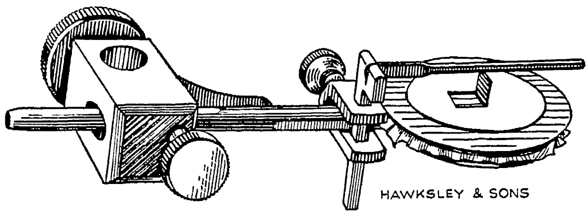


FIG 77 —A modification of Marey's tambour to which the movement of a column of air is conducted by a tube from another tambour or balloon Various arrangements are seen by which the writing lever may have its excursions modified or may be adjusted to the writing surface—a smoked paper on a revolving cylinder (M'Dowall, by permission of Messrs Hawksley)

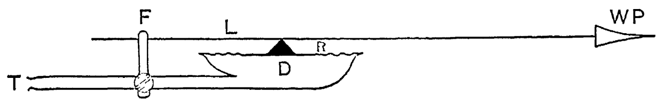


FIG 78 —Diagrams of a recording tambour (after Marey) D, Drum covered with thin rubber R and carrying a lever L with a fulcrum at F and a writing point WP The tube T connects with the receiving tambour

and movable lid of the latter to the lever, which is placed in connection with a registering apparatus The point of the lever writes upon the paper, and a tracing of the heart's impulse or **cardiogram** is thus obtained

The Cause of the Heart-Beat

At one time, the rhythm which cardiac muscle exhibits was thought to be due to the action of the nerves which supply it We now know that the property of rhythmical contraction resides in muscular tissue itself, though during life it is normally controlled and regulated by its nerves This is expressed by saying that cardiac rhythm is *myogenic* not *neurogenic* A few physiologists still maintain the older neurogenic theory, but the majority of them have worked chiefly on the hearts of invertebrate animals, whose mechanism may be a different one The striking observation made by early observers that the heart, especially an amphibian heart, will continue to beat after its removal from the body, is not proof either way as such a heart still contains many nervous structures A mammalian heart will beat only for a few minutes outside the body unless supplied with blood or a substitute But so far as the vertebrate heart is concerned, the myogenic theory is now held, because (1) the fœtal heart manifests rhythm long before any nerves reach it, (2) the apex of the ventricle of such animals as frogs and tortoises can be made to beat rhythmically by perfusing it with suitable fluids under pressure, and this part of the heart has

it begins It must not, however, be thought that the wave of contraction is incapable of passing over the heart in any other direction than from the sinus onwards, for it has been shown that by the application of appropriate stimuli at appropriate instants, the natural sequence of beats may be reversed, and the contraction starting at the arterial part of the ventricle may pass to the auricles and then to the sinus If clamps or ligatures are not applied sufficiently tightly one often sees partial blocking, a few waves get through but not all, or, if the ventricular wall is left connected with other parts of the heart by only a small portion of undivided muscular tissue, the effect is much the same the wave is only able to pass the block every second or third beat.

In the well-known *Stannius experiment* a ligature is tied between the sinus and the auricles, and causes the auricles and ventricle to stop beating since the impulse can no longer pass from the one to the other This is known as the Stannius heart A second ligature, however, between the auricles and ventricle causes the ventricle to recommence beating at its own slow rate The second ligature apparently acts as a mechanical stimulus by stretching the fibres, since a similar effect may be brought about by increasing the weight of the cardiographic lever or by injecting fluid through the aorta (Michael Foster) Section has a similar stimulating effect Gaskell carried out similar experiments using a clamp instead of a first ligature

In the mammal the fœtal remnant of the sinus is called the sino-auricular node (Keith and Flack), and this acts as the **pace-maker** since its cells have a remarkable power of rhythmically discharging impulses It is situated in the upper part of the sulcus terminalis near (in front) the entrance of the superior vena cava If this part of the auricle is heated or cooled the heart-rate may be increased or decreased, but similar treatment of other parts of the heart does not produce this effect It was indeed this fact which led to the discovery of the node That the excitation-wave commences at the sino-auricular node has been fully demonstrated by Lewis by means of the string galvanometer which records the current of action of the heart By placing electrodes on different parts of the heart he has shown that electrical change occurs first at the node

The starting-point in our knowledge of spread of the excitation-wave to the ventricle in the mammal, was the discovery by Stanley Kent of bands of muscular tissue passing across from auricles to ventricles The principal one was subsequently and independently rediscovered and fully described by His, and is known as the auriculo-ventricular bundle or bundle of His Some animals, especially when young, have relics of a right lateral bundle (Kent)

The auriculo-ventricular bundle arises from the auriculo-ventricular node which is situated in the right auricle just in front of the coronary sinus It runs forward in the lower part of the inter-auricular septum to reach the membranous portion of the inter-ventricular septum behind the tricuspid valve, here it courses along the upper border of the muscular part of the septum ventriculorum The bundle divides into two main branches, right and left, one for each ventricle, that for the left penetrating the septum The main branches continue towards the apex, branching as they go, their ramifications are connected with the network of Purkinje fibres beneath the endocardium, which network is in turn connected with the main mass of ventricular muscle The nodes and bundle are composed of modified muscle-fibres, inter-mingled with which are many non-medullated nerve-fibres, and are enclosed in a connective tissue sheath, they receive blood by special arteries The bundle is particularly rich in glycogen There is no special strand connecting the sino-auricular and auriculo-ventricular nodes, the wave of excitation initiated in the former spreads from it through the auricular muscle until it reaches the latter

The conclusion that the auriculo-ventricular bundle is the important link which propagates the rhythmic wave was reached first by experiments on animals, and second, by observations in disease in man In animals, cutting through the bundle abolishes the ordinary sequence of cardiac events The auricles go on beating as a result of the stimulus of the node, but the ventricles beat at a slower rhythm The stimulus for the ventricle is partly the rising venous pressure

When the bundle is destroyed by disease in man there is a similar dissociation between the auricular and ventricular rhythm, the ventricles beating slowly and the auricles rapidly This condition is known as **heart-block**, and in the early stages of the disease may be incomplete, then one out of every two or three auricular waves gets over to the ventricle, just as they do in Gaskell's experiments on the frog's heart when the clamp is not sufficiently tight

These observations throw a good deal of light on the propagation of the normal heart-wave The view generally held is that the wave starts in the sino-auricular node, and spreads thence to both auricles, it is picked up by the ventricular node of Twara and travels to the ventricles by the auriculo-ventricular bundle, reaching first the papillary muscles, and thence the rest of the heart until it arrives at the apex, finally it returns to the base of the heart in the region of the origin of the pulmonary artery, which is the representative of the bulbus aortæ in the primitive heart

The Histology of Cardiac Muscle

This has been fully described on page 18 The important point to emphasise is the intimate connection of all cardiac muscle cells with each other This produces a syncytium which acts as a whole

The Properties of Cardiac Muscle

1 **Rhythmicality** is a fundamental property of the cells of cardiac muscle, and may be observed in a single cell when the cell has been grown outside the body in tissue culture (Carrel)

2 The fact that the Stannius heart is quiescent has enabled physiologists to study the properties of heart muscle When the heart has been stopped for a little while and is stimulated artificially it shows a **staircase phenomenon**, that is to say, with the *same* strength of stimulus the first few contractions increase in size This is the same as the "warming up" effect seen in voluntary

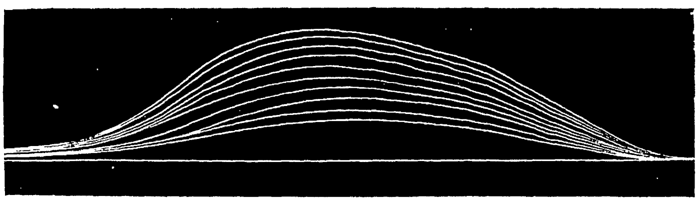


FIG 79 —Staircase from frog's heart This was obtained from a Stannius preparation, an induction shock being sent into it with every revolution of the cylinder (rapid rate) The contractions became larger with every beat To be read from right to left

muscle, but in the heart it is better marked It must not be confused with increased contraction in striped muscle due to increased strength of stimulus

3 **The "all or none" phenomenon** —By this is meant the fact that the amount of contraction does not vary with the strength of the stimulus A stimulus strong enough to produce a contraction causes a maximum contraction, because as we have seen the cells of cardiac muscle are not separate like those of voluntary muscle, but are all linked together and act as a single muscle-fibre

4 **Refractory Period** —The heart-muscle has a long *refractory* period, that is to say, after the application of a stimulus, a second stimulus will not cause a second contraction until after the lapse of a certain interval The refractory period lasts as long as the contraction period and on this account the heart-muscle can never be thrown into complete tetanus by a series of stimulations The refractory period can also be shown in a normally beating heart If the heart is stimulated during systole no change is observed, but

if the stimulus is applied during diastole, an *extra systole* is produced If the normal stimulus from the auricle reaches the ventricle during this extra systole, it produces no effect and the heart appears to have missed a beat This is known as the *compensatory pause* (fig 80) Missed beats in man are commonly due to similar extra systoles which may be too small to be felt at the pulse but which may be heard by the stethoscope or demonstrated by the electrocardiograph The beat following the extra systole may be unduly large since the heart is filled with extra blood during the prolonged diastole

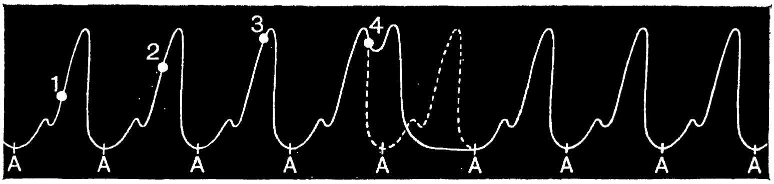


FIG 80 —Record of frog's heart For convenience the points of stimulation (shown by numbers) are shown in consecutive heart beats, but this would scarcely be possible in an actual experiment (See text) The normal stimulus of the sinus to the auricle is shown at A

The importance of the refractory period becomes apparent when, for one reason or another, a source of stimulation occurs in the heart in addition to the normal sinus beat Whether or not this extra stimulus will excite the heart depends on the excitability of the heart at the time such a stimulus arrives Sometimes such extra stimuli cause the auricle to contract either at great speeds or very irregularly These conditions are respectively known as auricular flutter and auricular fibrillation and are important clinical conditions

Auricular Flutter

Auricular flutter is a very rapid contraction of the auricle which depends on the properties of cardiac muscle

If a ring (fig 81 A) of cardiac muscle is stimulated by an induction shock at *a*, the wave of excitation started there travels in the direction of the two arrows until they meet at *b* (B, C, D in figure), and when the two crests meet, the waves obliterate each other and the whole ring is in the contracted state (dark shading) While it is contracted it is irresponsive to a second stimulus (refractory period) It then recovers in the same order and direction as shown in E, F, G, H, until the whole ring is once more responsive as shown by the absence of shading If successive stimuli are applied, each one will elicit the same train of events, provided the time between the stimuli is sufficiently long for recovery to take place If a second stimulus occurs when the ring is in the state F, a fresh wave may be propagated at *a*, before the response to the first stimulus has subsided at *b* In these circumstances two waves will be moving through the ring as shown in fig 82, I, J, K Suppose next that the successive stimuli are thrown in at smaller intervals, the second wave may start well enough at *a*, and travels at first freely in both directions as before, but if recovery in the two halves of the ring is different, in one half the wave reaches a point where the muscle is still refractory and so stops, but in

the other half complete recovery may have occurred, this wave will go on, and be able to get all the way round the ring, for by the time it arrives at the point which stopped the first wave, refractoriness will have disappeared there, this single wave gets back to its starting-point, finds this muscle has also recovered and continues its course round and round the ring, a wave which has no ending In this way the last stimulus of a series, the rate of which is carefully controlled, will initiate not

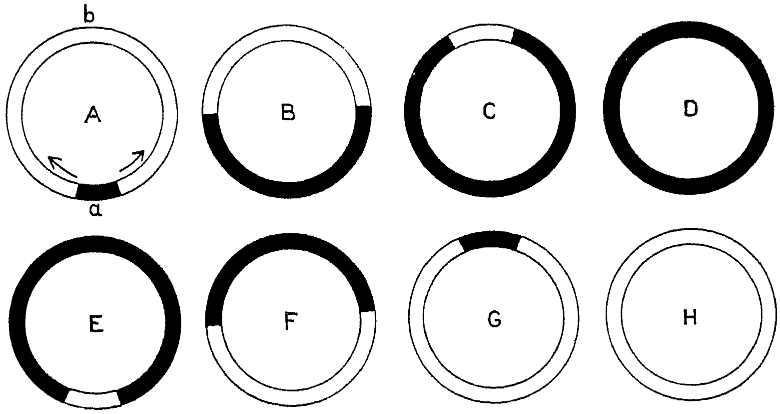


FIG 81 —The ring experiment (After Lewis)

a single contraction but a series of contractions This is what is called *circus movement*, a wave of response which travels continuously through a re-entrant path of muscle It may in experiments last for hours The rate of *auricular flutter* in man, as it is called, may rise to 230 to 250 per minute In the more serious state of fibrillation the rate may be much greater The value of the experimental circus movement is that it enables one to investigate the meaning of circus movement in disease

Flutter is due to continuously circulating waves, with centrifugal offshoots into the rest of the cardiac tissue, and in man it has been seen to continue unceasingly

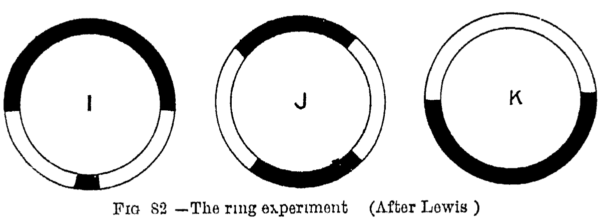


FIG 82 —The ring experiment (After Lewis)

for many years In order that the wave may be continuous, and always find the muscle it enters in the responsive state, the duration of the refractory period at any given point must always be less than the time spent by the travelling wave in completing its circuit, and this time will depend on two other factors, namely, the length of the circuit and the rate of travel Treatment of the condition of flutter consists in administrating a drug which slows the rate of conduction and increases the duration of the refractory phase so that the muscle has not yet recovered its excitability by the time the excitation arrives The drug which has so far been found most satisfactory is quinidine

Auricular fibrillation is a grossly irregular irregularity of the auricle arising from gross damage to the auricular muscle The auricle ceases to function and the ventricles are filled solely as a result of the venous pressure The auricular irregularity leads to great irregularity of the ventricles

Ventricular fibrillation —This is incompatible with life and occurs commonly at the point of death In this condition the ventricle instead of contracting as a whole contracts and twitches irregularly in different parts at the same time and ceases to act as a pump Fibrillation is the cause of sudden death from an electric current Immediate cardiac massage or the injection of calcium and potassium may bring about recovery in some instances if the damage is not too severe

The Electro-Cardiogram

The muscular tissue of the heart gives rise on action to an electrical disturbance which is in all essential features the same as the diphasic variation we have already studied in connection with voluntary muscle The excised beating heart of a frog can be readily connected either to a galvanometer or an electrometer, a simple diphasic variation is recorded

It is, however, possible (as Waller first demonstrated) to obtain an electro-cardiogram in man if the hands are each placed in a basin of salt solution which is led off to an electrometer

Since the heart-muscle is not a simple longitudinal strip like a sartorius there is great complexity in the electrical record of the intact organ Thus Bayliss and Starling described in the mammalian heart a triphasic variation, which Gotch has shown to be explicable in the following way Leaving out of account complications due to auricular activity, he has shown that the contraction process in each ventricle and its electrical concomitant commence at that part of the base of the ventricle at which it is continuous with its respective auricle, the contraction-wave travels to the apex and returns to the part of the base from which the aorta on one side and the pulmonary artery on the other side arise An electrode placed on the base will therefore record the increased galvanometric negativity at the beginning and at the end of the ventricular contraction, the electrode on the apex will record the middle phase when the contraction-wave reaches that point and causes an increase of galvanometric negativity there

Records are usually taken with the string galvanometer but an oscillometer may be used In electro-cardiography (fig 83) the electrodes consist of vessels of saline solution into which the hand or foot is placed and in each of which there is a zinc electrode in a porous pot of zinc sulphate Such an electrode prevents polarisation

(see p 46) In clinical work it is customary to take records from three different sources or "leads" Lead I consists of the two hands, lead II of the right hand and left foot (axial lead), and lead III of the left hand and left foot The different leads furnish information on the comparative activity of the two sides of the heart

From what has been said in relation to conduction in the heart, we are in a position to understand the causation of the individual waves The size of each varies considerably even in health, but in heart disease the electro-cardiogram shows very marked differences from the normal

The waves on the electro-cardiogram are explained as follows The wave P, due to auricular activity, is followed by a pause

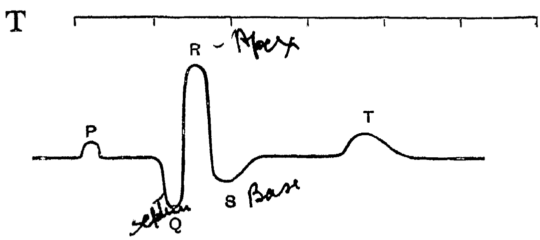


FIG 83 —Electro cardiogram obtained by photographing the movements of the thread of a string galvanometer The electrodes were connected to two vessels of salt solution, in one of which the right hand of a man was placed, this would lead off the base of the heart in the other his left foot was placed, this would lead off the apex of the heart Waves upwards indicate that the base is galvanometrically negative to the apex, downward waves have the opposite meaning Wave P accompanies auricular systole, waves Q, R, S, and T occur during ventricular systole The time tracing (T) shows tenths of a second (After Einthoven)

before the waves which accompany ventricular systole occur During this pause it is supposed that the excitatory-wave is travelling along the auriculo-ventricular bundle, the mass of which is too small to affect the galvanometer The remaining waves accompany ventricular activity, the final wave T indicates the arrival of the contraction-wave at the base Different observers differ greatly in their interpretations of the waves Q, R, S

According to Lewis, the excitation-wave starts in the septum of the ventricles, travels down this to the apex, and from the latter up the lateral wall to the base Throughout this passage the electrical axis constantly changes, and it is this change which is responsible for the complexity of the electro-cardiogram The deflection R represents the negativity of the lead from the right upper limb, this is produced not by activity of the base, but by the active process passing down the septum before there is activity either at apex or base, the deflection S is produced after the active change has finished in the septum and at the apex, that is to say, it is produced by activity at the base Yet this deflection S represents relative negativity of the lead from the left lower limb

An important feature of the electro-cardiogram is that it gives definite information regarding the rate of the auricle compared with that of the ventricle, and the time taken for the impulse to pass down the auriculo-ventricular bundle, as indicated by the PR interval The polygraph (see p 172) is used for a similar purpose

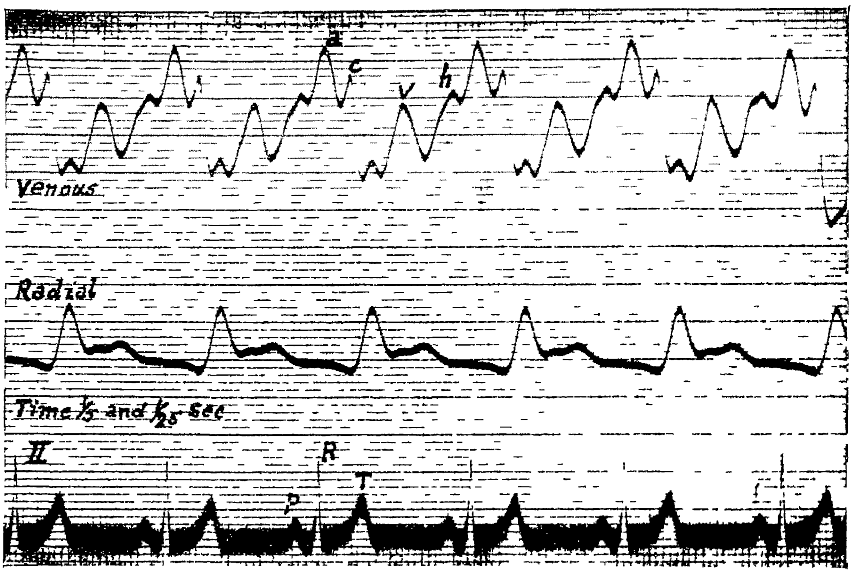


FIG 84 —Simultaneous electro cardiograph (lowest) and polygraph (upper two) records (From Flint s *The Heart Old Views and New*)

Frequency of the Heart's Action

The heart of a healthy adult at rest contracts **50** to **80** times in a minute, but many circumstances cause this rate to vary even in health The chief are age, temperament, sex, food and drink, exercise, time of day, posture, atmospheric pressure, temperature

In regard to other animals than man, it may be stated generally that the smaller the animal the more rapid the heart-rate since the metabolic rate in such animals is much greater than in large animals (*See* Metabolism)

The frequency of the heart's action gradually diminishes from the commencement to near the end of life, thus —

Before birth the average number of pulsations per minute is	150	About the seventh year	from 90 to 85
Just after birth	from 140 to 120	About the fourteenth year	,, 85 to 80
During the first year	,, 130 to 115	In adult age	, 80 to 70
During the second year	,, 115 to 100	In old age	,, 70 to 60

In health there is a uniform relation between the frequency of the heart-beats and of the respirations, the proportion being 1 respiration to 4 or 5 beats The same relation is generally maintained when the action of the heart is naturally accelerated, as after food or exercise, but in disease this ratio may be upset The rate of the heart depends on the pace-maker, which, as we shall see later may vary its activity especially in relation to exercise

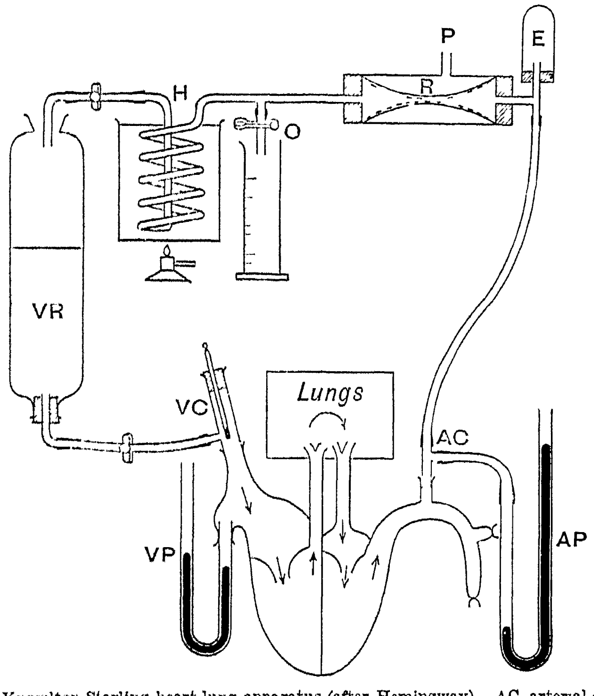


FIG 85 —Knowlton Starling heart lung apparatus (after Hemingway) AC, arterial cannula, E, air chamber, to give elasticity, H, heating apparatus, O, outlet for determination of output (when determining output this clip is opened for a given time and outlet to venous reservoir closed), P, to pressure bottle, R, peripheral resistance (dotted line shows position during increased resistance), VC, venous cannula, VR, venous reservoir, VP, manometer to record venous pressure (regulated by screw clip on tube from reservoir), AP, manometer to record arterial pressure

The Output of the Heart

It is evident that the output of the heart is of the utmost importance in maintaining the circulation Since the output of the heart indicates the rate of the circulation and is presumably determined by the needs of the body in relation to the supply of oxygen, its estimation, if a convenient and trustworthy means could be found suitable for man, might be of value in determining not only the

needs but also the adaptation of the circulation in pathological conditions

Several methods for the investigation of the cardiac output of animals have been devised, but in actual practice only a few have been generally retained

The Heart-Lung Preparation (Knowlton and Starling)—This method consists essentially of cutting out the systemic circulation by joining a branch of the aorta to the superior vena cava, all the other systemic arteries and veins being tied off In this way all possible variables outside the heart may be accurately controlled In order

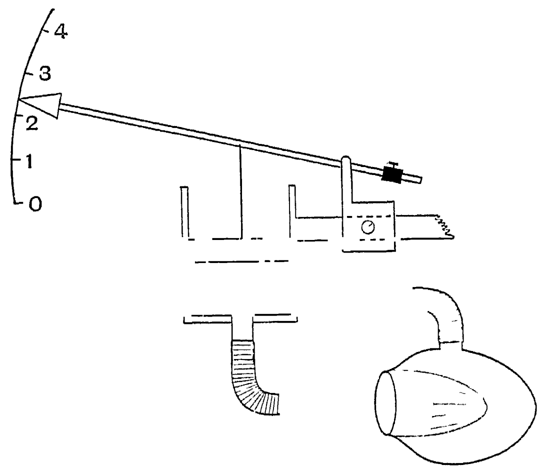


FIG 86 —Cardiometer—composed of piston recorder (Ellis) and heart chamber The chamber is made of glass One opening leads to the recorder and the heart is inserted into the other In some forms the latter has a thin [illegible] which has a hole in the centre and which fits accurately round the base [illegible] in other forms the heart fits into a thin rubber sheath (as shown) which does not impede its action For longer records the rubber is perforated at the apex and the chamber has an inferior opening by which pericardial fluid may be drained away (Hemingway)

to prevent the blood flowing with abnormal freedom from the artery to the vein and to maintain a pressure in the system (*see* Blood-Pressure), an artificial variable resistance in the form of a readily compressible tube is introduced, while elasticity is also given to the artificial system—to simulate natural conditions The output of the heart may readily be measured by allowing the blood to collect for a measured period of time in a cylinder beyond the resistance A diagram of the apparatus is shown in fig 85

The value of this method lies in the fact that the filling of the heart and the peripheral resistance can be controlled It gives therefore valuable information regarding the heart isolated from the rest of the body

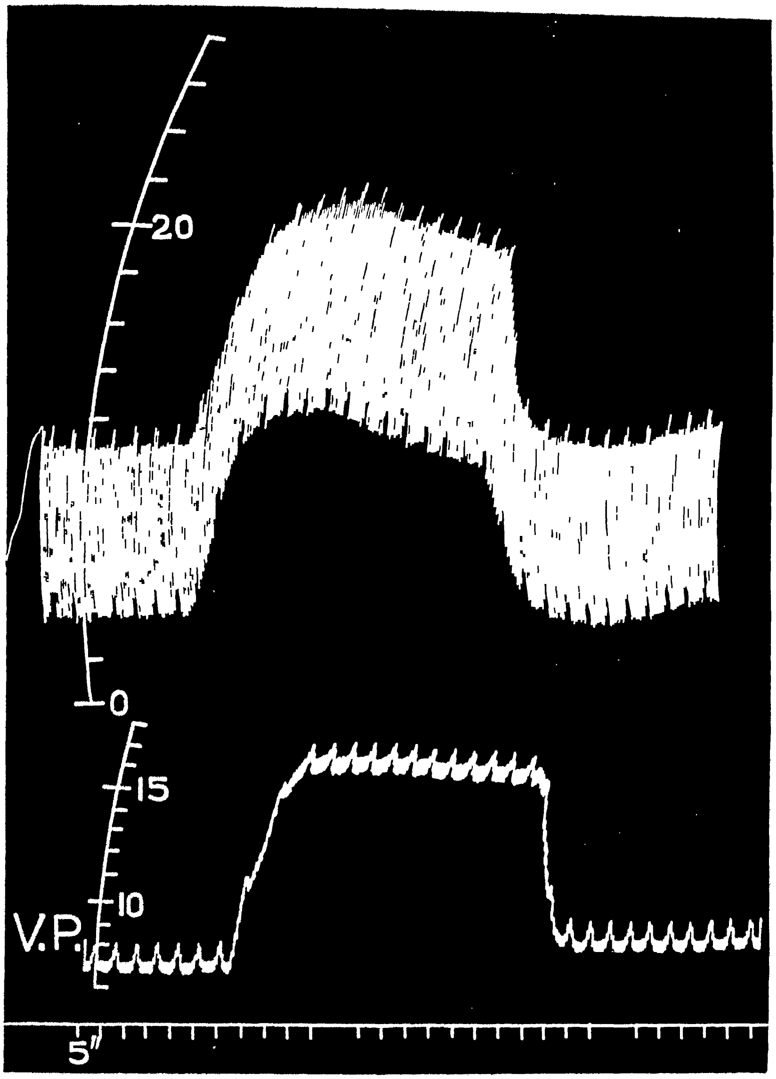


FIG 87 —A record showing the effect of the venous pressure on the output of the heart A raising of the venous pressure causes a marked increase in the output per beat and per minute (See text) The upper tracing is a cardiometer record, the lower a record of venous pressure in a heart lung preparation (by Hemingway) To study the rate of change in the heart volume during a single beat an optical record is necessary

Cardiometer Method—In the intact circulation the method which is adopted is that introduced by Roy The heart is placed in an air-tight chamber connected with a piston recorder (fig 86)

During diastole the heart takes up more space and a corresponding amount of air is driven into the recorder The recorder is standardised subsequently by running fluid into it from a burette and a measure is thereby obtained of the output per beat By counting the beats and multiplying the number by the output per beat we find the output per minute (fig 87)

The method is of special value in ascertaining whether or not a change in arterial pressure, say, due to a drug, is due to a change in the output of the heart

In this way it can be demonstrated that the output of the heart depends primarily on the *venous inflow, i e* the amount of blood entering the heart in diastole, and that, quite apart from changes in rate, the heart is able to vary its output and the work it does according to requirements This it does in virtue of the fact that the greater the initial length of the fibres, *i e* the greater the filling, the more forcible their contraction This has been called by Starling **the Law of the Heart**, but it is applicable to muscle generally

A rise in blood-pressure within normal limits caused by increasing the resistance (R in fig 85) makes no difference to the output except for a few beats At first the heart fails to drive out its contents adequately, but if the venous inflow is maintained this is added to the retained blood to distend the ventricles which consequently contract more forcibly and overcome the resistance This is an important provision in the mechanism of the heart since there is an increased resistance during exercise when it is important that the output should be maintained or increased

The rate of the heart makes no difference to the output if the venous inflow is low, but if this is reasonably high, as it usually is in the body, a change in the rate modifies the output The reason for this is as follows The heart increases its rate by shortening diastole, but it is evident that such shortening may have the effect of decreasing the time for filling When the venous inflow is low, or the heart-rate very fast this is actually so, with the result that, although there may be an increased number of beats, the output per beat may be diminished and the output per minute may therefore be unchanged or even reduced On the other hand, when the venous inflow is of normal amount, the heart fills in the early part of diastole and a shortening of the latter does not therefore seriously affect the filling per beat Since the output per beat is unchanged, an increased rate increases the output per minute These facts may readily be demonstrated in an animal If the blood-pressure is recorded and the rate of the heart varied by heating the pace-maker, a rise of blood-pressure results On the other hand, if the animal is bled sufficiently (a procedure which, for reasons described later,

lowers the venous pressure) such a variation of the heart-rate makes no difference to the blood-pressure

These facts can, however, really be inferred from a study of the volume changes in the heart taken by means of a cardiometer (fig 73) In the intact animal it is evident that the venous inflow will depend on the **venous return.** This is discussed later

In man it is obvious that such methods cannot be used and, unfortunately, no convenient trustworthy method is yet available Probably the method of Douglas and Priestley is the best The amount of carbon dioxide in 100 c c of venous blood is estimated and compared with that in 100 c c of arterial blood The difference, normally about 4 c c, is that lost by 100 c c in passing through the lungs when the body is at such rest as is obtainable under experiment By finding the total amount of carbon dioxide given off in a given time, we can arrive at the number of c c of blood which must have passed through the lungs to have lost this amount of CO_2 This amount really represents the output of the right ventricle which is the same as that of the left For example, if a man gives off 225 c c of carbon dioxide per minute and each 4 c c is given off in the lungs by 100 c c of blood, then 5625 c c of blood per minute must have flowed through the lungs This method can also be used in animals in which a sample of the mixed venous blood may be obtained by a needle plunged into the right ventricle

The difficulty in the method lies in obtaining a sample of mixed venous blood This is necessary as the venous blood from different parts of the body contains different amounts of carbon dioxide and oxygen

The method of obtaining the CO_2 content of the mixed venous blood in man is indirect and described in relation to Respiration (p 252)

A *rough* estimate of the cardiac output can also be obtained from our knowledge of the oxygen content of the mixed venous blood by finding the amount of oxygen taken in by the lungs per minute and calculating the amount of blood which must have passed through the lungs to have taken up this amount of oxygen (Zuntz) In this calculation it is assumed that in order to convert the mixed venous blood into arterial blood, 6 5 c c should be taken up by 100 c c of blood Several other methods depend on a similar principle but an abnormal gas is used, *e g*, nitrous oxide (Krogh), ethyl iodide (Henderson) of which the solubility in blood is known

In man the **cardiac output**, *i e* of each ventricle, at rest is estimated at about **4 to 6 litres per minute**, but in severe exercise it may be increased to over **30 litres per minute**—a most remarkable performance for such a small organ

The output of the heart it is obvious must, other factors being

equal, depend on the **efficiency of the heart** as a muscular pump

The power of the heart to increase its output is called the **cardiac reserve**, and is of considerable clinical importance It is appreciably reduced in cardiac disease because some of the reserve is utilised in overcoming the pathological defect, *e g* disease of a valve, or of the cardiac muscle, less is therefore available for exercise and symptoms of cardiac impairment, *e g* breathlessness on slight effort, are produced In severe cases all the reserve is used up and exercise is impossible In less severe cases the amount of exercise which can be done without discomfort is a measure of the cardiac efficiency

In addition to this immediate power of adapting itself to requirements, the heart, like any other muscle, undergoes considerable hypertrophy (increase of muscular substance) if increased work is done for a considerable time This is of great importance in practical medicine, since in valvular disease of the heart, when a valve is leaking or obstructed, the efficiency of the heart depends on its power to compensate in this way

In conclusion, it may be pointed out that the mere determination of the output of the heart gives very little exact information regarding the cause of any change in blood-pressure such as might be produced by a drug, as the output depends on two factors, the venous filling and the cardiac efficiency, each of which may vary independently

The Pericardium

This we have seen is a sac enclosing the heart Its obvious function is to prevent over-distension of the heart, for it will be evident that if filled beyond a certain limit the fibres will act at less mechanical advantages, but since it has been found, post-mortem, that the pericardium may have been absent or seriously ruptured without serious symptoms before death, it has been suggested that its function is to prevent the heart from changing its position with changes in posture It has been shown by Bijlsma, however, that the pericardium plays an important part in limiting the size of the heart and in preventing it from being over-distended in exercise He has shown that the response to increased filling is diminished if the pericardium is removed

When the cardiac valves are diseased and the heart becomes enlarged the pericardium necessarily enlarges also The hypertrophied cardiac muscle if healthy continues to be capable of driving out the contents of the ventricles in spite of the failure of the valves—provided this is not too great and time is allowed for the muscle to adapt itself to the extra work

Work and Gaseous Exchanges of the Heart

The heart's work consists in discharging blood against pressure and in imparting velocity to it The former will clearly depend on the output of the heart and on the various factors which influence blood-pressure, the latter on the blood-pressure Without going into the somewhat elaborate calculations obtained from these and other data, it will be sufficient to say that $\frac{1}{40}$ of the total energy of the heart is used in imparting velocity to the blood, but when the blood reaches the aorta the velocity is so checked that the kinetic energy of the blood in the aorta is only about $\frac{1}{800}$ of the total imparted by the heart

It will be observed that the work done by the right side of the heart is very much less than that done by the left, but when there is disease of the mitral valve the two may be more alike and the right ventricle is increased in size

On the work of the heart depends its gaseous exchange

Gaseous Exchanges in the Heart—The using up of oxygen by the living heart was well illustrated by an old experiment of Yeo's He passed a weak solution of oxyhæmoglobin through the excised beating heart of a frog, and found that after it had passed through the heart, the solution became less oxygenated and venous in colour

This is still better shown by the following figures, obtained by Barcroft and Dixon who estimated the gases in the blood entering and leaving the coronary vessels of a cat It will be seen that the metabolism in the heart tissue is reduced during vagus inhibition, this is followed by increased metabolism during the subsequent period, which corresponds to the increase of visible activity which then occurs

	Normal Heart	During Vagus Inhibition	After Vagus Inhibition
Oxygen used up per minute	0 21 c c	0 13 c c	0 34 c c
Carbonic acid given out per minute	0 45 c c	0 07 c c	0 22 c c

It is possible by studying its gaseous exchange to arrive at an idea of the efficiency of the heart This has been done by Evans on the heart-lung preparation It has been shown that the oxygen consumption of the heart bears a direct relationship to its diastolic volume, that is, with a constant rate the oxygen consumption may be increased by merely increasing the filling There is, however, a point of maximum efficiency beyond which the oxygen consumption rises out of proportion to the output

Since, as is evident from the experiment quoted above, a change in the heart-rate affects its oxygen consumption, it is of interest

to remark that there is evidence which indicates that it is more economical for the heart to increase its output per minute by greater work per beat than by an increased rate This fact illustrates the importance of the nervous cardio-inhibitory mechanism, which prevents the heart from beating any faster than is necessary for a given inflow

The Nutrition of the Heart

In the lower vertebrates, *e g* the frog, the heart is nourished directly from the blood passing through it, but from the reptiles onwards there is developed a special blood-supply in the form of the coronary vessels

Ligature of the coronary arteries causes almost immediate death, the heart, deprived of its normal blood-supply, beats irregularly, goes into fibrillary twitchings, and then ceases to contract altogether

If a frog's heart is simply excised and allowed to remain without being fed, it ceases to beat after a time varying from a few minutes to an hour or so But if it is fed with a nutritive fluid, it will con-

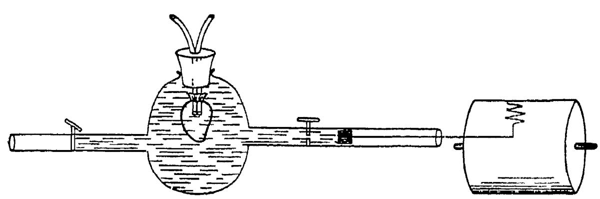


FIG 88 —Schafer's heart plethysmograph

tinue to beat for many hours Drugs may be added to the perfusion fluid, and their effects noted The fluid may be passed through the heart, and the apparatus employed may conveniently be that shown in the accompanying diagram of *Schafer's heart-plethysmograph* (fig 88) A frog's heart is tied on to the end of a perfusion cannula, one tube of which serves for the fluid to enter, the other for it to leave The end of the cannula projects into the ventricle, the frog's heart, it should be remembered, possesses no coronary vessels, the spongy texture of the cardiac tissue enables it to take up what it requires from the blood in its interior

The cannula passes through the well-fitting stopper of an air-tight vessel containing oil On one side of the vessel is a tube, in which a lightly moving piston is fitted, to this a writing-point is attached The piston is moved backwards and forwards by the changes of volume in the heart which cause the oil alternately to recede from and pass into this side tube The corresponding tube on the other

side can be opened and the tube with the piston closed when one wishes to cease recording the movements With instruments of this kind a large amount of valuable work has been done, and the name of Ringer is specially connected with this method of investigation A simple modification of this method is that of Symes, in which the heart is made to move a lever by means of a hook in the apex, in this case the cannula is a simple one and is introduced into the auricle

The best nutritive fluid to employ is undoubtedly the natural fluid, the blood But in order to use blood there are practical difficulties, it is difficult, for instance, to obtain much blood from a frog, it is difficult to prevent it from clotting, and if agents are added to check clotting, such agents usually act deleteriously on the cardiac tissue The blood of another animal may not be altogether innocuous, and this is specially the case if that blood has been previously whipped, and the fibrin removed It was, however, found by Ringer that a solution of the inorganic salts of sodium, calcium, and potassium (this is known as **Ringer's solution**) in the proportions occurring in the blood will maintain cardiac activity for a long time without the addition of any organic material These salts are not nutritive in the strict sense, but they constitute the stimulus for the heart's action Howell has shown that such an inorganic mixture is especially efficacious in throwing the sinus or venous end of the heart into rhythmical action The normal stimulus for the starting of the heart-beat is thus to be sought in the mineral constituents of the blood These mineral compounds in solution are broken up into their constituent ions, and of these, sodium ions are the most potent in maintaining the conditions that lead to irritability and contractility A solution of pure sodium chloride, however, finally throws the heart into a condition of relaxation, and it is necessary to mix with it small amounts of calcium ions to restrain this effect Potassium is not absolutely necessary, but it favours relaxation during diastole Calcium, on the other hand, is the element which produces and is necessary for contraction, and if present alone or in excess, will produce an extreme contraction known as *calcium rigor*

The Excised Mammalian Heart—The mammalian heart can also be kept alive and active after it has been excised Its usefulness, not only in reference to the metabolism occurring during normal cardiac activity but also from the pharmacological point of view, is obvious

In order to maintain the action of the excised mammalian heart, certain precautions must be taken—

1 The perfusion fluid must be at or about body temperature (37° C)

2 It must circulate through the coronary vessels
3 It must be well oxygenated

As before, living blood is the ideal fluid for perfusion, but the practical difficulties in its use are so great, that a modification of Ringer's fluid is usually employed On this fluid the heart will continue to beat for many hours, but it will beat longer (sometimes several days) if a little glucose is added to the solution We owe this modified fluid, and the oxygenation alluded to above, to Locke, the perfusion fluid now universally employed is consequently called **Locke's solution** and has the following composition —

Pure distilled water	100 c c
Sodium chloride	0 9 gramme
Potassium chloride	0 042 „
Calcium chloride	0 024 „
Sodium bicarbonate	0 02 „
Glucose	0 1 „

Locke investigated other sugars besides glucose, but no other has the same favourable effect, fructose is better than most other sugars, but not nearly so good as glucose

A mammal such as a cat or rabbit is killed by bleeding or pithing The heart enclosed in the pericardium is quickly cut out, and gently kneaded to free it from blood, in some warm Locke's solution The pericardium is then dissected off, and a cannula tied into the aorta, this is connected to a burette which is kept full of Locke's solution The solution is maintained at body temperature by a warm water-jacket, and is well oxygenated by letting oxygen bubble through it The fluid is then allowed to flow, its pressure closes the aortic valves, and so the fluid enters the coronary arteries, and escapes from the right auricle, which should be freely opened Under these conditions the heart will continue to beat for many hours A graphic record may be obtained by putting a small hook into the apex, and attaching this by a thread to a recording lever beneath it A very good illustration of the usefulness of the method for demonstrating the action of drugs consists in adding a small amount of chloroform to the circulating fluid one notices its immediate depressant effect, on the other hand, a minute dose of adrenaline markedly increases the rate and force of the heart

The Coronary Circulation—The heart normally is nourished by blood which supplies its muscle by way of the coronary arteries This circulation is dealt with on page 152

The Nutrition of Blood-Vessels and of Tissues generally.

The smaller blood-vessels are nourished directly by their contents but the larger vessels with thick walls have minute vessels running into their substances These are known as the *vasa vasorum*

What has been said of the heart pertains also to blood-vessels In order to keep blood-vessels alive and in a state to respond to drugs, they must be bathed in some such solution as Ringer's Rings of the vessel may be cut from a large vessel and attached to a delicate lever, or the fluid may be passed through the vessels under pressure and the rate of flow or the resistance to the flow measured It can be shown in this way that calcium is as essential for the contraction of smooth muscles as it is for the heart

It is probable that all tissues require similar nourishment, but some need more oxygen than others and some, such as nerve-cells, are exquisitely sensitive to changes in hydrogen ion concentration Hence it is extremely difficult to keep the central nervous system alive after the normal blood supply has failed For this reason the nervous system dies extremely rapidly at death The power of recovery of the different parts of the brain has been investigated by shutting off the blood supply, and it has been found that the higher parts are the first to suffer permanent damage as indicated by their failure to recover

For sustained nutrition many other elements are necessary to repair worn-out tissue The substances necessary to effect such repair are discussed later in the section on Metabolism

CHAPTER XIII

THE CIRCULATION IN THE BLOOD-VESSELS

THE movement of the blood from the heart through the arteries, capillaries, veins, and back to the heart, depends on the head of pressure produced by the pumping action of the heart In the succeeding pages we shall see how the intermittent movement imparted to the blood is converted into a constant flow through the delicate capillaries, and why the arterial blood-pressure does not fall while the heart is filling

The blood-pressure has the same purpose as the pressure in gas- or water-mains, namely, it ensures adequate distribution in varying circumstances and, as we shall see, should it fall in man below a certain critical level serious consequences ensue

The Arterial Blood-Pressure and its Maintenance

For purposes of description it is convenient to enumerate first the factors which maintain the arterial pressure These are —

1 The volume of the blood pumped out by the heart

2 The peripheral resistance to the flow of blood from the arteries

3 The elasticity of the blood-vessels

In order that we may understand blood-pressure, it is necessary to consider some of the general **laws of fluid pressure**

Let us consider the simple case of a fluid flowing from a reservoir, R (fig 89), along a tube, which is open at the other end

In the course of the tube a number of upright glass tubes are inserted at equal distances The upright tubes which measure the lateral pressure exerted by the fluid on the wall of the main tube, are called *manometers* Between C and D, a tap T can be opened or shut at will If the tap is closed there will naturally be no flow of fluid, and the fluid will rise to equal heights in the upright tubes A B and C

If now the tap is opened slightly, the fluid flows on account of the difference of pressure brought about by gravitation, the height of the fluid in the manometers indicates that the pressure is greatest in R, less in A, less still in B, and least of all in E

On account of the resistance of the tap, the difference between

D and C is much more marked than the difference between B and A If the fluid which flows out of the end of the tube is collected and poured back into R, we complete the circulation

The model serves to illustrate the important factor in the maintenance of the blood-pressure, namely, the **peripheral resistance** to the flow of blood from the arteries This may be varied by means of the tap T, if the tap is tightened, one imitates increased constriction of the peripheral vessels, if it is loosened, one imitates dilatation of the vessels If the tap T is not quite closed, the arterial pressure (in A and B) rises, and the venous pressure (in D and E) falls If it is closed entirely, the fluid in A and B rises

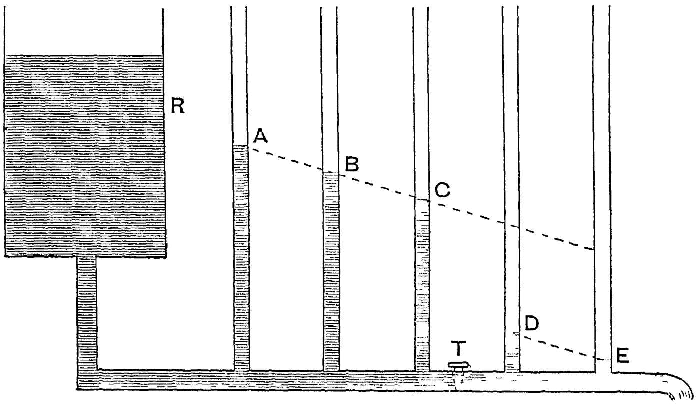


FIG 89 —Model to illustrate the effect of peripheral resistance

to the same level as that in R, the pressure of R is not felt at all by D and E, which empty themselves, and the flow ceases If the tap is freely opened, the arterial pressure falls, and the venous pressure rises

How the peripheral resistance and the **elasticity of the vessels** act together to maintain the pressure between the heart-beats, that is the **diastolic pressure**, may readily be shown by the model represented in fig 90

Since the total cross section of the circulation is smallest in the arterioles, it has been assumed that the peripheral resistance is in this region, but since the capillaries are not all open in a resting tissue they must also be part of the resistance The truth of this assumption has been demonstrated when the arterioles are dilated, the dilatation of the capillaries by the drug histamine causes a diminution of the peripheral resistance (Dale and Richards, Hemingway and M'Dowall)

The heart (H) is represented by bulb syringe with valves (V) which is worked by the hand, and the vessels by thick rubber or glass tubing E is a screw-clip which can be varied at will F is a football bladder full of fluid which can be shut off by means of clip G M is a mercury manometer to measure pressure

If clip E is open and G closed there is a small pressure during the time the bulb is squeezed, and the flow is intermittent If E is now tightened the variations in pressure (M) are greater but the flow is still intermittent and greater force is necessary to empty the bulb

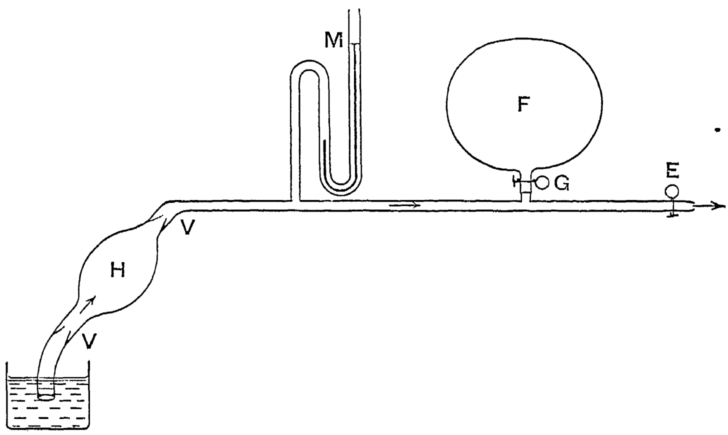


FIG 90 —Diagram of model to illustrate the parts played by E, peripheral resistance, and F, the elasticity, in maintaining a pressure in the mercury manometer, M The pump (H) is a ball syringe with valves, and F is a football bladder

If now the clip G is opened the benefit of adding the elasticity to the system is seen It becomes easier to empty the bulb, and the fluid which cannot escape past E distends the bag F which recoils during the refilling of H The fluctuations in pressure are no longer so great and the flow from E is now constant By experiment we can show that the tighter E is screwed the higher is the mean pressure

The vessels in the body are not rigid but elastic tubes When therefore at each beat the left ventricle forces out some 80 c c of blood into an already full arterial system the vessels are distended, while when the heart is refilling the vessels recoil to keep up the mean arterial pressure and the flow beyond the arterioles constant

In the body the elasticity is not localised to any particular part of the system as in the model, but is generalised It is supplied by the elastic and muscular tissue in the walls of the vessels themselves

The resistance corresponding to E of the model is supplied by

the arterioles, the relatively thick muscular walls of which are under the control of nerves and in health are kept constantly in a state of partial contraction or tone which may be varied from time to time

By assisting to maintain the diastolic pressure the elasticity of the system plays an important part in rendering the intermittent flow in the arteries into a continuous flow in the capillaries But for this we might feel the throb of the pulse-beat If, however, a tissue becomes tense because of congestion with fluid and blood the throb of the arteries is transmitted to the nerve-endings This is why we may feel throbbing in a septic finger or tooth

The **volume of blood** pumped out per beat has been discussed fully in relation to the output of the heart It depends primarily on the extent to which the heart is filled, and this in turn depends on the venous return and on the rate of the heart

Summary —We may then summarise by saying that the arterial pressure is maintained by the heart pumping into an elastic system of vessels more blood than can escape during the time of each contraction, the elastic vessels are distended and recoil during the filling of the heart Thus the arterial pressure is prevented from failing appreciably between the beats, and an intermittent flow produced by the heart is converted into a constant flow in the capillaries

Recording the Blood-Pressure in Animals

The fact that the blood exerts considerable pressure on the arterial walls may be readily shown by puncturing any artery, the blood is propelled with great force through the opening, and the jet rises to a considerable height, in a small artery, where the pressure is lower, the jet is not so high as in a large artery the jerky character of the outflow due to the intermittent action of the heart is also seen If a vein is similarly injured, the blood is expelled with much less force, and the flow is continuous, not intermittent

The first to make an advance on this very rough method of demonstrating blood-pressure was the Reverend Stephen Hales, vicar of Teddington (1722) He inserted, using a small brass tube as a cannula, a glass tube at right angles to the femoral artery of a horse, and noted the height to which the blood rose in it This is a method like that which we used in the first model described (fig 89) The blood rose to the height of about 8 feet, and having reached its highest point, it oscillated with the heart-beats, each cardiac systole causing a rise, each diastole a fall Hales also noted a general rise during each inspiration The method taught Hales these primary truths in connection with arterial pressure, but it possesses many disadvan-

tages, in the first place, the blood in the glass tube very soon clots, and in the second place, a column of liquid 8 feet high is an inconvenient one to work with

The first of these disadvantages was overcome to a great extent by Vierordt, who attached a tube filled with saturated solution of sodium carbonate to the artery, and measured the blood-pressure by the height of the column of this saline solution which the blood would support

The second disadvantage was overcome by Poiseuille, who introduced the heavy liquid, mercury, as the substance on which the blood exerted its pressure, and the U-shaped mercurial manometer was connected to the artery by a tube filled with sodium carbonate solution to delay clotting

The study of blood-pressure was not, however, satisfactory before the introduction by Carl Ludwig (1847) of the *Kymograph* in which Poiseuille's *hæmodynamometer* was combined with apparatus for obtaining a graphic record of the oscillations of the mercury The name *kymograph* or *wave-writer* is a very suitable one

A diagram of the apparatus is given in fig 91

An artery is exposed, ligatured at its distal end, and clamped, so that no hæmorrhage occurs, it is then opened, and a glass cannula is inserted and tied in The form of cannula usually employed (François Franck's) is shown on a larger scale, the narrow part is tied into the artery towards the heart, the cross-piece of the T is united to the manometer, the third limb is provided with a short piece of india-rubber tubing which is kept closed by a clip and only opened when the cannula is being filled at the beginning of the experiment or if the presence of a clot necessitates the washing out of the cannula

The tube by means of which the cannula is united to the manometer is made of thick rubber, so that none of the arterial force may be wasted in expanding it The tube, cannula, and proximal limb of the manometer are all filled with a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate, sodium sulphate, or other salt which will mix with blood and delay its clotting This is contained in a bottle some feet above the apparatus so that it can be supplied under pressure to the proximal limb of the manometer Before the clip is removed from the artery, the pressure is raised by opening clip B so that the mercury rises in the distal limb to a height just greater than that of the anticipated blood-pressure, this prevents blood passing too freely into the cannula when the arterial clip is removed

In the distal limb of the U-tube, floating on the surface of the mercury, is a float, from which a long wire extends upwards, and carries a stiff piece of parchment which writes on a moving surface

covered with smoked paper When the arterial clip is removed, the writing-point inscribes waves (see figs 91 and 92), the large waves corresponding to respiration (the rise of pressure in most animals accompanying inspiration),* the smaller ones to the individual

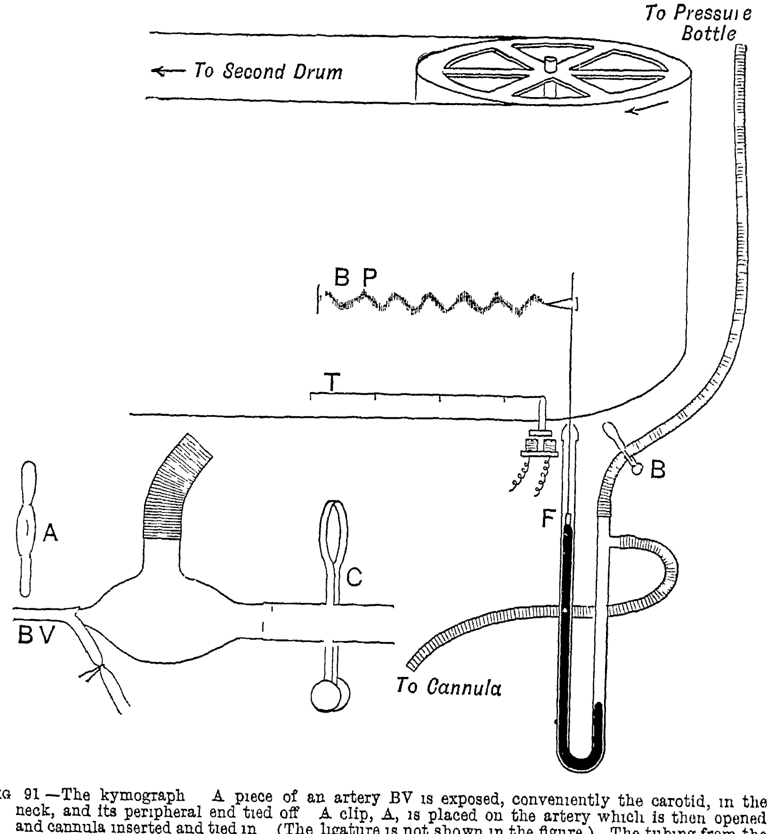


FIG 91 —The kymograph A piece of an artery BV is exposed, conveniently the carotid, in the neck, and its peripheral end tied off A clip, A, is placed on the artery which is then opened and cannula inserted and tied in (The ligature is not shown in the figure) The tubing from the mercury manometer is now connected to the cannula and the tubing filled with fluid under pressure equal to that expected by opening clip B and closing clip C Clip B is closed and by taking off clip A the artery is put in direct communication with the manometer BP=blood pressure tracing T, electro magnetic time marker and zero of blood pressure tracing F, float of mercury manometer BV, artery To wash out the cannula, clip A is applied, and clips B and C opened (M'Dowall)

heart-beats The blood-pressure is really twice as great as that indicated by the height of the tracing above the zero, T, because if the manometer is of equal bore throughout, the mercury falls in one limb the same distance that it rises in the other, the true pressure

* The explanation of the respiratory curves on the tracing is postponed till after we have studied Respiration

is measured by the difference of level in the two limbs of the manometer (fig 91)

It will be observed that the heart-beats indicate that in large arteries there is a considerable fluctuation in pressure between the systole and diastole of the heart The limits of each are known as the systolic and diastolic pressure respectively With a mercury manometer, the inertia of the mercury reduces the difference (the pulse pressure), which in man may be as much as 50 mm Hg The full extent of the pulse pressure may be recorded by a rapidly moving optical manometer such as that described on p 130

In taking a tracing of **venous blood-pressure**, the pressure is

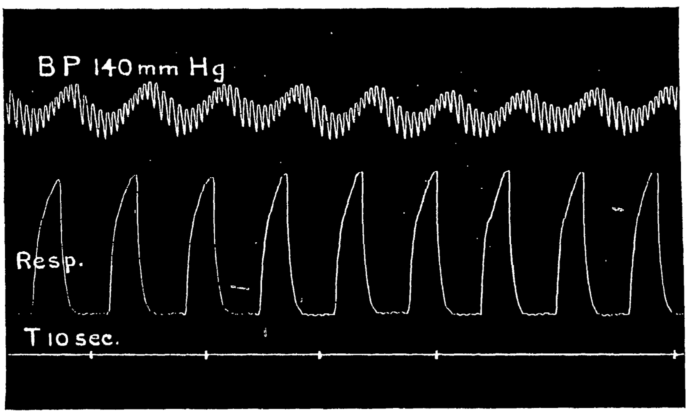


FIG 92 —Tracing of arterial blood pressure (B P) obtained with a mercurial manometer attached to a cat's carotid The smaller waves are heart beats, which are set on larger ones due to the respiratory movements recorded below The animal was breathing slowly (M'Dowall)

so low and corresponds to so few millimetres of mercury, that a watery solution (*e g* sodium bicarbonate) is employed instead of mercury If the vein which is investigated is near the heart, a venous pulse is exhibited on the tracing, with small waves as before corresponding to heart-beats, and larger waves to respiration, but the respiratory rise in pressure now accompanies expiration

The *capillary pressure* is roughly estimated by the amount of pressure necessary to blanch the skin, this has been ascertained in animals and men (v Kries, Roy and Brown)

Other manometers are also employed besides the mercurial one Fick's is one of these The manometer itself is a hollow C-shaped spring filled with liquid, this opens with increase, and closes with decrease of pressure, and the movements of the spring are communicated to a lever provided with a writing-point (fig 93)

Hurthle's manometer (see p 129) is also very much used The advantage of these manometers is that the character and extent of each pressure change are clearly seen In a mercury manometer the inertia is so great that there is no response to the very rapid variations in pressure which occur within an artery during each cardiac cycle

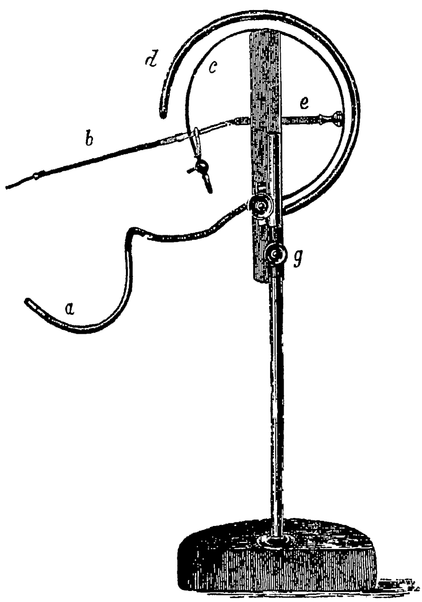


FIG 93 —Fick's "C" spring manometer *a*, Tube to be connected with artery *c*, hollow spring, the movement of which moves *b*, the writing lever, *e*, screw to regulate height of *b*, *d*, outside protective spring, *g*, screw to fix on the upright of the support

For all accurate modern work some form of optical recording, *e g* that of Wiggers, is used (see fig 72) These instruments, though useful for recording the complete changes in pressure, require calibration that is, the extent of movement that corresponds to *known* pressures must be ascertained by actual experiment

The following table gives the average height of blood-pressure in various parts of the vascular system in man They have been very largely inferred from experiments on animals, but in many cases have been confirmed by experiments on man —

Large arteries (*e g* carotid)	140	mm (about 6 inches) mercury
Medium arteries (*e g* radial)	110	mm mercury
Capillaries (arterial end)	30 to 35	,, ,,
Capillaries (venous end)	15 to 20	,, ,,
Small veins of arm	9	,, ,,
Portal vein	10	,, ,,
Inferior vena cava	3	,, ,,
Large veins of neck	from 0 to − 8	,, ,,

The pressure in the pulmonary artery is about a quarter of that in the systemic arteries

The blood-pressure falls slowly in the great arteries and manifests oscillations corresponding with the alternate systole and diastole of the heart, at the end of the arterial system it falls suddenly and extensively in the course of the arterioles, it again falls gradually through the capillaries and veins Such a diagram

of blood-pressure is thus very different from one of velocity, the velocity like the pressure falls from the arteries to the capillaries, but unlike it, rises again in the veins

Fig 94 represents roughly the fall of pressure along the systemic vascular system

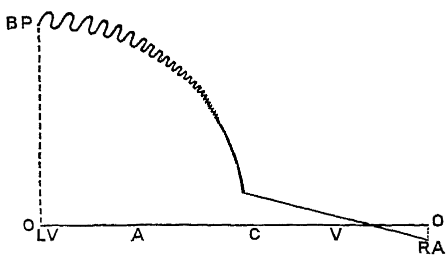


FIG 94 —Height of blood pressure (BP) in LV, left ventricle A, arteries, C, capillaries, V, veins, RA, right atrium, OO, line of no pressure

It indicates that the chief peripheral resistance is in the small arteries, this is probably true when the tissue is active when the capillaries are all open but the work of Dale and Richards indicates that in some circumstances the capillaries may play a larger part than the diagram indicates

It must be understood that these pressures are subject to considerable variations from alteration of the variable factors on which blood-pressure depends

Blood-Pressure in Man

Special apparatus known as **sphygmometers** are used for the measurement of blood-pressure in man Martin's modification of Riva Rocci's apparatus consists of a four-sided elastic bag about four and a half inches wide, and long enough to encircle the arm. It is wrapped round the arm, and outside it a cuff of strong canvas is firmly strapped Air is forced into the bag by a tube leading from a ball syringe, this tube is also connected by a side branch to a mercury manometer As one continues to pump and distend the bag, the pulse-beats are transmitted to the mercury which rises in the manometer and oscillates with the pulse-beats As the pressure rises the oscillations become more pronounced, and at a certain point they exhibit a greater excursion than they do at any other height, beyond this point of *maximal pulsation*, the oscillations diminish in amplitude, and as the distension of the bag is increased still more, the pressure which is sufficient to obliterate the pulse is at last reached, the oscillations of the mercury cease, and the pulse is no longer to be felt at the wrist The pressure necessary to do this is equal to the *systolic pressure*, and the height of the mercurial column should be noted when the pulse just disappears The point of maximal pulsation gives a reading of the *diastolic pressure*

The more recently introduced *auditory method* (Korotkow's

sounds) is a simple, quick, and trustworthy way of estimating both the systolic and diastolic pressures The armlet is inflated until the compression applied is more than sufficient to obliterate the pulse The chest-piece of an ordinary binaural stethoscope is applied over the brachial artery just below the armlet It is advisable also to take the systolic pressure by palpation so as to compare the tactile and auditory indices of pressure When the armlet is thus distended no sound is heard and no pulse is felt The air is then allowed to escape gradually from the armlet, and at a certain point, which is read off on the manometer, a distinct sound is heard with

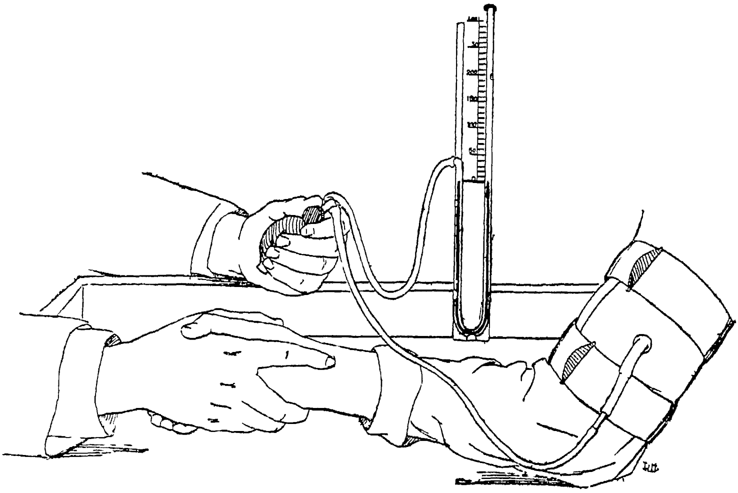


FIG 95 —Martin's sphygmometer (made by Hawksley)

each heart-beat This marks the beginning of the transmission of the pulse through the artery, and is the auditory index of the systolic pressure, it is heard a little earlier than the return of the pulse can be felt at the wrist With further lowering of the armlet pressure, the sound successively becomes murmurish (second phase), loud and clear (third phase), dulled and weakened (fourth phase), and finally inaudible The change from the third to the fourth phase, that is, the sudden dulling and weakening of the sound, constitutes the diastolic index In many instances there is little difference between the dulling and the final extinction of the sound But often, especially in young adults, the difference may be very marked, amounting sometimes to 30 mm Hg , to take the abolition of the sound as the diastolic index in such cases would lead to serious error

In healthy young adults examined by this method in the sitting posture, the **systolic** pressure averages about **110 to 135 mm**

Hg and the **diastolic** pressure between **60 and 80 mm** in different individuals Muscular exertion and mental excitement raise the pressure The difference between systolic and diastolic pressure is termed the *pulse-pressure* In disease there are great variations, and the study of these is a very valuable aid to diagnosis

The Pulse

This is the most characteristic feature of the arterial flow It is the response of the arterial wall to the changes in lateral pressure caused by the heart-beat

The physician usually feels the pulse in the radial artery, since this is near the surface, and supported by bone It is a most valuable indication of the condition of the patient's heart and vessels It is necessary in feeling a pulse to note the following points —

1 *Its frequency* this gives usually the rate of the heart but strictly only the number of beats of the left ventricle which produce pulse-waves strong enough to reach the wrist

2 *Its force* whether it is a strong, bounding pulse, or a feeble beat, this indicates the force with which the heart is beating

3 *Its regularity or irregularity* irregularity may occur owing to irregular cardiac action either in force or in rhythm

4 *Its tension* that is, the force necessary to obliterate it This gives an indication of the height of the blood-pressure

In order to study the pulse more fully, it is necessary to obtain a graphic record of the pulse-beat, and this is accomplished by the use of the **sphygmograph** This instrument consists of a series of levers, at one end of which is a button placed over the artery, the other end is provided with a writing-point to inscribe the magnified record of the arterial movement on a travelling surface

The instrument commonly used is that of Dudgeon (fig 96)

It is provided with an arrangement by which the pressure can be adjusted so as to obtain the best record The instrument has the disadvantage of giving oscillations of its own to the sphygmogram. It is also important to remember that the pad or button placed on the artery rests partly on the venæ comites, so that not only arterial tension but any turgidity arising from venous congestion, will affect the height and form of the sphygmographic record

Fig 97 represents a typical sphygmographic tracing obtained from the radial artery

The explanation of the various waves is derived from information obtained by taking simultaneous tracings of the pulse, aortic pressure, apex-beat, and intraventricular pressure By this means

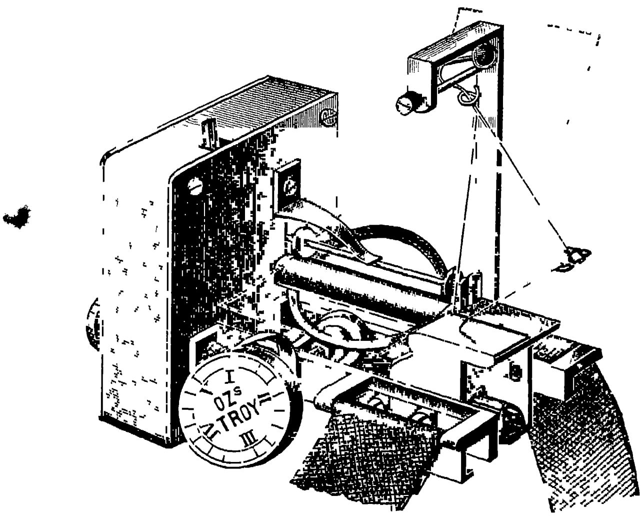


FIG 96 —Dudgeon's sphygmograph The dotted outline represents the piece of blackened paper on which the sphygmogram is written

it is found that the *primary* (A) and *pre-dicrotic* (C) waves occur during the systole of the heart, and the other waves during the diastole The primary wave is produced by the ventricular systole expanding the artery The sharp top at its summit is due to the sudden upward spring of the light lever of the sphygmograph The closure of the aortic valves occurs just before the *dicrotic* wave (D) The secondary waves on the down-stroke other than the dicrotic are due to the elastic tension of the arteries, and are increased in number when the tension of the arteries is greatest The dicrotic wave has a different origin It was at one time thought that this wave was due to a wave of pressure reflected from the periphery, but this view is at once excluded by the fact that wherever we take the pulse-tracing, whether from the aorta, carotid, radial, dorsalis pedis, or elsewhere, this secondary elevation always follows the

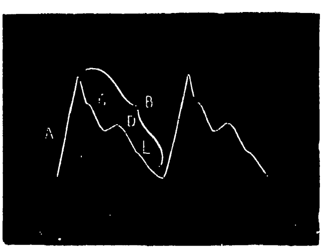


FIG 97 —Diagram of pulse tracing A, up stroke, B, down stroke, C, pre dicrotic wave, D, dicrotic, E, post-dicrotic wave

primary wave after the same interval, showing that it has its origin in the commencement of the arterial system A single pressure-wave reflected from the periphery would be impossible, as such a wave reflected from one part would be interfered with by those from other parts, moreover, a dicrotic elevation produced by a pressure-wave reflected from the periphery, would be increased by high peripheral resistance, and not diminished

The primary cause of the dicrotic wave is the closure of the semilunar valves, as already explained when we were considering the cardiac valves, the outflow of blood from the heart suddenly ceases, and the blood is driven back against the closed aortic valve by the elastic recoil of the aorta, the wave rebounds from these and is propagated through the arterial system as the dicrotic elevation The production of the dicrotic wave is favoured by a low blood-pressure when the heart is beating forcibly, as in fever Such a pulse is called a dicrotic pulse (fig 98), and the second beat can easily be felt by the finger

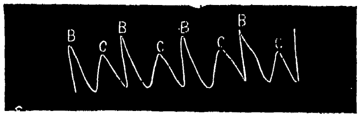


FIG 98 —Dicrotic pulse

In our study of endocardiac pressure, we saw that the systolic plateau has an ascending and a descending slope (see pp 130 and 131), we can now explain this fact If, after the first sudden rise of pressure in the aorta, the peripheral resistance is low and the blood can be driven on from the aorta more rapidly than it is thrown in, the plateau will sink If, on the other hand, the peripheral resistance is high, the aortic pressure will rise as long as the blood is flowing in, and we get an ascending systolic plateau and an anacrotic pulse (fig 99) This is seen in Bright's disease, in which the peripheral resistance is very high

FIG 99 —Anacrotic pulse

If a long pulse-tracing is taken, the effect of the respiration may be seen in an increase of pressure, and, in some people, a slight acceleration of the heart's beats during inspiration

The main waves of the pulse can be demonstrated without the use of any instrument at all, by allowing the blood to spurt from a cut artery on to the surface of a large sheet of white paper travelling past it We thus obtain what is called a *hæmautograph* (fig 100)

The pulse-wave travels along the arteries, and is started by the propulsion of the contents of the left ventricle into the already full arterial system The more distant the artery from the heart, the longer the interval that elapses between the ventricular beat and the arrival of the pulse-wave Thus it is felt in the carotid earlier than in the radial artery, and still later in the dorsal artery of the foot The difference of time is, however, very slight, it is only a small fraction of a second

FIG 100 —Hæmautograph, to be read from right to left

The rate of propagation of the pulse-wave is of some importance since for a given blood-pressure it indicates the elasticity of the arterial wall It travels at the rate of from **5 to 10 metres per second**, that is twice or thrice the velocity of the blood-flow The method of ascertaining this may be illustrated by the use of a long elastic tube into which fluid is forced by the sudden stroke of a pump If a series of levers are placed along the tube at measured distances, those nearest the pump will rise first, those farthest from it last If these are arranged to write on a revolving cylinder under one another, the movements will be shown graphically, and the time-interval between them can be measured by a time-tracing The same principle is applied to the arteries of the body, a series of Marey's tambours is applied to the heart and to various arteries at known distances from the heart, their levers are arranged to write immediately under one another The difference in time between the commencement of their up-strokes is measured by a time-tracing

More recently A V Hill has introduced the hot-wire sphygmograph in which the expansion of the artery with each heart-beat makes a puff of air cool an electrically-heated wire, the electrical resistance of which is thereby varied The wire forming one arm of a Wheatstone's bridge, the alteration in resistance is shown by a string galvanometer, and recorded photographically Two arteries at different distances from the heart are used, the time of arrival of the pulse-wave in each being recorded by the excursion of a string in the galvanometer the two strings being arranged so that their images on the recording surface fall in the same vertical plane The method is a very accurate one

The Venous Pulse and the Polygraph

The venous pulse is recorded by placing over the lower end of the internal jugular vein in the neck a hollow metal cup which transmits changes in pressure to a delicate tambour The waves are produced in part by interruption of the venous inflow and by the neighbouring arteries Thus when the auricle is filling, the venous pressure rises

to cause the V wave (fig 84, p 144), but this falls as soon as the auriculo-ventricular valves open The subsequent filling and contraction of the auricle cause the important A wave, which is followed $\frac{1}{5}$ of a second later by the C wave This wave is due to the approximation of the large arteries and veins, *e g* the innominate, and, since the wave is present in pressure records of the auricle itself, it may in part be due to the bulging of the floor of the auricle during ventricular systole

An analysis is made of the auricular tracing by taking simultaneously a tracing of the radial pulse by means of the **polygraph** in which the venous and arterial records are on the same strip of paper (fig 84, p 144) The wave which occurs on the venous tracing **one-tenth of a second** before the radial pulse is the C wave, while usually the preceding wave is the A wave Fig 84 shows additional waves which can be neglected at present

The importance of polygraph records is that from them the number of auricular contractions may be counted and the *a-c* interval, which corresponds to the P R interval of the electro-cardiogram, gives a measure of the time (**normally one-fifth of a second**) taken for the excitation wave to pass down the auriculo-ventricular bundle

The Velocity of the Blood-Flow

The velocity of the current of blood is inversely proportional to the sectional area of the bed through which it flows The flow is therefore swiftest in the aorta and arteries, and slowest in the capillaries In very round numbers, the rate is about a foot per second in the aorta, and about an inch per minute in the capillaries The capacity of the veins is about twice or thrice that of the arteries, so the velocity in the veins is from a half to a third of that in the corresponding arteries The rate in the veins increases as we approach the heart, as the total sectional area of the venous trunks becomes less and less

The question of velocity is one of great importance, for it is on velocity that the actual amount of blood supplying the tissues mainly depends In the capillaries the rate can be measured by direct microscopic investigation of the transparent portions of animals E H Weber and Valentin were among the earliest to make these measurements in the frog, and the mean of their estimates gives the velocity as 25 mm per minute in the systemic capillaries In warm-blooded animals the velocity is somewhat greater

In the larger vessels direct observations of this kind are not possible, and it is necessary to have recourse to some instrumental method

exactly with those in d d', but if c c' is turned at right angles to its present position, there is no communication between h and a and i and a', but h communicates directly with i, and if turned through two right angles c' communicates with d, and c with d', and there is no direct communication between h and i The experiment is performed in the following way —The artery to be investigated is divided and connected with two cannulæ and tubes which fit it accurately with h and i, h is the central end and i the peripheral, the bulb a is filled with olive oil up to a point rather lower than k, and a' and the remainder of a is filled with defibrinated blood, the tube on k is then carefully clamped, the tubes d and d' are also filled with defibrinated blood When everything is ready, the blood is allowed to flow into a through h, thus driving the oil over into a' and displacing the defibrinated blood through i into the peripheral end of the artery, a' is then full of oil, when the blood reaches the former level of the oil in a, the disc c c' is turned rapidly through two right angles, and the blood flowing through d into a' again displaces the oil, which is driven into a This

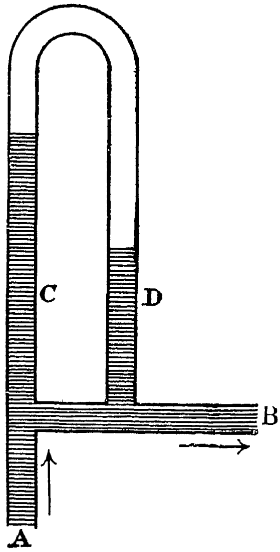


FIG 103 —Diagram to illustrate the principle of Pitot's tube and Cybulski's photo hæmatachometer The difference in the levels of C and D indicates the velocity from A to B

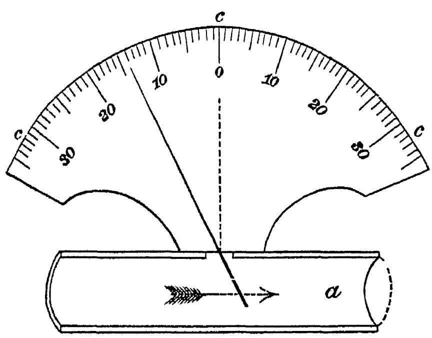


FIG 104 —Diagram of Chauveau's dromograph a, Brass tube for introduction into the lumen of the artery, and containing an index needle, which passes through the elastic membrane in its side, and moves by the impulse of the blood current, c, graduated scale, for measuring the extent of the oscillations of the needle

is repeated several times, and the duration of the experiment noted The capacity of a and a' is known, the diameter of the artery is

then measured, and as the number of times *a* has been filled in a given time is known, the velocity of the current can be calculated

Many modifications of Ludwig's original instrument have been devised, but the principle is the same in all

The stromuhr has one advantage over the hæmodromometer, in that it enables one to note changes in *mean* velocity during the course of an experiment The mean velocity varies very greatly even during a short experiment Thus, in the carotid artery of a dog, the velocity of the stream varied from 350 to 730 mm per second in the course of eighty seconds, in the same artery of the

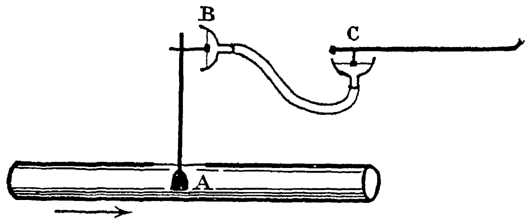


FIG 105 —Chauveau's dromograph connected with tambours to give a graphic record

rabbit the variations were still more extensive (94 to 226 mm per second—Dogiel)

Many instruments have been devised for the study of blood velocity, as the illustrations indicate The stromuhr gives the mean velocity, but the photo-hæmatachometer (fig 103) and the dromograph (figs 104 and 105) furnish information concerning the changes in velocity which occur during the cardiac cycle

The Time of a Complete Circulation

Among the earliest investigators of the question how long an entire circulation takes, was Hering He injected a solution of potassium ferrocyanide into the central end of a divided jugular vein, and collected the blood either from the other end of the same vein, or from the corresponding vein of the other side The substance injected is one that can be readily detected by a chemical test (the Prussian blue reaction) Vierordt improved this method by collecting the blood as it flowed out, in a rotating disc divided into a number of compartments The blood was tested in each compartment, and the ferrocyanide was discovered in one which in the horse received the blood about half a minute after the injection had been made The experiment was performed in

a large number of animals, and the following were a few of the results obtained —

In the horse	31 seconds
„ dog	16 „
„ cat	6 5 „
„ fowl	5 „

At first sight these numbers show no agreement, but in each case it was found that the time occupied was 27 heart-beats The dog's heart, for instance, beats twice as fast as the horse's, and so the time of the entire circulation is only half as long It must, however, be clearly understood that these figures are those for anæsthetised animals at rest During activity enormous changes may occur

The great objection to the older methods was the fact that hæmorrhage occurred throughout the experiment, and this materially weakened the heart and slowed down the circulation Stewart has employed two methods which avoid this In the first, the carotid artery is exposed, and non-polarisable electrodes applied to it These are placed in circuit with a cell, a galvanometer, and one arm of a Wheatstone's bridge After the resistances in the bridge have been balanced, and the galvanometer needle brought to rest, a small quantity of strong sodium chloride solution is injected into the opposite carotid As soon as the salt reaches the carotid artery, the resistance of the blood is altered, the balance of the Wheatstone's bridge is upset, and the galvanometer needle moves The period between the injection and the swing of the needle is accurately noted

The second method used is even simpler, and gives practically the same results, a solution of methylene blue is injected into a vessel The corresponding vessel on the opposite side is exposed, placed on a sheet of white paper, and strongly illuminated The time is noted between the injection and the moment when the blue colour is seen to appear in the vessel under observation Stewart has applied these methods also for determining the time occupied by the passage of blood through various districts of the circulation, the longest circulation times were found in the portal system and the lower limbs He calculates that the total circulation time in man is about 15 seconds

None of these methods, however, give the true time of the entire circulation, they give merely the shortest possible time in which any particle of blood can travel through the shortest pathway The blood that travels in the axial current, or which takes a broad pathway through wide capillaries, will arrive far more speedily at its destination than that which creeps through tortuous or constricted

vessels The direct observations of Tigerstedt on the output of the left ventricle show that the circulation-time of the whole blood is at least three times as long as the period arrived at by the Hering method It is therefore fallacious to use circulation-times as a basis for calculating the total amount of the blood in the body It must be understood that during actual life there is an enormous variation of the speed of the blood-flow just as there is a great change in the blood-pressure and heart-rate

The Capillary Circulation

From what has been said in the previous pages it is evident that the capillary pressure is much lower than that in the arteries A rough idea of the actual pressure may be obtained by finding the amount of pressure necessary to blanch the skin The average pressure in the skin capillaries is about 10 mm of mercury, but there is good reason to believe that in many of the capillaries the pressure is appreciably higher

The circulation in the capillaries may readily be observed in the web of the foot, or the mesentery of a frog In the larger vessels there is seen to be a distinct pulsation with each heart-beat, but in the smaller capillaries the blood is seen to flow with a constant equable motion The red blood corpuscles move along mostly in single file and bend in various ways to accommodate themselves to the tortuous course of the capillary, but they recover their normal outline on reaching a wider vessel If the capillaries are observed for some time they are seen to undergo changes in calibre, some shutting down, and others opening up These changes apparently take place independently of the arteries and veins, and depend on the oxygen requirements of the tissue supplied

The capillaries may readily be made to contract if touched with a sharp needle This contraction normally spreads over a considerable area, but if cocaine has been previously applied to the web, the constriction is limited to the point of stimulation Since cocaine is a known paralysant of nervous tissue this experiment indicates that the capillaries are controlled by nerves This is supported by the observation of Hooker that stimulation of the cervical sympathetic nerves causes constriction of the capillaries of the rabbit's ear, while Doi has demonstrated dilatation in the frog's web by nervous stimulation (Bayliss)

The human capillaries may be observed in the skin with an ordinary microscope, if the skin is soaked in oil and adequately illuminated In the nail-fold capillary loops may be seen Some skin capillaries remain permanently open but others open and close at

intervals The opening up occurs in all tissues during activity or after cutting off the oxygen supply (see p 200)

It is important to realise that the total number of the capillaries in the body is enormous, and that were they all open at once the effect on the capacity of the vascular system would be very great They would, as it were, soak up the blood like a sponge

It has been shown (Dale and Richards) that the substance **histamine** has the power of causing widespread capillary dilatation, and brings about, as a result, a profound fall of blood-pressure, which may end in death The blood is lost in the capillaries and does not return to the heart It is suggested that secondary wound shock may be due to the production of such a substance in the damaged tissues, since the symptoms of this condition are likewise explained by a diminution of the blood in active circulation

Fainting in a hot bath is probably also due to a dilatation of the capillaries of the skin

The capillaries of the skin have been found to be specially sensitive to histamine, an observation possibly explained by the finding of Best, that the skin, unlike the other tissues of the body, does not contain the enzyme histaminase which destroys histamine Lewis has shown that when the skin is injured the redness and whealing (*e g* in burns) is due to the local production of a dilator substance which not only opens up the capillaries but causes increased permeability of their walls This is evidently a protective mechanism

Considerable discussion has taken place on what normally keeps a large number of the capillaries closed It is probably nervous control, but the closure returns after the nerves are cut Krogh has suggested that post-pituitary hormone circulating in the blood is responsible. Dale has suggested adrenaline, Hemingway and M'Dowall have put forward evidence that the normal alkalinity of the blood is sufficient They have shown that even in perfused vessels the capillary tone or contraction as indicated by the dilator response to histamine may be kept up by alkali provided the accumulation of lactic acid in the dying tissue is prevented by chloralose (see Rigor Mortis) This view is supported also by the evidence of Fleisch, who perfused vessels with fluids of varying hydrogen-ion concentration

Certain it is that acids such as carbon dioxide and lactic acid cause capillary dilatation This no doubt accounts for the fact that we readily obtain flushing of the skin after compressing a small area or after temporary occlusion of the blood-supply (see Exercise, p 201) The fact that there actually is a dilatation of vessels during the occlusion has been definitely shown by the fact that the venous pressure in the occluded part falls (Kendrew)

The Venous Return

In our study of the output of the heart we saw that the output depends primarily on the amount of blood which reaches it from the veins This return depends on a variety of factors, and provided the heart is efficient its extent may be estimated by recording the venous pressure

The Venous Pressure—This pressure is clearly dependent on the heart and the arterial pressure The pressure is highest in the small veins at the periphery, but falls off to zero or a minus pressure in the veins near the heart during diastole The pressure in veins may be taken exactly as is arterial pressure, except that since the pressure is so low water is used in the manometer instead of mercury An inverted bell of very thin glass makes a convenient float In man, probably the most trustworthy way is to observe the pressure at which a saline solution will just stop running into a vein through a cannula The amount of pressure necessary to compress a superficial vein or which will just prevent the re-filling of a vein emptied by compression from the periphery inwards is also an index of the venous pressure The venous pressure is normally about 5 to 15 cm H_2O or about 2 to 10 mm Hg in a vein at the elbow, held at the level of the right auricle (Bedford and Wright)

The venous pressure varies directly with the blood volume relative to the capacity of the circulation, in this way it is different from the arterial pressure, which may be kept up reflexly by the vasomotor centre If blood is lost, the arteries and capillaries constrict and by increasing the peripheral resistance keep up the arterial pressure, but as a result (corresponding to a closing of the tap in fig 89) the venous pressure falls This adaptation also occurs whenever a drug is injected which causes any marked increase in the capacity of the circulation It is seen after the injection of histamine (see capillaries, p 179) and of alcohol, which dilates skin vessels, although in neither instance may there be, at least with small doses, any sustained fall of arterial pressure

When, however, there is a large increase in the capacity of the circulation, as when a large dose of histamine is injected (*e g* 2 mg histamine into a cat), or when the nervous control of the blood-vessels is cut off, then there is a fall of venous pressure and failure of the circulation because the heart does not receive sufficient blood This phenomenon occurs in **shock** and is of great surgical importance In exercise and in hæmorrhage the venous return is increased by a reduction in the capacity of the circulation resulting from constriction of vessels especially of the skin and the intestine All

vessels including the large abdominal veins and also the spleen take part in this reaction

The return of the blood to the heart is facilitated by respiration Indeed, so important is this function that the term "*respiratory pump*" is used (L Hill) Any temporary cessation in respiration causes a fall in arterial blood-pressure, until asphyxia ensues The pressure in the chest is normally negative During each inspiration there is produced an increased negative pressure in the chest and at the same time an increased positive pressure in the abdomen The negative pressure in the chest tends to draw blood into the chest and the positive pressure to drive up blood from the abdomen Thus at each inspiration, since the valves of the veins prevent regurgitation into the lower limbs, blood is drawn towards the heart The action of the respiratory pump is increased with the respiration during exercise

The *muscular movements* of the limbs also assist in returning the blood to the heart during exercise, by compression of the valved veins

The venous pressure is also much influenced by the efficiency of the heart as a pump, and the weaker the heart becomes the greater is the venous pressure because blood continues to flow into the veins from the arteries, the blood in which is at a much higher pressure (see fig 110) There is, indeed, evidence that height of the venous pressure is the most delicate test of the efficiency of the heart A rise of venous pressure is very commonly seen in cardiac diseases, and the venous congestion so produced may cause dire results

On the other hand, increased efficiency of the heart causes a fall of venous pressure

CHAPTER XIV

THE CONTROL OF THE CIRCULATION

THE circulation is controlled by chemical and nervous mechanisms which maintain its efficiency in whatever circumstances the body may be placed One great purpose of the control is to provide wide variations in blood supply to various organs, especially the muscles according to their activity and requirements The control also prevents the efficiency of the circulation from being unduly affected by changes in the position of the body and ensures that in the event of loss of blood, the heart and brain—the most essential organs of the body—are the last to suffer seriously

The Control of the Heart-Rate—This rate is set by the pace-maker, which may be influenced appreciably by various factors It may be affected directly by the temperature of the blood reaching it and by the pressure of the blood in the right auricle A rise in either the temperature or the pressure plays a part in the acceleration which takes place during exercise and in fever The most important influences, however, are those reaching the pace-maker by way of those parts of the autonomic nervous system which for convenience, we may call the cardio-accelerator mechanism and the cardio-inhibitory mechanism both of which act reflexly

The Cardio-Accelerator Mechanism—Although for convenience this mechanism is termed accelerator, it is to be understood that it is also augmentor

The *efferent path* belongs to the sympathetic In the mammal the sympathetic fibres leave the cord by the second and third dorsal nerves, and possibly by anterior roots of two or more lower nerves, they pass by the rami communicantes to the stellate ganglion, or first thoracic ganglion, and thence by the annulus and by the inferior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic they proceed to the heart (see fig 106)

In man, the cardiac branches of the sympathetic travel to the heart from the annulus and cervical sympathetic in superior, middle, and lower bundles of fibres These pass into the cardiac plexuses, and surrounding the coronary vessels ultimately reach the heart

In the frog the sympathetic fibres leave the spinal cord by the

anterior root of the third spinal nerve, and pass by the ramus communicans to the third sympathetic ganglion, then to the second sympathetic ganglion, then by the annulus round the subclavian artery to the first sympathetic ganglion, and finally in the main trunk of the sympathetic, to near the exit of the vagus from the

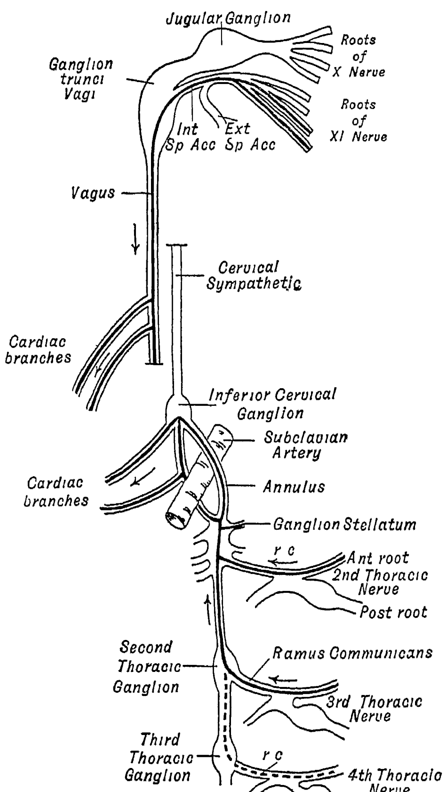


FIG 106 —Heart nerves of mammal (Diagrammatic)

cranium Here they join the vagus and run down to the heart within its sheath, forming the joint vago-sympathetic trunk These fibres are indicated by the dark line in fig 107 The fibres of the sympathetic which go up into the skull are for the supply of blood-vessels there It should be noted that the frog has no accessory nerve

The sympathetic fibres appear to pass to Bidder's ganglion at the

junction of the auricles and the ventricle This ganglion acts as a relay station

The fibres from the brain appear to pass down the spinal cord in its lateral columns, but detailed information on this point is lacking Stimulation of the fibres anywhere along their course brings about cardiac acceleration and augmentation There is, however, evidence that separate fibres may be concerned in these two functions, and it is claimed that in mammals one or two small

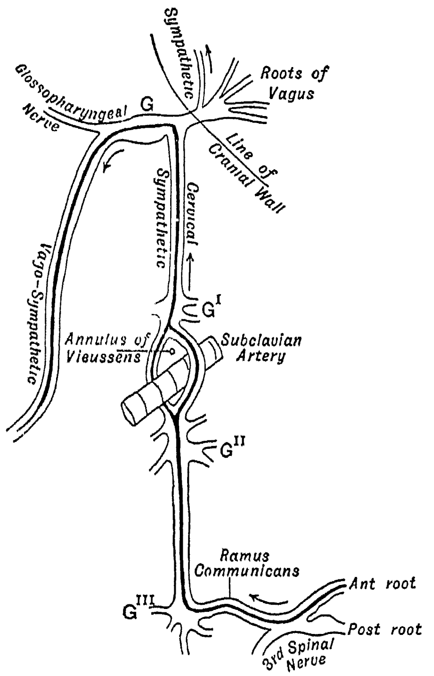


FIG 107 —Heart nerves of frog (Diagrammatic)

nerves leaving the stellate ganglion produce augmentation without acceleration Very marked stimulation of the sympathetic may be produced by the intravenous injection of adrenaline, an extract of the medulla of the suprarenal gland which acts in the region of the sympathetic nerve-endings

The *central part* of the accelerator mechanism we have very little information about, except that we have reason to believe that it is closely associated with the cardio-inhibitory centre in the medulla and may extend up to the mid-brain

There is evidence that this central mechanism is stimulated

by anæmia or asphyxia and by a fall of blood-pressure in the centre

Afferent impulses reach the centres by practically every sensory nerve Of special interest, however, are the impulses which reach it by the sensory nerves of the skin and from the right auricle If a sensory nerve is stimulated, either electrically in an animal or

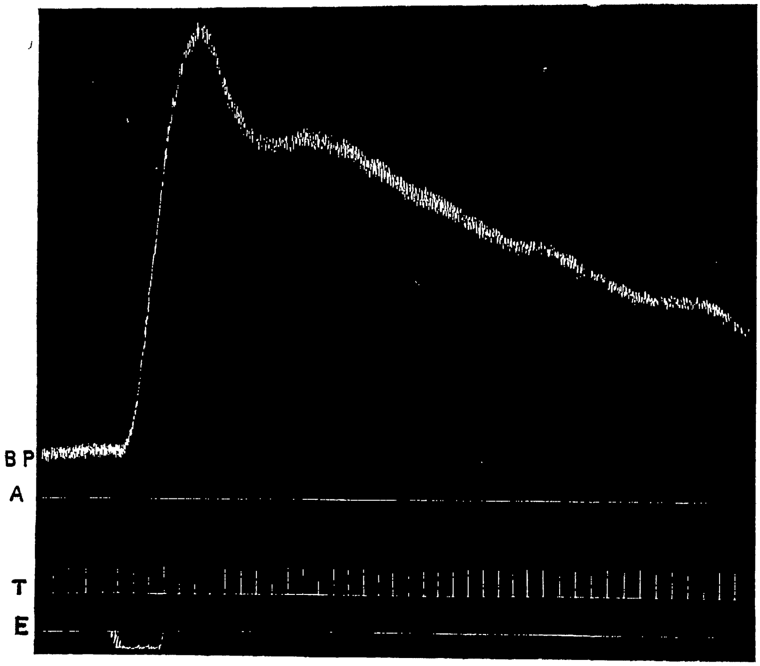


FIG 106 —Rise in arterial blood pressure produced by stimulating the central end of a sensory nerve (external popliteal) in a cat under the influence of morphine and curare B P , blood pressure, A, abscissa or base line, T, time intervals of 5 seconds, E, signal line, the lowering of which indicates the period of stimulation of the nerve The size of the figure is slightly reduced in reproduction (Lent by Sir C S Sherrington)

by causing pain in man, cardio-acceleration is immediately observed It probably constitutes a preparation for immediate activity

The Higher Centres—It is well known that the heart quickens in states of excitement and that sudden shocks may arrest its activity It appears not unlikely that the cardiac acceleration of excitement is closely related to the phenomenon of conditioned sensation (*q v*)

The impulses set up by a rise of pressure in the right auricle are of special importance in exercise and bring into operation the Bainbridge reflex (which is dealt with in relation to Exercise)

The accelerator mechanism is to a small extent always in action, since section of the accelerator nerves or their paralysis by ergotamine may cause a slowing of the heart

Increased activity of the accelerator mechanism by increasing the output of the heart causes a *rise in blood-pressure* which, as we shall see, is usually, in the intact animal, further enhanced by constriction of the blood-vessels which is produced at the same time by the excitatory agent, *e g* sensory stimulation

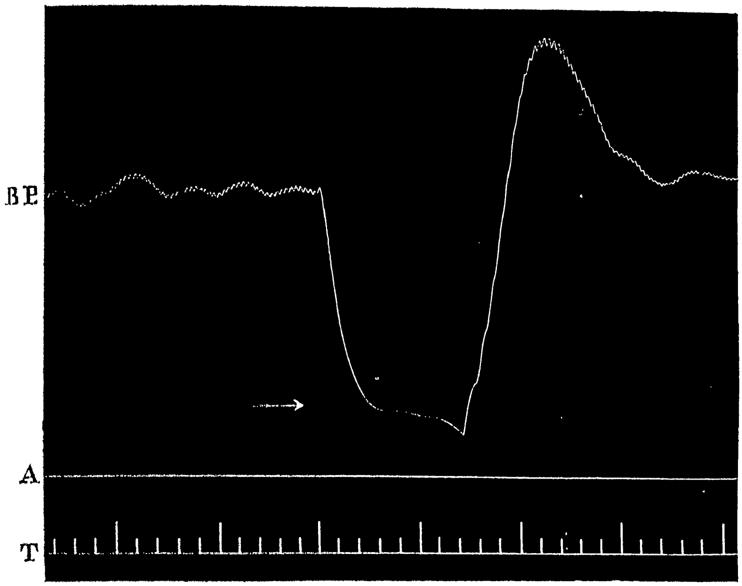


FIG 109 — Effect of strong stimulation of the perip[illegible] blood pressure (carotid of rabbit) Note stoppage of heart and fall of [illegible] after the recommencement of the heart, the blood pressure rises abo[illegible]

The Cardio-Inhibitory Mechanism —The action of the vagus nerves on the heart was first described by the brothers Weber in 1845 They showed that if the peripheral ends of these nerves were stimulated there was marked slowing or cessation of the heart The vagus is the tenth cranial nerve and is the chief nerve of the para-sympathetic or cranio-sacral division of the autonomic nervous system The effect of stimulation of the vagus is shown in figs. 109 and 110, in which there is cessation of the activity of the heart, in the first instance complete, causing a marked fall of arterial and rise of venous pressure If the stimulation is continued, so-called vagus escape (or escape from the inhibitory stimulus) may occur as the result of the rise of venous pressure stimulating the cardio-

accelerator mechanism This is shown by the fact that if steps are taken to prevent the rise of venous pressure, *e g* by bleeding, vagus stimulation continues to cause slowing for hours without evidence of fatigue (M'Dowall)

In the frog a similar inhibition is produced, but since in the latter the sympathetic is bound up with the vagus mixed effects

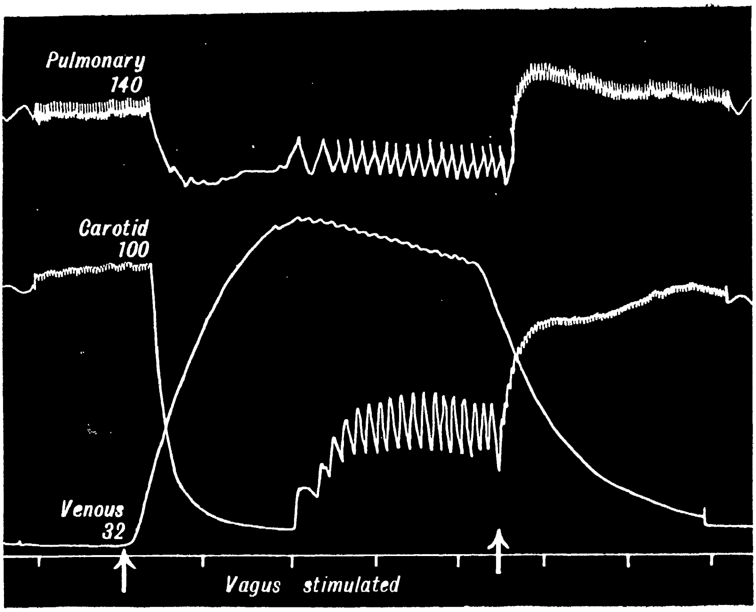


FIG 110 —Shows the effect of stimulating the vagi on the arterial (pulmonary and carotid) and venous pressures taken simultaneously Note that although stimulation was continued, an escape occurred, which in this instance was confined to the ventricles The venous and pulmonary pressures were recorded by water manometers (M'Dowall)

may occur (fig 111) It is important to observe that if records of the frog's heart are being taken with the usual form of cardiograph, any form of mechanical stimulation, such as a too-heavy lever, may diminish or annul the vagus effect So also will too strong a stimulus which may stimulate the heart-fibres directly

In the frog the inhibitory fibres have a relay station in Remak's ganglion in the sino-auricular junction The synapses in the junction may be paralysed by painting the region with nicotine but thereafter the heart may still be slowed by stimulating the post-ganglionic fibres which arise in this region which is recognisable as a white line or crescent If, however, the heart is now painted with atropine no inhibitory effects can be produced

The chief action of the vagus in the mammal is on the sino-auricular node, and on the auricle, of which the force of contraction is reduced, the duration of systole shortened, and the refractory period diminished The vagus also depresses the conductivity of the auriculo-ventricular bundle This is shown by the fact that if a partial heart-block is produced stimulation of the vagus may make it complete

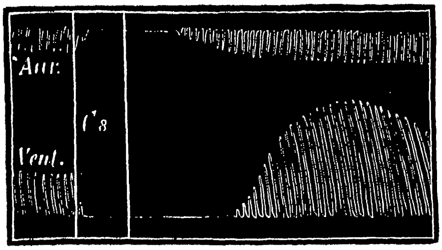


FIG [illegible] Tracing showing the actions of the vagus on the frog's heart *Aur*, auricular, *Vent*, [illegible] The part between the perpendicular lines indicates the period of vagus [illegible] indicates that the secondary coil was 8 *c m* from the primary The part of the tracing to the left shows the regular contractions of moderate height before stimulation During stimulation, and for some time after, the beats of auricle and ventricle are arrested. After they commence again they are small at first, but soon acquire a much greater amplitude than before the application of the stimulus (From Brunton, after Gaskell)

It is now believed that the vagus acts by liberating a chemical substance, acetyl-choline, in the heart (Loewi) This substance had long been known to have a similar action to that of the vagus, but it has now been found to exist in the inhibited heart Howell had previously suggested that the action was due to the liberation of potassium, and it may be that somehow his findings are related to those of Loewi (see also p 193)

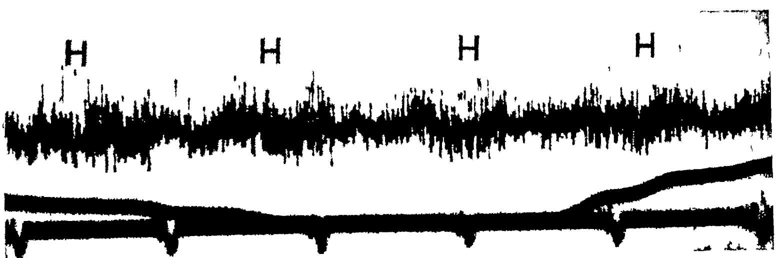


FIG 112—Record of impulses passing up right depressor nerve in a rabbit amplified 2,000,000 times and recorded with the Cathode Ray Oscillograph The record shows the burst of impulses at each heart beat marked "H," time in one fifths of a second (P Rijlant)

It is now realised that this vagus activity is but the efferent part of a general cardio-inhibitory mechanism, which operates normally during rest and restrains the activities of the heart as is seen by the fact that if the vagi are cut or if atropine is administered to paralyse the vagal-endings there is marked cardiac acceleration

During rest the cardio-inhibitory mechanism is apparently more active than the cardio-accelerator, since section of both vagi and sympathetic causes an increase in rate The inhibitory mechanism is, however, apparently most active in men and animals who take much physical exercise, in these, cutting the vagi or the administration of atropine causes a greater increase in rate than in those who lead a less active life

We must assume that the vagus centre in the medulla which is normally sending out impulses to restrain the heart, is constantly receiving stimuli from various sources This is suggested by the fact that the stimulation of certain regions may produce vagus inhibition of the heart A blow on the abdomen may cause such inhibition reflexly in the frog and in man and may cause fainting

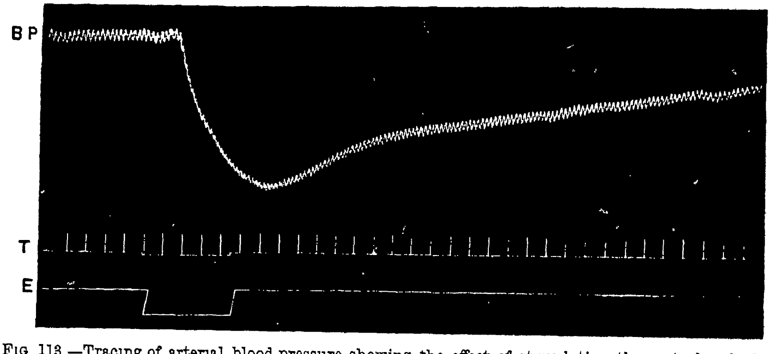


FIG 113 —Tracing of arterial blood pressure showing the effect of stimulating the central end of the depressor nerve in a cat The letters prefixed to the various lines have the same meaning as in fig 108 (Lent by Sherrington)

A blow on the larynx has been known to kill In some individuals irritation of the respiratory tract, *e g* by tobacco smoke, will cause inhibition

Normally the cardio-inhibitory mechanism is activated by afferent impulses arising in the walls of the vessels, and at the same time dilatation of blood-vessels is brought about These are known as **depressor reflexes** At each beat of the heart, impulses (figs 112 and 138) can be shown, electrically, to pass up the *depressor nerve* from the arch of the aorta to the medulla In the rabbit the nerve is separate, but in most animals it is bound up with the vagus If the central end is stimulated (fig 113), reflex inhibition of the heart occurs, which is abolished if the vagi are cut Even when the vagi are cut, such stimulation causes, however, a fall of blood-pressure which can be shown to be due to generalised dilatation of vessels resulting from inhibition of the vasoconstrictor centre (and probably stimulation of the vasodilator centre)

Similar impulses are set up by a rise of pressure in the *carotid sinus* (Hering, Heymans),* the impulses passing to the medulla by way of the glossopharyngeal nerve Evidence has also been put forward by Anrep and Starling that an *increase in cerebral pressure* may bring about similar results, apparently through direct action on the medulla

It is believed that by such reflexes the heart is protected against a sudden rise of pressure on the arterial side If such a rise is produced, it is at once reduced by cardiac slowing and vascular dilatation It is evident, however, that when, as in exercise, the venous filling is at the same time increased and causes cardio-acceleration, the activity of the depressor reflex is in abeyance and a rise of arterial blood-pressure is permitted

How exactly this abeyance is brought about has not been worked out It has, however, been suggested that the cardio-inhibitory mechanism has an important function in relation to cardiac efficiency The more efficient the heart the more blood it is capable of pumping out per beat, but the cardiac acceleration which takes place when the venous pressure rises in exercise would prevent full advantage being taken of the increased efficiency unless vagus restraint were increased This function would explain why those in good training develop increased vagus restraint

The depressor reflexes may also be useful in another way If the arterial pressure tends to fall, *e g* from hæmorrhage, the normal stimulation of the cardio-inhibitory mechanism by the depressor is reduced and the heart beats faster This and pallor of the skin are important points in the diagnosis of internal hæmorrhage These facts have given rise to what has been called "Marey's Law," which is the higher the blood-pressure, the slower the heart, and *vice versa* An exception to this "law" occurs in exercise

The Chemical Control of the Heart-Rate

Any procedure which causes oxygen-want and the accumulation of carbon dioxide in the brain causes cardiac acceleration which at a later stage is replaced by cardiac slowing Since the acceleration occurs even after the vagi are cut, the sinuses denervated, and the suprarenal glands removed, it must be considered that such procedures cause a central stimulation of the sympathetic (M'Dowall) At the same time they cause apparently an inhibition of the cardio-inhibitory reflex since, under conditions of oxygen-want and carbon dioxide accumulation in exercise and asphyxia, cardiac acceleration occurs at the same time as a high blood-pressure

* The carotid sinus is the dilatation at the division of the common carotid into the external and internal carotid arteries

It should, however, be pointed out that although this mechanism has been shown to exist it has not yet been shown that the changes in the blood in normal exercise are sufficiently large to be effective in this way

The Effect of Drugs on the Heart

This question belongs properly to the realm of Pharmacology We shall, therefore, confine ourselves to those substances which are of importance owing to their use in physiological investigation

We may conveniently divide the drugs which act on the heart into two categories those which act on the cardio-inhibitory mechanism, and those which act on the cardio-accelerator mechanism

Adrenaline, from the suprarenal gland, by stimulating the sympathetic causes a marked increase in the force and rate of the heart

Ergotoxine and *ergotamine*, from extract of ergot, by paralysing the sympathetic cause a profound slowing of the heart

Atropine, from belladonna, causes marked acceleration of the heart-beats, by paralysing the endings of the vagus

Muscarine, from poisonous fungi, *Pilocarpine*, from Jaborandi leaves, and *Choline* and the more active *Acetyl-choline* cause marked slowing of the heart by stimulating the vagal nerve-endings, as is shown by the fact that they do not act on the heart of the early embryo before the nerves have grown in (Pickering) Their action is abolished by atropine

We have already noted that there is evidence that certain nerves act by producing adrenaline or acetyl-choline in the region of their nerve-endings

Nicotine paralyses the synapses of the autonomic nervous system and abolishes, thereby, sympathetic tone and vagus restraint As the latter predominates, nicotine causes an acceleration of the heart

Action of Chloroform on the Cardiac Mechanism —The mammalian heart is more difficult to stop by stimulation of the vagus than the frog's heart, commonly it is only slowed, and the amplitude of the beat reduced, yet it is most important for the student of medicine to recollect that vagus inhibition may have far-reaching results One of the most familiar causes of heart stoppage in surgical practice is that produced by chloroform, chloroform acts directly on the cardiac tissue when it is administered incautiously, or in too large doses over long periods of time, the term inhibition is not applicable in this case, and the effects of the poisonous action of chloroform on the heart itself can be avoided by keeping the proportion of chloroform in the inspired air at 2 per cent or less But in other cases which are seen both in animals and human beings who may be

peculiarly susceptible to the influence of chloroform, heart stoppage occurs during the onset of anæsthesia long before the percentage of chloroform in the blood has reached a value which is toxic to the heart. Some have considered that death during the induction of chloroform anæsthesia is due to the vapour irritating the vagal terminations in the lung, and so leading to reflex inhibition of the heart. Embley's experiments, however, lead to the conclusion that the chloroform acts on the vagus centre in the medulla oblongata. In animals, cutting the vagi immediately sets the heart going again. In man this operation cannot be performed, and it is therefore a wise precaution, whenever it is necessary to administer chloroform, to give beforehand a small dose of atropine under the skin so as to paralyse temporarily the vagus-endings in the heart.

The Control of the Blood-Vessels—The Vasomotor Nervous System

The Vasoconstrictor Centre.—It has now been definitely established that all the blood-vessels in the body are under the control of the vasoconstrictor centre which lies in the floor of the fourth ventricle, a few millimetres above the calamus scriptorius of the medulla. The position of the centre has been discovered by the following means. If sections are made through the brain above this level, there is no immediate effect on the blood-pressure; on the other hand, section of the medulla below this region causes a profound fall of blood-pressure due to the loss of the influence of the centre which normally keeps the vessels in a state of partial contraction or tone.

In such experiments the animal must be kept alive by artificial respiration since the sections interfere with the normal respiration. It is found that even after the vasoconstrictor centre has been cut off by section of the medulla, recovery of blood-pressure may occur. This suggests that the spinal cord is the seat of subsidiary centres, a view which is supported by the fact that destruction of the cord causes the blood-pressure to fall again.

The vasoconstrictor centre is normally kept stimulated by impulses which reach it by the afferent nerves (especially those of the skin, of the carotid sinus, and the vagus), and by carbon dioxide in the blood. If, therefore, the afferent end of a sensory nerve is stimulated, a contraction of blood-vessels is brought about and a consequent rise of blood-pressure, although any effect on the heart has been prevented by previous section of its nerves. A similar rise of blood-pressure is caused by an accumulation of carbon dioxide in the body, such as occurs in asphyxia (see fig. 145). On the other hand, if an anæsthetised animal is forcibly over-ventilated and the carbon

dioxide in the blood reduced there is a fall of blood-pressure which has been shown by Dale and Evans to be due to reduction of the activity of the vasoconstrictor centre This effect does not, however, necessarily occur in normal man in whom certain compensatory mechanisms are present The effort of over-ventilation and the effect on the capillaries of washing out the carbon dioxide make up for the reduction of carbon dioxide in the centre

The centre is stimulated by a fall of blood-pressure, and the skin pallor produced is an important point in the diagnosis of internal hæmorrhage or shock In this it acts reciprocally with the vasodilator centre, and the vascular constriction which occurs in hæmorrhage may be looked upon as partly due to increased vasoconstrictor activity and partly to reduced vasodilator activity

Normally, for example, the skin vessels constrict during over-ventilation (rapid deep breathing) in man If, however, the individual is immersed in a very hot or very cold bath this change in the skin vessels does not occur and over-ventilation may cause a fall of pressure

From the vasoconstrictor centre impulses pass down the spinal cord and pass out in the anterior roots to the white rami and thence to the sympathetic chain of ganglia from which they are distributed to the whole body The reader should refer to the description of the sympathetic nerves given on p 93 A certain number of fibres pass back by the grey rami and are distributed with the ordinary motor fibres in which they may be demonstrated by the effect of electrical stimulation

The Vasoconstrictor Fibres—These fibres, as we have stated, keep the blood-vessels partially constricted, and their function was first demonstrated by Claude Bernard in the ear of a rabbit He found that division of the cervical sympathetic produced a redness at the side of the head and of the ear in which the central artery and its branches were seen to enlarge and many small branches not previously visible came into view The ear felt hotter to the touch On stimulating the peripheral end of the cut nerve he found that the ear resumed its normal condition and indeed might become paler than usual owing to excessive constriction of blood-vessels

Subsequent experiments have shown that the capillaries as well as the arteries are affected by such stimulation (Hooker) It has also been shown that the veins have a vasoconstrictor nerve supply (Donegan)

Evidence of Changes in Blood-Vessels—Since Bernard's experiment a large amount of research has been made into the nerve supply of vessels and various methods have been used to show the delicate changes which may occur in the blood supply of a part, since it is possible only in a very few areas to observe the vessels directly with the naked eye or with the microscope From the experiment quoted

above, we have seen that redness and heat are the most usual signs of dilatation of vessels There is at the same time an increased flow of blood from the part and it appears less venous than normally Since the blood-vessels have changed in diameter, there is a change in the volume of the part and this fact has been made the basis of what is known as Plethysmography

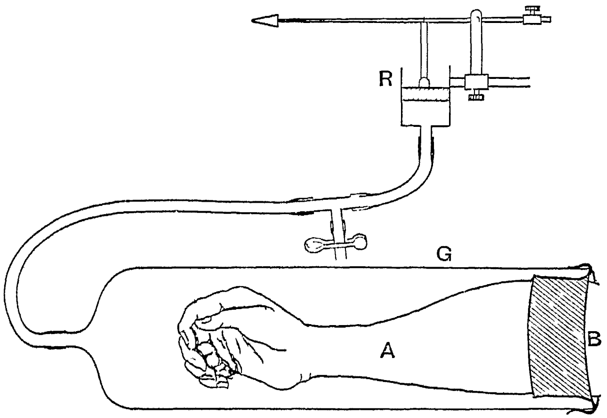


FIG 114 —Plethysmograph The arm, A, is enclosed in a glass tube, G, and the system made air tight with a rubber band, B, fitting around the arm and reflected over the outside of G The volume changes are transmitted to and recorded by a piston recorder, R For short experiments air transmission is used, but for experiments of longer duration the apparatus is filled with water to prevent volume changes due to temperature variations

Plethysmography — This method was introduced by Mosso and by its means changes in the volume of a limb or an organ can be recorded graphically The part is enclosed in an air-tight chamber which communicates with a delicate recorder, *e g* a Brodie bellows or an Ellis piston recorder When the part alters in size, air is forced out of the chamber into the recorder or the reverse Great care has to be taken that in making the air chamber air-tight the vessels entering the limb or organ are not compressed Plethysmographs are made of glass, metal, *e g* Roy's oncometer, or of gutta-percha (Schafer) which is specially useful as it can be readily made to fit any organ Thus the salivary glands, lobes of the liver or lung, kidney, spleen or coil of intestine can easily be enclosed in an appropriately shaped chamber covered with a glass plate, and made air-tight with vaseline The use of the plethysmograph is found particularly valuable in relation to the limbs and the intestines, not only for studying the vasomotor nerves but also for investigating the action of drugs on blood-vessels Changes in the spleen or a coil of the intestine are important as they indicate what is probably occurring in the whole splanchnic

area, an area capable of holding a third of the blood of the body. The term *splanchnic area* is applied to the whole abdominal region which is supplied by the splanchnic nerves which pass down from the lower sympathetic ganglia in the thorax. It includes the whole alimentary canal. From what has been said it will be understood that stimulation of either splanchnic nerve causes a constriction of the blood-vessels in this region.

Recent work has shown that changes in the volume of a limb are for the most part due to the skin vessels. If, for example, adrenaline is injected into an animal the normal limb volume is reduced, whereas if the limb is skinned the volume increases because the vessels of muscles are dilated by small doses of this substance.

Perfusion Experiments.—In these experiments there is passed into the artery supplying the part under investigation warm Ringer's solution or blood under constant pressure (about 100 mm. Hg.). Changes in the calibre of the vessels are shown by measuring the outflow from the corresponding vein or by recording the resistance to the inflow by means of a side tube. Perfusion experiments have the great advantage that the effect of changes in other parts of the circulation, *e.g.* in the output of the heart, is excluded. The method is specially valuable in the study of the action of drugs and hormones.

If a part of the body is perfused while the remainder of the animal is intact, so that the perfused part only communicates with the rest of the animal by means of nerves, it is possible by studying the rate of perfusion to study the activity of the vasomotor centre.

There is also a **vasodilator centre**. It appears to act reciprocally with the vasoconstrictor centre, *i.e.* when one is stimulated, the other is inhibited, and *vice versa*. It lies in the floor of the fourth ventricle close to the vasomotor centre, but it may separately be stimulated electrically and bring about a fall of blood-pressure.

Normally it is stimulated by impulses which pass up from the arch of the aorta and the carotid sinus, and which we have seen bring about also slowing of the heart, via the vagus. The vasodilator mechanism may, however, be stimulated in other ways, for example by the application of slow galvanic shocks to many mixed nerves, *e.g.* the sciatic. Many mechanical procedures, such as stretching of muscles, also bring about a fall in blood-pressure presumably by stimulating the vasodilator mechanism whose activity is enhanced by carbon dioxide and reduced by its lack.

Vasodilator Nerves.—In addition to vasoconstrictor nerves, it seems probable that every organ also receives a supply of vasodilator nerve-fibres. These fibres, when stimulated, cause dilatation of the vessels in the organ supplied. A few examples of pure vasodilator nerves are known. For example, the chorda tympani is a vasodilator

nerve to the salivary gland, while the nervus erigens supplies vasodilator fibres to the erectile tissue of the penis. When such nerves are stimulated there is all the evidence of dilatation of blood-vessels, but if the nerve is cut no change is observed. It appears, then, that the vasodilator nerves, unlike the vasoconstrictor nerves, are not constantly sending out impulses.

Vasodilator fibres were shown by Stricker to pass out from the spinal cord in the *posterior* nerve-roots, stimulation of which caused vasodilatation in the parts supplied. Subsequently they join the mixed nerve-trunks. There is evidence that the vasodilator nerves to the skin act by liberating vasodilator substances like histamine and acetyl-choline (see the Autonomic Nervous System). In the skin vasodilator reflexes of a very simple kind and known as **axon reflexes** (see Reflexes) have been found. See also Lovén reflex, p. 201.

The presence of vasodilator fibres can also be demonstrated in mixed nerves, but, since in such nerves vasoconstrictor fibres predominate, stimulation of a mixed nerve brings about constrictor effects, while section causes vasodilatation. In order to demonstrate their presence in mixed nerves special procedures have to be adopted.

1. *The Method of Degeneration.*—If the sciatic nerve is cut, the vessels of the limb dilate. This passes off in a day or two. If the peripheral end of the nerve is then stimulated, the vessels are dilated, as the constrictor fibres degenerate earliest, and so a result is obtained due to the stimulation of the still intact dilator fibres.

2. *The Method of Slowly Interrupted Shocks.*—If a mixed nerve is stimulated with the usual rapidly interrupted faradic current, the effect is constriction; but if the induction shocks are sent in at long intervals (*e.g.* at intervals of a second), vasodilator effects are obtained. This can be readily demonstrated on the kidney vessels by stimulation of the anterior root of the eleventh thoracic nerve in the two ways just indicated. The explanation of this phenomenon is, presumably, that the different fibres in a mixed nerve have not all the same excitability.

By studying the rate of flow of the blood through the submaxillary gland, in which the vasoconstrictor and dilator fibres run separate courses, it has been shown that if both sets of fibres are simultaneously excited, constriction is produced during the stimulation, while marked dilatation follows after the stimulation has ceased. Excitation of the constrictors alone is not followed by dilatation. These results explain the mode of action of slowly interrupted shocks, for with each there will be only a very slight constriction, while the dilator effects which run a much slower course will be summated to produce a marked effect.

3 *The Influence of Temperature*—Exposure to a low temperature depresses the constrictors more than the dilators If the leg is placed in ice-cold water, stimulation of the sciatic, even if it has only recently been divided, produces a flushing of the skin with blood

4 *Mechanical stimulation* of a mixed nerve as distinct from electrical stimulation not infrequently causes vasodilatation It may be suggested that mechanical stimulation somehow imitates a kind of stimulation which occurs normally when the nerves are stimulated by the contraction of active muscles demanding more blood

The Chemical Control of the Blood-Vessels

This control is both central and local We have seen that carbon dioxide stimulates the vasomotor centre and that, in relation to the capillaries, this substance and lactic acid cause dilatation of these vessels These chemical substances, produced locally, take precedence over nervous influences, for when the cervical sympathetic is stimulated the constrictor effect is seen to wear off as soon as the ear becomes asphyxiated The importance of these facts is dealt with below According to Fleisch the arterioles may also participate in this local chemical control

The Magnitude and Variability of the Arterial Pressure

In view of the ease with which blood-pressure may be determined and the practical importance of the subject, we may now summarise the factors which determine and vary its magnitude

1 *The Peripheral Resistance*—This may be reduced by removal of the nervous control of the blood-vessels, or by the action of chemical substances It is increased similarly by any means which constrict the peripheral vessels

2 *The Elasticity of the Vessels*—No change occurs physiologically but in disease and in old age the vessels may degenerate and become less extensible This leads to a high systolic and low diastolic blood-pressure

3 *The Output of the Heart*—This in turn depends on (*a*) the efficiency of the heart, (*b*) the venous return A marked reduction in either causes a fall of arterial pressure if severe but lesser degrees are compensated for by an increase in the peripheral resistance and a diminution in the capacity of the circulation * The factors which vary the venous return have already been discussed and may now be summarised They are the amount of blood in the body, the capacity of the circulation especially of the veins and capillaries, the amount of blood reaching the veins from the arteries, the respiratory movements, and massage of the veins by movement

* From the point of view of clinical medicine it is important to note that in slow heart failure the blood-pressure falls only towards the end.

The Effect of Exercise on the Circulation

Having stated some of the more important facts in relation to the control of the blood-vessels, we may now proceed to consider how this control is normally used For convenience the various changes are described as being actually brought about by exercise, but, as we shall see later, some of them may anticipate the exercise

Local Vascular Changes —We now know, from the work of Krogh, that the capillaries can alter their calibre independently of the arterioles, although, like the latter, they are supplied with nerves (Hooker, see Capillary Circulation, p 178)

When exercise takes place, there is marked dilatation of capillaries in the active region This has been most convincingly demonstrated by Krogh By injecting indian ink into the blood-vessels of two sets of frogs, in one of which the tongues had been stimulated to contract for some time previously, he found on examination of sections that many more capillaries could be seen in the active muscle than in the resting tissue

This dilatation, we may believe, takes place as the result of the production of lactic acid and carbon dioxide during the activity, since dilatation takes place from the lactic acid produced at death and as a result of any procedure which cuts off the oxygen supply of the part (see Capillary Circulation) No doubt, also, other products of metabolism are concerned

At the same time, impulses appear to pass up the sensory nerves from the active tissues and bring about dilatation of the vessels supplying the part This is suggested by the work of Lovén, who found that if the afferent nerve from an organ was stimulated, dilatation of the vessels in that organ was brought about reflexly, although there was at the same time a rise of arterial blood-pressure

General Vascular Changes —While there is a local dilatation of vessels it is found that there is a marked rise of blood-pressure generally, caused presumably by a general constriction of vessels This constriction affects particularly the vessels of the alimentary canal and of the skin before body temperature rises The spleen also constricts This may, in part, be due to stimulation of the vasomotor centre by afferent nerves and by carbon dioxide produced by the active muscles The rise in blood-pressure is also due in part to a greatly increased cardiac output

The compression of the valved veins of the limbs propels the blood centrally, while the carbon dioxide, as we shall see later, stimulates respiration, which is such an important factor in causing a return of blood to the heart that it is referred to as the respiratory pump (L Hill) At each inspiration the descent of the diaphragm

raises the pressure in the abdomen, similarly the intrathoracic pressure is reduced and blood is, therefore, drawn into the thorax

Cardiac Changes—The increased return of the blood to the right side of the heart brings about a large increase in the cardiac output per minute which may be more than six-fold This occurs (1) in virtue of the increased filling, which increases the output per beat (see Filling of Heart), and (2) because of the increased heart-rate, which is brought about partly as a result of direct action of increased venous pressure and warmer blood on the pace-maker, and partly through the nervous mechanism of the heart

There is a diminution of the normal vagus restraint of the heart and increased sympathetic activity This is probably due to a variety of causes partly and initially psychic but continued by reflex action once the exercise is begun The latter effects are produced partly by the stimulation of afferent nerves in the active tissues, but an important mechanism concerned is the *Bainbridge or right auricular reflex*

The Bainbridge or Right Auricular Reflex—When the pressure in the right auricle rises, impulses pass up the vagi to the medulla to inhibit the cardio-inhibitory and to stimulate the cardio-accelerator mechanism, with the result that the heart-rate increases This was first demonstrated by Bainbridge, who injected saline into the veins, and it has since been shown that distension of a small balloon in the auricle has the same effect If the vagi are cut, the same degree of cardiac acceleration does not occur, but since some acceleration occurs after atropine, which paralyses the vagus-endings, it is evident that it is not wholly the reduction of efferent impulses of the vagus which is concerned It is assumed then that the afferent pathway of the reflex arc is the vagus nerve, and, since cutting the sympathetic nerves still further reduces the acceleration, it is assumed that normally there is not only a reduction of vagus restraint, but also an increased sympathetic activity

Central Effects—There is also evidence that the oxygen-want may cause a direct central stimulation of the sympathetic and a reduction of the normal vagus restraint, thus making it possible for the heart to accelerate in spite of the high blood-pressure and the depressor reflexes

In very severe exercise the rate and force of the heart may be still further increased by the secretion of **adrenaline** from the suprarenal glands, but that this does not account for all the above results is shown by the fact that they occur after the suprarenal glands have been tied off

The Effects of Temperature—Subsequently, if the exercise is prolonged, the body temperature tends to rise and the hot blood stimulates the heat-regulating centre and causes dilatation of the skin vessels The centre is assisted by the action of the

metabolites as a result of the increased activity of the sweat glands

General Summary—Thus we see that the active muscles, directly by compressing the veins and indirectly by the production of carbon dioxide, play an important part in returning the blood to the heart, while not only does the carbon dioxide dilate capillary vessels, but it assists in the shutting down of the vessels of parts not in action through its effect on the vasomotor centre Thus, as pointed out by Haldane, we may look upon the respiration and the circulation as the servants of the muscles

The Effects of the Higher Centres—Even before exercise begins there is an acceleration of the heart and a general constriction of vessels, but how this effect of the higher centres is brought about is far from clear Mental activity only will bring about similar effects, causing in some individuals a rise of pressure of 50 mm Hg above normal Even minute amounts of mental effort were shown by Mosso to cause a diminution in limb volume This has been amply confirmed and it is considered that the diminution of the electrical resistance of the skin, the so-called *psychogalvanic reflex*, which accompanies such effort, is due to this vasoconstriction, for it has been shown that all circumstances which cause vasoconstriction of the skin (*e g* the injection of adrenaline or pituitrin or cold applied to another part of the body) cause a similar fall in the electrical resistance (Lewis and Zottermann)

It has been suggested that the sweat glands are concerned in the reaction, but Waller has shown that atropine does not abolish the reaction, and profuse sweating does not cause such a fall unless the skin has been dry It is probable, however, that if the sweat glands and the vessels thereto are absent, as sometimes occurs, the reaction also is absent The suggestion that the reaction is not really due to a change in resistance is negatived by the observation of Appleton in Cambridge that the reaction occurs if an alternating current is used in the determination of the resistance It is possible, however, that changes in electrical potential also take place

The electrical resistance depends on the superficial layers of the epidermis, which according to Densham are deformed by the vasoconstriction of the underlying vessels of the dermis Since similar changes occur on sensory stimulation in animals and in man, if such stimulation is merely threatened the so-called effects of the higher centres may be looked upon as being in some way due to a "conditioned sensory stimulation"

Effect of Gravity on the Circulation

The main effect of gravity is that the veins are filled with blood in the part which is placed down Thus, if an animal is placed suddenly with its legs hanging down, less blood returns to the heart, and the blood-pressure in the arteries falls temporarily

in consequence If the vasomotor system is acting properly, however, the blood-pressure rapidly returns to normal as the fall of blood-pressure together with the partial cerebral anæmia causes stimulation of the heart and of the vasomotor centre and vasoconstriction of the splanchnic area If the vasomotor centre is inefficient, the cardiac acceleration is all the more marked Leonard Hill suggests that this might be used as a test of vasomotor efficiency At the same time increased respiration causes an increased return of blood to the heart (see Effect of Respiration on Circulation)

A very striking illustration of the effect of gravity on the circulation can be demonstrated on the eel The animal is anæsthetised, and a small window is made in the body wall to expose the heart If the animal is then suspended tail downwards, the beating heart is seen to be empty of blood, all the blood accumulates in the tail and lower part of the body, the animal has no "respiratory pump," such as a mammal possesses, to overcome the effects of gravity If, however, the animal, still with its tail downwards, is suspended in a tall vessel of water, the pressure of the water outside its body enables it to overcome the hydrostatic effect of gravitation, and the heart-cavities once more fill with blood during every diastole Another experiment was originally performed by Salathe on a "hutch" rabbit If the animal is held by the ears with its legs hanging down, it soon becomes unconscious, and if left in that position for about half an hour it will die This is due to anæmia of the brain, the blood accumulates in the very pendulous abdomen which such domesticated animals acquire, the vasomotor mechanism of the splanchnic area is deficient in tone, and cannot be set into such vigorous action as is necessary to overcome the effects of gravity. Consciousness is, however, soon restored if the animal is placed in a horizontal position, or if while it is still hanging vertically the abdomen is squeezed or bandaged A wild rabbit, on the other hand, suffers no inconvenience from a vertical position, it is a more healthy animal in every respect, its abdomen is not pendulous, and its vasomotor power is intact It may be shown that carbon dioxide is necessary for the adequate response of the vasomotor centre to posture (M'Dowall) An animal may respond perfectly if the carbon dioxide is normal, but if it is over-ventilated it no longer responds Some persons show the same reaction

The transient giddiness experienced after an illness on assuming the erect posture is due to similar cerebral anæmia The debility following influenza is in part due to this cause, in some instances the arterial pressure, although normal in the horizontal position, falls to under 80 in the erect posture

THE EFFECT OF HÆMORRHAGE

The effects of hæmorrhage depend on its severity and its duration, and are important as by them the clinician diagnoses internal hæmorrhage.

If a small amount of blood is removed from the body there is a temporary fall of arterial blood-pressure during the removal from which there is rapid recovery. This recovery is due largely to increased activity of the vasomotor centre as a result of the reduction of the depressor impulses which pass up from the arch of the aorta and the carotid sinus (Heymans) and to stimulation of the vasomotor centre by the fall of venous pressure which also occurs (M'Dowall). The presence of such pressor fibres in the vagi is shown by the fact that after severe hæmorrhage section of the nerves causes a fall of arterial pressure (Pavlov). The activity of the vasomotor centre causes the spleen to constrict and to throw into the circulation its reserve of blood. It causes also constriction of the vessels of the intestine and of the skin, which leads to obvious pallor. This constriction of vessels increases the peripheral resistance and hence the fall of venous pressure which persists much longer than the arterial fall.

If the hæmorrhage is severe the recovery process is slower, but the blood volume is rapidly made up from the tissue fluids which enter the blood as a result of the fall in capillary pressure. If the hæmorrhage is repeated over a period of weeks the yellow marrow of the bones becomes red through increased activity and commences to form blood-corpuscles.

The heart-rate is markedly increased by hæmorrhage as a result of a reduction in the impulses which normally depress the heart via the vagus centre. In severe hæmorrhage the oxygen-lack produced also stimulates the sympathetic, but there are several points in relation to the cause of the increased heart-rate which still need investigation.

The respiration, we have seen, at first becomes deeper and more rapid; it then changes its character, inspiration being more prolonged (air hunger). Finally, there is gasping and the centre fails. The initial increased activity (air hunger) greatly aids the return of blood to the heart (see p 280).

Unless a large vessel is opened hæmorrhage is for various reasons seldom fatal. The damaged blood-vessel retracts and contracts, and this, together with the clotting of the blood, tends to close the opening, while the formation of the clot is facilitated by the fall of arterial pressure. For these reasons section even of such a large vessel as the radial artery may not cause death.

Local Peculiarities of the Circulation

The Coronary Circulation—A separate blood supply to the heart is peculiar to animals above the reptiles In mammals the amount of the coronary flow is remarkable, and it is estimated that it takes about a quarter of the total cardiac output * This has been ascertained in a heart-lung preparation (*q v*) in which it is easy to measure the output by collecting the blood as it flows from the coronary sinus by means of a special cannula The flow in the coronary artery practically ceases during the systole of the heart which can be looked upon as massaging the coronary circulation, the flow from the venous sinus being greatest at the beginning of systole

As in muscles generally the flow is increased by exercise, by oxygen-want, and to a lesser extent by excess of carbon dioxide In exercise it is calculated that the flow may amount to as much as 14 litres per minute

The flow varies according to the mean aortic blood-pressure Anrep and Segall found that a rise of pressure from 50 to 130 mm Hg would cause a rise from 20 to 250 c c per minute in the denervated heart-lung preparation As the cardiac output increases, so also does the cardiac flow when the cardiac nerves are intact

The vessels are constricted by stimulation of the vagi and dilated by sympathetic stimulation or by adrenaline The muscle of the heart then appears in this respect to be little different from the voluntary muscles which it serves

The Cerebral Circulation—The brain must always be supplied with blood, for otherwise immediate loss of consciousness would follow Four arteries—two carotids and two vertebrals—are supplied to the brain, and these anastomose together in the circle of Willis Two of the brain arteries can be tied in monkeys, and three or even all four in dogs, without the production of serious symptoms In the last case enough blood reaches the brain by branches from the superior intercostal arteries to the anterior spinal artery The sudden occlusion of both carotids causes loss of consciousness The large venous trunks or sinuses are formed so as to be scarcely capable of change of size, surrounded, as they are, by the tough tissue of the dura mater, and, in some instances, bounded on one side by the bony cranium There are no valves between the vertebral veins and the vena cava, and hence any raising of the general venous pressure in the thorax or abdomen is communicated to the brain, a fact which no doubt contributes to the occurrence of cerebral hæmorrhage when straining at stool

* It is doubtful if this figure holds for the intact animal although it is true of the heart-lung preparation (Anrep)

Since the brain is enclosed in the rigid cranium, it used to be thought that the quantity of blood must be the same at all times and that changes in the blood-flow must be dependent on the condition of vessels in other parts of the body The arteries, however, have muscular walls and are supplied by nerves

In 1928 Forbes and Wolff, by introducing a window into the skull in order to maintain the normal environment of the vessels, were able to observe that the vessels contract when the cervical sympathetic is stimulated and dilate on stimulation of the central end of the vagus Indeed, the cerebral vessels have been shown to react to various procedures exactly as do the vessels elsewhere The exact significance of these facts is not quite clear It may be that when a local change in the vessels takes place there is compensatory change in other parts, or it may be that the cerebral fluid within the cranium may change appreciably in quantity It seems possible that when one part of the brain is active, other parts of the brain become less active, indeed, it is common experience that we cannot use the whole of the brain at once The physiology of attention may depend on these facts Of interest in this respect is the interesting observation that the intravenous injection of hypertonic saline causes a distinct reduction of the volume of the brain

These experiments confirm the work of Weber, 1908, who found a diminution of brain volume on stimulation of the cervical sympathetic Several workers, particularly Wiggers, have demonstrated that the vessels are constricted by adrenaline

At the same time the cerebral circulation is profoundly influenced by the general blood-pressure If this falls, the blood-flow through the brain may be so reduced that unconsciousness occurs, as in fainting, when the vessels of the body generally become dilated

It is not the volume of the blood so much as the velocity of its flow which is altered in the brain by changes in the general circulation If the aortic pressure rises and the vena cava pressure remains constant, there is increased velocity of flow While if the aortic pressure remains constant and the vena cava pressure rises, there is diminished velocity of flow

The brain presses against the cranial wall with a pressure equal to that in the cerebral capillaries A foreign body introduced within the cranium, such as a blood-clot or depressed bone, produces local anæmia of the brain, by occupying the room of the blood So soon as the capillaries are thus obliterated the pressure is raised to arterial pressure The serious results that follow cerebral compression are primarily due to obliteration of the blood-vessels, and consequent anæmia of the brain A very small foreign body will, if situated in the region of the bulb, produce the gravest symptoms,

for it causes anæmia of the centres which control the vascular and respiratory systems The cerebral hemispheres may, on the other hand, be compressed to a large extent without causing a fatal result The major symptoms of compression arise as soon as any local increase of pressure is transmitted to the bulb and causes anæmia there First the centres are stimulated, vasomotor, cardio-accelerator and cardio-inhibitory—in that order—and later they all are paralysed, together with the respiratory centre, and death results if the compression is not relieved

In Erectile Structures —The instances of greatest variation in the quantity of blood contained, at different times, in the same organs, are found in certain structures which, under ordinary conditions, are soft and flaccid, but, at certain times, receive an unusually large quantity of blood, become distended and swollen by it, and pass into the state which has been termed *erection* Such structures are the *corpora cavernosa penis* and *corpus cavernosum urethræ* in the male, and the *clitoris* in the female The corpus cavernosum penis, which is the best example of an erectile structure, has an external fibrous membrane or sheath, and from the inner surface of the latter are prolonged numerous fine lamellæ which divide its cavity into small compartments Within these is situated the plexus of veins on which the peculiar erectile property of the organ mainly depends It consists of short veins which very closely interlace and anastomose with each other in all directions, and admit of great variations of size, collapsing in the passive state of the organ, but capable of an amount of dilatation which exceeds beyond comparison that of the arteries and veins which convey the blood to and from them The strong fibrous tissue lying in the intervals of the venous plexuses, and the external fibrous membrane or sheath with which it is connected, limit the distension of the vessels, and during the state of erection, give to the penis its condition of tension and firmness The same general condition of vessels exists in the corpus cavernosum urethræ, but around the urethra the fibrous tissue is much weaker than around the body of the penis, and around the glans there is none The venous blood is returned from the plexuses by comparatively small veins For all these veins one condition is the same, namely, that they are liable to the pressure of muscles when they leave the penis The muscles chiefly concerned in this action are the erector penis and accelerator urinæ Erection results from the distension of the venous plexuses with blood The principal exciting cause in the erection of the penis is nervous irritation, originating in the part itself, and derived reflexly from the brain and spinal cord The nervous influence is communicated to the penis by the pudendal nerves, which ramify in its vascular tissue, and after their division the penis is no longer capable of erection

Erection is not complete, nor maintained for any time except when, together with the influx of blood, the muscles mentioned contract, and by compressing the veins, stop the efflux of blood, or prevent it from being as great as the influx

The circulation in the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, and Kidneys is described in our study of those organs

The Colour of the Skin

Since this is so important in disease and depends largely on the skin vessels it is included at this stage Several different states are met with

1 The arterioles, capillaries, and venules may be constricted This causes the skin to be pale and cold and occurs typically in hæmorrhage and in shock A less marked pallor occurs when there is a deficiency in hæmoglobin in the blood

2 The arterioles, capillaries, and venules may be dilated This causes the skin to be red and warm It occurs typically in inflammation and after irritation of the skin

3 The arterioles and venules may be dilated but the capillaries constricted This causes a hot pale skin, which occurs sometimes in fevers and after loss of the nerve supply, since the capillaries but not the arteries may regain their tone

4 The arterioles and venules may be constricted but the capillaries dilated This causes a cold blue skin, since blood trapped in the skin capillaries loses its oxygen It occurs in the extremities when exposed to severe cold and represents the attempt of the body to conserve heat

Whether the skin is blue or pink when the circulation is normal depends on the colour of the blood itself, and particularly on the amount of reduced hæmoglobin in the arterial blood When the total hæmoglobin of the blood is low as in anæmia the patient is pale and even in mild asphyxial states does not become blue since the amount of reduced hæmoglobin is not sufficient to produce this colour

CHAPTER XV

THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM

As the blood circulates through the capillaries, some of its liquid constituents exude through the thin walls of these vessels, carrying nutriment and oxygen to the tissue cells This exudation is called *lymph*, it receives from the tissues the products of their activity, and is collected in the lymph channels, which converge to the thoracic duct—the main lymphatic vessel—and thus once more enters the blood-stream at the junction of the left internal jugular and left subclavian vein (fig 115) There is a smaller duct on the right side

Lymph is therefore a fluid, which comes into much more intimate relationship with metabolic processes in the tissues than the blood

Lymphatic Vessels

The *lymph* is gathered up and carried back again to the blood by a system of vessels called *lymphatics*

The principal vessels of the lymphatic system are, in structure, like small thin-walled veins, provided with numerous valves which give them a beaded appearance They commence in fine microscopic *lymph capillaries*, in the organs and tissues of the body The fluid which they contain, passes in one direction only from the fine branches to the trunk, and so to the large veins, on entering which it is mingled with the stream of blood The lymphatic vessels of the intestinal canal are called *lacteals*, because during digestion (if the meal contains fat) the fluid contained in them resembles milk in appearance, and the *lymph* in the lacteals during the period of digestion is called *chyle* Chyle is lymph containing finely divided fat-globules We shall see presently that in some part of its course the lymph-stream passes through *lymphatic glands*

Origin of Lymph Capillaries—The lymphatic capillaries commence most commonly either (*a*) in closely-meshed networks (see fig 116), or (*b*) in irregular lacunar spaces, lined by endothelium, between the various structures of which the different organs are composed These spaces, according to some authors, freely communicate with the cell spaces of the tissues, but MacCallum holds

that no such communication exists, and that the lymphatics are everywhere closed at their origins like the lacteals which originate as blind dilated lymph spaces in the villi of the small intestine (see fig 196)

The structure of lymphatic capillaries is very similar to that of blood capillaries, their walls consist of a single layer of elongated endothelial cells with sinuous outline, which cohere along their edges

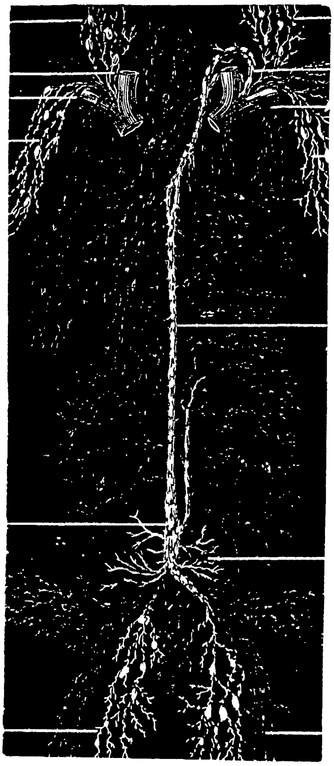


FIG 115 —Diagram of the principal groups of lympathic vessels (From Quain)

to form a delicate membrane They differ from blood capillaries mainly in their larger and very variable calibre, in the presence of valves, and, possibly, in their numerous communications with the spaces of the tissues

In certain parts of the body, *stomata* exist, by which lymphatic capillaries directly communicate with parts formerly supposed to be closed cavities They have been found in many serous

membranes, a serous cavity thus forms a large lymph-sinus or widening out of the lymph-capillary system with which it directly communicates

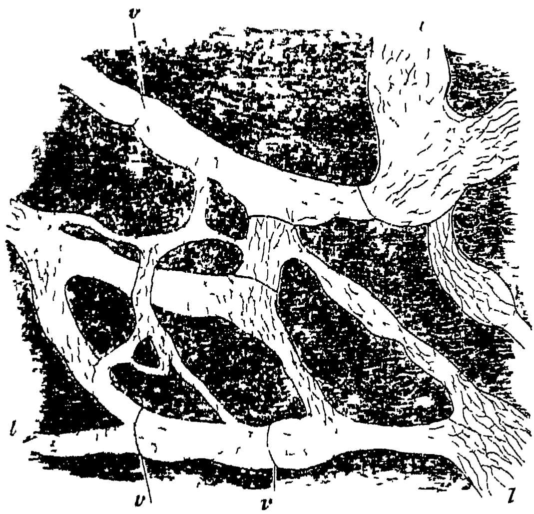


FIG 116—Lymphatics of central tendon of rabbit's diaphragm, stained with silver nitrate The shaded background is composed of bundles of white fibres, between which the lymphatics lie *l*, Lymphatics lined by long narrow endothelial cells, and showing *v* valves at frequent intervals (Schofield)

Lymphatic Glands

Lymphatic glands are round or oval bodies varying in size from a hemp-seed to a bean, interposed on the course of the lymphatic vessels, and through which the lymph passes in its course to be discharged into the blood-vessels They are found in great numbers in the mesentery, and along the great vessels of the abdomen, thorax, and neck, in the axilla and groin, a few in the popliteal space, and in the arm as far down as the elbow

A lymphatic gland is covered externally by a capsule of connective tissue, generally containing some unstriped muscle At the inner side of the gland, the capsule sends inwards processes called *trabeculæ* in which the blood-vessels are contained, and these join with other processes prolonged from the inner surface of the part of the capsule covering the convex or outer part of the gland, they have a structure similar to that of the capsule, and, entering the gland from all sides and freely communicating, form a fibrous scaffolding The interior of the gland is seen on section, even when examined with the naked eye, to be made up of two parts, an outer or *cortical,* which is light coloured, and an inner or *medullary* portion of redder appearance (fig

117) In the outer part, or cortex, of the gland the intervals between the trabeculæ are large and regular they are termed *alveoli*, whilst in the more central or medullary part is a finer meshwork formed by an irregular anastomosis of the trabecular processes Within the alveoli of the cortex and in the meshwork formed by the trabeculæ in the medulla, is contained lymphoid tissue, this occupies the central part of each alveolus, but at the periphery, surrounding the central portion and immediately

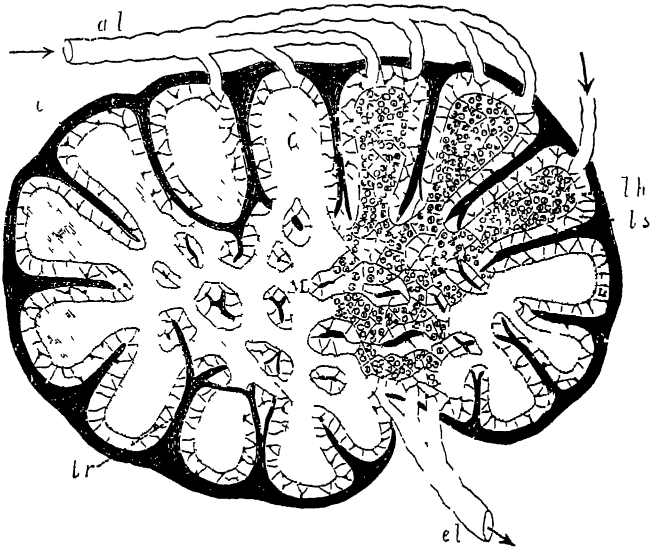


FIG 117 —Diagrammatic section of lymphatic gland *a l*, Afferent, *e l*, efferent lymphatics, *C*, cortical substance, *l h*, lymphoid tissue, *l s*, lymph path, *c*, fibrous capsule sending trabeculæ, *tr* into the substance of the gland (Sharpey)

next the capsule and trabeculæ, is a more open meshwork of retiform tissue constituting the *lymph-path*, and containing but few lymph-corpuscles At the inner part of the alveolus, the central mass divides into two or more smaller rounded or cord-like masses which, joining with those from the other alveoli, form a much closer arrangement than in the cortex, spaces (fig 118 *b*) are left within these anastomosing cords, in which are found portions of the trabecular meshwork and the continuation of the lymph-path

The lymph enters the gland by several afferent vessels, which pierce the capsule and open into the lymph-path, at the same time they lay aside all their coats except the endothelial lining, which is continuous with the lining of the lymph-path The *efferent* vessels begin in the medullary part of the gland, and are continuous with

the lymph-path here as the afferent vessels are with the cortical portion

The efferent vessels leave the gland at the *hilus*, and either at once, or very soon after, join together to form a single vessel

Blood-vessels which enter and leave the gland at the hilus are freely distributed to the trabecular and lymphoid tissues

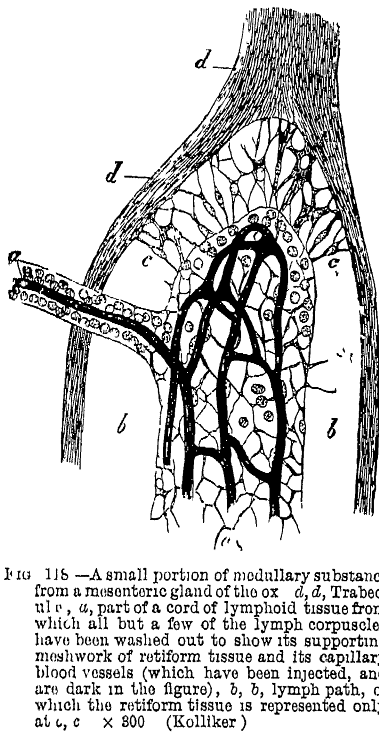


FIG 118 —A small portion of medullary substance from a mesenteric gland of the ox d, d, Trabeculæ, a, part of a cord of lymphoid tissue from which all but a few of the lymph corpuscles have been washed out to show its supporting meshwork of retiform tissue and its capillary blood vessels (which have been injected, and are dark in the figure), b, b, lymph path, of which the retiform tissue is represented only at c, c × 300 (Kolliker)

Composition of Lymph

Lymph is alkaline to litmus, its specific gravity is about 1015, and after it leaves the vessels it clots, forming a colourless coagulum of fibrin It is like blood-plasma in composition, but diluted so far as its protein constituents are concerned This is due to the fact that proteins do not pass readily through membranes The salts are similar to those of blood-plasma, and are present in about the same proportions Chlorides, however, are more abundant in lymph than in blood The waste products, such as carbonic acid and urea, are also more abundant

When examined with the microscope the transparent lymph is found to contain corpuscles, which are called *lymphocytes*, these are cells with large nuclei and comparatively little protoplasm They pass with the lymph into the blood, and constitute there one of the varieties of colourless blood corpuscles They are added to the lymph wherever it passes through lymphoid tissue, *e g* lymphatic glands, tonsils, etc

The Lymph-Flow

The flow of the lymph towards the point of its discharge into the veins is brought about by several agencies With the help of the valvular mechanism all occasional pressure on the exterior of the lymphatic and lacteal vessels propels the lymph onward, thus muscular and other external pressure accelerates the flow of the

lymph as it does that of the blood in the veins. The action of the muscle-fibres of the small intestine, and the layer of unstriped muscle present in each intestinal villus, assists in propelling the chyle; in the small intestine of many animals the chyle has been seen moving with intermittent propulsions that correspond with the peristaltic movements of the intestine. For the general propulsion of the lymph and chyle, it is probable that, in addition to external pressure, some of the force is derived from the contractility of the vessels' own walls. The respiratory movements, also, favour the current of lymph through the thoracic duct as they do the current of blood in the thoracic veins.

Relation of Lymph and Blood

The volume of blood in the body remains remarkably constant. If the amount is increased by injection of fluids, its specific gravity is at first lessened, but in a short time, often in a few minutes, it returns to the normal. The excess of fluid is got rid of in two ways: (1) by the kidneys, which secrete profusely; and (2) by the tissues, which become more watery in consequence. After the renal arteries are ligatured, and the kidney is consequently thrown out of action, the excess of water passes only into the tissues.

On the other hand, a deficiency of blood (for instance, after hæmorrhage) is soon remedied by a transfer of water from the tissues to the blood through the intermediation of the lymph. This may be looked upon as being brought about by the fall in the normal filtration pressure in the capillaries.

It may, in severe hæmorrhage, be desirable to transfuse blood from another person or to provide a blood substitute. Several precautions have, however, to be taken in such circumstances (see Blood Substitutes).

Formation of Lymph

Carl Ludwig taught that the lymph flow is conditioned by two factors: first, differences in the pressure of the blood in the capillaries and of the fluid in the tissue spaces, giving rise to a *filtration* of fluid through the capillary walls; and secondly, chemical differences between these two fluids, setting up *osmotic* interchanges through the wall of the blood-vessel. (See Physical Chemistry later.)

If the lymph is produced by a simple act of filtration, then the amount of lymph must rise and sink with the value of $D-d$, D representing the capillary blood-pressure, and d the pressure in the tissue spaces.

In support of this mechanical theory, various workers in Ludwig's laboratory showed that increased capillary pressure due to obstruction of the venous outflow increases the amount of lymph formed; and

that diminution of the pressure in the lymph spaces, by squeezing out the lymph previously contained in them, leads to an increase in the transudation

On the other hand, there were some facts which could not be well explained by the filtration theory, among which may be mentioned the action of curare in causing an increase of lymph flow

Heidenhain was the first to recognise fully that the laws of filtration and osmosis as applied to dead membranes may be considerably modified when the membranes are composed of living cells, and he considered that the formation of lymph is due to the selective or secretory activity of the endothelial walls of the capillaries This so-called vital action of the endothelial cells is seen in the fact that after the injection of sugar into the blood, in a short time the percentage of sugar in the lymph becomes higher than that in the blood There must, therefore, be some activity of the endothelial cells in picking out the sugar from the blood and passing it on to the lymph The excess of chlorides in lymph is also in favour of the same view

Heidenhain was the inventor of the term *lymphagogues* (literally, lymph drivers) These are substances which, like curare, have a specific action in causing an increased lymph flow Heidenhain considered that the majority of these act by stimulating the endothelial cells to activity This conclusion, however, has been subjected to much criticism Starling showed that the influence of vital action is not so marked as Heidenhain supposed it to be but that most of the phenomena in connection with lymph formation can be explained by the simpler mechanical theory Starling considered that the amount of lymph produced in any part depends on two factors —

1 The pressure at which the blood is flowing through the capillaries Heidenhain took the arterial pressure in his experiments as the measure of the capillary pressure, Starling pointed out, very justly, that this is incorrect, as there is between the arteries and the capillaries the unknown peripheral resistance in the arterioles

2 The permeability of the capillary wall This varies enormously in different regions, it is greatest in the liver, so that an intracapillary pressure which would cause lymph to flow here is without effect on the production of lymph in the limbs Liver lymph is also richer in protein than lymph from the limbs

The flow of lymph may therefore be increased in two ways —

1 By increasing the intracapillary pressure This may be done locally by ligaturing the veins of an organ, or generally by injecting a large amount of fluid into the circulation, or by the injection of such substances as sugar and salt (Heidenhain's second class of lymphagogues) into the blood These attract water from the tissues

into the blood, and thus increase the volume of the circulating fluid and raise the intracapillary pressure

2 By increasing the permeability of the capillary wall by injuring its vitality This may be done locally by scalding a part, or generally, by injecting certain poisonous substances, such as peptone, leech extract, decoction of mussels, etc (Heidenhain's first class of lymphagogues) These act chiefly on the liver capillaries, curare acts chiefly on the limb capillaries In dropsy due to impaired venous return, it has been shown by Bolton that the diminished vitality of the capillary walls due to lack of oxygen is quite as important as the increased capillary pressure, since when for example the inferior vena cava is ligatured the onset of œdema is not immediate, but when once established continues for an appreciable time after the ligature has been removed Mild degrees of this œdema may appear in the feet of normal persons if they stand for a long time and be sufficient to make the shoes feel tight In this case there has been an increased capillary pressure produced as a result of an inefficient return of venous blood

A third factor is the activity of the tissues when this increases, the lymph is increased, because the products of metabolism pass out into the lymph and raise its osmotic pressure Consequently more water is attracted out of the blood into the lymph Here we may have the explanation of the stiffness which follows unaccustomed exercise The muscles become swollen and painful as a result of increased tension, due to their taking up fluid from the blood

Lymph formation is thus mainly influenced by the physical conditions present, and the action of such thin cells as those of the capillary wall cannot be sufficiently great to counteract entirely these conditions, at the same time it is impossible to deny that there may be some such action as may be described by the terms "selective" or "secretory" The question is closely related to that of absorption from the alimentary canal, and we shall find in studying that subject that there has been a similar difference of opinion, but that recent research has confirmed the theory of selective activity of the absorptive epithelium It has to be borne in mind, however, that the columnar epithelial cells lining the intestine are very different from the thin endothelial membrane which forms the capillary wall

Fischer has advanced a theory of dropsy or œdema He believes that circulatory conditions are of minor importance, but that the main factor leading to transudation of water into the tissues is to be found in the tissues themselves He finds that colloids imbibe more water from an acid solution than under other conditions He therefore believes that it is the accumulation of acid products (such as lactic acid) in the tissues that determines their increased affinity for water, and thus they attract it out of the blood. This would still further increase the effect of increased permeability

CHAPTER XVI

THE SPLEEN

The Spleen is situated to the left of the stomach. It is of a deep red colour and of variable shape. Externally it is almost completely covered by a serous coat derived from the peritoneum, while within this is the proper fibrous coat or capsule of the organ. The latter contains numerous elastic fibres and a large amount of unstriated muscular tissue. Prolonged from its inner surface are fibrous processes or *trabeculæ*, containing much unstriated muscle, which enter the interior of the organ, and, dividing and anastomosing in all parts, form a supporting framework in the interstices of which the proper substance of the spleen (*spleen-pulp*) is contained.

The *spleen-pulp*, which is of a dark red or reddish-brown colour, is composed chiefly of red and white cells in different stages of formation and destruction, embedded in a network formed of fibres, and the branchings of large nucleated cells.

Vessels enter and leave the organ at a depression called the hilus. The endothelial cells of the capillaries become continuous with those of the splenic network, an arrangement which readily allows corpuscles to be swept into the blood-stream.

In a section of the spleen can be seen, usually with the naked eye, scattered, rounded whitish spots, $\frac{5}{6}$ to $\frac{2}{5}$ mm in diameter. These are the *Malpighian corpuscles*, and are situated on the sheaths of the minute splenic arteries. The structure of a Malpighian corpuscle is practically identical with that of a lymphoid nodule.

The spleen has the following functions :—

(1) The spleen, like the lymphatic glands, is engaged in *the formation of colourless blood-corpuscles*, for the blood of the splenic vein contains an unusually large proportion of lymphocytes.

Removal of the spleen is not fatal, but after its removal there is an overgrowth of the lymphatic glands to make up for its absence.

(2) It plays an important part in some animals, especially young, in the formation of red blood-corpuscles, and in these when the spleen is removed the red bone-marrow hypertrophies.

(3) It also assists in the destruction of effete red blood-corpuscles and is therefore rich in lipides—cholesterol and lecithin—and in iron, of which it may be considered a storehouse

(4) The spleen participates in nitrogenous metabolism, especially in the formation of uric acid (see Uric Acid formation)

(5) Besides these functions the spleen plays some part as a storehouse of blood (Barcroft), although to what extent this is

FIG 119 —Section of injected dog s spleen *c*, Capsule, *tr*, trabeculæ, *m*, two Malpighian bodies with numerous small arteries and capillaries, *a*, artery, *l*, lymphoid tissue, [illegible] osely packed lymphoid cells supported by very delicate retiform tissue, a light space unoccupied by cells is seen all round the trabeculæ, which corresponds to the "lymph path" in lymphatic glands (Schofield)

important is difficult to estimate for an organ of its size It has long been known that it contracts during gastric digestion By use of the plethysmograph Schafer and Moore demonstrated that it could be made to contract by a large number of different procedures Thus if the splenic nerves are cut, the organ relaxes, if now the peripheral ends are stimulated it contracts Apparently it is controlled by the vasomotor centre, since it contracts when the centre is stimulated by accumulation of carbon dioxide or by

sensory stimulation, or when any part of the efferent pathway from the centre to the spleen, *e g* the spinal cord, certain anterior nerve-roots and splanchnic nerves, is stimulated In exercise also when the vasomotor centre and sympathetic nervous system generally are active the spleen is markedly reduced in size, as Barcroft has recently shown in the dog, by bringing the organ permanently

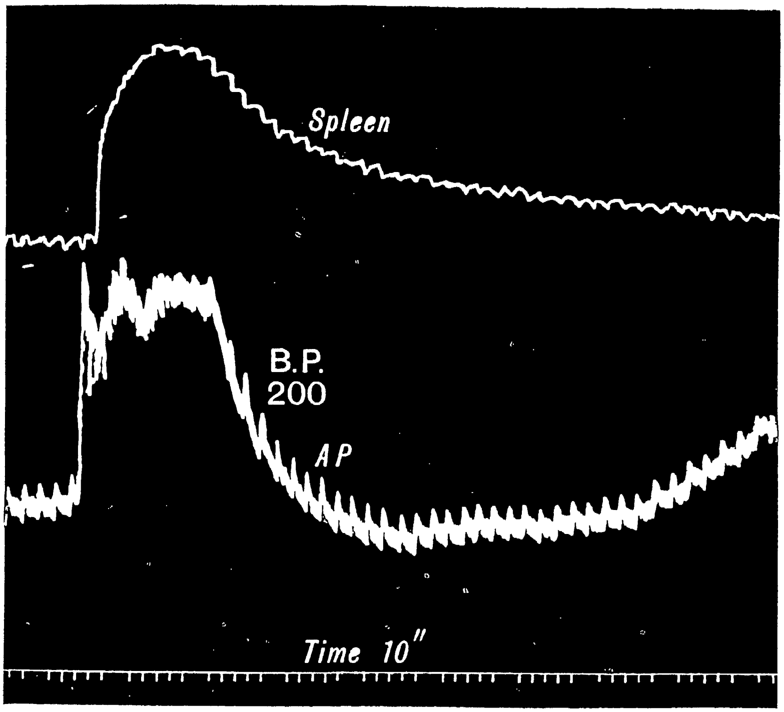


FIG 120 —A record of blood pressure and of spleen movements taken by tying threads to each end of the spleen of a cat and connecting them over pulleys to a lever Upward movement in the splenic tracing indicates contraction The record shows the contraction of the spleen caused by the intravenous injection of adrenaline The vagi were intact and the rise of blood pressure is not so large as it otherwise might have been (McDowall)

to the surface, so that it may be observed under varying conditions

A striking fact regarding the spleen is the surprising speed with which it may contract or relax (fig 120) It may also exhibit spontaneous rhythmical changes in size

It must, however, be understood that this power of acting as a storehouse for blood is probably shared by many of the other abdominal organs, especially the intestine

Hæmolymph Glands

The existence of glands which partake of the nature both of the spleen and of lymphatic glands, has long been known They have been fully investigated by Lewis He finds them in most mammals, and they can be readily distinguished from ordinary lymphatic glands by their red colour He divides them into (1) *hæmal glands,* which are characterised by the fact that the sinuses contain blood only, the spleen is in fact a large hæmal gland, and (2) *hæmal lymphatic glands,* in which the sinuses are filled with a mixture of blood and lymph.

CHAPTER XVII

RESPIRATION

THE term respiration in its wide sense includes all the processes and mechanisms by which the tissues of the body take up oxygen and get rid of carbon dioxide The tissues are brought into relationship with the outside world indirectly by means of the blood which transports the gases, and in order to effect the exchange of gases rapidly the blood is spread out in a very thin but extensive layer, where it comes almost immediately into contact with the air, being separated only by a thin membrane In order to provide the large area needed there has been evolved in many animals two specialised organs, lungs, in which the air is changed periodically by the mechanism of breathing. In fishes, the gills in contact with the water have a similar function It is to be understood that the lungs are not in any manner the seat of any special combustion processes Those processes take place in the tissues themselves

The Respiratory Apparatus

The respiratory apparatus consists of a pair of lungs and the air-passages which lead to them

The *Lungs* are contained in the chest or thorax, which is a closed cavity having no communication with the outside except the trachea or windpipe

The *Larynx* is at the upper end of the trachea, and will be described in connection with the voice

The Trachea and Bronchi—The trachea is essentially a tube of fibro-elastic membrane, within the layers of which is embedded a series of cartilaginous rings These rings extend only around the front and sides of the trachea (about two-thirds of its circumference) and are deficient behind, the interval between their posterior extremities is bridged over by a continuation of the fibrous membrane in which they are enclosed and by a layer of unstriped muscle The rings are of great value in maintaining the patency of the windpipe The inner surface of the trachea is lined with ciliated epithelium, this, together with the basement membrane on which it rests, and a deeper layer of loose connective tissue, forms its mucous

membrane Opening on to the surface of the latter are the ducts of underlying mucous glands

The two bronchi into which the trachea divides, resemble the trachea in structure, with the difference that in them there is a distinct layer of unstriped muscle arranged circularly beneath the mucous membrane and forming the *muscularis mucosæ*

The bronchi divide into many branches the largest of which have walls formed of fibrous tissue, containing portions of cartilaginous rings and unstriped muscle-fibres, as well as longitudinal bundles of elastic tissue They are lined by mucous membrane the surface of which, like that of the trachea, is covered with ciliated epithelium (fig 123) and provided with mucous glands which secrete phlegm The latter is worked up to the larynx by the ciliated epithelium where it may be coughed up and swallowed In inflammation of the respiratory passages this secretion becomes greatly increased

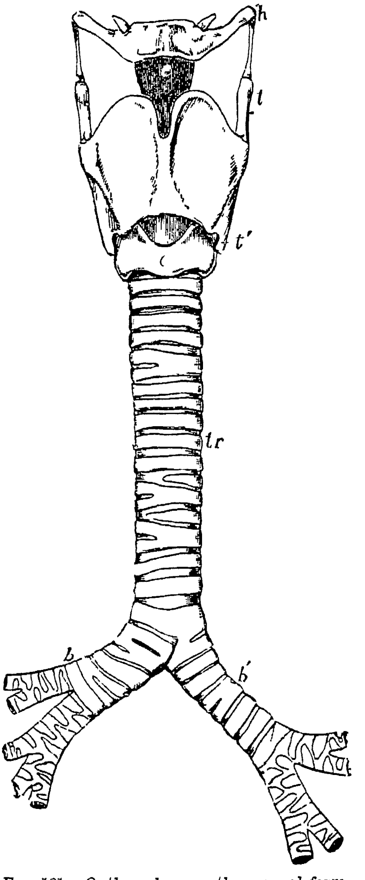


FIG 121 —Outline showing the general form of the larynx, trachea, and bronchi, as seen from the front *h*, The great cornu of the hyoid bone, *e*, epiglottis, *t*, superior, and *t'*, inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage, *c*, middle of the cricoid cartilage, *tr*, the trachea, showing sixteen cartilaginous rings, *b*, the right, and *b'*, the left bronchus The right bronchus is here represented as more horizontal than is usual (Allen Thomson)

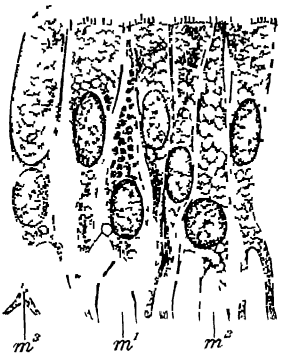


FIG 122 —Ciliated epithelium from rabbit's trachea (Schafer), m^1, m^2, m^3, mucus secreting cells in various stages of mucin formation, lying between the ciliated cells

When the **bronchial tubes** or **bronchioles**, by successive

branchings, are reduced to about $\frac{1}{40}$th of an inch (0 6 mm) in diameter they gradually lose their cartilaginous element until it disappears altogether, and their walls are formed only of a fibrous-elastic membrane with circular muscle-fibres, they are still lined

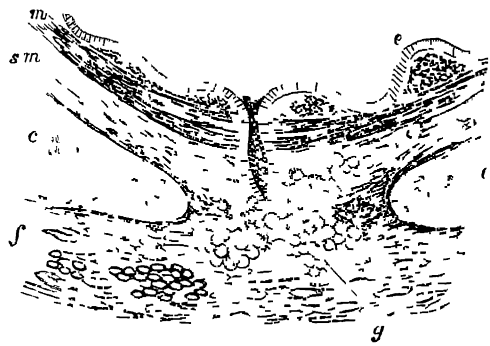


FIG 123 —Transverse section of a bronchial tube, about ½ inch in diameter *e*, Epithelium (ciliated), immediately beneath it is the corium of the mucous membrane of varying thickness , *m*, muscular layer , *s m*, submucous tissue , *f*, fibrous tissue , *c*, cartilage enclosed within the layers of fibrous tissue , *g*, mucous glands (F E Schulze)

with ciliated epithelium, but the cells bearing the cilia are now cubical, while the muscle-fibres are relatively more abundant and form a distinct circular coat This muscle is caused to contract by the vagus nerve and is dilated by the sympathetic and by adrenaline, which is extensively used, therefore, to relieve the bronchial constriction in asthma

The Lungs and Pleuræ —Each lung is enveloped by a serous membrane—the *pleura*, one layer of which adheres closely to its surface, and provides it with its smooth and slippery covering, while the other adheres to the inner surface of the chest-wall The continuity of the two layers at the base of the lungs forms a closed sac, which the lungs fill completely There is no actual space The pleura which covers the lung (*visceral* layer) and that which lines the inner surface of the chest (*parietal* layer) are, in health, everywhere in contact one with the other, and between them is only just so much fluid as will ensure the lungs gliding easily, in their expansion and retraction, on the inner surface of the parietal layer, which lines the chest-wall

If, however, an opening is made so as to permit air or fluid to enter the pleural sac, the lung, in virtue of its elasticity, recoils, and a considerable space is left between it and the chest-wall In other words, the natural elasticity of the lungs would cause them at all times to contract away from the ribs were it not that the contraction is resisted by atmospheric pressure which bears only on the *inner*

surface of the air-tubes and air-sacs On the admission of air into the pleural sac, atmospheric pressure bears alike on the inner and outer surfaces of the lung, and its elastic recoil is no longer prevented

Each lung is partially subdivided into separate portions called *lobes*, the right lung into three lobes, and the left into two Each of these lobes, again, is composed of a large number of minute parts, called *lobules*

On entering a lobule, the small bronchial tube divides and subdivides (fig 124), its walls at the same time become thinner and

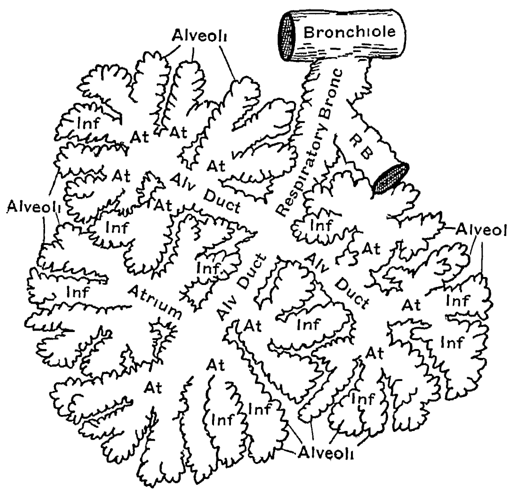


FIG 124 —Diagram to show the general arrangement in a piece of lung (McDowall modified from Miller)

thinner, until at length they are formed only of a thin membrane of areolar, muscular, and elastic tissue, lined by a layer of pavement epithelium not provided with cilia Eventually the muscle tissue disappears and the walls become pouched-out irregularly into small saccular dilatations, called alveoli (see fig 124) The funnel-shaped terminal branch of the bronchial tube, with its group of alveoli, is called an *infundibulum* The alveoli are of various forms, according to the mutual pressure to which they are subject, their walls are nearly in contact, and they vary from 0 5 to 0 3 mm in diameter Their walls are formed of fine membrane, like those of the intercellular passage They are lined by a layer of pavement epithelium (fig 125) Outside the alveoli a network of pulmonary capillaries is spread out so densely (fig 67, p 116) that the interspaces or meshes

are even narrower than the vessels Between the air in the lungs and the blood in these vessels nothing intervenes but the thin walls of the alveoli and of the capillaries, and the exposure of the blood to the air is the more complete, because the folds of membrane between contiguous alveoli, and often the spaces between the walls of each, contain only a single layer of capillaries, both sides of which are thus at once exposed to the air

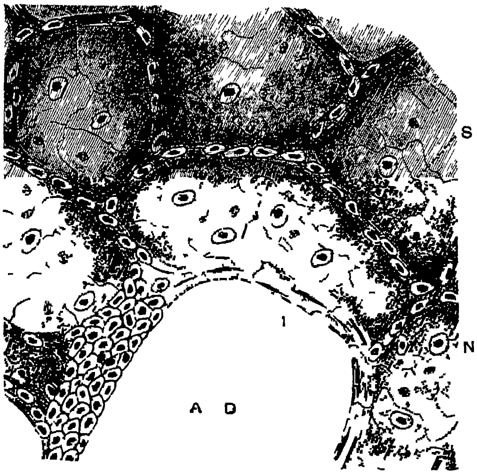


FIG 125 —Section of lung stained with silver nitrate A D , alveolar duct or intercellular passage, S, alveolar septa, N, alveoli or air sacs, lined with large flat cells, with some smaller polyhedral cells, M, plain muscle fibres surrounding the alveolar duct (Klein and Noble Smith)

Blood-supply —The lungs receive blood from two sources (*a*) the pulmonary artery, (*b*) the bronchial arteries The former conveys *venous* blood to the lungs to be *arterialised* The branches of the bronchial arteries convey arterial blood from the aorta for the nutrition of the walls of the bronchi, vessels, interlobular connective tissue, etc , the blood of the bronchial vessels is returned chiefly through the bronchial and partly through the pulmonary veins

The Respiratory Mechanism

Respiration consists of the alternate expansion and contraction of the thorax, by means of which air is drawn into or expelled from the lungs These acts are called *Inspiration* and *Expiration* respectively

For inspiration a movement of the side-walls and floor of the chest takes place, so that the capacity of the interior is enlarged By such increase of capacity there will be a diminution of the

pressure of the air in the lungs, and a fresh quantity will enter through the trachea to equalise the pressure on the inside and outside of the chest

For expiration the opposite movement diminishes the capacity of the chest, the pressure in the interior will be thus increased, and air will be expelled, until the pressures within and without the chest are again equal In both cases the air passes through the trachea, there being no other communication with the exterior of the body, and the lung remains, under all conditions, closely in contact with the walls and floor of the chest The movements of the lungs are therefore passive, not active, and depend on the changes of shape of the closed cavity in which they are contained A perforation of the chest-wall would mean that the lung on that side would no longer be of use, a similar injury on the other side (double pneumothorax) would cause death If the two layers of the pleura were adherent, those portions of the lung would be expanded most where the movements of the chest are greatest The existence of the two separate layers prevents this, and thus the lung is equally expanded throughout

Keith believes that the expansion of the lung during inspiration does not occur simultaneously at every point but resembles rather the opening of a Japanese fan First the anterior borders and the part in contact with the diaphragm expand followed successively by the apex, vertebral border, and region of the root

Inspiration—This is a muscular act, the inspiratory muscles increase the size of the chest-cavity in all its diameters

The *vertical diameter* is increased by the contraction and consequent descent of the diaphragm, at rest, the diaphragm is dome-shaped with the convexity upwards, the central tendon forms a slight depression in the middle of this dome On contraction the muscle-fibres shorten, and so the convexity of the double dome is lessened The central tendon is drawn down a certain distance, but the chief movement is at the sides For the effective action of this muscle, its attachment to the lower ribs is kept fixed by the contraction of the quadratus lumborum The diaphragm is supplied by the *phrenic* nerves which arise chiefly from the 4th cervical segment of the spinal cord

The increase in the *lateral* and *antero-posterior diameters* of the chest is effected by the raising of the ribs, the upper ones being fixed by the scaleni The greater number of the ribs is attached very obliquely to the spine or vertebral column, and sternum

The elevation of the ribs takes place both in front and at the sides—the hinder ends being prevented from performing any upward movement by their attachment to the spine The movement of the front extremities of the ribs is of necessity accompanied by an upward and forward movement of the sternum to which they are attached, the movement being greater at its lower than at its upper end.

The muscles by which the ribs are raised, in *ordinary* quiet inspiration, are the *external intercostals*, and that portion of the *internal intercostals* which is situated between the costal cartilages, and these are assisted by the *levatores costarum*, and the *serratus posterior superior*

In *extraordinary* or forced inspiration, additional muscles are pressed into service, such as the *sternocleidomastoid*, the *serratus magnus*, the *pectorales*, and the *trapezius* Laryngeal and face muscles also come into play

The expansion of the chest in inspiration presents some peculiarities in different persons In young children, it is effected chiefly by the diaphragm The movement of the abdominal walls being here more manifest than that of any other part, it is usual to call this the *abdominal* type of respiration In men, together with the descent of the diaphragm and the pushing forward of the front wall of the abdomen, the chest and the sternum are subject to a wide movement in inspiration (*inferior costal* type) In women, the movement appears less extensive in the lower, and more so in the upper, part of the chest (*superior costal* type)

Expiration —From the enlargement produced in inspiration, the chest and lungs return, in ordinary tranquil expiration, by their elasticity to their previous condition, the force employed by the inspiratory muscles in distending the chest and overcoming the elastic resistance of the lungs and chest-walls, is returned as an expiratory effort when the muscles are relaxed This elastic recoil of the chest and lungs is sufficient, in ordinary quiet breathing, to expel air from the lungs in the intervals of inspiration, and no muscular power is required In all voluntary expiratory efforts, however, as in speaking, singing, blowing, and the like, and in many involuntary actions also, as sneezing, coughing, etc, something more than merely passive elastic power is necessary, and the proper expiratory muscles are brought into action The chief of these are the abdominal muscles, which, by pressing on the viscera of the abdomen, push up the floor of the chest formed by the diaphragm, and by thus making pressure on the lungs, expel air from them through the trachea and larynx All muscles, however, which depress the ribs, must act also as muscles of expiration, and we must conclude that the abdominal muscles are assisted in their action by the interosseous part of the *internal intercostals*, the *triangularis sterni*, and perhaps the *serratus posterior inferior* When by the efforts of the expiratory muscles, the chest has been squeezed to less than its average size, it again, on relaxation of the muscles, returns to the normal dimensions by virtue of its elasticity The construction of the chest-walls, therefore, admirably adapts them for recoiling against and resisting undue contraction as well as undue dilatation

Graphic Record of Respiratory Movements

Among numerous methods which have been described for recording the respiratory movements the simplest in the human subject, especially if he be a patient in bed, is to fasten a bandage loosely round the chest Between the bandage and the chest-wall a flexible hollow rubber ball is placed This ball or a tambour communicates by a rubber tube with a recording tambour All such appliances are called *Stethographs*

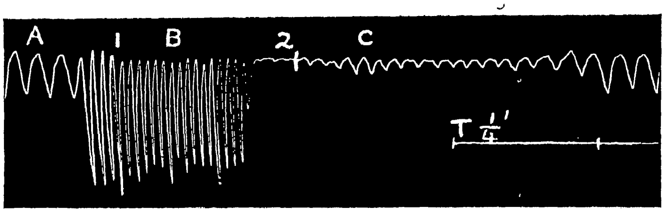


FIG 126 —Record showing normal respiration at A, the effect of over ventilation at B, the gradual return to normal at C during which slight Cheyne-Stokes respiration is seen Pieces of tracing were cut out at 1 and at 2 to facilitate reproduction (Wilkinson)

It is possible to record the diaphragmatic movements in animals by the insertion of an elastic bag connected with a tambour into the abdomen below the diaphragm, by the insertion of needles into different parts of its structure, or by recording the contraction of isolated strips of the diaphragm Such a strip attached in the rabbit to the xiphisternal cartilage may be detached, and attached by a thread to a recording lever, this strip serves as a sample of the diaphragm

Such methods, however, merely measure the rate of breathing and give a rough idea of its depth The actual quantity of air which enters and leaves the lungs is measured by a modified gasometer (*spirometer*) (fig 127) into which the experimenter breathes

The variations of intrapleural pressure may be recorded by the introduction of a cannula into the pleural cavity, which is connected with a water manometer

The act of inspiring air, especially in women and children, is a little shorter than that of expelling it, and there is commonly a very slight pause between the end of expiration and the beginning of the next inspiration

If the ear is placed in contact with the wall of the chest, or is separated from it only by a good conductor of sound or stethoscope, a *respiratory murmur* or breath sound is heard chiefly during inspiration This sound varies somewhat in different parts—being loudest or coarsest in the neighbourhood of the trachea and large

bronchi (tracheal and bronchial breathing), and fading off into a faint sighing as the ear is placed at a distance from these (vesicular breathing) It is best heard in children, and in them a more marked murmur is heard in expiration The cause of the vesicular murmur has received various explanations, but most observers hold that the sound is produced by the air passing through the glottis and larger tubes, and that this sound is modified in its conduction through the substance of the lung The alterations in the normal breath sounds, and the various additions to them that occur in different diseased conditions, can be properly studied only at the bedside

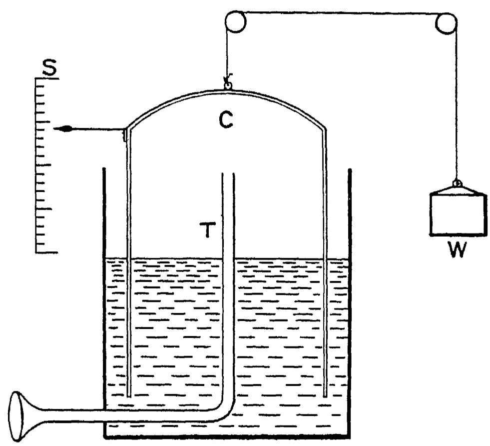


FIG 127 —The Hutchinson spirometer

During the action of the muscles which directly draw air into the chest, those which guard the opening through which it enters are not passive In hurried breathing the instinctive dilatation of the nostrils is well seen, although under ordinary conditions it may not be noticeable In many people the *rima glottidis*, or interval between the true vocal cords of the larynx, is slightly dilated at each inspiration for the more ready passage of air, and becomes smaller at each expiration, its condition, therefore, corresponds during respiration with that of the walls of the chest There is a further likeness between the two acts in that, in ordinary circumstances, the dilatation of the rima glottidis is a muscular act and its narrowing chiefly an elastic recoil

Quantities of Air Breathed —Measurements of these quantities are made by means of the spirometer The apparatus is illustrated and is seen to consist of a light metal bell (C), which is balanced by a counterweight (W), and which can move freely in a water-

container. The subject breathes into the tube (T). Several modifications of this apparatus have been made, notably Krogh's recording spirometer, which is shown in fig 172, p 387.

Tidal air is the quantity which is habitually and almost uniformly changed in each act of breathing. In a healthy adult man it averages **about 500 c c**, or rather more than 30 cubic inches (Haldane). This will be expanded at body temperature to 600 c c. This amount of air is not sufficient to fill the lungs. Haldane gives the capacity of the upper air-passages and bronchial tubes as 200 c c, and therefore about a third of the tidal air is required to fill this *dead space*. At the end of an expiration, however, the tubes and alveoli are not empty of air, and the sudden inrush of atmospheric air during the next inspiration effects a complete mixture of this air with that left in the air-passages; the air in the axial stream of the current will penetrate as far as the alveoli, but what is sucked into the alveoli is mainly some of the mixture from the bronchial passages, and that in turn is derived from the mixture (containing more atmospheric air in proportion) in the upper air-cavities. During expiration the air which leaves the lungs will come in part from the alveoli, but the effect of the stream of outgoing air is mainly as before, to effect a thorough admixture of the air in the intermediate air-passages; thus the alveolar air will become mixed with that in the bronchial tubes, which in turn will be mixed with that in the upper air-chambers. In a succession of alternate ordinary inspirations and expirations adequate ventilation is secured, but obviously the composition of the *expired air* is not the same as that of *alveolar air*, for the latter, though it is ultimately breathed out, is diluted on its upward journey by mixture with the bronchial air, and that in its turn with the air of the upper air-chambers; in other words, the expired air is alveolar air (rich in carbon dioxide) diluted with bronchial air (richer in oxygen) and with atmospheric air (still richer in oxygen).

Complemental air is the quantity over and above the tidal air which can be drawn into the lungs in the deepest inspiration; its amount averages 100 cubic inches, (**1600 c c**).

Reserve or *supplemental air*.—After an ordinary expiration, such as that which expels the tidal air, a further quantity of air, about 100 cubic inches (**1600 c c**) can be expelled by a forcible deep expiration. This is termed *reserve* or *supplemental air*. The last portion of the air thus expelled will consist of air from the alveoli.

Residual air is the quantity which still remains in the lungs after the most violent expiratory effort. Its amount depends in great measure on the absolute size of the chest, but may be estimated at about 100 cubic inches (**1600 c c**). Methods of determining the quantity of residual air are described later.

Vital Capacity.—The vital capacity of the chest is indicated by

the quantity of air which a person can expel from his lungs by a forcible expiration after the deepest inspiration possible The average capacity of an adult, at 15 4° C (60° F) is about 225 to 250 cubic inches, or 3500 to 4000 c c It is the sum of the complemental, tidal, and supplemental air This determination is commonly made in medical practice, since in diseased states, *e g* cardiac disease, the vital capacity may be much reduced

Total ventilation —This is the quantity of air which passes in and out of the respiratory system per minute It is normally 5 to 10 litres in the adult, after walking uphill it rises to 30, and maximal readings after heavy exercises give up to 100 litres per minute

The alveolar ventilation is the product of the amount of inspired air which reaches the alveoli per respiration, and the respiration-rate The figures obtained serve to show the efficiency of the deep over the shallow type of respiration We may take a rather extreme case of two people in each of whom the alveolar respiration per minute was the same, the dead space the same (200 c c), but in one the respiration-rate was 10 and in the other 30 per minute

		Case 1	Case 2
a	Respiration-rate	10	30
b	Dead space	200 c c	200 c c
c	Alveolar respiration per breath	600 c c	200 c c
d	Total ventilation per breath ($b+c$)	800 c c	400 c c
e	,, ,, per minute ($a \times d$)	8000 c c	12,000 c c
f	Product of *a* and *c* (alveolar respiration per minute)	6000 c c	6000 c c

To achieve the same result in alveolar respiration the shallow breather breathes three times as often and passes more total air (12,000 c c) into his respiratory system than the deep breather (8000 c c) The shallow breather, moreover, retains half of each breath in the dead space, instead of a quarter, and the air here is ineffectual so far as gaseous exchange is concerned

The capacity of the lungs is determined by filling a spirometer with air and a *known* volume of some insoluble and inert gas such as hydrogen The subject after making a maximal expiration as in the estimation of vital capacity, follows it by a couple of forced respirations in and out of the spirometer This causes a uniform distribution of the hydrogen throughout the atmosphere which pervades both the spirometer and the respiratory system of the subject A comparison of the initial and final percentages of hydrogen in the spirometer shows the degree of partition of this gas as between the spirometer and the lungs, and combining this with a knowledge of the initial and final volumes of total gas (*i e* air + hydrogen) in the spirometer, the volume of the respiratory system and the residual air may be calculated

The number of respirations in a healthy adult person usually ranges from **14 to 18 per minute** It is greater in infancy and childhood It also varies much according to different circumstances, such as exercise or rest, health or disease, etc Variations in the number of respirations correspond ordinarily with similar variations in the pulsations of the heart In health the proportion is about 1 to 4, or 1 to 5, and when the rapidity of the heart's action is increased, that of the chest movement is commonly increased also, but not in every case in equal proportion It happens occasionally in disease, especially of the lungs or air-passages, that the number of *respiratory* acts increases in greater proportion than the beats of the *pulse*, and in other affections, much more commonly, that the number of the pulse-beats is greater in proportion than that of the respirations

The Respiratory Quality of the Air—From what has been said it is evident that the air in contact with the blood is that of the alveoli From the following table its composition may be compared with that of the atmosphere and of the expired tidal air It is to be understood, however, that these figures may vary in different circumstances, but the *averages* obtained from normal individuals at rest are sufficiently important in an understanding of respiration to be committed to memory

Per Cent by Volume	Atmosphere	Expired Air	Alveolar Air
Oxygen	**20 96**	**16 0**	**13-14**
Carbon dioxide	**0 04**	**4 4**	**5-6**
Nitrogen	**79 0**	**79 6**	**80-82**

The expired and alveolar airs are saturated with water vapour at body temperature

Methods of Investigation

Although these methods were originally used in the purely scientific investigation of respiration, their use has now been extended to the study of diseased conditions, and a knowledge of their use has become essential to medical students

The Collection of Alveolar Air

Haldane and Priestley introduced a simple method of collecting alveolar air which has the advantage of being applicable to man It consists essentially of collecting the air expired at the end of a deep expiration A piece of rubber tubing is taken about 1 inch in diameter and about 4 feet long A mouthpiece is fitted into one end, and 2 inches from the mouthpiece is a smaller rubber tube through which samples may be withdrawn into a sampling tube (fig 128) The latter is made of glass and has a tap at each end

Before it is used it is evacuated (conveniently by filling it with mercury and allowing it to run out) The subject of the experiment breathes normally through the tube for a time until he becomes accustomed to it, and then, at the end of a normal inspiration, he expires quickly and very deeply through the mouthpiece and instantly closes it with his tongue A second experiment is then done, in which the subject expires deeply at the end of a normal expiration, and another sample obtained The mean result of the two analyses represents the composition of the alveolar air Since the gaseous interchange between the blood and the alveolar air is going on continuously, it is evident that at the end of inspiration

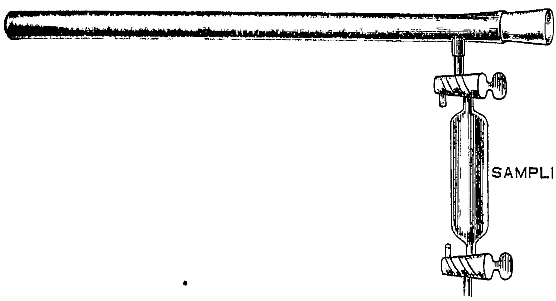


FIG 128 —Apparatus for obtaining alveolar air

there will be a maximum percentage of oxygen, and a minimum percentage of carbonic acid, the converse obtains at the end of expiration

On analysis the **composition of alveolar air** is found to be **13-14 per cent** of **oxygen** and **5 to 6 per cent** of **carbon dioxide**

These percentages may, however, be caused to vary according to the ventilation in the lungs If respiration is increased voluntarily the alveolar air becomes more like atmospheric air, *i e* the percentage of carbon dioxide falls This occurs whenever the respiratory centre is stimulated by substances in the blood *other than carbon dioxide, e g* by voluntary over-ventilation or by acids such as those produced in diabetes A fall of alveolar carbon dioxide is therefore of considerable diagnostic significance as (see Acid-Base Equilibrium) it indicates an attempt of the body to rid itself of excessive acid, as, for instance, in diabetes mellitus Similarly, reduced respiration due to any cause except lack of CO_2 causes a rise in alveolar CO_2

The Collection of Expired Air

In measuring the *total ventilation* (cubic centimetres of air passing in and out of the lungs per minute) it is usual to measure the volume of the air expired in a given time This is not quite the same thing

as the volume of the inspired air, because the CO_2 added to the air is a little less in volume than that of the oxygen which it replaces (p 224)

The subject, whose nose is clipped, breathes by the mouth through a tube in which there are suitable valves By attaching a tube to the expiratory valve the expired air can be collected in a bag The type of bag most frequently used for this purpose is that devised by Douglas of Oxford The Douglas bag is made of canvas impregnated with rubber, its walls must be impervious to gas, flexible, and not

FIG 129 —The Douglas bag and accessory apparatus The bag itself is seen hanging near the operator's right hand The gas meter faces him, and he is seen working a stationary bicycle (bicycle ergometer) (G B Hunt)

too heavy It is fitted with a tap which can be turned quickly so that the duration of an experiment can be timed exactly The sample collected is kept for subsequent measurement and analysis The tubing used for connecting the face mask to the bag must have a very wide bore, even a small constriction adds greatly to the labour of respiration and causes respiratory fatigue

The volume of the sample is obtained by passing the contents of the bag through a gas meter, and a side tube facilitates the collection of small samples for analysis In this way (1) the total ventilation, (2) the oxygen in the expired air, and therefore the

oxygen absorbed by the subject, (3) the CO_2 in the expired air, and its output per minute, and (4) the respiratory quotient (the proportion of CO_2 given out to oxygen taken in) are obtained These data are also needed in reference to work on nutrition, and may also be employed in calculating the quantity of blood circulating per minute

On **analysis** the expired air is found to be between alveolar and the inspired air—namely, about **16 per cent oxygen** and **4 4 per cent carbon dioxide** The more efficient the ventilation the more like atmospheric air the expired air becomes Over-ventilation, therefore, causes the percentage of oxygen to rise and that of the carbon dioxide to fall, and care must be taken to avoid this in collecting a sample by ensuring that the subject breathes naturally

The Principles of Gas Analysis

The gases one has to deal with, whether pumped off by the vacuum pump from the blood, obtained from the pulmonary alveoli, or from the atmosphere, are only three in number The total gas obtained is first measured, then the *carbon dioxide* is removed by caustic potash (KOH) and the gas that remains is measured, this consists of *oxygen* and *nitrogen* The oxygen is removed by pyrogallic acid in KOH and the gas again measured, this is *nitrogen*

The Haldane Gas Analysis Apparatus

This is the classical apparatus for gas analysis, but many modifications in detail have been devised (fig 130)

In its simplest form it consists of a burette (B) surrounded by a water-jacket (W) to which there is connected, by means of rubber-tubing, a mercury reservoir *After preliminary adjustments* a sample is drawn into the burette by lowering the mercury (M) which previously has been raised to fill the burette completely When the air to be examined is in a sampling tube its place in the tube is taken by fluid from a reservoir attached by tubing to its lower end, the upper end being attached to the analyser The tap 1 is then closed and the sample measured (at atmospheric pressure, by levelling the surface of the mercury in the reservoir with that in the burette) The taps 1 and 2 are then turned so that the burette communicates with the bulb (K) containing 10 per cent KOH, and the sample is driven over and drawn back from this bulb several times The level in the bulb is brought back to zero by adjusting the level of the mercury reservoir The tap 1 leading from the burette is now closed and the sample measured at atmospheric pressure as before The decrease in the volume of the sample is a measure of the CO_2 absorbed The sample is driven over until absorption is complete

The procedure is repeated using tap 3, so that the gaseous sample enters the pyrogallol bulb (P) instead of the KOH and is continued until no further absorption occurs This may take half an hour The further diminution in volume indicates the amount of oxygen in the sample

Before commencing the analysis the direction of the taps must be known The taps must be turned to connect the bulbs with the atmosphere and the levels of the solutions in the bulbs are adjusted

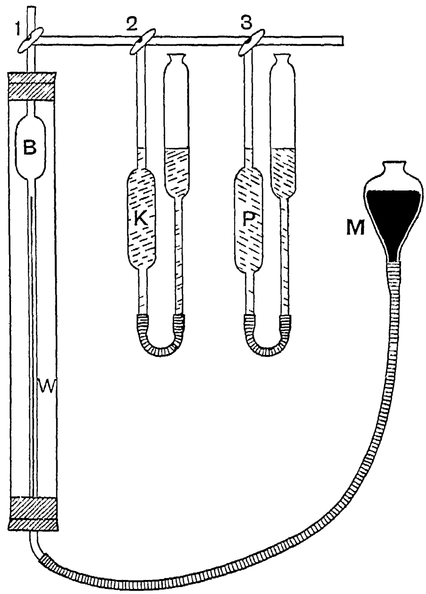


FIG 180 —A simplified Haldane gas analysis apparatus

to zero All CO_2 and oxygen must be removed from the tubes connecting the bulbs with the burettes by carrying out a preliminary analysis of room air It is important also to emphasise that since the pyrogallol will absorb CO_2 as well as oxygen the carbon dioxide must be absorbed first

Micro-gas analysis—This is necessary when analysing the gases in a bubble of air as in determining the tension of gases in blood The burette is replaced by a graduated tube of capillary bore into which KOH and pyrogallol are alternately sucked by various devices

CHAPTER XVIII

RESPIRATION (*continued*)

The Gases of the Blood

BEFORE the student can study either the chemistry of respiration or its regulation, which is in part a chemical process, it is necessary that he should have an adequate conception of the fundamental laws which regulate the retention of oxygen and carbonic acid in the blood, and as the blood presents many complications, it will be best at the outset to consider the solution of gases in such a simple medium as water

Solution of Gases in Water

If water is shaken up with oxygen, a certain definite amount of oxygen will be dissolved in the water Under the same conditions the same quantity of oxygen will always be dissolved The temperature is important, but to simplify the following argument it will be assumed that the temperature remains constant, so that this factor may be neglected The amount dissolved depends then on two factors, each of which can be measured The first is the pressure of the oxygen to which the water is exposed when shaken, the second is a property of the oxygen itself, namely, its solubility in water The solubilities of different gases differ very much, some (for instance, oxygen) are but slightly soluble in water, while others, such as carbonic acid, are very soluble

If a cubic centimetre of water is introduced into a large air-tight bottle containing pure oxygen at atmospheric pressure, and another cubic centimetre of water is placed in a bottle containing pure carbonic acid at the same pressure, the former will dissolve 0 04 c c of oxygen, the latter 1 c c of carbonic acid These figures represent the degrees to which the two gases are soluble in water in similar circumstances, and are called the *coefficients of solubility* The coefficient of solubility of gas in a liquid is therefore the volume of gas which 1 c c of the liquid will dissolve at 760 mm of mercury, that is, atmospheric pressure

The quantity of gas which a liquid will dissolve depends not only on the solubility of the gas, but also on the pressure of the gas to which the liquid is exposed Thus, in the instance given above, if the oxygen had been rarefied in the bottle until it exerted a pressure

of only one-fifth of an atmosphere, the water would have taken up not 0 04 c c of oxygen, but only one-fifth of that amount, 0 008 c c To take another example, 1 c c of water shaken up with pure nitrogen at 760 mm pressure will dissolve 0 02 c c, but if the pressure is reduced to four-fifths of the atmospheric pressure, then the water will dissolve $0\ 02 \times \frac{4}{5} = 0\ 016$ c c If we represent the coefficient of solubility of a gas by K, the pressure of the gas to which the liquid is exposed by P′, and the atmospheric pressure by P, then the quantity, Q, of the gas dissolved by 1 c c of the liquid may be obtained by the following formula—

$$Q = K \times \frac{P'}{P}$$

Dalton-Henry Law

What has been said above is as true of gases which are mixed together as of pure gases For instance, we have seen that a cubic centimetre of water shaken up with oxygen at one-fifth of an atmosphere (152 mm pressure) will absorb $0\ 04 \times \frac{1}{5} = 0\ 008$ c c, or if shaken with nitrogen at a pressure of four-fifths of an atmosphere, it will dissolve $0\ 02 \times \frac{4}{5} = 0\ 016$ c c If now a c c of water be shaken with air (a mixture of one part of oxygen to four of nitrogen), it will have absorbed 0 008 c c of oxygen and 0 016 c c of nitrogen This fact has been stated as the Dalton-Henry Law in the following words — When two or more gases are mixed together, each of them produces the same pressure as if they separately occupied the entire space and the other gases were absent The *total* pressure of the mixture is the sum of the *partial* pressures of the individual gases in the mixture

Estimation of Blood Gases

The classical method of obtaining gases from the blood has been that of "boiling off" the gases from the blood by creating a vacuum above it The different patterns of air pump vary in different laboratories For general use, however, the chemical methods are much more convenient

Haldane's and Barcroft's Methods—In both of these the oxygen is liberated from the blood by potassium ferricyanide, and subsequently the carbon dioxide by tartaric acid The blood, oxalated to prevent clotting, is placed in a small chamber (A) beneath weak ammonia solution (to fix the free CO_2), and laked with saponin Within the chamber is a small container of fresh saturated aqueous solution of potassium ferricyanide The appliances differ in the methods of measuring the gas given off and in the shape of the chambers In each there is a similar chamber in which a similar quantity of water

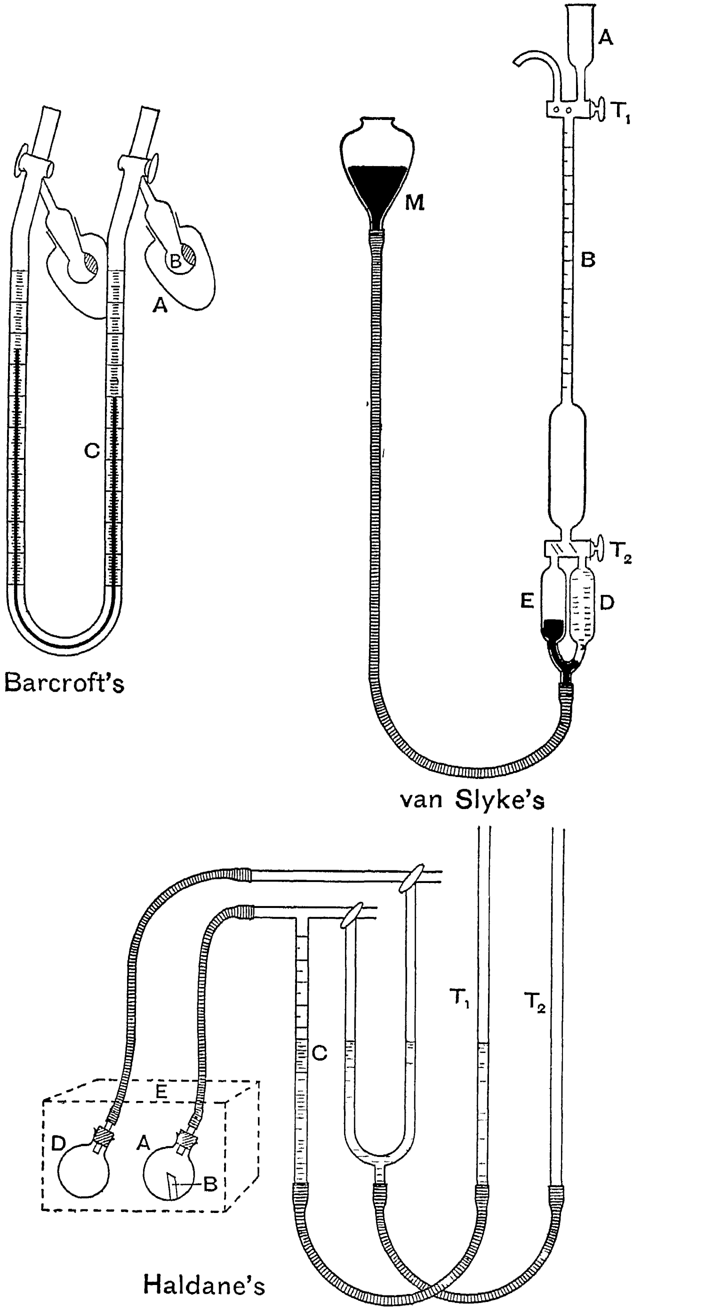


FIG 131 —Different types of blood gas apparatus

The Tension of Gases in Fluids

In the cases which have been discussed up to this point, a condition of equilibrium exists between the gas dissolved in the fluid and the gas in the atmosphere to which the fluid is exposed, so that as many molecules of the gas leave the surface of the fluid as enter it The gas dissolved in the fluid therefore exercises a pressure which is the same as that of the gas in the atmosphere when equilibrium exists For the sake of convenience the word *Tension* is applied to the pressure of the gas *in* the fluid

Definition of Tension —The tension of a gas dissolved in a fluid is equal to the pressure of the same gas in an atmosphere with which the gas in the fluid would be in equilibrium Above, we have called the pressure which the gas exerts on the liquid P' If we call the tension of the gas in the liquid T, we find that, when equilibrium exists, $P' = T$ In the case of all true solutions, therefore, we may replace P' in our previous equation by T, so that $Q = K \times \frac{T}{P}$. We thus arrive at a relation between two separate things, which must be most carefully distinguished from one another—the quantity of the gas dissolved in the liquid and its tension

Measurement of Tension —Numerous instruments, called *tonometers*, exist for measuring the tension of gases in fluids Of these, the instrument which has given the most trustworthy measurements of the oxygen and carbonic acid tensions in circulating blood is that invented by Krogh (fig 132)

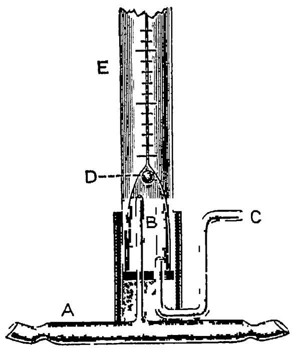


FIG 132 —Krogh s tonometer

A ⊤-shaped cannula (A) is introduced into a blood-vessel, say the carotid artery, the blood fills the cavity B and leaves it at C, so that a constant stream of blood is kept flowing Into it a small bubble of air (D) is introduced Exchange of gases takes place between the bubble and the blood, and the former very soon gets into equilibrium with the latter When it has done so, the bubble is withdrawn up the capillary tube E, taken away, and analysed in a microtonometer gas analysis apparatus

As an example, suppose the bubble on analysis proved to consist of 4 per cent carbonic acid and 12 per cent oxygen, together with nitrogen and aqueous vapour The gas of the bubble in the instrument was compressed by the pressure of the arterial blood (say 120 mm. of mercury) in addition to the atmospheric pressure

of 760 mm of mercury, and therefore the total pressure was 120+760=880 mm of mercury Four per cent of this would have been due to the carbonic acid, 4 per cent of 880 is 35 2 Twelve per cent would have been due to the oxygen, 12 per cent of 880 is 105 6 That is, the carbonic acid and oxygen tensions would have been in round figures 35 and 106 mm of mercury respectively

In man it is evident that other methods are necessary

Barcroft and Nagahashi's method —If the point of a hypodermic needle fitted to an air-tight syringe is introduced into the radial artery in man a sample of arterial blood may be withdrawn, which may be regarded as of the same composition as that which leaves the lung by the pulmonary vein If now a bubble of air is introduced into the syringe, this bubble rapidly loses oxygen and gains carbonic acid till it is in equilibrium with the blood, that is to say, till the gases in the bubble exert the same partial pressure as those in the plasma If the bubble is very small, relatively to the amount of blood, the blood may be regarded as not having changed appreciably in the process, and therefore the partial pressure of the gases found by analysis of the bubble may be taken to be those of the gases in the arterial blood

Inference method —This is probably the method most commonly used A sample of blood is taken and the quantity of oxygen and carbon dioxide in it determined From a knowledge of the dissociation curves of the blood, which indicate the power of blood to take up gases at different pressures, it can be inferred at what tension the gases must have been present In accurate investigation it is necessary to make a dissociation curve for the actual blood under investigation, as all bloods are not alike

The measurement of the gaseous pressures in the mixed venous blood which leaves the right ventricle has been carried out by various methods during the last decade, but the most satisfactory is that of Douglas, provided the gas mixture is made up correctly, a mixture of nitrogen, oxygen, and carbonic acid in suitable proportions is introduced into a large air-tight bag (the Douglas bag is more fully described in fig 129), the subject takes a deep breath of this and holds his breath for about five seconds A sample of his alveolar air is then collected, care being taken to leave enough air in the lungs for a second sample to be collected ten seconds later, no breath being inspired in the interval If the two samples are identical in composition as regards both oxygen and CO_2, the samples may be adjudged to have been in equilibrium with the mixed venous blood, and thus the tension of the gases in this blood is ascertained

Relation between Quantity and Tension of Gases in Blood

It is now necessary to consider the relationship between these two sets of data

On page 251 we have seen that for gases in solution in water, $Q = K \times \frac{T}{P}$ where Q is the quantity of gas dissolved, T the tension, K the coefficient of solubility, and P the atmospheric pressure Since K and P are constant, it follows that Q varies directly in proportion to T, that is to say, if the tension is doubled, the quantity of gas dissolved is also doubled, if the tension is trebled, the quantity of gas is trebled, and so on These results may be plotted out on a curve in which the quantities are placed on the

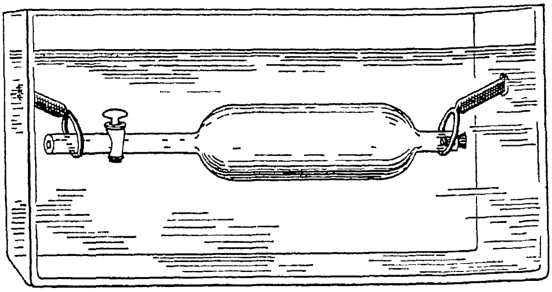


FIG 133 —Barcroft's saturator, suspended horizontally in warm bath in which it is rotated

ordinate and the tensions on the abscissa Such a curve gives the quantity of gas dissolved at any given tension, and in the case of water the "curve" is a straight line

But for oxygen and carbonic acid in blood, the curves are not straight lines

The Transport of Oxygen —Our knowledge of this subject we owe particularly to the investigations of Barcroft of Cambridge He has shown how to obtain information regarding the transport of oxygen by studying the amount of oxygen which the blood will hold in varying circumstances The methods of estimation are described on page 247

If 100 c c of average arterial blood are subjected to a vacuum pump or to the action of potassium ferricyanide, almost **18 5 c c** of oxygen are given off, and from what has been said regarding the solubility of gases in water, it is evident this oxygen cannot be in simple solution The amount in actual solution is only 0 7 c c This capability of the blood to take up large quantities of oxygen depends on the presence in the blood corpuscles of a pigment—hæmoglobin Blood contains 14 per cent of this pigment by

weight, and each gramme can take up about 1 34 c c of oxygen The actual figure varies in different animals The chemical characteristics of hæmoglobin are described later

If, however, the blood is exposed to various tensions of oxygen, it is found that within certain limits the blood takes up oxygen according to the pressure of that gas in the air to which it is exposed This is seen in the following experiment

Six vessels, similar to that in fig 133 (Barcroft's saturator), are taken, and in each is placed a few c c of a solution of hæmoglobin, together with gases of certain definite composition Each saturator is rotated in a bath at a given temperature for about a quarter of an hour, by which time the hæmoglobin and the oxygen are in equilibrium The blood is then withdrawn and the amount of oxygen taken up from the different mixtures determined The results are expressed as percentages of the maximum which might have been taken up by the blood if it had been exposed to the outside air

In each instance the mixture is made up to atmospheric pressure by the addition of nitrogen

Partial Pressure of Oxygen	Percentage Saturation
102	97
50	87
20	72
10	55
5	37
0	0

The hæmoglobin which has taken up oxygen we call *oxyhæmoglobin*, the remainder without oxygen is called *reduced hæmoglobin*

These figures may be expressed graphically, and we get the curve which we know as the **dissociation** or **association curve** of hæmoglobin As we shall see, the partial pressure of 100 is specially important since this is about the pressure in the alveoli of the lungs where the blood normally takes up oxygen It is seen that at this pressure the blood is 97 per cent saturated, and for average blood this is equivalent to **18 5 c c** of oxygen being taken up by 102 c c of blood Some bloods however may contain 20 c c

The important practical point to notice is the fact that the blood exposed to oxygen at a partial pressure of 100 is almost saturated The administration of oxygen, therefore, to a normal person cannot cause the blood to take up much more oxygen than it does from the air normally in the alveoli

It will be seen that even at low partial pressures the hæmoglobin takes up considerable quantities, but it is evident that

while this might be advantageous from the point of view of loading, it would be unsatisfactory from the point of view of giving up oxygen

But blood is not a solution of hæmoglobin In blood the hæmoglobin is contained in corpuscles, and in these is present in close association with its many salts By adding such salts to

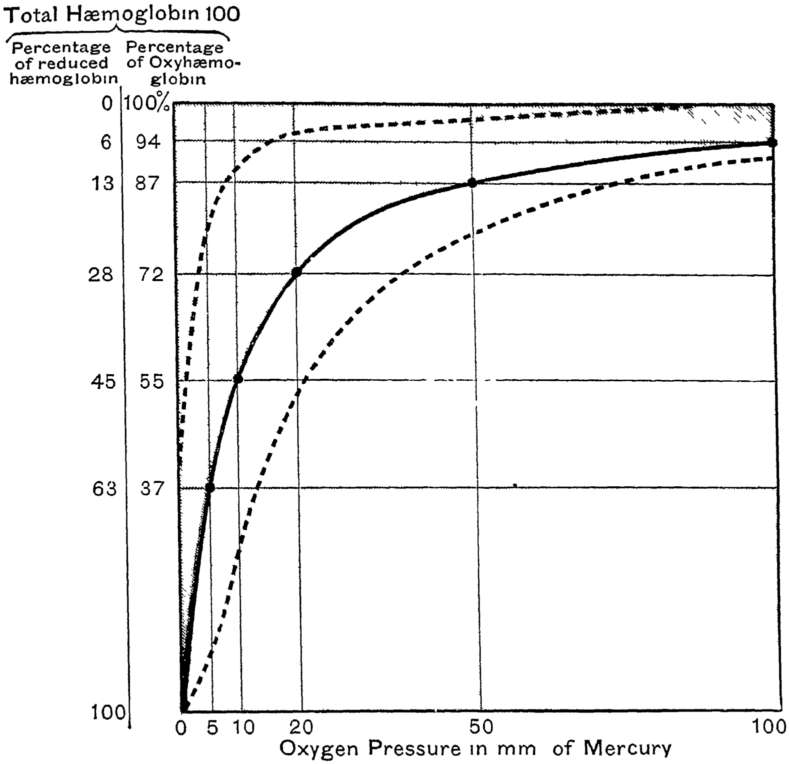


FIG 134 —Dissociation curves of [illegible] solution in water at 37° C Blue, reduced hæmoglobin, red, oxyhæmoglobin [illegible] line in the blue is the curve obtained when the blood is cooled to 16 C The dotted line in the red indicates the effect of heat and salts Increasing the amount of CO_2 in the gas mixtures similarly moves the curve to the right (After Barcroft)

hæmoglobin in a saturator, it may be shown that they prevent the hæmoglobin from holding so much oxygen at the lower concentrations Carbon dioxide has a similar effect which is shown by the dotted lines in fig 135

The effect of carbon dioxide is interesting, as the amount used in the experiment is that which is normally present in the air of the alveoli The reason for this effect of the carbon dioxide on the

amount of oxygen held, we shall see, is that the oxygen and the carbon dioxide indirectly compete for the available alkali in the corpuscles of the blood

The two coloured figures (134 and 135) should be carefully compared, as they show graphically the advantages of blood over a pure solution of hæmoglobin as an oxygen carrier

These factors, however, not only affect the amount of oxygen which the blood gives off, but also the rate at which the oxygen is

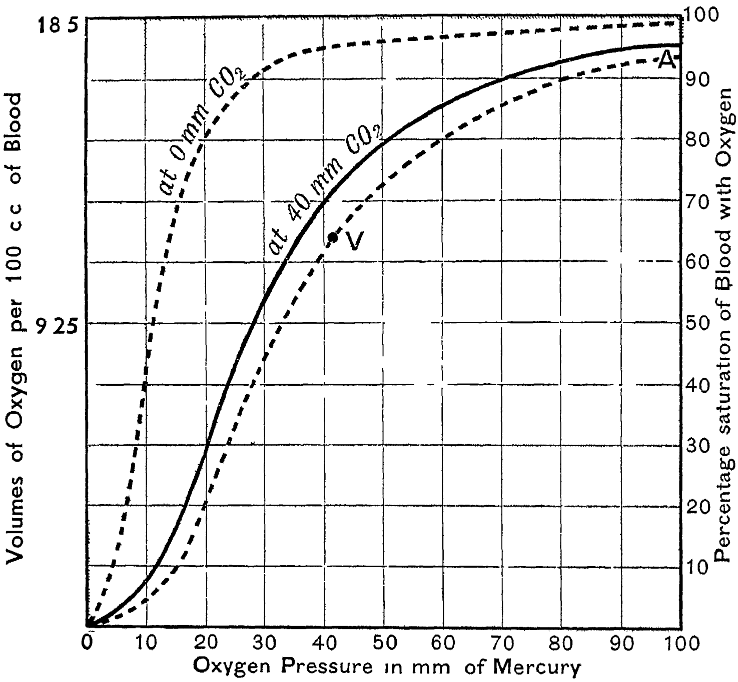


FIG 135 —Dissociation curve of hæmoglobin in the actual blood at 37° C and 40 mm CO_2 Blue, reduced hæmoglobin, red, oxyhæmoglobin The dotted curve in the blue is the dissociation curve at the same temperature, but at 0 mm CO_2 Note the resemblance of this to the hæmoglobin curve The addition of small amounts of acid or more CO_2 would move whole curve to the right A indicates the average content and tension of arterial blood, V, those of venous blood (After Barcroft) The atmospheric pressure at the summit of Mt Everest (29,000 ft) is about 250 mm

liberated At room temperature, oxygen is taken up rapidly and given up slowly, but at body temperature the rate of giving up is enormously increased

The Transport of Carbon Dioxide —The carriage of carbon dioxide has been studied by the same methods as those used for oxygen The estimation of carbon dioxide has already been described Since in solution it is an acid of some power, special

arrangements have to be made for its transport from the active tissues to the lungs to prevent its causing any marked change in the hydrogen-ion concentration of the blood This is accomplished, for the most part, by the combination in the capillaries of the carbon dioxide with alkali to form sodium bicarbonate, which breaks up again when it reaches the lungs A small amount of carbon dioxide, $\frac{1}{20}$ only of the total, is in physical solution in the blood-plasma and a little is carried in combination with protein

A small amount of carbon dioxide can pass directly into the corpuscles to form bicarbonate, but **most is carried in the plasma** as sodium bicarbonate The sodium taken by the carbon dioxide comes from the sodium chloride of the plasma The reaction may be represented by the equation —

$$NaCl + CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons NaHCO_3 + HCl$$

The HCl thus set free passes into the corpuscle where it is taken up by alkali made available by the giving off of oxygen by the hæmoglobin This process is known as the *chloride shift* and was discovered from the fact that there is less chloride in the plasma of the venous blood than in that of the arterial

The shift may be indicated conveniently thus —

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \text{Corp } O_2 + NaCl + H_2O & \\ \text{Lungs} \uparrow & \longrightarrow & \text{Tissues} \\ -CO_2 & & +CO_2 \\ +O_2 & \longleftarrow & \downarrow -O_2 \\ & \text{Corp } HCl + NaHCO_3 & \end{array}$$

We must next consider how the corpuscle deals with the hydrochloric acid or carbon dioxide Oxyhæmoglobin is a stronger acid than reduced hæmoglobin When, therefore, the oxyhæmoglobin becomes reduced, alkali, probably potassium * in man, becomes available to form chloride and bicarbonate, or special compounds of reduced hæmoglobin

We see, then, that the more carbon dioxide there is in the blood the less is the oxygen it can hold and *vice versa* This fact was originally discovered by Buckmaster, who therefore considered that hæmoglobin carried the carbon dioxide This interpretation was not at the time accepted, as the carbon dioxide was found to be in the plasma Now we see that Buckmaster's view was substantially (although indirectly) correct We see also why it is that the presence of acids, *e g* carbon dioxide, in the blood causes a moving of the oxygen dissociation curve of blood to the right Fortunately,

* The relative quantity of K and Na in the red corpuscles varies greatly in different animals In man it is mostly K, in ruminants Na

when there is an increased need of the tissues for oxygen, there is at the same time an additional production of carbon dioxide to help drive it off from the blood When, however, the blood has its carbon dioxide much lowered by over-ventilation the oxygen comes off less easily This is the Bohr effect and probably accounts for the "heady" sensations experienced after severe over-ventilation

In addition to the alkali made available by the chloride shift, some is also made available by the alkaline phosphate of the blood corpuscles In the corpuscles we may therefore have a reaction represented by the equation—

$$HCl + K_2HPO_4 = KCl + KH_2PO_4$$

The slightly increased acidity of the acid phosphate is counter-balanced by the slightly diminished acidity of the reduced hæmoglobin

In the plasma also the reaction may be more direct according to the equation—

$$CO_2 + H_2O + Na_2HPO_4 = NaHCO_3 + NaH_2PO_4$$

with the production of an alkaline and a slightly acid salt, with but slight change in reaction The acid salt and CO_2 in solution are balanced by the bicarbonate and alkaline salt to maintain the normal reaction

The proteins of the plasma play a small part in the carriage of carbon dioxide since they are able, like feeble acids, to combine with bases which, however, can be removed from them by an acid stronger than themselves We have there such reactions as—

$$\underset{\text{(salt)}}{NaPr} + H_2CO_3 = NaHCO_3 + \underset{\text{(acid)}}{HPr}$$

Because of such reactions the dissociation curve of a bicarbonate solution is not exactly the same as that of separated plasma

We have then carbon dioxide carried in the blood in two chief ways, in solution as H_2CO_3, and in combination as $NaHCO_3$ Since the former is acid and the latter is alkaline, we have a balance which may be indicated by the ratio $\frac{H_2CO_3}{NaHCO_3}$, approximately $\frac{1}{20}$, and through which the transport of carbon dioxide is accomplished without making any appreciable change in the reaction of the blood These substances are of great importance, as we shall see, in maintaining the neutrality of the blood in many varying circumstances

It is to be understood that it is easily possible to construct a carbon dioxide dissociation curve and that the taking up and giving off of carbon dioxide are determined by the partial pressure of the gas in the lungs and the tissues

It may be shown that in the lung the formation of the acid oxyhæmoglobin plays an important part in driving out the carbon dioxide A solution of sodium bicarbonate will give up only about one-half of its carbon dioxide if exposed to a vacuum

$$2NaHCO_3 \rightarrow Na_2CO_3 + H_2O + CO_2$$

but if acid is added it will give up, like the blood, all its carbon dioxide In the body during normal respiration, however, the blood is not exposed to a vacuum but to an alveolar partial pressure of about 40 mm and therefore retains about 50 c c CO_2 per 100 c c of

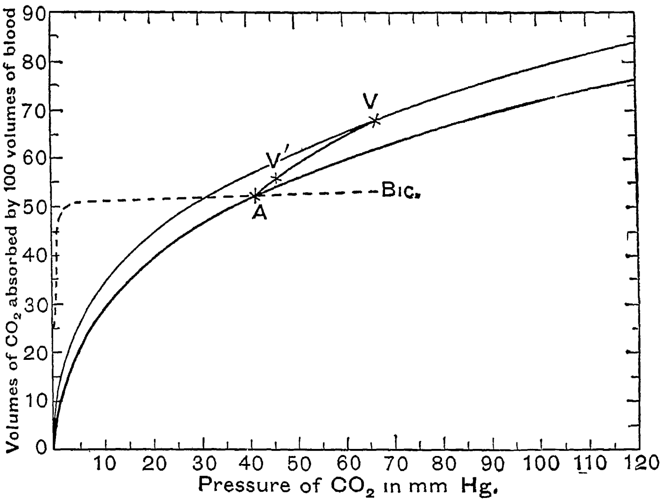


FIG 136 —Dissociation curve for carbon dioxide in blood The points A and V are the same as those in fig 135 (Wright, after Haldane) The dotted line is the dissociation curve of a solution of sodium bicarbonate

blood, this retained CO_2 has an important function in maintaining the activity of the vasomotor and respiratory centres

The venous blood contains about **58 c c** per cent of carbon dioxide during rest but appreciably more during activity while the arterial blood contains **54 c c** per cent of carbon dioxide (*i e* more than twice the amount of oxygen)

Alkali Reserve (Van Slyke)—The alkali available for the transport of acid is known as the *alkali reserve of the blood* and may be estimated directly, by finding the **carbon dioxide combining power** of the blood This is determined by exposing a sample of blood to alveolar air or a gas mixture with the same amount of carbon dioxide (5 5 per cent) and subsequently finding the amount of carbon dioxide which has been taken up This

latter determination may be made by the Van Slyke, Haldane, or Barcroft apparatus (fig 131, p 250) Clearly, if any acid is being added to the blood and it takes up alkali, the alkali reserve becomes appreciably reduced If for any reason, such as the excessive loss of carbon dioxide at high altitudes, there is less acid in the blood than normal, the alkali reserve also becomes reduced by the excretion of base by the kidney to keep the reaction of the blood at its normal level.

The body has many other ways for maintaining its neutrality in many varying circumstances, but we cannot profitably deal with these until we have considered the various other mechanisms concerned, especially the kidney The alkali reserve of the body is dealt with later

In conditions of severe muscular work not only carbonic acid (carbon dioxide and water) is produced but also lactic acid which combines with the alkali of the blood to form lactate, some of which is excreted by the kidney (see also "Oxygen Debt")

It is important also to remark that CO_2 is got rid of by the kidney as well as by the lungs, and in long cases of obstruction to the respiratory tract this other means may become very important

The Mechanism of Gaseous Exchange in the Lung

1 *Oxygen*—The simplest explanation of the passage of oxygen from the alveolar air into the blood is that the process is a purely physical one of diffusion (*See* Diffusion)

The conception of respiration based on this view would be that the pressure of oxygen in the air of the alveoli, though less than that in the atmosphere, is greater than that in venous blood, hence oxygen passes from the alveolar air into the blood-plasma, the oxygen immediately combines with the hæmoglobin, and thus leaves the plasma free to absorb more oxygen, and this goes on until the hæmoglobin is entirely, or almost entirely, saturated with oxygen The reverse change occurs in the tissues where the partial pressure of oxygen is lower than in the plasma, or in the lymph that bathes the tissue elements, the plasma gives up its oxygen to the lymph, the lymph to the tissues, the oxyhæmoglobin then undergoes dissociation to supply more oxygen to the plasma and lymph, and thus in turn to the tissues once more

Some authorities have considered that in cases of definite oxygen-want, such as during violent muscular exercise, or on the tops of high mountains, the lining epithelium of the pulmonary alveoli can, by a process of active secretion, like that of the swim bladder of a fish, transfer oxygen from the alveolar air to the blood Barcroft who submitted to the experiment lived for six days in a respiration

chamber in which the oxygen pressure in the inspired air was gradually reduced from 130 mm Hg on the first day to 84 mm. on the last, a pressure of 84 mm Hg corresponds to that experienced at an altitude of about 18,000 feet At the close of the experiment a cannula was inserted into Barcroft's radial artery so that his arterial blood could be collected either when he was at rest or performing work, his alveolar air was collected and examined simultaneously The percentage saturation with oxygen was measured in the blood samples and its tension inferred from the dissociation curve The following results were obtained —

	During rest	During work
Pressure of oxygen in alveolar air	68 mm Hg	57 mm Hg
Tension of oxygen in arterial blood	60 ,,	48 ,,

More recently Krogh's bubble aerotonometer has been applied to man, the blood being withdrawn from an artery by a hypodermic syringe By this method comparisons have been made of the oxygen-tension in the arterial blood and alveolar air, both at the sea-level and at Cerro, a mining town in the Andes (14,200 ft.) In both cases equilibrium seems to be attained so closely that the difference between the two is within the region of experimental error —

	Barometric pressure	O_2 pressure in alveolar air	O_2 tension in arterial blood.
Cambridge	761 mm Hg	100 mm	99
Cerro	458 ,,	58 ,,	59
Edinburgh	755 ,,	102 ,,	101
Mt Everest	250 ,,	not available	

Many experiments have also been carried out on animals, especially by Krogh who varied the oxygen content of the alveolar air In no instance, however, has it been found that the tension of the oxygen in the arterial blood is ever above that in the alveoli

2 *Carbonic Acid*—The dissociation of carbon dioxide from the blood takes place in the lung by the reverse processes from those which have just been described for its transport The chief factor is the fall of the tension of carbon dioxide in the lungs (42 mm) compared with that at which it has been loaded (over 58) The process is facilitated by the affinity of hæmoglobin for oxygen, which tends to drive the HCl from the corpuscle into the plasma, the HCl breaks up the $NaHCO_3$ and drives off the CO_2 into the alveolar air

The tension of the carbonic acid in the tissues is over 58 but one cannot give exact figures, we can measure the tension of the gas in certain secretions in the urine it is 9, in the bile 7 per cent of an atmosphere The tension in the cells themselves must be higher still.

Summary of Carriage of Gases by the Blood—We are now in a position to view the general adaptation of the blood to the carriage of gases The actual taking up and giving up of oxygen and carbon dioxide we can look upon as a physical process depending on differences of partial pressure, but in the tissues the

giving up is materially assisted not only in amount but also in rate by the fact that the tissues produce heat and carbon dioxide which hasten the reduction of oxyhæmoglobin The reduced hæmoglobin is thereby rendered available to take up more oxygen in the lungs, where the blood loses both heat and carbon dioxide, so that the action of the tissues thus aids indirectly the taking-up process as well

In regard to carbon dioxide a similar mechanism exists the changes in pressure are the primary governing factors, the taking up of carbon dioxide being facilitated by the giving up of oxygen in the tissues and the reverse in the lungs

The following table summarises the main facts in relation to the two gases, and the arrows indicate the direction in which the changes occur —

	Carbon Dioxide			Oxygen		
	Volume		Pressure	Volume		Pressure
→ **Veins**	**58**	**at**	**58**	**13 5**	**at**	**50**
↓						
Lungs			**42**			**102**
↓						
Arteries	**54**	**at**	**45**	**18 5**	**at**	**80**
↓						
← **Tissues**	**over 58**	**at**	**over 58**	**under 13 5**	**at**	**under 50**

These figures are approximate and may be taken as averages for the body at rest It is seen that the equilibration is almost complete in the lungs but not quite In exercise the figures for CO_2 in the tissues may be much increased and those for the O_2 correspondingly reduced Actually also, for reasons to be described in relation to the respiratory quotient, the blood gives up in the lungs slightly less carbon dioxide than the amount of oxygen it receives Some of the oxygen is used to oxidise hydrogen and is excreted as water (H_2O)

Cause and Regulation of Respiration

There are three factors, each of which plays a part in maintaining and regulating the rhythmic movements of respiration They are the respiratory centre, the vagus nerves, and the chemical condition of the blood

(1) **The Respiratory Centre** —If sections of the brain stem are made from above downwards all forms of respirations cease when the tip of the calamus scriptorius is reached For this reason Flourens, who first did the experiment, called this region the respiratory centre From the work of Lumsden, however, we know that respiration is affected by section of the brain at a much

higher level Section obliquely through the upper part of the pons results in the production of apneustic respiration, *i e* respiration which has a prolonged inspiratory phase, while after section through the middle of the pons gasping is the only type of respiration seen (fig 137) These stages are readily seen if an animal is bled to death, when we may assume that the different parts of the respiratory mechanism fail from above downwards In man these phenomena

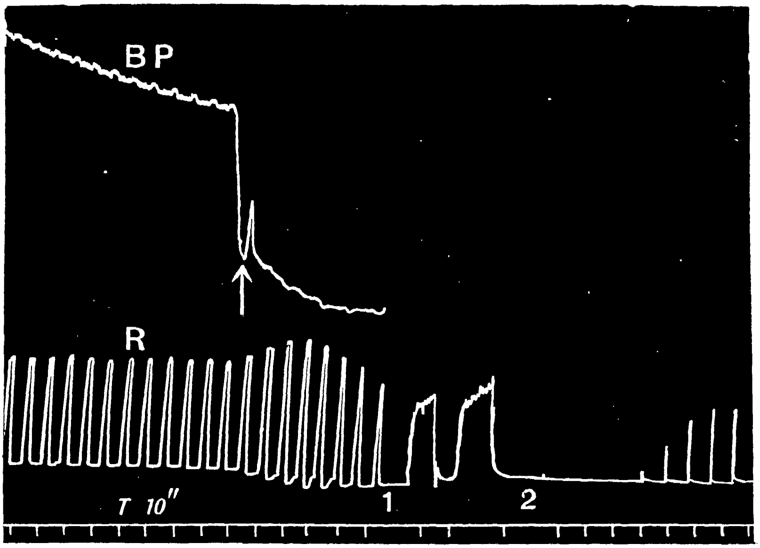


FIG 137—A composite tracing showing different types of respiration produced by very severe hæmorrhage at the point where the abrupt fall in blood pressure is seen Pieces of tracing were removed at 1 and 2 for convenience of reproduction First, normal respiration is seen which becomes deeper and subsequently shallower, between 1 and 2 are seen two respirations of the apneustic type, which may be absent if the hæmorrhage is rapid, after 2 is seen the typical gasping In some instances different types of respiration may gradually become superimposed on each other, *e g* the gasping may gradually come on during failing normal or apneustic respiration The blood pressure recorder was removed later to prevent damage of respiratory record (M'Dowall)

are also seen at the approach of death and, indeed, may be a valuable warning in anæsthesia

The respiratory centre is probably twofold, consisting of an inspiratory and an expiratory centre Of these two the inspiratory centre is so much the more active that its importance is a subject of universal agreement, whereas, the existence of an expiratory centre is doubted by some physiologists, who regard expiration as a mere cessation of the active process of inspiration, and a mechanical falling back of the tissues into their places The respiratory centre is normally affected by chemical and nervous stimuli

(2) **The Chemical Control of Respiration**—The importance of the chemical stimuli was fully demonstrated by Haldane and Priestley

In the first place, they introduced the simple method of obtaining the composition of the air in the alveoli (see fig 128, p 241) They found that, under constant atmospheric pressure, the carbon dioxide exerts an almost constant pressure in the alveolar air of the same person In different individuals this pressure varies somewhat but averages about **40 mm** Hg (5 to 6 per cent of an atmosphere) the pressure of the atmosphere in the alveoli at sea-level being 760 mm less 17 mm for water vapour

They found that a rise of 0 2 per cent in the alveolar carbon dioxide is sufficient to double the pulmonary ventilation during rest This effect of carbon dioxide can readily be shown by causing an individual to breathe a mixture of 95 per cent oxygen and 5 per cent carbon dioxide If, on the other hand, an individual breathes more deeply and rapidly than he does normally at rest, *i e* until the air in the alveoli becomes more like that of the atmosphere and the carbon dioxide percentage in the lungs falls, respiration ceases for a short time This cessation is known as **Apnœa** It was once thought to be due to over-oxygenation of the blood, but it is now known that this cannot occur, since the arterial blood is almost fully oxygenated with normal respiration It has been supposed also that it is the result of inhibitory impulses which pass up from the lungs by the vagi (see Nervous Control of Respiration), but since it still occurs when the vagi are cut, this cannot be the cause Moreover, if the over-ventilation is carried out with expired air, no such apnœa occurs It is now agreed, as shown by Frédéricq, that the cessation of respiration is the result of a fall of arterial carbon dioxide consequent on the reduction of the amount of that gas in the alveoli. This may fall to less than half the normal 5-6 per cent, but breathing is resumed before the normal is reached again, since the cessation of breathing eventually causes oxygen-want which sensitises the centre to the action of carbon dioxide

That oxygen-want alone may cause increase of respiration is shown by causing an individual to re-breathe his own expired air, at the same time preventing an accumulation of carbon dioxide by passing the air through soda lime The increase, however, is slight compared with the effect of carbon dioxide Oxygen-want sensitises the centre to the effect of carbon dioxide But for this fact respiration would cease at high altitudes where, for example, the partial pressure of alveolar carbon dioxide may be 28 mm Hg instead of the normal 40 at sea-level

From what we have said in relation to the exchange of gases in the lungs it is evident that the changes in the gaseous content bring

about similar changes in the arterial blood It is these changes in the gaseous content of the blood which really cause the alteration in the respiratory movements The final proof of this was given by Frédéricq in crossed circulation experiments, in which the respiratory centre of one animal was kept alive with blood from another, it was shown that the inhalation of carbon dioxide by the donor caused an increased respiration in the animal supplied

In similar experiments it has been found that asphyxia of an animal, excluding its brain, causes increased respiration It must not, therefore, be presumed that the carbon dioxide acts solely on the brain There is evidence that it may act on the spinal cord and also affect the respiratory centre reflexly by acting on the carotid sinus (Heymans) The action of blood on the carotid sinus can be simply shown by clipping off the carotid arteries on the cardiac side, or by perfusing them with blood of differing gaseous composition These other sites of action may be important in bringing about increased respiration in disease

We now see how the increased respiration caused by exercise is brought about If the pulmonary ventilation is not sufficient to maintain the arterial carbon dioxide and oxygen at their normal levels (as in exercise when the blood reaching the lungs is excessively venous), the respiratory centre is stimulated by these substances and respiration is increased In severe exercise the respiratory centre is still further excited by the lactic acid which is produced by the active muscles in addition to carbon dioxide On the other hand, if ventilation is excessive, as in voluntary forced breathing, the carbon dioxide content of the arterial blood falls and the stimulation of the respiratory centre is lessened

Thus we see that respiration depends on metabolism, or more accurately on the carbon dioxide produced and the oxygen used by the tissues, and as we shall see later, the tissues which can affect the total metabolism most greatly are the voluntary muscles

Forced breathing, since it causes the body to lose carbon dioxide, has a profound effect on the acid-base equilibrium of the body (see later Chapter)

The Specific Respiratory Stimulus—If any acid is injected into the circulation an increase in respiration occurs and it has been debated whether or not it is the increased hydrogen-ion concentration rather than the carbon dioxide *per se* which is the real stimulus That the former is not the case, however, is suggested by the fact that although the blood of an animal is made alkaline (and this degree is never reached during apnœa) by the injection of alkali, breathing still continues although slightly depressed

Further, it has been found by Hooker that a given rise of hydrogen-ion concentration produced by CO_2 is much more effective

as a respiratory stimulus than the same concentration produced by another acid

The explanation for this has been afforded by Jacobs By studying the reactions within cells he established that the power of H_2CO_3, *i e* $H_2O + CO_2$, to penetrate through cell membranes is very much greater than that of any other acid It is therefore,

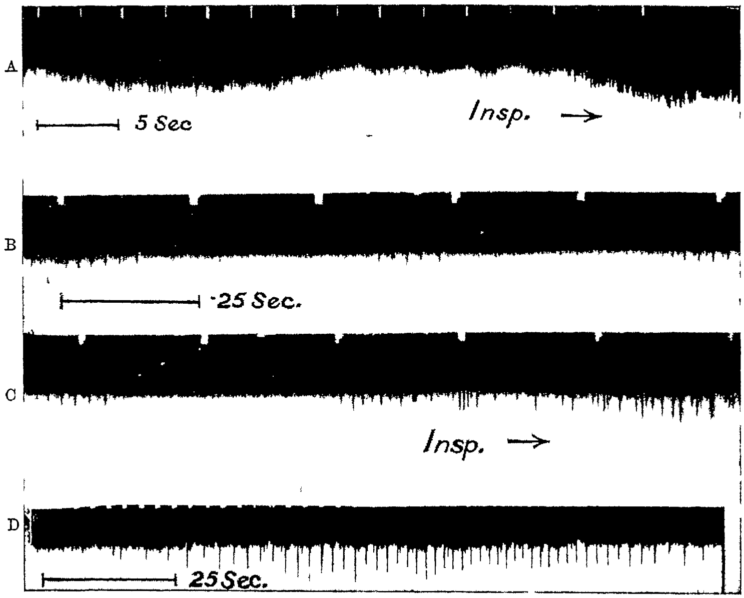


FIG 138 —Records made with valve amplification and a Matthews' oscillograph to show the afferent impulses passing up the vagus in the cat All but a few of the nerve fibres have been divided In B and C only one cardiac fibre is in action and in D only one fibre from the lungs

A Decerebrate cat Record showing the discharge of impulses at each heart-beat (in nerve fibres corresponding to those of the cardiac depressor nerve in the rabbit) and at each expansion of the lungs (inspiration)

B and C From another preparation made at a higher speed to show the individual impulses B shows three groups of cardiac impulses In C the onset of the inspiratory discharge is shown as well

D The discharge of impulses in a single fibre of the vagus during inspiration The impulses occur in a regular series with a frequency which rises to a maximum at the height of inspiration (E D Adrian)

presumably, the better stimulant of the cells of the respiratory centre

Although, therefore, an increase in hydrogen-ion concentration may stimulate the centre, we may look upon carbon dioxide as a specific stimulus, and we may consider that other acids, *e g* lactic, will stimulate the centre, not only by increasing the hydrogen-ion concentration of the blood, but also by producing carbon dioxide from the bicarbonate of blood

(3) **The Nervous Control of Respiration** —It has long been known that sensory stimulation, or section or stimulation of the vagi may have an effect on respiration, but the relationship of these facts has become clear only of recent years

During each inspiration and expiration impulses pass up the vagi This has been shown by placing the vagus on non-polarisable electrodes connected with some form of electrometer or string galvanometer (Einthoven) A record is shown in fig 138

If the *vagi are cut* or blocked in an animal deeply anæsthetised with chloral or morphine, the respiration becomes markedly slow and deep These facts were investigated by Hering and Breuer in 1868, and they described what we now know as the *Hering-Breuer reflex*, in

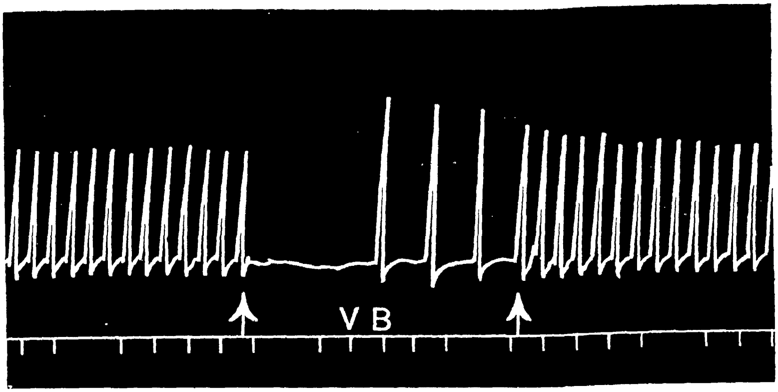


FIG 139 —A record of respiration from a cat anæsthetised by chloralose and rested Between the arrows both the vagi were blocked by an electric (galvanic) current Note the slow deep respirations which result from the loss of the Hering Breuer reflex

which impulses pass up the vagi and cut short each respiratory phase Respiration is thereby rendered less deep than it otherwise would be

We have also evidence that a nervous impulse passes up the vagus whenever the lung is artificially inflated or deflated, but whether the impulse during the expiratory period is inhibitory to an expiratory centre, or a stimulus to an inspiratory centre, is difficult to decide The general evidence available suggests that there are really two centres acting reciprocally

The subject was reinvestigated by Head, who for this purpose recorded the movements of a slip of diaphragm, which in the rabbit can be separated with its nervous and blood supply intact

In one series of experiments *positive ventilation* was performed, that is, air was pumped repeatedly into the lungs, and so increased their normal distension, this was found to decrease the inspiratory

contractions of the diaphragm, until at last they ceased altogether, and the diaphragm stood still in the expiratory position (fig 140, A)

In a second series of experiments, *negative ventilation* was performed, that is, the air was pumped repeatedly out of the lungs, and a condition of collapse of the air-vesicles produced This was found to increase the inspiratory contractions of the diaphragm, expiration became less and less, and at last the diaphragm assumed the position of inspiratory standstill (fig 140, B)

Lumsden more recently has shown that the passage of air over the mucous membrane of the air-passages may also act as an inhibitory stimulus

If the vagi are cut, these inhibitory impulses are then absent, and respiration must depend on chemical stimuli Why, however, inspiration and expiration should still alternate is as yet unknown

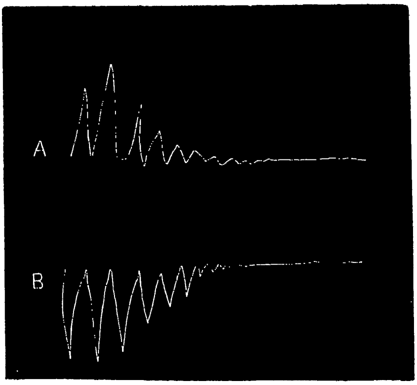


FIG 140 —Tracings of diaphragm The upward movements of the tracings represent inspiration, the downward movements, expiration A, result of positive, B, of negative ventilation (After Head)

Similarly, *stimulation* of the central end of the vagus, by setting up artificial inhibitory impulses, causes an inhibition of respiration in whatever phase respiration is at the time of the stimulation It was found, however, in Head's experiments, that with a strong stimulus the cessation of respiration was not abrupt, as in the cat under chloral, but that inspiratory efforts increased, until the diaphragm came to a standstill in the inspiratory position, while, with a weak stimulus, the expiratory efforts increased and the diaphragm stopped in expiration

There is, however, evidence that the Hering-Breuer reflex is not constantly in operation, otherwise we should not be able to breathe deeply during exercise This may be shown experimentally By using a block with a galvanic current, M'Dowall has shown that

the effect of the vagi on the respiratory centre may be made to vary Thus, although at first, while the animal is under ether anæsthesia, block or section of the vagi may have no effect whatever on respiration (Schafer), if the animal is allowed to rest under chloralose anæsthesia, the classical effect is obtained on blocking Again, it may be shown that asphyxia, sensory stimulation, or the injection of acid and adrenaline reduces or abolishes the effects of vagus section altogether The Hering-Breuer reflex is, therefore, to be considered a mechanism for the limitation of respiration especially during rest, somewhat analogous to the depressor reflex

Shallow and Rapid Respiration —Such respiration is produced as a result of an exaggeration of the Hering-Breuer reflex

This exaggeration may be produced by irritating the inside of the alveoli with a gas such as chlorine (one of the poison gases used in war) It may also be produced by sudden blocking of the pulmonary artery or its branches (embolism) Experimentally this has been done by injecting oil intravenously (Dunn), see fig 141

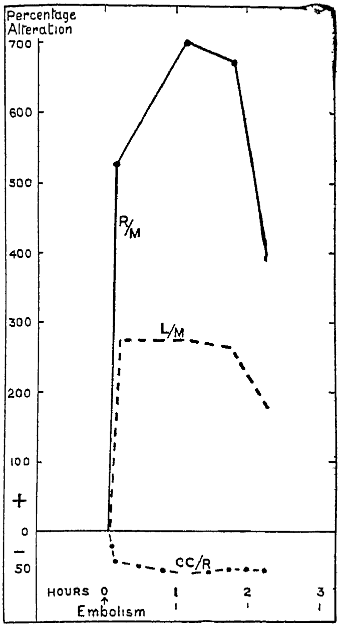


FIG 141 —Chart showing percentage alteration in rate of respiration (R/M), total ventilation of the lungs (L/M), and depth of each respiration (CC/R) during the course of an experiment in which pul monary embolism was produced in a goat The zero line represents the normal for each factor, and variations in each are recorded in percentage terms of the normal, so as to make all comparable As the percentage rise in rate exceeds the percentage rise in ventilation, the depth of breathing falls below the normal (J S Dunn)

The reflex origin of such respiration is shown by the fact that it disappears if the vagi are cut, and its importance lies in the fact that it occurs in pneumonia when it causes faulty aeration of the blood

It must not be supposed, however, that rapid shallow breathing is always due to this cause for such a condition may be due to a gradual weakening of the respiratory centre, such as occurs during deprivation of oxygen or lessening of the oxygen intake below a certain level, or again tachypnœa, the rapid respiration induced in some animals by heat, may be purely central, and may be produced by merely warming the blood as it goes to the brain

Exhaustion of the respiratory centre may be brought about by

prolonged breathing through narrow tubing Hence the necessity for wide-bored tubing in divers' apparatus and the like

The Essential Nature of Respiration —Discussion is frequent on the question whether respiration is essentially a reflex phenomenon, the so-called respiratory centres being merely synapses or central cells upon which carbon dioxide and oxygen act That carbon dioxide is essential for much nervous activity is well known, it is, for example, essential for the normal response of the vasomotor centre to posture and the maintenance of decerebrate rigidity It has been suggested that afferent impulses from the sensory nerves generally bring about inspiration, while expiration is a reflex response to afferent impulses arising from the inspiratory muscles The other view is that the centres of the brain are constantly giving off rhythmical stimuli to the respiratory muscles in virtue of their inherent rhythm Recently this view has been strongly supported by Adrian who has found that if electrodes are placed on the brain removed from a goldfish, groups of electrical impulses may be recorded which correspond to gill movements In the fish these correspond to respiratory movements

This experiment appears to supply the hitherto unobtainable proof that the brain can set up rhythmical impulses for respiration in the absence of receipt of afferent impulses Hitherto it has not been possible to obtain evidence of respiratory activity without making use of some respiratory movement which in itself may be the origin of afferent impulses In the mammal it is also impossible to cut off all afferent stimuli without so injuring the blood supply that the brain dies, for the central respiratory mechanism dies rapidly when the blood supply ceases

The Effect of Higher Centres —Krogh pointed out that at the onset of exercise the increase in total ventilation may be immediate, and may take place before any chemical changes could have occurred in the blood This may be shown by causing an individual to work a stationary bicycle with an electro-magnetic brake the strength of which can be altered without the knowledge of the subject With an increase of load, the subject's respiration is at once augmented, but not only so, for a similar augmentation occurs if he sees the switch being moved and thinks the loading current has been thrown in The initial increase in total ventilation would therefore appear to be effected by the higher regions of the brain

In connection with the relative importance of the nervous and chemical factors in breathing, it was at one time held that if the vagi were cut carbon dioxide could not cause an increased rate of respiration Scott, the author of this view, has now withdrawn it since further experiments have proved it to be untenable Even when these nerves are divided, however, an increase in rate can be

produced by causing the animal to re-breathe its own expired air provided all other sensory stimulation has been avoided (M'Dowall)

To sum up —In a normal respiration the chemical and nervous factors would therefore appear to be related somewhat as follows The inspiratory centre makes an effort, the degree of exaltation of the centre, and therefore, the magnitude of the effort, more especially in the matter of depth, is governed by the tension of acid (and especially the carbonic acid) in the blood, but it is cut short by an inhibitory impulse passing up the vagus, only to begin again when the effects of this inhibitory impulse are removed

The First Inspiration—During fœtal life the need of the embryo for oxygen is small, and is amply met by the transference of oxygen from the maternal blood through the thin walls of the fœtal capillaries in the placenta But when the child is born, this source of oxygen is no longer available, the increasing venosity of the blood stimulates the respiratory centre to action, and is the essential cause of the first inspiratory efforts the new-born child makes to obtain the oxygen it requires It is said that if the placental circulation is stopped while the child is still *in utero*, respiratory efforts are also made Some regard the action of the air on the body surface as an accessory cause of the first respirations, and it is the practice to increase this in feeble children by stimulating the cutaneous nerves by the application of cold water to the skin Such treatment always causes deep inspirations, even in the adult There are other nerves stimulation of which influences the respiratory act for instance, stimulation of the central end of the glossopharyngeal inhibits the respiratory movements for a short period, this accounts for the very necessary cessation of breathing during swallowing Stimulation of the central end of the cut superior laryngeal nerve, or of its terminations in the mucous membrane of the larynx, as when a crumb is "swallowed the wrong way," produces an increase of expiratory efforts, which culminate in coughing

Breaking-Point—The time which the breath can be held depends on the accumulation of carbon dioxide in the blood Usually the breaking-point is reached when the carbon dioxide in the alveoli has reached **8 per cent** If, however, the individual re-breathes his own expired air, and does not cease respiratory movements, it is found that breaking-point is much later, indeed, in some determined persons, unconsciousness may occur first The cause of this is not quite certain but it seems that holding the breath causes much greater oxygen lack to the tissues than re-breathing, because the circulation is impeded by the loss of the respiratory pump

Cheyne-Stokes Respiration

This is a condition in which the breathing waxes and wanes (fig 142) It is an exaggeration of the type of respiration which is often seen during sleep in perfectly healthy people It may be induced in normal persons if they make themselves pant violently for 1-2 minutes If then respiration is allowed to take its own course, there will first be a pause (apnœa), then Cheyne-Stokes respiration will be set up The groups will become less and less distinct, and respiration will ultimately become normal The explanation is as follows —

The panting causes an undue amount of carbonic acid to be swept out of the body, with the result that the carbonic acid tension in the blood and in the tissues sinks to perhaps a quarter or a third

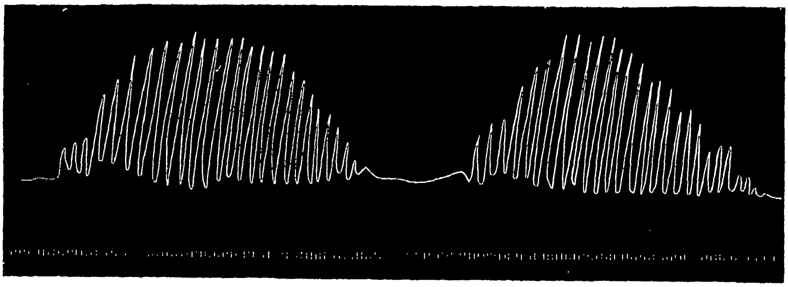


FIG 142 —Stethograph tracing of Cheyne Stokes respiration in a man The time is marked in seconds (Pembrey and Allen)

of its usual value Already we have seen that carbonic acid is an active stimulant to the respiratory centre, and its removal causes respiration to cease, hence the apnœa But during the apnœic period the arterial blood becomes less and less oxygenated This causes the respiratory centre to become unduly irritable, so that when carbon dioxide does accumulate it over-stimulates the centre and causes itself to be washed out again, another period of apnœa or of reduced respiration is then produced Cheyne-Stokes breathing is dependent, therefore, on oxygen-want

"If from any cause, such as cerebral hæmorrhage or circulatory failure, the circulation through the respiratory centre is interfered with, or if the absorption of oxygen is interfered with by such causes as diminished barometric pressure or pathological conditions in the lungs, the occurrence of periodic or Cheyne-Stokes breathing becomes easily intelligible"—(Haldane and Douglas)

Researches by Roberts and by Mellanby and Huggett seem to show the presence of vasomotor changes in the medulla which cannot be ignored as a factor in Cheyne-Stokes respiration

Pathological Cheyne-Stokes respiration may be removed by administration either of oxygen or of carbonic acid

Special Respiratory Acts

Coughing—In the act of coughing there is first of all a deep inspiration, followed by an expiration, but the latter, instead of being easy and uninterrupted, as in normal breathing, is obstructed, the glottis being momentarily closed by the approximation of the vocal cords The abdominal muscles, then acting strongly, push up the viscera against the diaphragm, and thus make pressure on the air in the lungs until its tension is sufficient to open noisily the vocal cords which oppose its outward passage In this way considerable force is exercised, and mucus or any other matter that may need expulsion from the air-passages is quickly and sharply expelled by the out-streaming current of air The act is a reflex one, the sensory surface which is excited being the mucous membrane of the larynx, and the superior laryngeal nerve is the afferent nerve, stimulation of other parts of the respiratory mucous membrane will also produce cough, and the point of bifurcation of the trachea is specially sensitive Other sensory surfaces may also act as the "*signal surface*" for a cough Thus, a cold draught on the skin, or tickling the external auditory meatus, in some people will set up a cough

Sneezing—The same remarks that apply to coughing are almost exactly applicable to the act of sneezing, but, in this instance, the blast of air, on escaping from the lungs, is directed, by a contraction of the pillars of the fauces and descent of the soft palate, chiefly through the nose, and any offending matter is thence expelled

The "signal surface" is usually the nasal mucous membrane, but here, as in coughing, other causes (such as a bright light) will sometimes set the reflex going

Hiccough is an involuntary sudden contraction of the diaphragm, causing an inspiration which is suddenly arrested by the closure of the glottis, causing a characteristic sound It usually arises from gastric irritation

Snoring is due to vibration of the soft palate

Sobbing consists of a series of convulsive inspirations at the moment of which the glottis is partially closed

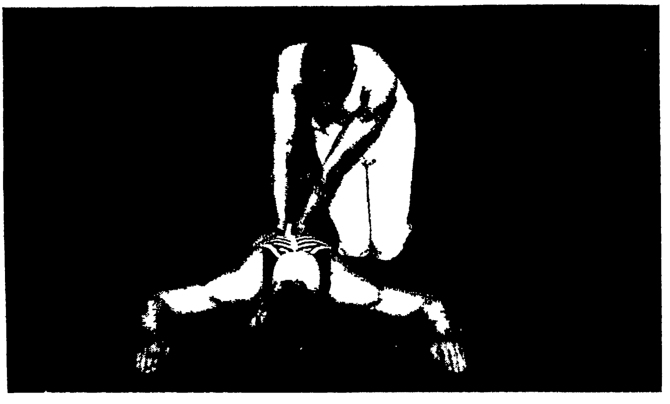
Sighing and Yawning are emotional forms of inspiration, the latter associated with stretching movements of jaws and limbs They appear to be efforts of the nervous system to correct, by an extra deep inspiration, the venosity of the blood due to inactivity produced by ennui or grief

There are many other abnormalities of the respiratory mechanism which will become familiar to the student of medicine during his clinical studies We may mention, as an example, *laryngismus stridulus* (the spasmodic croup of children) This is a nervous affection due to increased reflex irritability of the laryngeal mechanism, the fits of suffocation are produced by tonic spasm of the adductor muscles of the glottis, such as may occur in rickets and which really is a laryngeal manifestation of tetany.

Artificial Respiration

In experiments on animals in which it is necessary to open the chest, life can be maintained by pumping air into the lungs, this is done by means of some form of pump or bellows, the delivery tube of which is connected to the trachea by a cannula, a side hole in

A



B

FIG 143 —This illustrates the two principal positions A and B in performing Schafer's method of artificial respiration Reproduced by permission of Sir E Sharpey Schafer and the National Life Saving Society

which provides for the escape of the expired air A bottle containing the anæsthetic is placed on the course of the delivery tube

Artificial respiration is sometimes necessary in man to restore normal breathing, as for instance in those who are apparently dead from drowning In such cases speed in commencing the artificial breathing, and perseverance in continuing the process are essential

Many have been restored to life after the efforts have been continued for an hour or more It is now recognised that of the numerous methods for performing artificial respiration, that introduced by Sharpey-Schafer is the simplest, least injurious, and most effective The subject is laid on the ground in the prone position, with a thick folded garment under his chest This position facilitates the flow of water from the mouth which should be freed of all obstructions, mud, weeds, etc The operator kneels by his side or athwart him facing his head, and places his hands on the small of the patient's back He slowly throws the weight of his body forwards, and thus presses upon the abdomen of the subject, and forces air out of the lungs (fig 143, A), he then gradually relaxes the pressure by bringing his body up again, but without removing his hands (fig 143, B) Sharpey-Schafer insists on the point that the driving upwards of the diaphragm by the pressure in the abdomen is more important than attempting to push up the ribs This is repeated regularly at the rate of twelve to fifteen times a minute until normal respiration begins, or until all hope of restoration is given up, but while the heart beats there is hope

It cannot, however, be over-emphasised that the important thing about artificial respiration is to **get begun**, for every second's delay makes recovery less likely On the operating table during a surgical operation it may not be convenient to turn the patient on his face, but adequate respiration may be obtained by gentle rhythmical compression of the abdomen or by pulling up the ribs by means of the arms Almost any method gives a ventilation equivalent to the normal tidal air

Ventilation

Some observers have stated that certain noxious substances are ordinarily contained in expired air which are much more poisonous than carbonic acid, but careful research has failed to substantiate this view If precautions be taken by absolute cleanliness to prevent admixture of the air with exhalations from skin, teeth, and clothes, the expired air contains only one noxious substance, and that is carbonic acid

An adult gives off about 0 6 cubic feet of carbonic acid per hour, and if he is supplied with 1,000 cubic feet of fresh air per hour, he will add 0 6 to the 0 4 cubic feet of carbonic acid it already contains, in other words, the percentage of that gas will be raised to 0 1 An hourly supply of 2,000 cubic feet of fresh air will lower the percentage of carbonic acid to 0 07, and of 3,000 cubic feet to 0 06, and this is the supply which is usually recommended In order that the air may

be renewed without giving rise to draughts, each adult should be allotted sufficient space in a room, at least 1,000 cubic feet, but this is seldom possible

Leonard Hill considers that since the carbon dioxide even of a stuffy room seldom rises above 0 1 per cent, a level which is readily compensated by an imperceptible increase in respiration, the effects of bad ventilation are not so much due to changes in the chemical composition of the air, as to the absence of movement in the air, moving air has a stimulating, and still air a depressing effect

CHAPTER XIX

THE RELATION OF RESPIRATION TO OTHER PROCESSES IN THE BODY

The Effect of the Respiratory Movements on the Circulation

THE main effect of respiration on the circulation is shown in the accompanying figure (fig 144) It will be noticed that the arterial pressure rises with inspiration and falls with expiration, but that

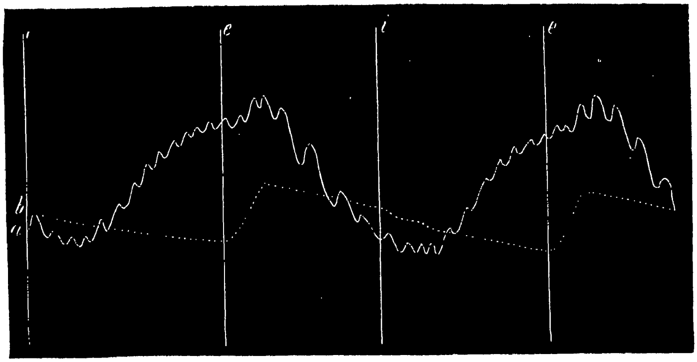


FIG 144 —Comparison of blood pressure curve with curve of intra thoracic pressure (To be read from left to right) *a* is the curve of blood pressure with its respiratory undulations, the slower heart beats on the descent being unusually well marked, *b* is the curve of intra thoracic pressure obtained by connecting one limb of a manometer with the pleural cavity Inspiration begins at *i* and expiration at *e* (M Foster)

the two events are not quite synchronous, the rise of pressure beginning a little later than the inspiratory act, and the fall a little later than the expiratory act

These variations are chiefly the result of the mechanical conditions dependent on the lungs and heart with its large vessels being contained within the air-tight thorax If the **intra-thoracic pressure** is measured, it is found that it varies from **−5** to −7 mm of mercury at the end of expiration to **−30** at the end of a deep inspiration, that is to say, from 5 to 7 to 30 mm less than the atmospheric pressure (760 mm of mercury) The pressure outside the heart and large thoracic vessels is correspondingly diminished

during inspiration to the same extent, and produces its main effect (distension) upon the veins and the right heart At the same time there is a diminished resistance in the pulmonary circuit (Sharpey-Schafer), and lowered pressure in the pericardium (Lewis) for similar reasons To put the matter in a few words, when the chest cavity is enlarged in inspiration, not only is air sucked into the lungs but more blood is also sucked into the veins and so into the heart In expiration the reverse occurs The increased venous pressure sets up the Bainbridge right auricular reflex and the heart-rate increases This together with the increased venous return increases the output from the right side of the heart, and thus *via* the pulmonary circuit the inflow into the left side of the heart is increased, in its turn, therefore, the output from the left ventricle rises, and so the aortic pressure is raised This effect would be counteracted if the aorta and its branches within the thorax were as easily affected by changes of the intra-thoracic pressure as are the thin-walled and easily distensible veins, the thick wall of the aorta and its branches, however, prevents them from undergoing much change of this kind during ordinary breathing The conditions in the veins are reversed when, with the expiratory act, the thorax returns to its former size, therefore the arterial blood-pressure falls

The effect of inspiration on arterial blood-pressure is at first assisted by the pressure of the diaphragm, as it descends, on the abdominal veins, and blood is thus sent upwards into the chest by the vena cava inferior On the other hand, this is to some extent counterbalanced by the obstruction in the passage of the blood downwards in the abdominal aorta, but again the veins are the vessels more easily influenced by moderate changes in external pressure

We thus see that these various conditions produce during inspiration an increased flow of blood into the right heart, this increased supply of blood is then passed *via* the pulmonary circuit to the left heart, this takes a little time, hence it is that the effect of inspiration in raising arterial pressure is not seen at the very commencement of the inspiration In fact, in some animals which normally breathe very quickly (for instance, the rabbit), inspiration is over, and the next expiration has begun before the rise of blood-pressure occurs By making a rabbit breathe slowly (Frédéricq accomplished this by cooling the medulla oblongata), the tracing obtained is similar to that which is taken from an animal like a dog, which normally breathes slowly

Artificial respiration performed by means of a pump which forces air into the chest produces converse undulations in blood-pressure, each blast of the pump increases the pressure in the lungs and in the chest and causes a reduction in the output of the heart, like the normal expiratory act

Valsalva's Experiment—In speaking of the effects of expiration, we have considered only ordinary quiet expiration With forced expiration, there is considerable impediment to the circulation, this is markedly seen in what is called Valsalva's experiment This consists in making a forced expiratory effort with the mouth and nose shut, the effects are most marked in people with an easily compressible thorax By such an act the intra-thoracic and abdominal pressures rise so greatly that the outlets of the veins of the limbs, head, and neck into the thorax are blocked At first, the blood in the lungs is forced out, this produces a slight rise of arterial pressure, but soon, if the effort is continued, the lungs are emptied of blood, the filling of the right heart is opposed, and the blood is dammed back in the peripheral veins, where the pressure rises to the mean arterial pressure The arterial pressure begins then to fall, but before any considerable fall occurs, the expiratory effort ceases from exhaustion of the experimenter, and a deep inspiration is taken During this inspiration, the blood delivered by the right heart is all used in the filling of the comparatively empty pulmonary vessels, thus several beats of the left ventricle become abortive, and produce no effect on the systemic arteries, the face blanches, and the subject becomes faint from cerebral anæmia The alteration of the pulse which occurs in Valsalva's experiment may be shown graphically by the sphygmograph

Asphyxia

Asphyxia may be produced by anything which prevents adequate aeration of the blood If the cause of the asphyxia is not due to the failure of respiration itself, as in damage to the medulla, the symptoms of asphyxia may be roughly divided into three stages (1) the stage of exaggerated breathing (hyperpnœa) passing into dyspnœa, (2) the stage of convulsions, (3) the stage of exhaustion or collapse

In the *first stage* the breathing becomes much deeper than usual, inspiration at first being especially exaggerated and prolonged The muscles of extraordinary inspiration are called into action, and the effort to respire is laboured and painful This is soon followed by a similar increase in the expiratory efforts, which become excessively prolonged, being aided by all the muscles of extraordinary expiration During this stage, which lasts a varying time from a minute upwards, according as the deprivation of oxygen is sudden or gradual, the lips become blue, the eyes are prominent, and the expression intensely anxious This stage is due to the powerful stimulation of the respiratory centre by the increasingly venous blood

In the *second stage*, which is not marked by any distinct line of demarcation from the first, the violent expiratory efforts become

convulsive, and then give way, in men and other warm-blooded animals, to general muscular convulsions, which arise from the further

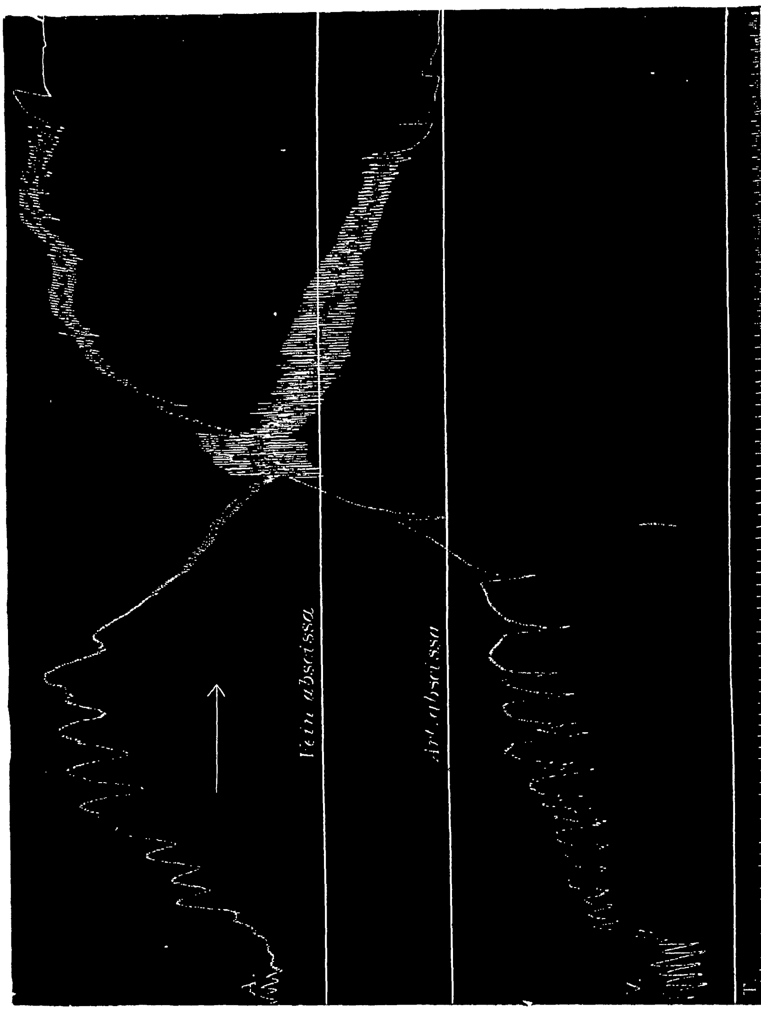


FIG 145 —Tracing of asphyxia from a curarised and anæsthetised cat, artificial respiration ceased at about the third time marking from the left The upper tracing (A) is that of the arterial pressure, taken with a mercurial manometer The lower tracing (V), which at first indicates negative pressure, is that of the venous pressure taken with a salt solution manometer (By Sir C J Martin.)

stimulation of the centres in brain and cord by venous blood The convulsive stage is a short one, and lasts less than a minute

The *third stage* is that of *exhaustion* In it the respirations all but cease, the spasms give way to flaccidity of the muscles, there is insensibility, the conjunctivæ are insensitive and the pupils are

widely dilated Every now and then a prolonged sighing inspiration takes place, at longer and longer intervals, until breathing ceases altogether, and death ensues During this stage the pulse is scarcely to be felt, but the heart may beat for some time after the respiration has stopped The condition is due to the gradual paralysis of the centres by the prolonged action of the venous blood This stage may last three minutes and upwards

The changes which occur in the circulation are also characteristic In anæsthetised animals the arterial and venous pressures rise above the normal during the first stage (fig 145), this is due to stimulation of the vasomotor centre and of the sympathetic leading to cardiac acceleration which, together with the increased venous pressure, causes an increased cardiac output (Mathur) This latter feature may not, however, show if the heart has already been accelerated or if the sympathetic has been depressed by the anæsthetic There is also no doubt a secretion of adrenaline which acts both on the heart and blood-vessels If the vagi are not divided previously, the rise of pressure is much less, and as the asphyxia proceeds the cardiac acceleration is replaced by cardiac slowing this enables the heart to last longer, and is due to excitation of the cardio-inhibitory centre by venous blood The final fall of blood-pressure is due to the dilator effects of carbon dioxide on the internal peripheral vessels Later the heart itself fails and the vasomotor centre dies

It should be noted that similar central effects are produced by asphyxia of the head only even if artificial respiration is kept up The late slowing of the heart is an important diagnostic sign of asphyxia of the brain in cerebral injuries

After death the right side of the heart and the great veins are engorged with venous blood, while the left side and the arteries are empty This is the result of the failure of the heart as a pump, and of the contraction of the smaller arteries and skin capillaries which together cause the enormous rise in venous pressure

The Relation of Respiration to Nutrition

The gaseous interchanges in the lungs constitute what is frequently termed *external respiration* Oxygen obtains an entrance into the blood, and is carried to the tissues in the loose compound known as oxyhæmoglobin In the tissues, this compound is dissociated, and the respiratory oxygen is utilised by the tissue elements for the combustion processes which occur consequent on their activity Of the ultimate products, carbonic acid and a portion of the water find an outlet by the lungs, to which they are transported by the venous blood The gaseous interchanges in the tissues constitute what is known as *internal* or *tissue respiration*

Tissue Respiration.—External or pulmonary respiration is much less obscure than tissue or internal respiration. It must be borne in mind, however, that pulmonary respiration is but the means, and tissue respiration is the end.

Tissue respiration consists in the passage of oxygen from the blood of the capillaries to the cells of the tissues, and the passage of carbonic acid in the reverse direction. This gaseous interchange is no doubt brought about by a simple process of diffusion. The oxygen passes out of the plasma of the blood through the capillary wall, and then through the lymph until it reaches the cell in which it is to be used, which we will suppose is a muscle-fibre (fig. 146). In order that a constant stream of oxygen may pass from the blood to the fibre, there must be a difference of oxygen pressure between the oxygen dissolved in the plasma, and that dissolved in the lymph, and the latter must be at a greater pressure than that dissolved in the muscle-fibre. The amount of oxygen which passes will, other things being equal, be directly proportional to these pressure differences, and as the amount varies greatly at different times, it is obvious that the pressure differences also vary greatly. When the muscle is at rest, the oxygen pressure in the capillaries is very near to that in the muscle-fibre; when the muscle is active and using large quantities of oxygen, the intramuscular oxygen is reduced and oxygen enters the muscle.

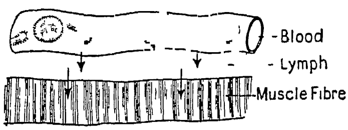


FIG. 146.

The tension of oxygen in resting tissue has been calculated as being about 19 mm. of mercury; from this it may vary down to zero or up to 35 mm. according to the activity of the tissue. This tension may be investigated by injecting a bubble of nitrogen into the tissue and subsequently withdrawing and analysing the bubble which gets into gaseous equilibrium with the tissues. Within the limits indicated the rate of diffusion can be increased by a drop in the tissue oxygen pressure.

From what has been said regarding the effect of carbon dioxide and acids in reducing the amount of oxygen held by the blood it may be deduced that the capillary oxygen pressure will be raised by the increased quantity of acid which is thrown into the blood as the result of muscular activity. The following diagram (fig. 147) shows the extent, both in degree and time, of this pouring of acid into the blood as the result of a short tetanic contraction of a muscle.

In glandular structures the oxygen pressure is higher than in muscle, probably owing to the relatively more copious blood-supply of glands; equilibrium is more readily established between

the blood and the gland cells, the oxygen pressure in the cells being almost that present in venous blood

The quantity of oxygen used by different tissues varies not only with the degree of their activity, but also with the nature of the tissues On the whole it may be said that, weight for weight,

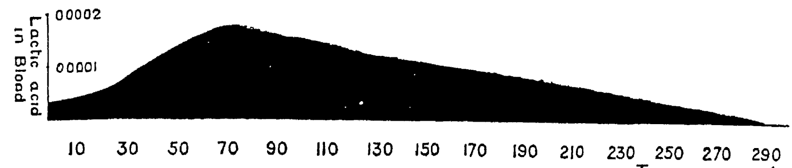


FIG 147 —The black area represents the lactic acid thrown into the blood during the time following a tetanus that lasted 84 seconds, the work done by the muscle was 70 gramme centimetres, the total quantity of lactic acid formed was 0 003 grammes The figures on the vertical line represent fractions of a gramme of lactic acid per second

glandular tissue uses most oxygen, next in order come the muscular tissues, and last of all, the connective tissues There are some important tissues, notably the nervous system, about which little is known in this connection The amount of oxygen used by an organ or tissue per gramme per minute is called its *coefficient of oxidation*, which is calculated after weighing the organ, ascertaining the amount of blood which flows through it in a given time, and by finding the difference in oxygen content of the blood arriving at and leaving the tissue

Relation of Tissue Respiration to Functional Activity—In all organs increased activity is accompanied by increased oxidation

Much interest is centred in the question of the order of time in which these events take place The matter has been investigated in skeletal muscle and in the submaxillary gland (fig 148), both

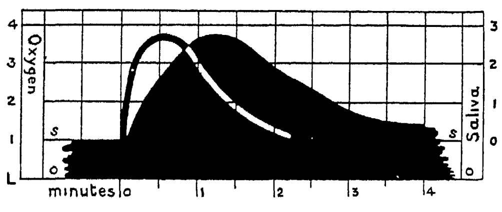


FIG 148 —The black white line represents rate of salivary secretion in c c per minute S—S = base line for saliva Black area = oxygen used by the gland O—O = oxygen base line

of which organs can be thrown into profound activity for a short space of time, in each, most of the oxidation follows on the activity, and not the activity on the oxidation The important inference is drawn that neither the contraction nor the secretion is caused by the oxidation in the sense that the machinery of a locomotive is

driven by the energy derived from the oxidation of the coal, rather is the mechanism like that of a spring which is liberated at the moment of doing the work, and has to be rewound subsequently, the process of rewinding involves oxidation (see Muscle) In muscle we have seen that the heat-formation which occurs in the period following activity takes place only if the muscle is supplied with oxygen The output of carbonic acid, in its turn, follows the intake of oxygen The order of events is therefore (1) increase of functional activity, (2) increase of heat formation and oxygen taken in, and (3) increase of carbonic acid output

The table below shows the coefficients of oxidation for resting organs, and the extent to which they are increased in activity In many cases the quantitative relationships have not been worked out

Recent research on the heart has shown that if N is the number of beats per minute, T, the maximum blood-pressure which is attained at each beat, and O, the amount of oxygen used, then $\frac{N \times T}{O}$ is a constant quantity, unless the cardiac muscle is itself rendered less efficient, as may be done by the use of drugs This is in agreement with a series of researches on the heat given out by frog's muscle, which shows that the heat given out in a single contraction varies directly with the tension in the muscle

Organ	Condition of Rest	Oxygen used per minute per gramme of organ	Condition of Activity	Oxygen used per minute per gramme of organ
Voluntary muscle	Nerves cut. Tone absent	0 003 c c	Tone existing in rest Gentle contraction Active contraction	0 006 c c 0 020 c c 0 080 c c
Unstriped muscle	Resting	0 004 c c	Contracting	0 007 c c
Heart.	Very slow and feeble contractions	0 007 c c	Normal contraction Very active	0 05 c c 0 08 c c
Submaxillary gland	Nerves cut	0 03 c c	Chorda stimulation	0 10 c c

The Mechanism of Oxidation Glutathione —The phenomenon of oxidation (auto-oxidation) in the body is one of the most important aspects of metabolism, and the fact that it occurs with ease at the temperature of the body is not the least surprising circumstance Investigators have therefore attempted to explain the mechanism concerned

The Total Gaseous Exchange—This depends entirely on the needs of the body, and, as pointed out by Haldane, it is important to remark that the muscles control respiration just as they do the circulation and arrange, largely by virtue of the carbon dioxide and lactic acid they produce, that their needs are provided for In each instance their requirements may be anticipated by the effect of the higher centres, but this is not essential

At rest the oxygen intake of an average man is **200-400 c c** per min, but this varies according to the work done and many other factors (*See* Basal Metabolism)

The Respiratory Quotient—This is the ratio between the amount of carbon dioxide given out and the amount of oxygen retained, *i e* $\frac{CO_2}{O_2}$ The amounts of these gases in the expired air and inspired air are seen in the following table, which gives average figures —

	Inspired Air	Expired Air
Oxygen	20 96 vols per cent	16 03 vols per cent
Nitrogen	79 ,, ,,	79 57 ,, ,,
Carbonic acid	0 04 ,, ,,	4 4 ,, ,,
Water vapour	variable	saturated
Temperature	,,	that of body (37° C)

It is seen that about 5 volumes of oxygen have been taken up while 4 5 volumes of carbon dioxide have been given off In this instance the respiratory quotient is 0 9, but the figure may vary somewhat according to circumstance

If carbohydrate only is being burnt in the body, *e g* glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), all the oxygen taken in appears as carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the expired air, since the carbohydrate itself contains sufficient oxygen to oxidise its own hydrogen The respiratory quotient is therefore 1 0

If, however, fat is burnt, *e g* tristearin ($C_{57}H_{110}O_6$), oxygen is also necessary to oxidise the hydrogen to water (H_2O) Thus the amount of oxygen retained becomes relatively larger than that of the carbon dioxide expired—and the respiratory quotient becomes less than unity The respiratory quotient may therefore be used to indicate the relative amounts of fat and carbohydrate which are being used as fuel in the body Protein gives a respiratory quotient of about **0 85**, *i e* between fat (**0 7**) and carbohydrate (**1 0**), and therefore does not influence the total respiratory quotient appreciably

In the above table the nitrogen content of the sample of air is obtained by subtracting the amount of $O + CO_2$ from 100, but for reasons just given the $O + CO_2$

expired is not equal to the amount inspired, and the amount of nitrogen expired appears larger than that inspired. In more accurate work this is taken account of, and the actual amount of oxygen inspired for each 100 c.c. of air expired is found thus $20.94 \times \frac{79.57}{79}$. This divided into the CO_2 expired is known as the *corrected respiratory quotient*.

The Effect of Exercise on the Respiratory Quotient.—During severe exercise it is found that the respiratory quotient may rise above unity. This is considered to be due to excessive stimulation of the respiratory centre by afferent impulses and partially to carbon dioxide being liberated from the bicarbonate of the blood by lactic acid. When the exercise ceases the respiratory quotient rises abruptly and may even reach 2 as a result of the cessation of the hyperpnœa. Gradually, however, the opposite state of affairs occurs. The lactate in the blood gradually undergoes oxidation during the recovery and alkali is set free. Carbon dioxide is now retained to form bicarbonate so to maintain the acid-base equilibrium of the blood and the respiratory quotient falls below 1.

Hill, Long, and Lupton have collected the expired air during the exercise *and the recovery period*, and it has been found that the respiratory quotient for the total excess metabolism of exercise is exactly unity, a fact which goes to indicate that in exercise carbohydrate is the fuel used. In prolonged exercise a fall in this respiratory quotient suggests the use of fat.

Oxygen Debt.—During severe exercise it is impossible for an individual to take in as much oxygen as is needed for the exercise, and, as we have already seen in relation to the chemistry of muscular contraction an oxygen debt is contracted. Lactic acid is produced and lactates are formed by its action on the bicarbonates. After the exercise the debt gets repaid, the lactates becoming oxidised. This shows itself by the increased oxygen consumption which continues for a considerable period after the exercise has ceased, *i.e.* the recovery period. Thus we see that the facts which have been found in relation to isolated muscle apply also to the body as a whole.

Local Oxygen-Want

This may occur if there is obstruction to the blood-supply of or venous return from an organ. If due to arterial obstruction or to simple pressure, gangrene or death of the part rapidly ensues unless collateral circulation is established; if due to venous obstruction, the vitality is impaired and, until the blood has found some other route of return, marked swelling of the part, as the result of increased permeability of the impaired capillaries, is evident.

General Oxygen-Want

Barcroft in describing the methods by which oxygen-want may be produced has adopted a homely simile. He compares oxygen-want to failure of the milk supply. It may be due to three causes. 1. There may not be enough milk at the dairy. 2. The milk may be adulterated so that what is sold is not milk. 3. The milkman may not call. In 1, the anoxic type, the blood is normal

but does not take up sufficient oxygen in the lungs Usually this is due to failure of the respiratory mechanism In 2, the anæmic type, the blood is deficient in hæmoglobin and cannot carry oxygen This occurs in coal-gas poisoning and in anæmia In 3, the stagnant type, there is faulty transport of normal blood which may contain the normal amount of oxygen This variety is due to a failure in the circulation

Each of these varieties is met with in patients and usually leads to breathlessness if the fault is not due primarily to failure of the respiratory centre The treatment of general anoxæmia is, however, of great practical importance as the condition rapidly leads to tissue destruction and death if allowed to persist

One of the most dramatic varieties of oxygen-want is that produced when a man descends into a well filled with gas which is not of itself harmful The onset of unconsciousness is sudden and without warning, exactly as occurs when the blood supply to the brain is cut off The breathing of pure nitrogen or any other gas other than oxygen produces a similar result In ascent to a high altitude the onset of the oxygen-want is more gradual (see below)

Breathlessness or Dyspnœa may be produced by one or both of two causes —(1) Alterations in the stimuli which play on the respiratory centre, and (2) alterations in the irritability of the centre itself The respiratory centre does not escape the influence of factors which exalt or depress the excitability of the medulla generally, for example, the great increase of carbonic acid which occurs in the blood under the influence of morphine is no doubt due to depression of the whole brain, including the respiratory centre But recent investigations have been more particularly directed to the part played by changes in the stimuli which affect the centre

The commonest physiological cause is exercise, which increases the amount of CO_2 in the blood, but as in the circulation, increased respiratory activity may precede the exercise through the effect of the higher centres In sustained or severe exercise, the effect of CO_2 is enhanced by the production of lactic acid If the exercise is prolonged the well-known phenomenon of **second wind** occurs This appears to be in part the result of a more economical use of the muscles and the lessened production of carbon dioxide since it has been found that at this stage there is a fall in the alveolar CO_2 By this time the circulation also adapts itself to its task

It is important to remark, that anything which causes delay of the circulation, also causes increased respiration, since there is added to the action of the CO_2 in the arterial blood the effects of the CO_2 produced by the respiratory centre itself In addition blood tends to accumulate in the lungs, the vital capacity is decreased

and the exchange of gas in the lungs is mechanically interfered with. This occurs in some forms of cardiac disease.

Breathlessness, it will be evident, is brought about by anything which reduces the respiratory quality of the blood, such as blood loss or the presence of abnormal acids, or by anything which causes faulty oxygenation of blood in the lungs. Whenever there is present any pathological state which tends to produce breathlessness, this symptom is increased by exercise.

The extent, however, to which exercise will produce dyspnœa depends on training which makes it possible for the exercise to be carried out with greater economy (*second wind*).

Ascent to High Altitudes.—A study of the dissociation curve of oxygen at low tensions indicates that at high altitudes the blood can take up very little oxygen. At the top of Mt. Everest (29,000 feet) where the barometric pressure is only 250 mm., although the oxygen is still 13 per cent. this only represents a tension of about 10 mm., at which 100 c.c. of unadapted blood could only take up about 2 c.c. Since the body at rest requires over 300 c.c. of oxygen per minute, it is evident that at such heights serious oxygen-want results and this is increased by exercise. At high altitudes the intense cold and carriage of kit are also serious handicaps.

Mountain sickness occurs in untrained climbers at less than 10,000 feet. Vomiting may occur, often there are bad headaches, sleeplessness, absence of self-restraint, recklessness, irritability, and an inability to carry out the more complex cerebral functions, such as arithmetical calculations. Such cerebral changes have caused intrepid balloonists to continue to ascend until they died. The speed of the ascent is important. Thus those who go to the top of Pike's Peak in Colorado (14,000 feet) by rail from the lower country, are more affected than those who go by stages.

Adaptation to high altitudes consists in (1) increased pulmonary ventilation, (2) an increase in the hæmoglobin and corpuscles of the blood, and (3) excretion of alkali by the kidney. A deficient supply of oxygen in the blood makes the respiratory centre more irritable and so produces increased pulmonary ventilation. This increases the tension of oxygen in the alveoli.

The higher the altitude the better the adaptation.

Altitude	Observed alveolar pressure of oxygen	Alveolar oxygen pressure which would have existed had no adaptation taken place
Sea-level	100 mm.	100 mm.
10,000 feet	65 ,,	59 ,,
15,000 feet	52 ,,	38 ,,

The other important method of adaptation is in the increase of corpuscles and hæmoglobin, and consequently of the oxygen capacity

of the blood In consequence the oxygen tension in the tissues is increased

	Corpuscles per c m in millions	Hæmoglobin value on hæmoglobinometer scale	Oxygen capacity of blood
Sea-level	4 9	99	830 c c
After 1 week at 14,000 feet	5 4	115	870 ,,
,, 2 ,, ,,	5 75	120	1040 ,,
,, 3 ,, ,,	5 75	121	1060 ,,
,, 5 ,, ,,		121	1028 ,,

It has been observed in animals that, in response to the call for oxygen, there is an increased activity of the bone-marrow which provides the corpuscles

Excretion of Alkali by the Kidney—As a result of the increased breathing there is a reduction of the carbon dioxide in the alveolar air and consequently a fall in the carbon dioxide content of the blood This is liable to cause a reduction in the hydrogen-ion concentration of the blood and reduce the dissociation of oxyhæmoglobin but it is compensated for by an excretion of alkali by the kidney (see "Acid Base Equilibrium")

It is then evident that considerable adaptation can occur Indeed in the Everest Expedition of 1925 Norton and Smith reached a height of 28,000 feet without using stored oxygen, a height much in excess of what might be expected from the dissociation curve Although the climbing was not steep they took ten breaths for each pace ahead This shows that adaptation was really very incomplete All the evidence from expeditions, however, indicates that man cannot live above 20,000 feet without deterioration shown in loss of weight and appetite, enfeeblement of the heart and nervous symptoms Rabbits have been kept in a low pressure chamber corresponding to a height of 30,000 feet for 8 days by Argyle Campbell, but they all developed serious degeneration of internal organs

Training—These facts indicate the importance of training for ascent to high altitude and of allowing sufficient time for the adaptations to take place Experiments also indicate that it would be possible to train to some extent before commencing the ascent and to find out which individuals are most suitable

Respiration at High Pressures

Prolonged exposure to pressures of oxygen, equal to 1300 to 1400 mm of mercury, induces pneumonia, and death rapidly follows It is not possible, therefore, for men to work in air which is compressed to the extent of producing so great a pressure of oxygen

Caisson Disease—In work under water it is usual to sink an iron bell or caisson in which the men work and from which the

water is excluded by pumping air in at a pressure higher than that of the water The men enter through a chamber with double doors or "air-lock" In this chamber the pressure can be raised or lowered The pressure in the caisson rarely exceeds 4 atmospheres, which corresponds to about 600 mm of oxygen, at this pressure the workers do not suffer whilst they are in the caisson, but grave symptoms may take place shortly after they have come out Similar symptoms are experienced by divers who come to the surface from great depths The symptoms may take the form of paralysis, vomiting, severe abdominal pain, vertigo, etc They are due to the fact that the plasma and the tissue fluids have become saturated with oxygen and nitrogen at the pressure of the caisson, and when the pressure is suddenly removed, minute bubbles, especially of nitrogen (the oxygen being used), form throughout the body and injure such tissues as the spinal cord, or produce blockage of the vessels Short hours are necessary for caisson workers, for then the body has not time to get saturated with air at the caisson pressure, and in all cases "decompression" must be gradual and slow, this gradual release from pressure is accomplished in the "air-lock" L Hill who introduced the method, advocates the use of high oxygen tension in the decompression chambers

The atmospheric gases are specially soluble in fat, fat people are therefore very susceptible to caisson disease, and should, in fact, be prohibited from labour in caissons

Carbon-Monoxide Poisoning

The fatal effects often produced by this gas (as in accidents from burning charcoal stoves in small close rooms, or where there is an escape of coal-gas) are due to its entering into combination with the hæmoglobin of the blood-corpuscles, and thus hindering their oxygen-carrying function In an atmosphere containing both oxygen and carbon monoxide, the relative quantities of the two gases which the hæmoglobin will absorb vary with the partial pressure of the gases The affinity of hæmgolobin for carbon monoxide is, however, much greater than its affinity for oxygen, and the compound formed—carboxyhæmoglobin—is much more stable than oxyhæmoglobin is If, therefore, any considerable quantity of carbon monoxide is present in the air, the hæmoglobin will be almost completely charged with carbon monoxide, and asphyxia will follow If the patient is given pure oxygen to breathe even at a late stage, two things will happen —(1) The blood will take up in simple physical solution about seven times as much oxygen as when exposed to air, and this may be sufficient to carry on life, (2) as regards the saturation of the hæmoglobin, the balance is now in favour

of the oxygen, relatively weak as its affinity for hæmoglobin is, and the carbon monoxide gradually becomes dissociated again and is excreted by the lungs In treating a patient so poisoned, therefore, it is important to remove him to a good atmosphere as soon as possible In rescue apparatus it is now common to supply 7 per cent carbon dioxide with the oxygen This stimulates the failing respiration (Yandell Henderson, Drinker)

CHAPTER XX

THE CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF THE BODY

OUT of the eighty odd elements which are now known only a relatively small number are found in the bodies of the higher animals Of these the most important are —carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, hydrogen, sulphur, phosphorus, sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, iron, chlorine, iodine, with traces normally of fluorine and occasionally of manganese, copper, lead, and silver Of these, only three are found in the free state, viz, in the blood nitrogen and to a less extent oxygen, in the intestine traces of hydrogen resulting from fermentative processes With these exceptions the elements are present in combinations as chemical compounds of various types which can be grouped into—

(1) Organic compounds, *i e* those containing carbon

(2) Inorganic, *i e* all the rest

For the sake of simplicity the naturally occurring organic compounds are grouped into carbohydrates, proteins, fats, and other lipides, and products which arise from them

CARBOHYDRATES

The **Carbohydrates** are found chiefly in vegetable tissues, and many of them form important foods Some carbohydrates are, however, found in or formed by the animal organism Among the more important carbohydrates are *glycogen*, *glucose*, *fructose*, and *lactose*

Chemically the sugars are related to the alcohols

A primary alcohol is one in which the hydroxyl group (OH) and *two* hydrogen atoms are attached to the same carbon atom, it therefore contains the group $-CH_2OH$ Thus the formula for common alcohol (ethyl alcohol) is $CH_3 \cdot CH_2OH$

The next alcohol of the same series (primary propyl alcohol) has the formula, $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH$

If a primary alcohol is oxidised, the first oxidation product is called an *aldehyde*, thus ethyl alcohol yields acetaldehyde —

$$\underset{\text{[Ethyl alcohol.]}}{CH_3 \cdot CH_2OH} + O = \underset{\text{[Acetaldehyde.]}}{CH_3 \cdot CHO} + H_2O$$

The typical group $-CHO$ of the aldehyde is not stable, but is easily oxidisable to form the group $-COOH$ (carboxyl), and the compound so formed is an acid, in this way acetaldehyde forms acetic acid

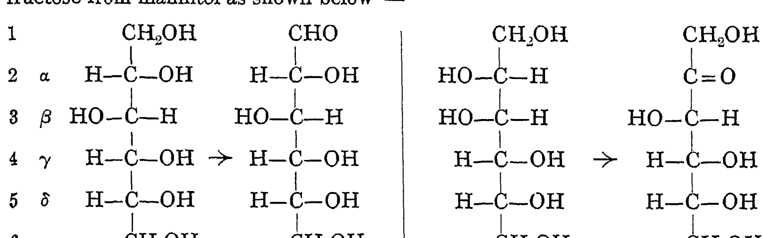
The majority of the simple sugars are oxidation products of more complex alcohols than this Those with aldehyde groups are called *aldoses* The readiness with which aldehydes are oxidisable renders them powerful reducing agents, and this furnishes us with some of the tests for the sugars

Some of the sugars (ketoses) are oxidation products of alcohols containing secondary alcohol groups The only one of these which is of physiological interest is fructose

A secondary alcohol is one in which the hydroxyl group and only *one* hydrogen atom are attached to the same carbon atom, thus secondary propyl alcohol has the formula CH_3 CHOH CH_3 Its typical group is therefore $-CHOH$ When this is oxidised, the first oxidation product is a **ketone**, thus —$2CH_3$ CHOH $CH_3 + O_2 = 2CH_3$ CO $CH_3 + 2H_2O$ This latter product is acetone

The alcohols of which we have already spoken, *e g* ethyl alcohol (see above) are called *monohydric*, because they contain only one OH group The sugars of physiological interest are derived from three hexahydric alcohols which contain six OH groups with the formula $C_6H_8(OH)_6$ These alcohols, sorbitol, mannitol, and dulcitol are isomerides

It is convenient to have some system of identifying the different carbon atoms, and one system is to number them 1 to 6, another scheme, more usually employed for the simple sugars, is to use the Greek letters α, β, γ, etc, as carried out in aliphatic acids In this case the C atom numbered 2 is the α atom as shown below in the formulæ for the sugars By oxidation of these alcohols aldehydes and ketones can be formed, and finally acids The first products thus obtained are the simple sugars, and those of most physiological interest are glucose derived from sorbitol, galactose derived from dulcitol in a strictly similar manner, and fructose from mannitol as shown below —



[Sorbitol] [Glucose] [Mannitol] [Fructose]

These sugars called *hexoses* are also called **monosaccharides**

Sugars are known to chemists, in which the number of carbon atoms is 3, 4, 5, etc Certain nucleic acids contain a pentose (5 carbon atoms)

The next important group of sugars is the **disaccharides**, formed by the condensation of two monosaccharides, with the loss of one molecule of water —$C_6H_{12}O_6 + C_6H_{12}O_6 = C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O$ If more than two monosaccharide molecules undergo a corresponding condensation, we get **polysaccharides** —$nC_6H_{12}O_6 = (C_6H_{10}O_5)_n + nH_2O$ The chief members of the three groups may be arranged in tabular form as follows —

1 Monosaccharides, $C_6H_{12}O_6$	2 Disaccharides, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$	3 Polysaccharides $(C_6H_{10}O_5)n$
+ Glucose − Fructose + Galactose	+ Sucrose + Lactose + Maltose	+ Starch + Glycogen + Dextrin − Inulin Cellulose

The + and − signs in the above list indicate that the substances to which they are prefixed are dextro- and lævo-rotatory respectively as regards polarised light The formulæ given in the table are merely empirical, the quantity n in the starch group is large

The Polarimeter

This instrument is one by means of which the action of various substances on the plane of polarised light can be observed and measured Most of the carbohydrates are dextro-rotatory The proteins are lævo-rotatory

There are many varieties of the instrument, these can be properly studied only in the laboratory, but briefly the principles on which they are constructed may be given

Suppose one is shooting arrows at a fence made up of narrow vertical palings, suppose also that the arrows are flat like the laths of a venetian blind If the arrows are shot vertically they will pass easily through the gaps between the palings, but if they are shot horizontally they will be unable to pass through at all This rough illustration will help us in understanding what is meant by polarised light Ordinary light is produced by the undulations of the ether occurring in all directions at right angles to the path of propagation of the wave Polarised light is produced by undulations in one plane only

In a polarimeter, there is at one end of the instrument a Nicol's prism, which is made of Iceland spar This polarises the light which passes through it, it is called the polariser At the other end of the instrument is another called the analyser Between the two is a tube which can be filled with fluid If the analyser is parallel to the polariser the light will pass through to the eye of the observer But if the analyser is at right angles to the polariser it is like the flat arrows hitting horizontally the vertical palings of the fence, and there is darkness At intermediate angles there will be intermediate degrees of illumination

If the analyser and polariser are parallel and the intermediate tube filled with water, the light will pass as usual, because water has no action on the plane of polarised light But if the water contains sugar or some "optically active" substance in solution, the plane is twisted in one direction or the other according as the substance is dextro- or lævo-rotatory and illumination is reduced The amount of rotation is measured by the number of angles through which the analyser has to be turned in order to obtain the full illumination This will vary with the length of the tube and the strength of the solution

The following are the chief facts in relation to each of the principal carbohydrates

Glucose (Dextrose, or Grape Sugar).—This carbohydrate is found in many fruits, honey, and in minute quantities in all tissues and fluids of the body. It is the form of sugar found in large quantities in the blood and urine in the disease known as *diabetes mellitus*.

Glucose is soluble in hot and cold water and in alcohol. It is crystalline, but not so sweet as cane-sugar. When heated with strong alkalis certain complex substances are formed which have a yellow or brown colour. This constitutes *Moore's test* for sugar. In alkaline solutions glucose reduces salts of silver, bismuth, mercury, and copper.

On warming a solution of glucose with an alkaline solution of picric acid, a dark red opaque solution due to the reduction of picric acid to picramic acid is produced.

Another important property of glucose is that under the influence of yeasts it is converted into ethyl alcohol and carbonic acid.

Glucose may be estimated by the fermentation test, by the polarimeter, and by the use of Fehling's or similar solutions (see diabetic urine). (See Urine.)

Fructose (or Lævulose).—When cane-sugar is treated with dilute mineral acids it undergoes a process known as hydrolysis—*i.e.*, it takes up water and is converted into equal parts of glucose and fructose. The previously dextro-rotatory solution of cane-sugar then becomes lævo-rotatory, the lævo-rotatory power of the fructose being greater than the dextro-rotatory power of the glucose formed. Hence the term *inversion* applied to this hydrolysis. The same hydrolytic change is produced by certain enzymes, such as the invertase of the intestinal juice and of yeast. Pure fructose can be crystallised with difficulty. It gives many of the reactions of glucose, but may be identified by its lævo-rotation, and certain chemical tests.

Galactose is formed by the action of dilute mineral acids or of hydrolytic enzymes on lactose. It resembles glucose in its action on polarised light, in reducing cupric salts, and in being directly fermentable with some yeasts. When oxidised by means of nitric acid it yields an acid, *mucic acid*, which is only slightly soluble in water. Glucose, when treated in this way, yields an isomeric acid—*i.e.*, an acid with the same empirical formula, *saccharic acid*, which is very soluble in water.

Cane-Sugar (or Sucrose) is generally distributed in the vegetable kingdom, but especially in the juices of the sugar cane, beetroot, mallow, and sugar maple. It is a substance of great importance as a food. It undergoes inversion in the alimentary canal. It is crystalline, and dextro-rotatory. With Trommer's test it gives a blue solution, but no reduction occurs in boiling, because in the union of its two constituent sugars, their aldehydic and

ketonic groups are no longer functionally active After hydrolysis the products are strongly reducing Hydrolysis may be accomplished by boiling with dilute mineral acids, or by means of enzymes such as those occurring in the intestinal juice It then takes up water, and is split into equimolecular proportions of glucose and fructose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O = C_6H_{12}O_6 + C_6H_{12}O_6$) With yeast, cane-sugar is first inverted by means of a special enzyme *invertase* secreted by the yeast cells, and then there is an alcoholic fermentation of the monosaccharides so formed, which is accomplished by another enzyme called *zymase*

Lactose (or Milk Sugar) occurs in milk It is occasionally found in the urine of women in the early days of lactation, or after weaning It is crystallisable, dextro-rotatory, much less soluble in water than other sugars, and has only a slightly sweet taste It gives reduction tests, but when the reducing power is tested

Lactosazone Glucosazone Maltosazone

FIG 149

quantitatively by Fehling's solution it is found to be a less powerful reducing agent than glucose, in the proportion of 7 to 10 When hydrolysed by agencies similar to those mentioned in connection with sucrose, it takes up water and yields glucose and galactose With yeast it is first hydrolysed, and then alcohol is formed, the change, however, occurs much more slowly

The lactic acid fermentation which occurs when milk turns sour is brought about by certain micro-organisms, which are somewhat similar to yeast cells Bacteria in the intestine bring about the same result

Maltose (or Malt Sugar) is the chief end-product of the action of malt diastase on starch, and is also formed as an intermediate product in the action of dilute acid on the same substance It is the only sugar formed from starch by the diastatic enzymes contained in the saliva and pancreatic juice It can be obtained in the form of acicular crystals, and is strongly dextro-rotatory It gives reduction tests, but its reducing power, as measured by Fehling's solution, is

one-third less than that of glucose By prolonged boiling with water, or, more readily, by boiling with a dilute mineral acid, or by means of a hydrolytic enzyme such as occurs in the intestinal juice, it is converted into glucose

Reaction with Phenylhydrazine — The three important reducing sugars with which we have to deal in physiology are glucose, lactose, and maltose They may be distinguished by their relative reducing powers on Fehling's solution, or by the characters of their osazones The osazone is formed in each case by adding phenylhydrazine hydrochloride and sodium acetate, and boiling the mixture for about half an hour In each case the osazone is deposited in the form of bright canary-coloured, needle-like crystals, usually in bunches, which differ in their crystalline form, melting-point, and solubilities (fig 149) Cane-sugar does not yield an osazone

Polysaccharides —The work of Irvine has shown that the constitution of the polysaccharides is simpler than was formerly considered Without entering into chemical details he has demonstrated that starch, glycogen, and cellulose have as their *essential units* a condensation product of one molecule of glucose and one molecule of a disaccharide, *e g* maltose or cellobiose The manner of linking is different in the three carbohydrates Inulin (the polysaccharide of artichokes and dahlia bulbs) is formed by condensation of fructose molecules

Starch is widely diffused through the vegetable kingdom It occurs in nature in the form of microscopic grains, varying in size and appearance, according to their source Each consists of more or less concentric envelopes of starch proper or granulose alternating with layers of cellulose Cellulose has very little digestive value, but starch is a most important food

Fig 150 —Grains of potato starch

Starch forms an opalescent solution in boiling water, which if concentrated gelatinises on cooling Its most characteristic reaction is the blue colour it gives with iodine On heating starch with mineral acids, glucose is formed By the action of diastatic enzymes, maltose is the chief end-product In both cases dextrins are also formed in the process

Dextrins are the intermediate products in the hydrolysis of starch or glycogen to sugar, and two chief varieties are distinguished *erythro-dextrin*, which gives a reddish-brown colour with iodine, and *achroo-dextrin*, which does not

The dextrins are readily soluble in water, but insoluble in alcohol and ether They are amorphous, dextro-rotatory, and do not ferment directly with yeast By hydrolysing agencies they are converted into glucose

Glycogen (or Animal Starch) is found in liver, muscle, and white blood-corpuscles. It is also abundant in embryonic tissues.

Glycogen is so rapidly broken down to glucose when a tissue such as liver is removed from the body that when preparing it, it is necessary to throw it at once into boiling water to kill the glyogenase which breaks it down. When the tissue is ground up and extracted the extract after separation of the proteins is opalescent because of the glycogen it contains.

Glycogen is a white, tasteless non-crystalline powder, soluble in water, but it forms, like starch, an opalescent solution. It is insoluble in alcohol and ether. It is dextro-rotatory. With copper solutions it gives no reduction on boiling. With iodine it gives a reddish or port-wine colour, very similar to that given by erythro-dextrin. Dextrin may be distinguished from glycogen by (1) the fact that it gives a clear, not an opalescent, solution with water; and (2) it is not precipitated by basic lead acetate as is glycogen. It is, however, precipitated by basic lead acetate and ammonia. (3) Glycogen is precipitated by 55 per cent. of alcohol; the dextrins require 85 per cent. or more. (4) Glycogen is precipitated by saturation with ammonium sulphate; erythro-dextrin is only partially precipitable by this means.

Cellulose.—This is the material which with other carbohydrates (lignin, etc.) makes up the cell-walls and woody fibres of plants. By treatment with strong mineral acids it is, like starch, converted into glucose, but with much greater difficulty. The various digestive enzymes have little or no action on cellulose; hence the necessity of boiling starch before it is taken as food. Boiling bursts the cellulose envelopes of the starch grains, and so allows the digestive juices to get at the starch proper. Cellulose is found in a few animals, as in the outer investment of the Tunicates. Its chief importance in relation to man is that it constitutes the indigestible bulk of the food which is important in regard to the movements of the alimentary canal.

Inositol or Inosite occurs in muscle, also in smaller quantities in other animal organs (liver, kidney, etc.), and in plants it is a fairly constant constituent of roots and leaves, especially growing leaves. It has the same empirical formula as the simple sugars ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), but it has none of the other properties of these substances.

THE FATS.*

Fat is found in small quantities in many animal tissues. It is, however, found in large quantities in three situations, viz., marrow, adipose tissue, and mammary gland during lactation. The contents of the fat cells of adipose tissue are fluid during life, the normal

* The fats and the sterols are now included under the general name "lipides."

temperature of the body (37° C, or 99° F) being considerably above the melting-point (25° C) of the mixture of the fats found there The chief fats are three in number, and are called *palmitin, stearin,* and *olein* They differ from one another in chemical composition and in certain physical characters, such as melting-point and solubility Olein melts at $-5°$ C, palmitin at 45° C, and stearin at 53-65° C It is thus olein which holds the other two dissolved at body temperature Fats are all soluble in hot alcohol, ether, and chloroform, but insoluble in water

Chemical Constitution of the Fats —Fats are esters of fatty acids with glycerol The acids concerned form a series of acids derived from monohydric alcohols by oxidation Thus, to take ordinary ethyl alcohol, C_2H_5 OH, the first stage in oxidation is the formation of acetaldehyde, CH_3 CHO, on further oxidation acetic acid, CH_3 COOH, is produced

A similar acid can be obtained from all the other alcohols, thus

From	methyl alcohol	CH_3 OH,	formic	acid	H COOH	is obtained.
,,	ethyl ,,	C_2H_5 OH,	acetic	,,	CH_3 COOH	,,
,,	propyl ,,	C_3H_7 OH,	propionic	,,	C_2H_5 COOH	,,
,,	butyl ,,	C_4H_9 OH,	butyric	,,	C_3H_7 COOH	,,
,,	amyl ,,	C_5H_{11} OH,	valeric	,,	C_4H_9 COOH	,,
,,	hexyl ,,	C_6H_{13} OH,	caproic	,,	C_5H_{11} COOH	,,

and so on

The sixteenth acid of this series, **palmitic acid,** has the formula $C_{15}H_{31}$ COOH, the eighteenth has the formula $C_{17}H_{35}$ COOH, and is **stearic acid**

Oleic acid, however, is not a member of this series, but belongs to a somewhat similar series known as the *acrylic series* It is the eighteenth member of the series, and its formula is $C_{17}H_{33}$ COOH

The first member of the group of alcohols from which this acrylic series of acids is obtained is called *allyl alcohol* (CH_2 CH CH_2OH), the corresponding aldehyde *acrolein* (CH_2 CH CHO), the formula for the acid (acrylic acid) is CH_2 CH COOH It will be noticed that two of the carbon atoms are united by a double bond, and these substances are therefore unsaturated, they are unstable and are prone to undergo, by uniting with another element, a conversion into substances in which the carbon atoms are united by only one bond This accounts for their reducing action, and it is owing to this that the colour reactions with osmic acid and Sudan III (red coloration) are due Fat which contains any member of the acrylic series, such as oleic acid, blackens osmic acid (OsO_4), by reducing it to a lower (black) oxide, probably in hydrated form The fats palmitin and stearin containing no double bond do not give these reactions

Glycerol or Glycerine is a trihydric alcohol, $C_3H_5(OH)_3$—*i e*, three hydroxyl groups united to a radical glyceryl ($C_3H_5\equiv$) The hydrogen in the hydroxyl groups is replaceable by organic radicals As an example, the radical of acetic acid the *acetyl* group (CH_3 CO—) may be taken The following formulæ represent the derivatives that can

be obtained by replacing one, two, or all three hydroxyl hydrogen atoms in this way

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
CH_2\ OH & CH_2\ OH & CH_2\ OH & CH_2\ O\ OC\ CH_3 \\
| & | & | & | \\
CH\ OH & CH\ OH & CH\ O\ OC\ CH_3 & CH\ O\ OC\ CH_3 \\
| & | & | & | \\
CH_2\ OH & CH_2\ O\ OC\ CH_3 & CH_2\ O\ OC\ CH_3 & CH_2\ O\ OC\ CH_3 \\
\text{[Glycerol]} & \text{[Monoacetin]} & \text{[Diacetin]} & \text{[Triacetin]}
\end{array}
$$

Triacetin is a type of a neutral fat, stearin, palmitin, and olein ought more properly to be called *tristearin*, *tripalmitin*, and *triolein* respectively

Decomposition Products of the Fats—Under the influence of superheated steam, mineral acids, and in the body by means of certain enzymes (for instance, the fat-splitting enzyme lipase of the pancreatic juice), a fat combines with water and splits into glycerol and the fatty acid The following equation represents what occurs in a fat, taking tripalmitin as an example —

$$
\begin{array}{lclcl}
CH_2\ O\ OC\ C_{15}H_{31} & & & CH_2\ OH & \\
| & & & | & \\
CH\ O\ OC\ C_{15}H_{31} & + & 3H\ OH = & CH\ OH & + \ 3C_{15}H_{31}CO\ OH \\
| & & & | & \\
CH_2\ O\ OC\ C_{15}H_{31} & & & CH_2\ OH & \\
\text{[Tripalmitin]} & & \text{[Water]} & \text{[Glycerol]} & \text{[Palmitic acid]}
\end{array}
$$

In the process of **saponification** much the same sort of reaction occurs, the final products being glycerol and a compound of the alkali used with the fatty acid, this is called a *soap* Suppose, for instance, that potassium hydrate is used, the following reaction occurs —

$$
\underset{\text{[Tripalmitin—a fat]}}{C_3H_5(O\ C_{15}H_{31}CO)_3} + 3KOH = \underset{\text{[Glycerol]}}{C_3H_5(OH)_3} + \underset{\text{[Potassium palmitate—a soap]}}{3C_{15}H_{31}CO\ OK}
$$

Emulsification—Another change that fats undergo in the body is very different from saponification It is a physical, not a chemical change, the fat is broken up into very small globules such as are seen in the natural *emulsion*—milk

THE STEROLS AND OTHER LIPIDES

These are a heterogeneous group of substances found in the protoplasm of all cells, especially in their outer layer or cell-membrane, which, like the fats, are soluble in such reagents as ether and alcohol These substances appear to be essential constituents of protoplasm

They are found mixed with fat in the ether-alcohol extract of tissues and organs, and they are specially abundant in nervous tissues They can be separated by what is called selective extraction For convenience they may be classified into —

(1) The *sterols* which, like the fats, are free from both nitrogen and phosphorus They are the esters of fatty acids with alcohols other than glycerol The most important members of this group are cholesterol and ergosterol which is related to vitamin D

(2) The *galactosides* which are free from phosphorus but contain nitrogen These yield the reducing sugar called galactose when broken up

(3) The *phosphatides* which contain both phosphorus and nitrogen These are grouped according to the proportion of nitrogen and phosphorus in their molecules

Cholesterol or Cholesterin is found in small quantities in all forms of protoplasm It is a specially abundant constituent of nervous tissues It is found in small quantities in the bile, but it may occur there in excess and form the concretions known as gall-stones It occurs in egg yolk, pork, liver, suprarenal, kidney and in animal fats generally

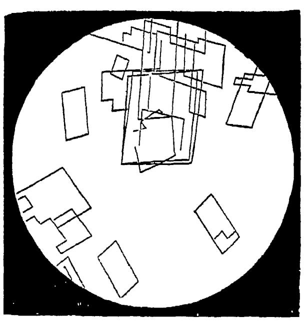


FIG 151 —Cholesterol crystals

It is a monohydric unsaturated alcohol with the empirical formula $C_{27}H_{45}$ OH The alcohol belongs to the terpene series, which are found as excretory products of plant life

Cholesterol is now believed to be not merely a waste product of metabolism, but to exert an important protective influence on the body cells against the entrance of certain poisons One of the poisons contained in cobra venom dissolves red blood-corpuscles, the presence of cholesterol in the envelope of the blood-corpuscles to some extent hinders this action, and it has been stated that the administration of cholesterol increases the resistance of the animal provided the unsaturated linkage is intact

From alcohol or ether containing water it crystallises in the form of rhombic tables, which contain one molecule of water of crystallisation these are easily recognised under the microscope (fig 151) It gives the following colour tests —

1 Heated with sulphuric acid and water (5 1), the edges of the crystals turn red

2 A solution of cholesterol in chloroform, shaken with an equal amount of strong sulphuric acid, turns red, and then purple, the subjacent acid acquiring a green fluorescence (Salkowski's reaction)

3 If acetic anhydride is added to a chloroformic solution of cholesterol, and then sulphuric acid, drop by drop, a red coloration, which changes to bluish green, is produced (Liebermann-Burchard reaction)

A substance called *iso-cholesterol* is found in the fatty secretion of the skin (sebum), it is largely contained in the preparation called *lanoline*, made from sheep's wool fat It differs from cholesterol in not giving Salkowski's colour reaction Cholesterols isomeric with animal cholesterol are also found in many plants, these are termed phyto-cholesterols, or phytosterols for short, and some of these have assumed importance recently in connection with vitamins

Cholesterol compounds exhibit the physical phenomenon studied by Lehmann, namely, the formation of liquid crystals, this is also shown by several other lipides The fat globules seen in the adrenal cortex, and in the liver and other organs during fatty degeneration, are not wholly composed of fat, for the polarising microscope shows them to be doubly refracting, and further investigation has shown them to be other lipides in the fluid crystalline condition

The Phosphatides—One of these, **lecithin**, is of considerable physiological importance This is a very labile substance, which yields on decomposition four materials, namely—glycerol and phosphoric acid united together as glycero-phosphoric acid, two fatty acids, of which one is usually oleic acid, and an ammonium-like base termed choline The fatty acid radicals are united to glycerol as in an ordinary fat, the place of the third fatty acid being taken by the radical of phosphoric acid, which in its turn is united in an ester-like manner to the choline Two other phosphatides are kephalin and sphingomyelin which are abundant in nerve-fibres and which differ slightly from lecithin

Osmic Acid Reaction—In virtue of their oleic acid radical, the phosphatides are blackened readily by this reagent, but the galactosides and cholesterol are not. The reaction to this reagent of healthy and degenerated nerve-fibres has already been described

The Galactosides—A substance known as protagon can be separated out from the brain by means of warm alcohol on cooling the extract, protagon is deposited as a white precipitate This, however, also contains cholesterol, which can be dissolved out by ether

THE PROTEINS

The **proteins** are the most important substances which occur in animal and vegetable organisms, and *protein metabolism* is, as already noted, the most characteristic sign of life They are highly complex compounds of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulphur,* with at times phosphorus, occurring in a viscous condition or in pseudo-solution in nearly all parts of the body

* The simplest proteins, the *protamines*, are however free from sulphur

The proteins in the food form the source of the proteins in the body tissues, but the latter are usually different in composition from the former The food proteins in the process of digestion are broken down into simpler substances, usually called *cleavage products*, and it is from these that the body cells reconstruct the proteins peculiar to themselves

Classification of Proteins

The knowledge of the chemistry of the proteins, which is slowly progressing, will, no doubt, in time enable us to give a classification of these substances on a strictly chemical basis The following classification must be regarded as a provisional one, which, while it retains the old familiar names as far as possible, yet attempts also to incorporate some of the new ideas

The classes of animal proteins, then, beginning with the simplest, are as follows —

1 Protamines
2 Histones
3 Albumins
4 Globulins
5 Sclero-proteins
6 Phospho-proteins
7 Conjugated proteins
   i Chromo-proteins
   ii Gluco-proteins
   iii Nucleo-proteins

1 The Protamines

These substances are obtainable from the heads of the spermatozoa of certain fishes, where they occur in combination with nuclein Kossel's view that they are the simplest proteins in nature has met with general acceptance, and they give such typical protein reactions as the biuret (Rose's or Piotrowski's) reaction On hydrolytic decomposition they first yield substances of smaller molecular weight analogous to the peptones which are called *protones*, and then they split up into amino-acids The number of resulting amino-acids is small as compared with other proteins, hence the hypothesis that they are simple proteins is confirmed Notable among their decomposition products are the diamino-acids or hexone bases, especially arginine The protamines differ in their composition according to their source, and yield these products in different proportions Protamines do not contain sulphur

2 The Histones

These are substances which have been separated from blood-corpuscles, *globin*, the protein constituent of hæmoglobin, is a well-marked instance They yield a larger number of amino-compounds

than do the protamines, but diamino-acids are still relatively abundant They are coagulable by heat, soluble in dilute acids, and precipitable from such solutions by ammonia The precipitability by ammonia is a property possessed by no other protein group

3 The Albumins

These are typical proteins, and yield the majority of the cleavage products enumerated later

They enter into colloidal solution in water, in dilute saline solutions, and in saturated solutions of sodium chloride and magnesium sulphate They are, however, precipitated by saturating their solutions with ammonium sulphate Their solutions are coagulated by heat, usually at 70-73° C Serum albumin, egg albumin, and lact-albumin are instances

4 The Globulins

The globulins give the same general tests as the albumins, they are coagulated by heat, but differ from the albumins mainly in their solubilities

Globulins are more readily salted out than albumins, they may therefore be precipitated, and thus separated from the albumins by saturation with such salts as sodium chloride, or better magnesium sulphate, or by half saturation with ammonium sulphate

The typical globulins are also insoluble in water, and so may be precipitated by removing the salt which keeps them in solution This may be accomplished by dialysis Their temperature of heat-coagulation varies considerably The following are the commoner globulins —fibrinogen and serum globulin in blood, egg globulin in white of egg, paramyosinogen in muscle, and crystallin in the crystalline lens We must also include under the same heading certain proteins which are the result of coagulation of globulins, such as fibrin (see Blood) and myosin (see Muscle)

The most striking and real distinction between globulins and albumins is that the former on hydrolysis yield glycine, whereas the albumins do not

5 The Sclero-proteins.

These substances form a heterogeneous group of substances which were formerly termed *albuminoids* The prefix sclero indicates the skeletal origin and often insoluble nature of the members of the group The principal proteins under this head are —

Collagen, the substance of which the white fibres of connective tissue are composed Some observers regard it as the anhydride of gelatin In bone it is often called *ossein*

Gelatin —This substance is produced by boiling collagen with water It possesses the peculiar property of setting into a jelly when a solution made with hot water cools

Elastin —This is the substance of which the yellow or elastic fibres of connective tissue are composed It is a very insoluble material The sarcolemma of muscle-fibres and certain basement membranes are very similar

Keratin, or horny material, is the substance found in the surface layers of the epidermis, in hairs, nails, hoofs, and horns It is very insoluble, and chiefly differs from most other proteins in its high percentage of sulphur A similar substance, called *neurokeratin,* is found in neuroglia and nerve-fibres In this connection it is interesting to note that the epidermis and the nervous system are both formed from the same layer of the embryo—the ectoderm

6 The Phospho-proteins

Vitellin (from egg-yolk), caseinogen, the principal protein of milk, and casein, the result of the action of the rennet-enzyme on caseinogen (see milk), are the chief members of this group Among their decomposition products is a considerable quantity of phosphoric acid They have been frequently confused with the nucleo-proteins, but they do not yield the products (purine and other bases) which are characteristic of nucleo-compounds The phosphorus is contained within the protein molecule, and not in another molecular group united to the protein, as is the case in the nucleo-proteins The phospho-proteins are specially valuable for the growth of young and embryonic animals Many other proteins, such as serum-globulin, contain traces of phosphorus

7 The Conjugated Proteins

These are compounds in which the protein molecule is united to other organic materials, which are as a rule also of complex nature This second constituent of the compound is usually termed a *prosthetic group* They may be divided into the following sub-classes —

i Chromo-proteins —These are compounds of protein with a pigment, which usually contains iron They are exemplified by hæmoglobin and its allies, which will be fully considered under Blood

ii Gluco-proteins —These are compounds of protein with a carbohydrate group This class includes the mucins and the mucoids

The *mucins* are widely distributed and may occur in epithelial cells, or be shed out by these cells (mucus, mucous glands, goblet cells) The mucins obtained from different sources are alike in being

viscid and tenacious, soluble in dilute alkalis such as lime-water, and precipitable from solution by acetic acid

The *mucoids* differ from the mucins in minor details The term is applied to the mucin-like substances which form the chief constituent of the ground substance of connective tissues (tendo-mucoid, chondro-mucoid, etc) Another (ovo-mucoid) is found in white of egg, and others (pseudo-mucin and para-mucin) are occasionally found in dropsical effusions, and in the fluid of ovarian cysts

iii **Nucleo-proteins** —These are compounds of protein with a complex organic acid called nucleic acid, which contains phosphorus They are found in both the nuclei and cell-protoplasm of cells In physical character they often simulate mucin

Nuclein is the name given to the chief constituent of cell-nuclei It is identical with the chromatin of histologists

On decomposition it yields an organic acid called nucleic acid, together with a variable but usually small amount of protein It contains a high percentage (10-11) of phosphorus

The nuclein obtained from the nuclei or heads of the spermatozoa consists of nucleic acid without any protein admixture In fishes' spermatozoa, however, there is an exception to this rule, for there this acid is, as we have already seen, united to protamine

The nucleo-proteins of cell protoplasm are compounds of nucleic acid with a much larger quantity of protein, so that they usually contain only 1 per cent or less of phosphorus Some also contain iron, and the normal supply of iron to the body is contained in the nucleo-proteins or *hæmatogens* (Bunge) of plant or animal cells

Nucleic acid yields, among its decomposition products, phosphoric acid, various bases of the purine pyrimidine group, and a carbohydrate radical is also obtained

The nucleic acids obtained from various mammalian organs indicate that they fall into two main classes —

(1) *Nucleic acid proper* —This yields on decomposition—

(*a*) Phosphoric acid (*b*) A sugar

(*c*) Two members of the purine group in the same proportion, namely, adenine and guanine

(*d*) Two pyrimidine bases, cytosine and thymine (from animal) or uracil (from yeast)

The *purine bases* are specially interesting because of their close relationship to uric acid, and we shall have to deal with them again in our description of that substance

(2) *Guanylic acid* —This is a simpler form of nucleic acid found in certain organs (pancreas, liver, etc), mixed with the nucleic acid proper

The Properties of Proteins

Solubilities —The proteins are insoluble in alcohol and ether Some are soluble in water (*Colloidal Solution*, see p 337), others are insoluble Many of the latter are soluble in weak saline solutions Some are insoluble, others soluble in concentrated saline solutions

Heat Coagulation —Most native proteins, such as white of egg, are rendered insoluble when their solutions are heated The temperature of heat coagulation differs in different proteins, thus myosinogen and fibrinogen coagulate at 56° C, serum albumin and serum globulin at about 75° C The proteins which are coagulated by heat come mainly under two classes the *albumins* and the *globulins* These differ in solubility, the albumins are soluble in distilled water, the true globulins require salts to hold them in solution

Indiffusibility —The proteins (peptones excepted) belong to the class of substances called *colloids* by Thomas Graham, that is, they pass with difficulty, or not at all, through animal membranes In the construction of dialysers, vegetable parchment is largely used Proteins may thus be separated from diffusible (*crystalloid*) substances such as salts, but the process is a tedious one

Colour Reactions —The principal colour reactions by which proteins are recognised are the following —

(1) The *Xantho-proteic reaction* If nitric acid is added to a solution of a protein such as white of egg, the result is a white precipitate, this and the surrounding liquid become yellow on heating and are turned orange by ammonia The preliminary white precipitate is not given by certain proteins such as peptones, but the colours are the same The colour is due to the formation of nitro-derivatives of the aromatic radical of the protein molecule

(2) *Millon's reaction* Millon's reagent is a mixture of mercuric and mercurous nitrate with excess of nitric acid This gives a white precipitate which is turned brick-red on boiling This reaction depends on the presence of the tyrosine radical and is not given by gelatin

(3) *Biuret reaction* (*Rose's or Piotrowski's*) A trace of copper sulphate and excess of strong caustic potash give with most proteins a violet solution Proteoses and peptones, however, give a rose-red colour instead, this same colour is given by the substance called *biuret* This name does not imply that biuret is present in protein, but is used because both protein and biuret give the reaction The native proteins give a violet colour, because the red tint of the copper compound with the biuret group is mixed with another copper compound with a blue colour The test is given by some

of the larger polypeptides but not by lesser products of protein hydrolysis

Biuret is formed by heating solid urea, ammonia passes off and leaves biuret, thus—

$$\underset{\text{[Urea]}}{2CON_2H_4} = \underset{\text{[Biuret]}}{C_2O_2N_3H_5} + \underset{\text{[Ammonia]}}{NH_3}$$

(4) *Adamkiewicz reaction* When a solution of protein is mixed with a dilute solution of glyoxylic acid, and then excess of commercial sulphuric acid is added, an intense violet colour is obtained This is due to the tryptophan radical A similar test is that of *Rosenheim* in which dilute formaldehyde replaces the glyoxylic acid

Precipitants of Proteins — Solutions of most proteins are precipitated by —

Strong acids such as nitric acid, picric acid, acetic acid and potassium ferrocyanide, acetic acid and excess of a neutral salt such as sodium sulphate, when these are boiled with the protein solution, salts of the heavy metals such as copper sulphate, mercuric chloride, lead acetate, silver nitrate, etc, tannin, alcohol, saturation with certain neutral salts such as ammonium sulphate

It is necessary that the words *coagulation* and *precipitation* should in connection with proteins be carefully distinguished The term *coagulation* is used when an insoluble protein (coagulated protein) is formed from a soluble one This may occur. (1) When a protein is heated—*heat coagulation*, (2) under the influence of an enzyme, for instance, when a curd is formed in milk by rennet or a clot in shed blood by the fibrin ferment—*enzyme coagulation*

In precipitation the precipitate formed is readily soluble in suitable reagents such as saline solutions, and the protein continues to show its typical reactions This is called "**salting out**" * Such a precipitate is produced by saturation with ammonium sulphate Certain proteins, called *globulins*, are more readily precipitated by such means than others Thus, globulins are precipitated by half-saturation with ammonium sulphate Full saturation with ammonium sulphate precipitates all proteins but peptone The globulins are precipitated by certain salts, such as sodium chloride and magnesium sulphate, which do not precipitate the albumins

The precipitate produced by alcohol is peculiar in that after a time it becomes a coagulum Protein freshly precipitated by alcohol is readily soluble in water or saline media, but after it has been allowed to stand some time under alcohol it becomes more and more insoluble Such a change in the nature of the protein is

* Other colloids (starch, glycogen, soaps, etc) can be similarly "salted out" of solution

called **denaturation** Albumins and globulins are most readily rendered insoluble by this method, proteoses and peptones are never rendered insoluble by the action of alcohol This fact is of value in the separation of these proteins from others

Crystallisation —Hæmoglobin, the red pigment of the blood, is a protein and is crystallisable (for further details, see The Blood, p 347) Like other proteins it has a large molecule, though crystalline, it is not crystalloid in Graham's sense of that term Further, egg albumin and some other proteins have been crystallised by treatment with inorganic salts

Action on Polarised Light —Most proteins are lævo-rotatory, the amount of rotation varying with individual proteins Several of the conjugated proteins, *e g* hæmoglobin and nucleo-proteins, are dextro-rotatory, though their protein components are lævo-rotatory (Gamgee)

Protein-hydrolysis

When protein material is subjected to hydrolysis, as it is when heated with mineral acid, or alkalis, or superheated steam, or to the action of such enzymes as **trypsin** in the alimentary canal, it is finally resolved into the numerous amino-acids of which it is built But before this ultimate stage is reached, it is split into substances of progressively diminishing molecular size, which still retain many of the protein characters The products may be classified in order of formation as follows —

1 Meta-proteins
2 Proteoses
3 Peptones
4 Polypeptides
5 Amino-acids

The polypeptides are linkages of two or more amino-acids, as already explained Although most of the polypeptides at present known are products of laboratory synthesis, many have been definitely separated from the digestion products of proteins

Products of Partial Hydrolysis

1 **Acid and Alkali Metaprotein** —These are insoluble in pure water, but are soluble in either acid or alkali, and are precipitated by neutralisation unless certain disturbing influences like sodium phosphate are present They are precipitated like globulins by saturation with such neutral salts as sodium chloride or magnesium sulphate They are not coagulated by heat if in solution

2 **Proteoses** —The word "proteose" includes the albumoses (from albumin), globuloses (from globulin), vitelloses (from vitellin),

etc Similar substances are also formed from gelatin (gelatinoses) and elastin (elastoses) They are not coagulated by heat, they are precipitated but not coagulated by alcohol like peptone, they give the pink biuret reaction They are precipitated by nitric acid, *the precipitate being soluble on heating, and reappearing when the liquid cools* This last is a distinctive property of proteoses They are slightly diffusible

The primary proteoses, which are those formed first, are precipitated by saturation with magnesium sulphate or sodium chloride Secondary proteose is not, it is, however, precipitated by saturation with ammonium sulphate

3 **Peptones**—These are soluble in water, are not coagulated by heat, and are not precipitated by nitric acid, copper sulphate, ammonium sulphate, and a number of other precipitants of proteins They are precipitated but not coagulated by alcohol They are also precipitated by tannin, picric acid, potassio-mercuric iodide, phospho-molybdic acid, and phospho-tungstic acid

They give the biuret reaction (rose-red solution with a trace of copper sulphate and caustic potash or soda)

Peptone is readily diffusible through animal membranes

The annexed table will give us at a glance the chief characters of peptones and proteoses in contrast with those of the native proteins, albumins, and globulins

Variety of protein	Action of heat	Action of alcohol	Action of nitric acid	Action of ammonium sulphate	Action of copper sulphate and caustic potash	Diffusibility
Albumin	Coagulated	Precipitated, then coagulated	Precipitated in the cold, not readily soluble on heating	Precipitated by complete saturation	Violet colour	Nil
Globulin	Ditto	Ditto	Ditto	Precipitated by half saturation, also precipitated by $MgSO_4$	Ditto	Ditto
Proteoses	Not coagulated	Precipitated, but not coagulated	Precipitated in the cold, readily soluble on heating, the precipitate reappears on cooling*	Precipitated by saturation	Rose red colour (biuret reaction)	Slight
Peptones	Not coagulated	Precipitated, but not coagulated	Not precipitated	Not precipitated	Rose red colour (biuret reaction)	Great

* With deutero albumose this reaction only occurs in the presence of excess of salt

The Amino-Acids

What we have already learnt about the fatty acids will help us in understanding what is meant by an **amino-acid** We shall find it advantageous to distinguish the carbon atoms in the fatty acids

1 If we take acetic acid, one of the simplest of the fatty acids, its formula is CH_3 COOH If one of the three hydrogen atoms in the methyl group is replaced by NH_2, we get a substance which has the formula $CH_2(NH_2)COOH$ The group NH_2 is called the *amino*-group, and the new substance now formed is called amino-acetic acid, it is also termed **glycine** or glycocoll In this example there is only one position which the amino-group can occupy Thus there can only be one amino-acetic acid, but in other cases there are

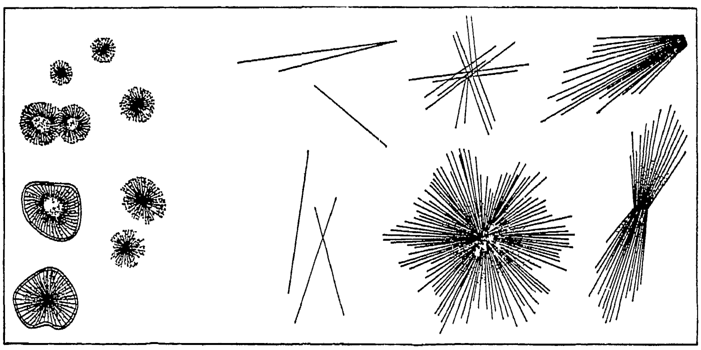
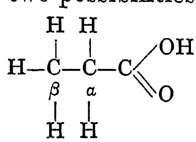


FIG 152 —Crystals of leucine (left) and tyrosine (right) × 216

more possibilities, and their carbon atoms are termed α, β, γ, etc In propionic acid there are two possibilities, it has the formula—



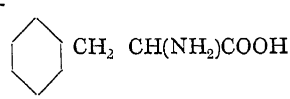
We thus can get either CH_2 NH_2 CH_2 COOH (β-amino-propionic acid), or CH_3 CH NH_2 COOH (the α acid), α-amino-propionic acid is called **alanine** Going higher in the scale, the more numerous become the possibilities, but the α-amino-acids only are found in nature From hydroxy-propionic acid, we get the amino-derivative called **serine**, from valeric acid (C_4H_9 COOH), **valine** ($C_4N_8(NH_2)COOH$) is obtained, and from caproic acid (C_5H_{11} COOH) we get **leucine** ($C_5H_{10}(NH_2)COOH$), or more accurately α-amino-isobutyl-acetic acid $(CH_3)_2CH$ CH_2 $CH(NH_2)COOH$ Its crystalline form is shown on the left-hand side of fig 152

All the five amino-acids mentioned (glycine, alanine, serine, valine, and leucine) are found among the final products of most proteins

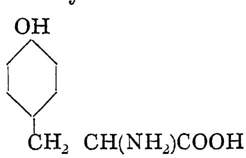
2 A second group of amino-acids is obtained from fatty acids, which contain two carboxyl (COOH) groups in their molecules The most important of the amino-derivatives obtained from these dicarboxylic acids are amino-succinamic acid (asparagine), amino-succinic acid (aspartic acid), amino-glutaric acid (glutamic acid)

3 The third group of amino-acids is a very important one, the *aromatic amino-acids*, that is, amino-acids containing the benzene ring, and of these we will mention two, namely, phenyl-alanine and tyrosine, and a nearly related substance called tryptophan

Phenyl-alanine is alanine or α-amino-propionic acid in which an atom of hydrogen is replaced by a phenyl group, propionic acid has the formula C_2H_5 COOH, alanine (α-amino-propionic acid) is $C_2H_4(NH_2)COOH$, phenyl-alanine is C_6H_5 $C_2H_3(NH_2)COOH$, or graphically written—

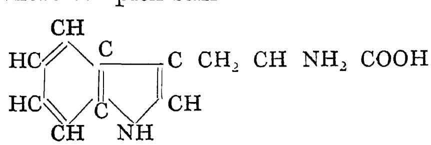


Tyrosine is a little more complicated, it is para-hydroxyphenyl alanine, that is, graphically written—



Tyrosine crystallises in collections of very fine needles (see fig 152)

Tryptophan is more complex still—



it is indole amino-propionic acid that is, amino-propionic acid united to a ringed derivative called indole Tryptophan is the portion of the protein molecule which is the parent substance of two evil-smelling * products of protein decomposition called indole and skatole or methyl indole Indole is a combination of the benzene and pyrrol rings Tryptophan is the radical in the protein molecule which is responsible for the colour test called the Adamkiewicz reaction

In this and in all the preceding cases, there is only one

* The smell is probably due to skatole, pure indole having a pleasant smell

replacement of an atom of hydrogen by the amino group (NH_2), hence they may be all classed together as *mono-amino-acids*

Passing to the next stage in complexity, we come to another group of amino-acids which are called *diamino*-acids, that is, fatty acids in which two hydrogen atoms are replaced by NH_2 groups Of these we may mention lysine, ornithine, arginine, and histidine

Lysine is diamino-caproic acid Caproic acid is $C_5H_{11} \cdot COOH$ Mono-amino-caproic acid or leucine, we have already learnt, is $C_5H_{10}(NH_2)COOH$ Lysine or diamino-caproic acid is $C_5H_9(NH_2)_2 \cdot COOH$

Ornithine is diamino-valeric acid, and the following formulæ will show its relationship to its parent fatty acid—

C_4H_9COOH is valeric acid
$C_4H_7(NH_2)_2COOH$ is diamino-valeric acid or ornithine

Arginine is a somewhat more complex substance, which contains the ornithine radical It belongs to the same group of substances as **creatine,** which is methyl-guanidine acetic acid, and has the formula—

$$\begin{matrix} HN \\ H_2N \end{matrix}\!\!>\!C-N(CH_3)CH_2 \cdot COOH \qquad \begin{matrix} H_2N \\ H_2N \end{matrix}\!\!>\!C=O \;\Big|\; NH(CH_3)CH_2 \cdot COOH$$

[Creatine] [Urea] [Sarcosine or methyl glycine]

On boiling it with baryta water, it takes up water and splits at the dotted line into urea and sarcosine, as shown above

Arginine splits in a similar way, urea being split off on the left, and ornithine instead of sarcosine on the right Arginine is, therefore, a compound of ornithine with a urea group

Histidine, though not strictly speaking a diamino-acid, is a diazine derivative (imidazole-amino-propionic acid), and so may be included in the same group Histidine is of great importance as it readily loses CO_2 on decomposition and gives rise to a very toxic substance *histamine,* which is very readily produced in damaged tissues

These substances we have spoken of as acids, but they may also play the part of bases, for the introduction of a second amino-group into the fatty acid molecules confers upon them basic properties The three substances lysine, $C_6H_{14}N_2O_2$, arginine, $C_6H_{14}N_4O_2$, histidine, $C_6H_9N_3O_2$ are in fact often called the *hexone bases,* because each of them contains 6 atoms of carbon, as the above empirical formulæ show

Cystine and **methionine** are complex diamino-acids in which sulphur is present, and in which the greater part of the sulphur of the protein molecule is contained

In addition to all these numerous amino-acids there are other cleavage products, of which it will be sufficient to mention **proline** In the nucleo-proteins the nuclein component yields in addition what are known as **purine** and **pyrimidine** bases (See further under Nucleic Acid, also under Uric Acid)

The Constitution of Proteins

The above list now represents the principal groups of chemical nuclei united together in the protein molecule, and its length makes one realise the complicated nature of that molecule and the difficulties which beset its investigation We may put the problem another way In the simple sugars, with six atoms of carbon, there are as many as twenty-four different ways in which the atomic groups may be linked up, the formulæ on p 298 give only three of these which represent the structure of glucose, fructose, and galactose, but the majority of the remainder have also been prepared by chemists The molecule of albumin has at least 700 carbon atoms, so the possible combinations and permutations must be reckoned by millions

Much work is being done on the various known proteins, taking them to pieces and identifying and estimating the fragments and improving the methods of estimation The following table presents the results obtained with some of the cleavage products of a few proteins The numbers given are percentages

	Serum albumin	Egg albumin	Serum globulin	Caseinogen of cow s milk	Gelatin	Keratin, from horse hair	Edestin, a globulin from cotton seed	Zein, from maize	Gliadin, from wheat
Glycine	0	0	3 5	0	25 5	4 7	3 8	0	0 02
Leucine	20 0	6 1	18 7	10 5	7 1	7 1	2 9	18 6	5 6
Glutamic acid	7 7	8 0	8 5	21 8	5 8	3 7	17 2	26 2	43 7
Tyrosine	2 1	1 1	2 5	4 5	0	3 2	2 1	3 5	1 2
Arginine	4 9	2 1	3 9	3 8	7 6		11 7	1 2	3 2
Tryptophan	+	+	+	1 5	0		+	0	1 0
Cystine	2 5	0 3	0 7	0 06		More than 10	0·2		0 4

Such numbers, of course, are not to be committed to memory, but they are sufficient to convey to the reader the differences between the proteins There are several blanks left, on account of no accurate estimations having yet been made Where the sign + occurs, the substance in question has been proved to be present, but not yet

determined quantitatively Among the more striking points brought out are —

1 The absence of glycine from albumins
2 The high percentage of glycine in gelatin
3 The absence of tyrosine and tryptophan in gelatin
4 The high percentage of the sulphur-containing substance (cystine) in keratin
5 The high percentage of glutamic acid in vegetable proteins

Fischer discovered the way in which the amino-acids are linked together into groups The groups are termed *peptides* or *polypeptides*, many of these have been made synthetically in the laboratory, and so the synthesis of the protein molecule is foreshadowed

We may take as our examples of the peptides some of the simplest, and may write the formulæ of a few amino-acids as follows —

$$\left.\begin{array}{ll} NH_2\ CH_2\ COOH & \text{Glycine,} \\ NH_2\ C_2H_4\ COOH & \text{Alanine,} \\ NH_2\ C_5H_{10}\ COOH & \text{Leucine,} \end{array}\right\} \text{or in general terms, } HNH\ \ R\ \ COOH$$

Two amino-acids are linked together as shown in the following formula—

$$HNH\ \ R\ \ CO\ \ OH + H\ \ NH\ \ R\ \ COOH$$

What happens is that the hydroxyl (OH) of the carboxyl (COOH) group of one acid unites with one atom of the hydrogen of the other amino (HNH) group, and water is thus formed, as shown within the dotted lines this is eliminated and the rest of the chain closes up In this way we get a *dipeptide* Thus glycyl-glycine, glycyl-leucine, leucyl-alanine, alanyl-leucine, and numerous other combinations are obtained If the same operation is repeated we obtain tripeptides (leucyl-glycyl-alanine, alanyl-leucyl-tyrosine, etc), then come the tetrapeptides, and so on In the end, by coupling the chains sufficiently often and in appropriate order, Fischer has already obtained substances which give some of the reactions of peptones

It is beyond the scope of this book to give details of **estimation** of individual amino-acids, but the following general methods of protein analysis may be given

Hausmann's Method —This is a short and trustworthy procedure, by which an approximate knowledge of the nitrogen distribution in the protein molecule is ascertained

It is shortly as follows —The whole nitrogen of the protein is estimated by Kjeldahl's method A weighed amount is then hydrolysed by means of

hydrochloric acid, and then the cleavage products are separated into three classes and the nitrogen estimated in each, as—

1 Ammonia nitrogen This comprises the nitrogen of the protein molecule which is easily split off as ammonia, and is determined by distilling off the ammonia after adding magnesia

2 Diamino-N The fluid, free from ammonia, is precipitated by phosphotungstic acid, and the nitrogen present in the precipitate determined This represents the nitrogen of the diamino-acids (lysine, arginine, etc)

3 Mono-amino-N is then estimated in the residual fluid

The method has proved useful for the differentiation of proteins, and interesting deductions as to their food value have been drawn from its results

Van Slyke's Method —In this method the two last fractions in Hausmann's method are treated with nitrous acid, which liberates nitrogen from amino-groups By measuring the nitrogen evolved, the amino-nitrogen is ascertained, and the non-amino-nitrogen (that is, the nitrogen in heterocyclic combination in proline tryptophan, etc) is determined by difference This method can be worked with quite small quantities of protein, and from 98 to 100 per cent. of the nitrogen is accounted for

to the positive charge of two hydrogen ions. We can thus speak of monovalent, divalent, trivalent, etc., ions.

Ions positively charged are called *kat-ions* because they move towards the kathode or negative pole; those which are negatively charged are called *an-ions* because they move towards the anode or positive pole. The following are some examples of each class:—

Kat-ions	Monovalent.—H, Na, K, NH_4, etc.
	Divalent.—Ca, Ba, Fe (in ferrous salts), etc.
	Trivalent.—Al, Bi, Sb, Fe (in ferric salts), etc.
An-ions	Monovalent.—Cl, Br, I, OH, NO_3, etc.
	Divalent.—S, Se, SO_4, etc.

Roughly speaking, the greater the dilution the more nearly complete is the dissociation, and in a very dilute solution of such a substance as sodium chloride we may consider that the number of ions is double the number of molecules of the salt present.

The ions liberated by the act of dissociation are, as we have seen, charged with electricity, and when an electrical current is led into such a solution, it is conducted through the solution by the movement of the ions. Substances which exhibit the property of dissociation are known as electrolytes.

The liquids of the body contain electrolytes in solution, and it is owing to this fact that they are able to conduct electrical currents.

This conception of electrolytic dissociation which we owe to Arrhenius is extremely important in relation to osmotic pressure, because the process of dissociation increases the number of particles moving in the solution, and so increases the osmotic pressure, for in this relation an ion plays the same part as a molecule.

It has been shown also that living tissues are extremely sensitive to the nature and the concentration of ions in their environment. Some of these facts, which we owe largely to the work of Ringer and of Loeb, we have already referred to in relation to the heart, amœba, and cilia.

Gramme-molecular Solutions.—From the point of view of osmotic pressure a convenient unit is the gramme-molecule. A gramme-molecule of any substance is the quantity in grammes of that substance equal to its molecular weight. A gramme-molecular solution is one which contains a gramme-molecule of the substance per litre. Thus a gramme-molecular solution of sodium chloride is one which contains 58.46 grammes of sodium chloride (Na = 23.00 Cl = 35.46) in a litre. A gramme-molecular solution of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) is one which contains 180 grammes of glucose in a litre. A gramme-molecule of hydrogen (H_2) is 2 grammes by weight of hydrogen, and if this was compressed to the volume of a litre, it would be comparable to a gramme-molecular solution. It therefore

follows that a litre containing 2 grammes of hydrogen contains the same number of molecules of hydrogen in it as a litre of a solution containing 58 46 grammes of sodium chloride, or one containing 180 grammes of glucose, has in it of salt or sugar molecules respectively To put it another way, the heavier the weight of a molecule of any substance, the more of that substance must be dissolved in the litre to obtain its gramme-molecular solution Or still another way if solutions of various substances are made all of the same strength per cent, the solutions of the materials of small molecular weight will contain more molecules of those materials than the solutions of the materials which have heavy molecules We shall see that the calculation of osmotic pressure depends upon these facts

Diffusion—If two gases are brought together within a closed space, a homogeneous mixture of the two is soon obtained This is due to the movements of the gaseous molecules within the confining space, and the process is called *diffusion* This process, we have seen, is important in relation to the passage of gases to and from the blood in the lungs In a similar way diffusion will effect in time a homogeneous mixture of two liquids or solutions If water is carefully poured on to the surface of a solution of salt so as to form two layers, the salt or its ions will soon be equally distributed throughout the whole If a solution of albumin or any other *colloidal* substance is used instead of salt in the experiment, diffusion will be found to occur much more slowly

The Passage of Substances through Membranes

If, instead of pouring the water on to the surface of a solution of salt or sugar, the two are separated by a membrane made of such a material as parchment, a diffusion will occur, though more slowly than in cases where the membrane is absent In time, the water on each side of the membrane will contain the same quantity of sugar or salt Substances which pass through such membranes are called *crystalloids* Substances which have large molecules (starch, protein, etc) and do not pass through such membranes are called *colloids* Very few, if any, membranes are equally permeable to water and to molecules of the substances dissolved in the water If in fig 153 the compartment A is filled with pure water, and B with a sodium chloride solution, the liquids in the two compartments will ultimately be found to be equal in bulk as they were at the start, and each will be a solution of salt

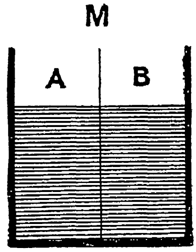


Fig 153

of half the strength of that originally in the compartment B But at first the volume of the liquid in compartment B increases, because more water molecules pass into it from A than salt molecules pass from B to A The term **osmosis** is generally limited to the stream of water molecules passing through a membrane, while the term **dialysis** is applied to the separation of those substances which can pass through a membrane from those which cannot At first, then, since osmosis (the diffusion of water) is more rapid than the dialysis (the diffusion of the salt molecules or ions), the level of B becomes higher than that of A This difference indicates the higher **osmotic pressure** of the salt solution or the power of the solution to attract water If a bladder containing strong salt solution is placed in a vessel of distilled water, water passes into the bladder by osmosis, so that the bladder is swollen, and a manometer connected with its interior will show a rise of pressure (osmotic pressure)

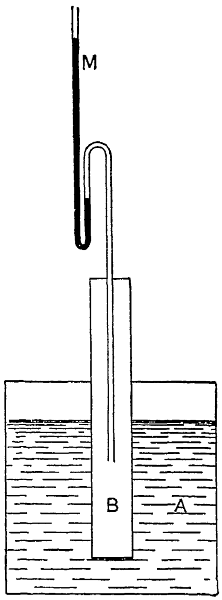


FIG 154 —A, outer vessel, containing distilled water, B, inner semi permeable vessel, containing 1 per cent salt solution, M, mercurial manometer (After Starling)

The total osmotic pressure cannot, however, be measured in this way because (1) the salt diffuses out as the water diffuses in, and (2) the increased hydrostatic pressure in B (due to gravity) tends to interfere with the passage of the water to B (see Filtration below)

It is therefore necessary to use a membrane which will not allow salt to pass out either by dialysis or filtration, though it will let the water pass in Such membranes are called *semi-permeable* membranes, and one of the best of these is ferrocyanide of copper This may be made by taking a cell of porous earthenware and washing it out first with copper sulphate and then with potassium ferrocyanide An insoluble precipitate of copper ferrocyanide is thus deposited in the pores of the earthenware

If such a cell is arranged as in fig 154, and filled with a 1 per cent solution of sodium chloride, water diffuses in, till the pressure registered by the manometer reaches the enormous height of 5000 mm of mercury If the pressure in the cell is increased beyond this artificially, water will be pressed through the semi-permeable walls of the cell and the solution will become more concentrated

Though it is theoretically possible to measure osmotic pressure by a manometer in this direct way, practically it is hardly ever done, because it has been found difficult to construct a membrane which is absolutely semi-permeable; they are nearly all permeable in some degree to the molecules of the dissolved crystalloid. In course of time, therefore, the dissolved crystalloid will be equally distributed on both sides of the membrane, and osmosis of water will cease to be apparent, since it will be equal in both directions.

Calculation of Osmotic Pressure.—As a simple example we may take a 1 per cent. solution of cane-sugar which does not dissociate into ions.

One gramme of hydrogen at atmospheric pressure and 0° C. occupies a volume of 11.2 litres; two grammes of hydrogen will therefore occupy a volume of 22.4 litres. A gramme-molecule of hydrogen—that is, 2 grammes of hydrogen—when brought to the volume of 1 litre, will exert a gas pressure equal to that of 22.4 litres compressed to 1 litre—that is, a pressure of 22.4 atmospheres. A gramme-molecular solution of cane-sugar, since it contains the same number of molecules in a litre, must therefore exert an osmotic pressure of 22.4 atmospheres also. A gramme-molecular solution of cane-sugar ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) contains 342 grammes of cane-sugar in a litre of water. A 1 per cent. solution of cane-sugar contains only 10 grammes of cane-sugar in a litre; hence the osmotic pressure of a 1 per cent. solution of cane-sugar is $\frac{10}{342} \times 22.4$ atmospheres, or 0.65 of an atmosphere, which in terms of a column of mercury $= 760 \times 0.65 = 494$ mm.

It is not possible, however, to apply this method to mixed solutions containing electrolytes such as occur in the body since it is not known how many molecules are ionised.

Determination of Osmotic Pressure by means of the Freezing-point.—This is the method which is almost universally employed. The principle on which the method depends is the following:—The freezing-point of a solution of any substance in water is lower than that of water; the lowering of the freezing-point is proportional to the molecular concentration of the dissolved substance, and that, as we have seen, is proportional to the osmotic pressure.

When a gramme-molecule of any substance is dissolved in a litre of water, the freezing-point is lowered by 1.87° C., and the osmotic pressure is, as we have seen, equal to 22.4 atmospheres, that is, $22.4 \times 760 = 17{,}024$ mm. of mercury.

We can, therefore, calculate the osmotic pressure of any solution if we know the lowering of its freezing-point in degrees Centigrade; the

lowering of the freezing-point is usually expressed by the Greek letter Δ The determination is made by the use of the Beckmann thermometer

$$\text{Osmotic pressure} = \frac{\Delta}{1\ 87} \times 17{,}024$$

For example, a 1 per cent solution of sugar would freeze at $-0\ 052^\circ$ C, its osmotic pressure is therefore $\frac{0\ 052 \times 17{,}024}{1\ 87} = 473$ mm, a number approximately equal to that we obtained by calculation

Mammalian blood serum gives $\Delta = 0\ 56^\circ$ C A 0 9 per cent solution of sodium chloride has the same Δ, hence serum and a 0 9 per cent solution of common salt have the same osmotic pressure, or are *isomotic* The osmotic pressure of blood serum is $\frac{0\ 56 \times 17{,}024}{1\ 87} = 5000$ mm of mercury approximately, or a pressure of nearly 7 atmospheres

The osmotic pressure of solutions may also be compared by observing their effect on red blood-corpuscles, or on vegetable cells such as those in Tradescantia If the solution is *hypertonic, i e*, has a greater osmotic pressure than the cell contents, the protoplasm shrinks, and loses water, or if red corpuscles are used, they become crenated, if the solution is *hypotonic, i e*, has a smaller osmotic pressure than the material within the cell-wall, and if red corpuscles are used they swell and burst *Isotonic* solutions, such as physiological or normal salt solution, produce neither of these effects, because they have the same osmotic pressure as the material within the cell-wall Isomotic solutions may or may not be isotonic, depending on their nature

The Nature of Osmotic Pressure —The following simple explanation is perhaps the best, and may be rendered most intelligible by an example Suppose we have a solution of sugar separated by a semi-permeable membrane from water, that is, the membrane is permeable to water molecules, but not to sugar molecules The streams of water from the two sides will then be unequal, on one side we have water molecules striking against the membrane in what we may call normal numbers, while on the other side both water molecules and sugar molecules are striking against it On this side, therefore, the sugar molecules take up a certain amount of room, and do not allow the water molecules to get to the membrane, the membrane is, as it were, screened against the water by the sugar, therefore fewer water molecules will get through from the screened to the unscreened side than *vice versa* This comes to the same thing as saying that the osmotic stream of water is greater from the unscreened water side to the screened sugar side than it is in the reverse direction The more sugar molecules that are present, the greater will be their screening action, and thus we see that the osmotic pressure is proportional to the number of sugar molecules in the solution, that is, to the concentration of the solution

Osmotic pressure is, in fact, equal to that which the dissolved substance would exert if it occupied the same space in the form of a gas (Van't Hoff's hypothesis) The nature of the substance makes no difference, it is only the number of molecules which causes osmotic pressure to vary The osmotic pressure, however, of substances like sodium chloride, which are electrolytes, is greater than what one

would expect from the number of molecules present This is because the molecules in solution are split into their constituent ions, and an ion plays the same part as a molecule, in questions of osmotic pressure In dilute solutions of sodium chloride ionization is more complete, and as the total number of ions is then nearly double the number of original molecules, the osmotic pressure is nearly double what would have been calculated from the number of molecules

The analogy between osmotic pressure and the pressure of gases is very complete, as may be seen from the following statements —

1 At a constant temperature osmotic pressure is proportional to the concentration of the solution (Boyle-Mariotte's law for gases)

2 With constant concentration, the osmotic pressure rises with and is proportional to the temperature (Gay-Lussac's law for gases)

3 The osmotic pressure of a solution of different substances is equal to the sum of the pressures which the individual substances would exert if they were alone in the solution (Henry-Dalton law for partial pressure of gases)

4 The osmotic pressure is independent of the nature of the substance in solution, and depends only on the number of molecules or ions in solution (Avogadro's law for gases)

Filtration—Fluids may also pass through membranes in virtue of a mechanical or hydrostatic difference in pressure on the two sides The membrane leaks, as it were, but only the substances in solution pass through This occurs in the case of ordinary filtration through a piece of blotting-paper It is, however, important to note that the concentration of the filtrate is the same as that of the true solution before filtration

Physiological Applications—It will at once be seen how important all these considerations are from the physiological standpoint In the body we have aqueous solutions of various substances separated from one another by membranes Thus there are the endothelial walls of the capillaries separating the blood from the lymph, the epithelial walls of the kidney tubules separating the blood and lymph from the urine, and similar epithelium in all secreting glands, there is also the wall of the alimentary canal separating the digested food from the blood-vessels and lacteals In such important problems, then, as lymph-formation, the formation of urine and other excretions and secretions, and absorption of food, we have to take into account the laws which regulate the movements both of water and of substances which are held in solution by the water In the body osmosis and filtration both take place Further complicating these two processes there is another force, namely, the secretory or selective activity of the living cells of which membranes are composed This is sometimes called by the name **vital action**, which is an unsatisfactory and unscientific expression The laws which regulate filtration, imbibition, and osmosis are fairly well known and can be experimentally verified But we have undoubtedly some other force, or some other manifestation of force, in living membranes It probably is some physical or chemical property of living matter which has not yet been brought into line with the known chemical and physical forces which operate in the

inorganic world We cannot deny its existence, for it sometimes operates so as to neutralise the known forces of osmosis and filtration

The more one studies the questions of lymph-formation and glandular secretion, the more it is evident that mere osmosis and filtration will not explain them entirely The basis of the action is no doubt physical, but the living cells do not behave like the dead membrane of a dialyser, they have a selective action, picking out some substances and passing them through, while rejecting others This is in part, but not wholly, due to the fact that the **permeability** is greater to some ions than to others The subject has been extensively investigated by Hamburger

The cell has no real choice in what shall pass through and what be kept back It has been found that different ions modify in various ways the normal permeability The electric charge of the ions must be an important factor in determining the passage of substances through the cell and its plasmatic membrane This permeability may become altered in diseased conditions by an upset of the normal relationships of the ions, hence cellular activity becomes abnormal Electric charge, moreover, is only one factor, molecular size in passing the sieve-like membrane is another, solution affinities, surface tension, etc, are still others

These considerations may be exemplified by what is known in relation to the permeability of cells to glucose This sugar is always present in the blood in health, but is wholly contained in the plasma, the corpuscles are stated to be impermeable to this variety of sugar In diabetes they become permeable (*See* also Secretion and Absorption)

The theory of diffusion of dissolved substances through membranes as applied to cells has been profoundly influenced by the discovery of the composition of the cell-wall. At one time it was believed that diffusion of a colloid material was prevented by the pores of the membrane being too small to allow large molecules to get through them, it was thought to act as a sort of sieve But this cannot be the whole explanation, and it is now held that *solution affinities* play a most important part, that is to say, a membrane is permeable to substances which are soluble in the material of the membrane Such solubility may imply the formation of actual chemical unions, or more frequently the process is one of adsorption (see below), this latter process comes specially into play when nutritive materials are assimilated by the cell by means of the protein solution which occupies the interstices between the fat molecules of the membrane On the other hand, the permeability by substances such as alcohol, chloroform, and ether, is mainly determined by the solubility of these materials in the fatty or fat-like components of the membrane, and this consideration is the foundation of the Meyer-Overton theory

of the narcotic effect on cells which these volatile anæsthetics exercise

The process of absorption depends largely, but not entirely, on physical principles Distilled water and readily diffusible substances readily pass through into the blood and lymph, but if hypertonic saline is introduced into the intestine, water passes from the blood to the intestine This is the action of a purgative, especially the sulphates, which are not so readily absorbed as chlorides Curiously, however, as Waymouth Reid has shown, if the living epithelium of the intestine is removed, absorption comes very nearly to a standstill, although from the purely physical standpoint removal of the thick columnar epithelium would increase the facilities for osmosis and filtration

The osmotic pressure exerted by crystalloids is very considerable, but their ready diffusibility limits their influence on the flow of water in the body Thus if a strong solution of salt is injected into the blood, the first effect will be the setting up of an osmotic stream from the tissues to the blood The salt, however, would soon diffuse out into the tissues, and would now exert osmotic pressure in the opposite direction Moreover, both effects will be but temporary, because excess of salt is soon got rid of by the excretory organs

Osmotic Pressure of Proteins —The osmotic pressure of proteins is of special importance in relation to the blood, where they have been shown by Starling to exert a pressure of 30 mm of mercury By means of this pressure it is possible to explain the fact that an isotonic or even a hypertonic solution of a diffusible crystalloid may be completely absorbed from the peritoneal cavity into the blood The pressure observed may be due to saline materials from which it is difficult to separate proteins *

The functional activity of the tissue elements is accompanied by the breaking down of their protein constituents into such simple materials as urea (and its precursors), sulphates and phosphates These materials pass into the lymph, and increase its molecular concentration and its osmotic pressure, thus water is attracted (to use the older way of putting it) from the blood to the lymph, and so the volume of the lymph rises and its flow increases On the other hand, as these substances accumulate in the lymph they will in time attain there a greater concentration than in the blood, and so they will diffuse towards the blood, by which they are carried to the organs of excretion

But, again, we have a difficulty with the proteins they are most

* Bayliss has shown that the saline constituents found in a native protein are not mechanically mixed with it, and are also not in true chemical combination with it, but are in a condition intermediate between these two extremes, to which the term *adsorption* is applied Many dyes used for staining fabrics and histological preparations are also adsorbed

important for the nutrition of the tissues, but they are practically indiffusible We must therefore assume that their presence in the lymph is due somehow to filtration from the blood

It is the osmotic pressure of the protein which is chiefly responsible for preventing the fluid of the blood from leaving the blood-vessels

In the capillaries we have a balance of pressure on the one hand we have the pressure of the blood, together with the osmotic pressure of the tissue fluids, tending to drive fluid from the vessels, while, on the other hand, this is counteracted by the osmotic pressure of the blood which is exerted by the salts and proteins The balance is, however, a very delicate one, since an increase of capillary pressure causes fluid to pass into the tissues (*œdema*)—and hence it is that our feet are slightly larger at the end of the day On the other hand, when the capillary pressure falls, as in hæmorrhage, fluid passes from the tissues into the blood In kidney disease, when much protein, especially serum albumin, which has a smaller molecule and higher osmotic pressure than serum globulin, is lost in the urine, œdema is apt to occur, and is in part due to loss of colloid

The Law of Mass Action—This law is of fundamental importance in relation to the processes which break down substances in digestion and subsequently cause the products to be built up into the tissues of the body The law states that the rate at which a reaction takes place is proportional to the mass of the reagents in a certain volume, or, more accurately, to the concentration of the active masses of the reagents (Bayliss) Thus in a reversible reaction the extent to which either will proceed will similarly depend on the concentration of the reagents on either side In the equation

$$\underset{\text{[Ethyl alcohol]}}{C_2H_5OH} + \underset{\text{[Acetic acid]}}{CH_3\ COOH} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{[Ethyl acetate]}}{CH_3\ COO\ C_2H_5} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O}$$

the extent to which alcohol and acetic acid will be formed, *i e* the *equilibrium-point*, in such a hydrolysis will depend on the concentration of water, and of the other reacting constituents (See pp 340-41)

In a test-tube, therefore, the hydrolysis of a starch or of a protein by an enzyme is not quite complete, some of the substances always remaining unchanged

In the body, however, some of the substances produced are removed from the sphere of reaction In the digestion of starch, for example, the soluble sugar formed becomes absorbed and no longer interferes with the continuance of the reaction

Similarly, in the blood and tissues one of the substances, the glycogen, is also removed from the sphere of reaction and the synthesis can, therefore, proceed It is not yet quite clear how

some of the substances are actually removed fiom the sphere of the reaction, but that such a process does take place seems toleiably certain

Reaction Velocity —Most reactions in Inorganic Chemistry take place between electrolytes—substances which are good conductors of the electric current. These may be considered as reactions between ions, and *Ionic Reactions* occur at such enormous velocity as to be practically instantaneous Ionic reactions take place between the inorganic constituents of living cells, but such reactions occurring as they do in a colloidal medium are somewhat slowed down, but even so are completed in an immeasurably short time The most important substances (fats, carbohydrates, proteins) in living tissues, are, however, not electrolytes, and reactions between them are spoken of as *molecular reactions*, and occur so slowly that it is possible to ascertain the rate at which they take place *Reaction Velocity* is defined as the quantity of the substance transformed, measured in gramme-molecules per litre, which disappears in the unit of time (one minute) When starch is transformed into sugar, or protein into amino-acids, there is only one substance transformed, and such reactions which compose the majority of the reactions in living cells are called *unimolecular reactions*, or reactions of the first order When, for instance, starch is changed into sugar by the action of an acid, it is the starch alone which is altered, the acidity undergoes no diminution Similarly when the change is brought about by an enzyme, the starch only is changed, the enzyme is still present in its original quantity Reaction velocity is thus of special importance in a study of the changes produced by enzymes, and these are the most frequent of all changes in living structures

Since the quantity of the substance acted upon is continually diminishing, the velocity of the reaction cannot remain the same throughout, but must diminish in a certain ratio Suppose 20 parts out of 100 are transformed in the first minute, there will be only 80 parts remaining at the commencement of the second minute —

$$100 - \frac{100}{5} = 80$$

Similarly at the commencement of the third minute we have only 64 left, 16 having disappeared —

$$80 - \frac{80}{5} = 64$$

In the fourth minute, 12 8 disappears and 51 2 is left —

$$64 - \frac{64}{5} = 51\ 2,$$

and so on

In order to express this in general terms, we may label the original concentration 100 by the symbol C_0, and for 80, 64, 51 2, etc , use the terms C_1, C_2, C_3, etc C_t The constant figure in the above example is $\frac{1}{5}$ or 0 2 This may be represented by k The equations then run —

$$C_0 - C_0k = C_1, \text{ or } C_0(1-k) = C_1$$

Further $$C_0(1-k) - [C_0(1-k) \times k] = C_2,$$

or $$C_0(1-k)^2 = C_2$$

Further $$C_0(1-k)^3 = C_3$$

Finally $$C_0(1-k)_t = C$$

If this is plotted out in the form of a curve, we obtain the curve known as a logarithmic curve

In other cases we find that the reaction velocity is not directly proportional to the quantity of reacting substances, but to the square of this quantity In all such cases, two substances are simultaneously changed in their concentration Such a process takes place in the decomposition of esters (compounds of organic acids and alcohols), under the influence of an alkali, here not only is the amount of

ester becoming less, but the alkali is also used up in the formation of salts of the organic acid Such reactions are called *bimolecular reactions*, or reactions of the second order Certain reactions in living cells are of this order, but reactions of higher orders still are not as yet known in living cells

Surface Tension—The surface layer of a liquid possesses certain properties which are not shared by the rest of it, for in the interior the arrangement of matter is symmetrical round any point, whereas on the surface the surroundings consist of liquid on one side only, while on the other side is solid, or gas, or it may be another liquid In a gas, the molecules are free from one another's attractive influence and fly about freely with high velocity, producing pressure on the walls of the containing vessel, in a liquid, the mutual attractions of the molecules are great enough to keep the substance together in a definite volume, in order to separate the molecules and convert the liquid into gas a large amount of energy is required—the so-called latent heat of evaporation The molecular attractions in a liquid are thus very great, so that a molecule of the surface layer is pulled strongly inwards, and this layer constitutes a stretched elastic skin, and the power thus exerted is spoken of as *surface tension* The effect of surface tension is most simply seen in a free drop of liquid, such as a rain-drop, or a drop of oil immersed in a mixture of alcohol and water of the same density There is then nothing to prevent the tension in the surface layer from contracting as much as possible, and the drop will therefore assume a form in which its volume will have the smallest surface, that is, the drop will assume the form of a sphere

Now animal cells are liquid, and when they are at rest, other forces being absent, they also are spherical, and although they do not possess, as a rule, a definite wall of cellulose or other hard substance such as vegetable cells have, nevertheless the surface film, exercising the force called surface tension, plays the part of an elastic skin, and is termed the *plasmatic membrane* This membrane plays an important physiological rôle In the projection of pseudopodia, for instance, variations in the surface tension must occur in different parts of the periphery of the cell Protoplasm, however, is not a simple liquid, but contains substances of varying chemical composition, and substances which have the power of diminishing surface tension always show a tendency to accumulate at the surface Hence the fats and lipides which are powerful depressants of surface tension are found, probably in a state of an extremely fine emulsion, more abundantly in the plasmatic membrane than elsewhere in the cell

Adsorption—From what has been said above it is evident that "any substance in solution in a liquid in contact with a surface will be concentrated in that surface" This process is called adsorption

The power of charcoal to take up gases or dyes is due to the large surface it presents For a similar reason the amount of congo-red which a filter-paper will take up is relatively *greater* the more dilute the solution of the dye We shall see that this concentration at surfaces is important in digestion by enzymes which are colloids and have therefore an extremely large surface and in which dilute acids and alkalis may be looked upon as becoming concentrated and having therefore the activity of strong solutions

Colloidal Solutions—The study of colloids is important, seeing how many important physiological substances belong to this class, for instance, the proteins, and polysaccharides Their main characters are, that they do not pass a parchment membrane (p 327), their solutions are opalescent, they crystallise with difficulty if at all, they have a tendency to form jellies (*e g*, gelatin), or to coagulate under the influence of heat and other agents (as is the case with most proteins), and they exert a low osmotic pressure Inorganic substances (*e g*, several metals, and compounds such as silicic acid) may also assume a colloidal condition, these are in an unstable physical condition, passing from the "sol" (or fluid) to the "gel" (or jelly-like) condition under slight provocation This confers upon them their power to act as *catalysts*

The solutions formed by colloidal materials are not true solutions They are really suspensions of very minute particles The particles, though ordinarily invisible, will nevertheless scatter light, just as minute dust particles in the air are lit up by a beam of sunlight (Tyndall phenomenon) If a beam of light is passed through a colloidal solution the particles may be seen by means of a microscope This is the principle of the ultra-microscope

Reaction of Fluids—Although this important subject is really part of physical chemistry, it is more conveniently considered in connection with the maintenance of body reaction as a whole in a later chapter

Enzymes.

The word **fermentation** was first applied to the change of sugar into alcohol and carbonic acid by means of yeast The evolution of carbonic acid causes frothing and bubbling, hence the term "fermentation" The agent, yeast, which produces this, was called the ferment Microscopic investigation shows that yeast is composed of minute rapidly-growing unicellular organisms belonging to the fungus group

The souring of milk, the transformation of urea into ammonium carbonate in decomposing urine, and the formation of vinegar from alcohol are also brought about by organisms The complex changes known as putrefaction, which are produced by the various forms of bacteria (see fig 155), also come into the same category

That the change or fermentation is produced by these organisms is shown by the fact that it occurs only when the organisms are present, and stops when they are removed or killed by a high temperature or by antiseptics (carbolic acid, etc)

The discovery of the nature of fermentation by Pasteur eventually led to the discovery of the nature of infection by Lister and made modern surgery possible The transference of the bacteria or their spores from one person to another and their growth therein constitutes infection

All these micro-organisms require moisture in which to act They act best at a temperature of about 40° C Their activity is stopped, but the organisms are not destroyed, by cold The organisms are, however, like other living cells, killed by too great heat Some

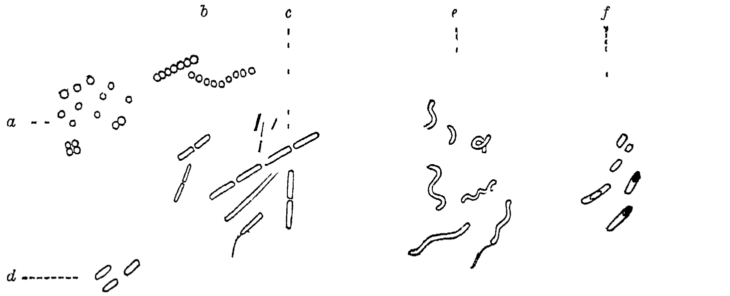


FIG 155 —Types of micro organisms *a*, micrococci arranged singly, in twos, diplococci—if all the micrococci at *a* were grouped together in one plane, they would be called staphylococci, or in cubical masses, sarcinæ, *b*, micrococci in chains, streptococci, *c* and *d*, bacilli of various kinds (one is represented with a flagellum), *e*, various forms of spirilla, *f*, spores, either free or in bacilli

micro-organisms act without free oxygen, these are called *anaerobic*, those that require oxygen are called *aerobic*

Another well-known fact concerning micro-organisms is that the substances they produce in time put a stop to their activity, thus in yeast, the alcohol produced, and in bacteria acting on proteins, the phenol, cresol, etc, produced, first stop the growth of, and ultimately kill, these organisms

For a long time it was uncertain how micro-organisms were able to effect these chemical transformations It is now, however, definitely proved that they do so by producing agents of a chemical nature, which are called *enzymes* This was first demonstrated in connection with the invertase of yeast cells, and with the enzyme secreted by the micrococcus ureæ, which converts urea into ammonium carbonate in putrefying urine For a long time, however, efforts to obtain from yeast cells an enzyme capable of bringing about the alcoholic fermentation were unsuccessful This is because the enzyme does not leave the yeast cells, but acts intracellularly

Buchner, by crushing the yeast cells, succeeded in obtaining from them the long-sought enzyme (*zymase*), since then other enzymes have been obtained from other micro-organisms by similar means

Enzymes are also formed by the cells of the higher organisms, both in animal and vegetable life Familiar instances of these are *ptyalin*, the starch-splitting enzyme of saliva, and *pepsin*, the protein-splitting enzyme of gastric juice The substance upon which the enzyme acts is spoken of as the *substrate*

We may, therefore, place these essential facts concerning enzyme action in the following tabular way —

The living cell	The enzyme produced	The substrate	The products of action
The yeast cell	Zymase	Glucose	Alcohol and carbon dioxide
The salivary cell	Ptyalin	Starch	Dextrins and maltose
The gastric cell	Pepsin	Protein	Proteoses and peptones

The enzymes which bring about the digestion of food in the alimentary canal may be classified as follows —

Amylolytic or Amyloclastic — those which convert polysaccharides (starch, glycogen) into sugar with intermediate dextrins Examples the *diastase* of vegetable seeds, and the *ptyalin* of saliva

Disaccharases—those which convert disaccharides into monosaccharides—*e g* *Invertase* of yeast cells, *invertase* of intestinal juice, these convert sucrose into equal parts of glucose and fructose, maltase and lactase acting on maltose and lactose respectively

Lipolytic or Lipoclastic — those which split fat into fatty acids and glycerol—*e g* *lipase*, is found in pancreatic juice

Proteolytic or Proteoclastic—those which split proteins into proteoses, peptones, polypeptides, and finally amino-acids Examples the *pepsin* of gastric, and the *trypsin* of pancreatic juice

Peptolytic or Peptoclastic—those which split proteoses and peptones into polypeptides and amino-acids, *e g*, the *erepsin* of intestinal juice

The enzymes in the foregoing list produce hydrolysis, that is, water is added to the substrate, which then splits into simpler molecules, as for instance in the inversion of sucrose by invertase

$$\underset{\text{[Sucrose]}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O} = \underset{\text{[Glucose]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + \underset{\text{[Fructose]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6}$$

But in addition to the digestive enzymes there are others to be mentioned, for instance —

Coagulative enzymes — those which convert soluble into insoluble proteins, the best example of this class is *Rennet* or *rennin*, found in the gastric juice, it converts the soluble caseinogenate of milk into casein This is the substance used by cooks to make curds and whey

Oxidases—these are not hydrolytic, but are oxygen carriers and produce oxidation they are mainly found as intracellular enzymes, and are important in tissue respiration

Reductases—these are the counterpart of the oxidases, and produce reduction in the tissues

Deaminases — these remove the amino-group from amino-compounds

Intracellular or Autolytic Enzymes—These come into play during cell life, and are important in the metabolic or intracellular chemical changes which occur in protoplasm, they also may be subdivided into proteoclastic, peptoclastic, lipoclastic, etc, according to the substrate upon which they act After death their activity continues, and so they produce self-digestion or *autolysis* of the cells in which they are situated, if the tissue or organ is kept at an appropriate temperature and under aseptic conditions

The foregoing list is not by any means complete, but includes the most important The individual enzymes will be studied in due course, but for the present we will take general considerations only

Characteristics of Enzyme Action

Zymogens—These are the parent substances or precursors of the enzymes The granules seen in many secreting cells consist very largely of zymogen, which in the act of secretion is converted into the active enzyme Thus, pepsin is formed from pepsinogen, trypsin from trypsinogen, and so forth

Activation of Enzymes Co-enzymes—Many enzymes contained in secretions are in a condition ready for action In other cases this is not so, and their action occurs only after they have been rendered energetic by the presence or action of other substances, termed activating agents or co-enzymes

The Specificity of Enzyme Action—In most cases the action of an enzyme is extraordinarily limited, thus there are three separate enzymes to hydrolyse the three principal disaccharides, sucrose, lactose, and maltose, neither of which will act upon either of the other two sugars in the list Arginase splits arginine into ornithine

and urea, but will act upon no other substance The "lock and key" simile first introduced by Emil Fischer will aid us in understanding this specificity of action Each lock must have its special key so the chemical configuration of an enzyme must be related in some way to the configuration of the substrate to enable it to enter and unlock its parts from one another

The Inexhaustibility of Enzymes—A small amount of enzyme will act on an unlimited amount of substrate, provided sufficient time is given, and provided also the products of action are removed The enzyme appears to take a share in intermediate reactions, and there is some evidence that in certain stages it combines with the substrate, but subsequently when the substrate breaks up into simpler materials, the enzyme is liberated unchanged, and so ready to act similarly on a fresh amount of substrate

The simpler logarithmic law of enzyme action has been demonstrated for the majority of enzymes (invertase, trypsin, erepsin, lipase, etc) The effect in a given time is proportional to the quantity of enzyme present (See more fully Reaction Velocity, p 335)

The Optimum Temperature of Enzyme Action—As the temperature rises the velocity of the action increases, until a temperature is reached at which the activity is greatest Most enzymes act best at 40° C, but there are exceptions, malt diastase, for instance, acts best at 60° C Beyond the optimum temperature a further rise inhibits activity, until a temperature is reached when the enzyme is destroyed The fatal temperature as a rule is in the neighbourhood of 50° C

This statement, however, requires some modification, as whether or not an enzyme is destroyed by a given temperature depends on the reaction of the medium in which it is It is possible to boil trypsin in an acid medium (Mellanby) in which, however, it is inactive, but it is readily destroyed in an alkaline medium

The effect of a rise of temperature is complex, and is of a twofold nature In the first place, and between certain limits, the law of Arrhenius is followed, that is, a rise of 10° doubles or even trebles the velocity of the action of the enzyme, as it does other chemical reactions But as the temperature rises the velocity of disintegration of the enzyme also rises The optimum temperature is that at which the enzyme work is best done, this is a temperature at which the accelerating effect is at its maximum, and the retarding effect due to enzyme destruction is not so great as to neutralise the accelerating effect

Optimum Reaction of Enzyme Activity—Some enzymes act best in an acid, others in an alkaline medium For each there is an optimum hydrogen-ion concentration

Reversibility of Enzyme Action—On p 335 we have considered the general laws of molecular reactions The majority of enzyme reactions are unimolecular, or reactions of the first order, that is to say, one substance only, the substrate, undergoes transformation, the other substance, the enzyme, does not alter in concentration The law followed in such reactions is therefore the simple logarithmic law But in these transformations we meet with the peculiarity that the reaction is not quite complete A certain quantity of the substrate never disappears Thus a small amount of sucrose remains unchanged whether the hydrolysis is brought about by the action of an acid or of an enzyme This phenomenon is due to the fact that two reactions are always taking place in opposite directions Simultaneously with the splitting up, the synthetic reaction begins, and synthesis or building up increases in proportion as the splitting of the compound advances The velocity of the splitting process decreases at the same rate as the velocity of the synthetic process increases At a certain point, both have the same velocity, and therefore no further change occurs in the mixture when this condition of equilibrium is reached This rule is expressed by writing the chemical equation connected by a double arrow instead of the sign of equation Two examples follow —

$$\underset{\text{[Ethyl alcohol]}}{C_2H_5\ OH} + \underset{\text{[Acetic acid]}}{CH_3\ COOH} \rightleftarrows \underset{\text{[Ethyl acetate]}}{C_2H_5\ COO\ CH_3} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O}$$

$$\underset{\text{[Glucose]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + \underset{\text{[Fructose]}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} \rightleftarrows \underset{\text{[Sucrose]}}{C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O}$$

This phenomenon is termed "*reversibility*," and was first demonstrated by Croft Hill in his experiments with sucrose and invertase

In intracellular action this is a factor of importance, for the same enzyme in the presence of different proportions of the substrate and its cleavage products can both build up and break down the same substance

It should further be noted that hydrolytic actions are *isothermic*, that is, the total energy of the products is equal to that of the substance broken up

Anti-enzymes—Many chemical substances, such as strong acids and alkalis, alcohol, formaldehyde, iodine, potassium cyanide, and salts of the heavy metals, hinder enzyme activity But the term anti-enzyme is generally limited to substances produced in the metabolism of living organisms Excess of these organic anti-enzymes can be readily produced by injecting an enzyme into the blood-stream of an animal This stimulates the production of an anti-enzyme, so that when the blood-serum is mixed with the original enzyme, its power is inhibited Anti-enzymes are specific, that is,

they inhibit the enzyme which was injected into the blood, and no other

Nature of Enzyme Action—The analogy of enzyme action is, in fact, so close to that of inorganic catalysts, that the view at present current regarding it is that the *action is a catalytic one* That is to say, the presence of the enzyme induces a chemical reaction to occur rapidly, which in its absence also occurs, but so slowly that any action at all is difficult to discover To use the technical phrase, its action is to increase the *velocity* of chemical reactions It is, for instance, quite conceivable that, if starch and water are mixed together, the starch will in time take up the water and split into its constituent molecules of sugar But an action of this kind would be so slow, occupying perchance many years, that for practical purposes it does not take place at all If an inorganic catalyst is added, such as sulphuric acid, and the temperature raised to boiling-point, the action takes place in a few minutes, if an organic catalyst, such as the enzyme ptyalin, is added, the velocity of the change is even greater, but, what is of more importance for the well-being of the animal, a moderate temperature, namely that of the body, amply suffices The organic catalysts or enzymes are, however, colloidal in nature (possibly protein), and this explains their destructibility by high temperatures

Various theories have been brought forward to account for this catalytic action but a detailed study of the reactions, especially of their velocity, suggests that the enzymes form adsorption compounds with the substances they act upon and that somehow this facilitates the final reaction It may be that by being colloids the enzymes somehow assist the substrate to present a very large surface on which become adsorbed the reacting agents

The methods of studying the activity of enzymes are dealt with in relation to the digestive enzymes on p 471

CHAPTER XXII

THE BLOOD

THE blood is the fluid medium by means of which all the tissues of the body are directly or indirectly nourished; by means of it also such of the materials resulting from the metabolism of the tissues which are of no further use are carried to the excretory organs. It is a somewhat viscid fluid, and in man and in all other vertebrate animals, with the exception of two,* is red in colour. It consists of a yellowish fluid, called **plasma** or **liquor sanguinis**, in which are suspended numerous **blood-corpuscles**, the majority of which are coloured, and it is to their presence that the red colour of the blood is due.

Even when examined in very thin layers, blood is *opaque*, on account of the different refractive powers possessed by its two constituents, the plasma and the corpuscles. On treatment with ether, water, and other reagents, however, it becomes transparent and assumes a lake colour, in consequence of the colouring matter of the corpuscles having been discharged into the plasma. The average *specific gravity* of blood at 15° C. (60° F.) varies from 1055 to 1062. A rapid and useful method of estimating the specific gravity of blood was invented by Roy. Drops of blood are taken and allowed to fall into fluids of known specific gravity. When the drop neither rises nor sinks in the fluid it is taken to be of the same specific gravity as that of the standard fluid. In Hammerschlag's method the drop is placed in a mixture of chloroform and benzene; more chloroform or benzene is added until the drop neither falls nor sinks, *i.e.* until the mixture has the same specific gravity as the blood; the specific gravity of the mixture is then taken. The *taste* is saltish. Its *temperature* varies slightly, the average being 37.8° C. (100° F.). The blood-stream is warmed by passing through the muscles and glands, but it is somewhat cooled on traversing the capillaries of the skin. Recently-drawn blood has a distinct *odour*, which in many cases is characteristic of the animal from which it has been taken; it may be further developed by adding to blood a mixture of equal parts of sulphuric acid and water. The *reaction* of the blood is faintly alkaline and is dealt with in a later chapter.

* The *amphioxus* and the *leptocephalus*.

Quantity of the Blood —The quantity of blood in an animal may be estimated in the following manner —A small quantity of blood is taken from an animal by venesection, it is defibrinated and measured, and used to make standard solutions of blood The animal is then rapidly bled to death, and the blood which escapes is collected and defibrinated by whipping The blood-vessels are next washed out with saline solution until the washings are no longer coloured, and these are added to the previously withdrawn blood, lastly, the whole animal is finely minced with saline solution The fluid obtained from the mincings is carefully filtered and added to the diluted blood previously obtained, and the whole is measured The next step in the process is the comparison of the colour of the diluted blood with that of standard solutions of blood and water of a known strength, until it is discovered to what standard solution the diluted blood corresponds As the amount of blood in the corresponding standard solution is known, as well as the total quantity of diluted blood obtained from the animal, it is easy to calculate the absolute amount of blood which the latter contained, and to this is added the small amount which was withdrawn to make the standard solutions This gives the total amount of blood which the animal contained The result of experiments performed in this way showed that the quantity of blood in various animals differs a good deal, but in the dog averages $\frac{1}{12}$ to $\frac{1}{14}$ of the total body-weight In smaller animals the proportionate blood volume is greater

In a few instances this method has been applied to decapitated criminals, in one such case (Schwann and E Weber) the blood was $\frac{1}{8}$ of the body-weight, and in another (Bischoff) the fraction was $\frac{1}{14}$, that is, approximately the same as in dogs In the first case the large volume of blood was possibly due to disease For the estimation of blood volume **in man** during life it is evident that other methods are necessary These methods consist in adding a known amount of an easily recognisable substance to the circulating blood, and after thorough admixture a small known quantity of blood is withdrawn, and the substance estimated in it Then by calculation, the total quantity of blood capable of holding all the foreign matter introduced is calculated Haldane and Lorrain Smith used carbon monoxide for this purpose, and estimated its compound with hæmoglobin by a colorimetric method In the normal body their average figure that the blood is only $\frac{1}{20}$ of the body-weight is much lower than is the case in the dog and in the criminals just mentioned In an average man the amount is then about **5 litres**, but this may be increased as in anæmia or at high altitudes The method, however, is one which involves colour judgment, and therefore is one in which error may easily

arise A small error in a few drops of blood may become a big one when reckoned for the whole blood A more recent method is that of de Crinis, who injects into the blood-stream a known amount of salt solution By estimating the serum proteins in samples collected before and after the injection, the total blood volume is calculated by a simple formula, and the mean result indicates that it is $\frac{1}{15}$ of the body-weight Some observers have used "vital-red," a dye which is not poisonous, and stains only the plasma, after centrifuging, the depth of staining is estimated colorimetrically

Coagulation of the Blood

Blood possesses two remarkable properties It remains fluid in the blood-vessels throughout life, but rapidly becomes solid when shed Both qualities are essential for the preservation of life The maintenance of fluidity is necessary for the circulation of the blood, whilst the solidification of the shed blood provides an indispensable defence against excessive bleeding from wounds

The coagulation of the blood is due to the formation of a jelly by the deposition of protein material called **fibrin**, and it is the formation of this body that is the fundamental change in blood clotting When a film of almost freshly shed blood is examined under the microscope, a network of gelatinous threads or filaments of fibrin is seen, many of the threads radiating from clumps of disintegrating blood-platelets Entangled in this mesh are both erythrocytes and leucocytes, the preponderance of the former corpuscles giving a clot of blood its characteristic red colour The ultramicroscope reveals how the threads are built up Minute granules first appear These coalesce, forming needles resembling crystals which join up end to end and form the threads mentioned above Soon, however, the whole mass contracts, its intimate structure becomes indistinguishable, and a straw-coloured liquid called **serum** is squeezed out of the clot Blood plasma which has been deprived of leucocytes and erythrocytes clots as readily as whole blood The presence of these corpuscles is, therefore, not necessary for blood coagulation, although their debris contains substances which may participate in clotting

The **rôle of platelets** in blood clotting has been the subject of controversy Some writers have thought that they are essential for coagulation, others have denied their importance Recent researches indicate, however, that the platelets are normally important participants in blood clotting, but they are not always essential for that process The removal of blood-platelets from the shed blood of fasting animals by passing it through a clay filter may completely

suppress the capacity of the plasma to clot spontaneously at room temperatures, but clotting may occur after prolonged shaking or when the plasma is kept for several days at 38° C in sterile tubes The addition of disintegrating platelets, or extracts of them, to deplateletised plasma rapidly produces coagulation, the speed of clotting being proportional to the amount of material added Blood shed during the height of digestion behaves differently It clots as rapidly as whole blood after the complete removal of the platelets

Moreover, all the substances requisite for blood clotting can be extracted from plasma which has been deprived of all its corpuscles It appears, then, that the plasma contains all the participants in blood clotting, but in fasting animals, and possibly when digestion is nearly inactive, the presence of platelets is necessary for a speed of coagulation sufficiently rapid for the provision of a defence against loss of blood

Many factors modify the coagulability of the blood The most favourable temperature for its clotting is close to that of the body This quality facilitates the arrest of internal hæmorrhage by blood coagulation Coagulation is inaugurated or hastened by —

(1) Contact of the blood with any surface which it wets
(2) Agitation, which brings such contact more rapidly into play For example, the whipping of blood with a bundle of twigs is commonly used in obtaining fibrin from blood But the stirring of blood with an oiled rod (which is not wetted by blood) may not hasten coagulation
(3) Fresh serum and blood clots contain a very active coagulant called **thrombin** or **thrombase**, which rapidly provokes clotting in shed blood, but large quantities of thrombin can be introduced into the circulation without causing intravascular clotting
(4) The rapid intravascular injection of most tissue extracts produces clotting in the blood-vessels, but the slow injection of such bodies or the injection of minute quantities of them suppresses the clotting of blood—(the "negative phase" of coagulation)

The coagulation of shed blood is retarded by —

(1) Complete contact with bodies not wetted by blood
(2) Cooling the blood in a vessel surrounded by ice, the blood remains fluid for two hours or longer
(3) Dilution with great excess of water (20 to 40 volumes)
(4) The addition of appropriate amounts of salts, such as sodium sulphate, magnesium sulphate, or sodium bicarbonate

(5) The addition of soluble oxalate, citrate or fluoride
(6) The addition of various anticoagulants, such as leech extract, various products of autolysis, called antithrombins because they neutralise the coagulant action of thrombin, a substance extracted from the liver named heparin, which restrains the formation of thrombin, and relatively large amounts of commercial peptone

It is easy to enumerate agencies which alter the coagulability of the blood, but a complete explanation of their action awaits the full understanding of the maintenance of the fluidity of circulating blood and its clotting when shed Many different interpretations of the latter phenomena have been offered, some of which are almost irreconcilable one with another But certain conclusions are almost generally accepted

(1) A precursor of fibrin (fibrinogen) exists in circulating blood
(2) Thrombin or thrombase does not normally exist in circulating blood, but is soon formed whenever the blood is shed upon any surface which it wets
(3) Calcium ions are essential for the formation of thrombin
(4) Thrombin causes fibrinogen to form fibrin and so forms blood clots

The chief subjects of controversy are —

(1) The nature of the factors which preserve the fluidity of the blood *in vivo*
(2) The mode of formation of thrombin and its manner of action on fibrinogen

Howell believes that the mother substance of thrombin (prothrombin) exists in plasma, but is kept inactive by an anticoagulant called heparin, formed in the liver When blood is shed, both platelets and damaged tissues liberate a compound of cephalin which neutralises the heparin and permits the activation of prothrombin by calcium ions alone, without the intervention of any other body Thrombin is so formed, and by union with fibrinogen forms fibrin There is no doubt that the fluidity of normal blood is due to conditions which are unfavourable to the production of thrombin, but there are difficulties in the acceptance of Howell's teaching For example, the intravascular injection of heparin, although it first produces incoagulable blood, is followed by an increase in the coagulability of the blood

Pickering considers that fibrinogen and prothrombin (or pro-

thrombase) are united with the more stable fractions of blood plasma (serum globulin and albumin) and are thus shielded from the disruptive action of calcium ions which is essential for the inception of blood clotting The complex of plasma colloids possesses only a limited capacity for resistance It breaks down immediately the blood is shed upon any surface which it wets * As soon as the fibrinogen and prothrombin are set free the changes that result in clotting commence Immediately afterwards, blood-platelets rapidly disintegrate and in normal wounding, tissue juices invade the stream of escaping blood The products so liberated, with the help of calcium ions, unite with prothrombin giving thrombin, which in turn unites with fibrinogen giving fibrin The plasma then changes from a sol to a gel, the initial steps in this change being the formation of filaments of fibrin in the manner already described In addition, coagula closely resembling fibrin are formed by the direct union of fibrinogen and tissue juices, and it is probable that this mode of coagulation proceeds simultaneously with the clotting of fibrinogen by thrombin, although Mills maintains that this mode of clotting occurs before the formation of thrombin when blood is in contact with damaged tissues Under artificial conditions, blood plasma can be altered from a sol to a gel by prolonged shaking without the intervention of the *debris* of platelets or tissue juices, and certain micro-organisms possess the power of clotting blood without the production of thrombin The reactions of shed blood after contact with wetted surfaces may for convenience be summarised thus

$$\text{Prothromb}\left\langle\begin{matrix}\text{in}\\ \text{ase}\end{matrix}\right. + \text{Calcium}$$

$$+ \text{ tissue juices and platelet debris}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\text{Thromb}\left\langle\begin{matrix}\text{in}\\ \text{ase}\end{matrix}\right. + \text{Fibrinogen}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\text{Fibrin}$$

The recent work of Mellanby has indicated that thrombase is really an enzyme and has a precursor, prothrombase, which like some other enzymes is activated by calcium Prothrombase can withstand a temperature of 100° C for five minutes

* If a large blood-vessel such as the aorta from a recently killed animal is cut open it may be demonstrated that its internal surface is not wetted by blood or water

The Plasma and Serum

When shed blood is kept fluid artificially by any one of the methods mentioned on p 350, the corpuscles gradually sink and the plasma can be removed by either a pipette or a syphon The separation of plasma and corpuscles is more rapidly effected by using a centrifugal machine A plasma, uncontaminated by anti-coagulants, can be obtained by centrifuging blood at the temperature of an ice-chest, but this plasma contains some platelets To remove the latter bodies, it is necessary to filter the plasma through a clay cell, but some of the proteins of plasma are then removed

A relatively pure plasma may be obtained from horse's veins by what is known as the "living test-tube" experiment If the jugular vein is ligatured in two places so as to include a quantity of blood in it, then removed and hung in a cool place, the blood does not clot for several hours The corpuscles settle and plasma can be removed In addition to disintegrating blood platelets, it usually contains, however, both minute clots and thrombin, and thus differs from the plasma of circulating blood Pure and unaltered plasma has not yet been obtained outside the body, but the material available by the methods described gives a fair indication of the properties of that fluid

Pericardial and hydrocele fluids closely resemble the plasma in composition Usually, they contain few or no corpuscles, and are more stable than plasma As a rule, they do not clot spontaneously, but coagulate on the addition of thrombin

The plasma is alkaline, yellowish in tint, and its specific gravity is about 1026 to 1029 1000 parts of plasma contain —

Water		902 90
Solids		
Proteins 1 yield of fibrin	4 05	97 10
2 other proteins	78 84	
Extractives (including fat)	5 66	
Inorganic salts	8 55	

In round numbers, plasma contains 10 per cent of solids, of which 8 are protein in nature

The gases of plasma and serum are small quantities of oxygen, nitrogen, and carbonic acid The greater part of the oxygen of the blood is combined in the red blood-corpuscles with hæmoglobin, the carbonic acid is largely combined as bicarbonates The gases of the blood have already been considered under Respiration

We may now study one by one the various constituents of the plasma and serum

A **Proteins** —Fractions of protein possessing different properties can be obtained from plasma by mixing it with different concentrations of neutral salts, those commonly used being ammonium

sulphate, sodium chloride, and magnesium sulphate The table on this page gives an approximate idea of the limits of precipitability by these salts

It should not, however, be assumed that these fractions of protein exist in a free condition in the plasma On the contrary recent researches indicate that the fractions of protein obtained by the salting of plasma, particularly those called globulins, are not distinct chemical units, but parts of a larger complex that is knit together in the plasma and behaves as a coherent whole The fractions possess, however, distinct properties (Sørensen, Pickering)

Table illustrating the precipitability of the principal fractions of protein which are obtainable from blood plasma that has been kept fluid by the addition of sodium oxalate

Precipitants	Fibrinogen	Euglobulin	Pseudoglobulin	Albumin
NaCl	Precipitated at nearly half saturation	Precipitated on saturation		
$(NH_4)_2, SO_4$	Precipitated on the addition of 15 to 27 per cent of a saturated solution	Precipitated on the addition of 28 to 38 per cent of a saturated solution	Precipitated on the addition of 36 to 44 per cent of a saturated solution	Precipitated on saturation
$MgSO_4$	Precipitated at nearly half saturation	Precipitated on saturation	Precipitated on saturation	

Fibrinogen—Fibrinogen exhibits the general characteristics of globulin with one important difference It is clotted by thrombin and is thus distinguished from all other fractions of plasma protein It is coagulated *in vitro* at 56° C It is so firmly bound to prothrombin that it can be separated from that body only by coagulation of fibrinogen or by prolonged adsorption Fibrinogen of the blood is probably combined with calcium and sodium When freed from salts, it is incoagulable by heat (de Waele)

Serum is the residue of plasma left after the removal of fibrinogen as fibrin by coagulating the blood Its proteins can be separated into serum globulin and albumin by salt precipitation, the globulin consists of euglobulin and pseudoglobulin The albumin can also be broken into different fractions by heat coagulation In all the vertebrates, except some fishes, *e g* the eel, three fractions are obtained by heating serum to 73°, 78° and 85° C The globulins and albumin obtained from serum exhibit the general properties

mentioned on p 309, whilst a complex of albumin and globulin possibly participates in immune reactions

Prothrombin is probably a globulin and as already mentioned is bound to fibrinogen When plasma clots it forms thrombin Prothrombin also forms thrombin when whole blood or serum is treated with an excess of alcohol. The residue left after the evaporation of the alcohol is soluble in water and possesses the properties of the thrombin obtainable from blood clots The prolonged dialysis of prothrombin also yields thrombin

B **Extractives**—These are non-nitrogenous and nitrogenous The non-nitrogenous are fats, soaps, cholesterol, and sugar, the nitrogenous are urea (0 02 to 0 04 per cent), and still smaller quantities of uric acid, creatine, creatinine, xanthine, hypoxanthine and amino-acids

C **Salts**—The most abundant salt is sodium chloride, it constitutes between 60 and 90 per cent of the total mineral matter Potassium chloride is present in much smaller amount It constitutes about 4 per cent of the total ash The other salts are phosphates and sulphates

Schmidt gives the following table —

1000 parts of plasma yield—

Mineral matter	8 550
Chlorine	3 640
SO_3	0 115
P_2O_5	0 191
Potassium	0 323
Sodium	3 341
Calcium phosphate	0 311
Magnesium phosphate	0 222

The Blood-Corpuscles

Red or Coloured Corpuscles—Human red blood-corpuscles are circular biconcave discs with rounded edges, $\frac{1}{3000}$ inch in diameter (8 8 μ on the average) and about a quarter of that in thickness When viewed singly they appear of a pale yellowish tinge, the deep red colour which they give to the blood is observable in them only when they are seen *en masse*

Each red corpuscle is composed of a colourless envelope enclosing a semi-liquid material of which by far the most abundant constituent is hæmoglobin, the enclosing membrane is important especially in processes of osmosis such as occur when water or salt solutions are added to the corpuscles, and its presence can be clearly distinguished microscopically in the large corpuscles of amphibia The corpuscles are perfectly elastic so that as they circulate they admit of change of form, and recover their natural shape as soon as they escape from compression

The red corpuscles of other mammals are generally very nearly

the size of human red corpuscles They are smallest in the deer tribe and largest in the elephant In the camelidæ they are biconvex In all mammals the corpuscles are non-nucleated, and in all other vertebrates (birds, reptiles, amphibia, and fishes) the corpuscles are oval, biconvex, and nucleated (fig 157), and larger than in mammals They are largest of all in certain amphibians (*amphiuma*, *proteus*)

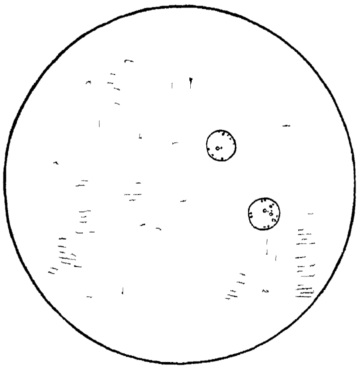


FIG 156 —Red corpuscles in rouleaux The white corpuscles are uncoloured

FIG 157 —Corpuscles of the frog The central mass consists of nucleated coloured corpuscles The other corpuscles are two varieties of the colourless form

A property of the red corpuscles, which is exaggerated in inflammatory blood, is a tendency to adhere together in rolls or columns (rouleaux), like piles of coins These rolls quickly fasten together by their ends, and cluster, so that, when the blood is spread out thinly on a glass they form an irregular network (fig 156)

Action of Reagents —Considerable light has been thrown on the physical and chemical constitution of red blood-cells by studying the effects produced by mechanical means and by various reagents

Hæmolysis —When water is added gradually to frog's blood, the oval disc-shaped corpuscles become spherical, and gradually discharge their hæmoglobin, a pale, transparent envelope being left behind human red blood-cells swell, change from a discoidal to a spheroidal form, burst and discharge their pigment, becoming quite transparent and all but invisible This breaking up of the corpuscles is known as **hæmolysis** and is due to the osmotic action of the corpuscles which take up water Bile salts, saponin, and certain snake venoms also destroy the red blood-corpuscles by acting on the envelopes **Hæmolysis** is also brought about by hæmolysins which are produced in the blood of an animal A, if the serum or blood of another animal B (which it does not normally hæmolyse) is injected into it (A) The subsequent injection of the blood of B (*e g* corpuscles of rabbit) into A (*e g* guinea-pig) results in a rapid destruction of corpuscles B

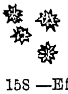


FIG 158 —Effect of hypertonic saline solution (crenation)

Physiological saline solution causes no effect on the red corpuscles beyond preventing them running into rouleaux If a stronger salt solution is used, the corpuscles shrink and become crenated (fig 158), owing to osmosis of water outwards

Dilute acetic acid causes the nucleus of the red blood-cells in the frog to become more clearly defined, if the action is prolonged, the nucleus becomes strongly granulated, and all the colouring matter seems to be concentrated in it, the surrounding cell-substance and outline of the cell becoming almost invisible, after a time the cells lose their colour altogether A similar loss of colour occurs in the red corpuscles of human blood, which, however, from the absence of nuclei, seem to disappear entirely

The Number of the Red Blood-Corpuscles *—The average number of red corpuscles is about **5,000,000 per cubic millimetre** of blood in men and about 4,500,000 in women These numbers, however are subject to considerable variation An increase occurs whenever the individual is subjected to conditions of oxygen-want, such as life at a high altitude or in diseases in which the circulation is slowed In such circumstances the bone-marrow (see below) becomes very active A fall in the number of red corpuscles occurs when there is an abnormal destruction of corpuscles in disease or inadequate production

The Hæmoglobin Content of the Blood—From what has been said in relation to Respiration it is evident that the amount of hæmoglobin in the blood is of considerable importance Like the number of corpuscles, it varies very much according to the efficiency of the circulation and the quality of the air breathed In man the hæmoglobin content may be three times the usual amount if the circulation is very inefficient The content is expressed as a percentage of an average blood which is capable of carrying **18 5 c c** * of oxygen per cent (*i e* a blood which contains **14 per cent** * hæmoglobin) An average blood contains therefore "100 per cent hæmoglobin" This estimation gives a rough idea of the oxygen-carrying power of the blood From the enumeration of corpuscles and the hæmoglobin estimation the **colour index**, or amount of hæmoglobin per corpuscle, may be determined Thus, if there is 100 per cent *i e* 5,000,000 red blood-corpuscles and 100 per cent hæmoglobin the colour index is said to be **1**, if the hæmoglobinometer gives only 50 per cent each corpuscle contains only half the amount of hæmoglobin, *i e* the colour index is 0 5

Methods

Enumeration of the Red Blood-Corpuscles

Several methods are employed for counting the blood-corpuscles most of them depend upon the same principle, *i e*, the dilution of a minute volume of blood with a given volume of a saline solution similar in osmotic concentration to blood-plasma, so that the size and shape of the corpuscles is altered as little as possible A minute quantity of the well-mixed solution is then taken, examined under the microscope in a cell of known capacity, and the number of corpuscles in a given area of the cell is counted Having ascertained the number of corpuscles in the diluted blood, it is easy to calculate the number in a given volume of normal blood

* Many bloods, especially those of apparently healthy Americans, are richer in corpuscles and oxgen-carrying power Many city dwellers have much poorer bloods.

The apparatus most frequently used at the present time is known as the Thoma-Zeiss hæmacytometer It consists of a carefully graduated pipette, in which the dilution of the blood is done, this is so formed that the capillary stem has a capacity equalling one-hundredth of the bulb above it If the blood is drawn up in the capillary tube to the line marked 0 5 (fig 159) the saline solution may afterwards be drawn up the stem to the line 101 This gives a dilution of 1-200 as the last 1 does not mix The blood and the saline solution are well mixed by shaking the pipette The other part of the instrument consists of a glass slide (fig 160) upon which is mounted a covered disc, *m*, accurately ruled so as to present one square millimetre divided into 400 squares of one-twentieth of a millimetre each The micrometer thus made is surrounded by another annular cell, *c*, which has such a height as to make the cell project exactly one-tenth millimetre beyond *m* If a drop of the diluted blood is placed upon *m*, and *c* is covered with a perfectly flat cover-glass, the volume of the diluted blood above each of the squares of the micrometer, *i e* above each $\frac{1}{400}$, will be $\frac{1}{4000}$ of a cubic millimetre Five large squares (*i e* 5 × 16 small) are counted and the average per small square taken by dividing by 80 This number multiplied by 4000 and again

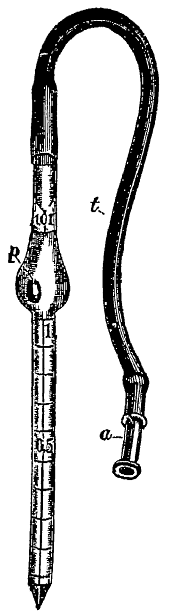


FIG 159 —The pipette of a Thoma Zeiss hæmacytometer for red blood corpuscles

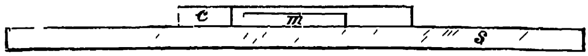


FIG 160

by 200 to allow for the dilution gives the number of corpuscles in a cubic millimetre of undiluted blood, *i e* where x = the number in five large squares, $\frac{x}{80} \times \frac{4000 \times 200}{1}$ In actual practice it will be noticed that no arithmetic is necessary, 0000 simply being added to the number found in the five large squares

Enumeration of the White Blood-Corpuscles

The enumeration of the colourless corpuscles depends on the same principle, but the counting has to be carried out over the whole square millimetre The blood is diluted (1-20) in a similar special pipette with dilute acetic acid to hæmolyse the red blood-corpuscles and a stain is usually added Since the dilution is 1-20 and the cubic capacity of the area counted $\frac{1}{10}$ of a cubic millimetre, multiplication of the number counted by 200 gives the number of white corpuscles in the whole cubic millimetre

Differential Count —The differentiation of the varieties of colourless corpuscles (which is most important from the standpoint of disease) can be accomplished after the appropriate staining of blood-films Five hundred white blood-corpuscles are counted and the percentage of each variety calculated

Estimation of Hæmoglobin

A hæmoglobinometer consists of two tubes, one of which contains 20 cub mm of normal ox blood laked and diluted to a standard amount, 100 A little distilled water is placed in the other tube, which is graduated, and 20 cub mm of the blood (measured in a pipette) being estimated is added This is diluted with distilled water till the colours are alike and the dilution is read off If, for example, the colours are alike when the dilution has only been 50 (instead of the normal 100), the blood contains only 50 per cent of the normal hæmoglobin In practice, the standard used is a carmine jelly of the same tint as normal blood (Gowers), but

since this is liable to fade, normal blood the hæmoglobin of which is converted into carboxy-hæmoglobin is used (Haldane), but in this instance carbon monoxide (coal gas) must be bubbled through the diluted blood under investigation

Origin of the Red Corpuscles —Surrounding the early embryo is a circular area, called the vascular area, in which the first rudiments of the blood-vessels and blood-corpuscles are developed Here the nucleated embryonic cells of the mesoderm, from which the blood-vessels and corpuscles are to be formed, send out processes in various directions, and these, joining together, form an irregular meshwork The nuclei increase in number, and collect chiefly in the

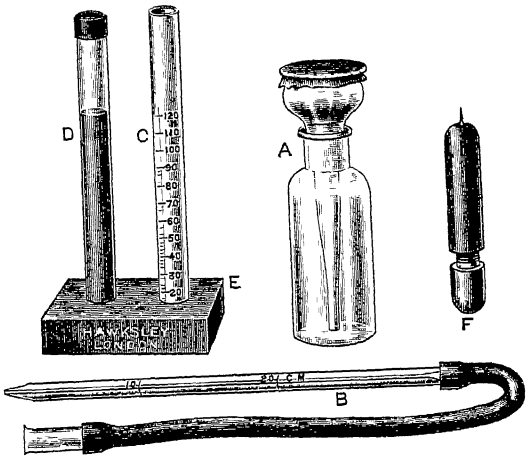


FIG 161 —Hæmoglobinometer of Gowers

larger masses of protoplasm, but partly also in the processes These nuclei gather around them a certain amount of the protoplasm, and, becoming coloured, form the red blood-corpuscles (fig 162) The protoplasm of the cells and the branched network in which these corpuscles lie then become hollowed out into a system of canals enclosing fluid, in which the red nucleated corpuscles float The corpuscles at first are from about $\frac{1}{2500}$ to $\frac{1}{1500}$ of an inch (10 μ to 16 μ) in diameter, mostly spherical, and with granular contents, and a well-marked nucleus

The corpuscles then strongly resemble the white corpuscles of the fully developed blood, but are coloured They are capable of amœboid movement and multiply by division

These coloured nucleated cells begin very early in fœtal life to be mingled with coloured *non*-nucleated corpuscles resembling those of the adult, and at about the fourth or fifth month of embryonic existence are completely replaced by them

These coloured discs are partly formed in connective-tissue cells in a way similar to that just described, only without the participation of the nuclei in the process, although there is very little doubt that hæmoglobin originates from the hæmatogen (iron-containing nuclein) of the nuclei in all cases The fœtal liver, spleen, and thymus are also believed to be seats of formation of the red blood-corpuscles

It is necessary that the red corpuscles should be constantly replenished throughout life But after the fœtal stage is passed, they originate, not from connective tissues in general, but in one special form of connective tissue, namely, the red marrow of bones It is possible that in some animals the spleen, which

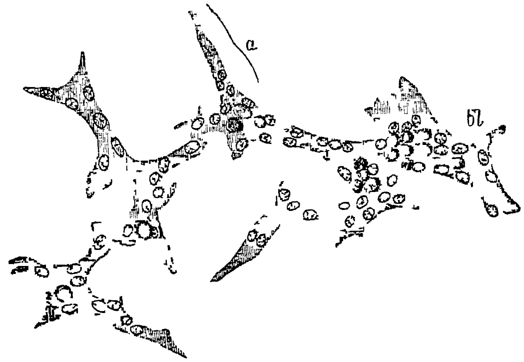


Fig 162 —Part of the network of developing blood-vessels in the vascular area of a guinea pig *bl* Blood corpuscles becoming free in an enlarged and hollowed out part of the network, *a*, process of protoplasm (E S Schafer)

contains cells very similar to those of the marrow, may participate in their formation In the red marrow, they arise from immature nucleated cells (*normoblasts* or *erythroblasts*, fig 163), the nucleus is not discharged, but is absorbed within the cell, and this is the explanation that some observers give of the biconcave form of the red disc Sometimes immature nucleated red cells may make their way from the marrow into the circulation, and the free nuclei of these cells are sometimes found in the blood, they never, when once they have entered the blood, develop into discs, and are filtered out of the blood by the spleen

The Fate of the Red Blood-Corpuscles—The fact that the pigments of bile and of blood are chemically related has long suggested that the former are derived from the latter, and other evidence has indicated that the red blood-corpuscles have, like all other cells of the body, a tolerably definite term of existence, estimated at about thirty or forty days, after which they die and

are replaced For example, there is evidence that blood is constantly being formed, and red cells in the process of breaking down have been observed in organs such as the spleen In diseases involving blood destruction the presence of the iron-containing pigment hæmosiderin which accumulates in the liver and spleen is readily demonstrable by the Prussian blue reaction

The broken-down red blood-corpuscles are taken up by the *reticulo-endothelial system*

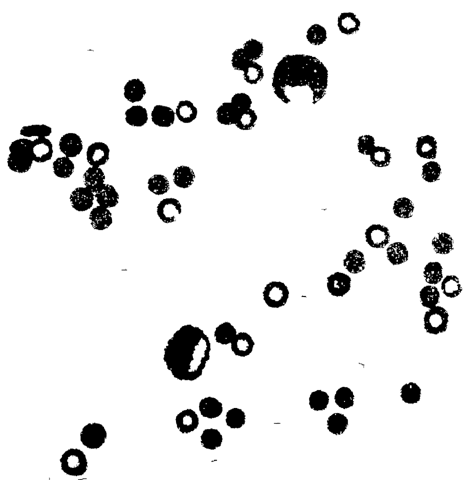


FIG 163 —Red marrow of young rabbit Magnified 450 diameters (From Sharpey Schafer's [illegible])

e, erythrocytes, *e′*, erythroblasts, *e′*, a coloured cell undergoing mitotic division, *l*, a polymorpho nuclear leucocyte, *m*, ordinary myelocytes, *m′*, myelocytes undergoing mitotic division, *eo*, an eosinophile myelocyte, *meg*, a giant cell or megakaryocyte

Reticulo-Endothelial System (Aschoff) consists of cells scattered widely in different regions Some of the cells are wandering cells, such as the clasmatocytes of the connective tissue and the mononuclear cells of the blood and spleen, others are sessile, for example, the stellate cells of Kupffer, which constitute an imperfect lining for the hepatic capillaries Other sessile components of the reticulo-endothelial system are the endothelium of the lymph sinuses and splenic sinuses and that of the capillaries of the bone-marrow and suprarenal, and the branched reticulum cells of the bone-marrow, lymphoid tissue, spleen and thymus Reticulo-endothelial cells possess in common the property of ingesting particles such as

cell-debris and bacteria, for this reason they are called macrophages (in contrast to the microphages or polymorphonuclear leucocytes) In addition, they have the closely related power of taking up foreign colloids, such as "vital" dyes (carmine, pyrrhol blue, etc) An important function attributed to these cells is the formation of bilirubin from hæmoglobin

Why or how the red cells break down is not yet known, but once they are broken down, the free blood pigment is converted into bile pigment by the Kupffer cells This is shown by the fact that if blood pigment is injected into the circulation or if hæmolysis of the red cells is caused by arseniuretted hydrogen bile pigment appears in the blood, but not so if the reticulo-endothelial system has been thrown out of action by previously making it take up other foreign matter such as a colloidal substance or by removing the majority of the Kupffer cells in animals where they are chiefly situated in one organ, *e g* the liver of the bird

It is not to be imagined that blood destruction and bile formation occur only in certain organs They probably occur in all organs and in the colour of an ordinary bruise we have in reality the formation of bile pigment locally We shall trace this pigment further in relation to the bile

The White Blood-Corpuscles—These corpuscles are masses of nucleated protoplasm, they are nearly spherical when at rest, but owing to their amœboid movements (see p 8) exhibit considerable changes in outline when they are active, as they are at body temperature

The number of white blood-corpuscles varies at different times of the day (Bernard Shaw) In the morning or after a rest in the horizontal position they are about 6000 per cub mm but increase after midday They are increased by activity, by a meal, after the injection of adrenaline, and in asphyxia (M'Dowall) They may be enormously increased in most infections (*e g* 60,000 in pneumonia) In a few they are decreased (*e g* influenza)

Several varieties of colourless corpuscles are found in human blood (See coloured plate)

(*a*) *Lymphocytes*—These are only a little larger than red corpuscles The nucleus is relatively large, and usually round, the protoplasm around it forms quite a narrow zone The nucleus, as is the case with all nuclei, is basophile, and stains with such basic dyes as methylene blue The protoplasm presents no distinct granules and is also basophile The lymphocytes comprise about 25 per cent of the total colourless corpuscles This variety of corpuscle is much increased in *chronic* infections, *e g* tuberculosis

(*b*) *Large mononuclear leucocytes*—A relatively small oval nucleus

lies near the centre of basophile protoplasm, which again presents no definite granulation Their diameter is 12-20 μ, and they form only 1 per cent of the total colourless corpuscles This variety is commonly increased in protozoal infections, e g malaria

(c) *Transitional leucocytes*—The cell-body is somewhat smaller and is mainly basophile A certain amount of neutrophile granulation may be seen The nucleus may present all gradations between an oval and lobed condition In normal blood their number is variable, but, as a rule, they make up about 2 to 4 per cent only of the total colourless corpuscles They are called transitional on the hypothesis that they represent an intermediate condition between the large mononuclear leucocytes and the polymorphonuclear leucocytes described under *d* It is, however, doubtful if this hypothesis is correct, and many histologists think the *b* and *c* varieties originate from endothelium

(d) *Polymorphonuclear leucocytes*—These are 9-12 μ in diameter, and form the main mass of the colourless corpuscles (70 per cent) They have several nuclei, which are strongly basophile and present many different shapes, and are usually connected by threads of chromatin The protoplasm is finely granular, and stains with neutral, and faintly with acid aniline dyes (such as eosin) In certain pathological conditions—for instance, in diabetes mellitus—the cell-protoplasm contains excess of glycogen The "polymorphs" are greatly increased in most *acute* infections

(e) *Eosinophile leucocytes*—These are usually larger than the preceding (12-15 μ in diameter) They contain either a single irregular-shaped nucleus, or more often two or three nuclei of unequal size Their protoplasm contains large distinct granules which have an intense affinity for acid dyes such as eosin, and are therefore termed oxyphile, acidophile, or eosinophile They are stated to be less actively amœboid than the polymorphonuclear leucocytes They comprise from 2 to 4 per cent of the total colourless corpuscles They are increased in anaphylactic states produced by the injection of foreign protein, in asthma, and especially in infestation with animal parasites

(f) *Basophiles*—These cells are present in connective tissues generally, but they are very rare in normal blood Less than 0 5 per cent is usually present They measure about 10 μ across, their nucleus is single and irregular in shape The granules in the protoplasm are much more basophile than the nucleus (See coloured plate)

Phagocytosis—The most important outcome of the amœboid movement of the colourless corpuscles is their power of ingesting foreign particles, such as bacteria, which they engulf and digest This is called phagocytosis. The polymorphonuclear leucocytes

appear to be the most vigorous phagocytes The drawings in fig 164 show some stages in this phenomenon, the cells represented there, however, are not normal leucocytes, but certain large amœboid cells found in connective tissues, which congregate specially in inflamed parts

The Blood-Platelets —Besides the two principal varieties of blood-corpuscles, a third kind has been described under the name blood-platelets These are colourless disc-shaped or irregular bodies, much smaller than red corpuscles Different views are held about

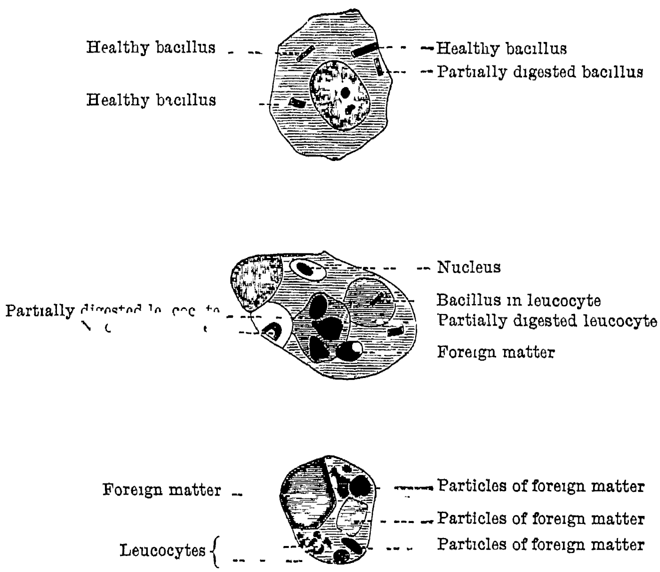


FIG 164 —Macrophages containing bacilli and other structures undergoing digestion (Ruffer)

their origin There is, however, no doubt that they do occur in living blood, and are possibly shed off from cells such as the megakaryocytes (giant-cells) of the marrow and spleen They show no amœboid movements Their importance in relation to the coagulation of the blood has already been pointed out The normal number of platelets per cubic millimetre varies but averages about 250,000

Origin of the White Blood-Corpuscles (in the Adult) —The *lymphocytes* are formed in lymphoid tissue wherever this is found (lymphatic glands, tonsils, etc), the lymph leaving a lymphoid structure is thus found to be richer in lymphocytes than that entering the structure The lymphocytes enter the blood-stream by the thoracic duct and the right lymphatic duct In the cortical follicles of lymphatic glands, the clearer central portion called the

"germ-centre," where active karyokinesis occurs, is thought to be the actual seat of formation of lymphocytes The large lymphocytes of the blood resemble the cells of the germ centres

The *polymorphonuclear leucocytes* are developed in the red marrow of the bones from the *myelocytes* The latter are rounded cells the cytoplasm of which contains neutrophile granules their nuclei are rounded and but poorly marked off from the cytoplasm The myelocytes are the most abundant cellular constituent of the bone-marrow In various infective diseases, *e g* pneumonia, there is a great increase of leucocytes in the blood (leucocytosis), this is associated with proliferation of the myelocytes in the marrow and some may be swept out in the immature state into the blood-stream Certain of the myelocytes contain coarse granules, in some the granules are eosinophile and such *eosinophile myelocytes* are the precursors of the *eosinophile leucocytes*, whilst in others basophile granules are present and these *basophile myelocytes* give rise to the *basophile cells* of the blood

The origin of *the large mononuclear* leucocyte is involved in the mists of controversy According to one view it arises from the cells of the reticulo-endothelial system (see p 361), in favour of this hypothesis is the fact that in an animal injected with a foreign colloid, such as colloidal silica, the cells of this system, *e g* the Kupffer cells of the liver capillaries, seize on the colloid with avidity, swell up and divide, one product of division passing into the blood-stream as a cell resembling a mononuclear leucocyte According to another view, however, this class of leucocyte is developed from the myelocyte The *transition forms* are probably to be regarded as related to the large mononuclears, it is no longer believed that they represent an intermediate stage between these and polymorphonuclears

In determining whether leucocytes have arisen from myelocytes or from other cells, use has been made of the peroxidase reaction Marrow cells are believed to contain peroxidases, so that when they are acted on by a mixture of benzidine and hydrogen peroxide, blue granules become visible in their cytoplasm Such granules can be demonstrated in polymorphonuclears and eosinophiles, but not in lymphocytes and slightly in large mononuclear cells The basophiles, although undoubtedly of marrow-origin, fail to show blue granules in their cytoplasm

Chemistry of the Blood-Corpuscles.

The White Blood-Corpuscles —Their nucleus consists of nuclein, their cell protoplasm yields proteins belonging to the globulin and nucleo-protein groups The protoplasm of these cells often contains small quantities of fat and glycogen

The Red Blood-Corpuscles —1000 parts of red corpuscles contain—

Water		688 parts
Solids	Organic	303 88 ,,
	Inorganic	8 12 ,,

One hundred parts of the dry organic matter contain—

Protein	5 to 12 parts
Hæmoglobin	36 to 94 ,,
Phosphatides calculated as lecithin	1 8 ,,
Cholesterol	0 1 ,,

The protein present appears to be similar to the nucleo-protein of white corpuscles The mineral matter consists chiefly of chlorides of potassium and sodium, and phosphates of calcium and magnesium In man and most other animals potassium chloride is more abundant than sodium chloride

Hæmoglobin and Oxyhæmoglobin —The pigment is by far the most abundant and important of the constituents of the red corpuscles It is a conjugated protein, a compound of protein with the iron-containing pigment called hæmatin

It exists in the blood in two conditions in arterial blood it is combined loosely with oxygen, is of a bright red colour, and is called oxyhæmoglobin, the other condition is the deoxygenated or reduced hæmoglobin This is found in the blood after asphyxia It also occurs in all venous blood —that is, blood which is returning to the heart after it has supplied the tissues with oxygen Venous blood, however, always contains a considerable quantity of oxyhæmoglobin also Hæmoglobin is the oxygen-carrier of the body, and it may be called a respiratory pigment *

FIG 165 —Crystals of oxyhæmoglobin—prismatic, from human blood

Crystals of oxyhæmoglobin † may be obtained with readiness from the blood of such animals as the rat, guinea-pig, or dog, with

* In the blood of invertebrate animals hæmoglobin is sometimes found, but usually in the plasma, not in special corpuscles Sometimes it is replaced by other respiratory pigments, such as the green one, chlorocruorin, found in certain worms, and the blue one, hæmocyanin, found in many molluscs and crustacea Chlorocruorin contains iron, hæmocyanin contains copper

† Crystals of reduced hæmoglobin can also be obtained by carrying out the crystallisation in an atmosphere free from oxygen

difficulty from other animals, such as man, ape, and most of the common mammals The following methods are the best —

1 Mix a drop of defibrinated blood of the rat on a slide with a drop of water, put on a cover-glass, in a few minutes the corpuscles are rendered colourless, and then the oxyhæmoglobin crystallises out from the solution so formed

2 Microscopical specimens may also be made by Stein's method, which consists in using Canada balsam instead of water in the foregoing experiment

3 On a larger scale, crystals may be obtained by mixing the blood with one-sixteenth of its volume of ether, the corpuscles dissolve, and the blood assumes a *laky* appearance After a period varying from a few minutes to days, abundant crystals are deposited

The shape of the oxyhæmoglobin crystals in different animals varies somewhat, probably owing to the varying amounts of water of crystallisation they contain Several observers have analysed hæmoglobin They find carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, sulphur, and iron The iron varies from 0 4 per cent On adding an acid or alkali to hæmoglobin, it is broken up into two parts—a brown pigment called *hæmatin*, which contains all the iron of the original substance, and a protein called *globin*, one of the histones (*q v*)

Hæmatin has the formula $C_{34}H_{33 \text{ or } 35}O_5N_4Fe$ It presents different spectroscopic appearances in acid and alkaline solutions (see accompanying plate) As obtained from oxyhæmoglobin it should be termed *oxyhæmatin* It may be reduced in alkaline solution by adding a reducing agent, and the well-marked absorption spectrum of reduced hæmatin forms the most delicate of the spectroscopic tests for blood pigment Reduced hæmatin is sometimes called hæmochromogen and is of a red colour, oxyhæmatin is brownish

Hæmin is of great importance, as the obtaining of this substance forms the best chemical test for blood The test is much used in medico-legal work Hæmin crystals may be prepared for microscopical examination by boiling a fragment of dried blood with a drop of glacial acetic acid on a slide, on cooling, triclinic plates and prisms of a dark brown colour, often in star-shaped clusters and with rounded angles (fig 166), separate out In the case of an old blood-stain it is necessary to add a crystal of sodium chloride Fresh blood contains sufficient sodium chloride in itself

The action of the acetic acid is to split the hæmoglobin into hæmatin and globin, a hydroxyl group of the hæmatin is then replaced by chlorine

Hæmatoporphyrin, $C_{34}H_{38}O_4N_6$, is iron-free hæmatin, it may be prepared by mixing blood with strong sulphuric acid, the iron is taken out as ferrous sulphate It is also found sometimes in nature, it occurs in certain invertebrate pigments, and may also be found in

certain forms of pathological urine Even normal urine contains traces of it It is isomeric with the bilirubin of bile It presents different spectroscopic appearances according as it is dissolved in acid or alkaline media The absorption spectrum figure (No 9) is that of acid hæmatoporphyrin

Hæmopyrrol is formed by reduction from hæmatoporphyrin and proves to be a mixture of several pyrrol derivatives Similar derivatives are obtained from chlorophyll, a fact which illustrates the near relationship of the principal animal and vegetable pig-

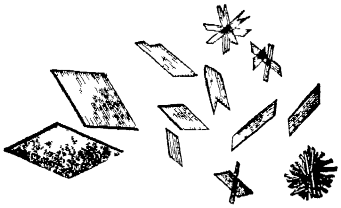


FIG 166 —Hæmin crystals (Frey)

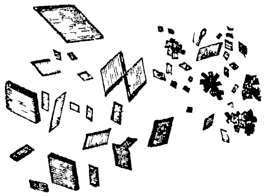


FIG 167 —Hæmatoidin crystals (Frey)

ments The relationships of the derivatives of blood pigment are shown in the following simple scheme —

Oxyhæmoglobin *minus* protein = Oxyhæmatin

minus oxygen *minus* oxygen

Reduced hæmoglobin *minus* protein = Reduced hæmatin
Hæmatin *minus* iron = Hæmatoporphyrin
Hæmatin with an OH replaced by Cl = Hæmin
Hæmatoporphyrin on reduction yields pyrrol derivatives (Hæmopyrrol)

Hæmatoidin —This substance is found in the form of yellowish red crystals (fig 167) in old blood extravasations, and is derived from the hæmoglobin Its crystalline form and the reaction it gives with fuming nitric acid show it to be closely allied to *bilirubin*, the chief colouring matter of the bile, and on analysis it is found to be identical with it

Hæmatoidin, like hæmatoporphyrin, is free from iron, but differs from it in showing no absorption bands in the spectrum

Compounds of Hæmoglobin

Hæmoglobin forms at least four compounds with gases —

With oxygen	1 Oxyhæmoglobin 2 Methæmoglobin
With carbonic oxide	3 Carbonic oxide hæmoglobin
With nitric oxide	4 Nitric oxide hæmoglobin

These compounds have similar crystalline forms with the exception of methæmoglobin, each consists of a molecule of hæmoglobin combined with one molecule of the gas in question They part with the combined gas somewhat readily, they are arranged in order of stability in the above list, the least stable first

Oxyhæmoglobin is the compound that exists in arterial blood Many of its properties have already been described in relation to Respiration

We have seen that the oxygen may be removed by exposing the blood to a vacuum The blood may also be reduced by passing hydrogen through it or by addition of other reducing agents, such as ammonium sulphide or Stokes' reagent (an ammoniacal solution of ferrous tartrate), or, best of all, sodium hydrosulphite One gramme of hæmoglobin will combine with 1 34 c c of oxygen

If any of these methods for reducing oxyhæmoglobin is used, the bright red (arterial) colour of oxyhæmoglobin changes to the darker (venous) tint of hæmoglobin On once more allowing oxygen to come into contact with the hæmoglobin, as by shaking the solution with the air, the bright arterial colour returns

These colour-changes may be more accurately studied with the spectroscope, and the constant position of the absorption bands seen constitutes an important test for blood pigment It will be first necessary to describe briefly the instrument used

The Spectroscope —When a ray of white light is passed through a prism, it is refracted or bent at each surface of the prism, the whole ray is, however, not equally bent, but it is split into its constituent colours, which may be allowed to fall on a screen The band of colours beginning with the red, passing through orange, yellow, green, blue, and ending with violet, is called a *spectrum* this is seen in nature in the rainbow

The spectrum of sunlight is interrupted by numerous dark lines crossing it vertically, called Frauenhofer's lines These are perfectly constant in position and serve as landmarks in the spectrum The more prominent are A, B, and C, in the red, D, in the yellow, E, *b*, and F, in the green, G and H, in the violet These lines are due to certain volatile substances in the solar atmosphere If the light from burning sodium or its compounds is examined spectroscopically, it will be found to give a bright yellow line, or, rather, two bright yellow lines very close together Potassium gives two bright red lines and one violet line, and the other elements, when incandescent, give characteristic lines, but none so simple as sodium If now the flame of an ordinary lamp is examined, it will be found to give a continuous spectrum like that of sunlight in the arrangement of its colours, but unlike it in the absence of dark lines, but if the light from the lamp is made to pass through sodium vapour before it

reaches the spectroscope, the bright yellow light will be found absent, and in its place a dark line, or, rather, two dark lines very close together, occupy the same position as the two bright lines of the sodium spectrum The sodium vapour absorbs the same rays as those which it itself produces at a higher temperature Thus the D line, as we term it in the solar spectrum, is due to the presence of sodium vapour in the solar atmosphere The other dark lines are similarly accounted for by other elements

The large form of spectroscope (fig 168) consists of a tube A, called the collimator, with a slit at the end S, and a convex lens at the end L The latter makes the rays of light passing through the slit from the source of light, parallel they fall on the prism P, and then the spectrum so formed is focussed by the telescope T

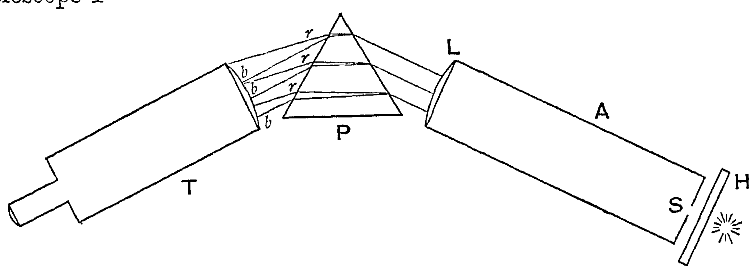


FIG 168 —Diagram of spectroscope

A third tube, not shown in the figure, carries a small transparent scale of wave-lengths, as in accurate observations the position of any point in the spectrum is given in the terms of the corresponding wave-length

If we now interpose between the source of light and the slit S a piece of coloured glass (H in fig 168), or a solution of a coloured substance contained in a vessel with parallel sides (the hæmatoscope of Herrmann), the spectrum is found to be no longer continuous, but is interrupted by a number of dark shadows, or *absorption bands* corresponding to the light absorbed by the coloured medium Thus a solution of oxyhæmoglobin of a certain strength gives two bands between the D and E lines, reduced hæmoglobin gives only one, and other red solutions, though to the naked eye similar to oxyhæmoglobin, will give characteristic bands in other positions

A convenient form of small spectroscope is the *direct vision spectroscope,* in which, by an arrangement of alternating prisms of crown and flint glass, the spectrum is observed by the eye in the same line as the tube furnished with the slit—indeed, slit and prisms are both contained in the same tube

The next figure (fig 169) illustrates a method of representing absorption spectra diagrammatically The solution was examined in a layer 1 centimetre thick The base-line has on it at the proper distances the chief Frauenhofer lines, and along the right-hand edges are percentages of the amount of oxyhæmoglobin present in I, of reduced hæmoglobin in II The width of the shadings at each level represents the position and amount of absorption corresponding to the percentages

The characteristic spectrum of oxyhæmoglobin, as it actually appears through the spectroscope, is seen in the accompanying coloured plate (spectrum 2) There are two distinct absorption bands between the D and E lines, the one nearest to D (the α

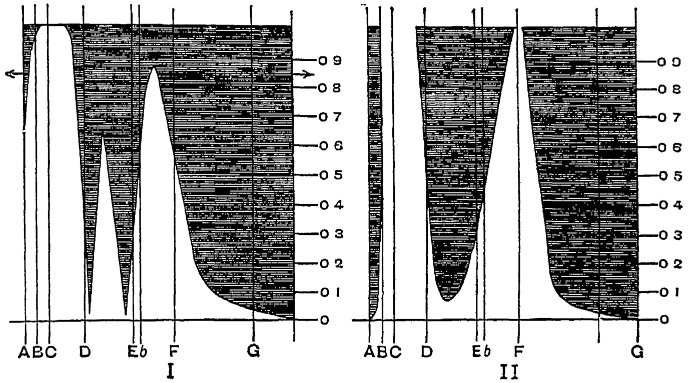


FIG 169 —Graphic representations of the amount of absorption of light by solution of (I) oxyhæmoglobin, (II) of reduced hæmoglobin, of different strengths The shading indicates the amount of absorption of the spectrum, the figures on the right border express percentages (Rollett)

band) is narrower, darker, and has better-defined edges than the other (the β band) As will be seen on looking at fig 169, a solution of oxyhæmoglobin of concentration greater than 0 65 per cent and less than 0 85 per cent (examined in a cell of the usual thickness of 1 centimetre) gives one thick band overlapping both D and E, and a stronger solution lets the red light through only between C and D A solution which gives the two characteristic bands must therefore be a dilute one The one band (γ band) of reduced hæmoglobin (spectrum 3) is not so well defined as the α or β bands On dilution it fades more rapidly, so that in a solution of such strength that both bands of oxyhæmoglobin would be quite distinct, the single band of hæmoglobin has disappeared from view The oxyhæmoglobin bands can be distinguished in a solution which contains only one part of the pigment to 10,000 of water, and even in more dilute solutions which seem to be colourless the α band is still visible

Methæmoglobin—This may be produced artificially in various ways, as by adding potassium ferricyanide or amyl nitrite to blood, and as it also may occur in certain diseased conditions and pass into the urine, it is of considerable practical importance It can be crystallised, and was formerly stated to contain the same amount of oxygen as oxyhæmoglobin, only combined in a different way Buckmaster was the first to show that methæmoglobin contains only half as much oxygen as oxyhæmoglobin This oxygen is not removable by the air-pump, nor by a stream of neutral gas such as hydrogen It can, however, by reducing agents such as ammonium sulphide, be made to yield reduced hæmoglobin Methæmoglobin is of a brownish red colour, and gives a characteristic absorption band in the red between the C and D lines (spectrum 7 in coloured plate) In dilute solutions other bands can be seen

Potassium ferricyanide is the most convenient reagent for making methæmoglobin It is, however, necessary to remind the reader that it produces another effect as well, namely, it causes an evolution of oxygen, if the blood has been previously laked In relation, to respiration we have already seen that use is made of this fact in the estimation of the oxygen content of the blood After the oxygen is discharged from oxyhæmoglobin, fresh oxygen, due to the oxidising action of the reagents added, takes its place, this new oxygen, however, is combined in some way different from that which was previously united to the hæmoglobin (Haldane)

Carboxyhæmoglobin may be readily prepared by passing a stream of carbon monoxide or coal gas through blood or through a solution of oxyhæmoglobin It has a peculiar cherry-red colour Its absorption spectrum is very like that of oxyhæmoglobin, but the two bands are slightly nearer the violet end of the spectrum (spectrum 4 in coloured plate) Reducing agents, such as ammonium sulphide, do not change it, the gas is more firmly combined than the oxygen in oxyhæmoglobin CO-hæmoglobin forms crystals like those of oxyhæmoglobin It resists putrefaction for a very long time

Carbon monoxide is given off during the imperfect combustion of carbon such as occurs in charcoal stoves or during the explosions that occur in coal-mines, it acts as a powerful poison, by combining with the hæmoglobin of the blood, and thus interferes with normal respiratory processes The effects of the formation of carboxyhæmoglobin have already been discussed (p 293) The bright colour of the blood in both arteries and veins and its resistance to reducing-agents, are in such cases characteristic

Nitric Oxide Hæmoglobin—When ammonia is added to blood, and then a stream of nitric oxide passed through it, this compound is formed It may be obtained in crystals isomorphous with oxy- and CO-hæmoglobin It also has a similar spectrum It is even more stable than CO-hæmoglobin, it is not only of theoretical importance as completing the series, but is of some practical interest in cases of poisoning by gas liberated from high explosives

Tests for Blood —Briefly, these are microscopic, spectroscopic, and chemical The best chemical test is the formation of hæmin crystals The old test with tincture of guaiacum and hydrogen peroxide, the blood causing the tincture to become bluish green, is very untrustworthy, as it is also given by many other organic substances The test, for instance, is given by milk, and is there due to the presence of an enzyme called a peroxidase, which is destroyed by boiling Boiled blood, however, gives the test as well as fresh blood, and the reaction is due to the presence of the iron-containing radical of hæmoglobin In Adler's modification of this test, benzidine dissolved in glacial acetic acid takes the place of tincture of guaiacum

In medico-legal cases it is often necessary to ascertain whether or not a red fluid or stain on clothing is of blood In any such case it is advisable not to rely on one test only, but to try every means of detection at one's disposal To discover whether it is blood or not is by no means a difficult problem, but to distinguish human blood from that of the common mammals is possible only by the "biological" test described at the end of the section on Immunity

Blood Substitutes

The physiological characteristics of blood must be considered from the point of view of substitutes which may be required to replace blood lost by hæmorrhage

If a suitable blood from another individual is not available to replace the lost blood, the fluid used must be as like the original as possible In order to achieve this the fluid must contain sodium, potassium, calcium, and bicarbonate, as in Ringer's solution (see p 153) Such a substitute would not, however, stay in the vessels, as it has not the requisite osmotic pressure It is impossible to make up this pressure with additional salts, since these merely become excreted by the kidney, or escape into the tissues As we have seen, an important factor in keeping the blood in the vessels is the osmotic pressure of the proteins, which normally counteracts the blood-pressure in the capillaries, which tends to force the fluid through the capillary walls Foreign protein, however, cannot be injected, as it is extremely liable to produce shock, it is therefore necessary to add a substance which is inert yet will supply the required osmotic pressure and viscosity A convenient substance is gum arabic, which may be added to the extent of 6 per cent In actual practice it has been found best to provide a more concentrated solution to which some glucose has been added This must, however, be injected slowly

Blood Groups —Ideally, the blood of another person is the best substitute for lost blood, but unfortunately all bloods are not

compatible, but are liable to agglutinate or clump, and to hæmolyse each other, and so cause serious symptoms and even death

It has been found that individuals can be divided into four groups, according to the liability of their cells to be agglutinated For practical purposes we can ignore the serum of the donor, since it is so diluted by the blood of the recipient We have, therefore, to consider the effect of the serum of the recipient upon the corpuscles of the donor

Group 1 is the group of universal recipients, that is, its members can receive without causing agglutination cells of each of the other groups, but cannot give with safety to any but members of their own group Individuals belonging to group 4, on the other hand, cannot safely receive blood from any but their own group Their blood can, however, be given to any other group and they are therefore known as universal donors

Group 2 corpuscles are agglutinated by group 3 serum, but not by their own, while those of group 3 are agglutinated by group 2 serum, but again, not by their own

By having stocks of the serum of groups 2 and 3, we can readily determine to which group any individual belongs, since 1 is agglutinated by both, while 4 is not The tests are made by adding a little citrate to the unknown blood and mixing it with the standard sera on a glass slide The agglutination will occur in a few minutes, if at all, and may readily be seen with the low power of the microscope

Recent work has indicated that some of the blood groups may need subdivision

Immunity

The chemical defences of the body against injury and disease are numerous The property that the blood possesses of coagulating is a defence against hæmorrhage, the acid of the gastric juice is a great protection against harmful bacteria introduced with food Bacterial activity in urine is inhibited by the acidity of that secretion

Far more important and widespread in its effects than any of the foregoing is the bactericidal (*i e* bacteria-killing) action of the blood and lymph, a study of this question has led to many interesting results, especially in connection with the problem of immunity

It is a familiar fact that one attack of many infective maladies protects us against another attack of the same disease The person is said to be *immune* either partially or completely against that disease Vaccination produces in a patient an attack of cowpox or vaccinia This disease is either closely related to smallpox, or maybe it is smallpox modified and rendered less malignant by passing through the body of a calf At any rate, an attack of vaccinia renders

a person immune to smallpox, or variola, for a certain number of years Vaccination is an instance of what is called *protective inoculation*, which is now practised with success in reference to other diseases, such as plague and typhoid fever The study of immunity has also rendered possible what may be called *curative inoculation*, or the injection of antitoxic material as a cure for diphtheria, tetanus, and snake-poisoning, the use of tuberculin in consumption (and of vaccines prepared from dead bacteria in other diseases) comes into the same category

The leucocytes or phagocytes destroy bacteria by feeding on them, but the fluid part of the blood is often antagonistic to bacterial life, and this power was first discovered when the effort was made to grow various kinds of bacteria in it, it was looked upon as probable that blood-serum would prove a suitable soil or medium for this purpose It was found in some instances to have exactly the opposite effect The chemical characters of the substances which kill the bacteria are not fully known, indeed, the same is true for most of the substances we have to speak of in this connection Absence of knowledge on this particular point has not, however, prevented important practical discoveries from being made

So far as is known at present, the substances in question are protein in nature The bactericidal powers of blood are destroyed by heating it for an hour to 55° C Whether the substances are derived from the leucocytes is a disputed point The substances, whatever be their source or their chemical nature, are called *bacteriolysins*

Closely allied to the bactericidal power of blood, or blood-serum, is its globulicidal power By this is meant that the blood-serum of one animal has the power of dissolving the red blood-corpuscles of another species If the serum of one animal is injected into the blood-stream of an animal of another species, the result is a destruction of its red corpuscles, which may be so excessive as to lead to the passing of the liberated hæmoglobin into the urine (hæmoglobinuria) The substance or substances in the serum that possess this property are called *hæmolysins*, and though there is some doubt whether bacterio-lysins and hæmolysins are identical, there is no doubt that they are closely related substances

Normal blood possesses a certain proportion of substances which are inimical to the life of our bacterial foes But when a person gets run down, every one knows he is then liable to "catch anything" This coincides with a diminution in the bactericidal power of his blood But even a perfectly healthy person has not an unlimited supply of bacterio-lysin, and if the bacteria are sufficiently numerous he will fall a victim to the disease they produce Here, however, comes in the remarkable part of the defence In the struggle he

will produce more and more bacterio-lysin, if he gets well it means that the bacteria are finally vanquished, and his blood remains rich in the particular bacterio-lysin he has produced, and so will render him immune for a time to further attacks from that particular species of bacterium Each bacterium attacked in this way seems to cause the development of a specific anti-substance

Immunity can more conveniently be produced gradually in animals, and this applies, not only to the bacteria, but in certain cases to the toxins they form If, for instance, the bacilli which produce diphtheria are grown in a suitable medium, they produce the diphtheria poison, or toxin, much in the same way that yeast-cells will produce alcohol when grown in a solution of sugar Diphtheria toxin is associated with a proteose, as is also the poison of snake-venom If a certain small dose called a "lethal dose" is injected into a guinea-pig the result is death But if the guinea-pig receives a smaller dose it will recover, a few days later it will stand a rather larger dose, and this may be continued until, after many successive gradually increasing doses, it will finally resist an amount equal to many lethal doses without any ill effects The gradual introduction of the toxin has called forth the production of an antitoxin If this is done in the horse instead of the guinea-pig the production of antitoxin is still more marked, and the serum obtained from the blood of an immunised horse when injected into human beings suffering from diphtheria, and rapidly overcomes the disease The two actions of the blood, antitoxic and antibacterial, are frequently associated, but may be entirely distinct

There is no doubt that in these cases the antitoxin neutralises the toxin much in the same way that an acid neutralises an alkali If the toxin and antitoxin are mixed in a test-tube, and time allowed for the interaction to occur, the result is an innocuous mixture The toxin, however, is merely neutralised, not destroyed, for if the mixture in the test-tube is heated to 68° C the antitoxin is coagulated and destroyed, and the toxin remains as poisonous as ever

Immunity is distinguished into *active* and *passive* Active immunity is produced by the development of protective substances in the body, passive immunity by the injection of a protective serum. Of the two, the former is the more permanent

Ricin, the poisonous protein of castor-oil seeds, and *abrin*, that of the jequirity bean, also produce, when gradually given to animals, an immunity, due to the production of antiricin and antiabrin respectively

Ehrlich's hypothesis to explain such facts is usually spoken of as the *side-chain theory* of immunity He considered that the toxins are capable of uniting with the protoplasm of living cells by possessing groups of atoms like those by which nutritive proteins are united to cells during normal assimilation He terms these *haptophor* groups,

and the groups to which these are attached in the cells he terms *receptor* groups. The introduction of a toxin stimulates an excessive production of receptors, which are finally thrown out into the circulation, and the free circulating receptors constitute the antitoxin. The comparison of the process to assimilation is justified by the fact that non-toxic substances such as milk or egg-white introduced gradually by successive doses into the blood-stream cause the formation of anti-substances capable of coagulating them.

Up to this point I have spoken only of the blood, but workers are steadily bringing forward evidence to show that other cells of the body may by similar measures be rendered capable of producing a corresponding protective mechanism.

The substances which on injection provoke the appearance of antidotes of this nature are of protein or protein-like nature; they are spoken of as *antigens*.

One further development of the theory must be mentioned. At least two different substances are considered to be necessary to render a serum bactericidal or globulicidal. The bacterio-lysin or hæmolysin consists of these two substances. One of these is called the *immune body*, the other the *complement*. We may illustrate the use of these terms by an example. The repeated injection of the blood of one animal (*e.g.*, the goat) into the blood of another animal (*e.g.*, a sheep) after a time renders the latter animal immune to further injections, and at the same time causes the production of a serum which dissolves readily the red blood-corpuscles of the first animal. The sheep's serum is thus hæmolytic towards goat's blood-corpuscles. This power is destroyed by heating to 56° C. for half an hour, but returns when the fresh serum of any animal is added. The specific immunising substance formed in the sheep is called the immune body; the enzyme-like substance destroyed by heat is the complement. The latter is not specific, since it is furnished by the blood of non-immunised animals, but it is nevertheless essential for hæmolysis. Ehrlich believes that the immune body has two side groups—one which connects with the receptor of the red corpuscles, and one which unites with the haptophor group of the complement, and thus renders possible the enzyme-like action of the complement on the red corpuscles. Various antibacterial sera which have not been the success in treating disease they were expected to be, are probably too poor in complement, though they may contain plenty of the immune body.

To put it another way: the cell-dissolving substances cannot act on their object of attack without an intermediate substance to anchor them on to the object in question. This intermediary substance, known as the immune body or amboceptor, is specific, and varies with the substance to be attacked (red corpuscles, bacterium, toxin, etc.). The complement may be compared to a person who

wants to unlock a door, to do this effectively he must be provided with the proper key (amboceptor or immune body)

Quite distinct from the bactericidal, globulicidal, and antitoxic properties of blood is its agglutinating action This is another result of infection with many kinds of bacteria or their toxins The blood acquires the property of rendering immobile and clumping together the specific bacteria concerned in the infection The test applied to the blood in cases of typhoid fever, and generally called Widal's reaction, depends on this fact The substances that produce this effect are called *agglutinins* They also are probably protein-like in nature, but are more resistant to heat than the lysins Prolonged heating to over 60° C is necessary to destroy their activity

We thus see that the means of combating our bacterial enemies are various, in some cases they are rendered immobile by agglutinins, and in other cases, killed by bacterio-lysins In other instances, their toxins are neutralised by antitoxins, and in others again they are directly devoured by phagocytes Metschnikoff's view, which is shared by most bacteriologists, is that phagocytosis is the supreme method, and the others are merely auxiliaries, or confined to a small number of cases If a foreign organism is destroyed by the leucocytes, it produces no ill effects when it enters the body of a man or other animal, but if it is not destroyed, it grows and produces a disease, and it is therefore called *pathogenic* If the phagocytes can be induced to feed on a pathogenic organism, it is at once rendered non-pathogenic The discovery of *opsonins*, by A E Wright, emphasises this view and shows one means the body possesses of persuading the leucocytes to eat bacteria, which would otherwise be distasteful to them Washed bacteria from a culture are usually refused by leucocytes, but if the bacteria have been previously soaked in serum, especially if that serum has been obtained from the blood of an animal previously immunised against that special bacterium, then the leucocytes devour them eagerly Something has either been added to the bacterium to make it tasty, or something removed from it which previously made it distasteful whichever is the case, the action is described as the action of an *opsonin* (derived from a Greek word which means "to prepare the feast")

We may take the specific case of the tubercle bacillus as an instance where such work is of value All of us are breathing in these bacilli every day of our lives, but many of us escape tuberculosis because the opsonic power of our blood is sufficiently high to render the bacilli an easy prey to leucocytes In those to whom the organism is pathogenic, the modern treatment is directed to enhancing nature's cure by increasing the opsonic power of the patient's blood by good food and pure air

Lastly, we come to a question which more directly appeals to the physiologist than the preceding, because experiments in relation to immunity have furnished us with what has hitherto been lacking, a means of distinguishing human blood from the blood of other animals

The discovery was made by Tchistovitch (1899), and his original experiment was as follows —Rabbits, dogs, goats, and guinea-pigs were inoculated with eel-serum, which is toxic he thereby obtained from these animals an antitoxic serum But the serum was not only antitoxic [illegible] produced a precipitate when added to eel-serum, but not when added to the serum of any other animal In other words, not only has a specific antitoxin been produced, but also a specific *precipitin* Numerous observers have since found that this is a general rule throughout the animal kingdom, including man. If, for instance, a rabbit is treated with human blood, the serum ultimately obtained from the rabbit contains a specific precipitin for human blood, that is to say, a precipitate is formed on adding such a rabbit's serum to human blood, but not on adding it to the blood of any other animal There may be a slight reaction with the blood of allied animals, for instance, with monkey's blood in the case of man The great value of the test is its delicacy, it will detect the specific blood when it is greatly diluted, after it has been dried for weeks, or even when it is mixed with the blood of other animals

The lipides contained in cells (mainly in the cell-membrane) play some part in the relationship of such cells to toxins The matter has been mainly studied in relation to red corpuscles, and the hæmolysins (such as snake-venom, saponin, etc), which attack them There is some evidence that the cholesterol in the envelope of the red corpuscles is a protective agent. A few years ago, Preston Kyes stated that lecithin is the amboceptor which anchors the hæmolysin on to the red cells But more recent research has failed to substantiate this view, and the compounds which Kyes described and called lecithides are impure mixtures of several substances It is much more probable that the real agent at work in hæmolysis is a lipolytic or fat-splitting enzyme, this splits up the lecithin of the cell, liberating oleic acid and deoleolecithin (that is, lecithin *minus* its oleic acid radical), and it is these cleavage products which dissolve out the hæmoglobin and so destroy the corpuscles

Anaphylaxis—The word anaphylaxis dates from 1905 and was coined by Richet, he was studying the action of poisons obtained from the sea-anemone, and he found that if a small dose which caused no symptoms in a dog was followed a week or two later by the same small dose, the animal became ill and usually died This increased susceptibility lasted a considerable time, and he called it anaphylaxis (*ana* against, *phylaxis* protection) It was subsequently found that similar reactions may be produced when minute amounts of almost any foreign protein are injected into the blood-stream with an appropriate time interval between the injections The increased sensibility to the toxic reaction is called sensitisation

If the animal recovers from the shock of the second injection it remains insensitive for a considerable time to intoxication by the same protein It is said to have been desensitised, but this protection does not extend to injection of a protein of different chemical composition This fact has been utilised in the determination of the purity of protein and in the recognition of blood stains for legal purposes These reactions are most marked in guinea-pigs and dogs, but fatal anaphylactic reactions have occurred in man, when the facts mentioned above have been ignored Numerous theories have been advanced to explain these remarkable occurrences, but these have now become part of the subjects of Bacteriology and Pathology

Recent investigations suggest that the stability of body colloids, including those of the plasma, is altered so that they are less resistant to change than those of the normal animal

Similar physiological reaction may follow a single intravenous injection of relatively large amounts of foreign protein, and of certain medicinal substances The effects are known as anaphylactoid phenomena and are of importance in intravenous therapy

CHAPTER XXIII

GENERAL METABOLISM AND ENERGY EXCHANGES

IN general metabolism we consider the total amount of energy exchange which is going on in the body under varying conditions

Energy —When the fuel in an engine's furnace is burnt, there is no real destruction of matter, for the products of combustion (CO_2, etc) are equal in weight to the original fuel, *plus* the oxygen of the air which has entered into combination with it During this combustion or oxidation, energy is liberated and energy, like matter, is also indestructible though it exhibits transformations In the unburnt fuel the energy is latent or potential, but as the coal burns three forms of actual energy or force are liberated one of these is *light*, another is *heat*, and the third is *mechanical work* which makes the wheels go round There is a fixed relationship between these forms of energy, heat, for example, can be transformed into mechanical work, but always in a definitely fixed proportion Consequently energy can be measured by selecting one kind as the standard, and then the value of other forms of energy can be calculated Engineers select a work unit, horse-power, foot-pound, etc, but the standard which has been selected by physiologists is the heat unit or calorie

The Calorie * (the large calorie) is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one kilogramme of water from freezing-point to 1° C, and the instruments which measure the calorific value of substances are called calorimeters

The data necessary for the study of the energy exchanges of the body are determined by the process known as **calorimetry**

The Bomb Calorimeter —The heat of combustion of any of the food substances or of the excreta is determined by placing a known weight of the substance in question (A, fig 170) within a bomb (B) immersed in a known volume of water, the water is at air-temperature in a brass vessel (E), enclosed within an ebonite casing (F), which acts as a non-conductor of heat The bomb is connected with a

* The small calorie is a unit in which 1 gramme takes the place of the kilogramme (1000 grammes) in the large calorie

cylinder of oxygen at high pressure, and the substance A is ignited by an electric spark by means of the wires D The products of combustion pass out through the spiral tube C, and on their journey give off their heat to the water If the heat of combustion of gases or volatile liquids is to be determined, a special form of burner is introduced at the opening at the bottom of the bomb When the combustion is complete the rise of temperature of the water is observed by the thermometer T During the combustion, the water is kept in movement by the stirrer S, which is worked by a small motor The rise of temperature multiplied by the weight of the water gives the amount of heat expressed in calories (see above)

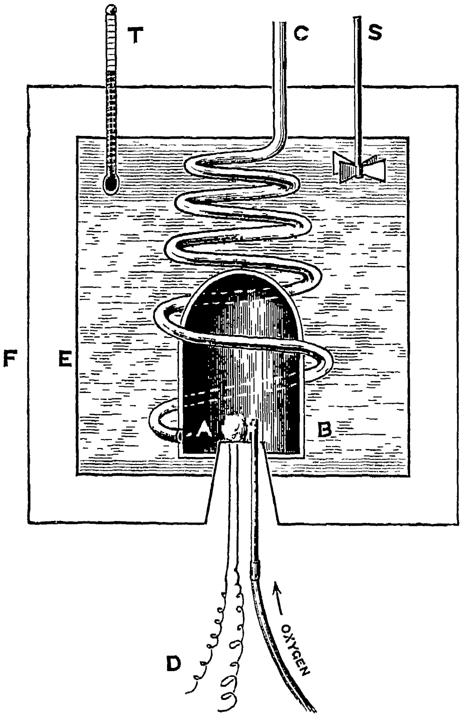


FIG 170 —Diagram of bomb calorimeter (After Thomsen)

Any given oxidation will always produce the same amount of heat Thus, if we oxidise a gramme of carbon, a known amount of heat is produced, whether the element is free or in a chemical compound The following figures show the approximate number of heat-units produced by the combustion of 1 gramme of the following substances —

Hydrogen	34 6	**Fat**	**9 3**
Carbon	8 1	Cane-sugar	3 4
Urea	2 5	**Starch**	**4 1**
Albumin	**5 6**		

It is, however, most important to remember that the "physiological heat-value" of a food may be different from the "physical heat-value," *i e*, the amount of heat produced by combustion in the body may be different from that produced when the same amount of the same food is burnt in a calorimeter This is the case with the proteins, because they do not undergo complete combustion in the body, for each gramme of protein yields a third of a gramme of urea, which

has a considerable heat-value of its own Thus albumin, which, by complete combustion, yields 5 6 calories, has a physiological heat-value = 5 6 *minus* one-third of the heat-value of urea $(2\ 5) = 5\ 6 - 0\ 85 = 4\ 7$ Rubner has shown that this figure must be reduced to **nearly 4**, as some of the imperfectly burnt products of decomposition of proteins escape as uric acid, creatinine, etc, in the urine, and there is a small quantity of similar substances in the fæces No difference between the physical and physiological heat-values of fats and carbohydrates exists, provided, of course, that all the fat and carbohydrate in the food is absorbed The figures indicate that fat is a much better source of energy than carbohydrate and that it is also the better method of storing energy from the point of view of weight

Having obtained in this way the energy value of the food taken in, expressed as units of heat, the next step is to arrive at the heat produced in the animal body Other manifestations of energy in the body, such as kinetic energy, must also be taken into account, and it is usual to express these also in terms of heat, one small calorie being equivalent to 425 5 gramme-metres

Methods of Studying Metabolism —We may study metabolism directly or indirectly In the former, we find the amount of heat produced by the body under varying conditions in the latter, we find the amount of oxygen consumed in a given time and from our knowledge of the nature of the fuel which is being oxidised in the body we can arrive at an idea of the amount of heat produced The **direct method** consists of putting the individual or animal into a calorimeter The heat produced is the best indication of the rate of the general metabolism

From time to time numerous calorimeters, on the principle of the bomb calorimeter, designed for this purpose have been introduced, but by far the best is the Atwater-Benedict instrument, and its special value consists in the circumstance that it can be used for making observations on man The method employed will be seen to be based precisely on the same principles as those of the bomb calorimeter The apparatus is described below

The Atwater-Benedict Respiration Calorimeter (fig 171) consists of a room with non-conducting walls Through this run coils of water-pipes, fitted with metal discs Only one of these tubes is shown in the figure (A) Any rise of the temperature of the room is at once taken up by the discs and communicated to the water The whole of the heat production of the individual in the calorimeter is therefore spent in raising the temperature of the water The amount of water which goes through the pipes multiplied by the difference in the temperature of the water as it enters and as it leaves the calorimeter, gives the

heat output of the person within it This temperature is ascertained by the thermometers (T, T)

In the bomb calorimeter it is possible to ensure the complete combustion of the substance placed in the bomb It is not possible to ensure the complete oxidation of the food eaten For instance, food may be retained and assimilated with a gain of weight to the individual This difficulty is met in the following way The air of the calorimeter is kept circulating through a series of chambers in which the carbon dioxide and the water are absorbed, and subsequently estimated As the oxygen is used up by the individual, fresh

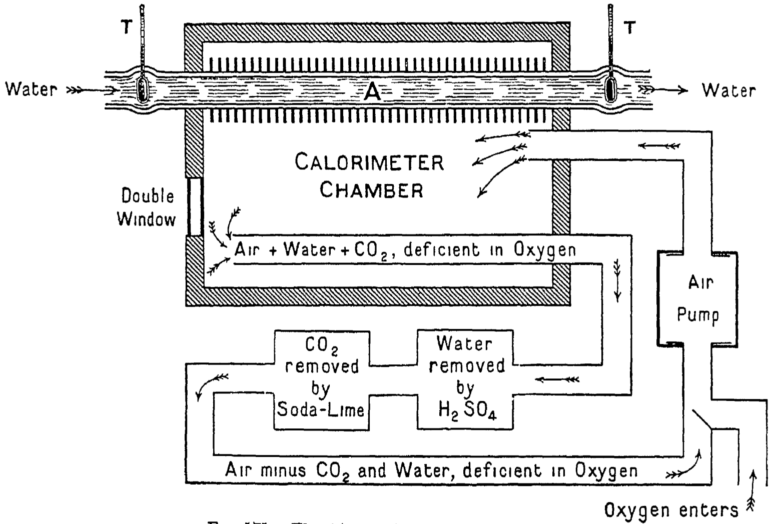


FIG 171 —The Atwater Benedict calorimeter

oxygen is admitted in known quantities The urine and fæces are analysed as well as the air, at the beginning and end of the experiment The following additional data are therefore forthcoming (1) the carbon, hydrogen, and nitrogen given out by the body, (2) the oxygen taken in, and from these the amounts of protein, fat, and carbohydrate metabolised in the body, can be calculated The apparatus combines therefore the direct and indirect methods of studying metabolism

In the calorimeter is a bicycle, the hind-wheel of which is replaced or connected with an arrangement, *e g* a dynamo or a hand brake, by which the amount of work done can be measured

The calorimeter is also supplied with a bed, a table, a chair, and a double window, through which food of known weight and composition can be supplied, so that an experiment may continue over

two or three days, and the effect of work, sleep, various diets, etc, can be studied

The *Benedict differential calorimeter* is in some degree a simpler apparatus in which the heat given off is measured by finding the amount of heat (generated electrically) which must be supplied to keep the temperature of a control chamber up to that containing the animal or man Both chambers are enclosed in a common outer chamber and differences in their temperatures are recorded electrically It is claimed that the calorimeter is less liable than the Atwater-Benedict type to be affected by accidental errors such as leakage

Indirect Methods—These are the most convenient methods and are extensively used in the investigation of disease In all, the amount of oxygen used in a given time is determined and the number of calories produced calculated therefrom

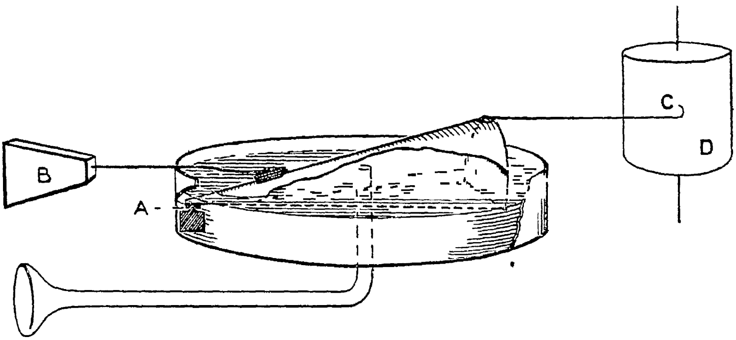


FIG 172 —Diagram of Krogh s recording spirometer

Krogh's and Benedict's Methods—In these methods, which differ only in detail, the individual breathes, for a given time, to and from a spirometer containing pure oxygen, the carbon dioxide of the expired air being absorbed by passing it through soda-lime The oxygen used may then be read off directly from the spirometer

The Douglas Bag Method—In this method the expired air is collected in a Douglas Bag over a given period, say of ten minutes A sample is analysed and the volume obtained by passing the contents of the bag through a gas meter The amount of oxygen consumed (usually **300 to 400** c c per min) is obtained by subtracting the amount of oxygen found in the bag from that in the normal air Several corrections for temperature and water vapour have to be made in making the actual calculation, but these need not concern us here They are usually taken from tables

Having found the amount of oxygen consumed by any of these

methods, we calculate the calories produced This depends on the nature of the fuel utilised It must be realised that this is not necessarily the fuel taken in by the mouth, but also that previously stored in the tissues It has been determined by burning food in a limited quantity of oxygen that, if carbohydrate is being burnt, **1 litre of oxygen produces** 5 05 calories, if fat 4 6 C and if protein or a mixed diet 4 8 For practical purposes the average may be taken as **5 calories**

In more accurate work it is necessary to take into consideration the **respiratory quotient** (R Q), *i e*, $\frac{CO_2 \text{ given out}}{O_2 \text{ used}}$, see p 288, which gives an indication of the relative amounts of carbohydrate and fat being burned The reason for this is as follows If carbohydrate was being burned, *e g* glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), all the oxygen lost would appear again as carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the expired air, since the carbohydrate itself contains sufficient oxygen to oxidise its own hydrogen The respiratory quotient would therefore be unity

If, however, a fat was being consumed, *e g* tristearin $C_{57}H_{110}O_6$, oxygen would also be used in oxidising the hydrogen to form H_2O Thus, the amount of oxygen taken in would become larger than the amount of carbon dioxide expired and the respiratory quotient would become less than unity

On a mixed diet the **R Q is about 0 82,** and since protein is about the average its effect on the quotient need not be considered

The higher the respiratory quotient (*i e* the more carbohydrate is being used) the more heat is produced by a litre of oxygen

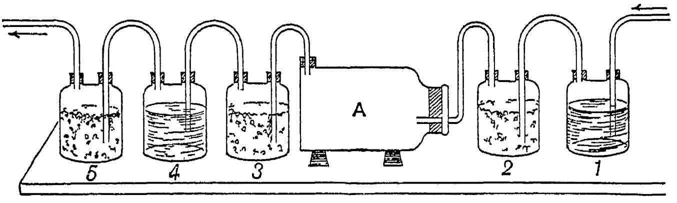


FIG 173 —Haldane and Pembrey's apparatus for estimating the carbonic acid and aqueous vapour given off by an animal

Metabolism of Small Animals — The metabolism of small animals may be studied by enclosing the animal in a small chamber the air of which is periodically replaced and analysed The metabolism of tadpoles which is of interest in relation to the effect of thyroid extract may be studied in this way (Huxley) but for larger animals the method of Haldane is convenient (see fig 173)

The animal is placed in the vessel A, air is sucked through the apparatus (which must be perfectly air-tight) by a water-pump at a suitable rate The arrows indicate the direction in which the air passes It goes first through two Woulff's bottles, 1 and 2 No 1 contains soda-lime, which frees the air from carbonic acid, No 2 contains pumice-stone moistened with sulphuric acid, which frees the air from aqueous vapour The pure, dry air next reaches the

animal chamber, and the animal gives off to it carbonic acid and aqueous vapour It passes then through the three bottles, 3, 4, and 5 No 3 contains pumice and sulphuric acid, which removes the water, No 4 contains soda-lime, which absorbs the carbonic acid, and No 5 contains pumice and sulphuric acid, which absorbs any water carried over from bottle 4 The increase of weight in bottle 3 at the end of a given time (*e g* an hour) is the weight of water given off by the animal in that time, the increase of weight in bottles 4 and 5 weighed together gives the amount of carbonic acid produced by the animal in the same time

Metabolic Rate —Calorimetry is now an exact scientific method, and statistics were accumulated during the recent war, when it became necessary in feeding the nation and the army to apportion the available food in relation to the work done in various avocations The following gives a few typical figures (from Graham Lusk) and will be sufficient to illustrate the results obtained

Man in bed 24 hours uses and requires (**basal metabolism**)	1,680	large calories
In bed 8 hours, sedentary occupation for 16 hours	2,170	„
Bed, 8 hours, in a chair, 14 hours, walking, 2 hours	**2,500**	„
Active outdoor life	3,500	„
Rider in a 6 days' bicycle race	10,000	„

As stated already, external work is the great varying factor, the greater amount of work a man does the larger the supply of food needed, especially of the fuel foods

In order to be quite clear, it is necessary to define these terms *Internal work* is the work of the various internal organs carried out involuntarily to maintain life (cardiac activity, respiration, and the like) *External* work is the work performed by the voluntary muscles Even if a man rests absolutely quiet in bed all day, his internal work goes on, and his body temperature is maintained

Basal Metabolism —This is the metabolism which is necessary to maintain the essential functions when the individual is in a state of mental and physical rest, preferably asleep It varies with size, age, and sex, but for the average young adult it may be taken as **1700 calories** In certain conditions, notably exophthalmic goitre, the basal metabolic rate may be increased For purposes of comparison it is usual to calculate the metabolism in terms of body surface, which may be calculated from the height and weight

Small individuals and animals have a higher basal metabolism *per unit of body-weight* than large animals as they have a relatively

greater body surface from which heat is lost As the body increases in size the volume increases more rapidly than the surface

It is found that the average young man produces about 40 calories per square metre of body surface per hour, and a woman slightly less This is about 1 calorie per kilogram per hour

Total Respiratory Exchange

Ranke gives the following numbers from experiments made on a man, who was taking a mixed diet consisting of 100 grammes of protein, 100 of fat, and 250 of carbohydrate in the twenty-four hours The amount of oxygen absorbed in the same time was 666 grammes, of which 560 passed off as carbon dioxide, 9 in urea, 19 as water formed from the hydrogen of the protein, and 78 from that of the fat

Vierordt from a number of experiments on human beings gives the following average numbers the amount of oxygen absorbed in the twenty-four hours is 744 grammes, this leads to the formation of 900 grammes of carbonic acid (which contains about half a pound of carbon) and 228 grammes of water

The respiratory interchange is lessened during sleep It is especially small in the winter sleep of hibernating animals In muscular exercise the quotient rises, this is due in part to increased combustion of glucose

The Conservation of Energy

From such calorimetric studies it becomes evident that the Law of the Conservation of Energy is applicable to the animal body

The following table exhibits the relation between the production and discharge of energy in twenty-four hours in the human organism at rest, estimated in calories The table conveniently takes the form of a balance-sheet in which production and discharge of heat are compared, to keep the body-temperature normal these must be equal The basis of the table in the left-hand (income) side is the same as Voit's diet (*q v*) —

Production of heat Metabolism of		Large Calories	*Discharge of heat*	Large Calories
Protein (120 gr)	120 × 4 =	480	Warming water in food, 2 6 kilos × 25° C =	65
Fat (100 gr)	100 × 9 4 =	940	Warming air in respiration, 16 kilos × 25° × 0 24 =	96
Carbohydrates (=333 gr starch)	333 × 4 16 =	1385	Evaporation in lungs, 630 gr × 582 =	366
			Radiation, evaporation, etc, at surface, *plus* the thermal equivalent of mechanical work done accounts for the remainder	2278
		2805		2805

The figures under the heading Production are obtained by multiplying the weight of food by its physiological heat-value. The figures on the other side of the balance-sheet are obtained as follows. The water in the food is reckoned as weighing 2.6 kilos. This is supposed to be at the temperature of the air, taken as 12° C.; it has to be raised to the temperature of the body, 37° C., that is, through 25° C. Hence the weight of water multiplied by 25 gives the number of calories expended in heating it. The weight of air is taken as 16 kilos; this also has to be raised 25° C., and so to be multiplied by 25; it has further to be multiplied by the specific heat of air (0.24). The 630 grammes of water evaporated in the lungs must be multiplied by the potential or latent heat of steam at 37° C. (582); the portion of heat lost by radiation, conduction, and evaporation from the skin constitutes about four-fifths of the whole, and is obtained by deducting the three previous amounts from the total. This table does not take into account the small quantities of heat lost with urine and fæces. If the man does external work the amount of energy dissipated is increased, and he would, in consequence, require more to be supplied in the form of food. Very few men in active work get on well with a smaller supply than 3500 calories in their diet.

We may state the general results of experiments of this nature as follows:—

1. If an animal is doing no external work, and is neither gaining nor losing substance, the potential energy of the food (expressed as its heat of combustion) will be equal to that of the excreta, *plus* that given off as heat, *plus* that of internal work.

2. If an animal is doing external work, and is neither gaining nor losing substance, the potential energy of the food will be equal to the heat used in warming food, *plus* that given off as heat, *plus* that of the internal and external work.

3. If an animal is doing no external work, but gaining or losing body-substance, the potential energy of the food will equal the potential energy of the excreta, *plus* that given off as heat, *plus* that of the internal work, *plus* that of the gain by the body-substance (a loss by the body being regarded as a negative gain).

4. In an animal doing external work, and gaining or losing body-substance, the potential energy of the food will equal the potential energy of the excreta, *plus* that given off as heat, *plus* that of the internal and external work, *plus* that of the gain (positive or negative) of the body-substance.

Of the heat produced in the body, it was estimated by Helmholtz that about 7 per cent. is represented by external mechanical work, and that of the remainder about four-fifths are discharged by radiation, conduction, and evaporation from the skin, and the remaining

fifth by the lungs and excreta This is only an average estimate, subject to much variation, especially in the amount of work done

Body-weight depends on the relative amount of energy taken in and lost—potential energy being stored in the form of fats In the young the income exceeds the expenditure and the body gains in weight, but a balance is usually arrived at later The law of the conservation holds in relation to stout persons whatever their own opinion of the matter! To reduce body-weight, more energy has to be expended or less taken in, to increase, the reverse is necessary Certain individuals have a greater or smaller resting metabolism than others and have an undue tendency to become thin or fat In gross cases, as we shall see later, the difference may depend on changes in the ductless glands, but more commonly the difference depends on a variable response to the normal stimulating effect of protein in metabolism

CHAPTER XXIV

DIET

The Quality of the Diet—From what has been said of the chemical constitution of the body, it is evident that a large variety of substances must be supplied to nourish the body adequately They are —(1) Protein, the most important constituent of meats (2) Carbohydrate, contained in starchy and sugary substances (3) Fats (4) Water (5) Salts (6) Vitamins

As originally pointed out by Liebig, food is necessary to build up tissue and to act as a source of energy The former function is more particularly the duty of the protein of the diet, the latter is performed for the most part by the fats and carbohydrates

The water is necessary to promote the solution of substances during absorption, metabolism, excretion, etc, while the salts and accessory substances act as general regulators of body processes

It is also important that the foodstuffs should be provided in a digestible form As an instance of this many vegetables, peas, beans, lentils, contain even more protein than beef, but they are not so nutritious, as they are less digestible, much passing out in the fæces unused

The food also must have a **certain minimum bulk**, in order that it may stimulate the intestine and so be propelled along the gut Most natural foods contain a certain amount of indigestible material or roughage such as cellulose, which are not much affected by the digestive juices and which keep up the bulk of the intestinal contents Unfortunately, many modern foods, *eg* white flour, have this roughage removed by purification, and it is claimed that this is responsible for constipation When such articles of diet are eaten the necessary roughage should be added in the form of fruits and vegetables which contain cellulose

In considering the amounts of the various body requirements we may roughly compare the body to a steam engine To maintain this in order it is necessary to supply it with fuel and also to repair worn parts The burning of the fuel gives rise to heat and also generates the work which it is the object of the engine to accomplish Food in relation to the body fulfils the same

two uses, for it undergoes combustion and thus the bodily heat is kept up, and work is rendered possible Food also achieves the second function, and supplies the material for the repair of the body's framework which undergoes wear and tear as a result of activity Here, however, the body is superior to the engine, in the case of the latter, repair has to be accomplished by means of "spare parts," or at any rate of material similar to those originally employed in the construction of the machine, the living body is able to utilise for repair certain materials, the proteins, etc, in the food which are not identical with its own substance, but which are rendered identical by digestive and metabolic processes

The Requirement of Protein

How much protein is really necessary in the diet is a subject which has been much discussed and which is of considerable importance, since this constituent of the diet when taken as meat is much more expensive than the others and there is evidence that excess may be harmful in that it may throw unnecessary strain on the organs which have to deal with it

When we take in protein we do so essentially to replace tissue wastage which is indicated theoretically by the nitrogen excreted when no nitrogen is taken in the food, we must consider whether or not the minimum intake of nitrogen to replace nitrogen lost is really the optimum As we shall see, the form in which the nitrogen is taken is of great importance

By far the most important experiments on this subject are those of Chittenden on himself, his colleagues, and his students, and on soldiers and athletes, over comparatively long periods of time The protein intake was reduced by half or less than half the quantity hitherto regarded as necessary The depreciation was followed by no untoward results, indeed, it was stated that the muscular force in an athlete was increased Mental activity was claimed to be undiminished, and the desire for rich food soon disappeared

The important character of Chittenden's work gave the faddists on matters of diet an important opportunity of being listened to There was, for instance, a group of these to whom the very necessary act of chewing assumed almost the nature of a religious ceremony, and they have sought to convince mankind of its superlative importance

There are in connection with the Chittenden diet several circumstances that should make us pause before we accept his conclusions to the full Many people eat too much, would it be advisable for us all to eat too little, and is Chittenden's diet too scanty ?

No doubt the over-eaters would benefit by eating too little for a

have, for instance, no knowledge of any storage places for protein, in the same way in which the liver and adipose tissue act as storehouses for carbohydrate and fat respectively But it is an undoubted factor all the same, many people have more of it than others, and this "stamina," as it is sometimes called, is a lucky possession for those who have it Research on immunity has, however, shown us that this is in part due to the condition of our leucocytes, and the opsonic power of the blood-plasma (see p 378) It may be that it is in this direction among others, that the abundance of protein food may assist us in repelling disease Each leucocyte may not require much in the way of repair every day, but it is more likely to be efficient if there is an abundant supply of repairing material available

The Specific Dynamic Action of Protein—Protein has one property out of all proportion to that possessed by other foodstuffs it very largely increases the production of heat in the body People (as in Chittenden's experiments) on a low protein diet suffer intensely from the cold One can double the heat production in a dog by giving it a large quantity of meat This is because the cleavage products of protein, the amino-acids or the ammonia produced by their metabolism, stimulate the production of heat Experiments with glycine and other amino-acids have proved this fully In diabetes glycine is completely converted into sugar without undergoing oxidation, and nevertheless an increase of heat production follows Hence it acts as a chemical stimulus to metabolism, and not in virtue of its energy-content This *specific dynamic action* of protein (Rubner), must not be lost sight of in settling the right amount which we should take in our daily food Roughly speaking, all the calories liberated in carbohydrate combustion may be used to produce work the figure in fat combustion is nearly but not quite so high, while only about 70 per cent of the protein calories are capable of conversion into any form of energy other than heat As we have already observed, the specific dynamic action of protein may vary in different individuals

Sources of Protein—The main source of protein is the flesh of animals and fishes, but we can also get protein in milk, cheese, eggs, potato, and flour, the leguminous foods, peas, beans, lentils, also contain large quantities These useful vegetables contain as much protein as beef and mutton, and if *properly* cooked are almost as easily digested Nevertheless there are proteins and proteins, and some are better adapted to animal nutrition than others, the most adaptable are those of animal origin, but there are some vegetable proteins which are nearly equal to them, and of these the protein of potato stands pre-eminent, the pity of it is that the potato contains so little, but that little is good Certain foods have a higher *biological value* than others (see Irreducible Protein Minimum)

The war-time allowance of butcher's meat was quite sufficient for physiological purposes, and the reduction was of great benefit to those who had been big meat-eaters previously. The difference between meats lies largely in their digestibility, *i.e.*, the readiness with which the digestive juices can penetrate between their muscle fibres. The white flesh of chicken and fish is considered to be more readily digestible and hence it is given in illness when digestion is impaired. From our knowledge of digestion we know, however, that the cooking is often quite as important as the choice of the article in promoting digestion.

Vegetarian Diet.—The facts regarding the constitution of proteins, in spite of the pleadings of vegetarians, go most emphatically to show that vegetable proteins are not so valuable as animal proteins, which contain more adequate amounts of the essential amino-acids—a consideration which is specially important in the young. We shall also see later that the nitrogen requirement of the body is more readily supplied by meat, eggs, and milk than by any other source of protein. Moreover, as we have already noted, vegetable proteins are less digestible as a rule.

The Place of Meat in a Dietary.—Meat is eaten because it forms a concentrated form of easily digestible protein, and protein is the great repairer of tissue waste. As a source of energy, it is about equal to carbohydrate and far inferior to fat; considering its price its use is therefore not economical. The man who works hard requires no more meat than the man in the arm-chair. The "Roast Beef of Old England" is really not the source of more energy, however much the contrary may be believed by those ignorant of physiological principles. An engine called upon to do more work does not necessarily want repair; what it needs is more fuel (coal or petrol). The human engine, if healthy, is the same; the invalids who *do* need repair are dealt with on different lines.

The Daily Calorie Requirement will depend on the size of the man and on variations in his activities, as is indicated by the study of the energy exchanges. A man of average size who stays in bed for the twenty-four hours needs about 1700 large calories in the day to maintain his temperature and his respiration, to keep his heart beating, and so forth. A larger man needs more, a smaller man less. The remainder of the calorie supply in an active person can be utilised for the performance of work. Most people happily do not spend their days in bed, and the old precept that if a man does not work neither shall he eat is seldom carried out in practice; but the converse that if he does work he should have more to eat is a *sine qua non*. The peace time allowance for a man doing a day's hard muscular labour is food equivalent to about 3500 calories, and under conditions of extreme work this may rise to 4000 in a day

or even higher Many people in the time of peace and plenty took food of this high calorific value even if they were not hard workers, and it was such people who as a consequence put on weight, it was just these people who lost their extra weight during the rationing period of war time

But the man who really is putting forth extra energy must either get it from an increase in his food intake, or fall back on his reserves of which the chief is in his adipose tissue So he becomes thin This reserve obviously will not last him for an indefinite time, so after a given period, if he still continues to work hard on insufficient food, the more precious protein reserves in his muscles and other tissues will suffer a harmful strain

There are some even in the scientific world who seem almost to believe that the law of conservation of energy does not apply to the chemical changes in a living animal They cite instances of people who do a large amount of work, and do it upon what most would regard as an insufficient diet, without detriment or loss of body-weight If a man only receives food in the day of the energy value say of 1500 large calories, and the heat he produces and the work he does are equivalent to 2000, then the additional 500 must have come from his internal resources, and he must have used up some of the material formerly stored in his body This is as certain as is the fact that one and one make two It is quite conceivable that his body may not have lost weight, but nevertheless fat may have disappeared, and been replaced by an equivalent weight of water, and excess of carbohydrate food which usually is a character of the diets of such people is just the sort of diet likely to cause retention of water in the body

Similarly there are some stout persons who try to disclaim all responsibility for their stoutness They should, however, be reminded that fat is composed of carbon, and the only way in which this gains access to the body is by the mouth. The more fat there is below the skin, the less easily does the individual lose heat, so the more difficult does it become for him to lose weight Dieting to be effective must be persisted in, but it *must* be effective if properly carried out It must, however, be granted to the too stout and the too thin that the basal metabolism and the extent to which it may be affected, *e g* by protein, varies appreciably in different persons

The Balance of the Diet—As has been stated in the previous Chapter, each food constituent has a definite calorific value per gramme protein (in the body) **4 1**, carbohydrate **4 1** and fat **9 3**, but the relative amounts of each which may be taken depend largely on personal taste and on the actual articles of diet available

The nutritive value of a diet depends chiefly on the amount of carbon and nitrogen it contains A man doing a moderate amount

of work and taking the usual diet will eliminate, chiefly from the lungs, in the form of carbon dioxide, from 250 to 280 grammes of carbon *per diem* During the same time he will eliminate, chiefly in the form of urea in the urine, about 15 to 18 grammes of nitrogen These substances are derived partly from the food and partly from the metabolism of the tissues, various forms of energy—mechanical motion and heat being the chief—being simultaneously liberated During muscular exercise the output of carbon greatly increases, the increased excretion of nitrogen is not so noticeable Taking, then, the state of moderate exercise, it is necessary that the waste should be replaced by fresh material in the form of food, and the proportion of carbon to nitrogen should be the same as in the excretions 250 to 15, or 16 6 to 1 The proportion of carbon to nitrogen in protein is, however, 53 to 15, or 3 5 to 1 The extra supply of carbon must come from non-nitrogenous food—viz, fat and carbohydrate

Voit gave the following daily diet—

Protein	120 grms
Fat	100 ,,
Carbohydrate	333 ,,

Ranke's diet closely resembled Voit's, it is—

Protein	100 grms
Fat	100 ,,
Carbohydrate	250 ,,

Such typical diets as these must not be considered as more than rough averages of what is necessary for a man in the course of the day Actual experience shows that in the diets of different nations there are considerable variations from this standard without the production of ill effects Age, and the amount of work done, also influence the amount of food necessary, growing children, for instance, require a relatively rich diet, thus, milk, the diet of the infant, is proportionally twice as rich in proteins, and half as rich again in fats, as the normal diet given above

This balance depends largely on the physical characteristics of the foods For example, it would be theoretically possible to supply all the calories in the form of meat, but it would require some six pounds, and clearly the quantity would become unpalatable Fat is essential when large amounts of physical work are being done If this constituent of the food is reduced, disagreeably large quantities of the other foods have to be taken to make up the required calories

The British System of Rationing—The civilian ration during the war was below the 3000 level for those not engaged in severe physical work There is no doubt that the civilian population here

cheerfully put up for a time with such a trivial hardship in order that active workers (munitioners, labourers, and men at the front) might get the share they really needed There was the amplest scientific justification for the increased bacon ration allowed to manual labourers Bacon is chiefly fat, and fat, as we have seen, is a condensed form of fuel, and it is this which is so necessary for stoking up the furnace when extra expenditure of energy is needed The military ration, however, exceeded 4000

Rations for Brain-workers —The brain works economically any measurable increase in energy-output is negligible, and so it may be at once said that the brain-worker requires no increased intake of food The food must naturally be easily digestible, one cannot expect a man to do good mental work who is suffering from the pangs of dyspepsia, but beyond this anything further is unnecessary

The Salt Requirement

It is not necessary to do more at the present stage than to mention the salt requirement of the diet, since the average diet contains adequate amounts of all the necessary salts This is, however, not always so For example, in some areas the *iodine* content in the ordinary foods is deficient and goitre results The iodine is necessary for the formation of thyroxine (*q v*) Excess of calcium and of certain fats may interfere with the metabolism of iodine, or the activity of micro-organisms may interfere with its absorption from the intestine Amongst the other essential salts of the diet is *calcium*, necessary for the bones, for blood clotting, and for cardiac contraction Calcium absorption is reduced when there is deficiency of vitamin D or of sunlight, and rickets may result *Phosphorus* is required for the bones, for the buffers of the blood and, possibly, for intestinal movements, *iron* for the red blood - corpuscles Although, like iodine, iron may be present in sufficient amount in the diet, it is not necessarily properly absorbed, and red blood-corpuscles may be deficient (*i e* anæmia) as a result More recently it has been shown that minute quantities of copper influence the metabolism of iron

Under certain conditions even *sodium chloride* may become deficient, as in the excessive sweating of certain occupations The excessive loss of sweat causes excessive loss of salt, and serious symptoms, which are alleviated by the drinking of salt solutions, may result

The Water Requirement

Water is necessary for the solution of the foodstuffs prior to absorption in the blood - stream Lack of fluid with meals may lead to lack of absorption of food Water is necessary for a large

number of body processes and, if insufficient, may lead to unfortunate results

When sweating is excessive, in order to cool the body, the urine may become so concentrated that precipitation of certain of its salts may occur and eventually, on frequent repetition of the process, "stone" may be formed in the urinary passages Ordinarily, we must remember, that in addition to the water which we take as such, we produce large quantities in the oxidation of the hydrogen of the foodstuffs, glucose produces more than half its weight of water From a study of the water content of the various foods it is seen that some contain large quantities of water as such, indeed, the major part of most fruit and vegetable is water

Vitamins

Although a diet may be adequate from the point of view of protein, carbohydrate and fat, it has now been definitely established that certain accessory food substances are necessary in the diet to maintain good health, especially of growing animals Experience gained in expeditions, in the old sailing ship days, and of the health of prisoners, had long indicated this It was not, however, until Eijkman, from his experience of prison diets, and, independently, Hopkins, from his investigation of restricted diets in relation to the essential amino-acids, placed the subject on an experimental basis that the importance of these accessory food factors was fully appreciated

The factors (erroneously called vitamins, because they were first thought to be amines) are, for the most part, products of the plant world, and from this source they are acquired by animals Though they are chemically obscure, they may be distinguished by differences in their source, in their action and in the maladies (deficiency diseases) which result from their absence It is customary to name those recognised as A, B, C, D, and E A, D, and E are soluble in fats, B and C in water, the other great solvent in the body

The Fat-Soluble Vitamin A—The original source is the green plant, whence it is acquired by animals, and becomes dissolved in their fat Thus it is present in milk and butter, provided the cows are fed on green food Animals have the power of storing the vitamin in their livers from which it may be obtained in the oil The oils of fishes which feed on green plant organisms in the sea, directly or by eating smaller fishes which do, are particularly rich in the vitamin Hence the virtue of cod-liver oil Butter substitutes, such as margarines made from vegetable fats, have usually no vitamin A and little D Both A and D are present in egg yolk

It is important to observe that vitamin A is very liable to destruction on heating, but it is now clear that this depends on

oxidation processes Milk can, therefore, be sterilised at quite high temperatures in an autoclave (air free) without losing its vitamin, which, however, is destroyed by ordinary boiling Speaking generally, condensed milk still has enough vitamin A, and dried milk also, provided the latter has been made by a process such as passing it over a heated drum, which dries without permitting too long exposure

Deficiency in vitamin A leads to the lack of growth of young animals, which is eventually fatal, and to a greatly increased tendency to bacterial infection, especially of the eyes Degeneration of the spinal cord, interference with reproduction, and keratinisation of epithelial cells causing xerophthalmia may also occur

It has been observed, especially by Steenbock, that a close parallel exists between the potency of vitamin A in many foods and the content of yellow fat-soluble pigment, and it has been found that the colour tests given by vitamin A are also given by the pigment carotene On investigation it has been shown that the administration of carotene causes the characteristic blue colour with antimony trichloride to appear in the livers and to prevent infection in rats fed on a diet deficient in vitamin A The results suggest that carotene is converted into the vitamin in the liver, or else that the growth-promoting potency of both the pigment and the liver oil is due to the same intensely active substance in both

The Antirachitic or Calcifying Vitamin D, and Sunlight— This vitamin has the same source as vitamin A, but may be distinguished from the latter by the fact that it is less easily oxidised, for example, cod-liver oil if exposed to the action of oxygen at 100° C for twenty-eight hours loses its power to cure xerophthalmia in rats while the action of vitamin D remains Butter, on the other hand, is less active than cod-liver oil in curing rickets, although more effective in curing xerophthalmia Vitamin A may also be distinguished by the fact that it gives a blue colour with arsenic chloride (Rosenheim and Drummond) Vitamin D is present in small quantities in vegetable oils which contain no vitamin A

Vitamin D has a particular relation to sunlight From this point of view, the milk of a cow is much improved by sunlight, and it has now been established that irradiation by ultra-violet light, which destroys vitamin A, may cause the production of vitamin D This may be brought about by the irradiation of substances in which the vitamin has been previously destroyed, or of ergosterol (one of the sterols which occurs as an impurity in cholesterol and which was first obtained from ergot) This vitamin is present in yeast and a wide range of lower plants when fresh, but they rapidly lose their vitamin when cut

The absence of vitamin D or of sunlight leads to imperfect

calcification of the bones (rickets), and of the teeth (May Mellanby) In rickets the bones are so soft that the legs bend under the weight of the body There is lowered calcium and phosphate (1 5 mg per 100 c c instead of 5 mg) in the blood The bones of rachitic animals will calcify if incubated in normal serum, but not in rachitic serum, showing that the bone has the power to calcify if the salts are available

The function of the vitamin is, apparently, to correct any improper balance between the calcium and phosphorus intake, and the greater the disproportion of these two elements the more important the vitamin, but even if these substances are present in proper amounts the vitamin is necessary The vitamin appears to increase the retention in the body of calcium which may be available in the food, and may increase the amount of calcium absorbed by the intestine Not long ago there were opposing views on rickets and its treatment One group of workers insisted on the importance of diet (E Mellanby and others), and another insisted on exercise and sunlight (L Findlay, Paton) The discovery by Huldschidsky in 1919, that ultra-violet light would cure rickets and that vitamin D may be produced in foods by similar treatment, has shown that both were right In man, it is assumed that in some way the sunlight causes the production of the vitamin in a precursor in the skin, for the feeding of excised human skin if irradiated will protect rats against rickets but not if not irradiated It seems most probable that the precursor of the vitamin is ergosterol, which is the only substance with this property which appears to depend on its molecular structure How this occurs is not yet clear, since the penetrating power of ultra-violet light is very poor, being only a millimetre Excess of the vitamin leads to excessive precipitation of calcium throughout the body (Kreitmar and Moll)

Recently Bourdillon and his co-workers at the National Institute for Medical Research have succeeded by special distillation in preparing a pure crystalline substance "calciferol," which has all the properties of vitamin D

Vitamin E—The third fat-soluble vitamin is made by plants, and the best-known source of it is an oil extracted from sprouting wheat germs, but it is present in many vegetable oils, *e g* olive oil There is a little in animal fats Its absence results in sterility in rats otherwise fertile This is due in the female to failure of the fœtus to grow normally, although the mother appears to be normal. In the male there is degeneration of the testis An interesting observation is that of Verzar who has found that the intraperitoneal injection of the vitamin has a similar effect in rats to the injection of an extract of the anterior lobe of the pituitary body, and it is suggested that the vitamin is necessary for normal pituitary function

The Vitamin B complex—Originally there was thought to be only one vitamin B, but now it has been found that from similar sources several vitamins are obtained They have been classified by the Biochemical Society

The Water-Soluble Antineuritic Vitamin B 1—This vitamin is contained in the outer layer of seeds, which layer contains the embryo plant, and may be removed in milling It is therefore practically absent in white flours, but present in wholemeal flours Since it is fairly resistant to heat, it survives ordinary baking, provided the temperature does not go above 100° C The vitamin is also present in the yolk of eggs but not in the white, and milk and meat contain very little Some commercial preparations are made from yeast, a rich source of this vitamin

It was observed by Eijkman in Java, that the use of polished rice led to the production of a polyneuritis, both in man and in pigeons, although the diet was apparently otherwise adequate In man, the disease is known as beri-beri The addition of the rice polishings, or of aqueous extracts of these to the diet, cured and prevented the condition It should, however, be remarked that beri-beri is not always cured by vitamin B administration (MacRobert) for reasons which have not yet been explained Peters has succeeded in extracting from yeast a product of which 0 0003 gr per day protects pigeons against neuritis

The neuritis, which results in paralysis of muscles and anæsthesia, has led to the vitamin being known as the antineuritic one It has been claimed (but this has not been found by Drummond and his co-workers) that in the disease the muscles have a reduced power of oxidation, that there is a degeneration of the tissues, and that there is a decrease of male progeny when the abnormal male is mated with the normal female

According to M'Carrison, deficiency of this vitamin causes an increase in the size of the suprarenal and is responsible for much general malaise and lack of vigour in man It is claimed also that deficiency in this vitamin results in a loss of tone of the gastro-intestinal muscles

Vitamin B 2—The Pellagra-preventing, Antidermatitis factor is thermo-stable and is not present in alcoholic extracts of yeast like vitamin B 1 Its source is similar but not identical with B 1 It is, for example, present in egg white

If absent from the diet of the rat there is a characteristic dermatitis and loss of hair In man the condition of pellagra is very similar It is a disease of hot countries, which is characterised by dermatitis, great intestinal disturbance, diarrhœa and degeneration of the bowel-wall The epithelium is shed also from the tongue There is also general impairment of the nervous system The

evidence that the diseases are identical is, however, by no means conclusive Pellagia certainly results from a poor diet and mild cases have been cured by the vitamin Other cases, however, have not

In addition there have been described—
B 3, which is heat labile, present in yeast and whole wheat, necessary for full normal growth of the pigeon
B 4, heat and alkali labile, necessary for the rat
B 5, necessary for weight maintenance in pigeon
Factor Y—which is heat and alkali stable—absent from egg white
All the above are found in yeast

The Water-Soluble Antiscorbutic Vitamin C—This vitamin is contained in fresh fruit and vegetables and in green leaves and germinating seeds, in the days of sailing ships the absence of such substances led to scurvy, the curse of the Navy and Mercantile Marine, and of expeditions The vitamin is easily oxidised, especially in alkaline solution and if cooking is prolonged, as in stews It is more resistant in acid solution, hence, is less liable to be destroyed in cooking when acid Curiously enough, West Indian limes are deficient in this vitamin and the substitution of lime-juice for other fruits led to many outbreaks of scurvy Oranges and lemons are good sources

Scurvy is characterised by great weakness, tendency to fractures and hæmorrhage, especially from the gums with loosening of the teeth, it is accentuated by hard physical work In recent times it was studied at the siege of Kut A similar condition, infantile scurvy, may occur in infants fed on proprietary foods

Zilva has extracted from lemon-juice a product of which 0 00045 gr *per diem* will prevent scurvy in guinea-pigs

The Standardisation of Vitamins—In order to determine the amount of vitamin in a given foodstuff it is necessary to find out the minimum amount of the foodstuff which will just prevent a particular deficiency disease in an animal placed on a diet sufficient in every other way For example, to study vitamin A, rats are fed on caseinogen to supply protein, starch, salt mixtures, and substances containing all the vitamins except A

The whole subject of vitamins is of national importance, and it is evident that many classes of the community do not obtain the infinitesimally small amounts necessary to maintain good health, although they may avoid gross disease many indefinite indispositions may be related to the absence or deficiency of these substances

Vitamins and Human Diets—The following statement is taken from a recent Medical Research Council Report —"So far as Western civilisation is concerned it is no doubt true that the rareness of the occurrence of frank deficiency diseases such as

scurvy, xerophthalmia, and beri-beri indicates that an absolute deficiency of vitamins scarcely ever exists in the individual diet

"On the other hand, it is now becoming generally recognised that much subnormal health and development, and even incidence of disease, are associated with a partial deficiency of one or more of these accessory substances The influence of such partial deficiencies even when relatively slight may be extremely serious when they occur in early life and, if we may judge from the results of experiments on animals, an adequate supply of these indispensable dietary components later in life may fail to make good the damage caused by a deficiency in youth" The report gives numerous examples of the occurrence of such deficiency disease, latent or actual, when for one reason or another patients have been placed on special diets

CHAPTER XXV

FOOD

THE chief chemical compounds or *proximate principles* in food are —

1 Proteins
2 Carbohydrates
3 Fats } organic
4 Water
5 Salts } inorganic

In milk and in eggs, which form the exclusive foods of young animals, all varieties of these proximate principles are present in suitable proportions Hence they are spoken of as perfect foods Eggs, though a perfect food for the developing bird, contain too little carbohydrate for a mammal In most vegetable foods carbohydrates are in excess, while in animal foods, such as meat, the proteins are predominant

Milk

Milk, which we have already spoken of as a perfect food, is only so for young children For those who are older, it is so voluminous that unpleasantly large quantities of it would have to be taken in the course of the day to ensure the proper supply of nitrogen and carbon Moreover, it is relatively too rich in protein and fat It also contains too little iron (Bunge) so that children weaned late become anæmic

The microscope reveals that milk consists of two parts a clear fluid and a number of minute particles that float in it These consist of minute oil globules, varying in diameter from 0 0015 to 0 005 millimetre (fig 174)

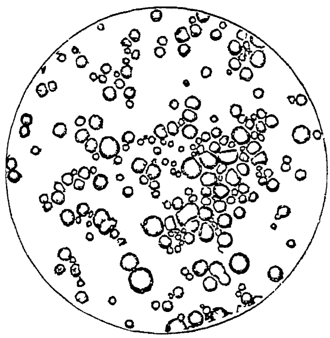


FIG 174 —Globules of cow s milk × 400

The milk secreted during the first few days of lactation is called *colostrum* This is considered to be of value in relation to infection It contains very little caseinogen, but

large quantities of albumin and globulin instead Microscopically, cells from the acini of the mammary gland are seen, which contain fat globules in their interior, they are called *colostrum corpuscles*

Reaction and Specific Gravity —The reaction of fresh cow's milk and of human milk is amphoteric This is due to the presence of both acid and alkaline salts All milk readily turns acid or sour as the result of fermentative change, part of its lactose being transformed into lactic acid The specific gravity of milk is usually ascertained with the hydrometer That of normal cow's milk varies from 1028 to 1034 When the milk is skimmed the specific gravity rises, owing to the removal of the light constituent, the fat, to 1033 to 1037 In all cases the specific gravity of water is taken as 1000

Composition —The following table (Bunge) contrasts the milk of woman and the cow, but it must be understood that these are

	Woman	Cow
	Per cent	Per cent
Proteins (caseinogen and albumin)	1 7	3 5
Butter (fat)	3 4	3 7
Lactose	6 2	4 9
Salts	0 2	0 7

average figures and are not strictly applicable to any particular individual Thus, for example, the Frisian cow produces a more plentiful but more dilute milk than an Ayrshire cow—and human milk varies from time to time in the same individual Hence, in feeding infants on cow's milk, it is necessary to dilute it, and add sugar and a little cream to make it approximately equal to natural human milk

The Proteins of Milk —The principal protein in milk is called *caseinogen*, it is *precipitable* by acids such as acetic acid, and also by saturation with magnesium sulphate, or half saturation with ammonium sulphate, so resembling globulins, it is *coagulated* by rennet to form *casein* Cheese consists of casein with the entangled fat The other protein in milk is *lact-albumin* It is present in small quantities only, it differs in some of its properties (specific rotation, coagulation temperature, etc) from serum-albumin Human milk contains more than cow's

The Coagulation of Milk —Rennet (rennin) is the agent usually employed for this purpose it is an enzyme secreted by the stomach, especially in sucking animals, and is generally obtained from the calf

The *curd* consists of the casein and entangled fat the liquid residue called *whey* contains the sugar, salts, and albumin of the milk

It is doubtful if curdling is a chemical process It may be mainly a physical (colloidal) change

The addition of rennet produces coagulation in milk, provided that a sufficient amount of calcium salts is present If the calcium salts are precipitated by the addition of potassium oxalate, rennet causes no formation of casein The process of curdling in milk is a double one, the first action due to rennet is the production of a change in caseinogen, the second action is that of the calcium salt, which precipitates the altered caseinogen as casein In blood, also, calcium salts, as we have seen, are necessary for coagulation

Caseinogen is a phospho-protein (see p 310) In milk it is combined with calcium to form calcium caseinogenate, when acetic acid is added, we therefore get calcium acetate and free caseinogen

The Fats of Milk—The chemical composition of the fat of milk (butter) is very like that of adipose tissue There are, however, small quantities of fats derived from fatty acids lower in the series, especially butyrin and caproin Each fat globule appears to be surrounded by a film of protein (Ramsden) Milk also contains small quantities of lipides (lecithin, cholesterol, and a yellow fatty pigment or lipochrome)

Lactose, or Milk Sugar—This is a disaccharide ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) Its properties have already been described in Chapter XX, p 301

Souring of Milk—When milk is allowed to stand, the chief change which it is apt to undergo is a conversion of a part of its lactose into lactic acid This is due to the action of micro-organisms, and would not occur if the milk were contained in closed sterilised vessels This observation is of great historical interest as Lord Lister used it as his example of bacterial action in his first lecture in London at King's College When souring occurs, the acid formed precipitates a portion of the caseinogen This must not be confounded with the formation of casein from caseinogen, which is produced by rennet There are, however, some bacteria which, like rennet, produce true coagulation

The Salts of Milk—The principal salt present is calcium phosphate, a small quantity of magnesium phosphate is also present The other salts are chiefly chlorides of sodium and potassium.

It appears that milk is deficient in iron The young animal obtains its iron from the placenta of the mother, and it has been suggested that females store iron in the liver for this purpose This iron deficiency renders milk an incomplete food during adolescence although suitable for the very young

It is an undoubted fact that the milk provided by Nature for the growing offspring is different in the various orders of the mammalia The quantitative variations are often enormous, and it

has been shown that the milk best adapted for the nutrition of the young animal is that which comes from its mother, or, at least, from an animal of the same species The practical application of this rule comes home to us when we deal with the feeding of children, and it is universally acknowledged that, after all, cow's milk is but a poor substitute for human milk Cow's milk is, of course, diluted, and sugar and cream added, so as to make it quantitatively like mother's milk, but even then the question arises whether the essential difference between the two kinds of milk is not deeper than one of mere quantities, and, in particular, the pendulum of scientific opinion has swung backwards and forwards in relation to the question whether the principal protein, called caseinogen in both, is really identical in the two cases The caseinogen of human milk curdles in small flocculi in the stomach, so contrasting with the heavy curd which cow's milk forms, and even although the curdling of cow's milk be made to occur in smaller fragments by mixing the milk with barley water or lime water, its digestion proceeds with comparative slowness in the child's alimentary canal These are practical points well known to every clinical observer, and in the past they have been attributed, not so much to fundamental differences in the caseinogen itself, as to accidental concomitant factors, the excess of citric acid in human milk, for instance, and its paucity in calcium salts, have been held responsible for the differences observed in the physical condition of the curd and in its digestibility The lact-albumin of cow's milk is often responsible for eczema in children

This question is far from settled even to-day, but there are some data now available that point to a qualitative difference between caseinogens Some of these depend on the application of the "biological test" carried out on the line of immunity experiments, which has been so signally successful in the distinction between the blood-proteins of different species of animals (see p 379) Moreover, some observers have stated that human caseinogen contains a carbohydrate complex which is absent from that of the cow, but the whole question needs reinvestigation

The Mammary Glands

The mammary glands are composed of large divisions or lobes, and these are again divisible into lobules, the lobules are composed of the convoluted and dilated subdivisions of the main ducts held together by connective tissue Covering the general surface of the gland, with the exception of the nipple, is a considerable quantity of fat, itself lobulated by sheaths and processes of areolar tissue (fig 175) The main ducts of the gland, fifteen to twenty in number, called the *lactiferous* ducts, are formed by the union of the smaller (lobular) ducts, and open by small separate orifices through the nipple At the points of junction of lobular ducts to form lactiferous ducts, and just before these enter the base of the nipple, the ducts are dilated, and during the period of active secretion by the gland, the dilatations

form reservoirs for the milk, which collects in and distends them The walls of the gland-ducts are formed of areolar with some unstriped muscular tissue, and are lined internally by short columnar and near the nipple by flattened epithelium

The nipple is composed of areolar tissue, and contains unstriped muscle fibres Blood-vessels are also freely supplied to it, so as to give it an erectile structure On

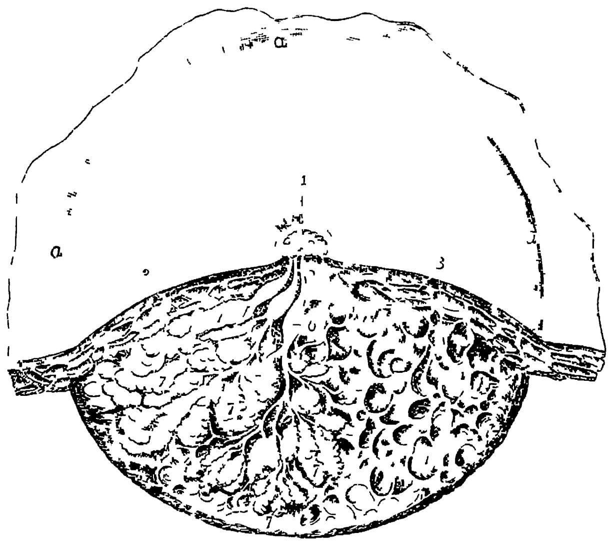


FIG 175 —Dissection of the lower half of the female mamma, during the period of lactation 2/3 —In the left-hand side of the dissected part the glandular lobes are exposed and partially unravelled, and on the right-hand side, the glandular substance has been removed to show the reticular loculi of the connective tissue in which the glandular lobules are placed 1, upper part of the mamilla or nipple, 2, areola, 3, subcutaneous masses of fat, 4, reticular loculi of the connective tissue which support the glandular substance and contain the fatty masses, 5, one of three lactiferous ducts shown passing towards the nipple where they open, 6, one of the sinus lactei or reservoirs, 7, some of the glandular lobules which have been unravelled, 7', others massed together (Luschka)

its surface are very sensitive papillæ, and around it is a small area or *areola* of pink or dark-tinted skin, on which are to be seen small projections formed by minute secreting glands

Blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics are plentifully supplied to the mammary glands, the calibre of the blood-vessels as well as the size of the glands, vary greatly under certain conditions, especially those of pregnancy and lactation

The alveoli of the glands during the secreting periods are found to be lined with short columnar cells (see fig 176) The edges of the cells towards the lumen may be irregular and jagged, and the remainder of the alveolus is filled up with the materials of the milk. During the intervals between the acts of discharge, the cells of the alveoli elongate towards the lumen, their nuclei divide, and in the part of the cells towards the lumen a collection of oil globules and of other materials takes place

The next stage is that the cells divide and the part of each towards the lumen containing a nucleus and the materials of the secretion, disintegrates and goes to form the constituents of the milk. In the earlier days of lactation, epithelial cells only partially transformed are discharged in the secretion, these are termed *colostrum corpuscles*

During pregnancy the mammary glands undergo changes (*evolution*) which are

readily observable They enlarge, become harder, and more distinctly lobulated, the veins on the surface become more prominent The areola becomes enlarged and dusky, with projecting papillæ, the nipple, too, becomes more prominent, and milk can be squeezed from the orifices of the ducts This is a very gradual process, which commences just after conception, and progresses steadily during the whole period of gestation In the gland itself solid columns of cells bud off from the old alveoli to form new alveoli But these solid columns after a while are converted into tubes by the central cells becoming fatty and being discharged as the colostrum corpuscles above mentioned After the end of lactation, the mamma gradually returns to its original size (*involution*) The acini, in the early stages of involution, are lined with cells in all degrees of vacuolation As involution proceeds, the acini diminish considerably in size, and at length, instead of a mosaic of lining epithelial cells (twenty to thirty in each acinus), we have five or six nuclei (some with no surrounding protoplasm) lying in an irregular heap within the acinus No secretory nerves of the mammary gland have yet been discovered It is possible they do not exist, and that the normal stimulus to mammary activity is a chemical one brought about by the ovary

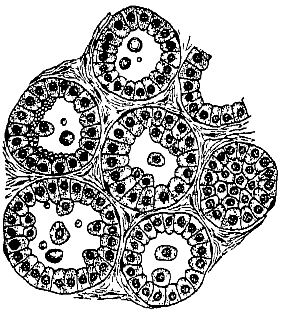


FIG 176 —Section of mammary gland of bitch, showing acini, lined with epithelial cells of a short columnar form × 200 (V D Harris)

Eggs

The chief constituent of the *shell* is calcium carbonate The *white* is composed of a richly protein fluid enclosed in a network of firmer and more fibrous material

The amount of solids is 13 3 per cent , of this, 12 2 is protein in nature (egg-albumin, with smaller quantities of egg-globulin, and of a mucinoid substance called ovo-mucoid), and the remainder is made up of sugar (0 5 per cent), traces of fats, lecithin, and cholesterol, and 0 6 per cent of inorganic salts

The *yolk* is rich in food materials for the development of the future embryo especially a phospho-protein called *vitellin*

The nutritive value of eggs is high, as they are so readily digestible, but the more an egg is cooked the more insoluble do its protein constituents become

Meat

Meat is composed of the muscular and connective (including adipose) tissues of certain animals The flesh of some animals is not eaten This is largely a matter of fashion and of flavour

Meat is the most concentrated and most easily assimilable of nitrogenous foods It is our chief source of nitrogen Its chief solid constituent is protein, and the principal protein is myosin In addition to the extractives and salts contained in muscle, there is always a certain percentage of fat, even though all visible adipose tissue is

dissected off The fat-cells are placed between the muscle-fibres, and the amount of fat so situated varies in different animals, it is particularly abundant in pork, hence the indigestibility of this form of flesh the fat prevents the gastric juice from obtaining ready access to the muscle-fibres

The following table gives the chief substances in some of the principal meats used as food

Constituents	Ox	Calf	Pig	Horse	Fowl	Pike
Water	76 7	75 6	72 6	74 3	70 8	79 3
Solids	23 3	24 4	27 8	25 7	29 2	20 7
Proteins, including gelatin*	20 0	19 4	19 9	21 6	22 7	18 3
Fat	1 5	2 9	6 2	2 5	4 1	0 7
Carbohydrate	0 6	0 8	0 6	0 6	1 3	0 9
Salts	1 2	1 3	1 1	1 0	1 1	0 8

* The flesh of young animals is richer in gelatin than that of old, thus 1000 parts of beef yield 6, of veal 50, parts of gelatin

The large percentage of water in meat should be particularly noted, if a man wished to take his daily supply of 100 grammes of protein entirely in the form of meat, it would be necessary for him to consume about 500 grammes (*i e* a little more than 1 lb) of meat

Flour

White wheat flour is made from the interior of wheat grains, and contains the greater proportion of the starch of the grain and most of the protein Whole flour is made from the whole grain *minus* the husk, and thus contains not only the white interior but also the harder and browner outer portion of the grain and the germ or embryo plant This region contains a somewhat larger proportion of protein Whole flour contains 1 to 2 per cent more protein than the best white flour, but it has the disadvantage of being less readily digested Brown flour contains a certain amount of bran in addition, it is still less digestible, but is useful as a mild laxative, the insoluble cellulose mechanically stimulating the intestinal canal as it passes along

The best flour contains very little sugar The presence of sugar indicates that germination has commenced in the grains In the manufacture of malt from barley this is purposely allowed to go on

When mixed with water, wheat flour forms a sticky, adhesive mass called dough This is due to the formation of gluten Gluten is a mixture of two proteins—namely, gliadin, which is soluble in alcohol, and glutenin, which is soluble in alkali The adhesive character of gluten is due to gliadin, grains which are poor in gliadin (*e g* rice) cannot be used for bread-making

The following table contrasts the composition of some of the more important vegetable foods —

Constituents	Wheat	Barley	Oats	Rice	Lentils	Peas	Potatoes
Water	13 6	13 8	12 4	13 1	12 5	14 8	76 0
Protein	12 4	11 1	10 4	7 9	24 8	23 7	2 0
Fat	1 4	2 2	5 2	0 9	1 9	1 6	0 2
Starch	67 9	64 9	57 8	76 5	54 8	49 3	20 6
Cellulose	2 5	5 3	11 2	0 6	3 6	7 5	0 7
Mineral salts	1 8	2 7	3 0	1 0	2 4	3 1	1 0

We see from this table—

1 The great quantity of starch always present

2 The small quantity of fat, that bread is generally eaten with butter is a popular recognition of this fact

3 Protein, except in potatoes, is pretty abundant, and especially so in the pulses (lentils, peas, etc) The protein in the pulses is not gluten, but consists mainly of globulins

In the mineral matters in vegetables, salts of potassium and magnesium are, as a rule, more abundant than those of sodium and calcium

Bread

Bread is made by cooking the dough of wheat flour mixed with yeast, salt, and flavouring materials An enzyme in the flour acts at the commencement of the process, when the temperature is kept a little over that of the body, and forms dextrin and sugar from the starch, and then the alcoholic fermentation, due to the action of the yeast, begins. The bubbles of carbonic acid, burrowing passages through the bread, make it light and spongy This enables the digestive juices subsequently to soak into it readily and affect all parts of it In the later stages, viz, baking, the temperature is raised, the gas and alcohol are expelled from the bread, the yeast is killed, and a crust forms from the drying of the outer portions of the dough

White bread contains, in 100 parts, 8 to 10 of protein, 55 of carbohydrates, 1 of fat, 2 of salts, and the rest water

Cooking of Food.

The cooking of foods is a development of civilisation, and serves many useful ends —

1 It destroys parasites and danger of infection This relates not only to bacterial growths, but also to larger parasites, such as tapeworms and trichinæ

2 In vegetable foods it breaks up the starch grains, bursting the cellulose and so allowing the digestive juices to come into contact with the granulose

3 In animal foods it converts the insoluble collagen of the universally distributed connective tissues into the soluble gelatin. The loosening of the fibres is assisted by the formation of steam between them By thus loosening the binding material, the more important elements of the food, such as muscle-fibres, are rendered accessible to the gastric and other juices Meat before it is cooked is generally kept a certain length of time to allow *rigor mortis* to pass off

Of the two chief methods of cooking, roasting and boiling, the former is the more economical, as by its means the meat is first surrounded with a coat of coagulated protein on its exterior, which keeps in the juices to a great extent, letting little else escape but the dripping (fat) Whereas in boiling, unless both bouillon and bouilli are used, there is considerable waste Cooking, especially boiling, renders the proteins more insoluble than they are in the raw state, but this is counterbalanced by the advantages which cooking possesses

In making *beef tea* and similar extracts of meat it is necessary that the meat should be placed in cold water, and this is gradually and carefully warmed In boiling a joint it is usual to put the meat into boiling water at once, so that the outer part is coagulated, and the loss of material minimised

An extremely important point in this connection is that beef tea and similar meat extracts should not be regarded as foods They are valuable as pleasant stimulating drinks for invalids, but they contain very little of the nutritive material of the meat, their chief constituents, next to water, being the salts and extractives of flesh

Soup contains the extractives of meat, a very small proportion of the myosin, and the principal part of the gelatin The gelatin is usually increased by adding bones and fibrous tissue to the stock It is the presence of this substance which causes soup when cold to gelatinise

Adjuncts to Food

Among these must be placed *alcohol*, the value of which within moderate limits is not as a food but as a stimulant, *condiments* (mustard, pepper, ginger, curry powder, etc), which are stomachic

stimulants, the abuse of which is followed by dyspeptic troubles, and *tea, coffee, cocoa,* and similar drinks, these are stimulants chiefly to the nervous system Tea, coffee, maté (Paraguay), guarana (Brazil), cola nut (Central Africa), bush tea (South Africa), and a few other plants used in various countries all owe their chief property to an alkaloid called *theine* or *caffeine* ($C_8H_{10}N_4O_2$), cocoa to the closely related alkaloid, *theobromine* ($C_7H_8N_4O_2$), coca to *cocaine* These alkaloids are all poisonous, and used in excess, even in the form of infusions of tea and coffee, produce over-excitement, loss of digestive power, and other disorders well known to physicians Coffee differs from tea in being rich in aromatic matters, tea contains a bitter principle, tannin to avoid the injurious solution of too much tannin, tea should be allowed to infuse (draw) for a few minutes only Cocoa is not only a stimulant, but a food in addition, it contains about 50 per cent of fat, and 12 per cent of protein In manufactured cocoa, the amount of fat is reduced to 30 per cent, and the amount of protein rises proportionately to about 20 per cent The quantity of cocoa usually consumed is too small for these food materials to count very much in the daily supply The amount of protein in solution (mainly proteose) in a breakfast cup of cocoa is under half a gramme, most of the foodstuffs are in suspension, for cocoa is drunk "thick," not as a clear infusion

Green vegetables are taken as a palatable and valuable adjunct to other foods, rather than for their nutritive properties (see Vitamins) Their potassium salts are, however, abundant Cabbage, turnips, and asparagus contain 80 to 92 water, 1 to 2 protein, 2 to 4 carbohydrates, and 1 to 1 5 cellulose per cent The small amount of nutriment in most green foods accounts for the large meals made by, and the vast capacity of the alimentary canal of, herbivorous animals

Fruits, like vegetables, contain chiefly water They contain also organic acids, *e g* citric and their salts, which become oxidised to carbonates in the body Fruits therefore, with the exception of prunes and cranberries, promote an alkalinity of the body like a vegetable diet generally Fruits and vegetables are also important sources of vitamins, and in virtue of their cellulose add appreciably to the bulk of the intestinal contents and so promote intestinal movements

CHAPTER XXVI

THE ALIMENTARY CANAL

HAVING considered the chemical nature of the body, we must now deal with the processes by which the various food substances as they exist in nature are prepared for utilisation by the body for purposes of fuel, growth, and repair. Many of the most important substances, *e.g.* fat, starch, protein, are insoluble or cannot penetrate animal membranes, and would not, therefore, pass from the digestive tract into the blood or lymph. Their molecules have to be broken down into more simple and diffusible molecules before absorption can occur. Sometimes a certain amount of preliminary mechanical disintegration is also necessary, *e.g.* the trituration of seeds in the gizzard of the bird. To the whole process of breaking down of the foodstuffs the term digestion is applied.

The chief chemical requirements of the body, as we have seen, are proteins, fats, carbohydrates, salts, and water, and with these the alimentary canal is specially adapted to deal. Moreover, the food must have a certain minimum bulk, and contain vitamins.

For purposes of digestion, the food is received into the **alimentary canal** which may vary in complexity from a simple tube in the lower animals to that found in mammals. For practical purposes the contents of the canal are physiologically outside the animal, *i.e.*, outside the tissues of the animal. In man the alimentary canal consists of a long muscular tube lined by mucous membrane beginning at the mouth, and terminating at the anus. It comprises the mouth, pharynx, œsophagus or gullet, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine. Opening into it are numerous glands which pour juices into it; these bring about the digestion of the food as it passes along. Some of the glands, such as the gastric and intestinal glands, are situated in the mucous membrane which lines the canal; others, such as the salivary glands, liver, and pancreas, are situated at a distance from the main canal, and pour their secretion into it by means of side tubes or ducts.

The two important coats in the wall of the canal are :—

(1) *The Muscular Coat.*—This consists of two layers: in the outer, the fibres are arranged longitudinally, and in the inner, circularly.

In the stomach there is a third coat, in which the fibres have an oblique direction At the cardiac orifice of the stomach (that is, where the œsophagus enters) and at its pyloric orifice (that is, where the small intestine begins) the circular fibres are increased in amount to form a sphincter The muscle-fibres are of the plain variety, except in the pharynx and upper part of the œsophagus where they are striated A nerve plexus (plexus of Auerbach, p 498) is situated between the two muscular coats

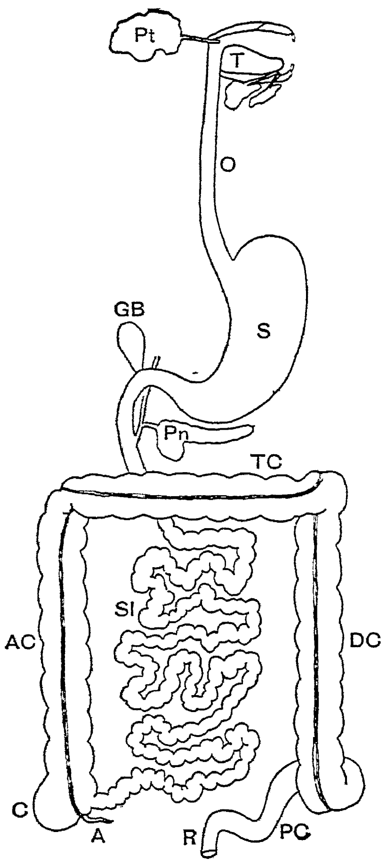


FIG 177 —Alimentary Canal Pt, parotid gland, T, tongue, O, œsophagus, S, stomach, GB, gall bladder, Pn, pancreas, SI, small intestine, AC, ascending colon, TC, transverse colon, DC, descending colon, PC, pelvic colon, R, rectum C cæcum, A, appendix

(2) *The Mucous Membrane* —This consists of an *epithelium* on its surface, this is stratified in mouth, pharynx, œsophagus, and lower part of the anal canal, but columnar in other parts Beneath the epithelium is a *corium* of connective tissue, in which there is lymphoid tissue, in the intestine the lymphoid nodules are often spoken of as solitary follicles, except in the lower part of the small intestine (the ileum), where they are congregated together as Peyer's patches At the back of the mouth, the tonsils are masses of lymphoid nodules covered with mucous membrane In the deepest part of the mucous membrane is a thin layer of involuntary muscle called the *muscularis mucosæ*

These two main coats (muscular and mucous) are connected together by a loose layer of connective tissue known as the *submucous coat* In this the larger blood-vessels are situated which give off branches to the other two coats but more abundantly to the mucous membrane The submucous coat also contains a nerve plexus called the plexus of Meissner In the stomach and intestines there is a fourth coat, on the exterior, derived from the peritoneum (*serous coat*)

The secreting glands in the wall of the alimentary canal are —

(1) A number of simple little mucous glands in the corium of the mucous membrane of the mouth, pharynx, and œsophagus, their ducts open on the surface (see fig 178)

(2) The gastric glands, these are tubular glands which differ in structure in different regions of the stomach, and which we shall consider at greater length in our description of gastric digestion

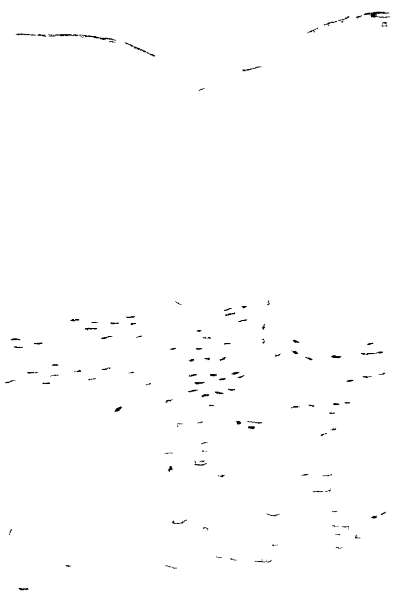


FIG 178 —Section of the mucous membrane and submucous coat of the œsophagus showing mucous glands

(3) The glands of the small intestine Throughout the whole of the small intestine there are a large number of simple tubular glands (lined with columnar cells) which open between the villi. They are called the crypts of Lieberkuhn In the first part of the small intestine, known as the duodenum, an additional set of glands, called the glands of Brunner, is found They are embedded in the submucous coat, and the duct of each gland passes inwards to open on the surface of the mucous membrane Each gland is a branched and convoluted tube lined with columnar epithelium Fig 179 shows these two kinds of glands, and also the villi of the

O 2

surface Figs 180 and 181 are more highly magnified views of the villi, which increase the surface of the small intestine mainly for the purpose of absorption A villus is a small projection made of loose lymphoid tissue, covered with columnar cells, it contains in its interior a plexus of blood-capillaries under the basement-

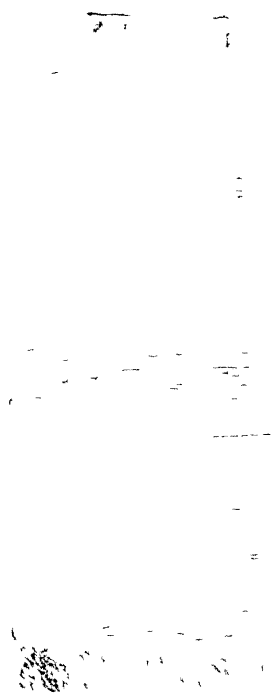


FIG 179 —Vertical section of duodenum, showing *a*, villi, *b*, crypts of Lieberkuhn, and *c*, Brunner s glands in the submucosa *s*, with ducts, *d*, muscularis mucosæ, *m* and circular muscular coat, *f* (Schofield.)

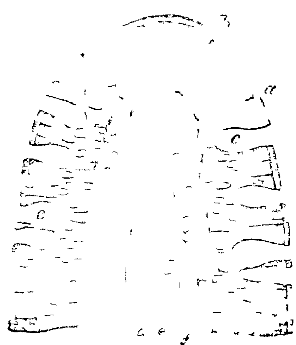


FIG 180 —Vertical section of a villus of the small intestine of a cat *a*, Striated border of the epithelium, *b*, columnar epithelium, *c*, goblet cells, *d*, central lymph vessel, *e*, smooth muscle fibres, *f*, adenoid stroma of the villus in which lymph corpuscles lie (Klein)

membrane, and one or more commencing lymphatic vessels or lacteals situated centrally

(4) Glands of the large intestine Here there are no villi, but the crypts are present and are larger than in the small intestine Many of the cells lining these tubes are seen breaking down to form goblet cells, and the mucus so furnished is of great importance The salts of the metals are also excreted

All of the foregoing glands are situated in the wall of the alimentary

canal Those situated at a distance from it, and which pour their secretion into it by ducts, are the salivary glands, liver and pancreas, and will be described in the chapters dealing with those organs

Before studying the action of the digestive secretions on foods, we may consider some general questions relating to secreting organs

It is the function of gland-cells to produce by the metabolism of

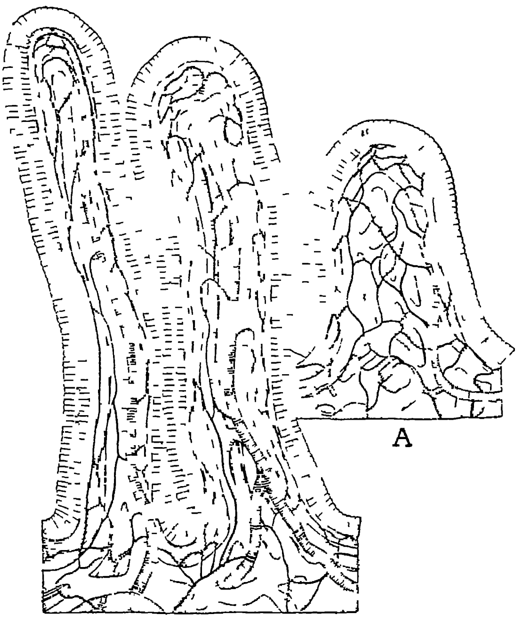


FIG 181 —A, *Villus of sheep* B, *Villi of man* (Slightly altered from Teichmann)

their protoplasm certain substances called secretions for the purpose of serving some useful office in the economy, and those which are discharged from the body as useless or injurious

Gland-cells also get rid of *excretions* These materials are not formed by the gland itself but are preformed in the blood They are simply discharged from the body as injurious or waste

CHAPTER XXVII

SECRETION

As we have pointed out there is poured into the lumen of the alimentary canal a variety of juices called secretions We shall now consider the nature of the secretory process in general, the details have been worked out in the salivary glands since these are conveniently situated for investigation

A secreting apparatus consists essentially of a layer of secreting cells surrounding a central cavity into which the secretion is poured The cells, which contain granules representing the precursors of the substances secreted, lie on a basement-membrane in close relation to the blood-vessels which nourish the gland and which provide it with the raw materials of its secretion That the granules in the cells are not the actual substance secreted but a precursor has been shown by chemical means in the case of the glands of the stomach, and by the reaction to histological reagents in the case of mucus-secreting glands If the substance secreted is an enzyme the precursor is termed a *zymogen* Intervening between the blood and the gland-cells is the lymph

Fig 182 semi-diagrammatically shows some of the more important anatomical distinctions in the form of secreting glands, tubular, racemose, and so forth.

The process of secretion consists of a number of events which may be divided into two categories

1 The transference of water and certain substances dissolved in the water from the blood of the surrounding capillaries to the lumen of the acinus

2 The modification of the chemical composition of this solution either by the addition to it of substances manufactured by the gland-cells, and by the prevention of substances in the lymph from traversing the gland-cell and reaching the lumen

The Nature of the Process of Secretion.

Great interest has always been aroused by the problem of secretion, as it is one of those processes in the body which at first sight might be explained on a physico-chemical basis, but which on further

analysis is shown to be very much more complicated From a study, largely of the secretion of saliva, certain facts have been established in relation to secretion in general (1) The osmotic pressure of the saliva is less than that of the blood, so that physically, water would

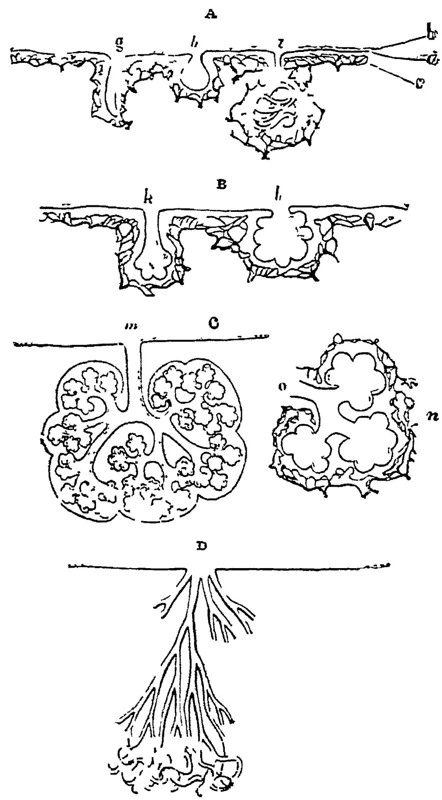


FIG 182 —Diagram of types of secreting glands A, Simple glands, viz, *g*, straight tube, *h*, sac, *i*, coiled tube B, Multilocular crypts, *k*, of tubular form, *l*, saccular C, Racemose, or saccular compound gland, *m*, entire gland, showing branched duct and lobular structure, *n*, a lobule, detached with *o*, branch of duct proceeding from it D, Compound tubular gland (Sharpey)

tend to pass from the saliva into the blood for reasons which have already been discussed, (2) the pressure of the secretion in the duct of the gland may exceed the blood-pressure, and (3) substances occur in the secretion in greater concentration, *e g* enzymes, than they do in the blood, or substances may be elaborated which do not exist in the blood as such at all, *e g* the hydrochloric acid of the stomach These last two facts dispose of any contention

that the secretion is merely filtered off from the blood by a physical process (4) On the other hand, it can be shown that any increased concentration of the blood, *i e* raising the osmotic pressure of the blood, reduces secretion (5) Finally, it has been shown that the more active the gland is the more oxygen is consumed, and it is evident that the gland uses fuel and does work in a physical sense

If the salivary glands are examined histologically, granules can

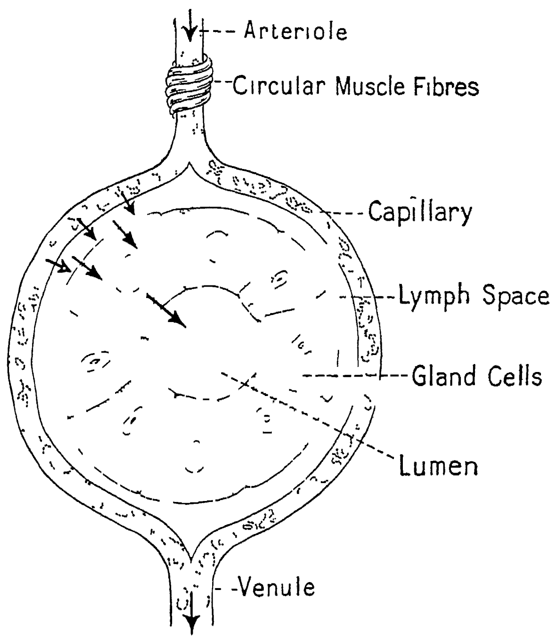


FIG 183 —Diagram of a secreting acinus

be seen to accumulate in the cells of the gland during rest, and during secretion the granules swell, are extruded from the free edge of the cell, and then dissolved It is generally agreed that the cell does active work in manufacturing the granules, but how the water is "pumped" into the lumen is very difficult to determine The idea of the "pump" may be conveniently applied to this process which we do not yet understand and which forces fluid into the lumen of the gland against forces which tend to retain it in the blood

It has been suggested that the granules break down into smaller molecules which raise the osmotic pressure and cause water to be

attracted from the blood In part of the cell a solution more dilute than the blood is formed and extended, causing an increased concentration in the remaining parts of the cells which attract further water from the blood and lymph

Another view is that the side of the cell next to the basement-membrane is impermeable to the osmotically active substances manufactured by the cell, while the side next the lumen is not From a tube closed at each end by such membranes a flow has been found to continue till the osmotically active substance is expelled and it is possible that secretion may be similarly produced

We do not, however, really know, and still less have we any idea how secretion can be controlled by nerves, unless it be that the nerves cause the production of substances which influence the permeability of cell membranes

CHAPTER XXVIII

SALIVA

THE saliva is formed by three pairs of salivary glands, called the parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual glands

The Salivary Glands

These typical secreting glands are made up of *lobules* united by connective tissue Each lobule is made of a group of tubulo-saccular *alveoli* or *acini*, from which a duct passes, this unites with other ducts to form larger and larger tubes, the main duct opening into the mouth

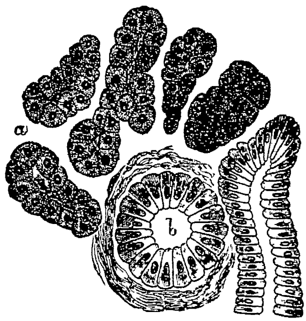


FIG 184 — From a section through a salivary gland *a*, Serous or albuminous alveoli, *b*, intralobular duct cut transversely, also a duct cut longitudinally (Klein and Noble Smith)

Each alveolus is surrounded by a plexus of capillaries, the lymph which exudes from these is in direct contact with the basement-membrane that encloses the alveolus The basement-membrane is lined by secreting cells which surround the central cavity or lumen The basement-membrane is thin in many places, to allow the lymph more ready access to the secreting cells, it is continued along the ducts

The secreting cells differ according to the substance they secrete In alveoli which secrete mucin (such as those in the sublingual gland and some of the alveoli in the submaxillary) the cells after treatment with water or dilute acid are clear and swollen (figs 185, 186), this is the appearance they usually present in sections of the organ But if examined in their natural state by teasing a portion of the fresh gland in serum, they are seen to be occupied by large granules composed of a substance known as *mucigen* or *mucinogen* (fig 185) When the gland is active, mucigen is transformed into mucin and discharged as a clear droplet of that substance into the lumen of the alveolus Outside these are smaller, highly granular cells containing no

mucigen, these marginal cells stain darkly, and generally form crescentic groups (*crescents* or *demilunes* of Gianuzzi) next to the basement-membrane They do not secrete mucin, but are albuminous cells After secretion their granules are lessened The

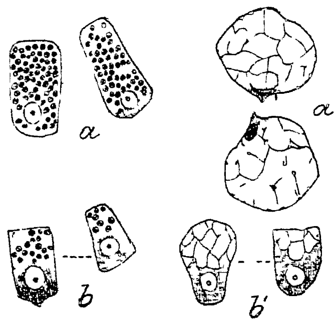


FIG 185 —Mucous cells from submaxillary gland of dog *a*, From a resting or loaded gland, *b*, from a gland which has been secreting for some time, *a'*, *b'*, similar cells which have been treated with dilute acid (Langley) (From *Quain's Anatomy*, by permission of Messrs Longmans, Green & Co)

demilunes are therefore easily seen in the gland before secretion, owing to the contrast they exhibit to the cells loaded with mucin

In those alveoli which do not secrete mucin, but a watery non-viscid saliva (parotid, and some of the alveoli of the submaxillary),

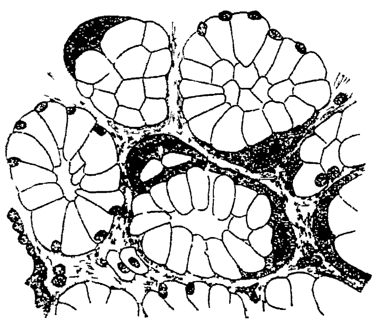


FIG 186 —Section through a mucous gland hardened in alcohol The alveoli are lined with mucous cells, and outside these are the demilunes (Heidenhain)

the cells are filled with small granules of albuminous nature Such alveoli are called *serous* or *albuminous*, to distinguish them from the *mucous* alveoli we have just described (fig 184)

These yield to the secretion its enzyme, *ptyalin* In the salivary glands we may term the zymogen, *ptyalinogen* provisionally, but it has never been satisfactorily separated chemically from ptyalin

After secretion the cells shrink, they stain more readily, their nuclei become more conspicuous, and the outer part of each cell becomes clear and free from granules (fig 187)

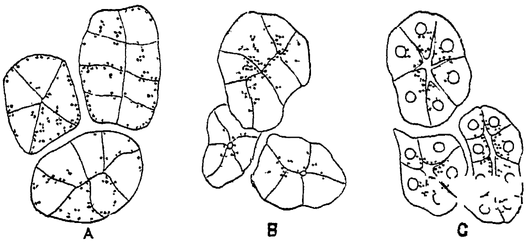


FIG 187 —Alveoli of parotid gland. A, before secretion, B, in the first stage of secretion, C, after prolonged secretion (Langley)

The Secretion of Saliva

The submaxillary gland has a double nerve-supply (1) Parasympathetic, and (2) sympathetic (1) *The chorda tympani*, this is a branch of the seventh cerebral nerve (facial), and in part of its course is bound up in the same sheath as the lingual nerve, a branch of the fifth (trigeminal) When the lingual nerve crosses Wharton's duct beneath the tongue, part of the chorda tympani leaves the lingual, and the preganglionic fibres in it for the submaxillary pass into the hilus of that gland, and end by arborising round a scattered collection of ganglion cells concealed within the substance of the gland This ganglion is known as Langley's ganglion From the cells of Langley's ganglion, post-ganglionic fibres are distributed to the gland-cells and also to the blood-vessels

(2) *Sympathetic* branches are derived from the plexus around the facial artery and accompany the arterial branches which supply the gland (see fig 188)

The chorda tympani is *par excellence* the secretory nerve of the gland When it is stimulated, secretion of saliva and dilatation of the arterioles take place invariably, but the action of atropine indicates that these two effects are quite distinct although, no doubt, metabolites normally assist in causing the vasodilatation Stimulation of the sympathetic always produces constriction of these blood-vessels, and a secretion of a small quantity of thick viscid saliva may also occur, but often the salivary flow is entirely absent Recent investigations have shown that the part played by the sympathetic differs so widely in different animals that the many theories formerly advanced of the relative part played by the two nerves must be regarded as mere matters of speculation.

Section of the chorda tympani produces no immediate result, but after a few days a scanty but continuous secretion of thin watery saliva takes place, this is called *paralytic* secretion If the operation is performed on one side, the gland of the opposite side also shows a similar condition, and the thin saliva secreted there is called the *antilytic* secretion This suggests that the chorda exercises a trophic or nutritive function in relation to the cells of the gland

Besides the secretory mechanisms regulated chiefly by the parasympathetic there is another mechanism in the salivary glands which expresses the saliva from the gland This mechanism is probably under the control of the sympathetic (Babkin), but it is not yet clear what histological elements are responsible for this pressor effect

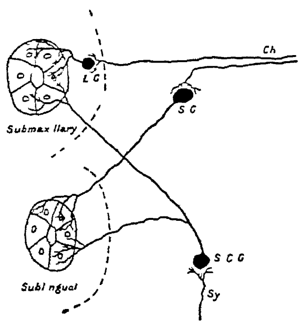


FIG 188 —Diagram of secretory nerves of submaxillary and sublingual glands Two fibres of the chorda tympani (Ch) are shown, one of which supplies the sublingual gland, of which an acinus is shown, the cell station for this is in S G, the so called submaxillary ganglion The other fibre supplies an acinus of the submaxillary gland, its cell station is in Langley s ganglion (L G), within the substance of the gland. Sy is a fibre of the sympathetic, which has its cell station in the superior cervical ganglion, S. C G (After Dixon)

Effect of Drugs on the Gland

Atropine —After intravenous injection of this alkaloid, stimulation of the chorda tympani no longer produces secretion of saliva Much larger doses are necessary to abolish the vasodilator effect of chorda stimulation, or the sympathetic flow in those cases where previous stimulation of this nerve evoked a secretion of saliva

Pilocarpine produces a copious flow of saliva, accompanied by vasodilatation

Ergotoxine paralyses the effects of sympathetic stimulation, but not those of stimulation of the chorda tympani

Adrenaline produces constriction of the blood-vessels In some animals it evokes a considerable flow of saliva, and when this occurs the constriction of the vessels is followed by dilatation This favours a view which has been advanced by some observers, that vasodilatation is in part produced by the chemical action of the products of activity (carbonic and lactic acids, etc)

The sublingual gland is innervated by the same nerves as the submaxillary, but the preganglionic fibres of the chorda tympani have their cell-station in the so-called submaxillary ganglion which is situated between the lingual nerve and the deep part of the submaxillary gland (see fig 188) This has been determined by Langley's nicotine method (see Autonomic Nervous System)

The parotid gland also receives two sets of nerve-fibres analogous to those we have studied in connection with the submaxillary gland The principal secretory nerve-fibres are glosso-pharyngeal in origin,

and reach the gland eventually by the auriculo-temporal nerve, the sympathetic is mainly vasoconstrictor, but in some animals it does contain a few secretory fibres also

Mechanism of Salivary Secretion —Under ordinary conditions the secretion of saliva is a reflex action The principal afferent nerves are those of taste, but the smell or sight of food will also cause "the mouth to water", and under certain conditions, as before vomiting, irritation of the stomach has a similar effect These sensory nerves stimulate a centre in the medulla from which efferent secretory impulses are reflected along the secretory nerves (chorda tympani, etc) to the glands

Pavlov made an external fistula of the submaxillary duct in the dog, and found that the sight of food, the smell of food, or the administration of any kind of food, caused secretion, acid or even sand introduced into the mouth produced a similar effect The effect increased when food was given in the dry condition The results on the parotid secretion were as follows if the dog was shown meat or the meat was given to it to eat there was only a scanty secretion (0 5 c c per minute) If, however, the meat was given as a dry powder, the secretion was much more copious (2 c c per minute) In such experiments the dog must be hungry, for the psychical element involved is important It probably is the case that all constituents of the food causing secretion produce a flow from all the salivary glands, but different substances cause different amounts of saliva to flow, and this would naturally result from varied stimulation of touch and taste sensory nerve-endings

Pavlov, the Russian physiologist, has shown that practically any stimulus may become a "conditioned" stimulus of salivary secretion if the stimulus, *e g* the ringing of a bell, has been previously associated with the giving of food This became the basis of the study of Conditioned Reflexes

A marked reduction in the amount of saliva secreted takes place under conditions of emotional stress, this used to be the basis of one form of trial by ordeal in which the accused was asked to eat a given amount of dry flour, and accounts also for the marked dryness of the mouth of public speakers in circumstances which bear no relation to their actual water requirements

Extirpation of the Salivary Glands —These may be removed without any harmful effects in the lower animals

Thirst (*See* Visceral Sensations)

The Saliva

The **saliva** is the first digestive juice to come in contact with the food The secretions from the different salivary glands are mixed in the mouth, the secretion of the minute mucous glands of the mouth

and a certain number of epithelial scales and the so-called "salivary corpuscles" derived from the tonsils are added to it The liquid is transparent, slightly opalescent, of slimy consistency, and may contain lumps of nearly pure mucin On standing it becomes cloudy owing to the precipitation of calcium carbonate, the carbonic acid, which held it in solution as bicarbonate, escaping

Of the three forms of saliva which contribute to the mixture found in the mouth the sublingual is richest in solids (2 75 per cent) The submaxillary saliva comes next (2 1 to 2 5 per cent) The parotid saliva is poorest in total solids (0 3 to 0 5 per cent), and contains no mucin Mixed saliva contains in man an average of about 0 5 per cent of solids it is alkaline to litmus, due to the salts in it, and has a specific gravity of 1002 to 1006

The solid constituents dissolved in saliva may be classified thus

Organic
- *a* Mucin this may be precipitated by acetic acid.
- *b* Ptyalin an amylolytic enzyme
- *c* Protein of the nature of a globulin
- *d* Potassium sulphocyanide

Inorganic
- *e* Sodium chloride the most abundant salt.
- *f* Other salts sodium carbonate, calcium phosphate and carbonate, magnesium phosphate, potassium chloride

The action of saliva is twofold, physical and chemical

The physical use of saliva consists in moistening the mucous membrane of the mouth, this facilitates speech and assists in the solution of soluble substances in the food, the mucin lubricates the bolus of food to facilitate swallowing

The chemical action of saliva is due to its active principle, **ptyalin** This substance belongs to the class of enzymes which are called amylolytic (starch-splitting) or diastatic (resembling diastase, the similar enzyme in germinating barley and other grains)

The starch is first split into dextrin and maltose, the dextrin is subsequently converted into maltose also this occurs more quickly with erythro-dextrin, which gives a red colour with iodine, than with the other variety of dextrin called achroo-dextrin, which gives no colour with iodine Brown and Morris gave the following provisional equation —

$$\underset{\text{[Starch.]}}{10(C_6H_{10}O_5)n} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{4nH_2O}$$

$$= \underset{\text{[Maltose.]}}{4nC_{12}H_{22}O_{11}} + \underset{\text{[Achroo-dextrin]}}{(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n} + \underset{\text{[Erythro-dextrin.]}}{(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n}$$

Ptyalin acts in a similar way, but more slowly, on glycogen it has no action on cellulose, hence it is inoperative on starch grains, when the cellulose layers are intact Starches vary appreciably in the ease with which they are digested by saliva Mere grinding will allow the granules of rice and arrowroot to be acted upon but

not so in the case of wheat It must be remembered that the husk of the seed contains a diastatic enzyme which would assist the saliva were it not commonly removed by milling or destroyed by the processes used in whitening the flour

Ptyalin acts best at about the temperature of the body (35-40° C) It acts best in a neutral or slightly acid medium and in the presence of small amounts of salts, a small amount of alkali makes but little difference, a very small amount of additional acid stops its activity The conversion of starch into sugar by swallowed saliva in the stomach continues for a certain time It then ceases owing to the hydrochloric acid secreted by the glands of the stomach. The acid which is first poured out neutralises the saliva, and combines with the proteins of the food, but when free acid appears ptyalin is destroyed, and so it cannot resume work when the acid is neutralised in the duodenum Another amylolytic enzyme contained in pancreatic juice (to be considered later) continues the digestion of starch in the intestine

It has recently been pointed out by Hurst and Knott that vegetable starches are more easily digested if they are first acted upon by the hydrochloric acid of the stomach If the starch is not adequately digested it may ferment in the intestine and lead to flatulence from production of gas

Salivary digestion continues in the stomach for a variable time In some cases Cannon found that the food lying in the fundus of the stomach of animals in a quiescent horizontal posture underwent amylolysis for at least two hours, because the relative absence of movement in this region until quite late stages in digestion prevented admixture with gastric juice, especially in the interior of the swallowed masses

If an animal is fed on different coloured foods it will be seen that the last taken passes into the centre of that which has previously entered In this way the period of salivary digestion in the stomach is prolonged, since the food moistened with saliva is protected for a time from the gastric juice the acidity of which destroys ptyalin Recently Campbell and Pembrey have demonstrated that even in man salivary digestion may continue much longer than is commonly supposed, especially is this the case if the secretion of gastric juice has been diminished by severe exercise It is of interest to observe that normally we take fat with starch (*e g* butter with bread, cream with pastry, milk with porridge), and that the effect of fat is to reduce appreciably the amount of gastric secretion and presumably to prolong salivary digestion

CHAPTER XXIX

DIGESTION IN THE STOMACH

The Gastric Juice

THE stomach performs a twofold function It acts as a container of food, a function which is specially important in ruminants which regurgitate the food during the act of rumination The stomach acts as an organ of digestion by providing facilities for the continuation of salivary digestion and by initiating the digestion of the proteins, this latter it does in virtue of the gastric juice secreted by the glands in its wall

The glands of the mucous membrane are of three varieties· (*a*) Cardiac, (*b*) Fundus and body, and (*c*) Pyloric

(*a*) *Cardiac* glands are (1) simple tubular glands lined by short columnar granular cells, (2) small tubulo-racemose glands, only found quite close to the cardiac orifice

(*b*) *Fundus* and body glands are found throughout the remainder of the stomach except the pyloris They are arranged in groups of four or five which are separated by a fine connective tissue Several tubules open into one duct, which forms about a third of the whole length of the tube and opens on the surface The ducts are lined with columnar epithelium The gland-tubules are lined with coarsely granular polyhedral cells (*central cells*) The central cells are mingled with a variable number of cells with clearer protoplasm which Lim proposes should be called *mucoid cells* Between these cells and the basement-membrane of the tubes are large oval or spherical cells, opaque or granular in appearance, with oval nuclei, bulging out the basement-membrane, these cells are called *parietal* or *oxyntic cells* They do not form a continuous layer

(*c*) *Pyloric Glands*—These (fig 191, p 449) are found in the pyloric canal, and have longer ducts than the fundus glands Into each duct two or three tubules open by very short and narrow necks, and the body of each tubule is branched and convoluted The lumen is large The ducts are lined with columnar epithelium, and the tubules with shorter and finely granular cubical cells, not at all unlike the mucoid cells of the fundus glands The pyloric

glands have no parietal cells As they approach the duodenum the pyloric glands become larger, more convoluted and more deeply situated They are directly continuous with Brunner's glands in the duodenum

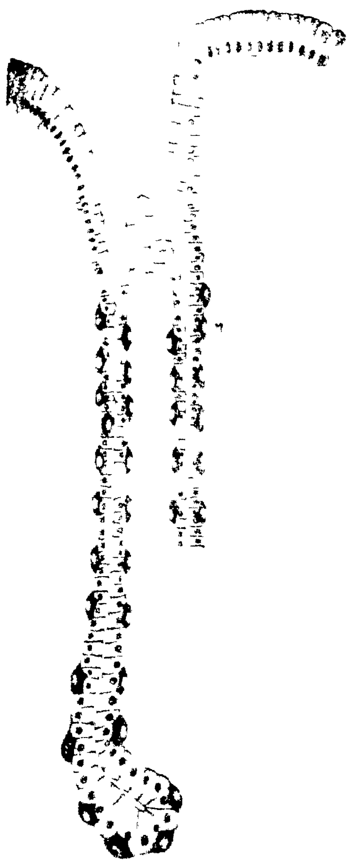


FIG 189 —From a vertical section through the mucous membrane of the cardiac end of stomach Two fundus glands are shown with a duct common to both *a*, Duct with columnar epithelium becoming shorter as the cells are traced downward, *n*, neck of gland tubes, with central and parietal cells, *b*, base with curved cæcal extremity—the parietal cells are not so numerous here (Klein and Noble Smith)

The **central** cells of the fundus glands are loaded with granules During secretion they discharge their granules, those which remain being chiefly situated near the lumen, leaving in each cell a clear outer zone These are the cells that secrete the pepsin The zymogen in the gastric cells is called *pepsinogen* The rennet-

FIG 190 —Transverse section through lower part of fundus glands of a cat *a*, Parietal cells, *b*, central cells, *c*, transverse section of capillaries (Frey)

enzyme that causes the curdling of milk is formed by the same cells

The **parietal cells** undergo merely a change of size during secretion, being at first somewhat enlarged, and after secretion they are somewhat shrunken They are also called *oxyntic* (acid-forming) cells, because they secrete the hydrochloric acid of the juice Heidenhain succeeded in making in a dog a *cul-de-sac* of the fundus, in another, of the pyloric region of the stomach, the former secreted a juice containing both acid and pepsin, the latter, parietal cells being absent, secreted a viscid alkaline juice containing a weak proteolytic enzyme, but true pepsin is here absent (Lim)

The formation of a free acid from the alkaline blood and lymph is an important problem. There is no doubt that it is formed from the chlorides of the blood and lymph, and of the many theories advanced about its actual mode of formation, none is wholly satisfactory Some theories are chemical, and explain the formation of the acid by an interaction of the chlorides and phosphates Others call to their assistance "the law of mass action," and we certainly know that by the action of large quantities of carbonic acid on salts of mineral acids, the latter may be liberated in small quantities We know further that small quantities of acid ions may be continually formed in the organism by ionization But in every case we can only make use of these explanations if we assume that the small quantities of acid are carried away as soon as they are formed, and thus give room for the formation of fresh acid Even then we are unable to explain the whole process A specific action of the cells is no doubt exerted, for these reactions can hardly be considered to occur in the blood generally, but rather in the oxyntic cells, which possess the necessary "selective" powers in reference to the saline constituents of the blood, and the hydrochloric acid, as soon as it is formed, passes into the secretion of the gland in consequence of its high power of diffusion

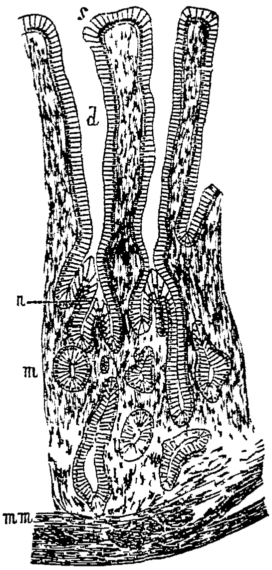


FIG 191 — Section showing the pyloric glands *s*, Free surface, *d*, ducts of pyloric glands, *n*, neck of same, *m*, the gland tubules, *mm*, muscularis mucosæ (Klein and Noble Smith)

Methods of Investigating Gastric Secretion

The early physiologists arrived at the idea of the chemical action of the gastric juice by somewhat heroic methods We read of Spallanzani (1729-99), who swallowed sponges tied to strings and pulled them up again to obtain samples, and of Stevens in Edinburgh, 1777, who persuaded a man to swallow small perforated boxes containing meat, which were later regurgitated

Fistula—The most celebrated investigations are those of Beaumont upon Alexis St Martin in 1822, who, in virtue of a gunshot wound, had a gastric fistula, *i e* an opening between the stomach and the exterior Nowadays, rubber tubes are passed down into the stomach and the contents withdrawn after a given test meal

Ewald's Method —In this method, the stomach contents are withdrawn with a stomach-tube one hour after a test meal consisting of a cup of tea and a piece of dry toast

Fractional Method of Rehfuss —The tube used in this method is of small bore (Einhorn) and has a small expanded metal end It may be left in position for several hours if desired Samples may then be drawn off at intervals by means of a syringe The test meal consists of strained porridge (flavoured with salt) which is readily aspirated

The result of such a fractional test meal, as it is called, has thrown much light on gastric secretion.

The Pavlov Pouch —By this method a piece of the stomach is separated from the remainder of the organ It is described in more detail below

The Composition of Gastric Juice

This varies according to the time at which the sample is taken after a meal, but average figures are given in the following table —

Constituents —

		Per cent
1	Water	99 44
2	Organic substances (chiefly pepsin)	0 32
3	HCl, free	**0 02-0 2**
4	Chlorides (inorganic as HCl)	**0 03-0 3**
5	Phosphates	about 0 01
6	Organic acids	about 0 01

Of special interest is the HCl and chloride content of the juice, as they have a special relation to gastric ulcer In practice the free HCl is estimated by titration with N/10 NaOH, using Topfer's reagent, which changes from red to yellow at pH 3 6, as an indicator, then total chlorides by the Volhard method The content of inorganic chlorides is then found by subtracting 1 from 2 The total acidity of the juice is estimated, using phenolphthalein, which changes at pH 8 3 from colourless to red, as an indicator, and is of interest, as this less the HCl gives the amount of organic acid present It must be understood that the chlorides may be expressed as such or as HCl, but one expression may readily be converted into the other by making use of the molecular weights 58 5 NaCl $\equiv$ 36 5 HCl These simple estimations do not take into consideration HCl in combination with protein This is really included in the inorganic chlorides as estimated above and in the total acidity

Mechanism of Secretion of Gastric Juice

1 *Nervous Mechanism* —As long ago as 1852 Bidder and Schmidt showed in a dog with a gastric fistula that the sight of food caused a secretion of gastric juice, and in 1878 Richet observed that in a man with complete occlusion of the gullet the act of mastication caused a copious flow of gastric juice There could therefore be no doubt that the glands are under the control of the nervous system, but the early attempts to discover the secretory nerves of the stomach were unsuccessful. Much of our knowledge has been obtained by the use of the **Pavlov pouch** (so called after its inventor) A piece of the stomach with its nerve and blood supply intact is completely separated off from the main stomach. By experiments on dogs Pavlov showed that the secretion of this small stomach is an exact sample, both as regards composition and rate of formation, of that which occurs in the main stomach, which is still left in continuity with the œsophagus above and the duodenum below

Another procedure adopted was to divide the œsophagus and attach the two cut ends to the opening in the neck The animal was fed by the lower segment, but any food taken into the mouth, or any saliva secreted there, never reached the stomach, but fell out through the opening of the upper segment These animals were kept alive for months, and soon accommodated themselves to their new conditions of life The animals could thus be subjected to (1) real feeding, (2) sham feeding, by allowing them to eat food which subsequently tumbled out through the neck opening, and (3) psychical feeding, in which the animal was shown the food but was not allowed to eat it The psychical element is important

Mechanical excitation of the stomach-wall produces no secretion If water is introduced there is a slight flow, and even if meat is introduced into the main stomach without the knowledge of the dog, the juice formed is scanty and of feeble digestive power

There is, moreover, no connection between the acts of mastication and swallowing and that of gastric secretion Sham feeding with stones, butter, salt, pepper, mustard, and acid, though it excited a flow of saliva, produced no effect on the stomach. If, however, meat was used for the sham feeding, an abundant and active secretion occurred in the stomach (that of the small stomach was actually examined) after a latency of about five minutes The secretion is thus adapted to the kind of food the dog has to digest, the larger the proportion of protein in the diet, the more abundant is the juice, and the richer both in pepsin and acid

Indeed, if the animal is hungry and shown the meat and not allowed to swallow it, the effect is almost as great The following

striking experiment also shows the importance of the psychical element Two dogs were taken, and a weighed amount of protein introduced into the main stomach of each without their knowledge, one was then sham fed on meat, and one and a half hours later the amount of protein digested by this dog was five times greater than that which was digested by the other

If the vagi are cut (below the origin of the recurrent laryngeal to avoid paralysis of the larynx), and sham feeding is then performed with meat, no secretion is obtained, the vagi therefore contain the secretory fibres The experiment of stimulating the peripheral end of the cut nerve confirmed this hypothesis. The nerve was cut in the neck four or five days before it was stimulated, in this time degeneration of the cardio-inhibitory fibres took place, so that stoppage of the heart did not occur when the nerve was stimulated, under these conditions a secretion was obtained with a long latency, the latency is explained by the presence of secreto-inhibitory fibres Atropine abolishes the action of the vagus

2 *Chemical mechanism* —At the same time it must be emphasised that chemical stimuli play an important part in digestion, extracts of meat and even water bring about the secretion of gastric juice Meat extracts usually contain the substance histamine (a derivative of the amino-acid histidine) which brings about a very marked secretion of gastric juice (see below) Herzen has shown that dextrin acts even more powerfully and thus is emphasised further the importance of salivary digestion in promoting gastric secretion Herzen distinguishes between *succagogues* (juice-drivers) such as Liebig's extract, and *peptogens* such as dextrin, which produce not only an increased flow, but a juice rich in pepsin-hydrochloric acid The products of proteolysis are also peptogenic, so that when once digestion has started, a stimulus for more secretion is provided

Alkalis such as sodium bicarbonate cause a secretion of gastric juice, while acids such as acetic bring about a cessation of acid secretion (Maclean)

Edkins has brought forward evidence that the hydrochloric acid in coming in contact with the pyloric canal causes the absorption into the blood of a substance *gastrin*, which causes a secretion of gastric juice This substance can be extracted from mucosa of the pyloric canal It can be distinguished from histamine (Lim) and from secretin which is absent from this region We see then in summarising that there are two phases of gastric secretion, the first of which is nervous and the second of which is chemical

Certain articles of diet such as fat diminish the gastric secretion during the first hour but thereafter the acidity of the gastric juice may be increased, possibly owing to delayed emptying and to absence

of duodenal regurgitation (Roberts). When these fats are given to reduce secretion it is essential that they are followed later by alkali such as magnesium oxide. Atropine by paralysing the parasympathetic reduces gastric secretion like all other secretions.

Carlson's Man.—A large amount of information regarding the secretion of gastric juice in man has been obtained by Carlson in a man with a gastric fistula like that of Alexis St Martin. He has shown that, apparently, the psychic secretion is not so important in man as the experiments of Pavlov suggest, but that the secretion which takes place when there is gratification of appetite is specially important. Apparently man, being more sophisticated than the dog, does not unconsciously presume he will get food until he actually does so. Carlson has shown that articles which are pleasant to the taste of the individual, evoke considerably more gastric juice than others. We see here the importance of the cook in relation to our digestion.

The **effect of emotion** on gastric secretion has been clearly demonstrated in Carlson's man, and also by Venables and Bennett, who have shown that, as in the case of the saliva, the secretion of gastric juice may be markedly reduced by mental stress. It has also been shown that sympathetic stimulation causes a reduction of gastric secretion (Flint and Moll). We shall see later that gastric movements may similarly be reduced.

The Physiological Order of a Dinner.—It is of considerable interest that mankind has gradually evolved an order of taking articles of food which is fairly physiological. The tasty *hors-d'œuvre* or soup come early to stimulate secretion, in virtue of appetite secretion and of the effect of meat extracts. This is followed by the main protein course. Then comes the carbohydrate or sweet course, the starch, which by coming late, has all the more chance of being digested by the saliva. Last comes the fruit, which cleanses the teeth, and whose acid promotes the secretion of saliva for furthering the digestion of the sweet. In addition, as pointed out by Pavlov, we have cultivated the convention that it is a pleasure for individuals to dine together under conditions most favourable for stimulating the appetite and promoting a sense of well-being.

Alcohol.—The consumption of alcohol with meals is a time-honoured custom. It used to be taught that this substance had no stimulating action on the gastric secretion, but since the introduction of the fractional method of investigating the gastric contents it has been found that dilute alcohol causes a very appreciable secretion of hydrochloric acid (Maclean). There seems little doubt, also, that by paralysing some of the higher mental mechanisms it promotes a sense of well-being and by "drowning" cares may be of much value in promoting digestion.

Actions of Gastric Juice

Gastric juice has the following five actions —

1 It is **antiseptic,** owing to the hydrochloric acid present, putrefactive processes do not normally occur in the stomach, and the micro-organisms which produce such processes, many of which are swallowed with the food, are in great measure destroyed, and thus the body is protected from them

2 It **inverts** cane-sugar into glucose and fructose This also is due to the acid of the juice, and is frequently assisted by inverting enzymes contained in the vegetable food swallowed The juice has no action on starch

3 It contains **lipase,** a fat-splitting enzyme The protein envelopes of the fat-cells are first dissolved by the pepsin-hydrochloric acid, and the solid fats are melted They are then split in small measure into their constituents, glycerol and fatty acids This action is mainly produced by a regurgitation of the contents of the duodenum mixed with pancreatic juice, but even after the pylorus has been ligatured and regurgitation prevented, the gastric juice itself produces a *small* amount of fat-splitting, and therefore contains lipase

4 It **curdles milk** —This is due to the action of the rennet enzyme or rennin The conditions of this action we have already discussed under milk, but it may here be added that Pavlov has advanced the view that rennin is not a distinct and separate enzyme, but milk-curdling is only one of the activities of pepsin This hypothesis has been accepted by numerous physiologists, but, on the other hand, there is a number of equally eminent observers who still maintain that pepsin and rennin are two separate enzymes Whichever view is correct, the curd of casein formed from the caseinogen is subsequently digested as other proteins are

5 It is **proteolytic**, this is the most important action of all The proteins of the food are converted by the pepsin-hydrochloric acid into peptones (see Protein Hydrolysis)

The question has been often raised why the stomach does not digest itself during life The mere fact that the tissues are alkaline and pepsin requires an acid medium in which to act is not an explanation, but only opens up the fresh problem why the pancreatic juice which is alkaline does not digest the intestinal wall To say that it is the vital properties of the tissues that enable them to resist digestion only shelves the difficulty and gives no real explanation of the mechanism of defence Recent studies on the important question of immunity (*q v*) have furnished us with the key to the problem, just as poisons introduced from without stimulate the cells to produce antitoxins, so harmful substances produced within the body are provided with anti-substances capable of neutralising their effects, and Weinland has shown that the gastric epithelium forms an antipepsin, the intestinal epithelium an anti-trypsin, and so on The bodies of parasitic worms which live in the intestine are particularly rich in these anti-bodies

The Limitation of Gastric Acidity—It is seen that the percentage of HCl in freshly secreted gastric juice is about 0 5 per cent, but it must be understood that this concentration of HCl is not normally in contact with the stomach-wall During digestion much of the free HCl is neutralised by the food and the ultimate percentage is only about 0 1 to 0 2 per cent, which is about the optimum *p*H 1 5 for the action of pepsin

When the food has left the stomach the acidity is prevented from rising by regurgitation of the alkaline fluid from the duodenum The evidence for this is that bile and lipase may be found in the stomach, and that although at the end of an hour and a half after a meal there is a reduction in the concentration of free HCl in the stomach, the chloride content still remains high This is well seen in fig 192 Regurgitation has also been observed by X-rays (Bolton) Some neutralisation may also take place as a result of the secretion of alkali by the cells of the pylorus as described by Heidenhain (p 448)

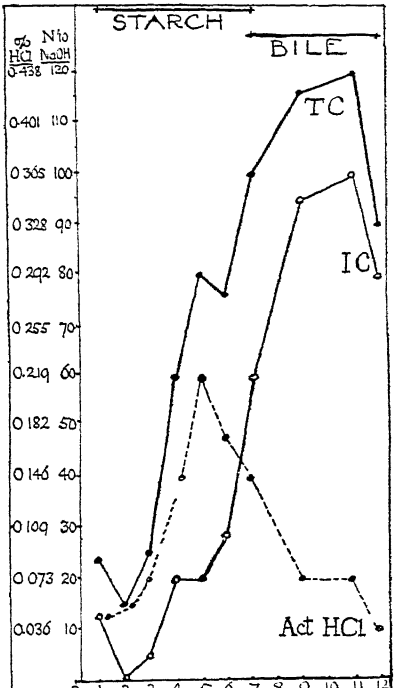


FIG 192 —A record by Bolton of the analysis of gastric juice of a normal man taken by the fractional method TC, Total chlorides, IC, Inorganic chlorides, Act HCl, Free hydrochloric acid Samples were taken each quarter of an hour Described in text

According to Maclean, however, the persistence of the high chloride content is due to the secretion of neutral chloride by the stomach itself, and the fall in the free HCl is due to the action of H ions on the stomach In support of this theory he has shown that the introduction of any acid into the stomach will cause a cessation of the secretion of HCl produced by dilute alcohol He does not, however, explain why this mechanism so readily breaks down and hyperchlorhydria occurs The views of Bolton and Maclean are not, however, mutually exclusive

There is reason to believe that regurgitation from the duodenum is of clinical importance and that if it is reduced and the gastric acidity rises there is an abnormal liability to gastric ulcer, for the hyper-

chlorhydria prevents an injury of the mucous membrane from healing On the other hand, excessive regurgitation may occur to neutralise abnormal acids (*e g* butyric) taken in with or produced from the food, and result in the so-called "bilious attack"

It has long been stated that the administration of fat increases the regurgitation from the duodenum, but in view of the work of Roberts a more detailed investigation of this problem is necessary

CHAPTER XXX

DIGESTION IN THE INTESTINES

DIGESTION in the intestine is brought about by the juice which is poured into the gut by the neighbouring gland, the pancreas, assisted by the bile and the secretions elaborated by the glands in the intestinal wall itself

The Pancreas

This is a tubulo-racemose gland closely resembling the salivary glands in structure The principal differences are that the alveoli or acini are more tubular in character, the connective tissue between them is looser

The secreting cells of the pancreas are polyhedral When examined in the fresh condition, or in preparations preserved by osmic acid, their protoplasm is seen to be filled in the inner two-thirds with small granules, but the outer third is left clear, and stains readily with protoplasmic dyes (fig 193)

During secretion the granules are discharged, the clear zone consequently becomes wider, and the granular zone narrower

FIG 193 —Section of the pancreas of a dog during digestion *a*, Alveoli lined with cells, the clear outer zone of which is well stained with hæmatoxylin , *d*, duct lined with short cubical cells × 350 (Klein and Noble Smith)

These granules indicate the presence of the zymogens, which are the precursors of the enzymes in the juice The secretory granules here as in other glands are probably formed from the mitochondria which are present in the protoplasm

Scattered between the ordinary glandular cells are small masses of epithelial cells free from ducts These are the islets of Langerhans which produce insulin The granules of the cells are of two kinds

(*a*) granules which are fixed by alcohol, and (*b*) granules which are fixed by fixatives in watery solution, *e g* formaldehyde The granules may be demonstrated by injecting neutral red into the animal before death (*i e* intra-vitam staining)

Composition and Action of Pancreatic Juice

The pancreatic juice may be obtained by a fistula in animals, a cannula being inserted into the main pancreatic duct, but as with gastric juice, experiments on the pancreatic secretion are frequently performed with an artificial juice made by mixing a weak alkaline solution (1 per cent sodium carbonate) with an extract of pancreas which is usually made with glycerol

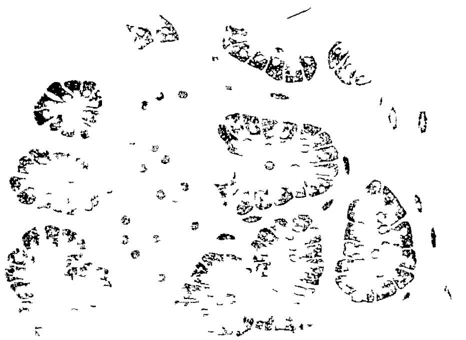


FIG 194 —Section of the pancreas of armadillo, showing alveoli and an islet of Langerhans in the connective tissue (V D Harris)

Quantitative analysis of human pancreatic juice gives the following results —

Water	97 6 per cent.
Organic solids	1 8 ,,
Inorganic salts	0 6 ,,

In the dog the amount of solids is much greater

The organic substances in pancreatic juice are—

(*a*) Enzymes These are the most important both quantitatively and functionally They are four in number —

i. Trypsin, a proteolytic or proteoclastic enzyme In the fresh juice, however, this is present in the form of trypsinogen, which is less active, but which becomes activated by the succus entericus

ii Amylase, an amylolytic (amyloclastic) enzyme

iii Lipase, a fat-splitting or lipolytic (lipoclastic) enzyme

iv A milk-curdling enzyme

(*b*) A small amount of protein matter, coagulable by heat

(*c*) Traces of leucine, tyrosine, xanthine, and soaps

The inorganic substances in pancreatic juice are—

Sodium chloride, which is the most abundant, and smaller quantities of potassium chloride, and phosphates of sodium, calcium, and magnesium. The alkalinity of the juice is due to phosphates and carbonates, especially of sodium

1 **Trypsin** —Trypsin acts like pepsin, but with certain differences, which are as follows —

(*a*) It acts in an alkaline (optimum ***p*H 8 1**), (*cf* pepsin in an acid) medium

(*b*) It acts more rapidly than pepsin, deutero-proteoses can be detected as intermediate products in the formation of peptone, the primary proteoses have not been detected

(*c*) Alkali-meta-protein is formed in place of the acid-meta-protein of gastric digestion

(*d*) It acts more powerfully on certain proteins (such as elastin) which are difficult of digestion in gastric juice It does not, however, digest collagen

(*e*) Acting on solid proteins such as fibrin, it eats them away from the surface to the interior, there is no preliminary swelling as in gastric digestion

(*f*) Trypsin acts further than pepsin, and rapidly splits up the proteose and peptone which have left the stomach into simpler substances, the polypeptides The polypeptides in their turn are resolved into their constituent amino-acids, such as leucine, tyrosine, alanine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, arginine, tryptophan, and many others The constitution and properties of these cleavage products have been described In addition to these there is a certain amount of ammonia The red colour which a tryptic digest strikes with chlorine or bromine water is due to the presence of tryptophan (indole-amino-propionic acid)

When once the peptone stage is passed, the products of further cleavage no longer give the biuret reaction It may, however, take weeks to reach this stage in a test-tube

A variable fraction of the protein molecule is broken off with comparative ease, so that certain free amino-acids appear in the mixture, at a time when the remainder are still linked together as polypeptides But ultimately the whole molecule is resolved into amino-acids, either entirely separated or in very short polypeptide linkages

It will thus be seen that there are two important differences between pepsin and trypsin, one is a difference of degree, trypsin being by far the more powerful and rapid catalyst, the second is a difference of kind, pepsin not being able to cleave polypeptides into

amino-acids in the way trypsin can The preliminary action of pepsin, however, is beneficial, for trypsin cleavage occurs more readily after pepsin has acted on a protein

2 **Amylase (and Maltase)** —The conversion of starch into maltose is the most rapid of all the actions of the pancreatic juice Its power in this direction is much greater than that of saliva, and it will act even on unboiled starch The small amount of this enzyme in the juice of infants is an indication that milk, and not starch, is their natural diet Some observers have found small quantities of maltase in pancreatic juice

3 **Lipase** —Fats are split by pancreatic lipase into glycerol and fatty acids The fatty acids unite with the alkaline bases present to form soaps If a glycerol extract of pancreas is filtered, the filtrate has no lipoclastic action, the material deposited on the filter is also inactive, but on mixing it with the inactive filtrate once more, a strongly lipoclastic material is obtained In this way lipase is separable into two fractions the material on the filter is inactive lipase, the material in the filtrate is its co-enzyme, the latter is not destroyed by boiling Bile salts also activate the inactive lipase, and this explains the fact that bile favours fat-splitting

Pancreatic juice also assists in the emulsification of fats, this it is able to do because it is alkaline, and it is capable of liberating fatty acids, which form soaps with the alkali present, the soap forming a film on the outer surface of each of the fat globules prevents them running together Emulsions are much more permanent in the presence of such colloids as gum or protein The presence of protein in the pancreatic juice renders it therefore specially suitable for the purpose of emulsification

4 **Milk-curdling Enzyme** —The addition of pancreatic extracts or pancreatic juice to milk causes clotting, but this action (which differs in some particulars from the clotting caused by rennet) can hardly ever be called into play, as the milk upon which the juice has to act has been already curdled by the rennin of the stomach *

The Mechanism of Pancreatic Secretion

It was first shown by Popielski and Wertheimer and Le Page that a flow of pancreatic juice still occurs when the nerves supplying the duodenum and pancreas have been cut through, and later Wertheimer found that the flow can be excited by injection of acid into the jejunum, but not when it is injected into the lower part of the ileum These authors concluded that the secretion depended on a nervous mechanism

* Whether the action on milk is due to a special enzyme, or is a side action of trypsin is a moot point, similar to that raised in relation to pepsin.

This subject was reinvestigated by Starling and Bayliss They showed that the secretion cannot be reflex, since it occurs after extirpation of the cœliac plexus, and destruction of all nerves passing to an isolated loop of intestine It must therefore be due to direct stimulation of the pancreatic cells, by a substance or substances conveyed to the gland from the bowel by the blood-stream

Such a substance was discovered by Bayliss and Starling, and called **secretin** They found that if dilute hydrochloric acid (0 4 per cent) is placed in the duodenum, or if an extract of the duodenal wall (made with dilute HCl but subsequently neutralised and freed from protein) is injected into the blood-stream, pancreatic secretion occurs, although this is not caused by injection of acid only into the blood-stream The presence of this acid in the stomach suggested that hydrochloric had a specific action in this way, but later it was shown by J Mellanby that many substances (ether, soaps, alcohol, chloral, etc), especially *bile,* when introduced into the duodenum were capable of exciting a flow of pancreatic juice Further, it was recognised from clinical reference that pancreatic digestion was not impaired in the absence of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice An analysis of these and many other factors showed that secretin is present as such in the duodenal mucous membrane, and that secretin is carried into the blood by bile salts when bile is absorbed from the duodenum Hence the secretion of pancreatic juice is intimately related to the entrance of bile into the duodenum The discharge of bile from the gall-bladder and liver into the duodenum is in turn determined by the passage of peristaltic waves from the pylorus down the small intestine Each peristaltic wave is preceded by a wave of inhibition which releases the sphincter of the common bile-duct as it passes through the muscle of the duodenum, this relaxation determines the discharge of a few drops of bile into the duodenum Hence the sequence of events leading to pancreatic secretion is as follows The stomach discharges its contents into the upper part of the duodenum, this initiates peristaltic waves which pass down the small intestine, when a peristaltic wave reaches the entrance of the common bile duct, the sphincter is relaxed and bile enters the duodenum, the bile salts are absorbed and carry secretin into the blood, the secretin stimulates the pancreas to secrete pancreatic juice and the bile salts are returned to the liver to act as cholagogues

Secretin has been prepared by Mellanby and appears to be a polypeptide It is intensely active, 0 03 mgr injected intravenously into a cat producing about 3 0 c c of pancreatic juice It is soluble in water and dilute alkali, but is insoluble in dilute acid It is probably the same substance in all animals and is not specific to different kinds of animals The amount present in the intestinal wall becomes less and less below the duodenum

Pavlov by experiments of a similar nature to those which led him to the discovery of the secretory nerves of the gastric mucous membrane, discovered the secretory nerves of the pancreas in the vagus and to a less extent in the splanchnic nerves Later it was shown that the formation of the enzymes of the pancreas is under the control of the vagus nerves, the action of secretin being to stimulate the cells of the pancreas to secrete a copious flow of dilute sodium bicarbonate by which these enzymes are carried from the pancreas into the duodenum Actually, as the work of Anrep and of Mellanby indicates therefore, the specific work of the pancreas (the formation of enzymes) is controlled by the vagus nerves, whilst secretin stimulates the production of a fluid which carries these enzymes into the duodenum and ensures the presence of a fluid of the optimum reaction in which these enzymes exert their digestive actions This latter action, as shown by Bayliss and Starling, does not appear to be paralysed by atropine

Adaptation of the Pancreas —To a certain degree it cannot be doubted that the pancreas adapts its secretion to the work it has to do Thus, whereas gastric juice has a maximal flow soon after the ingestion of food, the pancreatic flow does not attain its full force until some time later, that is, when it is wanted The view that this is due to the hormone named secretin, which is not formed until the gastric contents enter the intestine, fully explains the reason for the delay

But Pavlov went further than this, and stated that the proportion of the various enzymes of the juice was adapted to the proportions of proteins, carbohydrates, and fats in the food taken Considerable doubt has been cast on these results, because of the failure to confirm one of the most remarkable instances of such adaptation, this is the power of the pancreas to secrete *lactase* (an enzyme capable of hydrolysing lactose) Normal pancreatic juice contains no lactase, but certain observers stated that by feeding an animal on milk, the pancreas could be educated to secrete it. Careful experiments by Plimmer have shown this is not really so, and so much more stringent experimental conditions will have to be imposed before the other adaptations can be considered proven

The Succus Entericus

Succus entericus has been obtained free from other secretions by means of a fistula Thiry's method is to cut the intestine across in two places, the loop so cut is still supplied with blood and nerves, as its mesentery is intact, this loop is emptied, one end is sewn up, and the other stitched to the abdominal wound, and so a *cul-de-sac* from which the secretion can be collected is made The continuity of the remainder of the intestine is restored by fastening together the upper and lower portions of the bowel from which the loop has been removed In Vella's method both ends of the loop are sutured to the wound in the abdomen (See fig 195)

The succus entericus possesses the power of converting disaccharides into monosaccharides This power it owes to three enzymes **Invertase** or *sucrase* is the enzyme which inverts and hydrolyses

sucrose or cane-sugar—that is, it converts sucrose into glucose and fructose The original term "inversion" has already been explained It has been extended to include the similar hydrolysis of other disaccharides, although there may be no formation of lævo-rotatory substances The enzyme in the juice which converts maltose into glucose is called **maltase**, and that which acts upon lactose is called **lactase**

For many years little or nothing was known regarding the action of the intestinal juice beyond this, but subsequent investigations have altered this state of things, and in the light of these, the succus entericus is seen to be a juice of the highest importance

Pavlov was the first to show that one of its main actions is to reinforce and intensify the action of the pancreatic juice, especially in reference to its proteolytic power Claude Bernard, one of the

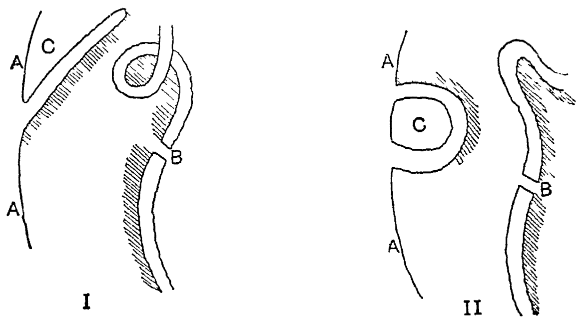


FIG 195 —Diagram of intestinal fistula I, Thiry's method, II, Vella's method A, Abdominal wall, B, intestine, with mesentery, C, separated loop of intestine, with attached mesentery

earliest to study the pancreatic secretion, entirely missed its tryptic action On standing, the juice very slowly increases in proteolytic activity Vernon has shown that much the same is true for extracts of the pancreas The fresh juice contains trypsinogen, and this is transformed into the active enzyme trypsin

If fresh pancreatic and intestinal juices are mixed together, the result is a powerful proteolytic mixture, though neither juice by itself is so active

Pavlov speaks of the substance in the intestinal juice which has this reinforcing action as an "enzyme of enzymes," and has named it **enterokinase**

Trypsinogen will digest peptones, histones, and protamines, but in association with the intestinal juice will also digest the more resistant substances such as fibrin, gelatin, and casein (Willstatter,

1928) It used to be considered that trypsinogen was quite inactive, but this statement refers to its action on certain proteins only *

The fact that intestinal juice increases the proteolytic action of pancreatic juice has been confirmed repeatedly, and been found to be true for the human juices in those rare surgical instances where it has been possible to examine the juices, as in a case fully investigated by Hamburger Starling showed that enterokinase justifies the assumption that it is a true enzyme, for provided sufficient time is allowed to elapse, it will catalyse any amount of pancreatic juice

How the enterokinase acts is explained by J Mellanby and Woolley in the following way —Trypsinogen is a complex consisting of trypsin united with a protein moiety, and so long as the enzyme is combined in this way it is only partially active, enterokinase is a proteolytic enzyme which adsorbs and then digests this protein moiety, and thus liberates the trypsin

The mixture of pancreatic and intestinal juice is extraordinarily powerful If secretin is administered to a fasting animal, the juice secreted, having no food to act upon, will produce erosion and inflammation of the intestinal wall (Starling)

Succus entericus has no action on native proteins such as fibrin and egg-white, but it acts on proteoses and peptone (Cohnheim) It rapidly breaks them up into simpler substances, of which ammonia, leucine, tyrosine, and the hexone bases have been identified Cohnheim named the enzyme to which this is due **erepsin** Hamburger found that erepsin is also present in the human juice, it is not identical with enterokinase, because erepsin is destroyed by heating the juice to 59° C for three hours, enterokinase is not destroyed until the temperature is raised to 67° C A similar enzyme is present in most tissues, it is most abundant in the kidney (Vernon)

Cohnheim investigated the action of erepsin on a large number of proteins, it acts energetically on proteoses, peptone, and protamines on histone, which occupies an intermediate place between protamines and the other proteins, it has a slight action On the other native proteins it has no action, with the single exception of caseinogen, which is speedily broken up into simple substances, this opens up the interesting physiological possibility that the suckling infant is able to digest its protein nutriment even if pepsin and trypsin are absent

The **bile**, as we shall find, has little or no digestive action by itself, but combined with pancreatic juice it assists the latter in all its actions This is true for the digestion of starch and of protein, but most markedly so for the digestion of fat

* A criticism of this conclusion is the fact that it is extremely difficult to be sure that the trypsinogen is quite free from trypsin which if dilute will attack the more easily digested proteins only

Bile has also an important action in stimulating pancreatic secretion and in the absorption of fats. Occlusion of the bile-duct by a gall-stone or by inflammation prevents bile entering the duodenum. Under these conditions the fæces contain a large amount of undigested and digested fat which has escaped absorption.

General Aspects of Digestion

In our consideration of digestion we see that the occurrences in the alimentary canal are not a series of isolated phenomena. Each step follows in an orderly manner as the result of the previous steps. The product of salivary digestion, dextrin, causes gastric secretion; both are affected by mental states which also affect gastric movements. The food leaving the stomach sets up peristaltic waves in the duodenum and causes the pouring out of bile which in turn causes the absorption of secretin from the duodenal wall; the secretin is taken by the blood-stream to the pancreas, where it excites a flow of pancreatic juice; this juice arrives in the duodenum ready to act on starchy substances and on fat. With the assistance of the bile, fatty acid is liberated which in its turn forms more secretin, and so more pancreatic juice. The pancreatic juice, however, cannot act on proteins without enterokinase, which is supplied by the succus entericus; this sets free the trypsin. The trypsin and alkali with the assistance of erepsin effectively complete the proteolysis begun by the acid and pepsin of the stomach, while the inverting enzymes of the succus entericus complete the digestion of the carbohydrates.

Bacterial Action

The gastric juice is an antiseptic; the pancreatic juice is not. An alkaline fluid like pancreatic juice is just the most suitable medium for bacteria to flourish in. Even in an artificial digestion the fluid very soon becomes putrid, unless special precautions to exclude or kill bacteria are taken. It is often difficult to say where pancreatic action ends and bacterial action begins, as many of the bacteria that grow in the intestinal contents (having reached that situation in spite of the gastric juice) produce enzymes which act in the same way as the pancreatic juice. Some form sugar from starch, others peptones, and amino-acids from proteins, while others, again, break up fats. There are, however, certain actions that are entirely due to these putrefactive organisms.

1. On carbohydrates. The most frequent fermentation they set up is the lactic acid fermentation; this may go further and result in the formation of carbonic acid, hydrogen, and butyric acid. Cellulose is broken up into carbonic acid and methane. This is the chief

cause of the gases in the intestine, the amount of which is increased by vegetable food

ii. On fats In addition to acting like lipase, bacteria produce lower acids (valeric, butyric, etc) The formation of acid products from fats and carbohydrates gives to the intestinal contents an acid reaction Research shows that the contents of the intestine become acid much higher up than was formerly supposed These organic acids do not, however, hinder pancreatic digestion

iii On proteins Peptones, amino-acids, and ammonia are produced, but the enzymes of these putrefactive organisms have a specially powerful action in liberating substances having an evil odour, such as skatole (C_9H_9N) Skatole originates from the indole radical of trytophan, one of the amino-acids of protein

iv On amino-acids The most frequent change consists in the splitting off of carbonic acid from their COOH group, and the production of amines, as shown in the following examples —

$$\underset{\text{[Leucine]}}{(CH_3)_2\ CH\ CH_2\ CH\ NH_2\ COOH} = \underset{\text{[Iso amylamine]}}{(CH_3)_2CH\ CH_2\ CH_2\ NH_2} + CO_2$$

$$\underset{\text{[Tyrosine]}}{OH\ C_6H_4\ CH_2\ CH\ NH_2\ COOH} = \underset{\text{[Hydroxyphenyl ethylamine]}}{OH\ C_6H_4\ CH_2\ CH_2\ NH_2} + CO_2$$

Such basic products if absorbed and not excreted by the kidney may produce harmful effects Both the above produce a high blood-pressure Their amount may be lessened by diminishing the protein intake in the food Another amine called histamine is similarly produced by a loss of CO_2 from the amino-acid histidine This causes a dilatation of capillaries (*q v*) (Dale and Richards) which is associated with compensatory arterial constriction (McDowall) Whether this constriction is in some way responsible for the high blood-pressure which is associated with excessive meat eating is a matter of debate, but it may readily be that the compensatory constriction leads to hypertrophy and eventually to permanently increased peripheral resistance

Ammonia-producing organisms flourish best in the lower regions of the small intestine, the ammonia neutralises the organic acids produced higher up In the large intestine the contents may have an alkaline reaction

Sour milk has in past years been extolled not only as a useful food, but as a cure for many dyspeptic disorders Although its efficacy in this direction has been much exaggerated, its usefulness in certain cases is explicable on the ground that the lactic acid bacillus, which is a harmless one in itself, possesses the power, when it is actively growing, of destroying other micro-organisms of a harmful kind

CHAPTER XXXI

SOME METHODS USED IN INVESTIGATING DIGESTIVE JUICES

THE following are important examples of methods commonly used —

To estimate Amylolytic Activity—The most typical of numerous methods employed in the investigation of the rate of starch digestion (by saliva, pancreatic amylase, plant diastase, etc) consists in the determination of the *achromic point*, that is the moment when iodine ceases to give a colour, all the erythro-dextrin having been converted into achroo-dextrin and maltose The mixture of starch solution and digestive fluid in known proportions is kept in a water-bath at constant temperature (40° C) Every half minute or so a drop of the mixture is transferred with a glass rod to a drop of iodine solution on a testing slab As long as starch is present the colour struck will be blue, then as erythro-dextrin appears the colour will be violet, and when all starch has gone, reddish-brown This gradually gets fainter and fainter until finally the achromic point is reached The time occupied from the start is noted If this is done with the same quantity of saliva from different people a relative measure of the activity of their saliva is obtained If it is done with different quantities of saliva from the same person, it will be found that the time occupied in reaching the achromic point is inversely proportional to the amount of saliva used

To estimate Activity of Lipase—As before the digestive fluid containing the enzyme is mixed with the fat, and after incubation at the usual temperature for a given time, the amount of fatty acid liberated can be ascertained by titrating with a standard solution of alkali using phenolphthalein as indicator, the point of neutrality with this indicator being signalised by the appearance of a pink colour

To estimate Proteolytic Activity—Here the methods are numerous, and may be divided into two categories (*a*) those in which the rate of solution of a solid protein is used as an index of the action of the enzyme, as in Roaf's and Mett's methods, and (*b*) more complex methods in which the rate of action is ascertained by estimating the amount of the products (amino-acids) liberated

Roaf's Method—This is a modification of Grutzner's method Grützner used fibrin stained with carmine, and when the fibrin is

CHAPTER XXXII

THE ABSORPTION OF FOOD

FOOD is digested in order that it may be absorbed. It is absorbed in order that it may be assimilated, that is, become an integral part of the living material of the body. The digested food thus diminishes in quantity as it passes along the alimentary canal, and the fæces contain the undigested or indigestible residue.

In the mouth and œsophagus the thickness of the epithelium and the quick passage of the food through these parts reduce absorption to a minimum. Absorption takes place very slightly in the stomach. The most recent observations show that water is not absorbed in the stomach, but alcohol is absorbed to some extent. Salts also do not seem to be absorbed unless present in great concentrations, such as do not occur in normal diets, sugar is absorbed with difficulty. The small intestine, with its folds and villi to increase its surface, is the great place for absorption. The superficial area of the small intestine, if laid flat, is about 1.5 square metres. This by the presence of the villi is increased to about 42 square metres. Absorption begins in the duodenum, and the products of digestion have largely disappeared by the time the intestinal contents reach the ileocæcal valve at the commencement of the large intestine, in the large intestine, absorption (mainly of water) occurs also, but to a less extent.

Foods such as water and soluble salts like sodium chloride are absorbed unchanged. The organic foods are, however, considerably changed, colloid materials such as starch and protein being converted respectively into the diffusible materials glucose and amino-acids.

There are two channels of absorption, the blood-vessels (portal tributaries) and the lymphatic vessels or lacteals. In general terms, the proteins and carbohydrates are absorbed by the blood-vessels, and the fats by the lacteals.

Diffusion and osmosis occur in the intestine, for if a strong solution of salt is introduced into a loop of intestine, there is a flow of water into the loop, owing to the high osmotic pressure of the salt, at the same time some of the salt diffuses into the blood in accordance with the laws of diffusion. But if some of the animal's own serum is introduced into the loop, it also is absorbed, although it has the

same osmotic pressure and concentration as the animal's blood This experiment alone shows us that known physical laws will not completely explain absorption In fact, absorption is a subject upon which we can speak with little certainty, the factor that controls it is doubtless some form of imbibition, which resides in the living epithelium, for if the epithelium is injured or destroyed by the action of such a poison as sodium fluoride, absorption almost ceases, and what does occur follows the laws of osmosis and diffusion The cessation of the absorption when the epithelium is removed (Waymouth Reid) is scarcely what would be expected From a purely physical standpoint we might expect increased absorption

Recently it has been conclusively demonstrated that the intestinal villi have a pumping action This may be observed under the microscope (Verzar) if suitable technique is employed It has also been found (Macgee) that absorption is somewhat dependent on calcium, a fact that is probably explained by the requirement of calcium for the movement of the villi since calcium is necessary for all movement, *e g* the muscle of the villi

A marked feature during absorption is the increased activity of the lymphocytes which lie beneath the epithelium, the number of these cells in the blood increases markedly, it may be even doubled It has therefore been surmised that these cells share in the work of transporting absorbed materials

Absorption of Carbohydrates—We have seen in considering the various digestive juices that all the carbohydrates are hydrolysed to monosaccharides in the intestinal tract For convenience these reactions may be summarised —

Starch → dextrins → maltose ⟶ glucose
(by ptyalin of saliva and amylase of pancreatic juice) (by maltase of succus entericus)
Cane-Sugar → glucose and fructose (by invertase of succus entericus)
Lactose → glucose and galactose (by lactase of succus entericus)

When, however, the blood is examined it is found that *glucose* only is present normally, since fructose and galactose are converted into glucose by the liver This is, indeed, made the basis of the fructose (lævulose) test for liver efficiency A normal man is considered to be able to transform 100 grammes of fructose without any appearing in the urine It is interesting to observe that considerable differences exist in the ease with which the different monosaccharides are absorbed, thus showing a selective action on the part of the intestine For example, glucose is more easily absorbed than xylose, although the latter has a smaller molecule

If any disaccharide such as lactose is injected into the blood, it is excreted by the kidney as a foreign substance

Absorption of Protein.—We have seen in relation to digestion

that the proteins of the diet are hydrolysed to amino-acids by various enzymes The steps may conveniently be summarised thus —

	Protein	
	↓	
	Acid meta-protein or Alkali meta-protein	(By the acid and pepsin of the gastric juice)
(By the action of alkali and trypsin of the pancreatic juice assisted by enterokinase)	↓ Proteose ↓ Peptone	
(By the alkali and erepsin of the succus entericus)	↓ Polypeptide ↓ Amino-acids	

The final stage may actually take place within the epithelial cells of the intestine itself It is also interesting to observe that all protein need not be so hydrolysed before it is absorbed Even in the absence of enzymes, serum placed in the intestine is absorbed, and to a lesser extent may also be egg-albumin, although it may be hydrolysed before it enters the blood

This fact is of considerable importance in practical medicine, since patients who are hypersensitive to certain proteins (such as those of eggs, lobster, or strawberries) may react violently and develop an attack of asthma or a severe rash if they take minute quantities of the protein to which they are hypersensitive

The normal course of events is that the food proteins are broken up into their constituent amino-acids, and it is in this form that they are absorbed If an animal receives, instead of protein, the final cleavage products of pancreatic digestion, it continues to maintain its nitrogenous equilibrium, that is to say, the cells of the body are able to synthesise tissue-proteins from the fragments of the food proteins

It is somewhat difficult to find the amino-acids in the blood during absorption, for several reasons (1) the absorption during any given time is slow, and the products are diluted with the whole volume of the blood, (2) the presence of coagulable proteins in the blood in large quantity renders a search for the amino-acids difficult, and (3) when the amino-acids get into the blood they do not accumulate there, but are rapidly removed by the cells of the tissues In spite of these difficulties, Leathes, Howell, and, later, Folin and others succeeded in demonstrating that during absorption the non-protein (that is, the amino-acid) nitrogen of the blood increases

There is now definite evidence that the amino-acids are absorbed as such into the blood-stream, since they can be dialysed out of the blood by passing the blood through tubes composed of semi-permeable collodion membrane surrounded by saline solution The

diffusible substances, such as sugar and amino-acids, pass through the membrane into the saline and can be estimated Such an apparatus is Abel's vivi-diffusion apparatus It is composed of several such tubes in parallel inserted between the two cut ends of an artery (clotting being prevented by an anti-coagulant, such as leech extract) By this means it has been found that the amino-acids such as alanine and histidine may be recognised and it has been demonstrated that the amino-acid content of the blood increases after a protein meal

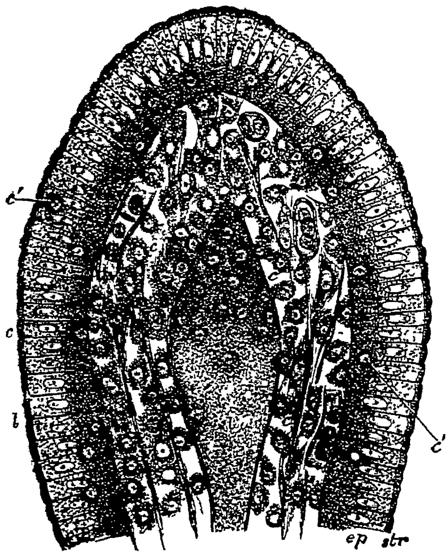


FIG 196 —Section of the villus of a rat killed during fat absorption *ep*, Epithelium, *str*, striated border, *c*, lymph-cells, *c'*, lymph cells in the epithelium, *l*, central lacteal containing disintegrating lymph corpuscles (E S Schafer)

Absorption of Fats — The fats undergo in the intestine two changes one a physical change (emulsification), the other a chemical change (saponification) The lymphatic vessels are the great channels for fat absorption, and their name *lacteals* is derived from the milk-like appearance of their contents (*chyle*) during the absorption of fat

The course which the minute fat-globules take may be studied by killing animals at varying periods after a meal of fat, and making osmic acid microscopic preparations of the villi Figs 196 and 197 illustrate the appearances observed

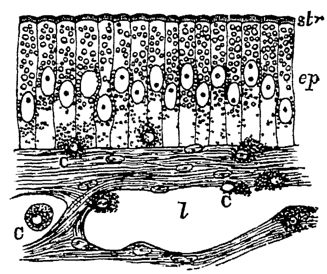


FIG 197 —Mucous membrane of frog s intestine during fat absorption *ep*, Epithelium, *str*, striated border, C, lymph corpuscles, *l*, lacteal (E S Schafer)

The columnar epithelial cells become first filled with fatty globules of varying size, which are generally larger near the free border The globules pass down the cells, the larger ones breaking up into smaller ones during the journey, they are then transferred to the amœboid cells of the lymphoid tissue beneath these ultimately penetrate into the central lacteal, where

they either disintegrate or discharge their cargo into the lymph-stream The globules are by this time divided into very minute ones, the particulate basis of chyle The chyle enters the blood-stream by the thoracic duct, and after an abundant fatty meal the blood-plasma is quite milky, the fat droplets are so small that they circulate without hindrance through the capillaries The origin of the fat in the body and its destination is dealt with under "Intermediate Metabolism"

The great difficulty in fat absorption was to explain how the fat first gets into the columnar epithelium these cells will not take up other particles, and it is certain that the epithelial cells do not protrude pseudopodia from their borders (this, however, does occur in the endoderm of some of the lower invertebrates) moreover, fat particles have never been seen in the striated border of the cells

Light was thrown on this problem by the work of Munk and, later, of Moore and Rockwood, who showed that in the intestine fat may be broken down into glycerol and fatty acids, preliminary emulsification is advantageous for the formation of these substances, but is not essential Fat, therefore, may be absorbed as glycerol and fatty acids, the latter, however, in great measure are first converted into soaps, that is, compounds of the fatty acids and alkalis These soluble cleavage products pass readily through the striated borders of the intestinal epithelial cells, and these cells perform the synthetic act of building them into fat once more, the fat so formed appearing in the form of small globules, surrounding or becoming mixed with the protoplasmic granules that are ordinarily present The action of bile is particularly emphasised by the work of J Mellanby Experimentally it has been observed that neutral fat emulsified with bile is freely absorbed from the duodenum into the lacteals of animals in which both the pancreatic duct and the bile duct have been ligatured The main function of the lipase of pancreatic juice is considered to be the production of a small amount of hydrolysis of the fat, so that a small quantity of soap is formed This soap carries the emulsification of fat further and the emulsified fat in the presence of bile is absorbed as fat Thus the reason for the small amount of lipase in pancreatic juice and its occurrence in the first-secreted pancreatic juice can be readily appreciated According to Mellanby the emulsified fat can pass freely into the columnar cells of the villus, without previous hydrolysis of the fat into fatty acid and glycerol The long recognised importance of bile in fat absorption, originally indicated by the excess of fat in the fæces when bile is absent from the intestine, is thus explained

There seems to be little doubt that the exact method of absorption of fat varies in different animals according to their

habit of diet It may be that the cells of the villi can exercise some selective action

It has been suggested from observations on the tail of the tadpole that the leucocytes which we know are very active during digestion are concerned in fat transport since they have been seen loading and unloading

The Functions of the Large Intestine

These are mechanical, absorptive and excretory

The *mechanical functions* of the large intestine comprise the storage of fæces and their evacuation at due intervals

The large intestine *absorbs* chiefly water On the average about 500 c c of fluid contents pass the ileo-cæcal valve *per diem*, from this the nutritious substances have been for the most part absorbed by the small intestine From this 500 c c the large intestine absorbs about 400 c c of water, leaving 100 c c of fæces, these figures are susceptible of considerable variation, notably in the pathological states of which diarrhœa is a symptom, but it is to be noted that the normal slow passage of the contents through the colon permits of considerable inspissation If for any reason stagnation occurs, *e g* if the call to defæcation is neglected, the fæces become dry and hard This is a common cause of chronic constipation In addition to water the large intestine can absorb salts, glucose and perhaps amino-acids Thus saline fluid is slowly absorbed, and rectal administration of saline is a valuable means of treatment of post-operative shock in which condition there is a reduction of circulating blood volume Since, however, the mucous membrane of the large intestine produces no digestive enzymes, proteins introduced into the rectum are not absorbed, since they are not digested "Nutrient" enemata, therefore, are of little value to the patient who cannot take food by the normal channel, they serve merely to nourish the bacteria which abound in the colon

Ether in oil is absorbed when injected into the rectum, a state of general anæsthesia can be induced in this way

The *excretory activities* of the large intestine cover a considerable range of substances, some physiological, the majority pharmacological Normally iron, as sulphide, and calcium and magnesium as phosphates, leave the body by this route The ratio of the amount of calcium and magnesium excreted by the bowel to that removed by the kidney depends on the quantity of acid radicles excreted by the latter If acids are administered, more calcium and magnesium leave by the urine as soluble salts, whereas if there are fewer acid radicles in the food the amount of calcium and magnesium passing out as insoluble phosphates in the fæces is increased

In brief, the large intestine may be regarded as the principal channel for the excretion of insoluble substances which could not easily be passed out by the kidneys

In many herbivora, viz those in which the stomach is not complex, *e g* the rabbit, bacterial activity occurring in the cæcum is important in dissolving the cellulose of the walls of the vegetable cells which constitute their diet Some of the products of the decomposition of cellulose, and the liberated cell contents are then available for absorption

To what extent the bacterial content of the large intestine is of economic value in man is difficult to determine Some clinicians hold that an excess of bacteria in the fæces is definitely harmful and certainly we have good reason to believe that this is so At the same time the body is definitely protected from the invasion of bacteria from the large intestine Barclay-Smith has emphasised the importance of the Peyer's patches in the lower end of the ileum in protecting against bacterial spread upwards from the large intestine The solitary follicles, also composed of lymphoid tissue, appear to play a similar important part in the large intestine as is seen by the fact that they take up pathological bacteria in disease, *e g* dysentery

The fæces on an ordinary mixed diet contain comparatively little food residues, and a small quantity is excreted even during starvation Voit and Hermann showed independently that an intestinal loop which had been emptied and separated from the rest of the bowel contained, a few days later, material identical with fæces, and consisting of intestinal juice, desquamated epithelial cells, and bacteria The increase in the amount of fæces which occurs when food is taken, even when the food is free from cellulose, is due to the mechanical and chemical stimulation which leads to an increase in the succus entericus, and in the shedding of epithelial cells Addition of protein to the diet makes practically no difference to the nitrogen in the fæces under normal conditions

The addition of cellulose to the diet increases the bulk of the fæces, partly because much of the cellulose is excreted unchanged, partly because it stimulates the mucous membrane to secrete more succus entericus, and finally because the larger food residue favours the development of bacteria On an average, from one-fifth to one-third (varying with the diet) of the weight of dried fæces consists of bacteria The average weight of dried bacteria excreted daily is 8 grammes, this contains 0 8 gramme of nitrogen, or about half the nitrogen of the fæces Strasburger estimated that about 128,000,000,000,000 bacteria are evacuated in the fæces of a man every day The vast majority of these are dead The fæces contain about 2 per cent of nitrogen, but this is chiefly

contained in the bodies of bacteria, and the disintegrated epithelial cells

When cellulose is absent from the diet, the fæces contain from 65-75 per cent of water, the dry residue contains about 7 per cent. of nitrogen, and the non-nitrogenous material consists of about equal quantities of ash and substances soluble in ether, with small quantities of stercobilin and other bile residues The ash contains mainly calcium phosphate, with small amounts of iron and magnesium The ethereal extract contains cholesterol, lecithin, fatty acids, soaps, and a very small amount of neutral fat The presence of excess of neutral fat indicates deficient pancreatic secretion, while excess split fat, *i e* fatty acids and soaps, is found in jaundice The proteins are chiefly mucin and nucleo-protein, and are derived not from the food but from the intestinal wall, or are contained in the bacteria, no doubt a large part of the ethereal extract is also supplied by the bacteria

Cellulose is thus the only important constituent of the food which is unaffected by the digestive juices, although a variable amount, which is largest in herbivorous animals, undergoes bacterial decomposition The presence of cellulose also interferes with the absorption of proteins, for the digestive juices have difficulty in penetrating the cellulose membranes of vegetable cells Thus Voit found that 42 per cent of the nitrogen in the food was lost in the fæces of a vegetarian This is due solely to the cellulose and not to any difference in the digestibility of animal and vegetable proteins, for if vegetable food is finely subdivided, and then thoroughly cooked and softened, this loss is lessened, and if vegetable protein is entirely freed from cellulose, it is as thoroughly absorbed as animal protein 15 per cent of the dry substance of green vegetables and brown bread, 20 per cent of carrots and turnips, and a still larger amount of beans are lost in the fæcal residue

The intestinal contents travel more rapidly when vegetables are present, for the indigestible cellulose stimulates peristalsis, and therefore a large quantity of water escapes absorption in the colon Thus on an ordinary mixed diet 35 grammes of dry substance and 100 grammes of water are daily excreted in the fæces, whereas on a vegetable diet the quantities are 75 and 260 grammes respectively

CHAPTER XXXIII

THE MECHANICAL PROCESSES OF DIGESTION

UNDER this head we shall study the neuro-muscular mechanism of the alimentary canal, which has for its object the onward movement of the food, and its thorough admixture with the digestive juices We shall therefore have to consider mastication, deglutition, the movements of the stomach and intestines, defæcation, and vomiting

THE TEETH

During the course of his life, man, in common with most other mammals, is provided with two sets of teeth, the first set, called the *temporary* or *milk-teeth*, makes its appearance in infancy, and is in the course of a few years shed and replaced by the second or *permanent* set

The deciduous or milk-teeth are ten in number in each jaw, namely, on either side from the middle line two *incisors*, one *canine*, and two deciduous *molars*, and are replaced by ten permanent teeth. The number of permanent teeth in each jaw is, however, increased to sixteen by the development of three molars on each side of the jaw, which are called the permanent or true molars

Structure of a Tooth

A tooth is generally described as possessing a *crown*, *neck*, and *root*

The *crown* is the portion which projects beyond the level of the gum The *neck* is that constricted portion just below the crown which is embraced by the free edges of the gum, and the *root* includes all below this

A tooth is found to be composed of a hard material, *dentine* or ivory, which is moulded around a central pulp cavity (fig 198)

The *tooth-pulp* is composed of loose connective tissue, blood-vessels, nerves, and large numbers of cells of varying shapes, on the surface in close connection with the dentine is a specialised layer of cells called *odontoblasts*, which are elongated columnar cells each with a large nucleus at the tapering end farthest from the **dentine**

The **dentine** resembles bone in chemical composition, but has only 10 per cent. of water It contains a vast number of minute tubes which connect with the pulp and which contain the exquisitely sensitive nerve fibrils from a layer of stellate nerve-cells beneath the odontoblasts (Mummery)

The blood-vessels and nerves enter the pulp through a small opening at the apical extremity of each root The nerves terminate by branching into fine fibrillæ which enter the tubes of the dentine

A layer of very hard calcareous matter, the **enamel**, caps that part of the dentine which projects beyond the level of the gum

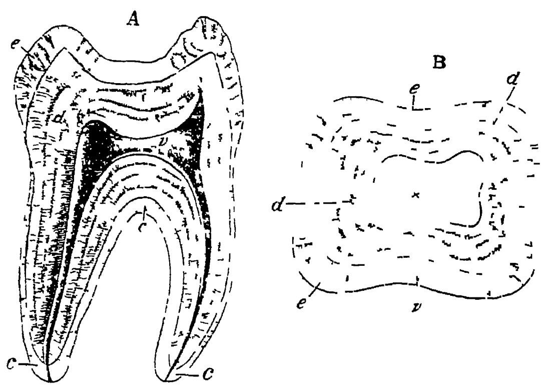


FIG 198 —A, Longitudinal section of a human molar tooth, *c*, cement, *d*, dentine, *e*, enamel, *v*, pulp-cavity (Owen)
B, Transverse section The letters indicate the same as in A

Sheathing the portion of dentine which is beneath the level of the gum is a layer of true bone, called the *cement* or *crusta petrosa*

Enamel is the hardest tissue in the body, and contains a minimum amount of organic material and less than 3 per cent. of water It is made up of minute prisms of the same salts as those of bone, which are set on end and which fit on to the surface of the dentine Some of the larger spaces between the prisms communicate with the dental tubules and it has been suggested that fluids may pass between the prisms

Mastication

The act of mastication is performed by the biting and grinding movement of the lower range of teeth against the upper The simultaneous movements of the tongue and cheeks assist partly by crushing the softer portions of the food against the hard palate and gums, and thus supplement the action of the teeth, and partly by returning the morsels of food to the teeth again and again, as they are squeezed out from between them, until they have been sufficiently chewed

The act of mastication is much assisted by the saliva

Mastication is much more thoroughly performed by some animals than by others Thus, dogs hardly chew their food at all, but the œsophagus is protected from abrasion by a thick coating of very viscid saliva which lubricates the pieces of rough food

In vegetable feeders, on the other hand, insalivation is a much more important process This is especially so in the ruminants, in these animals, the grass, etc, taken, is hurriedly swallowed, and passes into the first compartment of their four-chambered stomach Later on, it is returned to the mouth in small instalments for thorough mastication and insalivation, this is the act of *rumination*, or "chewing the cud", the food is then once more swallowed, and passes on to the digestive regions of the stomach

In man, mastication is also an important process, and in people who have lost their teeth severe dyspepsia is sometimes produced, which can be cured by the use of artificial teeth

Deglutition

When properly masticated, the food is transmitted in successive portions to the stomach by the act of deglutition or swallowing This, for the purpose of description, may be divided into *three* acts In the first, particles of food collected as a bolus are made to glide between the surface of the tongue and the palatine arch, till they have passed the anterior arch of the fauces in the second, the morsel is carried through the pharynx, and in the third, it reaches the stomach through the œsophagus These three acts follow each other rapidly (1) The first act is *voluntary*, although it is usually performed unconsciously, the morsel of food when sufficiently masticated, is pressed between the tongue and palate, by the agency of the muscles of the former, in such a manner as to force it back to the entrance of the pharynx (2) The second act is the most complicated, because the food must go past the posterior orifice of the nose and the upper opening of the larynx without entering them. When it has been brought, by the first act, between the anterior arches of the palate, it is moved onwards by the movement of the tongue backwards, and by the muscles of the anterior arches contracting on it and then behind it The root of the tongue being retracted, the larynx is raised with the pharynx and carried forwards under the base of the tongue, the closure of the glottis is secured by the contraction of its own muscles so that there is little danger of food passing into the larynx so long as its muscles can act freely At the same time, the raising of the soft palate, so that its posterior edge touches the back wall of the pharynx, and the approximation of the sides of the posterior palatine arch, which move quickly inwards like side curtains, close the passage into the upper part

of the pharynx and the posterior nares, and form an inclined plane, along the under surface of which the food descends, then the pharynx, raised up to receive it, in its turn contracts, and by the successive action of its three constrictors, the food is forced onwards into the œsophagus These reactions take place *reflexly* from the stimulation by the food in the pharynx (3) In the third act, in which the food passes through the œsophagus, every part of that tube, as it receives the morsel and is dilated by it, is stimulated to contract hence an undulatory or *peristaltic contraction* of the œsophagus occurs If we suppose the bolus to be at one particular place in the tube, it acts stimulatingly on the circular muscle-fibres behind it, and inhibitingly on those in front, the contraction therefore squeezes it into the dilated portion of the tube in front, where the same process is repeated, and this travels along the whole length of the tube The second and third parts of the act of deglutition are involuntary The action of these parts is more rapid than peristalsis usually is This is due to the large amount of striated muscular tissue present It serves the useful purpose of getting the bolus as quickly as possible past the opening of the respiratory tract

The swallowing of both solids and liquids is a muscular act, and can, therefore, take place in opposition to the force of gravity Thus, horses and many other animals habitually drink against gravity, and the same feat can be performed by jugglers

In swallowing liquids in the ordinary way, however, the mechanism is a different one, the two mylo-hyoid muscles form a diaphragm below the anterior part of the mouth. The stylo-glossi draw the tongue backwards and elevate its base, the two hyo-glossi act with these, pulling the tongue backwards and downwards The action of these muscles resembles that of a force-pump projecting the mass of fluid down into the œsophagus, it reaches the cardiac orifice with great speed, and the pharyngeal and œsophageal muscles do not contract on it at all, but are inhibited during the passage of the fluid through them (Kronecker)

This is proved in a striking way in cases of poisoning by corrosive substances, such as oil of vitriol, the mouth and tongue are scarred and burnt, but the pharynx and œsophagus escape serious injury, so rapidly does the fluid pass along them, the cardiac orifice of the stomach is the next place to show the effects of the corrosive Kronecker's view has also been confirmed in man by the X-ray method.

There is, however, no hard-and-fast line between the swallowing of solids and fluids the more liquid the food is, the more does the force-pump action just described manifest itself

Nervous Mechanism —The nerves engaged in the reflex act of deglutition are —

Sensory branches of the trigeminal nerve supplying the soft palate and tongue, glosso-pharyngeal, supplying the tongue and pharynx, the superior laryngeal branch of the vagus, supplying the epiglottis and the glottis The *motor* fibres concerned are branches of the trigeminal, supplying part of the digastric and mylo-hyoid muscles, and the muscles of mastication, the bulbar part of the accessory through the pharyngeal plexus, supplying the levator palati, probably by rootlets which are glosso-pharyngeal in origin, the glosso-pharyngeal and vagus, and possibly the bulbar part of the accessory, supplying the muscles of the pharynx through the pharyngeal plexus, the vagus, in virtue of its accessory roots, supplying the muscles of the larynx through the inferior laryngeal branch, and the hypo-glossal, the muscles of the tongue The nerve-centres by which the muscles are harmonised in their action, are situated in the medulla oblongata

Stimulation of the vagi gives rise to peristalsis of the œsophagus The cell-stations of these fibres are in the ganglion trunci vagi Division of both vagus nerves produces paralysis of the œsophagus and stomach

In discussing peristalsis on a previous occasion, we have already stated that it is a rhythmic movement of smooth muscle rather than of nerve, though normally it is controlled and influenced by nervous agency This nervous control is especially marked in the œsophagus, for if that tube is divided across, leaving the nerve branches intact, a wave of contraction will travel from one end to the other across the cut

Peristalsis —This is the movement by which the contents of many tubes throughout the body are moved on It consists essentially of a progressive wave of contraction which is preceded by a wave of relaxation This may readily be observed if the abdomen of an anæsthetised animal is opened under warm saline The movements continue if a piece of the gut is kept in a bath of oxygenated warm Ringer's solution They are set going if a suitable object is placed in the lumen of the gut to stretch its wall The normal stimulus to such movements, therefore, we may consider to be the material within the intestine In the lower end of the gut the undigested cellulose of the food must become the chief stimulus, hence the importance of eating fruit and vegetables which add to the undigestible bulk of the food We have already noted that the best stimulus to smooth muscle is stretching As Starling showed, however, a mere pinch of the intestine will cause a typical peristaltic wave to pass downwards The initial wave of relaxation may be shown by placing in the lumen a small balloon attached to a

tambour. Normally, the peristaltic waves are co-ordinated like those we have referred to in the œsophagus. The co-ordination is considered to be effected through Auerbach's plexus of nerves, which lies between the two muscle coats. Yanasi found that the intestinal muscle of the embryo guinea-pig will contract when directly stimulated but will not do so spontaneously until the plexus of Auerbach has been developed.

Peristalsis may be influenced chemically. Drugs given for the relief of diarrhœa or constipation act in various ways; some affect the amount of secretion, and thus increase or decrease the fluidity of the intestinal contents; others act on the muscular tissue or its nerves and so influence the amount of peristalsis. Organic acids, including the amino-acids, produced during digestion, will increase peristalsis. The bile has a similar action, but only on the large intestine; various oils act in the same way; certain gases also, but here again the mechanical effect of distension is a factor to be reckoned with. A vegetable diet stimulates peristalsis, partly for mechanical reasons—the presence of indigestible cellulose and formation of gas—partly for a chemical reason, namely, the production of organic acids.

The rhythmical power of the intestine is best developed in the upper part where the contractions are much more rapid than in the lower. In the lower parts, however, the contractions are greater. According to Alvarez these differences depend on differences in the metabolism of the muscles of the different parts.

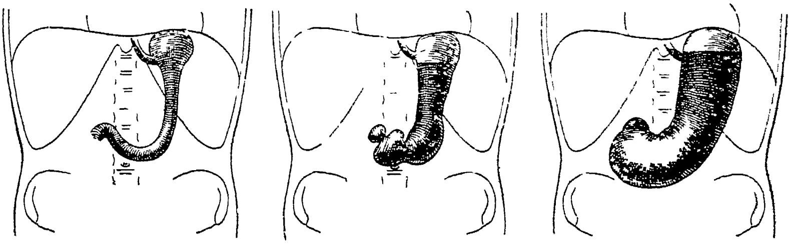
Movements of the Stomach

The gastric fluid is assisted in accomplishing its share in digestion by the movements of the stomach. The movements of the stomach have been studied by three main methods. We may study the behaviour of isolated strips or we may pass down the œsophagus balloons connected to tambours which register changes in pressure. By far the most important results have, however, resulted by the X-ray method introduced by Cannon. The individual or animal swallows food mixed with bismuth subnitrate or an insoluble barium salt which renders the gastric contents opaque to the rays.

In man, the method has been particularly used by Hurst and it is observed that the fundus and body of the stomach are relatively inactive and adapt themselves to the size of the contents; they display what may be described as postural tone. Small peristaltic waves are seen to commence high up in the body, and when they reach the incisura angularis they become more marked till in the pyloric region they are so active that the term pyloric mill has been applied to this region (the pyloric antrum). The waves are commonly at intervals of 20 seconds and are often in groups. By

putting bismuth pellets into the stomach it has been observed that the waves as it were waft the food to the pylorus, *i e*, the food does not travel so fast as the waves

Generally the pylorus opens when the peristalic waves reach it, but it may remain closed if the food is not suitable, if too acid food reaches the duodenum, if the sympathetic is very active or the pylorus unduly irritable Waves in the duodenum corresponding to those in the antrum take on the food The suggestion of Cannon, that the pylorus opens when the stomach contents are acid and the duodenal contents alkaline, no longer appears to refer to the normal exit of food from the stomach, but to the reversed peristalsis which occurs when the stomach is empty It is abundantly proven



a *b* *c*

FIG 199 —(*a*) View of the empty stomach in vertical position, (*b*) stomach as seen soon after a bismuth meal, note the constriction due to peristaltic waves at the pyloric end, (*c*) view of filled stomach in vertical position (After Hurst)

that the gastric contents may leave the stomach normally even when alkaline

M'Swiney has shown that general movements of the stomach are also co-ordinated Thus when the cardia opens the fundus relaxes, while when the pylorus opens there is contraction of the antrum He has also demonstrated by recording the movements of isolated strips of stomach wall in Ringer's solution that the property of rhythmic movement of the pyloric canal is a property of the stomach-wall itself and not due to any central connection, and that similarly the property of tone is best developed to the fundus

In severe physical or mental stress the pylorus may fail to open (a condition called by Hurst achalasia) and the individual may experience pain (indigestion) as a result of the pyloric canal attempting to force food through the closed sphincter Older physiologists had observed that if dogs were hunted immediately after being fed the food did not leave the stomach. Hence the desirability of not taking a large meal before a strenuous game Recently Campbell and Pembrey have shown that apparently trifling exercise or stress may delay gastric emptying, and that

much benefit accrues from relaxation in pleasant company These points are of great importance in the treatment of indigestion What has been said in relation to the conditions which facilitate gastric secretion applies, therefore, to gastric movement also

At the upper end of the stomach is usually seen an air-pocket, which may become increased in size and press on the heart

VOMITING

The act of vomiting is preceded by a feeling of nausea, and the swallowing of a large quantity of saliva The expulsion of the contents of the stomach, like that of mucus or other matter from the lungs in *coughing*, is preceded by an inspiration, the glottis is then closed, and immediately afterwards the abdominal muscles strongly act, but here occurs the difference in the two actions Instead of the vocal cords yielding to the action of the abdominal muscles, they remain tightly closed Thus the diaphragm, being unable to go up, forms an unyielding surface against which the stomach can be pressed. At the same time the *cardiac* sphincter being relaxed, and the orifice which it naturally guards being dilated, while the *pylorus* is closed, and the stomach itself also contracting, the action of the abdominal muscles expels the contents of the organ through the œsophagus, pharynx, and mouth.

It has been frequently stated that the stomach itself is quite passive during vomiting, and that the expulsion of its contents is effected solely by the pressure exerted upon it when the capacity of the abdomen is diminished by the contraction of the diaphragm, and subsequently of the abdominal muscles The experiments and observations, however, which are supposed to confirm this statement, only show that the contraction of the abdominal muscles alone is sufficient to expel matters from an unresisting bag through the œsophagus, and that, under certain conditions, the stomach by itself cannot expel its contents They by no means show that in ordinary vomiting the stomach is passive, and there are good reasons for believing the contrary In some cases of violent vomiting the contents of the duodenum are passed by anti-peristalsis into the stomach, and are then vomited. Where there is obstruction to the intestine, as in strangulated hernia, the total contents of the small intestine may be vomited

Nervous Mechanism.—Some few persons possess the power of vomiting at will, or the power may be acquired by effort and practice But normally the action is a reflex one

The *afferent* nerves are principally the trigeminal, and glosso-pharyngeal (as in vomiting produced by tickling the fauces), and

the vagus (as in vomiting produced by gastric irritants) but vomiting may occur from stimulation of other sensory nerves, *e g*, those from the kidney, uterus, testicle, etc The medullary centres may also be stimulated by impressions from the cerebrum and cerebellum, producing the so-called *central* vomiting which occurs in diseases of those parts

The *efferent* (motor) impulses are carried by the vagi to the stomach, by the phrenics to the diaphragm, and by various other spinal nerves to the abdominal muscles

It is very doubtful whether there is any separate centre for vomiting, the centre for the reflex coincides with those of the nerves mentioned in the medulla oblongata

Emetics—Most emetics produce vomiting by irritating the stomach, some, such as apomorphine, by stimulating the medullary centres

MOVEMENTS OF THE SMALL INTESTINE

The intestinal movements, like those of the stomach, take place independently of volition or consciousness When, however, they become excessive, as they do under the influence of irritants or the presence of obstruction, they produce pain which is usually intense

The object of these movements is to force the contents along the tube, and thoroughly to mix them with the digestive juices The **peristalsis** of the intestine is slower than that of the œsophagus, but the mechanism already described on p 487 is much the same When obstruction is present, as in the cases of violent vomiting just referred to, retro-peristalsis, that is waves in the opposite direction, may occur There is no reason to believe that this may occur normally, except possibly in the duodenum or when the nervous mechanisms are paralysed

Our knowledge of the intestinal movements rests, first, on observations made on the exposed intestines when the abdomen is opened, secondly, they may be studied under more artificial conditions by taking a length of intestine from a freshly killed animal and placing it in a warm bath of oxygenated Ringer's solution, and thirdly, the most valuable method of all is to study the movements in the intact animal by the X-ray method, as in the work of Cannon and of Hurst

Ludwig was the first to call attention to the fact that peristaltic waves are not the only sort of movements which occur There are in addition what he termed **pendulum** or *swaying movements* In the exposed intestine the propagation of the peristaltic wave is slow but variable, it may be as small as 1 cm per minute In man, as shown by X-ray work, it is more rapid, averaging about an inch

per minute The pendulum movements consist of slight waves of contraction affecting both muscular coats, and these are rapidly propagated at the rate of 2 to 5 cms per second They cause a movement of the intestine from side to side, and occur at regular intervals of five or six seconds They are not efficacious in moving the contents onwards, but they bring about a very thorough mixing of the contents

Cannon observed by the X-ray method in dogs and cats that these pendulum movements produce what he calls "**segmentation**" A dark shadow, due to the bismuth in the food administered, is at one moment of a certain length like a short sausage, it then constricts in the centre, and divides into two, each half divides again, then the two central segments join together, and this repeats itself every few seconds In man, where the same phenomenon can be seen, Hurst timed the rate, and found it occurred about ten times in a minute and a half This frequent division and subdivision not only ensures admixture with the juices, but brings every portion in turn in contact with the absorbing mucous membrane, and favours the flow of chyle and blood

After a bismuth meal, the shadow appears in the cæcum three and a half to five hours after the food is taken The average time is four and a half hours Assuming that it begins to leave the stomach half an hour after a meal, the total journey along the small intestine in man occupies about four hours, the small intestine is $22\frac{1}{2}$ feet long, so the rate works out at about an inch (a little more than 2 cms) per minute

The pendulum movements differ from true peristalsis in being *myogenic*, that is, they are due to the rhythmicality of the muscle-fibres themselves, and are propagated from one muscle-fibre to another They are not abolished by cocaine or nicotine (Starling)

Movements of the Large Intestine

We have seen that in man the food begins to arrive in the cæcum four and a half hours after it reaches the stomach, when it arrives in the cæcum it contains 90 per cent of water, together with a small amount of the unabsorbed products of digestion of proteins, fats, and carbohydrates During its passage along the large intestine these are absorbed, and most absorption appears to occur in the cæcum, the normal firm consistency of the fæces, which contain 75 per cent of water, is not finally attained until they arrive in the pelvic colon, where they are retained until defæcation takes place

Peristalsis in the colon occurs much more slowly than in the small intestine, and the accompanying diagram gives the time in hours after the taking of a bismuth meal that the shadow appears at

various points in man It reaches the hepatic flexure of the colon about two hours after it appears in the cæcum, another two hours approximately brings it to the splenic flexure (nine hours after the meal) The distance from the cæcum to the splenic flexure is 2 feet, the contents take as long to travel this distance as the contents of the small intestine take to travel 22½ feet, that is, from the pylorus to the cæcum A further two hours is occupied in the journey along the descending colon, and six hours more brings it to the end of the pelvic colon which leads at an angle into the rectum. The total journey from the cæcum to this point occupies thirteen and a

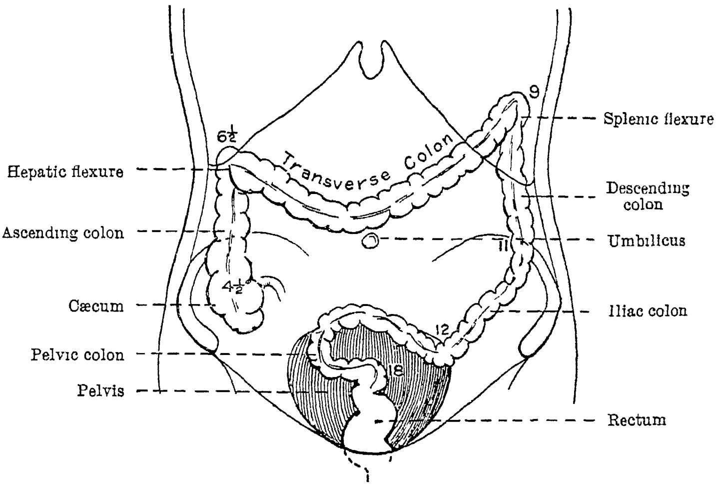


FIG 200 —Semi diagrammatic view of the large intestine, the figures give in hours the average times after taking a meal that its debris reaches the various parts (Hurst) This diagram shows the transverse colon in a higher position than it occupies when the man is erect, and rather higher than the average even in the horizontal position

half hours These times were confirmed by auscultation or listening over various parts of the abdomen, the gurgling and splashing sounds made by the arrival of food-material are distinctly audible These observations were made in the daytime, during sleep the rate of progress may be slower

Some observers have stated that retro-peristalsis occurs in the colon, especially in its ascending portion Waves of this kind would certainly mix up the cæcal contents very thoroughly They have, however, only been seen in the exposed intestine of animals, and therefore may be artificially produced A study of X-ray shadows does not reveal their existence in man If retro-peristalsis does occur, regurgitation is effectually prevented into the small intestine partly by the ileo-cæcal valve, and mainly by a strong band of circular

muscle-fibres called the ileo-cæcal sphincter, this is normally kept in a state of tonic contraction by impulses carried by the splanchnic nerve, it is relaxed when this nerve is cut, and then the contents of the two intestines mix freely (T R Elliott)

Defæcation—The rectum is a short tube about 4 or 5 inches long in man, and is normally empty until immediately before defæcation In a person of regular habits, a glass of water on rising, and the taking of breakfast, if attended by mental quiet, combine to produce peristalsis of the colon, so that a small quantity of fæces enters the rectum, and produces the desire to defæcate This is known as the *gastro-colic reflex* At the end of the rectum is the anal canal, closed by a strong internal sphincter (a thickening of the involuntary circular fibres of the muscular coat), and by the external sphincter, which is a voluntary muscle made of transversely striated fibres

The "call to defæcation" having been thus produced, the act itself is started by the increase in intra-abdominal pressure brought about by the voluntary contraction of the abdominal wall, the diaphragm and the levator ani. The diaphragm is kept down by deep inspirations, followed by closure of the glottis, this depresses the colon, so that the shadow of its transverse portion and the flexures may be lowered as much as 2 inches The transverse colon may not rise to its normal position until even an hour has elapsed from the act of straining during defæcation Accompanying the action of these voluntary muscles, the whole colon from the cæcum onwards enters into powerful peristalsis, the contents of the transverse colon are thus forced into the descending colon, from which they are evacuated together with the fæces already present between the splenic flexure and the anus The entrance of more fæces into the rectum until they reach the anal canal irritates afferent nerves in the wall of the rectum, the nerve impulses so generated pass to a centre or centres in the lumbo-sacral region of the spinal cord, where efferent impulses are set in action upon which depend the reflex acts required to complete the process, these are —

1 Strong peristalsis of the whole colon
2 Continued contraction of the abdominal muscles
3 Relaxation of both the anal sphincters and of the levator ani

The last traces of fæces are expelled by voluntary contractions of the levator ani

If the call to defæcation is resisted, the desire soon passes away, and may not recur until the next regular period arrives for the opening of the bowels, twenty-four hours later It seems likely that a reverse peristalsis may occur in the lower colon when hard masses of fæces are present This is suggested by the fact that a

foreign body (an egg-cup inserted to arrest bleeding from piles) has been known to travel up to the splenic flexure whence it was removed surgically Neglect is one of the commonest causes of constipation, for the retained fæces continue to lose water, and get harder, and more difficult to expel. Constipation is a possible cause of many, according to some of the majority, of human ailments There is, however, evidence that mere distension of the rectum and colon may bring about some of the symptoms commonly attributed to constipation (Alvarez)

The voluntary muscles concerned in defæcation, namely, the external anal sphincter and the levator ani, are supplied by the fourth sacral nerve, which arises from nerve-cells in the conus medullaris of the spinal cord If the lower part of the spinal cord is destroyed, defæcation still occurs but it is an unconscious act, and the reflex is imperfectly executed, since, as we shall see, the parasympathetic control is interfered with, the destruction of the conus medullaris prevents the normal reflexes taking place in which the levator ani and external sphincter are concerned, and the paralysis of these voluntary muscles may lead to incontinence of fæces

We thus see that the lowermost portion of the alimentary canal resembles its uppermost portion (pharynx and œsophagus) in being more under external nervous control than is the small intestine Autonomy at the rectal and anal portion is for obvious reasons undesirable

The Nervous Control of the Alimentary Canal

We have already seen in relation to peristalsis that such movement is independent of external nerves The activity of the alimentary canal is brought into relation with the general requirements of the body by means of two sets of nerves The sympathetic and the parasympathetic (vagus and nervi erigentes)

The Sympathetic supply leaves the spinal cord by the anterior roots of the spinal nerves Those for the stomach leave by the fifth to the eighth thoracic roots and have their cell stations in the cœliac ganglia, which they reach by the splanchnic nerves, those for the small intestine by the sixth thoracic to first lumbar roots, but do not synapse until they reach—by way also of the splanchnic nerves—the superior mesenteric ganglion, those for the large intestine by the lower thoracic roots pass down the sympathetic chain to the lesser splanchnic nerves and eventually synapse in the inferior mesenteric ganglion, thence they pass by the colonic nerves to the colon, and by the hypogastric nerves to the rectum and anal sphincter The eventual distribution of the nerves is with the larger arteries

The Parasympathetic—The upper part of the alimentary canal is supplied by the vagi nerves, as far as the middle of the transverse colon, and the large intestine downwards by the nervi erigentes or pelvic nerves, which arise from the second, third, and fourth sacral nerves These are all pre-ganglionic fibres which synapse in ganglia

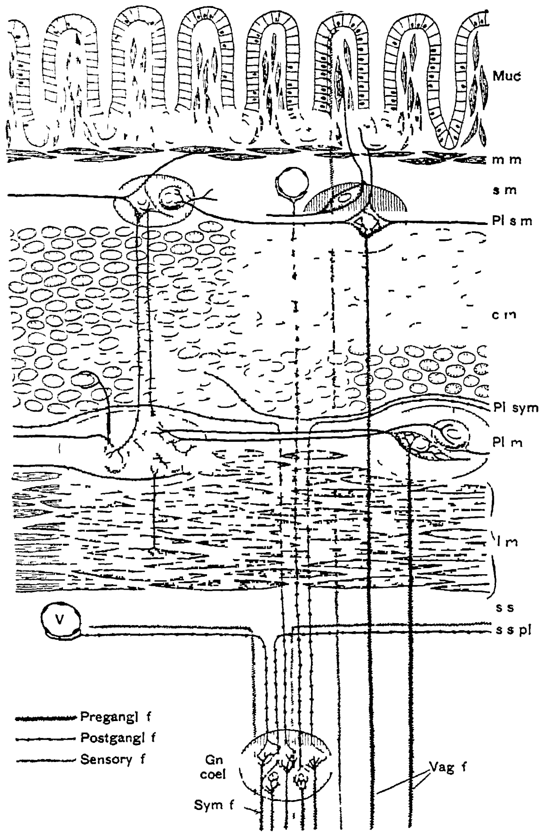


FIG 201 —Diagram of the nerve supply of the intestine (after C J Hill) Described in text

in the intestinal wall, as may be shown by the action of nicotine, which, if painted on the intestine, paralyses vagal but not sympathetic action

Local Distribution of Nerves (fig 201)—In the intestinal wall there are two large interconnected nerve plexuses, one submucous, *Meissner's* (Pl s m), and one between the two muscle layers, *Auerbach's*

(Pl m) The exact relationship of these plexuses has recently been reinvestigated by C J Hill, who has concluded that they are essentially parasympathetic, being concerned in the ultimate distribution of the vagus fibres which we have noted synapse in the ganglia of the plexuses From the ganglia, post-ganglionic fibres pass to the muscle layers and to a dense *subepithelial plexus* which supplies the villi and glands The vagal fibres have little or no connection with blood-vessels It is to be understood that the so-called plexuses are composed essentially of neurones and are not a nerve network

In addition to these parasympathetic plexuses Miss Hill has shown the presence of sympathetic plexuses, one intramuscular, from which the muscle cells are supplied, and one subserous, which supplies the serous coat and is probably sensory in function Minor differences occur in different regions of the gut Unlike the parasympathetic, the sympathetic fibres are closely bound up with the vessels of the part

The Function of the Sympathetic is generally inhibitory to the movements of the alimentary canal, with the exception of the sphincters and the muscularis mucosa, which are constricted The latter are also constricted by adrenaline, the great sympathetic stimulant Stimulation of the sympathetic or adrenaline causes inhibition of a piece of isolated intestine contracting rhythmically, indeed use is made of this in the biological assay of adrenaline Excitation of the sympathetic also causes constriction of the blood-vessels of the gut

It may be assumed that the effect of pain, anger, and severe muscular activity in bringing about inhibition of the gut is exerted through the sympathetic, as in the case of the cardiac acceleration caused by similar states

Function of the Parasympathetic —This appears to be augmentory and, as we have seen in relation to gastric juice, secretory The actual effect, for example, of stimulation of the vagus on the stomach has been shown by M'Crea and M'Swiney to depend on the state of the organ at the time If it is full, the stomach is contracted, but if empty, it is relaxed If the intestine is contracting, stimulation of the vagus brings about a brief inhibition, and subsequently marked augmentation, which is caused also by the action of pilocarpine, the great parasympathetic stimulant, on isolated intestine

The action of the parasympathetic normally is most marked during rest, especially that following active muscular exercise, which also facilitates the action of the colon by toning up the abdominal muscles

CHAPTER XXXIV

INTERMEDIATE METABOLISM

THE word *metabolism* has been often employed in the preceding chapters, and, as there explained, it is used to express the sum total of the chemical exchanges that occur in living tissues

The living body is always giving off by the lungs, kidneys, and skin the products of its combustion, and is thus always tending to lose weight This loss is compensated for by the intake of food and of oxygen For the material it loses, it receives in exchange fresh substances If, as in a normal adult, the income is exactly equal to the expenditure, the body-weight remains constant If, as in a growing child, the income exceeds the expenditure, the body gains weight, and if, as in febrile conditions, or during starvation, the expenditure exceeds the income, the body wastes

The different parts of the body have very different compositions, still, speaking of the body as a whole, Volkmann and Bischoff state that it contains 64 per cent of water, 16 of proteins, 14 of fat, 5 of salt, and 1 of carbohydrates The carbohydrates are thus the smallest constituent of the body, they are the glycogen of the liver and muscles, and small quantities of glucose in various parts

The most important, because the most abundant of the tissues of the body, is the muscular tissue Muscle forms about 42 per cent of the body-weight,* and contains, in round numbers, 75 per cent of water and 21 per cent of proteins, thus about half the protein material and water of the body exists in its muscles

The body, however, does not remain in a stable condition, even while nutrition is occurring, destructive changes are taking place simultaneously, each cell may be considered to be in a state of unstable equilibrium, undergoing *anabolic,* or constructive, processes on the one hand, and destructive, or *katabolic,* processes on the other

The two sides of metabolism may be compared by means of a

* The following is in round numbers the percentage proportion of the different structural elements of the body skeleton, 16, muscles, 42, fat, 18, viscera, 9, skin, 8, brain, 2, blood, 5

balance-sheet, and the necessary data for the construction of such a comparison are —

(1) The weight of the animal before, during, and after the experiment

(2) The quantity and composition of its food

(3) The amount of oxygen absorbed during respiration

(4) The quantity and composition of urine, fæces, sweat, and expired air

(5) The amount of work done, and the amount of heat developed

Water is determined by subtracting the amount of water ingested as food from the quantity lost by bowels, urine, lungs, and skin The difference is a measure of the katabolism of hydrogen

Nitrogen —The nitrogen is derived from proteins, and appears chiefly in the urine Smaller quantities are eliminated in the sweat and fæces From the amount of nitrogen so found, the amount of proteins which have undergone katabolism is calculated Proteins contain, roughly, 16 per cent of nitrogen, so 1 part of nitrogen is equivalent to 6 25 parts of protein, or 1 gramme of nitrogen to 30 grammes of flesh.

Fat and Carbohydrate —Subtract the carbon in the katabolised protein (protein contains 54 per cent of carbon) from the total carbon eliminated by lungs, skin, bowels, and kidneys, and the difference represents fat and carbohydrate which have undergone katabolism

Balance of Income and Expenditure in Health

In Chapter XXIV tables are given of adequate diets, these will in our balance-sheet represent the sources of income, the other side of the balance-sheet, the expenditure, consists of the excretions

We may select as our example a typical table of this daily exchange of material on an ordinary diet from the work of Pettenkofer and Voit In the first experiment the man did no work

Income.			Expenditure			
Food.	Nitrogen. in gms	Carbon in gms	Excretions	Nitrogen. in gms	Carbon in gms	Water in gms
Protein 137 gms Fat 117 ,, Carbohydrate 352 ,, Water 2016 ,,	19 5	315 5	Urine Fæces Expired air	17 4 2 1	12 7 14 5 248 6	1279 83 828
				19 5	275 8	2190

Here the body was in nitrogenous equilibrium, and it eliminated more water than it took in by 174 grammes, this being derived from

oxidation of hydrogen It stored 39 7 grammes of carbon, which is equivalent to 52 grammes of fat

The next table gives the results of an experiment on the same man on the same diet, but who did active muscular work during the day —

Expenditure	Nitrogen	Carbon	Water
Urine	17 4	12 6	1194
Fæces	2 1	14 5	94
Expired air		309 2	1412
	19 5	336 3	2700

It is important to notice that the discharge of nitrogen was unaltered, while that of both carbon and hydrogen was increased At one time protein was considered to be the great source of muscular energy, this was first disproved by an historical experiment made by Fick and Wislicenus on themselves in their ascent of the Faulhorn The body is most economical in reference to protein waste, and any increase in nitrogenous katabolism which occurs during muscular work is insignificant

The balance-sheet method of investigation, though one of great usefulness, tells us very little of the details which lead to the end-results We must therefore proceed to study the details, and we may most conveniently consider the question under the three headings of the principal food materials, namely, carbohydrates, fats, and proteins

Metabolism of Carbohydrates

In plants, carbohydrates are synthesised by the agency of chlorophyll from the simple materials carbonic acid and water, which form their chief foods The first substance formed is probably formic aldehyde, H CHO (which is the simplest carbohydrate known), and this by condensation is converted into sugar, and finally, into starch We have no clear evidence that a synthesis of this kind ever takes place in animals, the main source of animal carbohydrate being vegetable carbohydrate

We have seen that the more complex carbohydrates are broken down to monosaccharides in digestion By salivary digestion and the amylase of the pancreatic juice, starch is hydrolysed to maltose, which is further converted into glucose by the maltase of intestinal juice Cane-sugar is inverted by invertase to glucose and fructose while lactose is broken down into glucose and galactose by lactase

These monosaccharides are absorbed into the blood-stream, but they are rapidly, for the most part, converted into glucose, probably by the liver In excess they are rapidly excreted by the kidney as abnormal substances We may then consider **glucose** as the current carbohydrate coin of the body

The Utilisation of Sugar—The sugar may be utilised in three ways it may be stored as glycogen, in which form it is readily available for reconversion into glucose, or as fat, which is a more concentrated form of storage, or it may be used as fuel in the organs of the body, especially the muscles, whose requirements are most variable It appears, however, that glucose cannot be utilised for any of these purposes without the co-operation of the internal secretion produced by the pancreas and known as insulin, the action of which will be dealt with further below

(1) *The Formation of Glycogen*—Glycogen, or animal starch, is stored in the muscles and especially in the liver It is a polysaccharide, but is much less stable than vegetable starch Its character and preparation have been given Its presence in the liver cells may be demonstrated histologically (red colour with iodine) Normally it is produced when an animal is fed on a diet rich in carbohydrates, but a small quantity may be formed on a protein diet It is possible that fat may be a source of glycogen (Pavy) The exact mode of its formation is, however, not known On the other hand, if the animal fasts the liver glycogen is rapidly reduced *

(2) *The Formation of Fat*—That fat can be formed from carbohydrates was definitely proved by the well-known experiment of Lawes and Gilbert, in 1852, on the fattening of pigs by feeding them with barley This transformation has never been accomplished outside the body and its possibility was at first denied by chemists How the long chains of the fat are linked together from the shorter carbohydrate chains is difficult to see Micro-organisms can accomplish the change of lactic acid into such fatty acids as acetic, butyric and caproic, boiling with alkali brings about a similar reaction The most recent view is that pyruvic acid or acetic aldehyde may be the intermediate state, but all we can say is that the change probably takes place in the liver

(3) *Utilisation of Carbohydrates as Fuel*—The essential facts were discovered by Fletcher and Hopkins in 1907, but the details of these changes are by no means certain These have already been discussed in relation to the Chemistry of Muscle Contraction A considerable amount of evidence has accumulated to the effect that before carbon dioxide and water are formed there is an intermediate stage of hexose phosphate In support of this view, it is found, for example, that the addition of phosphate to minced muscle causes all the glycogen store and even added glycogen and glucose to be converted into lactic acid Such a substance as hexose phosphate is found in the muscle juice and can be converted into lactic acid and phosphate, and these are found in equivalent amounts Substances,

* It never absolutely disappears in starvation, but may be caused to do so by strychnine convulsions or phloridzin

e g arsenites, which hasten the decomposition of hexose diphosphate in yeast fermentation, hasten the oxygen consumption and lactic acid formation in muscle It is known, also, that muscular work increases the amount of phosphate excreted

The stages by which carbohydrates are considered by some to be broken down into CO_2 and water, are as follows —

Glucose
↓
Dihydroxy acetone $CH_2(OH)CO\ CH_2(OH)$
↓
Lactic acid $CH_3\ CHOH\ COOH$ → Pyruvic acid $CH_3\ CO\ COOH$
↓
Acetaldehyde $CH_3\ CHO$
↓
Acetic acid $CH_3\ COOH$
↓
Carbon dioxide and water
CO_2 H_2O

It is known that most tissues contain enzymes, which can break down keto-acids generally These stages, especially the pyruvic acid stage, are important as they may be common points in the breakdown or synthesis of carbohydrates, fats, and proteins

The Relation of the Pancreas to Carbohydrate Metabolism

The fact that the pancreas was related to carbohydrate metabolism was first demonstrated by Minkowski and von Mering in 1889, who removed the pancreas of dogs It was observed that the dogs licked their urine and this led to the discovery of the presence of glucose in the excretion, further, that the glycosuria did not develop if a small piece of pancreas was transplanted under the skin and that otherwise total removal of the pancreas results in death in a few weeks A year later Schultze showed that mere tying or blocking of the pancreatic duct did not produce such symptoms, which soon became recognised as the same condition as diabetes mellitus in man, in which the pancreas was known often to be diseased These experiments led to the suggestion that the islets of Langerhans which, unlike the ordinary acinar cells, do not degenerate when the ducts are tied, produced a substance which controlled carbohydrate metabolism This substance was called in advance by Sharpey-Schafer *insulin*

The Preparation of Insulin—The knowledge of the subject remained almost stationary for thirty years, although spasmodic unsuccessful attempts were made to make extracts of pancreas, which would alleviate the condition of diabetes, until Banting and his colleague Best demonstrated conclusively that there was a substance in the pancreas which could cause the glycosuria to disappear, but that the activity of extracts was usually destroyed by the pancreatic trypsin They found it possible to make potent

extracts from the pancreas of fœtal calves in which trypsin was not yet formed and from animals in which the trypsin-producing cells had been caused to degenerate by previously tying the duct

Subsequently it was realised that trypsin is insoluble in 50 per cent alcohol, and this was the basis of the original method of extraction Extracts are now made with cold alkaline alcohol or by grinding up the pancreas with solid picric acid which precipitates the protein and insulin and redissolving the latter with acetone (Collip, Dudley, Dodds and Dickens) Insulin is now used extensively in the treatment of diabetes Thus out of the early experiments, carried out on animals in the cause of pure science, an enormous benefit has been conferred on mankind

The Nature of Insulin Action—We have seen that insulin facilitates the oxidation of carbohydrates It has also been shown, by Hawley and Murlin, that the oxidation of sugar is markedly increased, although, during the first hour, in insulin hypoglycæmia the sugar is apparently built up into some other substance Exactly what happens to the glucose under the action of insulin has been shown by the experiments of Best, Dale, Hoet, and Marks, who perfused for a long period a glucose solution, plus insulin, through the vessels of an animal in which the alimentary canal and its associated glands including the liver, had been removed They found that all the glucose which had disappeared could be accounted for by oxidation or by increase of muscle glycogen

We may, then, look upon the action of insulin as increasing the activity of tissues in relation to carbohydrate, whatever that action may be Thus it facilitates the building of glycogen by the liver and muscle and its utilisation by the muscle When the blood sugar is high in a diabetic the injection of insulin causes, therefore, glycogen to be built up in the liver, but by facilitating glucose usage in the enormous mass of body muscle it may cause the blood sugar to fall below normal and the liver glycogen is then reduced to maintain the normal blood sugar level The intimate nature of the action of insulin is still a problem

Hypoglycæmia * (Low Blood Sugar)—If insulin is injected into a normal animal (or in excess into a diabetic animal) the blood sugar falls When the blood sugar of rabbits has fallen to 0 04 per cent, convulsions ensue and are a warning of imminent death, but this level is not usually reached unless the animal has been starved for twenty-four hours to get rid of the glycogen store The *standardisation of insulin* was originally carried out by determining how much insulin was required to lower the blood sugar to this level in a starved rabbit of 2 kilos It is now standardised by comparing

* Cases have been recently described in which the hypoglycæmia was due to a local overgrowth (adenoma) of the islet tissue of the pancreas

the activity of the unknown sample with that of a standard sample agreed upon by a League of Nations' Committee Since we know that oxygen is a constant requirement of the body, especially of the nerve tissues, and that such oxygen is required to burn carbohydrate, it is reasonable to assume that failure of the fuel supply will stop essential metabolism, affecting the nervous system which does not store fuel, and eventually causing unconsciousness and death from respiratory failure

In man, a similar state occurs, but it is commonly initiated by hunger, sweating, loss of emotional control (parasympathetic activity ?), faintness, and lassitude Complete recovery, however, occurs when glucose, adrenaline, or pituitary extract is injected. Since pituitary extract does not cause a marked hyperglycæmia, its action appears to be rather an antagonism of the insulin than a mobilisation of glucose, such as is produced by adrenaline

Hypoglycæmia and increased sugar tolerance are common in some forms of pituitary disease, presumably as a result of the absence of this antagonising action

The Mechanism of Insulin Secretion—There is evidence that, just as the external secretion is controlled by the vagus, so also is the internal secretion Stimulation of the peripheral end of the vagus, the injection of pilocarpine or of alkali (which has many other actions like that of the parasympathetic) all cause a fall of blood sugar In order to demonstrate this, however, it is necessary to paralyse the sympathetic with ergotoxine (Clark), or to stimulate the sympathetic previously to a maximum These facts suggest that whatever the nature of insulin action it acts during the time when the parasympathetic is most active, *i e* during physical and mental rest Of some significance may be the fact that when a diabetic is in the habit of taking exercise, less insulin is necessary, and we know that in the intervals between exercise there is often increased parasympathetic activity It appears that insulin is normally circulating in the blood, since the transfusion of normal blood brings about a lessening of blood sugar in a diabetic, and its presence normally in the tissues is indicated by the fact that there is less blood sugar in the venous than in the arterial blood This is not so in the diabetic (Lawrence)

There is evidence also that the ingestion of carbohydrate causes an outpouring of insulin If a quantity of glucose (100 gms) is administered to an individual there is a rise of blood sugar which is followed by a fall below the resting level * At this stage a subsequent similar dose of glucose may not cause the blood sugar to rise

* It has also been shown by Glen that the venous blood of a dog injected with glucose will reduce the blood sugar of another dog

amount of glycogen in a muscle diminishes if it is made to contract, and that immediately after severe exercise the blood sugar is high, and there may even be glycosuria Further, it is found that in severe muscular work the respiratory quotient over the total period of the work is unity, indicating that carbohydrate has been consumed It is, therefore, to be expected that a mechanism for the rapid mobilisation of glucose exists and, indeed, much of the older work in relation to glycosuria, as we now realise, supports this view

The essential facts were first made out by Claude Bernard, who demonstrated that sugar could be formed by the liver, in the absence of recent feeding of that substance He found, for example, that if he washed through the liver vessels with water to remove all the pre-formed sugar, after the lapse of a few hours sugar reappeared He rightly concluded that there is in the liver a substance from which glucose could readily be formed This has been amply confirmed by the work of Mann and Magath who have shown that many procedures which cause an increase in blood sugar, *e g* the production of asphyxia or the injection of adrenaline, fail to do so if the liver has been previously removed

This mobilisation of glucose, accompanied by the reduction of liver glycogen, takes place not only in exercise, but also when a fall of blood sugar is produced experimentally by the injection of insulin which, as we have seen, causes a transference of the sugar to the muscles

The actual glycogenolysis, or glycogen breakdown, is a hydrolytic process, like the breakdown of starch, brought about through the agency of a diastatic enzyme, glycogenase,* the action of which is governed largely by the amount of the reacting substance present and by the hydrogen-ion concentration of the medium in which it acts It is most active just on the acid side of neutrality The enzyme may be looked upon as being responsible for the breakdown of glycogen, which occurs rapidly at death, and as facilitating that which, as we shall see, occurs in asphyxia

The Mechanism of Mobilisation—This has been investigated largely by studying the various procedures which cause hyperglycæmia and glycosuria It might be expected from what has been said that the mobilisation is under sympathetic control, and there is a certain amount of evidence to indicate this This view would appear to be supported by the classical experiments of Claude Bernard, who found that puncture of the floor of the 4th ventricle resulted in glycosuria, and that this did not occur if the nerve pathways between this point and the liver were cut Unfortunately, these experiments tend to be complicated by interference with respiration and a fall of blood-pressure, which themselves affect the

* This enzyme also may cause the building up of glycogen from glucose See "Law of Mass Action," p 334

blood sugar, and they are therefore not so conclusive as at first thought

Stimulation of the splanchnic and hepatic nerves also causes hyperglycæmia, but M'Leod suggests that this result is due to the stimulation of the suprarenal glands and the outpouring of adrenaline, since he found that if these glands were removed the hyperglycæmia no longer occurred On the other hand, it has been found that if the hepatic nerves are cut, splanchnic stimulation no longer causes hyperglycæmia, a fact which indicates intimate nervous influences The exact control is, therefore, still a matter for decision That the mobilisation of glucose is under sympathetic control appears certain and the view is supported by the fact that a very large number of conditions which increase sympathetic activity generally cause hyperglycæmia Of special importance is the action of adrenaline or extracts of the suprarenal gland, which, when injected, cause a hyperglycæmia by reducing the glycogen content of the liver This does not, however, occur after the injection of ergotamine which paralyses the sympathetic Asphyxia causes a similar hyperglycæmia, and any drug which depresses the respiratory centre acts likewise Similarly, sensory stimulation and, as we have said, severe exercise cause hyperglycæmia

Mobilisation of glucose from the liver is facilitated by the action of the thyroid, as is seen by the fact that feeding with thyroid increases the hyperglycæmia produced by adrenaline, and lessens the hypoglycæmia caused by insulin Hyperthyroidism in man produces hyperglycæmia, and, as we shall see, so does increased activity of the posterior lobe of the pituitary body

We see then, that hyperglycæmia may be the result of a variety of procedures For completeness, we may add again that excision or disease of the pancreas has a similar effect, due, however, not to increased mobilisation, but to reduced sugar utilisation

Diabetes Mellitus —The term diabetes mellitus is given to disease of the pancreas, usually of the nature of a chronic inflammation which leads to a typical reduction of capability to utilise carbohydrates, with hyperglycæmia and glycosuria as a result Experimentally, a similar result is produced by removal of the pancreas Since the *subsequent* removal of the liver causes a fall of blood sugar, even if the liver has been previously exhausted of glycogen by starvation (Mann and Magath), we must assume that the hyperglycæmia of diabetes is in part due to an excessive action of the liver in forming sugar A study of the ratio of dextrose to nitrogen excreted in the urine (*D N ratio*) suggests that in the diabetic sugar is formed from protein The necessity of getting rid of the excess of sugar in the blood brings about an excessive secretion of urine which, together with the fuel loss, leads to great thirst and appetite

There is at the same time greatly impaired vitality, with increased liability to infection.

As a result of the faulty combustion of carbohydrates, fats are incompletely burnt, and the abnormal products formed give rise to an acidæmia or ketosis (see p. 516). In the treatment of diabetes glucose is commonly given with the insulin to prevent hypoglycæmia, but should the latter ensue it may at once be relieved by the administration of glucose, adrenaline, or pituitary extract.

Metabolism of Fats

The chemistry of fats has already been considered.

The Origin of Fats in the Body.—The fats in the body arise from two main sources, namely, the fat and also the carbohydrate of the diet. We have already referred, in relation to the metabolism of carbohydrate, to the classical experiment of Lawes and Gilbert, who demonstrated that pigs could be fattened on a diet consisting chiefly of carbohydrate—barley (see p. 506). They found that the fat formed was greatly in excess of the small quantities unavoidably given in the food. It was considered by Voit and Pettenkoffer that, since they could fatten dogs on lean meat, fat was probably formed from protein, and on theoretical grounds this seems possible, since, as we know, the non-amino part of amino-acids may be utilised as fuel. At the time, the experiments were not accepted as conclusive, because the glycogen and fat of even lean meat had not been sufficiently considered. The more recent work of Atkinson, however, supports the earlier view, that in exceptional circumstances feeding on *large* quantities of protein may lead to an accumulation of fat.

As we have seen in relation to digestion and absorption, the fatty acid and glycerol components of the fat undergo a temporary separation but they soon unite and pass via the chyle into the blood. Only 60 per cent. of the fat taken can, however, be recovered from the thoracic duct and no satisfactory account for the remainder has yet been offered. It may be stored locally, or may be absorbed into the blood. If the latter, it must be removed at once, as the blood fat does not rise if the thoracic duct is tied.

The Blood Fat.—Like the blood sugar, the blood fat rises after a meal and may reach a maximum of **2 per cent.** about six hours later. A little later there is an increase of the lecithin and cholesterol of the blood. In disease, *e.g.* diabetes mellitus, in which fat metabolism is disordered, the blood fat may rise even to ten times the normal maximum.

It has been suggested that lecithin is formed from the blood fat and that it has a special importance in relation to the transport of fat in the body (Bloor). It would be well suited for this

purpose, as it is miscible with water and is easily formed from fatty acids The corpuscles of the blood contain more cholesterol and lecithin than the plasma, but it is not known what significance this fact may have It has been suggested, from observations on the tail of the tadpole, that the leucocytes have some special function in fat transport, since they have been seen loading and unloading themselves

The Utilisation of Fat—The fat is burnt as fuel, or it is stored in the fat depots of the body It is probable that lipide, possibly as lecithin, is an essential part of a large number of tissues, and even in death from starvation fat is never wholly absent from the tissues Normally, however, it is not apparent even on microscopic examination of thin sections, but becomes evident in the pathological state known as fatty degeneration During lactation, some of the fat is secreted in the milk A small proportion may be built up into the more complex phospho-lipides, or phosphatides In modern terminology, the term *lipide* has been decided upon by convention to cover all such substances related to and including the fats These phosphorus-containing compounds are important in many cells of the body The most important is probably lecithin, which contains fatty acids combined thus —

```
         /stearic acid
Glycerol<—oleic acid
         \phosphoric acid
                  |
               choline
```

It is probably a constituent of all cell membranes and plays a part in permeability and surface phenomena

The **storage of fat** takes place in the liver and in that variety of connective tissue known as adipose tissue which occurs specially below the skin and in the omentum and mesentery, in the cells of adipose tissue the fat is present in the form of large droplets, fluid at body temperature These deposits are known as the fat depots

Normally the fat which is built up by an animal is peculiar to that animal, but if it is starved and subsequently fed on fat unusual to its diet, it may put on fat of another composition The different fats can be readily identified by their melting-points and their iodine values

When, therefore, an animal takes a fat different in composition from its own fat, the appropriate fatty acids are added or taken away before the fat is deposited We must presume, in the absence of more exact knowledge, that the additional fatty acids are specially made for this purpose from the carbohydrates of the diet Munk further discovered the remarkable fact that if

fatty acids are given as food the chyle contains fat, the glycerol having been added by the intestine

The normal neutral fat of the depots contains 95 per cent of saturated fatty acids The liver fat, on the other hand, is usually much more unsaturated than that of adipose tissue and this appears to be of special significance in the preparation of fat for final combustion (Leathes)

In certain circumstances the liver fat may resemble that of the adipose tissues, and this is due to the infiltration of fat into the liver from the depots prior to its oxidation

This storage of fats in the depots is most important, as fat is a most economical form of fuel, or source of potential energy The storage of 100 calories may be effected in a space of 12 c c of adipose tissue weighing 11 grammes, the storage of the same amount of potential energy as glycogen is never effected in less than ten times that bulk of liver tissue weighing 130 grammes, and rarely in less than double this amount If the formula of a fat is compared with that of a carbohydrate, it will be observed that fat is relatively deficient in oxygen, and when it has to be burnt it requires more oxygen than a carbohydrate Hence it is that a gramme of fat has a higher calorific value (9 3) than carbohydrate (4 1) and that the burning of fat is accompanied by a lowering of the respiratory quotient

The Oxidation of Fats—Although we know that fats are eventually oxidised to carbon dioxide and water, the intermediate steps are as yet by no means certain A considerable amount of evidence has, however, accumulated to the effect that the long chain fatty acids are first oxidised to smaller chains Thus caproic acid becomes butyric acid, and so on until CO_2 and H_2O are reached.

$$CH_3\ CH_2\ CH_2\ \overset{\beta}{CH_2}\ \overset{\alpha}{CH_2}\ COOH + 3\,O_2 \\ = CH_3\ CH_2\ CH_2\ COOH + 2\,CO_2 + 2\,H_2O.$$

We may indicate, as suggested by Knoop, the reactions which take place in the metabolism of butyric acid thus —

$$\begin{array}{llllll}
 & & CH_3\ \overset{\beta}{CH_2} & \overset{\alpha}{CH_2} & COOH & \text{(butyric acid)} \\
(1) & +\ \ O = & CH_3\ CHOH & CH_2 & COOH & (\beta\text{-hydroxybutyric}) \\
(2) & +\ \ O = & CH_3\ CO & CH_2 & COOH + H_2O & \text{(aceto-acetic or diacetic)} \\
(3) & +\,4\,O = & CH_3\ COOH & & +\ 2\,CO_2 + H_2O & \text{(acetic)} \\
(4) & +\,4\,O = & 2\,CO_2\ + H_2O & & &
\end{array}$$

Although, however, this oxidation is shown occurring in stages it must be understood that the reactions all occur together

That the long chain loses two carbon atoms at once from the end where the COOH group is attached (β-oxidation), is suggested by

the following experiments Advantage is taken of the fact that the body cannot break down the benzene ring An artificial fatty acid containing this ring is made and administered to an animal The fatty acid chosen may have an even or an odd number of carbon atoms, one with an odd number is more completely oxidised than one with an even number, further oxidation being prevented by the formation of a stable end-product Thus from a fat with an odd number, the end-product benzoic acid (C_6H_5COOH) is produced, from a fat with an even number the substance phenyl acetic acid, (C_6H_5 CH_2 COOH) is the end-product The end-product in each instance combines with glycine to form hippuric and phenaceturic acid respectively and as such is recognisable in the urine

Similarly, Embden and his co-workers have found that in a perfused isolated liver, more acetone is produced when fatty acids with an even number of carbon atoms are added to the blood than when one with an odd number is added This can be explained if oxidation results in the removal of two carbon atoms at a time from the fatty acid When only four carbon atoms are left, butyric acid is formed and this is known to give rise to acetone under these conditions, whereas propionic acid, which would be derived in the same way from an acid with an uneven number of carbon atoms, does not In this connection it is of interest that the only fats which the body is called upon normally to metabolise have an even number

It is interesting also to observe that Dakin has found that oxidation with hydrogen peroxide (which we know is important in biological oxidation) will bring about β-oxidation *in vitro* *

In addition to this type of oxidation it has been shown by Leathes and his co-workers that the liver may convert saturated acids into unsaturated ones (desaturation) This process removes two hydrogen atoms in the middle of the chain and makes it more easily split into two shorter chains It thus renders them more liable to further oxidation and may represent a preliminary stage in the oxidation of fatty acids

Ketosis—This condition, we have seen, may occur in diabetes mellitus as a result of faulty combustion of carbohydrates In this condition the blood fat may rise to 20 per cent When the four-carbon stage is reached (butyric acid) by successive oxidations in the β position, the oxidation process appears to be more difficult and to depend in some way on the simultaneous combustion of carbohydrates If the combustion is deficient as in diabetes, the oxidation of the butyric acid instead of proceeding completely to carbon dioxide and water stops or is delayed at the stages of β-hydroxybutyric acid

* More recently Raper and Clutterbuck have found that hydrogen peroxide may bring about oxidation in the alpha and gamma positions, but the biological significance of this point is not yet evident.

and diacetic acid The latter, CH_3 CO CH_2 COOH, readily loses CO_2 forming acetone CH_3 CO CH_3 which gives the breath and urine the characteristic apple-like odour

The presence of acetone is not necessarily of serious significance, but the occurrence of diacetic acid indicates the probable presence also of β-hydroxybutyric acid which may produce a serious acidosis in the individual and may eventually cause death More complete oxidation is facilitated by the administration of carbohydrate and of insulin It is a remarkable fact that the Esquimos can consume a very high fat diet, and hibernating animals use their fat without evidence of ketosis This has not yet been satisfactorily explained

Enzymes in Fat Metabolism—Esterases, since they hydrolyse esters, and are present in many tissues, probably play a part in assisting in hydrolysis and synthesis of fat, the reaction which they bring about being reversible and the requirement of the body determining the direction

Protein Metabolism

In discussing the metabolism of carbohydrates and fats in the animal organism, it has been shown that the changes suffered by these components of the diet are essentially related to the production of mechanical energy, or heat Protein may in part similarly be used as fuel, but its most important function is growth and repair Protein alone among the foodstuffs contains the elements essential for the construction of new tissue, not only in the growing animal but also in the adult, where tissue wastage is constantly occurring owing to wear and tear processes Moreover, it is becoming evident that these same elements are also required for the elaboration of substances of importance in the regulation of the organism, *e g* thyroxine Hence it is seen that the protein of the food plays a rôle in the animal organism which cannot be undertaken by any of the other constituents of the diet

Destination of the Amino-Acids—Concerning the actual mode of this elaboration of new tissue and of regulative secretions very little is known Nevertheless, available evidence indicates that the amino-acids, which we have seen are the ultimate breakdown products of the protein of the food during digestion in the alimentary canal, are intimately connected with this process Van Slyke, for example, investigating the fate of amino-acids intravenously injected, found that not only did they rapidly disappear from the blood-stream, but also that this disappearance was due to their absorption by the tissues

The increase of amino-acids after the injection was greatest in the liver, though the kidney and muscle appeared to retain their quota for a longer time The fall in the liver amino-acids

which takes place after the first hour was, moreover, accompanied by a rise in the blood urea and, as it will be seen later, these two phenomena are closely related It is thought that normal absorption of amino-acids by the tissues takes place in much the same way Having thus loaded themselves with amino-acids, the tissues proceed to pick out those they particularly require, either to incorporate them into their own substance, or for the production of secretions, those amino-acids not so required, however, may be retained or transferred by way of the blood-stream to the liver, where they are broken down and the non-amino part used as fuel There are, then, two main processes in protein metabolism, firstly, the building-up of amino-acids from the blood-stream into the tissues, and secondly, the decomposition in the liver and sometimes in muscle of the amino-acids not so required

In addition to the metabolism of the protein of the diet, one must also remember that amino-acids are liberated from body protein during tissue wastage and that every living tissue is periodically replaced. These amino-acids are dealt with in exactly the same way as those of the diet, but as would be expected, such protein metabolism does not vary in amount like that of the diet

Folin has classified protein metabolism on this basis Metabolism which is closely related to the synthesis and breakdown of body tissue is called **endogenous**, while that not so related is called **exogenous**

From a study of the end-products of the metabolism which appear in the urine and the extent to which they can be made to vary according to the diet, we can get an idea of the amount of the endogenous metabolism When a diet poor in protein is given, it is found that the output of creatinine and neutral sulphate remains fairly constant These compounds Folin regards as products of endogenous metabolism, and the others, *e g* urea, inorganic sulphate, which vary according to the quantity of protein in the diet, are mainly exogenous in origin

In conditions of excessive tissue breakdown, *e g* during involution of the uterus and in fever, the creatinine is much increased

We are now in a position to consider the fate of those amino-acids which are either not required for the purpose of tissue elaboration or are set free during tissue breakdown The first change suffered by them is that of **deamination**, a process brought about by enzymes The original conception of this process was that ammonia is liberated from the amino-acid and a keto-acid is formed, but opinion is that the amino-acid is combined with glucose or some such substance and the resulting compound is oxidised to a keto-acid, cyanic acid, and water Many old experiments have appeared to indicate that the ammonia so liberated combines with

the carbon dioxide and water, which are always present with the formation of ammonium carbonate

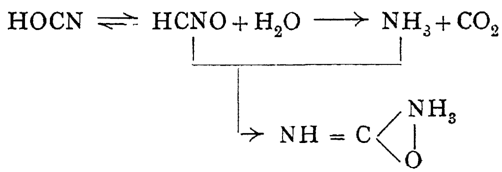
It was shown, for example, by Schroder in 1882 that this latter substance, if perfused through the liver, was converted into urea, and it has therefore been considered that ammonium carbonate is probably an intermediate stage in **the formation of urea** normally, and that it readily undergoes dehydration, as shown by the following reactions —

$$(1)\quad \underset{\text{[Ammonium carbonate]}}{O = C\begin{cases} ONH_4 \\ ONH_4 \end{cases}} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{[Ammonium carbamate]}}{O = C\begin{cases} NH_2 \\ ONH_4 \end{cases}} + H_2O$$

$$(2)\quad \underset{\text{[Ammonium carbamate]}}{O = C\begin{cases} NH_2 \\ ONH_4 \end{cases}} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{[Urea]}}{O = C\begin{cases} NH_2 \\ NH_2 \end{cases}} + H_2O$$

The feeding of ammonium carbonate to animals also causes an increase in the excretion of urea

As a result of the work of Werner, the formula of urea, as given above, and its mode of formation from amino-acids may require considerable modification He has pointed out that, since urea forms only one salt with nitric acid and not two, which would be the case if there were two basic (NH_2) groups in the molecule, the formula $CO\begin{cases} NH_2 \\ NH_2 \end{cases}$ for urea is incorrect Instead, it is considered that the formula $NH = C\begin{cases} NH_3 \\ \ \vert \\ O \end{cases}$ is the true one, and that the intermediate stage in the break-down of amino-acids to urea is not ammonium carbonate but cyanic acid, which in neutral aqueous solution is partly hydrolysed to ammonia and carbon dioxide and partly converted into urea by combination with ammonia These changes are pictured thus —



The whole of the urea found in the urine is not formed in this fashion Some of it arises by the action of the enzyme arginase which has been found in various organs, and which is capable of hydrolysing the amino-acid **arginine** with the formation of urea and a second amino-acid, ornithine, thus :—

$$\underset{\text{[Arginine]}}{\mathrm{NH_2{-}\underset{\underset{NH}{\|}}{C}{-}NHCH_2{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{NH_2}{|}}{CH}{-}COOH}} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\underset{\text{[Urea]}}{CO(NH_2)_2} + \underset{\text{[Ornithine]}}{\mathrm{NH_2(CH_2)_3{-}\underset{\underset{NH_2}{|}}{CH}{-}COOH}}$$

The ornithine so liberated is available for further use by the body

The process of urea formation takes place in the liver, and if an Eck fistula is made (*i e*, the portal vein is joined to the vena cava) so that the liver is short-circuited, no urea is formed Mann and Magath have shown that removal of the liver causes a steady decrease of the urea in the blood and urine, provided urine secretion continues If the flow of urine ceases or the kidneys are removed, the blood urea remains constant, indicating that urea is not destroyed in the body The results also confirm the view that the liver is the only site of urea formation These workers also found no evidence of deamination of injected amino-acids after removal of the liver Older experiments with the Eck fistula showed an accumulation of ammonia in the blood and indicated that deamination might take place in other tissues (See Liver) Experiments on the heart support this view *

The urea so formed passes into the blood-stream and thence by way of the kidney into the urine

The reverse process, of making ammonia from urea, also takes place in the body This is dealt with further in relation to the ammonia-urea ratio of the urine

Purine Metabolism

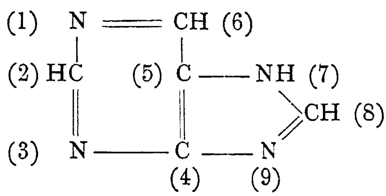
We have yet to consider the metabolism of the special group of proteins called nucleo-proteins As the name suggests, these compounds contain nucleic acid, a complex organic acid containing phosphorus, which is found widely distributed in animal and vegetable tissues It is an important constituent of nuclei and is, therefore, present in quantity in cellular organs such as the liver, thymus, pancreas, lymphatic glands, and testes Moreover, in man, it is the precursor of uric acid, and a study of its metabolism is therefore of importance

* Ammonia is formed by an asphyxiated heart-lung preparation

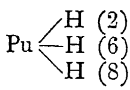
During digestion the nucleo-proteins undergo a variety of changes which primarily break them thus —

nucleo-protein
↓ (by gastric digestion)
protein + nuclein
(by gastric digestion) ↓ ↓ (by nuclease of intestinal juice)
peptone nucleic acid + protein

The final end-products which pass into the blood are amino-acids, from the protein part, and purines, pyrimidines, phosphoric acid, and hexose (or pentose), from the nucleic acid Before passing to a consideration of purine metabolism, it will help matters considerably if we refer to the chemistry of these substances The constitution of purine is

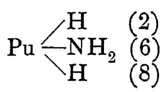
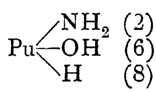


or more simply

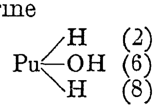


where Pu represents the purine residue

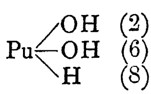
The more important purines for our point of view are adenine and guanine, whose simpler formula are respectively

 and 

These two compounds, after absorption from the intestine, pass to the liver and other tissues, where they are deaminised in much the same manner as amino-acids, by the respective *deaminases* adenase and guanase Adenine, under these conditions, yields hypoxanthine, or 6 oxy-purine



while guanine yields xanthine or dioxy-purine



Hypoxanthine and xanthine are then oxidised with the formation of *uric acid*, 2, 6, 8 – trioxy-purine,

$$\mathrm{Pu}\begin{cases}\mathrm{OH}\ (2)\\ \mathrm{OH}\ (6)\\ \mathrm{OH}\ (8)\end{cases}$$

which is excreted in the urine as its sodium and potassium salts

While the changes thus described are taking place in the liver, the nucleic acid, which is a constituent of all cells, also suffers similar changes Hence the uric acid, which finally appears in the urine, is partly endogenous in character, and partly exogenous

While in man the uric acid so formed is excreted as such, yet many mammals, particularly the dog, are able to carry the process of oxidation one stage further, with the result that one of the purine rings is broken and allantoin is formed In the urine of these animals allantoin thus largely replaces uric acid In other mammals again, the allantoin so formed appears to be broken up with the ultimate formation of urea

For our present purpose we might summarise the above changes simply, thus —

NUCLEO-PROTEIN of tissues → nucleic acids ← NUCLEO-PROTEIN of food

nucleic acids → purine bases

purine bases → adenine; purine bases → guanine

adenine (by adenase) → hypoxanthine + O ⟶ xanthine + O

guanine (by guanase) → xanthine + O

xanthine + O → URIC ACID (man)

URIC ACID (by uricase) → allantoin (dog)

allantoin → urea (other mammals)

The mode of excretion of uric acid in man is dealt with under "Urine"

It is of interest that the chief nitrogenous constituent of birds' urine is uric acid, and here the uric acid appears to be built up in

the liver from the urea produced during the ordinary processes of protein metabolism That such a synthesis takes place in the bird can be shown by cutting out the liver from the circulation Under these conditions it is found that urea and ammonium lactate accumulate in its blood

An explanation of the necessity for the intake of apparently unduly large amounts of protein is probably, as suggested by Hopkins, that certain of the cleavage products of protein are more important than others for body-building and for the elaboration of some of the special secretions of the body such as those of the ductless glands, *e g* adrenaline and thyroxine (See Ductless Glands)

The requirements of special amino-acids for body-building are dealt with further on p 525

Special Protein Metabolism —In addition to the processes described above, which concern the nitrogen of the protein molecule, the body has certain special mechanisms to deal with any other elements in proteins such as sulphur or phosphorus The method of excretion of the surplus intake of such elements is dealt with in the chapter on Urine

Growth and Maintenance Synthesis in the Body

We have now a rational explanation of why it is that the organism can construct the proteins peculiar to itself and maintain its chemical individuality, although the food taken varies so widely in composition

If a man wants to build a house from the bricks of another previously built house, he naturally takes the latter to pieces first, uses the bricks most suitable for his purpose, and arranges them in a way different from their previous arrangement This idea explains why we speak of the amino-acids, the final cleavage products of proteins, as building stones, these fragments are rearranged by the tissue cells into tissue-protein, which is different architecturally from the food-protein

Abderhalden published a very striking experiment in confirmation of this view He collected the blood of a horse, separated out the various proteins of the plasma, and estimated in each the yield of certain cleavage products (glutamic acid and tyrosine) which resulted from hydrolysis He then fed the horse so that it formed new blood, but the only protein given was gliadin, a vegetable protein, which is remarkable for its high percentage yield (37 3) of glutamic acid. But in the regenerated blood proteins the percentage yield of glutamic acid was not increased at all, the figures obtained were identical with those in the proteins previously present.

It is a far cry from the highly specialised organism of the horse to the protoplasm of the simple mould known as *Aspergillus niger*, nevertheless, the same general rule holds the protein matter present yielded on hydrolysis, glycine, alanine, leucine, glutamic and aspartic acids, but aromatic products, such as tyrosine and phenyl-alanine, were not discovered The mould was then cultivated

on media of widely-varying composition, but the protein formed in the living protoplasm remained constant in composition, and was thus independent of the composition of the nutritive medium

What, then, if this is the case, would be the fate of food proteins introduced directly into the blood-stream without the intervention of the alimentary digestive processes? If the preliminary cleavage in the gastro-intestinal tract is absolutely necessary, one would anticipate that a foreign food-protein (such as edestin from hemp seed, or excelsin from Brazil nuts) administered by intravenous or intraperitoneal injection would not be assimilated, but would be cast out of the body in one or more of the excretions But Mendel and Rockwood found that they were not eliminated in either urine or bile In some cases, a proteose was found in small quantities in the urine, but the greater part of the protein administered was retained in the body, especially when injection was performed slowly

The fact that proteins are retained after this method of administration and apparently used in the body does not really militate against the theory that proteins under normal conditions are more or less completely broken down in the alimentary tract. It is more than probable that cleavage is absolutely necessary for assimilation, and here the enzymes present in the tissue-cells step in, they are capable of taking the place of the pancreatic trypsin and intestinal erepsin and doing their work. The presence of a proteose in urine in some of Mendel and Rockwood's experiments points in this direction, and this view is supported also by Vernon's discovery that every tissue of the body has an ereptic action, and that in some tissues this power is even greater than in the intestinal juice

It must not, however, be supposed that all the building stones of the food-protein are utilised in this way The body is remarkable for its economical use of the tissue-proteins, and quite a small quantity relatively is used up in our daily activities, and so repair is only necessary to the same small extent We may again get some assistance from our example of the man building a house When he takes the first house to pieces, there will be a lot of useless bricks and other rubbish, and if the house he wants to build is a smaller one than the one he has destroyed, he will have to discard also many bricks which are not rubbish So it is with the fragments of the food-protein, which, on usual diets, is more abundant than is necessary for the building of tissue-protein The excess we have seen is deaminated and the nitrogen discharged from the body

It should be further noted that the nitrogen of the protein is split off from it by hydrolysis, not by oxidation, so that the products of breakdown retain almost intact the previous energy of the protein, and the non-nitrogenous residue is then available for calorific processes in the same way that the non-nitrogenous foods (carbohydrates and fat) are

To continue our analogy of the house-builder, it is generally found that in addition to the building stones provided from the destruction of the previous house, he may want some new bricks altogether Is this a possibility in the body? Research has again answered this question in the affirmative, and shown that the body-cells possess a previously unsuspected power of synthesising amino-acids for themselves

Essential Amino-Acids.—Research has established the fact that one of the important building stones is phenyl-alanine, and its near relative tyrosine is another; for when they are injected into the blood-stream they do not appear as urea in the urine. We also know that proteins which yield no tyrosine, such as gelatin, are of inferior value as food. Gelatin is also destitute of the tryptophan radical, and tryptophan is specially useful too. Zein, the protein of maize, lacks tryptophan, and if tryptophan is added to a zein diet, animals fed on the mixture thrive better than those whose sole nitrogenous food is zein. Histidine and proline are also probably in the same category, and recent research has shown that lysine is a most important "building stone."

The different members of the protein family have thus unequal powers in repairing the body waste. Still more important is their difference in promoting growth in young animals. Work by Hopkins, Osborne, Mendel, and others has shown that it is possible to keep animals alive and in health when they receive their nitrogen in the form of one protein only, mixed of course with the proper supply of other food. But if these animals are growing, the choice of the protein given is a matter of great importance. Repair processes in the adult are of a different character from those of growth in the young animal; in the adult cell, katabolism and repair do not involve the destruction and resynthesis of entire protein-molecules; complete synthesis of these molecules must obviously occur when growth is taking place. This work has also brought to light the fact that, in the animal body, there is a power of synthesising comparatively simple food material into more complex substances far in excess of what was previously considered to be the case. Thus lipoids can be built from inorganic phosphorus compounds, and proteins constructed from amino-acids. Some even have asserted that ammonium salts given by the mouth can be utilised for protein construction, but this has not yet been conclusively proved. The body also possesses the power of building up amino-acids which are absent from the food, and of converting one amino-acid into others. This ability is most marked in the adult animal; it is in the young animal that the actual administration in the food of the necessary building stones is indispensable.

Let us take one or two instances which illustrate this. Rats were fed for long periods on food-mixtures which contained only a single protein. When gliadin, edestin, or caseinogen, proteins of very different composition, were administered, the animals thrived and showed neither loss of weight nor any other metabolic disorder. Glycine is absent from caseinogen, lysine and glycine from gliadin, phosphorus from gliadin and edestin, and purines were absent

from all three The synthetic activities of the animal body, and the possibility of the transmutation of one amino-acid into others, are thus emphasised

Another example may be taken from an animal higher in the scale A food-mixture in which gliadin was the only source of nitrogen was given to a puppy in place of its mother's milk, this produced typical failure in growth Nevertheless the mother dog thrived on the same diet and actually produced young, and secreted milk in sufficient quantity and quality to induce normal growth in her offspring No stronger proof could be adduced of a power in the adult body to synthesise "building stones" which are absent from the food Special amino-acids enable the body to make its internal secretions for example tyrosine is necessary for the formation of thyroxine and adrenaline, others are valuable for purposes of detoxication, for example glycine for the detoxication of benzoic acid

The only other example selected from the large mass of material at hand illustrates the importance of those unknown but indispensable constituents of a diet which are referred to in our section on Vitamins An animal, or at any rate a growing animal, cannot live on protein alone, even if it is mixed with appropriate mineral salts, and with a proper supply of fat and carbohydrate to supply the necessary energy, these other organic compounds of uncertain nature are absolutely indispensable Hopkins, who has worked extensively on the essential amino-acids, was one of the earliest to recognise the importance of what we now call vitamins, and the effect of quite small quantities of such substances is admirably illustrated in his published work Groups of young rats were fed on a diet of caseinogen, fats, carbohydrate, and salts, and compared with other rats on the same diet, *plus* a small ration of fresh milk, which we now know contains the growth-promoting vitamin A The former soon ceased to grow, the latter grew normally The consumption of food was practically the same in all the animals, but the milk addendum reduced the food necessary for a given increment in weight to one-half or less Moreover, cessation of growth occurred before there was any loss of appetite to account for it What vitamins are we do not yet know We can therefore only surmise that they may contain some particular "building stones" which the animal body is not able to make for itself, or it may be that the effect is due to a stimulating action upon the cell-protoplasm which leads to the development of the necessary synthetic power, or, as we know in the case of vitamin D, to the promotion of the absorption of an essential substance (such as calcium) from the alimentary canal

Starvation

The term "starvation" is used very loosely In a scientific sense it may be taken to include any deficiency in the food or water intake, but by convention it is understood as complete deprivation of food, water only being supplied

During starvation the body gradually loses weight, the temperature, after a preliminary rise, sinks, the functions get weaker by degrees, and ultimately death ensues when the body has lost about 50 per cent of its original weight Death may be delayed somewhat by artificial warmth, so that the strain on the internal production of heat is not so great If water is given, life may continue for rather more than a month The age of the animal influences the time at which death occurs This statement was originally made by Hippocrates, and has been borne out by the experiments of Martigny and Chossat Young animals lose weight more quickly, and die after a smaller loss of weight than old

The excretion of nitrogen falls quickly at the commencement of starvation, and even on the first day sinks to half the normal This lessening goes on for a few days, after which it remains constant, about the end of the fourth week it rises again when the fat of the animal has been used up, and the body makes an increased call on the protein constituents of its protoplasm—"the premortal rise" With the onset of symptoms of approaching death, which is sometimes accompanied by convulsions, the excretion of nitrogen rapidly falls again probably owing to renal failure The sulphates and phosphates of the urine show much the same series of changes The discharge of carbonic acid and the intake of oxygen fall continuously over the whole period

It is important to note, that wasting does not occur to an equal extent in all the tissues and organs Those which are most essential to life are fed at the expense of the others thus the heart loses little or none, and the central nervous system loses at most 3 per cent of its weight The fat nearly all disappears, at least 97 per cent of it being used up, muscles lose 30 per cent of their original weight, and most of the other organs suffer also but in varying degrees Taking the total loss as 100, Voit gives the loss due to that of individual organs as follows —

Bone	5 4	Pancreas	0 1	Brain and cord	0 1
Muscle	42 2	Lungs	0 3	Skin and hair	8 8
Liver	4 8	Heart	0 0	Fat	26 2
Kidneys	0 6	Testes	0 1	Blood	3 7
Spleen	0 6	Intestines	2 0	Other parts	5 0

The study of starvation is important, as it gives information regarding the so-called **nitrogen equilibrium**, or balance between

nitrogen output and intake of the body. It is found that in carnivora, in order to make the nitrogen intake equal to that excreted, about three times the amount excreted in starvation has to be given, but in man nitrogen equilibrium can never be attained on protein alone. The more nitrogenous food given, the more is utilised, and the excretion always exceeds the intake. The additional protein is really used as fuel to supply the essential energy requirements and does not prevent tissue wastage. The fuel requirements are actually increased by the protein itself in virtue of its specific dynamic action on metabolism (*q.v.*). The fuel can, indeed, be more adequately supplied by carbohydrates and fats, which may be looked upon, therefore, as **protein-sparers**, and, if these are given, protein equilibrium is possible in man and is more readily produced in carnivora than in their absence. Carbohydrates are better protein-sparers than fats, since they are more readily oxidised. They will therefore reduce tissue wastage in starvation. It is suggested that the protein-sparers make it possible for the products of tissue breakdown to be used over again, and the importance of carbohydrate in the diet during repair is emphasised.

The Irreducible Protein Minimum.—When we take in protein we do so essentially to replace tissue wastage, and there is, therefore, a certain irreducible protein minimum below which the protein intake cannot be reduced without affecting the nitrogenous equilibrium. It has been found that certain sources of protein, *e.g.* meat and milk, have a much greater value than others, as is shown by the fact that less of them is required to maintain nitrogenous equilibrium than of vegetable proteins. These substances are said, therefore, to have the highest *biological value*, and it will be noticed that they are of animal origin.

CHAPTER XXXV

THE LIVER

THE **Liver**, the largest gland in the body, is an extremely vascular organ, and receives its supply of blood from two sources, viz, from the *portal vein* and from the *hepatic artery*, while the blood is returned from it into the inferior vena cava by the *hepatic veins*

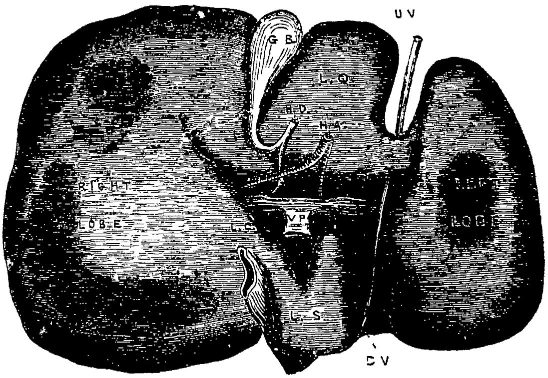


FIG 202 —The under surface of the liver G B., Gall bladder, H D, common bile duct, H A, hepatic artery, V P, portal vein, L Q, lobulus quadratus, L S, lobulus Spigelii [caudatus], L C, lobulus [processus] caudatus, D V, ductus venosus, U V, umbilical vein (Noble Smith)

Its secretion, the *bile*, is conveyed from it by the *hepatic duct*, either directly into the intestine, or, when digestion is not going on, into the *cystic* duct, and thence into the gall-bladder, where it accumulates until required

The liver is in origin a tubular gland, but as development progresses it soon loses all resemblance to the tubular glands found elsewhere It is made up of small roundish or oval portions called *lobules*, each of which is about $\frac{1}{20}$ of an inch (rather less than 1 mm) in diameter, and composed of the liver cells, between which the blood-vessels and bile-vessels ramify The *hepatic cells* which form the glandular or secreting part of the liver, are of a spheroidal form, but are rendered polygonal from mutual pressure Each

possesses a nucleus, sometimes two The cell protoplasm contains numerous fatty particles, as well as a variable amount of glycogen

The portal vein (PV), hepatic artery (HA), and hepatic duct (BD) run in company (fig 203) Running together through the substance of the liver, they are contained in small channels called *portal canals*, their immediate investment being a sheath of areolar tissue continuous with Glisson's capsule which coats the liver

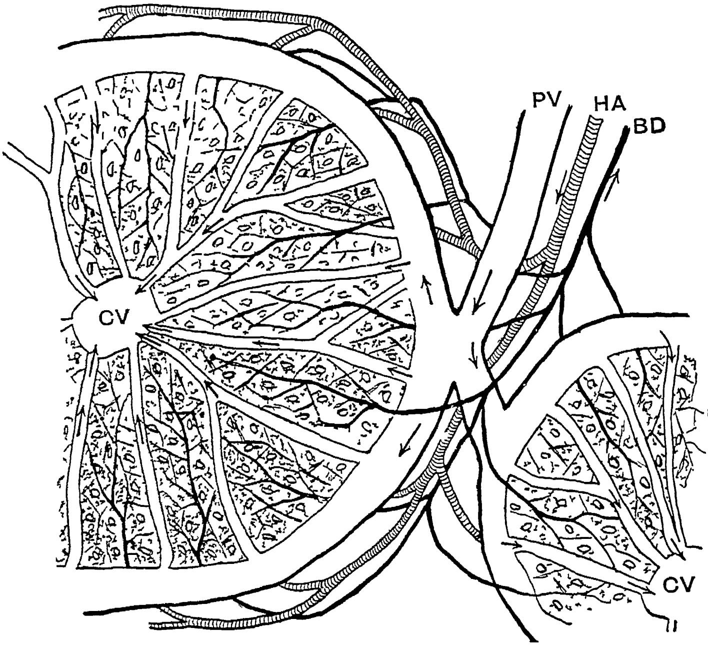


FIG 203 —Diagram to show the main structures of the liver For clearness the cells and capillaries of the liver have been drawn unduly large and the smaller vessels omitted (M'Dowall, modified from Burton Opitz.)

In its course through the liver the portal vein gives off small branches which divide and subdivide *between* the lobules surrounding them and limiting them, and from this circumstance called *inter*-lobular veins From these vessels a dense capillary network is prolonged into the substance of the lobule, and this network converges to a single small vein, occupying the centre of the lobule (CV in fig 203), and hence called *intra*-lobular

The *intra*-lobular veins discharge their contents into veins called *sub*-lobular, these, by their union, form the main branches of the *hepatic* veins, which leave the posterior border of the liver to end

by two or three principal trunks in the inferior vena cava, just before its passage through the diaphragm

The so-called capillaries of the liver are really sinusoids (see p 203), they are in direct contact with the liver-cells, and are not surrounded with lymph spaces as in other secreting glands, their endothelial covering is in many places incomplete, and its cells are irregularly branched and more or less isolated from their neighbours They are called the *stellate cells of Kupffer* The result is that the blood comes into direct contact with the liver-cells

The hepatic artery, the chief function of which is to distribute blood for nutrition to Glisson's capsule, the walls of the ducts and blood-vessels, and other parts of the liver, is distributed in a very similar manner to the portal vein, its blood being returned by small branches which pass into the capillary plexus of the lobules which connects the *inter-* and *intra*-lobular veins

The bile duct divides and subdivides in a manner like the portal vein, the larger branches being lined by *columnar*, and the smaller by small *polygonal* epithelium

The bile capillaries commence between the hepatic cells, they are always bounded by hepatic cells on all sides, and are thus separated from the nearest blood-vessel by at least the breadth of one cell The bile capillary corresponds to the lumen of a test-tube composed of cells, vessels being on the outside

The *inter*-cellular network of bile capillaries may be shown (Chrzonszezewsky) by injecting intravenously a saturated aqueous solution of sulph-indigotate of soda The animals are killed an hour and a half afterwards, and the blood-vessels, washed free from blood, are injected with gelatin stained with carmine The bile-ducts are then seen filled with blue, and the blood-vessels with red material. If the animals are killed sooner than this, the indigo pigment is found within the hepatic cells, thus showing that it is through their agency that the canals are filled

Pfluger and Kupffer later discovered that the relation between the hepatic cells and the bile canaliculi is even more intimate, for they demonstrated the existence of vacuoles in the cells communicating by minute *intra*-cellular channels with the adjoining bile canaliculi (fig 204)

Intra-cellular canaliculi in the liver-cells are not unique Recent research by Golgi's method has shown that in the salivary and gastric glands, and in the pancreas, there is a similar condition

Schafer has further demonstrated that the liver-cells contain not only the intracellular bile canaliculi, but also intracellular blood canaliculi passing into the cells from the capillaries (sinusoids) between them These are too minute to admit blood-corpuscles The liver-cells take certain materials from the plasma and elaborate the constituents of the

bile, the bile-salts, and the bile pigments These substances are in part formed by the hepatic cells, and in part are modified by the liver after having been manufactured elsewhere, *e g* bile pigments (see Blood) We thus see that in the liver, lymph does not act as an intermediary as it does in the formation of other secretions

The functions of the liver have of recent years been greatly elucidated by the work of Mann and Magath, who have successfully removed the organ in dogs by first causing to be established a collateral circulation through the azygos and internal mammary veins Since the relation of the liver to metabolism is dealt with

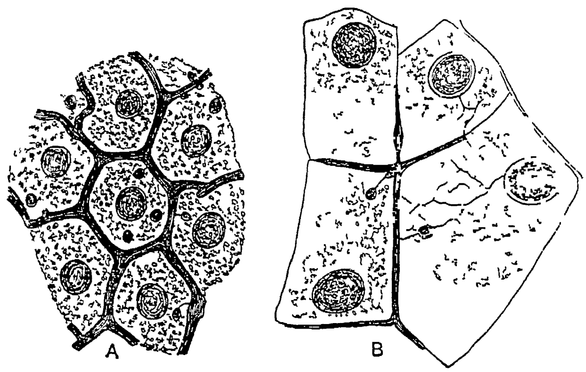


FIG 204.—Sketches illustrating the mode of commencement of the bile canaliculi within the liver cells (Heidenhain, after Kupffer) A, rabbit's liver, injected from hepatic duct with Berlin blue The *inter* cellular canaliculi give off minute twigs which penetrate into the liver cells, and there terminate in vacuole like enlargements B, frog's liver injected during life with sulph indigotate of soda A similar appearance is obtained, but the *intra*-cellular canaliculi are ramified

under Intermediate Metabolism, the main facts, together with the effects of extirpation, need only be summarised

The Functions of the Liver —The liver, as we have seen, plays an important part in the intermediate metabolism of carbohydrate, fat, and protein

Carbohydrate Metabolism —The storage of glycogen and mobilisation of glucose (pp 505 *et seq*) The conversion of fructose and galactose into glucose In starvation the formation of glucose from protein

Removal of the liver causes a marked hypoglycæmia, producing general loss of all functions, and death ensues in two hours If, however, glucose is administered the animal makes a remarkable recovery and survives for twenty-four hours These results occur even after the glycogen of the liver has been removed by previous starvation, thus showing that it has been in such circumstances concerned in the formation of glucose probably from protein

Fat Metabolism —The desaturation of fats prior to oxidation (p 514)

Protein Metabolism.—Deaminisation of amino-acids, formation of urea and uric acid (see Metabolism of Protein and Nucleo-protein).

Bile Formation.—Removal of liver, like obstruction to its ducts, causes the accumulation of bile pigment in the blood as the pigment which is the product of the breakdown of red blood-corpuscles is no longer excreted (see Fate of Red Blood-Corpuscles).

The liver plays an important part in dealing with poisonous substances, *e.g.* drugs, absorbed from the alimentary canal. These it combines as glycuronic acid and other substances to form harmless compounds. This is called the *detoxicating function* of the liver.

Bile

Bile is the secretion of the liver which is poured into the duodenum. it has been collected in living animals and occasionally in man by means of a biliary fistula, and also in man by use of the duodenal tube which is passed down the œsophagus. After death the gall-bladder yields a good supply of bile which is more concentrated than that obtained from a fistula.

Bile is being continuously poured into the intestine, but there is an increased discharge soon after the arrival of food in the duodenum.

The constituents of the bile are the bile salts proper (tauro-cholate and glycocholate of sodium), the bile pigments (bilirubin, biliverdin), a mucinoid substance, small quantities of fats, soaps, cholesterol, lecithin, urea, and mineral salts, of which sodium chloride and phosphates of calcium, magnesium, and iron are the most important.

Bile is a yellowish, reddish-brown, or green fluid, according to the relative preponderance of its two chief pigments. It has a musk-like odour, a bitter-sweet taste, and an alkaline reaction.

Constituents	Fistula bile (healthy woman. Copeman and Winston)	Fistula bile (case of cancer. Yeo and Herroun)	Normal bile (Frerichs)
Sodium glycocholate Sodium taurocholate	0.6280	0.165 0.055	9.14
Cholesterol, lecithin, fat	0.0990	0.038	1.18
Mucinoid material Pigment	0.1725 0.0725	0.148	2.98
Inorganic salts	0.4510	0.878	0.78
Total solids	1.4230	1.284	14.08
Water (by difference)	98.5770	98.716	85.92

The specific gravity of human bile from the gall-bladder is 1026 to 1032; that from a fistula, 1010 to 1011. The greater concentration of gall-bladder bile is partly due to absorption of water and partly to the addition of mucus from the wall.

The amount of solids in gall-bladder bile is from 9 to 14 per cent.; in fistula bile from 1.5 to 3 per cent. The table on page 535 shows that this low percentage of solids is almost entirely due to want of bile salts. This can be accounted for in the way first suggested by Schiff—that there is normally a bile circulation going on in the body, a large quantity of the bile salts that pass into the intestine being first split up, then reabsorbed and again secreted. Such a circulation would obviously be impossible in cases where all the bile is discharged to the exterior through a fistula.

The Bile Salts.—The human bile contains the sodium salts of complex amino-acids called the bile acids. The one, *glycocholic acid* ($C_{26}H_{43}NO_6$), is derived from the amino-acid glycine and cholalic acid, whose origin is uncertain (it is thought to be derived from cholesterol or to have a similar origin); the other, *taurocholic acid* ($C_{26}H_{45}NO_7S$), is derived from cholalic acid and taurine, a sulphur-containing amino-acid formed from cystine. The bile acids are hydrolysed by dilute acids and alkalis into their components. The constitution of the bile of different animals varies considerably. High protein diet or administration of cholalic acid increases the excretion of bile salts, while fasting or the ingestion of sugar lowers it.

The colour reaction called **Pettenkofer's reaction** is due to the presence of cholalic acid. Small quantities of sucrose and strong sulphuric acid are added to the bile. The sulphuric acid acting on sugar forms a small quantity of a substance called *furfuraldehyde*, in addition to other products. The furfuraldehyde gives a brilliant purple colour with cholalic acid.

The Bile Pigments.—These are iron-free derivatives of hæmoglobin; the body retains the iron for other uses. The two chief bile pigments are bilirubin and biliverdin. Bile which contains chiefly the former (such as dog's bile) is of a golden or orange-yellow colour, while the bile of many herbivora, which contains chiefly biliverdin, is either green or bluish-green.

Bilirubin has the formula $C_{33}H_{36}N_4O_6$; it is thus an iron-free derivative of hæmoglobin. The iron is apparently stored up in the liver-cells, perhaps for future use in the manufacture of new hæmoglobin. Bile contains only a trace of iron; bilirubin is isomeric with hæmatoporphyrin.

Biliverdin $(C_{33}H_{36}N_4O_8)_x$ may occur as such in bile; it may be formed by simply exposing red bile to the oxidising action of the atmosphere; or it may be formed as in Gmelin's test (see

Urine) by the more vigorous oxidation produced by fuming nitric acid

Hydrobilirubin ($C_{32}H_{44}N_4O_7$).—If a solution of bilirubin or biliverdin in dilute alkali is treated with sodium amalgam or allowed to putrefy, a brownish pigment, which is a reduction product, is formed called hydrobilirubin. It shows a dark absorption band between *b* and F, and a fainter band in the region of the D line.

This substance is interesting because a similar substance is formed from the bile pigment by reduction processes in the intestine, and constitutes *stercobilin*, the pigment of the fæces. Some of this is absorbed and ultimately leaves the body in the urine as one of its pigments called *urobilin*. A small quantity of urobilin is sometimes found preformed in the bile.

The Origin of Bile Pigment.—We have seen (p 534) that the bile pigments are formed from pigments of broken-down red blood-corpuscles, by the reticulo-endothelial system. The bilirubin is modified by the liver, as is indicated by the Van den Bergh reaction.

The test solutions are—

(*A*)	Sulphanilic Acid	1 gram
	HCl (conc.)	15 c.c.
	Distilled Water	1000 c.c.
(*B*)	Sodium Nitrite	0.5 per cent. solution

Immediately before use *A* and *B* are mixed in the proportion of 100 to 3 respectively.

If added to bile the direct reaction (bluish violet) is obtained, but if to normal blood serum no colour appears until 96 per cent alcohol has been added, *i.e.* the indirect reaction (violet red). The modification, which is obscure, is due to the liver, but the reaction has been of great value in detecting and estimating the presence and amount of modified and unmodified bile pigment in the blood. In simple obstruction of the bile passages the pigment which has been modified passes back into the blood-stream the serum of which then gives the direct reaction. The presence of an excessive amount of bile pigment in the blood causes the mucous membranes, the white of the eye, and the skin to appear yellow. This is known as Jaundice.

Cholesterol.—Small quantities of this substance are found in normal bile. It may occur in excess, and form the concretions known as gall-stones, which are usually tinged with bilirubin. Its properties and reactions have been already described.

The Secretion of Bile.—The bile is secreted at a much lower pressure than are the secretions of the salivary glands, but this is to be expected from the fact that in the latter case the pressure of the blood in the main vessel supplying the gland is arterial and not venous. Like other secretions, however, it is produced at a pressure

higher than the blood supply. According to Herring and Simpson, the bile pressure (30 mm Hg) is three times that of the blood in the portal vein.

The nervous mechanism is unknown, but it appears that bile is secreted under the influence of the action of secretin, which thus stimulates the liver as well as the pancreas, and through the action of the bile salts themselves reabsorbed from the intestine.

Schiff was the first to demonstrate this **circulation of the bile**, which relates chiefly, if not entirely, to the bile salts; by causing bile to be fed to animals or led back to the duodenum from a fistula, the percentage of solids in the bile excreted is at once raised.

The Bile-Expelling Mechanism.—Bile is secreted particularly during the digestion of food, but when the stomach is empty it accumulates in the gall-bladder. This it does in virtue of the pressure at which it is secreted and because the sphincter of Oddi, at the opening of the common bile-duct into the duodenum, is closed while the gall-bladder is relaxed. When food passes through the pylorus the peristaltic waves pass over the duodenum, the sphincter of Oddi at the opening of the bile duct relaxes, and the gall-bladder and large ducts contract, driving out the accumulated bile. In cases of obstruction of the bile-duct by a gall-stone, excessive action of the plain muscle of these parts attempting to drive down the stone causes the intense pain of biliary colic.

Most purgatives, *e.g.* calomel and magnesium sulphate, stimulate the bile-expelling mechanism and consequently the fæces becomes dark from the presence of bile pigment less altered than stercobilin. When it is desired to obtain samples of bile through the duodenal tube, a meal of cream and egg yolk is given to cause the gall-bladder to contract.

The patency of bile passages may be studied by means of X-rays. A dye, sodium tetriodophenolphthalein, opaque to X-rays, is eliminated in the bile after intravenous injection, and its excretion may be hastened by giving the patient a quantity of cream and egg yolk. The X-ray shadow of the gall-bladder becomes more and more dense for some time after the period of maximum excretion of the dye, because of concentration of the opaque dye in the stored bile. Moreover, there is evidence that the gall-bladder absorbs some of the lipides of bile; this organ may therefore be of importance in regulating the amount of cholesterol leaving the body *via* the bile.

The Functions of Bile.—Bile is doubtless, to a certain extent, an excretion. Its principal action is as a coadjutor to the pancreatic juice (especially in the digestion of fat). In some animals it has a feeble diastatic power.

Bile is said to be a natural antiseptic, lessening the putrefactive processes in the intestine. This is very doubtful. Though the bile

salts are weak antiseptics, the bile itself is readily putrescible, and the power it has of diminishing putrescence in the intestine is due chiefly to the fact that by increasing absorption it lessens the amount of putrescible matter in the bowel

When the bile meets the chyme the turbidity of the latter is increased owing to the precipitation of unpeptonised protein This is an action due to the bile salts, and it has been surmised that this conversion of the chyme into a more viscid mass serves to hinder its progress through the intestines, it clings to the intestinal wall, thus allowing absorption to take place Bile stimulates peristalsis in the *large* intestine

Bile is alkaline, it therefore assists the pancreatic juice in neutralising the chyme that leaves the stomach It assists the absorption of fats It is also a solvent of fatty acids and cholesterol The latter may be precipitated from solution by the products of bacterial growth and this gives rise to the formation of gall-stones

CHAPTER XXXVI

THE URINARY APPARATUS

THE urinary apparatus consists of the kidneys, from each of which a tube called the *ureter* leads to the bladder, where the urine is temporarily stored, from the bladder a duct called the *urethra* leads to the exterior

The Kidneys are situated in the lumbar region of the abdomen on either side of the vertebral column behind the peritoneum In man each is about 4 inches long, and weighs about 4½ oz

Structure—The kidney is covered by a fibrous capsule, which is slightly attached at its inner surface to the proper substance of the organ by means of very fine bundles of areolar tissue and minute blood-vessels

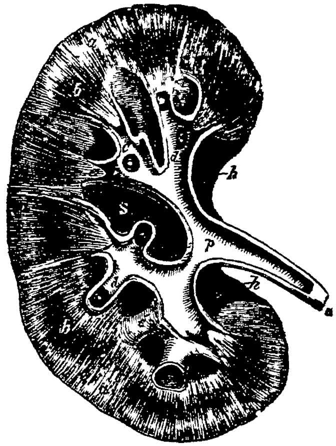


FIG 205—Plan of a longitudinal section through the pelvis and substance of the right kidney, ½ *a*, the cortical substance, *b*, *b*, broad part of the pyramids of Malpighi, *c*, *c*, the divisions of the pelvis named calyces, laid open, *c'*, one of those unopened, *d*, summit of the pyramid projecting into calyces, *e*, *e*, section of the narrow part of two pyramids near the calyces, *p*, pelvis or enlarged portion of the ureter within the kidney, *u*, the ureter, *s*, the sinus, *h*, the hilus

On dividing the kidney into two equal parts by a section carried through its long convex border, it is seen to be composed of two portions, called *cortical* (external) and *medullary* (internal), the latter is composed of about a dozen conical bundles of urinary tubules, each bundle forming what is called a *pyramid* The upper part of the *ureter* is dilated into the *pelvis*, and this, again, after separating into two or three principal divisions, is finally subdivided into still smaller portions, varying in number from about 8 to 12, called *calyces* Each of these little calyces or cups receives the pointed extremity or *papilla* of a pyramid

The kidney is a compound tubular gland, and both its cortical and medullary portions are composed of tubes, the *tubuli uriniferi*, bound together by connective tissue

In the pyramids the tubes are straight—uniting to form larger tubes as they descend from the cortical portions—while in the latter region they are convoluted But in the *boundary zone* between cortex and medulla, small collections of straight tubes called *medullary rays* project into the cortical region

Each begins in the cortex as a dilatation, called the *capsule of Bowman* *, this encloses a tuft or glomerulus of capillaries, called a *Malpighian corpuscle* The tubule leaves the capsule by a *neck*, and then becomes convoluted (*first convoluted tubule*), but soon after becomes nearly straight or slightly spiral (*spiral tubule*), then rapidly narrowing, it passes down into the medulla as the *descending tubule of Henle*, this turns round, forming a loop (*loop of Henle*), and passes up to the cortex again as the *ascending tubule of Henle* It then becomes larger and irregularly zigzag (*zigzag tubule*) and again convoluted (*second convoluted tubule*) Eventually it narrows into a *junctional tubule*, which joins a straight or *collecting tubule* This passes straight through the medulla, where it joins with others to form one of the *ducts of Bellini* that open at the apex of the pyramid These parts are all shown in fig 206

In the *capsule*, the epithelium is flattened and reflected over the glomerulus

In the *neck* the epithelium is still flattened, but in some animals, such as frogs, where the neck is longer, the epithelium is ciliated

In the *first convoluted* and *spiral* tubules, it is thick, and the cells show a fibrillated structure, except around the nucleus, where the protoplasm is granular The cells interlock laterally and are difficult to isolate In the *narrow descending tubule of Henle* and in *the loop* itself, the cells are clear and flattened and have a considerable lumen, in the *ascending limb* they again become striated and nearly fill the tubule In the *zigzag* and *second convoluted* tubules the fibrillations become even more marked The *junctional* tubule has a large lumen, and is lined by clear flattened cells, the *collecting* tubules and *ducts of Bellini* are lined by clear cubical or columnar cells

The extent of the zone of clear cells in the loop of Henle varies a good deal in different animals, a diminution of this part of the tubule lessens the length of the total loop, in most animals there is an admixture of long and short loops, but the proportion of the two varies greatly in different parts of the animal kingdom

Blood-vessels of Kidney —The renal artery enters the kidney at the hilus, and divides into branches that pass towards the cortex, then turn over and form incomplete arches in the region between cortex and medulla From these arches vessels pass to the surface which are called the *interlobular arteries*, they give off vessels at

* In his original paper Bowman says that this capsule was first described by Muller who did not then recognise its exact connections with the tubules

right angles, which are the *afferent vessels of the glomeruli*, a glomerulus is made up of capillaries, as previously stated From each a smaller vessel (*the efferent vessel of the glomerulus*) passes out,

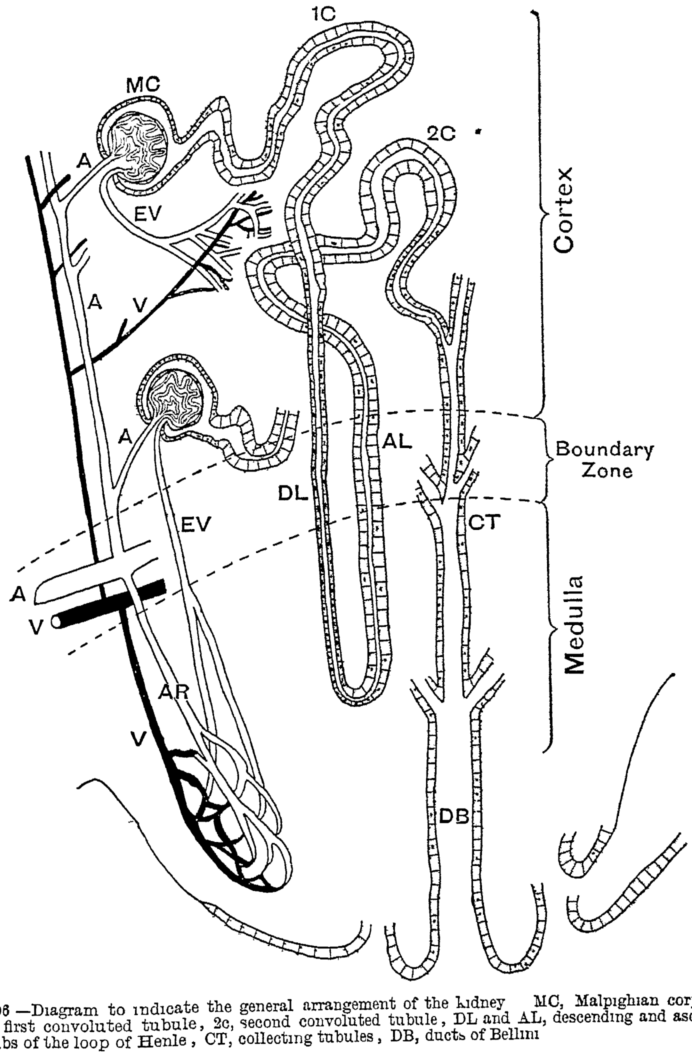


FIG 206 —Diagram to indicate the general arrangement of the kidney MC, Malpighian corpuscle, 1c, first convoluted tubule, 2c, second convoluted tubule, DL and AL, descending and ascending limbs of the loop of Henle, CT, collecting tubules, DB, ducts of Bellini

and like a portal vessel on a small scale, breaks up once more into capillaries which ramify between the convoluted tubules Recent work suggests that the arteries unite to form veins (*interlobular*

S

veins) which accompany the interlobular arteries, they pass to venous arches, parallel to, but more complete than, the corresponding arterial arches, they ultimately unite to form the renal vein that leaves the hilus These veins receive also others which have a stellate arrangement near the capsule (*venæ stellulæ*)

The medulla is supplied with pencils of fine straight arterioles which arise from the arterial arches They are called *arteriæ rectæ* The efferent vessels of the glomeruli nearest the medulla may also break up into similar vessels which are called *false arteriæ rectæ* The veins (*venæ rectæ*) take a similar course and empty themselves into the venous arches In the boundary zone groups of *vasa recta* alternate with groups of tubules, and give it a striated appearance

The Ureters —The duct of each kidney, or *ureter*, is a tube about the size of a goose-quill, and from twelve to sixteen inches in length, which, continuous above with the pelvis, ends below by perforating obliquely the walls of the bladder, and opening on its internal surface

It is constructed of three coats (*a*) an outer *fibrous* coat, (*b*) a middle *muscular coat*, and (*c*) a *mucous membrane* continuous with that of the pelvis above, and of the urinary bladder below, it is composed of areolar tissue lined by transitional epithelium

The Urinary Bladder is pyriform, its widest part, which is situate above and behind, is termed the *fundus*, and the narrow constricted portion, by which it becomes continuous with the urethra, is called its *cervix* or *neck*

It is constructed of four coats—*serous*, *muscular*, *areolar*, or *submucous*, and *mucous* The circular muscle-fibres are especially developed around the neck of the organ and form the *sphincter vesicæ* The *mucous membrane* is like that of the ureters It is provided with mucous glands, which are most numerous near the neck of the bladder

The bladder is well provided with *blood- and lymph-vessels*, and with *nerves* The latter consist of branches from the sacral and hypogastric plexuses Ganglion cells are found, here and there, on the course of the nerve-fibres

The Urethra —This occupies the centre of the corpus spongiosum in the male As it passes through the prostate it is lined by transitional, but elsewhere by columnar epithelium, except near the orifice, where the epithelium is stratified like the epidermis, with which it becomes continuous The female urethra has stratified epithelium in its lower half and transitional above The epithelium rests on a vascular corium, and this is covered by submucous tissue containing an inner longitudinal and an outer circular muscular layer Outside this a plexus of veins passes insensibly into the surrounding erectile tissue

Into the urethra open a number of oblique recesses or *lacunæ*, a number of small mucous glands (glands of Littré), two compound racemose glands (Cowper's glands), the glands of the prostate, and the vas or ductus deferens *The prostate*, which surrounds the commencement of the male urethra, is a muscular and glandular mass Its glands are tubular and lined by columnar epithelium, their secretion dilutes the semen Very little is known of the function of the prostate, it often enlarges and becomes calcareous in old age, and gives rise to discomfort and difficulty in micturition. Its removal in these circumstances may be a most beneficial operation

The Function of the Kidney

The function of the kidneys is to separate the urinary constituents from the blood, and by this means the blood is maintained of constant composition The kidney cells are remarkably sensitive, so that alterations in the composition of the blood which are too slight to be detected by chemical analysis (such as an increase of water or of chlorides after a meal) are felt by the kidney, and increased secretion (diuresis) or change in chemical composition occurs Some urinary constituents are practically entirely removed by the kidney, urea is an example of this class In other cases excess beyond a certain percentage is removed from the blood, sodium chloride is an instance of these The co-operation of the kidneys with the lungs in the maintenance of the normal blood-reaction is considered later

Although the glandular epithelium of the convoluted tubules is *par excellence* the secreting mechanism of the kidney, much difference of opinion exists about the part played by each of the several units in the histological complex we have described, and this is especially the case in relation to that unique structure, the glomerulus We have seen that the efferent vessel of each glomerulus has a smaller calibre than the afferent vessel, and this produces high pressure in the glomerular capillaries The efferent vessel, moreover, resembles an arteriole in its abundance of muscular tissue, and this maintains the high intra-glomerular blood-pressure This arrangement led Ludwig to the conception that the glomerulus is a filter, and the filter theory has formed the basis of much subsequent work, and of numerous theories

It is impossible in a question upon which physiologists are so divided, to make a complete statement of the case which will meet with universal acceptance, and before we attempt to consider the function of this or that type of cell in the kidney, let us see what can be laid down in relation to the physiology of the kidney as a whole

determined, we can arrive at the amount of energy used up by a knowledge of the heat produced by the decomposition of this amount of kidney material

The practical importance of these considerations to the physician lies in the fact that the expenditure of energy involves combustion, and combustion demands oxygen For this reason, if for no other, an efficient supply of oxygen, that is, an efficient circulation of blood, is essential to a healthy kidney Renal inefficiency may be secondary to cardiac disease which will therefore require primary attention. Again, the physician may endeavour, with a certain measure of success, to decrease the work which falls upon the kidney, by transferring the excretory function as far as possible to the skin This may be accomplished by stimulating the skin to action by hot-air baths, or even more successfully by sending the patient to a hot, dry climate

Having in this way considered the kidney as a whole, we must next consider the function of the different types of cell found in the kidney tubule, including the capsule of Bowman in that expression

A complete exposition would involve for each type of cell a statement of (1) which urinary constituent traverses its protoplasm, (2) the mechanism, whether secretory or physical diffusion or filtration, by which the constituent is propelled, and (3) the direction in which it goes, whether from the blood to the urine, or from the urine to the blood.

Fortunately, however, it is not necessary to discuss the matter quite so exhaustively, for certain possibilities have never been advanced, and so can be put on one side For instance, no one has ever suggested that the thick glandular cells of the tubules allow materials to pass through them by physical diffusion, here undoubtedly, we have to deal with cellular activity Again, the direction of flow through the capsule of Bowman is undoubtedly from the blood to the urine, and the passage of water in the opposite direction, if it does occur at all, is limited to certain regions of the tubule itself

Our problem, therefore, is simplified, and the questions remaining are (1) whether the flow in the glomeruli is due to physical or to physiological (secretory) processes, (2) what evidence exists of secretory action in the tubules, and (3) whether reabsorption of fluid occurs in the tubules

The Function of the Glomeruli.

In relation to the first of these points we may ask the preliminary question, Is there any evidence of physical diffusion or filtration in the kidney? or, to put it another way, is there any evidence of a urinary flow without the performance of work on the part of the

kidney cells? It will be understood that filtration could not alter the composition of the fluid as regards its salts

The answer to this question is in the affirmative, since the appropriate injection into the circulation of Ringer's fluid causes a copious flow of urine which is in its composition virtually Ringer's fluid On physico-chemical grounds such a flow would not necessarily demand work on the part of the kidney cells, and as a matter of fact, estimation of the oxygen used during such excretion reveals no measurable rise in the amount of work performed

The importance of changes in the circulation is still further accentuated by the fact that the arterial pressure appears to exercise a direct effect upon the volume of urine secreted by the kidney In a general sense, those forms of experimental procedure which increase the volume of the kidney, as measured by the oncometer, increase also the flow of urine The oncometer is a plethysmograph adapted to the shape of the kidney Such changes are illustrated in the following table —

Procedure	General blood pressure	Renal vessels	Kidney volume	Urinary flow
Division of spinal cord in neck	Falls to 40 mm	Relaxed	Shrinks	Ceases
Stimulation of cord	Rises	Constricted	Shrinks	Diminished
Stimulation of cord after section of renal nerves	Rises	Passively dilated	Swells	Increased
Stimulation of renal nerves	Unaffected	Constricted	Shrinks	Diminished
Stimulation of splanchnic nerve	Rises	Constricted	Shrinks	Diminished
Injection of normal saline	Rises	Dilated	Swells	Increased
Hæmorrhage	Falls	Constricted	Shrinks	Diminished

Although results with the oncometer are liable to be complicated by the peculiar vascular mechanism of the kidney and the presence of urine, we are justified in concluding that pronounced changes in the size of the kidney are of vascular origin, and they furnish the best index we have of the pressure of the blood in the capillaries They give no indication of the *rate* of blood-flow through the organ which is an altogether different thing

The general relationship shown in the above table between the pressure of blood in the kidney capillaries and the volume

of urine secreted, points also to the possibility that under normal conditions filtration is a factor in urine formation The cells of Bowman's capsule act like a semi-permeable membrane allowing normally only crystalloids to pass through The filtration is counteracted to some degree by the osmotic pressure of the blood which, if unduly high, causes the production of urine to cease, *e g* during severe sweating or diarrhœa

The general appearance of the capsular epithelium resembles that lining a lymph space, and some morphologists hold the view that each capsule is in development part of the peritoneum, whilst others regard it as part of the kidney tubule It is possible

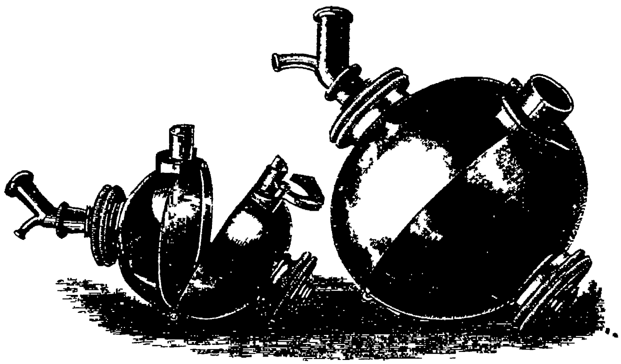


FIG 207 —Oncometers for kidneys of different sizes

that the glomerulus has other functions besides that of a filter Brodie, for instance, suggested that its main, if not its only use is that of a driving force to propel the secreted urine along the tubule, the resistance of which is very great, he invented models which demonstrated that pulsations of the kind alleged to occur in the glomeruli will drive fluid along a tube, he further supported this theory by the observation that the maximum pressure in the ureter as measured by a manometer is usually at least 30 to 44 mm of mercury less than the arterial blood-pressure, and is probably equal to the pressure in the glomerular capillaries But these views have not been fully accepted by the majority of physiologists

Function of the Tubules

Reabsorption —One of the great historic theories was that of Carl Ludwig, who, because of the difference in the pressure in the capillaries of the glomeruli and the tubules, imagined that the urine filtered off at the glomerulus becomes more concentrated as it

descends the tubules and that the work of the cells in the tubules is to reabsorb the water and pass it back into the blood

Many modern workers, particularly Cushny, have supported this theory, with, however, the important difference that the reabsorption process was held to be a vital and not a physical process Cushny pointed out in reply to an old criticism of Heidenhain, who drew attention to the amount of reabsorption required, that even although such absorption involved 70 litres of water per day, the amount absorbed per 3 cm of tubule did not amount to 1 4 mg of water per hour More recently it has, however, been pointed out that since much of the water of the blood is adsorbed on protein, much less may be filtered off and require to be reabsorbed than was previously imagined The most important evidence in favour of the reabsorption hypothesis is that of Richards and Wearn, who succeeded in passing, under the microscope, a cannula into the capsule of Bowman in a frog's kidney and in obtaining a sample of glomerular filtrate This fluid contained more sugar and water than is found in normal urine At the same time it is difficult to explain the following experiment of Brodie on the reabsorption hypothesis

If the pressure of urine in the ureter is artificially raised by partially blocking it, absorption of water back into the blood ought to be increased, but, as a matter of fact, this does not take place, but the exact contrary, for the flow of urine invoked by the injection of sodium sulphate is more abundant from the kidney with the partially blocked ureter, than in the other kidney which serves as a control Cushny, however, pointed out that this diuresis may be due to a reflex vasodilatation in the kidney, and supported his view by the fact that on the side with the more abundant urine the chloride was higher, as would be expected if the chloride was normally reabsorbed

Secretion.—The other classical view was that of Bowman, formulated long before many of the experiments were carried out It was founded mainly as a deduction from anatomical structure, namely, the histological appearance of the epithelial cells which line the tubules, and the double vascular supply which in the frog indicates that the work of the tubule is distinct from that of the glomerulus He considered that the cells lining the capsule have much the same function as those lining a lymph space, and that it is the glandular epithelium of the tubules which secretes the nitrogenous constituents of the urine

The following experiments, among others, support this view —

(*a*) In frogs the glomeruli can be cut out of action by ligaturing the renal arteries, the kidney is then supplied only by the renal portal vein, a vessel which goes to the tubules only If urea is then injected under the skin, a secretion of urine occurs, which, though scanty in amount, is peculiarly rich in urea Urea, therefore,

in the frog, is secreted by the epithelium of the tubules In order to obtain this result, the kidney must receive also sufficient oxygen for the maintenance of the functional activity of its cells, as the arterial supply is cut off by ligature of the renal arteries, this must be accomplished in some other way, for instance, by keeping the frog during the experiment in an atmosphere of pure oxygen

(*b*) The same result is reached in the frog in another way The renal portal system of the frog's kidney may be artificially perfused with oxygenated Ringer's solution, the renal arteries as before being ligatured, if certain diuretics are added to the solution (caffeine, urea, phloridzin, sodium sulphate, etc), these induce secretion which is accompanied by a marked increase in the oxygen consumption of the kidney

(*c*) One of the more important recent observations is that of Starling and Verney, that in a kidney perfused from a heart-lung preparation, the proportion excreted, per unit of time, of urea (and sulphate) goes down while chlorides and water go up if the function of the tubules is impaired by cyanides which cut down oxidation processes in cells This decrease in the amount of urea in unit time cannot be explained except on the view that the tubules normally secrete urea and sulphate, similarly the increase in chlorides in unit time is only intelligible on the hypothesis that chlorides are normally reabsorbed

(*d*) During the excretion of dyes, *e g* sulph-indigotate of soda, the colour of the dye is seen intensely in those cells of the tubules which bear the impress of secreting cells, whereas it may be absent from the cells of Bowman's capsule (Heidenhain)

Our own view is that although active secretion on the part of the glomerular cells has not been proved to exist, the possibility cannot be altogether denied, but our bias is definitely in favour of the physical or filtration hypothesis It further seems likely that some parts of the tubules may secrete, as suggested by Bowman, while some may reabsorb, as considered by Ludwig—with the difference, however, that one must consider that the kidney mechanisms are vital and not mechanical as the older observers originally thought This view is supported by the fact that in disease it is found that the kidney may lose the power to concentrate certain of the blood constituents and not necessarily others

Extirpation of the Kidneys

Extirpation of one kidney for tuberculosis, etc, is a common operation. It is not followed by any untoward result The remaining kidney, if healthy, enlarges and does the work previously shared between the two

Extirpation of both kidneys is fatal, the urea, etc, accumulate in the blood, and the animal dies in a few days, uræmic convulsions do not usually occur in such experiments

Ligature of both renal arteries amounts to the same thing as extirpation of the kidneys, and leads to the same result If the ligature is released the kidney after a time again sets to work, but the urine secreted at first is albuminous, owing to the epithelium having been impaired by being deprived for a time of its oxygen supply

The Control of Kidney Secretion

Unfortunately we have very little exact information on this subject, but on account of the nerve supply of the kidney we must assume that there may be considerable nervous control of urinary secretion

The Nerves of the Kidney.—These are derived from the renal plexus of each side The renal plexus consists of both medullated and non-medullated nerve-fibres, with collections of ganglion cells Fibres from the anterior roots of the eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth thoracic nerves (in the dog) pass into this plexus They are both vasoconstrictor and vasodilator in function. The nerve-cells on the course of the constrictor fibres are situated in the cœliac, mesenteric, and renal ganglia, the nerve-cells on the course of the dilator fibres are placed in the cœliac plexus and renal ganglia The vagus also sends branches to the renal plexus (Cunningham) We have, at present, no knowledge of true secretory nerves to the kidney, and the amount of urine is influenced, to a certain extent at any rate, by the blood-pressure in its capillaries The amount, however, of urine does not depend wholly on the height of the blood-pressure, and one very striking fact in this relation may be mentioned now,—namely, that if the blood-pressure is increased without allowing the blood to flow, the amount of urine formed is not increased, this can be done by ligaturing the renal vein, the blood-pressure within the kidney then rises enormously, but the flow of urine stops

The fact that the diuresis produced by the ingestion of a given amount of water is reduced by exercise (Pembrey), taken together with the fact that stimulation of the splanchnic nerve diminishes the flow of urine, appears to indicate that under conditions of sympathetic stimulation generally the activities of the kidney, like those of the splanchnic area, are diminished Sensory stimulation and the application of cold to the skin* (Wertheimer and Delezenne) also *reduce* kidney secretion There must be reciprocal control of the excretions of fluid by the skin and by the kidney, but how far

* This statement does not affect the fact that in cold weather more urine is secreted.

this depends on the concentration of the blood we do not know The concentration of the blood may be wholly responsible

It is evident that the pituitary body is also concerned with kidney secretion, since the injection of an extract of the posterior lobe of that organ causes a reduction of urinary flow in unanæsthetised man and use is made of this inaction in the treatment of diabetes insipidus, a condition of polyuria without excess of sugar in the urine. Starling and Verney have shown that apparently the pituitary controls the excretion of the chlorides and thus indirectly affects the elimination of water

Kidney Efficiency

The efficiency of the kidney may be judged conveniently by its power to concentrate urea (see p 564) It appears that this power runs parallel with its capability of excreting dyes such as indigo-carmine and phenolsulphonephthalein The dye is injected intravenously and 70 per cent is normally excreted in two hours Since anæsthesia may cause slight renal impairment to become serious, it is often important to perform the test prior to an operation Such tests are also carried out when attempts are being made to determine how far kidney disease has progressed, and what the future of the patient may be

Passage of Urine into Bladder and Micturition

As each portion of urine is secreted it propels that which is already in the uriniferous tubes onwards into the pelvis of the kidney Thence, through the ureter, the urine passes into the bladder, into which its rate and mode of entrance have been watched by means of the cystoscope, or in patients in whom the lower anterior abdominal wall and the anterior wall of the bladder is absent The urine does not enter the bladder at any regular rate, nor is there a synchronism in its movement through the two ureters During fasting, two or three drops enter the bladder every minute, each drop as it enters first raises up the little papilla through which the ureter opens, and then passes slowly through its orifice, which at once closes again like a sphincter Its flow is aided by the peristaltic contractions of the ureters, and is increased in deep inspiration, by straining, in active exercise, and in the first fifteen or twenty minutes after a meal The urine is prevented from regurgitation into the ureters by the mode in which these pass through the walls of the bladder, namely, by their lying between half and three-quarters of an inch between the muscular and mucous coats before

they turn rather abruptly forward, and open through the latter into the interior of the bladder.

The desire to void the urine arises from a sense of fullness of the bladder, and the increase of pressure there is an important factor in the causation of the reflex. In the dog's bladder a pressure of 20 cms. of water sets the reflex in action (Mosso). But other factors are concerned, for the desire is often out of proportion to the distension of the bladder; of these factors the tonus (Sherrington's "postural condition") of the bladder, irritability of sensory nerve-endings and of nerve-centres, and the reaction and composition of urine may be mentioned.

The afferent impulse so produced finds its way to the sacral region of the cord chiefly through the second and third sacral nerves, and stimulates the so-called *vesical centre*, which is situated in the grey matter there; the reflex takes place perfectly well in an animal whose spinal cord has been cut across as low as the lower part of the lumbar region. It has therefore been proved that the reflex centre must be situated below this point. In such animals there is no consciousness of the afferent impulse, and the same is true for the human subject with corresponding injuries to the spinal cord. Such animals or men have no voluntary control over the act; it occurs in them purely reflexly.

The efferent nerves to the bladder fall into two sets:—(1) *The nervi erigentes;* these are undoubtedly the more important of the two. Stimulation of these nerves causes contraction of the bladder, and relaxation of its sphincter, the two necessary acts by which the urine is expelled. (2) *The hypogastric nerves;* pre-ganglionic fibres leave the cord in the lumbar region, pass thence to the inferior mesenteric ganglion, from the cells of which the post-ganglionic fibres ultimately reach the bladder by the hypogastric nerves. Much difference of opinion has been expressed regarding the action of these nerves, but in most animals they cause constriction of the sphincter, and in some cases relaxation of the bladder walls also. The hypogastric nerves would therefore appear to be the functional antagonists of the nervi erigentes. In many animals the bladder constantly exhibits rhythmic contractions.

In theory, therefore, micturition is a reflex action; but in practice it is a voluntary act, and the voluntary muscles of the abdomen press upon the bladder and assist its emptying. It is only in injury or disease of the spinal cord already alluded to that the voluntary factor is absent.

The simplest view to take of voluntary micturition is the following:—The will causes the abdominal muscles to contract, and the increased pressure on the bladder so produced is the signal for the reflex to occur. It is further probable that the mere thought of

micturition may influence the sacral vesical centre, and heighten its sensitiveness, while the passage of a drop of urine into the upper part of the urethra causes an intense desire to micturate

If urine is voided too frequently, the cause may be (1) *peripheral*, as in inflammation of the bladder here the organ is unduly sensitive to the pressure of fluid, or (2) *central*, as in cases of fear and excitement, here the sensibility of the vesical centre is heightened In children where control of the vesical centre is often not fully established while they are young, frequent and involuntary micturition may occur

Deficiency of power to expel the urine may be due to actual obstruction, from an enlarged prostate or a stricture in the urethra It may also be due to weakness of the bladder, as in cases where the organ is much distended and its musculature attenuated, this condition is often secondary to obstruction produced by stricture, or other causes Paralysis of the nervous mechanism of the bladder may also lead to retention of urine

CHAPTER XXXVII

THE URINE

Quantity.—A man of average weight and height produces from **1400 to 1600 c.c.**, or about 50 fluid oz. daily. The quantity, however, may vary enormously from day to day and from hour to hour according to the amount of fluid taken and to the amount of water excreted in other ways. If sweating is increased the quantity of the urine is correspondingly reduced. When metabolism is reduced to a minimum during sleep very little urine is secreted.

Colour.—This is some shade of yellow which varies considerably with the concentration of the urine. It is due to a mixture of pigments; of these the most abundant is a yellow one, originally named *urochrome* by Thudichum.

Urobilin.—The bile pigment in the intestines is converted into stercobilin, most of which leaves the body with the fæces; some, however, is reabsorbed and is excreted into the urine, and is then called urobilin. It is normally present in small quantities only. A chromogen or mother-substance called urobilinogen, which by oxidation—for instance, standing exposed to the air—is converted into the pigment proper, is more abundant than urobilin itself. In certain diseased conditions the amount of urobilin is considerably increased.

Uroerythrin, the colouring matter of pink urate sediments, appears to be a small but constant constituent of urine, but its origin is unknown. Normal urine contains also a trace of *hæmatoporphyrin*, and the amount is increased in certain diseased states.

Reaction.—The reaction of normal urine is acid; this is due mainly to acid salts, of which acid sodium phosphate is the most important. The acidity of the urine is normally from ***p*H 7 to *p*H 5.5**. It is more acid on an acid-producing diet such as meat, but the acidity increases after exercise and when abnormal acids are taken or are produced during metabolism as in diabetes. Under certain conditions the urine becomes less acid and even alkaline; the most important of these are as follows:—

1. During digestion and in the forenoon. Here there is a formation of free acid in the stomach, and a corresponding liberation of bases in the blood, which, passing into the urine, diminish its acidity, or even render it alkaline. This is called *the alkaline tide*

Leathes considers that respiration is more important than gastric secretion in the forenoon in producing the change During sleep respiration is comparatively inactive, hence carbon dioxide accumulates, and the resulting rise in H-ion concentration is reflected in the urine With the activity associated with daytime this effect passes off

2 A diet of fruit and vegetables contains an excess of salts of organic acids, *e g* citric, tartaric, which are oxidised to carbonates and make the urine alkaline Whole cereals, *e g* rice, like meat cause an acid urine Whenever the acidity of the urine changes there is usually a change in the ammonia-urea ratio

Specific Gravity —This varies inversely as the quantity of urine passed under normal conditions from **1015 to 1025** A specific gravity below 1010 should excite suspicion of hydruria or diabetes insipidus, one over 1030, of a febrile condition, or of diabetes mellitus, in which it may rise to 1050 The specific gravity has, however, been known to sink as low as 1002 (after large potations, *urina potus*), or to rise as high as 1035 (after great sweating and after sleep) in perfectly healthy persons

Composition —The following table gives the average amounts of the urinary constituents passed by a man taking an ordinary diet containing about 100 grammes of protein in the twenty-four hours, but it must be realised that many of the constituents may vary appreciably from hour to hour —

	Grammes		Grammes
Total quantity of urine	1500 00	Sulphuric acid	2 0
Water	1440 00	Ammonia	0 65
Solids	60 00	Creatinine	0 9
Urea	35 00	Chlorine	11 0
Uric acid	0 75	Potassium	2 5
Hippuric acid	0 7	Sodium	5 5
Sodium chloride	16 5	Calcium	0 26
Phosphoric acid	3 5	Magnesium	0 21

The most abundant constituents of the urine are water, urea, and sodium chloride In the foregoing table one must not be misled by seeing the names of the acids and metals separated The acids and bases are combined to form salts, such as urates, chlorides, etc

It is important to note that the constituents of urine, with the exception of hippuric acid, and possibly some of the ammonia, are not formed by the kidney but that the kidney merely excretes them from the blood.

Urea.

The origin of urea from amino-acids has already been dealt with (p 519) The urea arising from the exogenous metabolism of protein is normally greater than that arising from endogenous metabolism, and varies in quantity directly with the protein of the diet In a man in a state of nitrogenous equilibrium, taking daily 100 to 120

grammes of protein in his food, the quantity of urea secreted daily is about **33 to 35 grammes** (500 grains) The percentage in human urine would then be **2 per cent** , but this also varies, because the concentration of the urine varies considerably in health The excretion of urea is usually at a maximum three hours after a meal, especially after a meal rich in proteins In those who adopt a reduced protein diet, Folin has shown that the decrease in urinary nitrogen falls mainly on the urea fraction, and in some cases the urea excreted accounted for only 66 per cent of the total nitrogen The other nitrogenous katabolites of the urine alter comparatively little under such conditions, and the creatinine in particular remains remarkably constant in amount

The time-honoured structural formula of urea as carbamide $CO\langle{}^{NH_2}_{NH_2}$ may require to be replaced, according to the work of Werner, by the cyclic formula $HN{:}C\langle{}^{NH_3}_{O}\rangle$ *i e* iso-carbamide, for reasons already discussed in relation to the origin of urea Urea has the same empirical formula as ammonium cyanate $(NH_4)CNO$, from which it was first prepared synthetically by Wohler in 1828 Since then it has been prepared synthetically in other ways Wohler's observation derives interest from the fact that this was the first organic substance ever prepared synthetically by chemists * It is readily soluble both in water and alcohol it has a saltish taste, and is neutral to litmus paper.

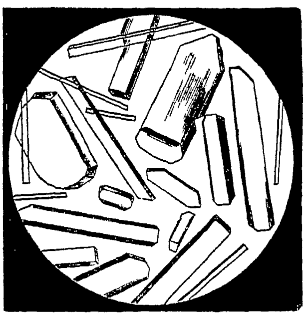


FIG 208 —Crystals of urea

The form of its crystals is shown in fig 208 When treated with nitric acid, nitrate of urea (CON_2H_4 HNO_3) is formed, this crystallises in octahedra, lozenge-shaped tablets, or hexagons When treated with oxalic acid, prismatic crystals of urea oxalate (CON_2H_4 $H_2C_2O_4 + H_2O$) are formed These crystals may be readily obtained by adding excess of the respective acids to urine which has been concentrated to a third or a quarter of its bulk

Under the influence of a micro-organism, the *micrococcus ureæ*, which grows readily in stale urine, urea takes up water, and is converted into ammonium carbonate [$CON_2H_4 + 2H_2O = (NH_4)_2CO_3$] Hence the ammoniacal odour of putrid urine

By means of nitrous acid, urea is broken up into carbonic acid,

* Meldola has pointed out that the English chemist Henry Hennell prepared alcohol from olefiant gas simultaneously with Wohler's synthesis of urea The honour of founding the science of organic chemistry must, therefore, be shared between the two men

water, and nitrogen, $CON_2H_4+2HNO_2=CO_2+3H_2O+2N_2$ The evolution of gas bubbles which takes place on the addition of fuming nitric acid * may be used as a test for urea

The main reaction between sodium hypobromite and urea may be represented thus —

$$\underset{\text{[Urea]}}{CON_2H_4} + \underset{\text{[Sodium hypobromite]}}{3NaBrO} = \underset{\text{[Carbon dioxide]}}{CO_2} + \underset{\text{[Nitrogen]}}{N_2} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{2H_2O} + \underset{\text{[Sodium bromide]}}{3NaBr}$$

Side reactions of a complex nature also occur, and a small amount (less than 1 per cent) of carbon monoxide is mixed with the nitrogen But the reaction may be used as a rough-and-ready method for estimating urea (see p 579)

Uræmia —The older authors considered that urea was formed in the kidneys, just as they also erroneously thought that carbonic acid was formed in the lungs Prevost and Dumas were the first to show that after complete extirpation of the kidneys the formation of urea goes on, and that it accumulates in the blood and tissues Similarly, in those cases of disease in which the kidneys cease work, urea is still formed and accumulates This condition is called *uræmia*, and unless the products of nitrogenous breakdown are discharged from the body the patient dies in a condition of coma preceded by convulsions

This term was originally applied on the erroneous supposition that it is urea or some antecedent of urea which acts as the poison There is no doubt that the poison is not any constituent of normal urine, if the kidneys of an animal are extirpated, the animal dies in a few days, but there are no uræmic convulsions In man, also, if the kidneys are healthy, or approximately so, and suppression of urine occurs from the simultaneous blocking of both renal arteries by clot, or of both ureters by stones, again uræmia does not follow On the other hand, uræmia may occur even while a patient with diseased kidneys is passing a considerable amount of urine What the poison is that is responsible for the convulsions and coma is unknown It is doubtless some abnormal katabolic product, but whether this is produced by the kidney cells, or in some other part of the body, is also unknown

Urea Concentration Test (Maclean and de Wesselow) —From a study of the table on p 548 it is evident that the kidney has the power of concentrating urea This power is the basis of a useful test of kidney efficiency After the administration of 15 grammes of urea in 100 c c of water, specimens of urine are taken one and two hours afterwards, the second specimen will contain above **2 per cent urea** if the kidneys are acting normally The factor obtained by dividing the concentration of urea in the urine by that in the blood, is also an indication of the urea-concentrating power of the kidney, but the test takes longer In severe kidney disease, the figure, instead of being 90, may be reduced to 10

Kidney efficiency is also commonly judged by the power of the organ to excrete dyes These tests give a more accurate indication of the kidney efficiency than the blood urea which does not accumulate until almost three-quarters of the kidney have been destroyed by disease since the slightest accumulation merely acts as a diuretic to the remaining healthy parts

* Fuming nitric acid contains nitrous acid in solution

Ammonia

The ammonia of the urine arises from the amino portion of deaminised amino-acids A small amount reaches the kidney direct from the tissues, but the majority appears to be formed in the kidney from the breakdown of urea In man the daily amount of ammonia excreted varies **between 0 3 and 1 2 grammes** The ingestion of ammonium carbonate does not increase the amount of ammonia in the urine, but increases the amount of urea, into which substance the ammonium carbonate is easily converted But if a more stable salt, such as ammonium chloride, is given, it may appear as such in the urine Some of the ammonia may, however, be converted into urea, and the hydrochloric acid may bring about a marked acidosis (Haldane)

The Ammonia-Urea Ratio—From what has been said of urea and its relation to ammonia, it is to be expected that the more ammonia that is excreted in the urine, the less will be the urea, and vice versa Since the body normally makes use of ammonia in the neutralisation of acids, the ammonia-urea ratio then is a convenient indication of the amount of acid which has to be got rid of Normally, on a mixed diet the ratio is **about 1 50** When the production of acid is excessive, as in diabetes, excess of ammonium salts appear in the urine It appears that for the purpose of such neutralisation the kidney has the power of breaking down urea * This is shown (Benedict) by the facts that if the kidneys are removed there is a reduction of the ammonia of the blood and that there is normally more ammonia in the renal vein than in the arterial blood A diminution in the output of ammonia occurs when there is an excess of alkali in the body This takes place when alkali is administered, or on a vegetable diet A decrease in the ammonium salts is accompanied by an increased alkalinity of the urine, since more alkali or less acid phosphate is excreted

It is of interest that if ammonium chloride is given to a herbivorous animal such as a rabbit, the urinary ammonia is but little increased It reacts with sodium carbonate in the tissues, forming ammonium carbonate (which is excreted as urea) and sodium chloride Herbivora also suffer much more from, and are more easily killed by, acids than carnivora, their organisation not permitting a ready supply of ammonia to neutralise excess of acids

It is important to emphasise that all that has been said in regard to ammonia refers to urine freshly passed All urine, if allowed to stand, becomes ammoniacal, as a result of the breakdown of urea by the *micrococcus ureæ*

* This view is supported by the fact that in the acidæmia due to kidney disease the ammonia-urea ratio does not change (M'Lean)

Creatine and Creatinine

Creatine is a constant constituent of muscle, its chemical structure is very like that of arginine, it contains a urea radical, and when boiled with baryta it splits into urea and sarcosine (methyl-glycine), as shown in the following equation —

$$\underset{\text{[Creatine]}}{C_4H_9N_3O_2} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O} = \underset{\text{[Urea]}}{CON_2H_4} + \underset{\text{[Sarcosine]}}{C_3H_7NO_2}$$

Creatine is absent from normal urine, but it is present in the urine during starvation, in acute fevers, in women during involution of the uterus, in the urine of infants, and in certain other conditions in which there is rapid loss of muscular material.

Its normal fate in the body is unknown, it may be converted into urea as in the foregoing equation, but injection of creatine into the blood-stream does not cause any increase in urea formation, the creatine injected is almost wholly excreted unchanged but a proportion is stored in the muscles

It is not converted into creatinine to any great extent, but if a large quantity is ingested $\frac{1}{40}$ of the total amount appears in the urine The transformation of creatine into creatinine is shown in the following equation —

$$\underset{\text{[Creatine]}}{C_4H_9N_3O_2} - \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O} = \underset{\text{[Creatinine]}}{C_4H_7N_3O}$$

The rôle of creatine, phosphate, and phosphagen in the muscle contraction has already been discussed (*See* Chemistry of Muscle)

Creatinine is present in the urine From **0·8 to 1·3 grammes** are excreted in twenty-four hours, it is, in fact, next to urea, the most abundant nitrogenous substance found there Amid all the inconstancies of urinary composition, it appears to be the substance most constant in amount, diet and exercise having no effect on it Folin's view, that its amount is a criterion of the extent of endogenous nitrogenous metabolism, has steadily gained ground, and the work of the past few years has shown that the liver and not the muscles is the seat of its formation Some observers have supposed that certain tissue enzymes, termed creatase and creatinase, are agents in its formation and destruction, others have failed to discover the presence of these enzymes in the liver On this and on other points there are differences of opinion, but without discussing the pros and cons of minor details, the following view of Edward Mellanby may be taken as a working hypothesis of the metabolic history of the substances in question Mellanby took as his starting-point an investigation of the contradictory data relating to the proportion of creatine and creatinine in muscle, and by improved methods showed

that creatinine is never present in muscle at all, even after prolonged muscular work He then studied in the developing bird the amount of creatine at different stages, and found that it is entirely absent in the chick's musculature up to the twelfth day of incubation, after this date the liver and the muscular creatine develop *pari passu* After hatching, the liver still continues to grow rapidly, and the creatine percentage in the muscles increases also, although the development in the size of the muscles occurs very slowly This and other experiments on the injection of creatine and creatinine into the blood-stream finally led Mellanby to the following hypothesis —Certain products of protein katabolism, the nature of which is uncertain, are carried by the blood to the liver, and from these the liver forms creatinine, this is transported to the muscles and there stored as creatine, when the muscles are saturated with creatine, excess of creatinine is then excreted by the kidneys The small amount of creatinine excreted in diseases of the liver also supports the view that that organ is responsible for creatinine formation

This view explains some of our previous difficulties, but leaves unsolved the ultimate fate of the muscular creatine During muscular exercise the creatinine of the urine is increased but afterwards is equally diminished

Blood Creatinine —Normally this is **1 to 2 mg** per 100 c c but figures over 3 mg are found in kidney disease High values, over 5 mg, indicate an early death in chronic inflammation of the kidney

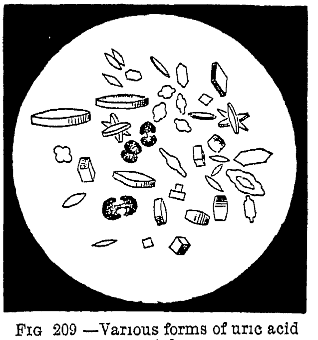


FIG 209 —Various forms of uric acid crystals

Uric Acid

Uric Acid ($C_5N_4H_4O_3$) is, in mammals, the medium by which a very small quantity of nitrogen is excreted from the body It is, however, in birds and some reptiles the principal nitrogenous constituent of their urine In an acid urine it may be precipitated, but in an alkaline urine it occurs as urates

It may be obtained from human urine by adding 5 c c of hydrochloric acid to 100 c c of the urine, and allowing the mixture to stand for twelve to twenty-four hours

The pure acid crystallises in colourless rectangular plates or prisms In striking contrast to urea it is almost an insoluble substance The forms which uric acid assumes when precipitated from human urine, either by the addition of hydrochloric acid or in certain pathological processes, are very various, the most frequent being the whetstone shape, there are also bundles of crystals resembling sheaves, barrels, and dumb-bells (see fig 209)

The **murexide** test is the principal test for uric acid The test has received

the name on account of the resemblance of the colour to the purple of the ancients, which was obtained from certain snails of the genus *Murex* It is performed as follows place a little uric acid or a urate in a capsule, add a little dilute nitric acid and evaporate to dryness A yellowish-red residue is left. Add a little ammonia carefully, and the residue turns violet, this is due to the formation of purpurate of ammonia On the addition of potash the colour becomes bluer

Urates—Uric acid does not contain the carboxyl group (COOH) which is typical of organic acids, and its reaction is neutral Nevertheless its hydrogen atoms are replaceable, and it acts therefore as an acid, and forms *biurates* ($MH\bar{U}$) In the presence of strong bases it forms neutral *urates* ($M_2\bar{U}$), which, however, only exist in the solid condition, or in the presence of strong alkali, by water they are decomposed at once into primary urate and alkali.

In the urine and in blood are biurates mixed with uric acid ($MH\bar{U}\ H_2\bar{U}$) the so-called quadriurates (Roberts) In gout the urates of the blood are increased and may be converted into less soluble isomeric forms which become deposited in the joints and other tissues

The quantity of uric acid excreted by an adult varies from **0 5 to 0 75** gramme daily

The **origin of uric acid** is dealt with under Nucleo-Protein Metabolism The acid is formed not in the kidneys, but as the result of metabolic processes occurring elsewhere, since if the kidneys are removed, uric acid continues to be formed and accumulates in the blood and organs

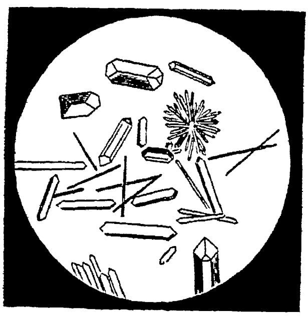


FIG 210 —Crystals of hippuric acid.

Hippuric Acid

Hippuric Acid ($C_9H_9NO_3$), combined with bases to form hippurates, is present in small quantities in human urine, but in large quantities in the urine of herbivora This is due to the food of herbivora containing substances belonging to the aromatic group—the benzoic acid series If benzoic acid is given to a man, it unites with glycine with the elimination of a molecule of water, and is excreted as hippuric acid

$$\underset{\text{[Benzoic acid]}}{C_6H_5\ COOH} + \underset{\text{[Glycine]}}{\begin{array}{l} CH_2\ NH_2 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}} = \underset{\text{[Hippuric acid]}}{\begin{array}{l} CH_2NH\ CO\ C_6H_5 \\ | \\ COOH \end{array}} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O}$$

This is a well-marked instance of synthesis carried out in the animal body, and experimental investigation shows that it is accom-

plished by the living cells of the kidney itself, for if a mixture of glycine, benzoic acid, and blood is injected through the kidney (or mixed with a minced kidney just removed from the body of an animal), hippuric acid is found to have been formed In the conversion of benzoic into hippuric acid which occurs in herbivora, the necessary glycine comes from the kidney itself

The Inorganic Constituents of Urine

The inorganic or mineral constituents of urine are chiefly chlorides, phosphates, sulphates, and carbonates, the metals with which these are in combination are sodium, potassium, ammonium, calcium, and magnesium. The total amount of these salts varies from 19 to 25 grammes daily The most abundant is sodium chloride, which averages in amount 10 to 16 grammes per diem These substances are derived from two sources—from the food, and as the result of metabolic processes

Chlorides —The chief chloride is that of sodium The ingestion of sodium chloride is followed by its appearance in the urine, some on the same day, some on the next Some is decomposed to form the hydrochloric acid of the gastric juice The salt in the body fulfils the useful office of stimulating metabolism and secretion

Sulphates —The sulphates in the urine are principally those of potassium and sodium, and arise normally from the sulphur-containing amino-acid cystine and its decomposition product ethyl mercaptan (C_2H_5SH) The sulphates vary in amount from 1 5 to 3 grammes daily

The sulphur of the proteins of the diet in passing through the liver becomes completely oxidised to form *inorganic sulphates* That however which is derived from breakdown of cystine of body proteins for the most part escapes the liver which from the circulatory point of view is parallel to the kidney and is not converted into ordinary sulphates to any great extent, but appears in the urine partly as ethereal sulphates, and partly as certain obscure but not fully oxidised sulphur compounds *, it is usually spoken of as *neutral sulphur*, which therefore, like creatinine, bears a direct relation to endogenous metabolism

The *ethereal sulphates* just mentioned form about a tenth of the total sulphates They are combinations of sulphuric acid with organic radicals, and the greater part of them originate from putrefactive changes in the intestine The chief of these ethereal sulphates are phenyl-sulphate of potassium and indoxyl-sulphate of potassium The latter originates from the indole formed in the

* These include cystine, oxyproteic acid, alloxyproteic acid, and methyl mercaptan

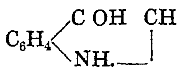
intestine, and as it yields indigo when treated with certain reagents it is sometimes called *indican*

The formation of these sulphates is important, the aromatic substances liberated by putrefactive processes in the intestine are poisonous, but their conversion into ethereal sulphates renders them harmless

The equation representing the formation of potassium phenyl-sulphate is as follows —

$$\underset{\text{[Phenol]}}{C_6H_5OH} + \underset{\text{[Potassium hydrogen sulphate.]}}{SO_2\left\langle\begin{matrix}OH\\OK\end{matrix}\right.} = \underset{\text{[Potassium phenyl sulphate]}}{SO_2\left\langle\begin{matrix}O\,C_6H_5\\OK\end{matrix}\right.} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O}$$

Indole (C_8H_7N) on absorption is converted into indoxyl —



The equation representing the formation of potassium indoxyl-sulphate is as follows —

$$\underset{\text{[Indoxyl]}}{C_8H_7NO} + \underset{\text{[Potassium hydrogen sulphate]}}{SO_2\left\langle\begin{matrix}OH\\OK\end{matrix}\right.} = \underset{\text{[Potassium indoxyl sulphate]}}{SO_2\left\langle\begin{matrix}O\,C_8H_6N\\OK\end{matrix}\right.} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{H_2O}$$

Carbonates —Carbonates and bicarbonates of sodium, calcium, magnesium, and ammonium are present only in alkaline urine They arise from the carbonates of the food, or from vegetable acids (malic, tartaric, etc) in the food They are therefore found in the urine of herbivora and vegetarians, whose urine is thus rendered alkaline Urine containing carbonates becomes, like saliva, cloudy on standing, the precipitate consisting of calcium carbonate and also phosphates

Phosphates —Two classes of phosphates occur in normal urine, but the actual salts found depend on the reaction of the urine

(1) Alkaline phosphates—that is, phosphates of sodium (abundant) and potassium (scanty)

(2) Earthy phosphates—that is, phosphates of calcium (abundant) and magnesium (scanty)

The composition of the phosphates in urine is liable to variation In acid urine the acidity is due chiefly to the acid salts, sodium dihydrogen phosphate, NaH_2PO_4, and calcium dihydrogen phosphate, $Ca(H_2PO_4)_2$

In alkaline urine the alkaline phosphates, disodium hydrogen phosphate, Na_2HPO_4, calcium hydrogen phosphate, $CaHPO_4$, and magnesium hydrogen phosphate, $MgHPO_4$, predominate, and these may be also the normal phosphates of sodium, calcium, and magnesium [Na_3PO_4, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, $Mg_3(PO_4)_2$] In neutral urine there is a mixture of the acid and alkaline salts

The earthy phosphates are precipitated by rendering the urine alkaline by ammonia In decomposing urine, ammonia is formed from the urea The phosphates are precipitated as a white creamy precipitate of —

(1) Triple phosphate or ammonio-magnesium phosphate ($NH_4MgPO_4+6H_2O$) This crystallises in "coffin-lid" crystals (see fig 211) or feathery stars

(2) Stellar phosphate, or calcium phosphate, this crystallises in star-like clusters of prisms

As a rule normal urine gives no precipitate when it is boiled, but sometimes neutral, alkaline, and occasionally faintly acid urines give a precipitate of calcium phosphate when boiled because of the dissolved CO_2 being driven off this precipitate is amorphous, and is liable to be mistaken for albumin It may be distinguished readily from albumin, as it is soluble in a few drops of acetic acid, whereas coagulated protein does not dissolve

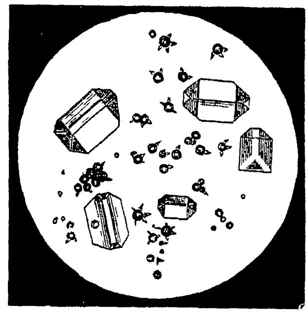


FIG 211 —Urinary sediment of triple phosphates (large prismatic crystals) and urate of ammonium, from urine which had undergone alkaline fermentation

The phosphoric acid in the urine chiefly originates from the phosphates of the food, but is partly a decomposition product of the phosphorised organic materials in the body, such as lecithin and nuclein The amount of P_2O_5 in the twenty-four hours' urine varies from 2 5 to 3 5 grammes, of which the earthy phosphates contain about half (1 to 1 5 gr) The urine also contains minute quantities of organic phosphates, for instance, glycero-phosphates

Tests for the Inorganic Salts of Urine —*Chlorides* —Acidulate with nitric acid and add silver nitrate, a white precipitate of silver chloride, soluble in ammonia, is produced The object of acidulating with nitric acid is to prevent phosphates being precipitated by the silver nitrate

Sulphates —Acidulate with hydrochloric acid, and add barium chloride A white precipitate of barium sulphate is produced Hydrochloric acid is again added first, to prevent precipitation of phosphates

Phosphates —i Add ammonia, a white crystalline precipitate of earthy (that is, calcium and magnesium) phosphates is produced This becomes more apparent on standing The alkaline (that is, sodium and potassium) phosphates remain in solution ii Mix another portion of urine with half its volume of nitric acid, add ammonium molybdate, and boil A yellow crystalline precipitate falls This test is given by both classes of phosphates

Urinary Deposits

The **formed** or **anatomical elements** may consist of blood-corpuscles, pus, mucus, epithelium cells, spermatozoa, casts of the urinary tubules, prostatic threads, fungi, and entozoa All of these, with the exception of a small quantity of spermatozoa and mucus,

which forms a flocculent cloud in the urine, are pathological, and the microscope is chiefly employed in their detection

The **chemical substances** are uric acid, urates, calcium oxalate, calcium carbonate, and phosphates Rarer forms are leucine, tyrosine, xanthine, and cystine These are of considerable importance in medicine, as their formation in the urinary passages may lead to the formation of "stone" or of "gravel," which leads to obstruction or to pain The recognition and treatment of the condition depends on the microscopical examination of the deposits We shall, however, here consider only the commoner deposits

Deposit of Uric Acid —This is a sandy reddish deposit resembling cayenne pepper, occurring in an acid urine It may be recognised by its crystalline form (fig 209, p 567) and by the murexide reaction The presence of these crystals generally indicates an increased formation of uric acid, and, if excessive, may lead to the formation of stones or calculi in the kidney and bladder

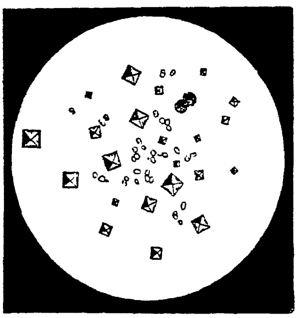


FIG 212 —Crystals of calcium oxalate

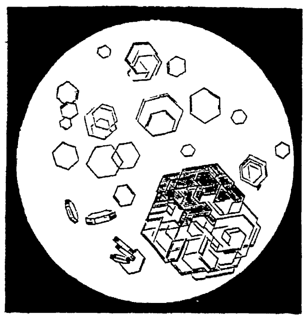


FIG 213 —Crystals of cystine.

Deposit of Urates —This "brick dust" deposit is much commoner than uric acid, and may occur in concentrated normal urine when it cools It is generally found in the concentrated urine of fevers, and there appears to be a kind of fermentation, called the acid fermentation, which occurs in the urine after it has been passed, and which leads to the same result It has a pinkish colour due to the pigment *uro-erythrin*, and dissolves upon warming the urine It is usually amorphous, but crystalline forms similar to those depicted in fig 211 may occur Crystals of calcium oxalate may be mixed with this deposit (see fig 212)

Deposit of Calcium Oxalate —This occurs in envelope crystals (octahedra) or dumb-bells It is insoluble in ammonia, and in acetic acid It is soluble with difficulty in hydrochloric acid Calcium oxalate calculi are the commonest kind of stones found in the kidney

Deposit of Cystine—Cystine ($C_6H_{12}N_2S_2O_4$) is recognised by its colourless six-sided crystals (fig 213) These are rare they occur only in acid urine, and they may form concretions or calculi Cystinuria (cystine in the urine) is hereditary

Deposit of Phosphates—These occur in alkaline urine The urine may be alkaline when passed, due to fermentative changes occurring in the bladder All urine, however, if exposed to the air (unless the air is perfectly pure, as on the top of a snow mountain), will in time become alkaline, owing to the growth of the *micrococcus ureæ* This forms ammonium carbonate from the urea

$$\underset{\text{[Urea]}}{CON_2H_4} + \underset{\text{[Water]}}{2H_2O} = \underset{\text{[Ammonium carbonate]}}{(NH_4)_2CO_3}$$

The ammonia renders the urine alkaline and precipitates the earthy phosphates

All these phosphates are dissolved by acids, such as acetic acid, without effervescence

A solution of ammonium carbonate (1 in 5) eats magnesium phosphate away at the edges it has no effect on the triple phosphate A phosphate of calcium ($CaHPO_4+2H_2O$) may occasionally be deposited in acid urine Pus in urine is apt to be mistaken for phosphates, but can be distinguished by the microscope

Deposit of Calcium Carbonate, $CaCO_3$, appears but rarely as whitish balls or biscuit-shaped bodies It is commoner in the urine of herbivora It dissolves in acetic or hydrochloric acid, with effervescence

PATHOLOGICAL URINE

Under this head we shall briefly consider only those abnormal constituents which are most frequently met with

Proteins—There is no protein in normal urine,* and the most common cause of the appearance of albumin in the urine is disease of the kidney (Bright's disease) The term "albumin" is the one used by clinical observers Properly speaking, it is a mixture of serum albumin and serum globulin

Tests—(1) *Heat*—Boil the top layer of half a test-tubeful of urine If protein is present a cloud or a denser coagulum appears The urine, if not already acid, should be previously acidified with acetic acid, as otherwise a cloud of phosphate may appear on heating because of expulsion of CO_2, the cloud of phosphate is soluble in acetic acid (Compare Pus below)

(2) *Nitric Acid* (Heller)—Run a drop of cold, concentrated nitric acid down the side of a test-tube containing a little urine If protein is present a precipitate appears round the drop

* This absolute statement is true for all practical purposes Morner, however, has stated that a trace of protein (serum albumin *plus* the protein constituent of mucin) does occur in normal urine, but the trace is negligible, many hundreds of litres of urine having to be used to obtain an appreciable quantity

(3) Salycylsulphonic acid causes a white precipitate in the cold if protein is present

Glucose—Normal urine contains no sugar or, so little that for clinical purposes it may be considered absent The conditions in which glycosuria occurs are described on p 510 Diabetic urine also contains β-hydroxybutyric acid, and may contain and yield on distillation, for reasons described in relation to the metabolism of fat (p 516), **acetone** and **aceto-acetic** or **diacetic acid** The presence of the aceto-acetic acid is specially important, and it indicates also the probable presence of β-hydroxybutyric acid The specific gravity of a urine containing sugar is high

Tests for Glucose—(1) Boil equal quantities of Fehling's or Benedict's solution and urine in separate tubes, and then add the one to the other If sugar is present a red precipitate appears See Carbohydrates

(2) The fermentation test Half fill a test-tube with the urine and add a little yeast Fill up the tube with mercury, invert in a basin of mercury, and leave it in a warm place for twenty-four hours The sugar will undergo fermentation carbonic acid gas accumulates in the tube, and the liquid no longer gives the tests for sugar, or only faintly, but gives those for alcohol instead The specific gravity falls The *phenyl-hydrazine* test may also be applied to distinguish between glucose, lactose, and pentose

The following **Fallacies** in Fehling's test should be noted —

(1) Lactose may occur in the urine of nursing mothers

(2) Fructose, pentoses, and other sugars are found but rarely Pentoses occur in certain individuals after the eating of certain fruits, apples, plums, cherries, and turnips, and sometimes after beer

(3) Glycuronates—These are present when the body is getting rid of certain abnormal substances, *e g* phenols formed from intestinal decomposition, or certain drugs, chloral, camphor, salicylates, chloroform, turpentine, morphine These substances become linked to glycuronic acid, ($C_6H_{10}O_7$), an oxidation product of glucose The terminal CHO is free and reduces the copper like glucose itself This, like the formation of ethereal sulphates, is an example of protective synthesis and appears to occur in the liver

(4) Homogentisic Acid—This occurs in the rare condition of *alkaptonuria*, which results from the faulty metabolism of tyrosine The urine if exposed to the air becomes dark

Discolorisation of the Fehling's solution, usually without actual reduction, may be caused by excess of urates or creatinine

Rothera's Test for Acetone—Saturate the urine with ammonium sulphate, so as to leave some crystals undissolved at the bottom of the tube Add a few drops of a fresh dilute solution of sodium nitroprusside and a little 10 per cent. ammonia Acetone gives a purple permanganate coloration If the colour develops rapidly and deeply, aceto-acetic acid is also present.

Test for Aceto-acetic Acid—Ferric chloride gives a wine-red colour which is destroyed by boiling Aceto-acetic acid results from faulty fat metabolism, and may therefore be present in diabetes, starvation, and hypoglycæmia produced by insulin

Bile.—This occurs in jaundice. The urine is dark-brown, greenish, or in extreme cases almost black in colour.

Gmelin's test for bile *pigments* consists in a play of colours—green, blue, red, and finally yellow, produced by the oxidising action of fuming nitric acid (that is, nitric acid containing nitrous acid in solution). The end or yellow product is called *choletelin*, $C_{32}H_{36}N_4O_{12}$. The test is carried out by dipping a piece of filter paper into the urine, allowing it to dry and placing on it a small drop of the acid.

Hay's sulphur test for bile *salts*. If some flowers of sulphur (*i.e.* finely powdered) are sprinkled on the surface of normal urine, it remains floating on the top. If bile salts are present even in small quantities, the fine sulphur particles fall down to the bottom of the vessel in which the urine is contained; this is due to a lowering of surface tension which bile salts produce.

Blood.—When hæmorrhage occurs in any part of the urinary tract, blood appears in the urine. If a large quantity is present, the urine is deep red; if a small quantity only occurs then the urine looks "smoky." Microscopic examination then reveals the presence of blood-corpuscles, and on spectroscopic examination the bands of oxyhæmoglobin are seen. The urine also contains albumin.

The blood pigment may, under certain conditions, appear in the urine without the presence of any blood-corpuscles at all. This is produced by a disintegration of the corpuscles occurring in the circulation. The condition so produced is called *hæmoglobinuria*; it occurs in several pathological states, as for instance in the tropical disease called "Black-water fever." The pigment is in the condition of methæmoglobin mixed with more or less oxyhæmoglobin, and the spectroscope is the means used for identifying these substances.

Test for Blood Pigment.—To a little urine in a test-tube add a few drops of guaiaconic acid (or of tincture of guaiacum, which is less sensitive); shake, and add an equal quantity of ether containing hydrogen peroxide. The presence of blood is shown by a blue ring at the junction of the two fluids. The blue colour is due to oxidation of the guaiaconic acid by hydrogen peroxide in the presence of hæmoglobin. The test is given by saliva, which contains peroxidases; these are destroyed by boiling; solutions of hæmoglobin (or blood) still give the test after they have been boiled.

The urine of a patient who is taking iodides gives the guaiacum reaction, even after the urine has been boiled.

Benzidine test.—A knife point of benzidine is dissolved in 3 c.c. glacial acetic acid and 10 drops of this mixed with 3 c.c. hydrogen peroxide. This gives no colour change. Blood causes a green or blue colour to appear in three minutes.

Microscopic test.—Blood-corpuscles may be seen after the urine has been centrifuged and the deposit examined. (The most reliable.)

Mucus forms a flocculent cloudiness in the urine, insoluble in acetic acid, soluble in potash. A small amount occurs normally

Pus occurs in the urine as the result of suppuration in any part of the urinary tract It forms a white sediment resembling that of phosphates, and, indeed, is often mixed with phosphates The pus-corpuscles may, however, be seen with the microscope, their nuclei are rendered evident by treatment with 1 per cent acetic acid, and the pus-corpuscles are seen to resemble white blood-corpuscles, which, in fact, they are in origin They dissolve in glacial acetic acid

Some of the protein constituents of the pus-cells—and the same is true for blood—pass into solution in the urine, so that the urine pipetted off from the surface of the deposit gives the tests for protein

On the addition of liquor potassæ to the deposit of pus-cells, a ropy gelatinous mass is obtained This is distinctive Mucus treated in the same way is dissolved

Amino-Acids —Normal urine contains traces of glycine Leucine, tyrosine, and other amino-acids may be present after extensive disintegration of tissue protein, such as occurs in acute atrophy of the liver In the latter condition urea is almost absent from the urine and there is a considerable increase in the ammonia The amino-acids in such circumstances escape further decomposition and pass unchanged into the urine Cystine may occur as a rare anomaly of metabolism Associated with cystinuria one often finds diaminuria, that is, the passage of diamines into the urine, these are known as cadaverine ($C_5H_{14}N_2$) and putrescine ($C_4H_{12}N_2$), and are the result of the removal of CO_2 from the diamino-acids lysine and ornithine respectively

CHAPTER XXXVIII

THE URINE (*continued*)

Estimations

Total Nitrogen —Kjeldahl's method of estimating nitrogen consists in boiling the material under investigation with strong sulphuric acid The nitrogen present is by this means converted into ammonia Excess of soda is then added, and the ammonia distilled over into a known volume of standard acid The amount of diminution of acidity in the standard enables one to calculate the amount of ammonia, and thence the amount of nitrogen

Urea —The *hypobromite method* is most convenient If the experiment is performed as directed below, nitrogen is the only gas which comes off, the carbon dioxide which is also formed being absorbed by the excess of soda

Dupré's apparatus (fig 214) consists of a bottle (A) united to a measuring tube by india-rubber tubing The measuring tube (C) is placed within a cylinder of water (D), and can be raised and lowered at will. Measure 25 c c of alkaline solution of sodium hypobromite (made by mixing 2 c c of bromine with 23 c c of a 40 per cent solution of caustic soda) into the bottle A Measure 5 c c of urine into a small tube (B), and lower it carefully, so that no urine spills, into the bottle Close the bottle securely with a stopper perforated by a glass tube, this glass tube (the bulb blown on this tube prevents froth from passing into the rest of the apparatus) is connected to the measuring tube by india-rubber tubing and a T-piece The third limb of the T-piece is closed by a piece of india-rubber tubing and a pinch-cock, seen at the top of the figure Open the pinch-cock and lower the measuring tube until the surface of the water with which the outer cylinder is filled is at the zero point of the graduation Close the clip, and raise the measuring tube to ascertain if the apparatus is air-tight Then lower it again Tilt the bottle A so as to upset the urine, and shake well for a minute or so During this time there is an evolution of gas Then immerse the bottle in a large beaker containing water of the same temperature as that in the cylinder After two or three minutes raise the measuring tube until the surfaces of the water inside and outside

it are at the same level Read off the amount of gas (nitrogen) evolved. 354 0 c c of nitrogen are yielded by 1 0 gramme of urea From this the quantity of urea in the 5 c c of urine and the percentage of urea can be calculated If the total urea passed in the twenty-four hours is to be ascertained, the twenty-four hours' urine must be carefully measured and thoroughly mixed A sample is taken from the total for analysis, and thus the total amount of urea is ascertained

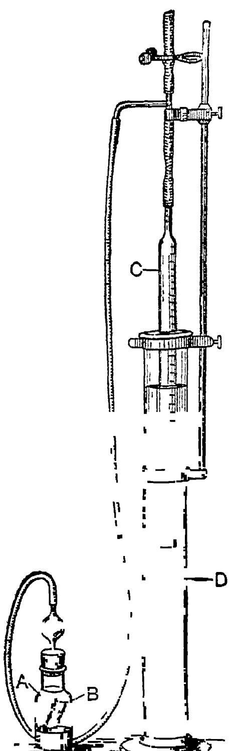


FIG 214 —Dupré s urea apparatus

By the more accurate *urease method* the urea is decomposed into ammonia and carbonic acid by means of the enzyme urease of the soya-bean The ammonia is then estimated as indicated below, but as the urine always contains a little preformed ammonia, this has to be previously estimated and deducted from the total

Blood Urea—In clinical work it is frequently necessary to compare the concentrations of urea in blood and urine The blood, after removal of the proteins, is treated with soya-bean meal (containing urease) in an acid phosphate solution, the urease converts the urea, but none of the other nitrogenous constituents of the blood, into ammonium carbonate The solution is then rendered alkaline with potassium carbonate and the ammonia drawn off by suction into a measured amount of standard acid Subsequent titration of the acid indicates the amount already neutralised by the ammonia liberated from urea, thus the percentage of urea can be calculated Normally this varies from about 20 mgms per cent in young people to 40 or 50 in older persons

Ammonia — *Sorensen's Method* — When neutral solutions of ammonium salts are treated with an excess of formaldehyde, the compound hexamethylene tetramine (urotropine) is formed, with the liberation from the ammonium salt of a corresponding amount of acid ($4NH_4Cl + 6CH_2O = N_4(CH_2)_6 + 6H_2O + 4HCl$) which can be titrated in the usual way The following method (Brown's) gives accurate results Urine (60 c c) is stirred with basic lead acetate (3 gms) (to remove nitrogenous compounds which interfere with the subsequent reaction) and filtered, potassium oxalate (2 gms) is added to the filtrate which is again stirred and filtered The clear

filtrate (10 c c) is diluted with distilled water (50 c c) and a few drops of phenolphthalein (1 per cent) and potassium oxalate (5 gms) added The mixture, if acid, is neutralised with $\frac{N}{10}$ NaOH Neutralised formalin (20 c c of 20 per cent) is finally added The acid thus liberated according to the above equation is then titrated with $\frac{N}{10}$ NaOH Each c c of $\frac{N}{10}$ NaOH used to restore the pink colour corresponds to 0 0017 grm NH_3

Aeration (Van Slyke) —This gives more accurate results than the formaldehyde method The urine is made strongly alkaline with potassium carbonate which decomposes the ammonium salts The liberated ammonia is drawn by suction into a measured amount of standard acid The excess acid not required for neutralising the ammonia is estimated by titration and this subtracted from the original quantity of acid gives the amount of acid equivalent to the ammonia

Sugar —The estimation depends on the power of monosaccharides in virtue of their free CHO group to reduce cupric hydrate in alkaline solution to cuprous oxide

Fehling's solution consists of (1) copper sulphate dissolved in distilled water, (2) Rochelle salt * dissolved in dilute solution of caustic soda The two solutions are mixed and diluted to a litre

Benedict's solution, which is now generally preferred, is a similar alkaline solution of copper sulphate containing potassium thiocyanate, which forms a white precipitate with the cuprous oxide formed so that the latter does not obscure the blue colour of the sulphate It is usually made up so that 25 c c of the solution are reduced by 0 05 gm glucose

10 c c of Fehling's or 25 c c of Benedict's solution are diluted and boiled in a porcelain basin Into this the urine is run from a burette until the blue colour of the copper sulphate disappears From the amount of urine used the percentage of sugar contained is calculated If over 1 per cent is found, the urine is diluted five or ten times and the procedure repeated

* The Rochelle salt (and sodium citrate in the case of Benedict's solution) keeps the copper in solution

CHAPTER XXXIX

THE ACID-BASE EQUILIBRIUM OF THE BODY

The Reaction of Fluids

WHEN hydrochloric acid is added to water, the water becomes acid because the HCl dissociates into its component ions of hydrogen and chlorine If a more complex acid such as acetic is used, its hydrogen forms one ion and the remainder of the acid another The acidity or alkalinity as determined by titration in the ordinary way gives not only the dissociated but also the undissociated acid and therefore gives little information regarding the activity of the solution The real strength or degree of acidity depends on the number of hydrogen ions present in the solution HCl is a strong acid because the dissociation is nearly complete, lactic acid is a weak acid because the number of free H ions is less, and their concentration does not rise proportionally to the amount of lactic acid present

In the same way the degree of alkalinity of a solution depends on the concentration of hydroxyl (OH) ions But in any solution if the concentration of H ions is multiplied by that of OH ions the product is constant

In a solution which turns blue litmus red, the H ions preponderate but OH ions are not absent, in a solution which turns red litmus blue the reverse is the case

Pure distilled water dissociates to a trifling extent into H and OH ions which of necessity are equal in number and we call water neutral, not because it is neither acid nor alkaline but because it is both in equal degree

Hydrogen-ion Concentration —Now since it can be shown that in any solution the product of the concentration of H ions multiplied by the concentration of OH ions is constant, the concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution may be used to express either acidity or alkalinity In pure water it has been determined by experiment that the concentration of hydrogen ions *i e* the *c*H per litre is 0 000,0001 $\frac{1}{10,000,000}$ gramme, or $\frac{1}{10^7}$, or as is more commonly expressed 10^{-7}

 T 2

a physiological saline solution, in increasing amount, the concentration of hydrogen ions increases also Carbonic acid is continually being thrust into the blood by the tissues, and the reaction is but little disturbed because of the mechanisms which exist for its transport The maintenance of the acid-base equilibrium in the blood is most important The various cells and tissues it nourishes demand a reaction which is almost neutral, and perhaps there is no other collection of cells which are so sensitive to variations from the normal as those which make up the respiratory centre, the figures already given show how a very slight increase in the hydrogen-ion concentration of the blood stimulates them to excessive action, and produces exaggerated breathing (hyperpnœa)

We have now to consider the way in which the normal acid-base relationship is maintained, and to discuss more fully the effects which ensue when this balance is upset In relation to the transport of CO_2 by the blood we saw that the majority of it became sodium bicarbonate and a small quantity of it remained in free solution in the plasma Both these substances can readily be got rid of according to the requirement of the body For practical purposes therefore it is convenient to consider that, although there are a multitude of substances in the plasma, only two need be taken into account One of these, CO_2, when dissolved in water is *acid* (H_2CO_3), the other, sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), is *alkaline* The way in which the relative concentrations of these two substances affect the hydrogen-ion concentration of the blood is quite simple, viz, that the hydrogen-ion concentration varies directly with the ratio (normally $\frac{1}{20}$) of the one substance to the other For convenience it has been agreed that the words "concentration of" shall be expressed by square brackets and hydrogen ion by H Concentration of hydrogen ions is thus abbreviated to [H], and this as stated above varies as $\frac{[H_2CO_3]}{[NaHCO_3]}$ or what comes to the same thing $[H\ ] = \frac{k[H_2CO_3]}{[NaHCO_3]}$, k being a constant

In relation to acidæmia and alkalæmia below, we shall see that the body has many mechanisms by which this ratio is kept constant

The reaction of the blood may conveniently be determined by the **method of Dale and Evans**, which consists essentially of placing the blood in a small dialysing bag inside a small tube of physiological saline and subsequently, when dialysis has taken place, determining the [H] of the saline Or the blood may be centrifuged and the [H] of the plasma, diluted, taken

In each case the blood is kept under oil to prevent loss of CO_2 and is oxalated to prevent clotting The [H] is determined colori-

metrically by comparing the colour of the fluid with salines or diluted plasmas respectively of known H-ion concentration to which indicators have been added.

The reaction is normally about pH 7.4 but life is possible with a much more alkaline blood. Death however occurs if the blood becomes acid to a very slight degree. We shall see however below that the body is well provided with mechanisms to prevent this occurring.

Acidæmia

In acidæmia there is a tendency of the blood to become acid.

This occurs, physiologically, in muscular exercise when large quantities not only of carbon dioxide but also of lactic acid are thrown into the circulation. The effect of the carbon dioxide we have already seen in relation to the carriage of carbon dioxide. This section should be re-read by those unfamiliar with it. We must now consider how the lactic acid is dealt with, since, in disease, the body deals with other acids in a similar way. Here we see the importance of what we know as the "Buffer Substances," which are so called because they "soak up" the acid, so to speak. They are the sodium bicarbonate and the alkaline sodium phosphate of the blood, which react with acid thus—

$$NaHCO_3 + H\bar{L} = Na\bar{L} + H_2O + CO_2$$

[Sodium bicarbonate+lactic acid.] = [Sodium lactate+water+carbon dioxide.]

$$Na_2HPO_4 + H\bar{L} = Na\bar{L} + NaH_2PO_4$$

[Alkaline sodium phosphate+lactic acid] = [Sodium lactate+acid sodium phosphate.]

The carbon dioxide formed from the bicarbonate stimulates respiration and is excreted by the lungs and the acid sodium phosphate is excreted by the kidney. The reaction of the blood, therefore, remains practically unchanged since the substances formed are little dissociated and are rapidly got rid of.

The Alkali Reserve of the Body.—We have seen in relation to the carriage of carbon dioxide that the alkali available in the blood itself for the transport of this and other acids is known as the *alkali reserve of the blood*, but it is now evident that this alkali by no means exhausts the resources of the body in this respect. (See Transport of Carbon Dioxide.)

In addition, the body makes use of the ammonia which, as we have seen, is produced as a product of protein metabolism. This function appears to be carried out by the kidney, which has the power of breaking down urea and of utilising the ammonia so formed to neutralise acid. The evidence that the kidney does this is that the renal vein may contain more ammonia than the artery and in renal disease, although an acidæmia may be present, the ammonia-

urea ratio is unaltered (M'Lean) In severe exercise there is, then, an increased excretion of ammonium salts, with a corresponding diminution in the urea content of the urine The latter becomes more acid because, as we have seen, of the increased excretion of the acid sodium phosphate These facts, together with the fall of the alveolar CO_2 which results from the stimulation of the respiratory centre, have an important clinical significance, as they may be taken as evidence of the presence of abnormal acids in the blood, such as may be produced from the faulty oxidation of fats in diabetes

A mild degree of acidæmia takes place on a meat diet in virtue of the acid substances produced by protein, and all the characteristic changes in the urine are observed

Several other mechanisms also assist in maintaining the reaction of the blood Normally the animal takes in an excess of alkaline phosphates which are excreted by the bowel In acidæmia, more of this phosphate is retained

More recently also, Christy has shown that the more CO_2 there is in the blood, the less the chloride, indicating that the tissues have some power to take up acid in an emergency This chloride may, in part, be excreted by the kidney, but not wholly so, as it may return to the blood if the CO_2 falls This emphasises the fact that the alkali reserve of the body may be held, quite properly, to refer to the whole body, since every one of its cells is capable of taking up in the same way a small amount of acid in virtue of the buffer substances it contains

When the body succeeds in thus overcoming the addition of acid without there being any actual rise of the hydrogen-ion concentration of the blood, the acidæmia is said to be *compensated*, but as soon as the compensation fails and the hydrogen-ion concentration of the blood rises, a condition is very soon arrived at which is incompatible with life

Alkalæmia

In alkalæmia there is a tendency for the body to become alkaline Such a condition may be produced when an individual **over-ventilates** voluntarily, as a result of stimulation of the respiratory centre by heat, *e g* a hot bath, or at a high altitude when probably the want of oxygen stimulates the respiratory centre It is observed, to a small extent, in the early forenoon, when respiratory activity is very great In such circumstances we have the opposite state of affairs to that in acidæmia—namely, decreased excretion of ammonia by the kidney and increase of urea, with an alkaline urine due to the excretion of alkaline sodium phosphate Further, since the

H_2CO_3 is reduced, it becomes necessary, in order to keep the ratio $\frac{H_2CO_3}{NaHCO_3}$ at about $\frac{1}{20}$th, to excrete bicarbonate by the kidney, which still further contributes to the alkalinity of the urine There is, then, a diminution of the alkali reserve of the blood, not because of acidæmia, but as a compensation to an alkalæmia (Henderson)

This compensation is an important factor in adaptation to high altitudes where as a result of oxygen-want there is a stimulation of respiration and a washing out of carbon dioxide

A tendency to alkalæmia exists normally when a vegetable diet, which produces largely alkaline substances, is taken and a similar tendency is said to occur when the stomach secretes HCl

In such circumstances, not only do we get urinary changes, but the respiration is automatically depressed slightly, the alveolar content of the carbon dioxide increases and acid is thereby retained, chlorides also pass into the blood from the tissues (Christy)

In alkalæmia there occurs a diminution in the ionic calcium of the blood with an increase in the un-ionised Severe degrees of alkalæmia for this reason bring about tetany—*i e* spasms of certain muscles, especially of the hands and feet The facial nerve is commonly hyperirritable to tapping (See Parathyroid Glands)

CHAPTER XL

THE SKIN

THE skin is composed of two parts, *epidermis* or *cuticle*, and *dermis* or *cutis vera*

The Epidermis is a thick stratified epithelium The deeper layers are composed of protoplasmic cells, and form the *rete mucosum*, or *Malpighian layer*, the surface layers are hard and horny, this horny layer is the thickest part of the epidermis, and is specially thick on the palms and soles, where it is subjected to most friction It is in the cells of the Malpighian layer that pigment granules are deposited in the coloured races

Between the horny layer and the Malpighian layer are two intermediate strata, in which the transformation of protoplasm into horny material (*keratin*) is taking place In the first of these—that is, the one next to the Malpighian layer—the cells are flattened, and filled with large granules of *eleidin*, an intermediate substance in the formation of horn This layer is called the *stratum granulosum* Above this are several layers of clear, more rounded cells, which constitute the *stratum lucidum*, and above these the horny layer proper, many strata deep, begins The cells become more and more scaly as they approach the surface, where they lose their nuclei and eventually become detached

The epidermis grows by a multiplication of the deepest layer of cells, the newly-formed cells push towards the surface those previously formed, in their progress undergoing transformation into keratin The epidermis has no blood-vessels, nerve-fibrils pass into its deepest layers, and ramify between the cells

The Dermis is composed of dense fibrous tissue, which becomes looser and more reticular in its deeper part, where it passes by insensible degrees into the areolar and adipose tissue of the subcutaneous region The denser superficial layer is very vascular, and is covered with minute *papillæ*, the epidermis is moulded over these, and in the palms and soles, where the papillæ are largest and are disposed in rows, their presence is indicated by the well-known ridges on the surface

The papillæ contain loops of capillaries, and in some cases, especially in the palm of the hand and fingers, they contain tactile corpuscles (which will be more fully described in connection with the sense of touch) Special capillary networks are distributed to the sweat-glands, sebaceous glands, and hair follicles

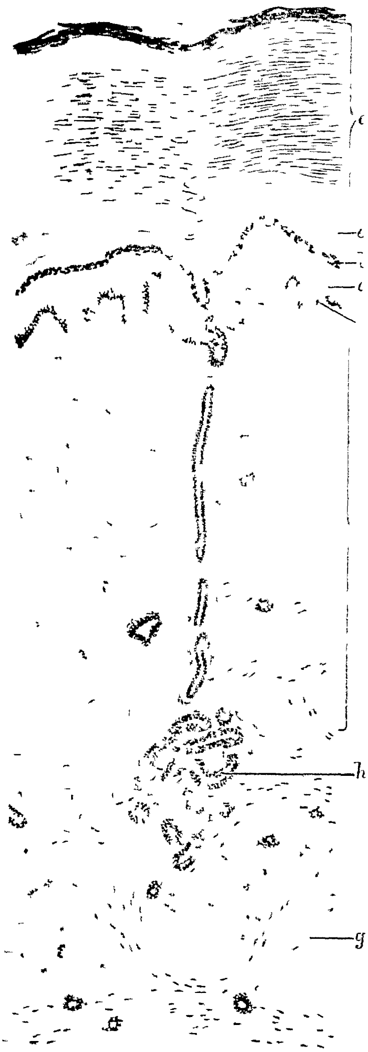


FIG 215 —Vertical section through the skin of the sole of the foot a, Horny layer, b, stratum granulosum, c, stratum lucidum, d, Malpighian layer, e, cutis vera, f, papilla of cutis vera, g, fat lobule of subcutaneous tissue, h, sweat-gland, i, orifice of sweat duct (Szymonowicz)

The deeper portions of the dermis in the scrotum, penis, and nipple, contain involuntary muscular tissue, there is also a bundle of muscle - fibres attached to each hair follicle

The Nails are thickenings of the stratum lucidum Each lies in a depression called the *bed* of the nail, the posterior part of which is overlapped by epidermis, and called the *nail-groove* The dermis beneath is beset with longitudinal ridges instead of papillæ, these are very vascular but in the *lunula*, the crescent at the base of the nail, there are papillæ, and this part is not so vascular

The Hairs are epidermal growths, contained in pits called *hair follicles* The part within the follicle is called the *root* of the hair

The main substance of the hair is composed of pigmented horny fibrous material, in reality long fibrillated cells It is covered by a layer of scales imbricated upwards (*hair cuticle*) In many hairs the centre is occupied by a *medulla*, formed of rounded cells containing eleidin granules. Minute air - bubbles may be present in both medulla and

fibrous layer, and cause the hair to look white by reflected light The grey hair of old age, however, is produced by a loss of pigment

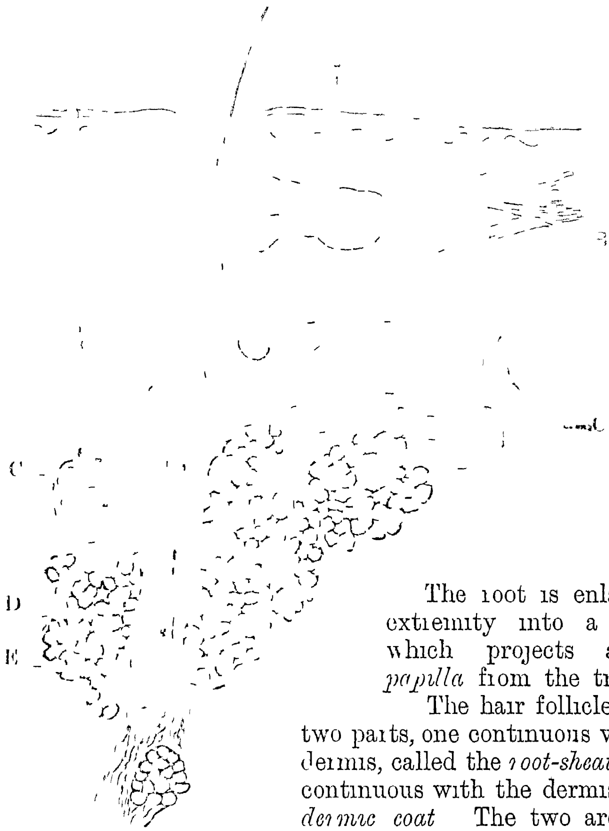


FIG 216 —Vertical section of skin A Sebaceous gland opening into [illegible] B Muscle fibres C Sudoriferous or sweat gland D Subcutaneous fat E Fundus of hair follicle, with hair papilla (Klein)

The root is enlarged at its extremity into a *knob*, into which projects a vascular *papilla* from the true skin

The hair follicle consists of two parts, one continuous with the epidermis, called the *root-sheath*, the other continuous with the dermis, called the *dermic coat* The two are separated by a basement membrane called the *hyaline layer* of the follicle The root-sheath consists of an outer layer of cells like the Malpighian layer of the epidermis, with which it is directly continuous (*outer root-sheath*), and of an inner horny layer (*inner root-sheath*), continuous with the horny layer of the epidermis The inner root-sheath consists of three layers, the outermost being composed of long cells with obscure nuclei (*Henle's layer*), the next of squarish nucleated cells (*Huxley's layer*), and the third is a *cuticle* of scales, imbricated downwards, which fit over the scales of the cuticle of the hair itself

A small bundle of plain muscle-fibres is attached to each follicle (fig 216) When it contracts, as under the influence of cold,

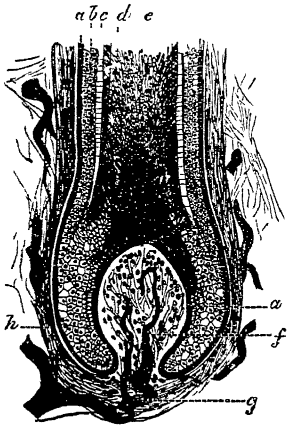


FIG 217 —Longitudinal section of a hair follicle. *a* and *b*, External root-sheath, *c*, internal root sheath, *d*, fibrous layer of the hair, *e*, medulla, *f*, hair papilla, *g*, blood vessels of the hair papilla, *h*, dermic coat (Cadiat)

FIG 218 —Transverse section of a hair and hair follicle made below the opening of the sebaceous gland *a*, Medulla, or pith of the hair, *b*, fibrous layer, *c*, cuticle, *d*, Huxley's layer, *e*, Henle's layer of internal root sheath, *f* and *g*, layers of external root sheath, outside of *g* is the basement membrane or hyaline layer, *h*, dermic (fibrous) coat of hair follicle, *i*, vessels (Cadiat)

or of certain emotions such as fear, the hair is erected and the whole skin is roughened ("goose skin") The nerves supplying these muscles are called *pilo-motor* nerves The distribution of these nerves closely follows those of the vaso-constrictor nerves of the skin, their cell-stations are in the lateral sympathetic chain

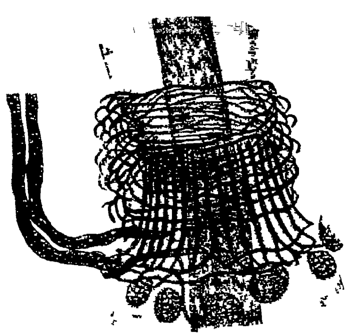


FIG 219 —Sensory nerve ending of hair follicle Gold chloride preparation. × 900 (Szymonowicz)

The sensitiveness of the hairs or more properly of the hair follicles is subserved by a ring-like plexus of nerve-fibrils around the hair follicle, within the outer sheath, just beneath the entrance of the sebaceous gland (see fig 219)

The sebaceous glands (fig 216) are small saccular glands, with ducts opening into the upper portion of the hair follicles The

secreting cells become charged with fatty matter, which is discharged into the lumen of the saccules owing to the disintegration of the cells The secretion, *sebum*, contains isocholesterol in addition to fatty matter It acts as a lubricant to the hairs

The sweat-glands (fig 215) are abundant over the whole human skin, but are most numerous where hairs are absent, on the palms and soles Each consists of a coiled tube in the deepest part of the dermis, the duct from which passes up through the dermis, and by a corkscrew-like canal through the epidermis to the surface

The secreting tube is lined by one or two layers of cubical or columnar cells, outside this is a layer of longitudinally arranged muscle-fibres, and then a basement membrane

The duct is of similar structure, except that there is usually but one layer of cubical cells, and muscle-fibres are absent, the passage through the epidermis has no proper wall, it is merely a channel excavated between the epidermal cells

The ceruminous glands of the ear are modified sweat-glands

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE SKIN

Protection —The skin acts as a protective organ, not only by mechanically covering and so defending internal structures from external violence, but more particularly in virtue of its containing receptors, organs of **sensation** and reflex action (see later in the chapter on Touch)

Heat Regulation —See chapter on Temperature

Respiration —A small amount of respiratory interchange of gases occurs through the skin, but in thick-skinned animals this is very small In man, the carbonic acid exhaled by the skin is about $\frac{1}{150}$ to $\frac{1}{200}$ of that which passes from the lungs But in thin-skinned animals, such as frogs, cutaneous respiration is very important, after the removal of the lungs of a frog, the respiratory interchange through the skin is sufficient to keep the animal alive, the amount of carbonic acid discharged being about half as much as when the lungs are present (Bischoff)

Absorption —This also is an unimportant function, but the skin will in a small measure absorb oily materials placed in contact with it, thus many ointments are absorbed, and general effects are produced by local inunction

Secretion —The secretions of the skin are two in number The *sebum* is the natural lubricant of the hairs The secretion of *sweat* is an important function of the skin, and we will therefore discuss it at greater length

THE SWEAT

Physiology of the Secretion of Sweat—We have seen that the sweat-glands are most abundant in man on the palms and soles, and here the greatest amount of perspiration occurs Different animals vary a good deal in the amount of sweat they secrete, and in the place where the secretion is most abundant Thus the ox perspires less than the horse and sheep, perspiration is absent from rats, rabbits, and goats, pigs perspire mostly on the snout, dogs and cats on the pads of the feet only

As long as the secretion is small in amount, it is evaporated from the surface at once, this is called *insensible perspiration* As soon as the secretion is increased or evaporation prevented, drops appear on the surface of the skin This is known as *sensible perspiration* The relation of these two varies with atmospheric conditions, the drier and hotter the air, the greater is the proportion of insensible to sensible perspiration In round numbers the total amount of sweat secreted by a man is two pounds in the twenty-four hours

The amount of secretion is influenced by the vasomotor nerves, an increase in the size of the skin-vessels leads to increased, a constriction of the vessels to diminished, perspiration There are also special secretory fibres, stimulation of which causes a secretion even when the circulation is suspended, as in a recently amputated limb These fibres are paralysed by atropine They are contained in the same nerve-trunks as the vasomotor nerves, as are also the nerve-fibres which supply the plain muscle-fibres of the sweat-glands which act during the expulsion of the secretion The secretory nerves for the lower limbs issue from the spinal cord by the last two or three thoracic and first two or four lumbar nerves, they have cell-stations in the lower ganglia of the lateral chain, and pass thence to the sciatic nerve They are controlled by a centre in the upper lumbar region of the cord, those for the upper limbs leave the cord by the sixth, seventh, and eighth anterior thoracic roots, have cell-stations in the ganglion stellatum, and ultimately pass to the ulnar and median nerves, they are controlled by a centre in the cervical enlargement of the cord The secretory fibres for the head pass in the cervical sympathetic, and in some branches of the trigeminal nerves These subsidiary centres are dominated by one in the medulla oblongata (Adamkiewicz) These facts have been obtained by experiments on animals (cat, horse)

The sweat-centres may be excited directly by venous blood, as in asphyxia, or by overheated blood (over 40° C), or by certain drugs (see further), or reflexly by stimulation of afferent nerves such as the femoral and peroneal

Nervous diseases are often accompanied by disordered sweating; thus unilateral perspiration is sometimes seen in cases of hemiplegia; degeneration of the anterior nerve-cells of the cord may cause stoppage of the secretion.

The changes that occur in the secreting cells have been investigated by Renaut in the horse. When charged they are clear and swollen, the nucleus being situated near their attached ends; when discharged they are smaller, granular, and their nucleus is more central.

The sweat, like the urine, must be regarded primarily as an excretion, the secreting cells eliminating substances formed elsewhere. Stale sweat may putrefy and be very disagreeable.

Composition of the Sweat.—Sweat may be obtained in abundant quantities by placing the animal or man in a closed hot-air bath, or from a limb by enclosing it in a vessel made air-tight with an elastic bandage. Thus obtained, it is mixed with epidermal scales and a small quantity of fat-like matter from the sebaceous glands. The continual shedding of epidermal scales is in reality an excretion. Keratin, of which they are chiefly composed, is rich in sulphur, and, consequently, this is one means by which sulphur is removed from the body.

The reaction of sweat is acid, and the acidity, as in the urine, is due to acid sodium phosphate. In profuse sweating, however, the secretion usually becomes alkaline or neutral. It has a peculiar and characteristic odour, which varies in different parts of the body, and is due to volatile fatty acids; its taste is saltish, its specific gravity about 1005.

In round numbers the percentage of solids is 1.2, of which 0.8 is inorganic matter.

The salts are in kind and relative quantity very like those of the urine; sodium chloride is the most abundant salt. Funke was unable to find any urea, but most other observers agree on the presence of a minute quantity. It appears to become quickly transformed into ammonium carbonate. The protein which is present is probably derived from the epithelial cells of the epidermis, sweat-glands, and sebaceous glands, which are suspended in the excretion; but in the horse there is albuminous matter actually in solution in the sweat.

Abnormal, Unusual, or Pathological Conditions of the Sweat.

Drugs.—Certain drugs (sudorifics) favour sweating, *e.g.* pilocarpine, Calabar bean, strychnine, picrotoxine, muscarine, nicotine, camphor, ammonia. Others diminish the secretion, *e.g.*, atropine and morphine in large doses.

Large quantities of water, *by raising the capillary blood-pressure*, and probably also by diluting the blood, increase the perspiration.

Some substances introduced into the body reappear in the sweat, *e g*, benzoic, tartaric, and succinic acids readily, quinine and iodine with more difficulty Compounds of arsenic and mercury behave similarly

Diseases—Cystine has been found in some cases of cystinuria, glucose in diabetic patients, bile-pigment in those with jaundice (as evidenced by the staining of the clothes), indigo in a peculiar condition known as chromidiosis, blood or hæmatin derivatives in red sweat, albumin in the sweat of acute rheumatism, which is often very acid, urates and calcium oxalate in gout, lactic acid in puerperal fever, and occasionally in rickets and scrofula

Kidney Diseases—The relation of the secretion of the skin to that of the kidneys is a very close one Thus copious secretions of urine, or watery evacuations from the alimentary canal, coincide with dryness of the skin, abundant perspiration and scanty urine generally go together In the condition known as *uræmia* (see p 564), when the kidneys secrete little or no urine, the percentage of urea rises in the sweat, the sputum and the saliva also contain urea under those conditions The clear indication for the physician in such cases is to stimulate the skin to action by hot-air baths and pilocarpine, and the alimentary canal by means of purgatives In some of these cases the skin secretes urea so abundantly that when the sweat dries on the body, the patient is covered with a coating of urea crystals ("urea frost")

Varnishing the Skin—By covering the skin of such an animal as a rabbit with an impermeable varnish, the temperature is reduced, a peculiar train of symptoms set up, and ultimately the animal dies If, however, cooling is prevented by keeping such an animal in warm cotton-wool, it lives longer Varnishing the human skin does not seem to be dangerous Many explanations have been offered to explain the peculiar condition observed in animals, retention of the sweat would hardly do it, the blood is not found *post-mortem* to contain any abnormal substance, nor is it poisonous when transfused into another animal Cutaneous respiration is so slight in mammals that stoppage of this function cannot be supposed to cause death The animal, in fact, dies of cold, the normal function of the skin in regulating temperature or in producing the sensory stimulant to metabolism is interfered with, and it is animals with delicate skins which are most readily affected

CHAPTER XLI

BODY TEMPERATURE

SINCE departures from the normal body-temperature are among the fundamental physical signs of disease, and since observations of the temperature of the patient are only less frequent in medical practice than those of the pulse or of the tongue, it is necessary to have as complete an understanding as possible of the principles that regulate the fluctuations of the clinical thermometer.

Animals may be divided into two great classes:—

(1) Warm-blooded or *homoiothermal* animals, are those which have an almost constant temperature. (Mammals and birds.)

(2) Cold-blooded or *poikilothermal* animals, are those whose temperature varies with that of the surrounding medium, being always, however, a degree, or a fraction of a degree, above that of the medium. This class includes reptiles, amphibians, fish, embryonic birds and mammals, and probably all invertebrates.

The temperature of a man in health varies but slightly, being between 36.5° and 37.5° C. (98° to 99° F.). Most mammals have approximately the same temperature: horse, donkey, ox, 37.5° to 38°; dog, cat, 38.5° to 39°; sheep, rabbit, 38° to 39.5°; mouse, 37.5°; rat, 37.9°. Birds have a higher temperature, about 42° C. The temperature varies a little in different parts of the body, that of the interior being greater than that of the surface; the blood coming from the liver, where chemical changes are very active, is warmer than that of the general circulation; the blood becomes rather cooler in its passage through the lungs and the skin.

The temperature also shows slight diurnal variations, reaching a maximum about 4 or 5 P.M. (37.5° C.) and a minimum about 3 A.M. (36.8° C.), that is, at a time when the functions of the body are least active. If, however, the habits of a man are altered, and he sleeps in the day, working during the night, the times of the maximum and minimum temperatures are also inverted. Inanition and inactivity cause the temperature to fall, and just at the onset of death it may be below 30° C. Active muscular exercise raises the temperature temporarily by about 0.5° to 1° C.

Since the temperature of the body depends on the difference

between the amount of heat produced and the amount lost, we shall now consider heat production and heat loss in turn, and then study the way in which these are normally adjusted for the maintenance of a nearly constant temperature in the homoiothermal animal

Heat Production

(1) *Effect of Changes of External Temperature* —In theory there is a fundamental difference between cold- and warm-blooded animals in their reactions to external temperature A cold environment, since it lowers the temperature of the poikilothermic creature, reduces the metabolism of all its tissues, and thus reduces its heat production

The warm-blooded individual reacts in precisely the opposite way Since his temperature remains constant, his heat production increases, in order to neutralise the effect of his cold surroundings This has been demonstrated in the case of fasting dogs An example may be given

Temperature of air	13 8° C	14 7° C	17 3 C	18° C
Heat production in calories per kilo per diem	78 7	74 7	69 8	67 1

In practice it is doubtful whether any such exact relation can be discerned in man, as it may be masked by other factors We have already insisted upon the equality between the respective energy-values of the food eaten and of the heat produced, and upon the advantage of an ample diet In practice it is the amount of food taken which controls the heat production, rather than the reverse The majority of well-to-do people, whose appetite is stimulated by their palate, maintain a constant body-temperature by regulating the loss rather than the production of heat In this connection the following figures, derived from observations made upon a dog which was fed upon considerable quantities of meat, may be compared with those obtained when the same animal was fasting (see also p 398)

Temperature of air	7 C	15 C	20° C	25 C	30 C
Calories per kilo per diem—dog fasting	86 4	63 0	55 5	54 2	56 2
Calories per kilo per diem—dog given 320 g meat = 81 calories per kilo	87 9	86 6	86 2		83 0

In the fasting dog a lowering of the surrounding temperature increases heat production in the animal; in the well-fed dog this is hardly noticeable.

On the other hand, it is instructive to note the types of food eaten by the natives of different climates. The Hindoo, who eats rice, requires to produce much less heat than the Esquimau, who makes seal meat and blubber his staple articles of diet.

The Seat of Heat Production.—While we say that every living tissue produces heat according to its activity, certain organs, such as glands, produce an amount which is fairly constant although relatively small. By far the largest and most variable amounts are produced by the muscles, and under conditions of extreme cold, muscular contraction, which we know as shivering, is brought about reflexly to maintain body temperature. On hot days we experience a certain general flabbiness and lack of desire to do muscular work.

Heat Loss

The two channels of heat loss susceptible of any amount of variation are the lungs and the skin. The more air that passes in and out of the lungs, the greater will be the loss in warming the expired air and in evaporating the water of *respiration*. In such animals as the dog, which perspire but little, respiration is a most important means of regulating the temperature; and in these animals a close connection is observed between the production of heat and the respiratory activity. The panting of a dog when overheated is a familiar instance of this. A dog also, under the same conditions, puts out its tongue, and loses heat from the evaporation that occurs from its surface. The great regulator, however, is undoubtedly the skin, and this has a double action.

Vasomotor Changes.—The skin may regulate its heat loss by changing the amount of blood passing through the skin. We are familiar with the flushing of the skin after exercise, due to vasodilation. In such circumstances the body loses a greater amount of heat by radiation, conduction, and convection.

Sweating.—When the body temperature tends to rise the sweat-glands secrete and the evaporation of the sweat, the latent heat of which is obtained from the body, causes cooling. Sweating may, however, occur locally as the result of the application of local heat. When the sweating is excessive or the evaporation small we appreciate the secretion of sweat, but even at rest there is a considerable amount of *insensible* perspiration which passes unnoticed. The amount of evaporation depends on the humidity of the atmosphere. We are familiar with the increased sweating which occurs on a hot moist day. The hot day, however, has the advantage over the cold day in that the relative humidity of the air is decreased.

The atmosphere may vary appreciably in its cooling power, according to the rapidity with which the air in the immediate vicinity of the body is changed A draught causes excessive cooling of the body, therefore, by increasing the loss by convection

Quite otherwise is it in climates where the tropical sun is combined with the moisture-laden wind There the possibilities of heat loss both by radiation and by evaporation are small, and the inhabitant perforce reduces his heat production to a minimum He lives indoors, and takes as little exercise as possible

Certain Factors which govern the Relation between Heat Production and Heat Loss

(1) *Size* —The quantity of heat produced by mammals of the same size is practically constant It is not dependent on the weight of the animal, nor on the relative size of the individual cells The size of the cells in a mouse is not very different from that of the cells in a horse, yet a mouse produces 452 large calories per kilogramme of body-weight in twenty-four hours, and the horse only 14 5 calories The mouse thus requires thirty times more food per unit of body-weight than the horse The constant factor is body-surface, all well-nourished animals, including man, produce the same number of calories per square metre of surface (Rubner) The body-surface is relatively large in a small animal The loss of heat is diminished both by the occurrence of fur and by the absence of sweat in the skins of most small animals, and in man the natural conditions may be much modified by artificial ones, such as clothing

(2) *Age* —Inasmuch as the young are small, active, and growing, their heat production is relatively large, and further, since the extreme constancy of temperature which an adult man has attained is an evolved characteristic, very young children, in common with animals, are subject to changes of body-temperature which would be of much graver import in older people

(3) *Constitution* —Different individuals differ greatly in their power of heat loss Apart from differences in size and in the faculty of perspiration, there remain such differences as those of compactness of shape, and especially in the amount of adipose tissue with which the viscera are protected

Regulation of Body Temperature

The body temperature appears to be regulated by an area in the brain known as the heat regulating centre This centre influences the vasomotor and sweating centre and thereby regulates heat loss from the cutaneous blood-vessels, and possibly the lower centres controlling heat production, *e g* those which innervate

voluntary muscle Evidence of this was put forward by Barbour, who showed that if this part of the brain was perfused with fluids of different temperatures, the corresponding body reactions were obtained The injection of hot saline into the peripheral end of the carotid artery may be shown to cause cutaneous vasodilatation, so that the temperature of the body is lowered, the reverse occurs when cold saline is injected Evidently the thermotaxic centre is extremely sensitive to changes of temperature in the blood flowing through it

If this part of the central nervous system is cut off by section of the cord or is anæsthetised, the body temperature falls, hence the necessity for keeping an anæsthetised patient warm It has been quite clearly shown that if the section of the brain is made below the thalami, temperature regulation is lost, the animal becoming poikilothermal (Magnus) The exact region of the centre is probably the hypothalamus It was originally thought to be the corpus striatum, but Magnus showed that animals retain their heat regulating power when this region is removed

Fever—Fever is primarily due to a diminished heat loss An increased heat production occurs in fever, but that this alone does not produce the condition is seen by the fact that in exercise or exophthalmic goitre, in which metabolism is enormously increased, there is only a very small rise in temperature, it is evident that the normal body can get rid of enormous amounts of heat nor is the heat regulating centre completely out of order, for it can be demonstrated that a febrile patient shows reactions to heat and cold

It may be that the diminished heat loss is initially due to withdrawal of blood from the skin, *i e* when the sickening individual looks pale Lauder Brunton showed that bleeding would cause a temporary rise of internal temperature in this way There is, however, at the same time a marked increase of heat production (and of metabolism generally which leads to wasting) The increase may be due to the disease-producing agent itself, but is contributed to by the effect of the rise in temperature on metabolism Eventually in fever there may be a flushing of the skin, but this is less than normal for the same rise of temperature

The withdrawal of blood from the skin may be a result of diminution in the volume of the blood due to the taking up of fluid by the tissues, a suggestion supported by the fact that the blood becomes more concentrated (Barbour), or it may be that the blood is required elsewhere internally to deal with the infection, the skin vasoconstriction simply compensating for vasodilatation elsewhere

This explanation of fever indicates why it is that although the heat regulating mechanism reacts to changes in temperature it

appears to be set at a higher level The withdrawal of blood from the skin necessarily reduces the response to a higher temperature

Fever is, however, in a degree protective as antibodies are more actively produced at a higher than at a lower body temperature The increased metabolism also assists the body to deal more adequately with the infective agents

The sensation of temperature bears no relation to the actual body temperature and depends on the temperature of the nerve-endings of the skin which are affected by the outside air and by the amount of blood in the skin The pale, shivering patient suffering from a malarial attack, may have a temperature of 104° Similarly, people about to develop influenza look a little pale, and feel a little shivery for the same reason On the other hand, drugs which cause dilatation of the skin-vessels, *e g* alcohol, cause a fall of body temperature, although they give a sensation of cutaneous warmth After a prolonged hot bath, an individual may feel quite warm, because the skin-vessels become paralysed and may lose so much heat that he "catches a chill" as a result of the lowering of bodily resistance

CHAPTER XLII

THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

THE central nervous system is contained within the cranio-spinal cavity, and consists of brain and spinal cord These two parts are continuous with one another, and the line of separation is arbitrarily drawn at the foramen magnum by which orifice the spinal cord

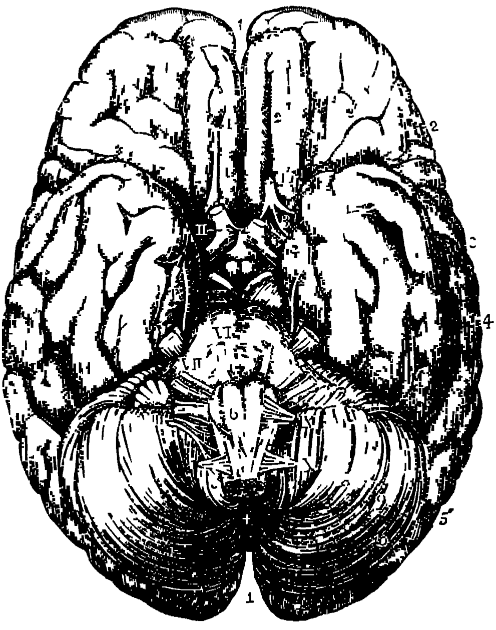


FIG 220 —Base of the brain 1, Superior longitudinal fissure, 2, 2′, 2″, anterior cerebral lobe, 3, fissure of Sylvius, between anterior and 4, 4′, 4″, middle cerebral lobe, 5, 5′, posterior lobe, 6, medulla oblongata, the figure is in the right pyramid, 7, 8, 9, 10, the cerebellum, +, the inferior vermiform process The figures from I to IX are placed against the corresponding cerebral nerves, III is placed on the right pedunculus cerebri, VI and VII on the pons, X the first cervical or suboccipital nerve (Allen Thomson) ½

leaves the skull Both brain and cord are enveloped by three connective-tissue membranes, known from without inwards as dura mater, arachnoid, and pia mater respectively

Anatomy of the Brain

At the lowest part of the brain (fig 221), continuing the spinal cord upwards, is the **medulla oblongata** or *bulb* (D) Next comes the **pons Varolii** (C), very appropriately called the bridge, because in it are the connections between the bulb and the upper regions of the brain, and between the *cerebellum* or small brain (B), and the rest of the nervous system

The **mid-brain** comes next (a, b) and this leads into the peduncles or crura of the **cerebrum** (A), the largest portion of the brain

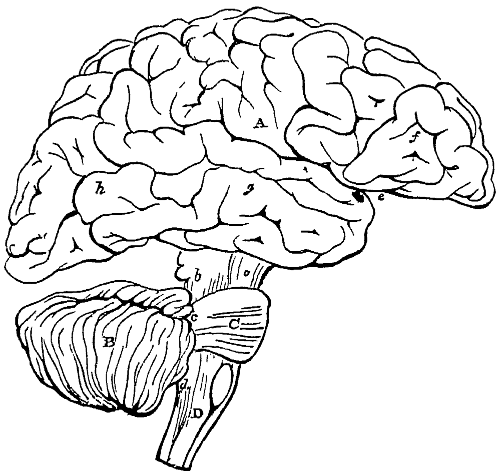


FIG 221 —Plan in outline of the brain, as seen from the right side $\frac{1}{3}$ The parts are represented as separated from one another somewhat more than naturally, so as to show their connections A, cerebrum, f, g, h, its anterior, middle, and posterior lobes, e, fissure of Sylvius, B, cerebellum, C, pons, D, medulla oblongata, a, peduncles of the cerebrum, b, c, d, superior, middle, and inferior peduncles of the cerebellum (From Quain)

But such a complex brain as the human brain does not obtain throughout the vertebrate series The lower one goes in the scale, the smaller and less important does the cerebrum become, until in the fishes the cerebral hemispheres are practically absent It is the large size and convoluted cortex of these hemispheres which distinguishes the higher from the lower vertebrates

A comparative study of the brain in different animals has been most valuable in the elucidation of the functions of its various parts

There is some relation between the degree of development of the different parts of the brain and the habits of an animal For instance, animals which rely largely on the sense of smell for their prey have a large olfactory area, whereas in such animals as

the porpoise, which have no sense of smell, the olfactory area of the brain is absent Animals with keen vision have a large visual area in their brains, animals of nocturnal habits, or which live underground in the dark, have a very small one In fishes and birds we find the cerebellum and mid-brain (optic lobes) are relatively large In fishes there is no convoluted cerebrum, little else but the basal ganglia being present

In spite of these differences, and many more might be mentioned, there is throughout the vertebrate series from fish up to man, the same general plan of construction, and the brain of the human embryo resembles the brain of the adult fish A section through the brain of fishes shows the presence of the cerebral ventricles and the relationship of the pituitary body

CHAPTER XLIII

THE SPINAL CORD AND SPINAL NERVE-ROOTS

THE spinal cord is a column of nerve-substance connected above with the medulla oblongata of the brain, and situated in the vertebral canal. If it is cut across it is seen to be composed of grey matter

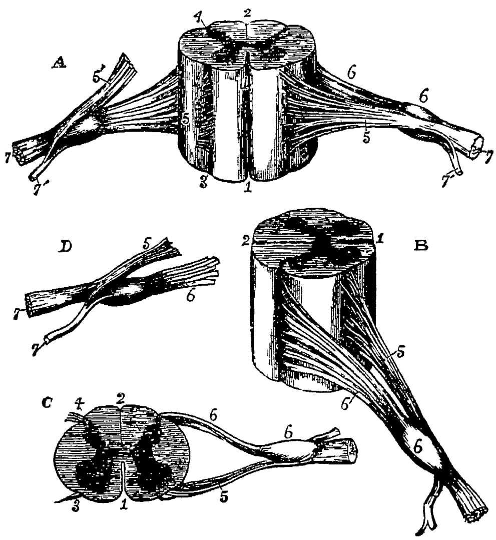


FIG. 222.—Different views of a portion of the spinal cord from the cervical region, with the roots of the nerves (slightly enlarged). In A, the anterior surface of the specimen is shown; the anterior nerve root of its right side is divided; in B, a view of the right side is given; in C, the upper surface is shown; in D, the nerve roots and ganglion are shown from below. 1, the anterior median fissure; 2, posterior median fissure; 3, anterior lateral depression, from which the anterior nerve roots are seen to issue; 4, posterior lateral groove, into which the posterior roots are seen to sink; 5, anterior roots passing the ganglion; 5′, in A, the anterior root divided; 6, the posterior roots, the fibres of which pass into the ganglion 6′; 7, the united or compound nerve; 7′, the posterior primary branch, seen in A and D to be derived in part from the anterior and in part from the posterior root. (Allen Thomson.)

which on histological examination is found to be composed largely of nerve-cells, and of white matter which is composed of nerve-fibres. The white matter is situated externally, and constitutes its chief portion; the grey matter is in the interior, and is so arranged that

in a transverse section of the cord it appears like two crescentic masses connected together by the posterior commissure (fig 222) The apices of each crescent are called the anterior and posterior horns respectively Throughout the whole length of the cord runs the **central canal**, which opens above into the space at the back of the medulla oblongata and pons, called the fourth ventricle

The spinal cord consists of two symmetrical halves, separated anteriorly and posteriorly by vertical *fissures* (the posterior fissure being deeper, but less wide and distinct than the anterior) Each half is marked on the sides (obscurely at the lower part, but distinctly above) by two longitudinal furrows, which divide it into three portions, columns, or tracts, an *anterior*, *lateral*, and *posterior* From the groove between the anterior and lateral columns spring the **anterior roots** of the spinal nerves (fig 222 B and C, 5), and just in front of the groove between the lateral and posterior columns the **posterior roots** enter (B, 6) a pair of roots on each side corresponds to each vertebra The posterior root is characterised by the ganglion on it These two roots after a short distance join together to form what is known as a **mixed nerve** The functions of the roots are dealt with later, but it may be noted here that the anterior is efferent or motor and the posterior is afferent or sensory

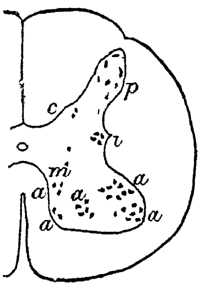


FIG 223 —Section of half the spinal cord to show the principal groups of cells in the grey matter, *a*, groups of cells in the anterior horn, *c*, Clarke s column, *i*, intermedio lateral group, *m*, middle cell column, *p*, scattered cells of the posterior horn. (Diagrammatic after Schafer)

Grey Matter —The grey matter of the cord consists of nerve-fibres, most of which are very fine and delicate, of nerve-cells with branching processes supported by the meshes of neuroglia The neuroglia of the grey matter resembles that of the white, but instead of everywhere forming a close network to support the nerve-fibres, here and there it is in the form of a more open sponge-work to support the nerve-cells It is especially developed around the central canal, which is lined with ciliated columnar epithelium, the cells of which at their outer ends terminate in fine processes, which join the neuroglia network surrounding the canal, and form the *substantia gelatinosa centralis* It is also developed at the tip of the posterior cornu of grey matter, forming what is known as the *substantia gelatinosa lateralis* of Rolando, which is much enlarged in the upper cervical region

Groups of cells in the grey matter —The multipolar cells of the grey matter are either scattered singly or arranged in definite groups (see fig 223)

(1) *Anterior horn cells* —In the cervical and lumbar enlargements there are several groups of large multipolar cells in the anterior horn, in the thoracic region these are reduced to two, a mesial and a lateral group The larger groups correspond with

segments of the limbs, and in the cervical cord there is one special group from which the phrenic nerve arises for the supply of the diaphragm The axons pass out by the anterior nerve-roots of the same side, but a few axons pass to the antero-lateral column of the same side, and then by the white commissure to that of the opposite side In birds, a few axons are stated to pass to the posterior roots

(2) *Clarke's column* —This is a group of large nerve-cells with their long axis vertical It lies at the base of the posterior horn, and is best marked in the thoracic region The axons of these cells pass into the cerebellar tracts

(3) *Intermedio-lateral group* —This is seen in the outer part of the grey matter of the lateral horn, and is most distinct in the upper thoracic and lower cervical regions

(4) *The middle cell column* lies in the middle of the crescent.

(5) *The cells of the posterior horn* are usually small, they are numerous, but are not disposed in special groups except at the base of this horn in the thoracic region where lies Clarke's column of cells, whose axons form the spino-cerebellar tracts

White Matter —The white matter of the cord is made up of medullated nerve-fibres, of different sizes, running mainly in a longitudinal direction, and of a supporting material of two kinds, viz —(*a*) Ordinary fibrous connective tissue with elastic fibres, which is connected with septa from the pia mater which pass into the cord to carry the blood-vessels (*b*) Neuroglia, the processes of the neuroglia-cells are arranged so as to support the nerve-fibres, which are without the usual neurolemmal nerve-sheaths

The general rule respecting the size of different parts of the cord is that each part is in direct proportion to the size and number of nerve-roots given off from it Thus the cord is very large in the middle and lower part of its cervical portion, whence arise the large nerve-roots for the formation of the brachial plexuses and the supply of the upper extremities, it again enlarges at the lowest part of the thoracic and the upper part of its lumbar portions, at the origins of the large nerves which, after forming the lumbar and sacral plexuses, are distributed to the lower extremities The chief cause of the greater size at these parts of the spinal cord is increase in the quantity of grey matter, the white part of the cord (especially the lateral columns) becomes gradually and progressively smaller from above downwards, because a certain number of fibres coming down from the brain pass into the spinal grey matter at different levels

Throughout the central nervous system large numbers of nerve-fibres become collected into bundles which subserve special functions and are called columns or tracts

Methods of investigating the Tracts of the Central Nervous System and the Spinal Roots

(*a*) The *embryological method* —It has been found by examining the spinal cord at different stages of its development that certain groups of the nerve-fibres put on their myelin sheath at earlier

periods than others, and so the different groups of fibres can be easily distinguished

(*b*) *Wallerian or degeneration method* —This method depends upon the fact that if a nerve-fibre is separated from its nerve-cell, it degenerates It consists in tracing the course of tracts of degenerated fibres, which result from an injury to any part of the central nervous system When fibres degenerate below a lesion, the tract is said to be one of *descending degeneration*, and when the fibres degenerate in the opposite direction, the tract is one of *ascending degeneration* By the modern methods employed in staining the central nervous system, it has proved comparatively easy to distinguish degenerated parts in sections of the cord and of other portions of the central nervous system Degenerated fibres have a different staining

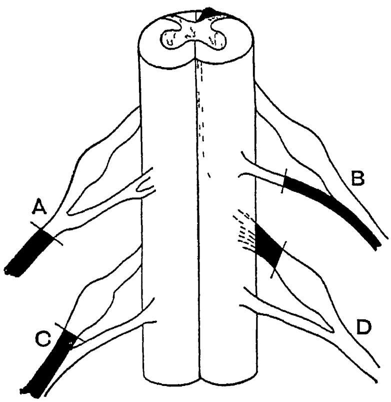


FIG 224 —Diagram to illustrate Wallerian degeneration of nerve roots

reaction from normal tissue when the sections are stained by the Weigert-Pal method, this consists in overstaining them in a special solution of hæmatoxylin, and then decolorising with potassium permanganate and sulphuric acid The degenerated fibres appear light yellow, whereas the healthy fibres remain a deep blue Marchi's osmic acid method has already been referred to on p 79 Accidents to the central nervous system in man have given us much information on this subject, but this has been supplemented and largely extended by experiments on animals, particularly on monkeys, and considerable light has been shed on the conduction of impulses to and from the nervous system by the study of the results of section of different parts of the central nervous system, and of the spinal nerve-roots

By the degeneration method it has been possible to show that

the anterior root is composed of the axons of cells in the anterior horn of the spinal cord and that the posterior root is composed of axons of cells which are situated in the ganglion of the posterior roots Separation of the axons from their parent cells results in degeneration of the axons These facts, made out by the elder Waller, are illustrated by fig 224 in which

A represents a section of the mixed nerve beyond the union of the roots, the whole nerve beyond the section degenerates, and is consequently shaded black in the figure

B represents the result of section of the anterior root, only the anterior root-fibres degenerate, the sensory fibres of the posterior root remain intact The small medullated nerve-fibres (not shown in the diagram) also degenerate as far as the ganglion cells of the sympathetic system with which they communicate

The recurrent sensory fibres in this root (see p 96) do not degenerate with the others, but are found degenerated in the part of the anterior root attached to the spinal cord

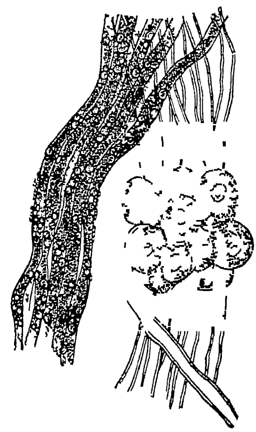


FIG 225 —Groups of fibres from the anterior and posterior roots several days after section of both roots close to the cord, the anterior fibres are degenerated, the posterior, being still in connection with the nerve cells from which they grew, are normal (Mrs Waller for Dr Waller)

Section of the posterior root always produces the same physiological effect (loss of sensation)* wherever the section is made, but the degeneration effect is different according as the section is made on the proximal or distal side of the ganglion If the section is made beyond the ganglion, the degeneration occurs as shown in C beyond the section in the peripheral portion of the posterior root-fibres, the anterior root remains intact except for the recurrent sensory fibres which it contains

If the section is made as in D (fig 224), the posterior roots degenerate between the ganglion and the cord, and if several posterior roots are so cut the degeneration may be traced into the cord Immediately above, the degenerated fibres will be found in the column of Burdach, higher up in the cord they will be less numerous, and will have approached the middle line, the fibres which enter the cord lowest get ultimately nearest the middle line, so that the greater part of the column of Goll is made up of sensory fibres from the

* In order to obtain any appreciable loss of motion or sensation, it is necessary to divide several roots (anterior or posterior as the case may be), as there is a good deal of overlapping in the peripheral distribution of the fibres In the case of the limbs, section of one or two roots may cause paralysis of individual muscles

legs, the fibres which enter the cord last, for instance those from the upper limbs and neck, pursue their upward course in the column of Burdach.

The accompanying figure (fig 226) shows the degeneration in a section of the spinal cord, after the division of a number of lower posterior nerve-roots on one side The microscopic section is taken high up, so that all the degenerated fibres have passed into the column of Goll on the same side, the medial set (1) are shaded differently from the lateral set (2), indicating that those nearest the middle line come from the lowest nerve-roots Those which cross to the opposite side soon after entrance into the cord, are not shown, they will be found forming a scattered degeneration in the ascending tracts of the other side In addition to the degeneration of the posterior columns, such section of the posterior roots causes a degeneration of a few fibres which descend in the cord to lower segments, called the comma tract

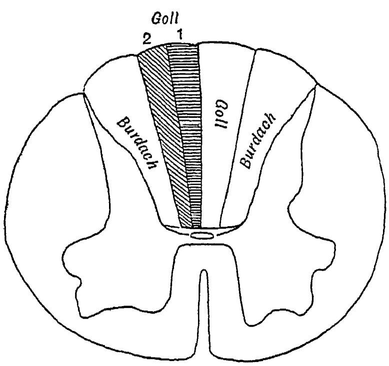


FIG 226 —Degeneration in column of Goll after section of posterior nerve roots

We may pass from this to consider the tracts of degeneration that occur when the spinal cord is cut right across in the thoracic region Some tracts will be found degenerated in the piece of cord below the lesion, these consist of nerve-fibres that are connected with the nerve-cells in the brain, the principal ones are the pyramidal tracts Other tracts are found degenerated in the piece of cord above the lesion, these consist of nerve-fibres that are connected with the nerve-cells of the spinal ganglia, or with the cells of the spinal cord itself below the lesion, and are passing upwards

In general terms we may say that the tracts which degenerate downwards are the efferent or motor tracts, and those which degenerate upwards are the afferent or sensory channels We must also take into account groups of association fibres which unite different regions of the cord, these are generally short tracts in which, therefore, degeneration can only be traced a short distance up or down

Fig 227 shows in a schematic way the manner in which the fibres of the two roots of a spinal nerve are connected to the grey matter in the cord

1, 2, 3, 4 represent four cells of the **anterior horn** Each gives rise to an axis-cylinder process A, one of which is shown terminating in its final ramification in the end-plate of a muscle-fibre M Each of these four cells is further surrounded by an arborisation (synapse) derived from the fibres of the pyramidal

tract P, which comes down from the brain The pyramidal fibres really terminate round the cells at the base of the posterior horn, these cells therefore act as intermediate cell-stations on the way to those in the anterior horn They are omitted from the diagram to avoid confusion (see, however, fig 41, p 68)

A fibre of the **posterior root** is also shown, this originates from the cell G of a spinal ganglion, the process of this cell bifurcates, one branch (B) passing to the periphery, where it ends in an arborescence in the skin (S), the arrow by the side of this branch represents the direction of conduction of the sensory impulses from the skin An arrow in the opposite direction would indicate the direction of its growth The other branch (C) passes into the spinal cord, where it again bifurcates, the branch E, a short one, passes downwards and ends in an arborisa-

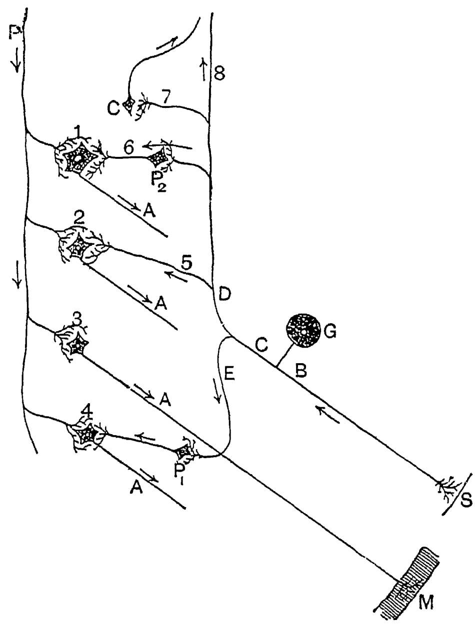


FIG 227 —Course of nerve-fibres in spinal cord (After Schafer)

tion round one of the small cells (P_1) of the posterior cornu, from which a new axis-cylinder arises, and terminates round one or more of the multipolar cells (4) of the anterior horn

The main division D travels up in the posterior column of the cord, and ends in grey matter at various levels Some collaterals (5) possibly terminate by arborising directly round the anterior cornual cells, principally of the same side, but the majority (6) do so with an intermediate cell-station in a posterior cornual cell (P_2), others (7) arborise round the cells of Clarke's column (C) in the thoracic region of the cord, and from these cells fresh axis cylinders carry up the impulse to the cerebellum in what are called the cerebellar tracts, while the main fibre (8) may terminate in any of these ways at a higher level in the cord, or above the cord in the medulla oblongata A certain number of posterior root-fibres, however, cross the middle line and pursue their way up to the bulb in the ascending tracts of the opposite side of the cord

Descending Tracts

(1) *Crossed pyramidal tract* —This is situated in the lateral column on the outer side of the posterior cornu of grey matter At the lower part of the spinal cord it extends to the margin, but higher up it becomes displaced from this position by the interpolation of another tract of fibres, to be presently described, viz, the direct cerebellar tract Its shape varies in different regions of the cord, and its size diminishes from the cervical region downwards, fibres passing off as they descend, to arborise round the nerve-cells of

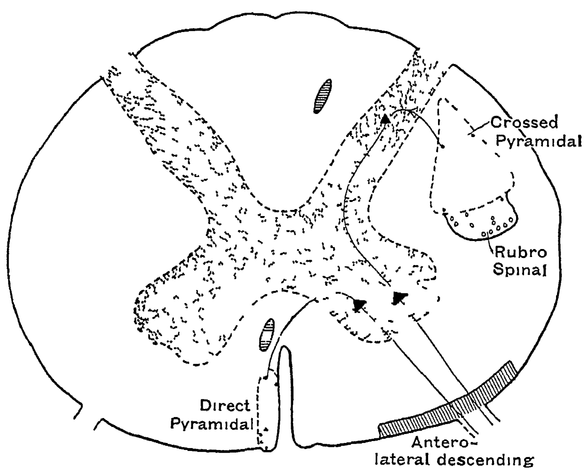


FIG 228 —Tracts of descending degeneration For the sake of clearness each is shown on only one side The lines indicate how the tracts are connected to the anterior roots (After Schafer)

the posterior horn The fibres of which this tract is composed are moderately large, but are mixed with some that are smaller

(2) *Direct or uncrossed pyramidal tract* —This is situated by the side of the anterior fissure Its fibres cross at intervals to the opposite side as far as the lower thoracic region

The two pyramidal tracts, which are concerned with the performance of voluntary movements, come down from the brain

Mingled with the fibres of the crossed pyramidal tract are a few fibres of the pyramid which have not crossed in the medulla oblongata, and are therefore derived from the same side of the cerebrum (*uncrossed cerebro-spinal fibres*)

The pyramidal fibres are not found at all in vertebrates below the mammals In the lower mammals they are very few, and in some rodents (rat, mouse, guinea-pig) they are placed in the posterior

columns The direct pyramidal tract is found only in man and the higher apes

(3) *Antero-lateral descending tract, or tract of Loewenthal,* lies by the side of the anterior median fissure, and extends along the margin of the cord towards the lateral column It contains important vestibulo-spinal fibres which arise mainly from Deiters' nucleus *via* the posterior longitudinal bundle of the medulla oblongata and which are concerned with the maintenance of reflex tone, especially of the extensor muscles The fibres of the tract end by synapses in the anterior horn Section of the vestibulo-spinal tract abolishes decerebrate rigidity

(4) *Rubro-spinal or pre-pyramidal tract*—This is situated just in front of the crossed pyramidal tract Its origin is in the cells of the opposite red nucleus in the mid-brain, hence its name, rubro-spinal It crosses in the mid-brain at the decussation of Forel Its fibres end by arborisations in the grey matter about the middle of the crescent Section of this tract together with the pyramidal tract causes decerebrate rigidity, but there are differences in different animals In man, disease of the pyramidal tract produces an analogous condition in the limbs at least

(5) *Bundle of Helweg or Olivo-spinal tract*—These fibres can be traced from the olivary body in the medulla oblongata, and pass down in the anterior part of the lateral column in the cervical region

(6) *Short tracts in the posterior column*—These are (*a*) the *Comma* tract, though this degenerates downwards, it is in reality a sensory tract, being composed, as we have already seen, of the branches of the entering posterior root-fibres which pass downwards on entering the cord It is found only for a comparatively short distance below the actual lesion (*b*) *Septomarginal fibres*, these are few in number, and are mainly found near the median fissure, where they constitute the *oval bundle*, and near the posterior surface, where they form the *median triangular bundle* These are doubtless short association tracts, and are mixed with others, especially in the ventral part of the posterior column, which have an "ascending" course

Ascending Tracts

(1) *Postero-median column, or column of Goll*—This consists of fibres derived from the posterior roots of the sacral, lumbar, and lower thoracic nerves These fibres enter the postero-lateral column, and gradually pass towards the mid-line, as already explained They end in the grey matter of the nucleus gracilis of the bulb

(2) *Postero-lateral column, or column of Burdach*—Many of the fibres of this tract, which is also composed of the entering posterior nerve-roots, pass into the grey matter of the cord either immediately on entrance, or in their course upwards The rest continue upwards to the medulla oblongata, but those from the lower roots pass into the column of Goll, as just stated, those from the upper roots continue to travel upwards in the column of Burdach, and end in

the grey matter of the nucleus cuneatus in the medulla oblongata The columns of Goll and Burdach are concerned with the conveyance of impulses underlying the sensations of movement and position, and also of touch and the sense of vibration

(3) *Dorsal or direct cerebellar tract, or tract of Flechsig*—This is found in the cervical and thoracic regions of the cord, and is situated between the crossed pyramidal tract and the margin It degenerates on injury or section of the cord itself, but not on section of the posterior nerve-roots In other words, its fibres are endogenous, *i e*, arise from cells within the grey matter of the cord, these cells are those of Clarke's column of the same side, the

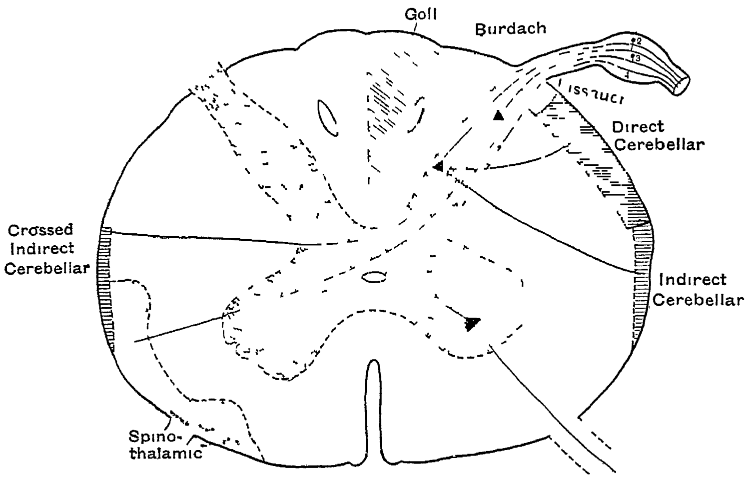


FIG 229 —Tracts of ascending degeneration, shown on one side of the cord only (After Schafer) The lines indicate the axons which connect the tracts with the posterior nerve roots

tract conveys afferent impulses which do not reach consciousness but which are concerned with the co-ordination and tone of muscles

(4) *Antero-lateral ascending tract*—This is situated in front of the crossed pyramidal tract in the lumbar region, while in the thoracic and cervical regions it forms a narrow band at the margin of the cord, curving round even into the anterior column Its fibres intermingle with those of the antero-lateral descending tract, and consist of three sets (*a*) The *indirect or ventral spino-cerebellar tract of Gowers* * arises from the cells of Clarke's column of the same side, to some extent from those of the opposite side Its fibres reach the cerebellum for the most part through the superior peduncle, which they enter by curving backwards just above the

* Gowers originally described an antero-lateral tract to the cerebellum only

place of exit of the fifth nerve, but some enter the inferior peduncle. The tract conveys impulses which do not reach consciousness, but which, like those of the dorsal cerebellar tract, are concerned with the maintenance of reflex tone and co-ordination of muscles. (*b*) The *spino-thalamic tract* is an important constituent of the antero-lateral ascending. Its fibres arise from the cells of the middle and base of the posterior cornu of the opposite side. Above they can be traced to the thalamus. The tract can be divided functionally into a dorsal part conveying impulses of pain, heat, and cold, and a ventral portion, situated in the anterior column, conveying impulses of touch and pressure. This separation of the pain fibres in the tract makes it possible for the surgeon to cut these fibres in states involving prolonged pain. The fibres may also become separately involved in disease of the spinal cord. (*c*) The *spino-tectal fibres* arise from the cells of the posterior horn of the opposite side. They end in the corpora quadrigemina.

(5) *Tract of Lissauer.*—This is a small tract of ascending fibres situated at the outer side of the tip of the posterior horn. They consist of the spinal branches of the entering posterior root-fibres, and can be traced into the grey matter of the posterior horn.

Association Fibres in the Spinal Cord

Some of the short tracts already alluded to as demonstrable in the spinal cord are bundles of association fibres which connect its different levels together. The main difficulty of investigating them by the degeneration method has arisen from the fact that they are largely intermingled with, and so are hard to distinguish from, the long tracts which connect brain and cord together. Their presence has been demonstrated by Sherrington by the method of successive degeneration. The spinal cord of a dog was completely divided across, and the animal was kept alive for a considerable time afterwards; sufficient time was allowed to elapse (roughly about a year) for all traces of the degeneration due to this lesion to have disappeared. The cord was then left, as it were, like a cleaned slate, on which once more a new degeneration could be written without fear of confusion with a previous one. The second degeneration produced by such an operation as hemisection could then affect the intra-spinal fibres only, all the long tracts from brain to cord having been wiped out by the first operation. The complete topography of all these fibres, which are very numerous, has not yet been worked out.

CHAPTER XLIV

STRUCTURE OF THE BULB, PONS, AND MID-BRAIN

Anterior Aspect

THE bulb is larger than the spinal cord, and enlarges as it goes up until it terminates in the still larger pons (fig 230, *p*) The columns of the bulb are, speaking roughly, continuations upwards of those of the cord, but there is in each a considerable rearrangement of the fibres Thus the prominent columns in the middle line, called the *pyramids* (*a* *a*), are composed of the fibres of the pyramidal tract (see fig 230)

On the outer side of each pyramid is an oval prominence (*c* *c*), which is not represented in the spinal cord at all These are called the *olivary bodies* or *olives*, they consist of white matter outside, with grey and white matter in their interior

The *restiform bodies* at the sides (*d* *d*) are the continuation upwards of those fibres from cord and bulb which enter the cerebellum, and the upper part of each restiform body is called the *inferior peduncle of the cerebellum*

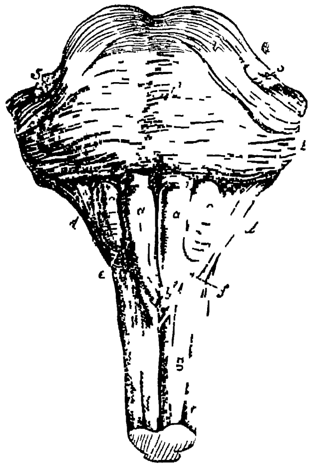


FIG 230 —Ventral or anterior surface of the pons Varolii, and medulla oblongata *a*, *a*, pyramids, *b*, their decussation, *c*, *c*, olivary bodies, *d*, *d*, restiform bodies, *e*, arcuate fibres, *f*, fibres passing from the anterior column of the cord to the cerebellum, *g*, anterior column of the spinal cord, *h*, lateral column, *p*, pons, *i*, its upper fibres, 5, 5, roots of the fifth (trigeminal) pair of nerves

Posterior Aspect

On the posterior aspect (see figs 231 and 232) are seen the continuations upwards of the columns of Goll and Burdach on each side of the median fissure The central canal of the cord gets nearer

and nearer to the dorsal surface of the bulb, till at last it opens out on its back, and its surrounding grey matter is spread out to form the floor of *the fourth ventricle* The two upper boundaries of the diamond-shaped space are made by the superior peduncles of the cerebellum, the two lower boundaries of the space are made by the diverging posterior columns Superiorly the fourth ventricle is joined with the third ventricle by the aqueduct of Sylvius

The Internal Structure of the Bulb, Pons, and Mid-Brain

The white matter consists of tracts or bundles of fibres running up and down between the brain and the cord The most important stretch of grey matter is composed of groups of nerve-cells or nuclei of the cerebral nerves There are twelve pairs of cerebral nerves, and of these the last eight pairs originate from the floor of the fourth ventricle or the neighbouring grey matter

The following is a list of the cranial nerves —

1 *Olfactory* —This is the nerve of smell

2 *Optic* —This is the nerve of sight

3 *Oculo-motor*
4 *Trochlear*
6 *Abducens*
} These three nerves supply the muscles of the eyeball

5 *Trigeminal* —This is the great sensory nerve of the face and head Its smaller motor division supplies the muscles of mastication and a few other muscles also

7 *Facial* —This is mainly the motor nerve of the face muscles, but contains some sensory fibres, including those of taste

8 *Auditory* —This is divided into two parts, one of which, called the *cochlear* nerve, is the true nerve of hearing, and is distributed to the cochlea of the internal ear, the other division, called the *vestibular* nerve, is distributed to the vestibule and semicircular canals of the internal ear, and is concerned in the appreciation of movement and the position of the head

9 *Glosso-pharyngeal* —This is a mixed nerve, its motor fibres pass to certain of the pharyngeal muscles, its sensory fibres are mainly concerned in the sense of taste

10 *Vagus or pneumogastric* —This is a nerve with varied efferent and afferent functions, its branches pass to pharynx, larynx, œsophagus, stomach, lungs, heart, intestines, liver and spleen We have already studied its functions in connection with those organs

11 *Spinal Accessory*—The internal branch of this nerve blends with the vagus, and its larger external division supplies the trapezius and the sterno-cleido-mastoid muscles

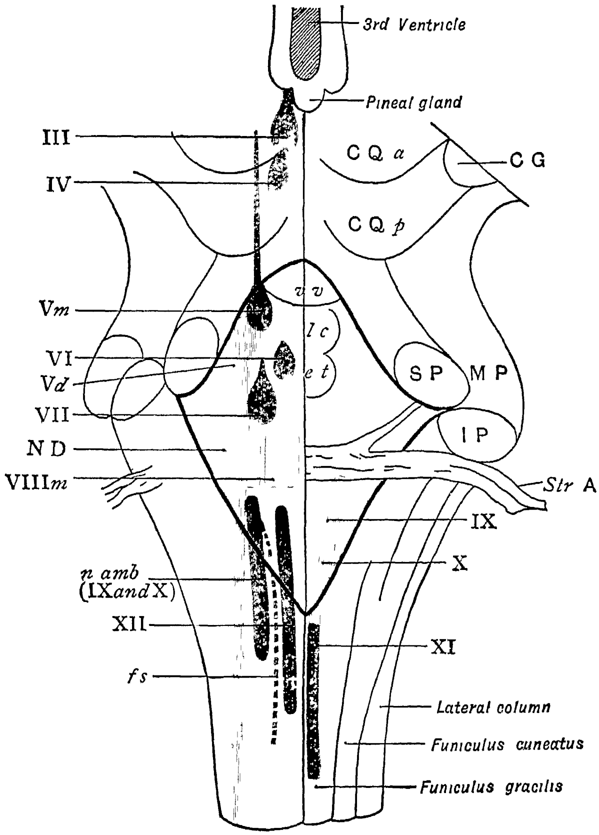


FIG 231 —Diagram to show the position of the nuclei of the cerebral nerves (after Sherrington) The medulla and pons are viewed from the dorsal aspect, the cerebrum and cerebellum having been cut away The nuclei (sensory coloured red, and motor blue) are represented as being seen through trans parent material C Q , *a* , anterior corpus quadrigeminum [superior colliculus], C Q *p* , posterior corpus quadrigeminum [inferior colliculus], C G , corpus geniculatum internum, *v v* , value of Vieussens , *l c* , locus cœruleus , *e t* , eminentia teres, *str* A , striæ acusticæ of eighth nerve S P , M P , and I P , superior, middle, and inferior cerebellar peduncles respectively cut through The numerals III to XII indicate the nuclei of the respective cerebral nerves, all shown on the left side except the accessory vago glosso pharyngeal IX , X , XI , which to avoid confusion is placed on the right side Vm is the motor nucleus of the fifth nerve, V*d* , the sensory nucleus of the same nerve with its long descending root, VIII*m* , the median nucleus of the auditory nerve, N D Nucleus of Deiters, *n amb* nucleus ambiguus The position of the descending root of the ninth and tenth (fasciculus solitarius) is also indicated (*f s*)

12 *Hypoglossal* —This is the motor nerve to the tongue muscles

A mere enumeration of the nerves connected to the bulb

shows how supremely important this small area of the brain is for carrying on the organic functions of life It contains centres which regulate deglutition, vomiting, the secretion of saliva, etc, respiration, the heart's movements, and the calibre of the blood-vessels

When we further consider that the various centres are connected by groups of association fibres, we at once realise the reason for the complexity of the structures where all this busy traffic takes place

In the enumeration of the cerebral nerves, it will be noticed that many of them are either wholly motor or wholly sensory, and that some of them, like the spinal nerves, have a double function The motor fibres start as axons from the nerve-cells in the grey matter of this region, just as the motor fibres in the spinal nerves originate from the cells of the spinal grey matter There is a corresponding resemblance in the origin of the sensory fibres of the cerebral and spinal nerves In the latter, it will be remembered, they originate as outgrowths from the cells of the spinal ganglia, one branch growing to the periphery, and the other to the spinal cord, where it terminates after a more or less extended course by forming synapses with the cells of the grey matter In the sensory cerebral nerves the fibres have a corresponding origin in peripheral ganglia, and those branches which grow towards the bulb terminate by arborising round special groups of cells spoken of as the sensory nuclei

The diagram on p 633 (fig 231) roughly indicates the position of these nuclei, the motor nuclei are coloured blue, and the sensory red It must, however, be clearly recognised that while the motor nuclei are true centres of origin, the so-called sensory nuclei are groups of cells round which the entering sensory fibres arborise, these cells do not give origin to the axons of the sensory nerves, but their axis-cylinders pass in various directions, many accompanying the fillet to the thalamus.

We see that the so-called sensory nuclei (coloured red) are in the minority, they comprise the sensory nucleus of the fifth nerve with its long descending root, the nuclei of the eighth nerve (only one of which, VIII*m*, is seen in the diagram), and the glosso-pharyngeal and vagal portions of a long strand of nerve-cells called the *combined nucleus* of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh nerves The remaining nuclei (coloured blue) are efferent, and may be principally arranged in two groups — (1) the nuclei of the third, fourth, sixth, and twelfth nerves, which are close to the middle line, and (2) the motor nucleus of the fifth, the nucleus of the seventh, and the nucleus ambiguus (motor nucleus of the ninth and tenth nerves) which form a line more lateral in position

It should be added that, except a portion of the optic nerve-fibres, a few fibres of the third, and the whole of the fourth nerves, none of the fibres of the cerebral nerves cross to the opposite side

Transverse Sections of the Brain-Stem

We will limit ourselves to seven transverse sections, the levels of which are indicated in the following diagram (fig 232) The cerebellum has been bisected into two halves and turned outwards, its upper peduncles having been cut through to render the parts more evident. The positions of the sections are indicated by the transverse lines numbered 1 to 7

First section (fig 233) **Through the region of the decussation of the pyramids** at the lowest level of the bulb The similarity to the cervical cord will be at once recognised, the passage of the pyramidal fibres (P) from the anterior part of the bulb to the crossed pyramidal tract of the opposite side of the

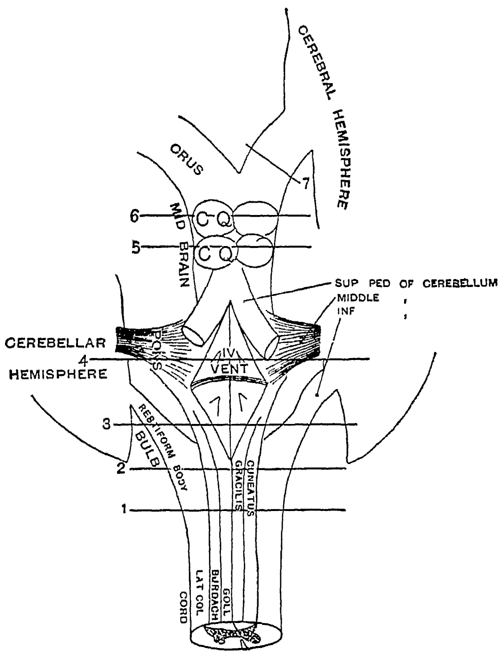


FIG 232 —Diagrammatic representation of dorsal aspect of medulla, pons, and mid brain

cord cuts off the tip of anterior horn (A), which in sections higher up appears as an isolated mass of grey matter, called the *lateral nucleus* (fig 234 *n l*) The V formed by the two posterior horns is opened out, and thus the grey matter with the central canal is brought nearer to the dorsal aspect of the bulb, the tip of the cornu swells out to form the *substantia gelatinosa of Rolando* (R), which causes a prominence on the surface called the *tubercle of Rolando*, G and C are the *funiculi gracilis* and *cuneatus* respectively, the continuations upwards of the columns of Goll and Burdach

Second section (fig 234) **Above the pyramidal decussation** —Beginning in the middle line at the top of the diagram, we see first the posterior median fissure (*p m f*), below which is the grey matter enclosing the central canal (*c c*), and containing the nuclei of the eleventh and twelfth nerves, the funiculus gracilis (*f g*) comes next, and then the funiculus cuneatus (*f c*), these two

funiculi now have grey matter in their interior, these masses of grey matter are called respectively *nucleus gracilis* (*n g*) and *nucleus cuneatus* (*n c*), the fibres which have ascended the posterior columns of the cord terminate by arborising round the cells of this grey matter, the fibres from the lower part of the body end in the nucleus gracilis, and those from the upper part of the body in the nucleus cuneatus These nuclei form a most important position of relay in the course of the afferent fibres from cord to brain The new fibres (the second relay of the sensory spinal path) arising from the cells of these nuclei pass in a number of different directions, and break up the rest of the grey matter into what is called the *formatio reticularis* (*f r*)

The nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus are often spoken of as the *posterior column nuclei*, they do not receive all the ascending branches of the posterior root-fibres, for a number of these branches have already entered the grey matter and arborised amongst its cells in the spinal cord itself The cells of the posterior column nuclei are of moderate size, and their axons pass as *internal arcuate fibres* into the reticular formation between the two olivary bodies, which is known as the *inter-olivary layer* They cross the median raphe dorsal to the pyramids, and then turn upwards towards the upper parts of the brain, and so constitute what is known as the *fillet* or *lemniscus* In the higher parts of the bulb and pons, this tract is reinforced by fibres from the cells of the sensory nuclei of the cerebral nerves The fillet becomes a longitudinal bundle, which passes upwards to the thalamus, which forms the next cell-station on the path of the sensory impulses to the cortex

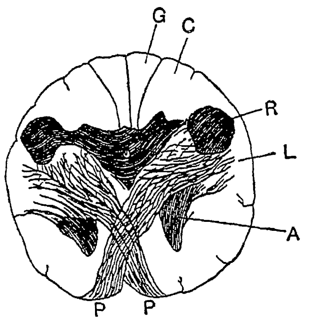


Fig 233 —Section through the bulb at the level of the decussation of the pyramids G, funiculus gracilis, continuation of column of Goll, C, funiculus cuneatus, continuation of column of Burdach, R, substantia gelatinosa of Rolando, continuation of posterior horn of spinal cord, L, continuation of lateral column of cord, A, remains of part of the anterior horn, separated from the rest of the grey matter by the pyramidal fibres P, which are crossing from the pyramid of the medulla to the posterior part of the lateral column of the opposite side of the cord (After L Clarke)

Other points to be noticed in the section are the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando (*g*) (representing the tip of the posterior cornu of the cord), now separated from the surface by the descending root of the fifth nerve (*d V*), the lateral nucleus (*n l*) (remains of the anterior cornu of the cord), the lower part of the grey matter of the olivary body (*o*, *o′*), and most anteriorly the *pyramid* (*py*)

Third section (fig 235) **At the middle of the olivary body, and through the lower part of the floor of the fourth ventricle** The central canal has now opened out into the fourth ventricle, and the grey matter on its floor contains the nuclei of the twelfth and tenth nerves, bundles of the fibres of these nerves course through the substance of the bulb, leaving it at the places indicated in the diagram

The nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus are pushed into a more lateral position, and higher up are replaced by small masses of grey matter mingled with nerve-fibres (*nucleus posterior*), the *restiform body* (*C r*) now forms a well-marked prominence, and the olivary body is well seen with its *dentate nucleus*, from the open mouth of this corrugated layer of grey matter a large number of fibres issues, passing through the raphe, they course as internal arcuate fibres to the opposite restiform body, and thus to the cerebellum, some pass to the restiform body of the same side, the continuation of the direct cerebellar tract of the cord also passes into the restiform body Its fibres terminate by arborisations round Purkinje's cells in the *vermis* of the cerebellum The continuation of the tract of Gowers lies just dorsal to the olivary body The *funiculus solitarius* and *nucleus ambiguus* are also seen in this section, and are respectively the sensory terminations of fibres of the seventh, ninth, and tenth nerves and the combined motor nucleus of the ninth and tenth

Fourth section (fig 236) **Through the middle of the pons** —Shows much the same kind of arrangement as in the upper part of the bulb The general appearance of the section is, however, modified by a number of transversely coursing bundles of fibres, most of which are passing to the cerebellar hemispheres and form the middle cerebellar peduncles Intermingled with these is a considerable amount of grey matter (*nucleus pontis*)

From the cells of the nucleus pontis, the fibres of the middle peduncle take origin, and many fibres and collaterals of the pyramidal tract arborise round them The continuation of the pyramids (*py*) is embedded between these transverse bundles The pyramidal fibres which terminate in the pons are situated postero-laterally, and are spoken of as *cortico-pontine* in contradistinction to

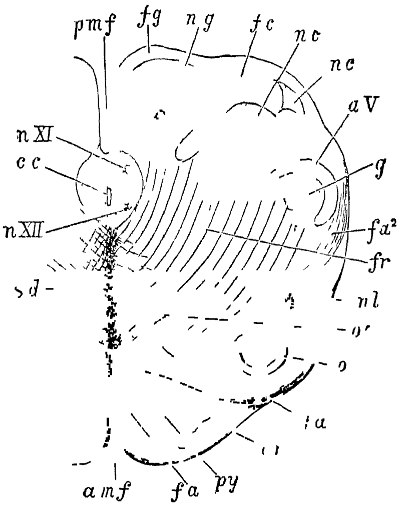


FIG 234 —Transverse section of the medulla oblongata in the region of the decussation of the fillet *a m f*, Anterior median fissure, *f a*, superficial arcuate fibres, *py*, pyramid, *n a r*, nuclei of arcuate fibres, *f a*¹, deep arcuate fibres becoming superficial, *o*, *o'*, lower end of olivary nucleus, *n l*, nucleus lateralis, *f r*, formatio reticularis, *f a*², arcuate fibres proceeding from the formatio reticularis, *g*, substantia gelatinosa of Rolando, *d V*, descending root of fifth nerve, *f c*, funiculus cuneatus, *n c*, nucleus cuneatus, *n c'*, external cuneate nucleus, *n g*, nucleus gracilis, *f g*, funiculus gracilis, *p m f*, posterior median fissure, *c c*, central canal surrounded by grey matter, in which are *n XI*, nucleus of the eleventh and *n XII*, nucleus of the twelfth nerve, *s d*, decussation of fillet (Modified from Schwalbe)

those of the pyramidal tract proper (*cortico-spinal*) which pass down through the pons to the cord

The pyramidal bundles are separated from the reticular formation by deeper transverse fibres, which constitute what is known as the *trapezium* (*t*) These fibres belong to a different system, and form part of the central auditory path, some of them connect the auditory nuclei of the two sides together The larger olivary nucleus is no longer seen, but one or two small collections of grey matter (*o s*) represent it and constitute the *superior olivary nucleus* These as well as a collection of nerve-cells in the trapezium (*nucleus of the trapezium*) are connected with fibres of the trapezium, while some of their axons pass into the adjacent lateral part of the fillet

The *nucleus of Deiters* (*n VIII*, fig 236) begins to appear in the upper part of the bulb, and extends into the pons, it lies near the floor of the ventricle, a little mesial to the restiform body The nerve-fibres connected with its cells pass

towards the middle line, and enter the *posterior longitudinal bundle*, which is more clearly seen in the next two sections (fig 237) This bundle of fibres connects Deiters' nucleus, the nucleus of the third and sixth nerves, and the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord The fibres which pass into it from Deiters' nucleus bifurcate, one branch passing upwards to arborise round the cells mainly of the oculo-motor nucleus of the opposite side, the other extends downwards through the bulb into the cord, where it is found as the vestibulo-spinal tract in the antero-lateral descending tract of each side The fibres end in synapses round the anterior horn cells

The nerves which are connected with the grey matter of this region of the pons are the sixth, seventh, and eighth, as shown in the diagram The nuclei in

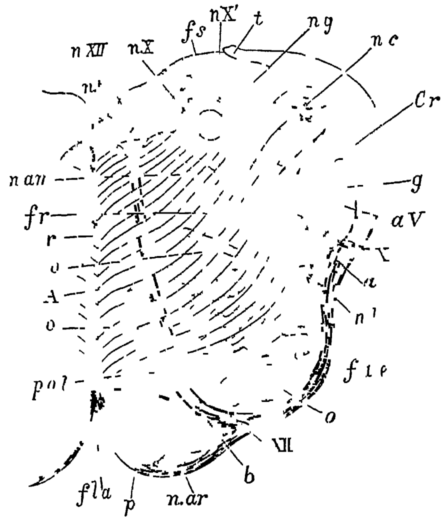


FIG 235 —Section of the medulla oblongata at about the middle of the olivary body *f l a*, Anterior median fissure, *n.ar*, nucleus arcuatus, *p*, pyramid, *XII*, bundle of hypoglossal nerve emerging from the surface, at *b*, it is seen coursing between the pyramid and the olivary nucleus, *o*, *f a e*, external arcuate fibres, *n l*, nucleus lateralis, *a.*, arcuate fibres passing towards restiform body, partly through the substantia gelatinosa, *g*, partly superficial to the descending root of the fifth nerve, *d V*, *X*, bundle of vagus root emerging, *f r*, formatio reticularis, *C r*, corpus restiforme, beginning to be formed, chiefly by arcuate fibres, superficial and deep, *n c*, nucleus cuneatus, *n g*, nucleus gracilis, *t*, attachment of the ligula [tænia ventriculi quarti], *f s*, funiculus solitarius, *n. X*, *n X'*, two parts of the vagus nucleus, *n XII*, hypoglossal nucleus, *n t*, nucleus of the funiculus teres, *n am*, nucleus ambiguus, *r*, raphe, *A*, continuation of the anterior column of cord, *o'*, *o''*, accessory olivary nucleus, *p o l*, pedunculus olivæ (Modified from Schwalbe)

connection with the fifth nerve are higher up, where the floor of the ventricle is again narrowing At last, in the region of the mid-brain, we once more get a canal (Sylvian aqueduct) which corresponds to the central canal of the spinal cord

Fifth and Sixth sections Through the mid-brain —These are drawn on a smaller scale than the others we have been examining, they represent the actual size of the sections obtained from the human subject

Near the middle is the *Sylvian aqueduct*, with its lining of ciliated epithelium In the grey matter which surrounds it are large nerve-cells from which the fourth nerve, and higher up the third nerve, originate, the fibres of the third nerve are seen issuing from these in fig 237, B, III The reticular formation of the pons is continued up into the mid-brain, and is called the *tegmentum* It is composed of both longitudinal and transverse bundles of fibres intermingled with grey

matter Its transverse fibres include those of the superior peduncles of the cerebellum which decussate in the middle line (fig 237, A, S C P)

Another important longitudinal bundle in the tegmentum is the fillet. This,

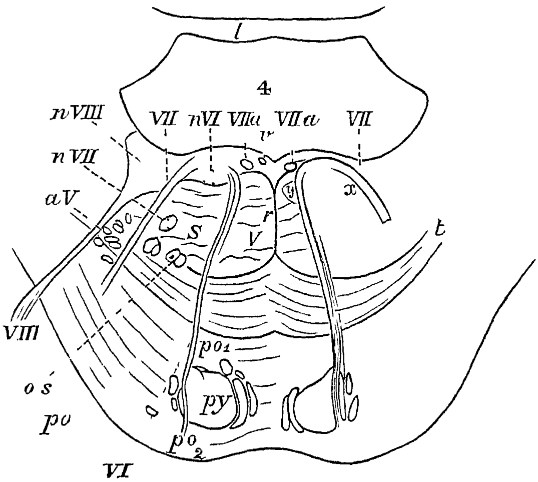


FIG 236 —Section across the pons, about the middle of the fourth ventricle *py*, Pyramidal bundles, *po*, transverse fibres passing po_1 behind, and po_2, in front of *py*, *r*, raphe, *o s*, superior olive, *a.V*, bundles of motor root of *V* nerve enclosed in a prolongation of the substance of Rolando, *t*, trapezium, *VI*, the sixth nerve, *n VI*, its nucleus, *VII*, facial nerve, *VII a.*, intermediate portion, *n VII*, its nucleus, *VIII*, auditory nerve, *n VIII*, Deiters' nucleus, formerly called the lateral nucleus of the auditory (After Quain)

we have seen, is the longitudinal continuation of the internal arcuate fibres, which, starting from the cells of the posterior column nuclei of the opposite side, form the second relay on the sensory path, to these fibres others are added which

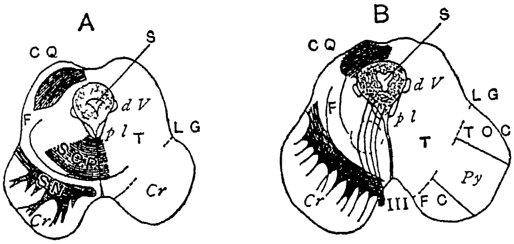


FIG 237 —Outline of two sections across the mid brain A, through the middle of the inferior, B, through the middle of the superior corpora quadrigemina, C Q *Cr*, crusta, S.N, substantia nigra —shown only on one side, T, tegmentum, S, Sylvian aqueduct, with its surrounding grey matter, L G, lateral groove, *p l*, posterior longitudinal bundle, *d V*, mesencephalic root of the fifth nerve, S C P, superior cerebellar peduncle, F, fillet, III, third nerve The dotted circle in B represents the situation of the tegmental or red nucleus In B the three divisions of the crusta are indicated on one side The pyramidal fibres (*Py*) are in the middle, and the fronto cerebellar (F C) and temporo occipito cerebellar (T O C) at the sides (After Schafer)

originate from other masses of grey matter in bulb and pons In the mid-brain the fillet divides into three bundles, termed the *lateral*, the *upper*, and the *mesial fillet*

(1) *The lateral fillet* is chiefly formed by fibres derived from the accessory acoustic, the superior olivary, and trapezoid nuclei of the opposite side Some of its fibres terminate by synapses round a new collection of cells (the *lateral*

fillet nucleus), the axons of which pass inwards towards the raphe The rest of its fibres can be traced to the grey matter of the inferior corpora quadrigemina

(2) *The upper fillet* consists of fibres which go to the superior corpora quadrigemina and partly to the tegmental region of the mid-brain and optic thalamus

(3) *The mesial fillet* goes on through the tegmentum of the pedunculus cerebri, and its fibres terminate round the cells of the thalamus, and the subthalamic region. From here fresh axons forming a new relay continue the afferent impulses to the cortex of the cerebrum

The mesial fillet is the important link in this region between the sensory *spinal* nerves and the part of the brain which is the seat of those processes we call sensations But most of the fibres which continue the sensory path of the *cerebral* nerves form another less well-defined tract (*the central tract of the sensory cerebral nerves*) which lies dorsal to the fillet, but terminates like it in the subthalamic region and thalamus, whence a new relay carries on the impulses to the cortex

Within the tegmentum is grey matter known as the red nucleus, and on its ventral aspect is a layer of grey matter, of which the cells are deeply pigmented, hence it is called the *substantia nigra* (S N), which receives many collaterals from the pyramidal bundles

The white matter on the ventral side of this is known as the *crusta* (*Cr*) or *pes* It is here that the pyramidal bundles are situated, these occupy its middle three-fifths (*Py*) The mesial fifth is occupied by fibres passing from the frontal region of the cerebrum to the pons, and thence to the cerebellum, hence they are called *fronto-cerebellar* fibres The fibres occupying the lateral fifth are usually spoken of as *temporo-occipital cerebellar* fibres, but there is no certainty as yet regarding their origin or functions

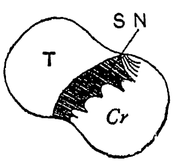


FIG 288 —Section through peduncle of cerebrum *Cr*, crusta, S N , substantia nigra, T, tegmentum

The four *corpora quadrigemina* are formed mainly of grey matter, from each superior corpus a bundle of white fibres passes upwards and forwards to the geniculate bodies, eventually joining the optic tract of the same side In the tegmentum ventral to the superior C quadrigemina lies the red nucleus which gives rise to the rubro-spinal tract It is connected with the cerebellum, the thalamus, and the cerebral cortex

The cells of the grey matter of the corpora quadrigemina differ greatly in form and size, the destination of their axons is not precisely known, but some pass ventralwards, cross at the raphe, and constitute the *fountain decussation of Meynert*, after decussation they form the main mass of the *ventral longitudinal bundle*, this gives off collaterals to the nuclei of the three nerves that supply the eye muscles, and then runs ventro-laterally to the posterior longitudinal bundle, with which its fibres ultimately mix in the antero-lateral descending tract of the spinal cord

Seventh section Through the crus —It is made up of *crusta* (which contains the motor fibres), *tegmentum* (which contains the sensory fibres, especially the bundle called the mesial fillet), and the *substantia nigra*, the grey matter which separates them

CHAPTER XLV

STRUCTURE OF THE CEREBELLUM

THE cerebellum is composed of an elongated central portion or lobe, called the vermis, which connects together two hemispheres

The cerebellum is composed of white and grey matter, the latter, like that of the cerebrum, being external, and like it, infolded, so that a larger area may be contained in a limited space The tree-like

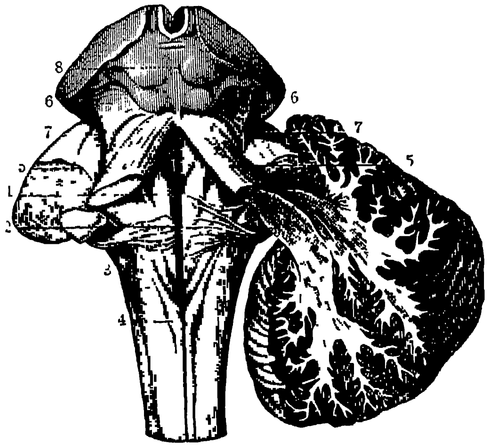


FIG 239 – Cerebellum in section and fourth ventricle, with the [illegible] parts [illegible], Me[illegible] groove of fourth ventricle, ending [illegible] ormed by the *fasciculi teretes* [en [illegible] place where the white streaks of [illegible] tricle, 3, inferior peduncle of the [illegible] form body, 4, funiculus gracilis, above this is the calamus scriptorius, 5, superior peduncle of cerebellum, 6, 6, fillet to the side of the crura cerebri, 7, 7, lateral grooves of the pedunculi cerebri, 8, corpora quadrigemina (From Sappey, after Hirschfeld and Leveillé)

arrangement of the white matter on section has given rise to the name *arbor vitæ* Besides the grey substance on the surface, there are, in the centre of the white substance of each hemisphere, small masses of grey matter, the largest of which, called the *corpus dentatum* (fig 240, *cd*), resembles very closely the *corpus dentatum* of the olivary body in appearance Other important nuclei are the nuclei globosus and embolipour, which are more centrally placed and which are connected with the rubro-spinal tract

In a section through the cerebellar cortex the following layers can be seen Underneath the pia mater is the *external layer* of grey matter, it is formed chiefly of fine nerve fibres with small nerve-cells scattered through it Into its outer part, processes of pia mater pass vertically, these convey blood-vessels

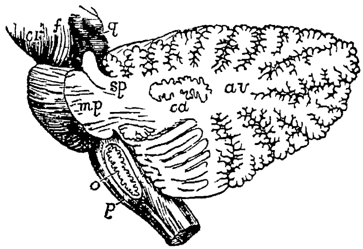


FIG 240 —Outline sketch of a section of the cerebellum, showing the corpus dentatum The section has been carried through the left lateral part of the pons, so as to divide the superior peduncle and pass nearly through the middle of the left cerebellar hemisphere The olivary body has also been divided longitudinally so as to expose in section its *corpus dentatum* *cr*, Pedunculus cerebri, *f*, fillet, *q*, corpora quadrigemina, *sp*, superior peduncle of the cerebellum divided, *mp*, middle peduncle or lateral part of the pons Varolii, with fibres passing from it into the white stem, *av*, continuation of [illegible] towards the arbor vitæ of the folia, *cd*, corpus dentatum, *o*, olivary body [illegible] *p*, pyramid. (Allen Thomson) ⅔

There are also here numerous long tapering neuroglia-cells The *internal* or *granular* layer of grey matter is made up of a large number of small nerve-cells mixed with a few larger ones, and some neuroglia-cells Between the two layers

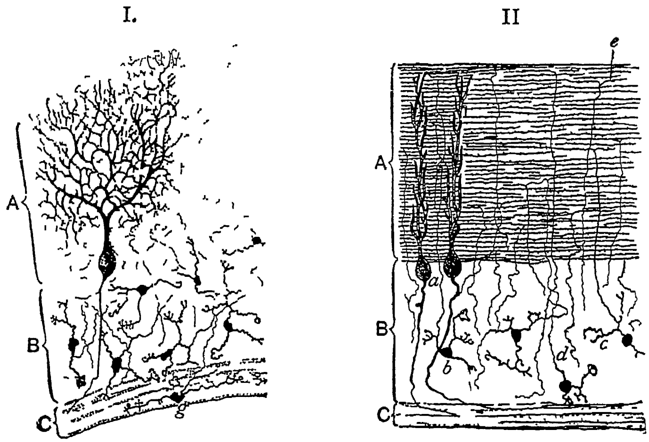


FIG 241 —Section of cerebellar cortex, stained by Golgi s method, I taken across the lamina, II in the direction of the lamina, A, outer or molecular layer, B, inner or granular layer, C, white matter *a*, Cell of Purkinje, *b*, small cells of inner layer, *c*, dendrons of these cells, *d*, axis cylinder process of one of these cells becoming longitudinal in the outer layer, *e*, bifurcation of one of these, *g*, a similar cell lying in the white matter (Ramon y Cajal)

is an incomplete stratum of large flask-shaped cells, called the *cells of Purkinje* Each of these gives off from its base a process which becomes the axon of one of the medullated fibres of the white matter, the neck of the flask passing in the opposite direction breaks up into dendrites which pass into the external layer of grey matter and which spread out in planes transverse to the direction of the lamellæ of the organ (fig 241)

Each cell of Purkinje is further invested by arborisations of two sets of nerve-fibres One of these (originating from the fibres of the white matter which are not continuous as axis cylinders from the cells of Purkinje) forms a basket-work round the dendrons, the other (originating as axis-cylinder processes from the nerve-cells of the external layer) forms a felt-work of fibrils round the body of the cell

The cells of the internal layer of grey matter are small, their dendrites intermingle with those of neighbouring cells, their axons penetrate into the external layer, but their final destination is uncertain Ramifying among these cells are fibres characterised by possessing bunches of short branches at intervals (moss-fibres of Cajal)

The **peduncles of the cerebellum** are three in number—superior, middle, and inferior, they serve to connect the cerebellum with other parts of the nervous system

The *inferior peduncle,* or restiform body, is composed of ascending fibres which pass into it—(1) from the cerebellar tracts of the same side (D C T, fig 242), and (2) from the olivary nucleus of the opposite side, (3) from the nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus of both sides (external and posterior arcuate fibres), (4) from the vestibular nerve, or from the nuclei in which it terminates in the pons

The *middle peduncle* is formed of fibres (M P, fig 242), which originate from the cells of the nucleus pontis they pass from one side of the pons to the opposite cerebellar hemisphere

The superior peduncle consists of (1) the axons (S P, fig 242) of the cells of the nucleus dentatus and (2) fibres of the indirect spino-cerebellar tract (G T, fig 242) The axons arising from the nucleus dentatus decussate in the mid-brain with those of the opposite side, give off descending branches which terminate in the nucleus of Deiters, and furnish collaterals to the red nucleus and third nerve nucleus, they are then continued upwards to the optic thalamus From the red nucleus the rubro-spinal tract (M B, fig 242) arises decussates with its fellow in the mid-brain, and descends to the spinal cord From the optic thalamus a relay of fibres passes to the cerebral cortex

Thus it will be seen that each half of the cerebellum receives impulses from the joints and muscles, mainly from the same side, *via* the spino-cerebellar tracts, from the labyrinth by means of the vestibular nerve of the same side, and from the cerebral cortex of the opposite side through the fronto-pontine tract and the nucleus pontis Since the axons of the Purkinje cells of the cerebellar cortex (P, fig 242) end in the nucleus dentatus, the axons of which form a large part of the superior peduncle, one hemisphere of the cerebellum furnishes efferent impulses to the opposite cerebral hemisphere *via* the optic thalamus and to the same side of the spinal cord through the rubro-spinal tract, the impulses to the spinal cord must therefore cross the middle line twice The cerebellum, through its superior peduncle also gives impulses to the third nerve nucleus, the important part played by the cerebellum in the co-ordination of eye-movements is thus readily understood

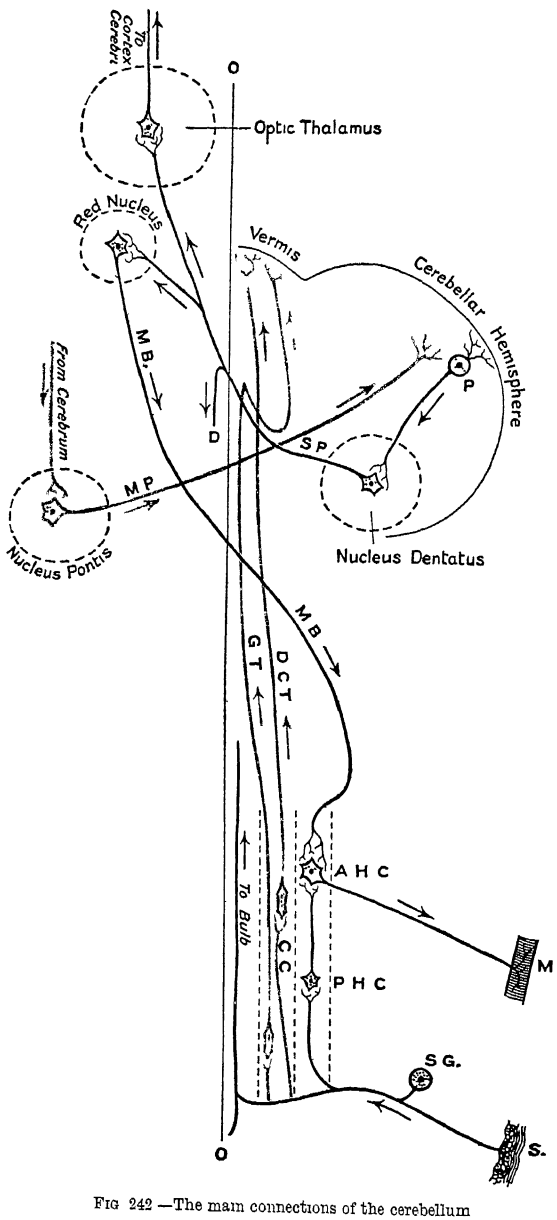


FIG 242 —The main connections of the cerebellum

CHAPTER XLVI

STRUCTURE OF THE CEREBRUM

THE cerebrum consists of two halves, called *cerebral hemispheres*, separated by a deep longitudinal fissure and connected by a large

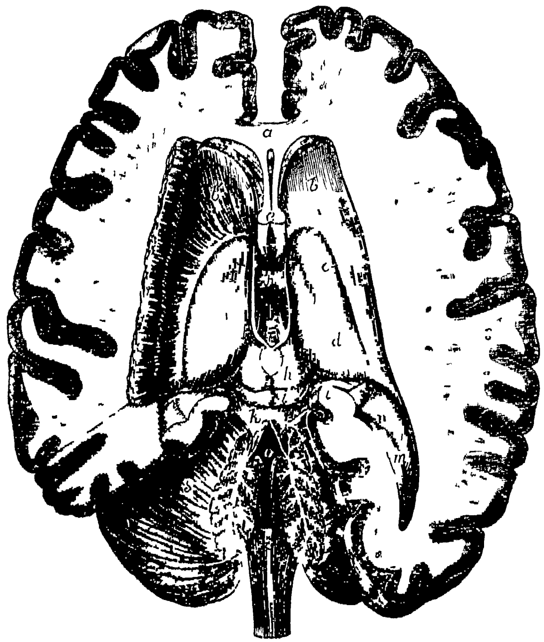


FIG 248 —Dissection of brain, from above, exposing the lateral, fourth, and fifth [cavum septi pellucidi] ventricles with the surrounding parts ½ —*a*, anterior part, or *genu* of corpus callosum, *b*, caudate nucleus, *b′*, the caudate nucleus of left side, dissected so as to expose its grey sub stance, *c*, points by a line to the stria terminalis, *d*, thalamus, *e*, columns of fornix divided, below they are seen descending in front of the third ventricle, and between them is seen part of the anterior commissure, in front of the letter *e* is seen the slit like fifth ventricle, between the two laminæ of the septum pellucidum, *f*, massa intermedia, *g* is placed in the posterior part of the third ventricle, immediately behind the latter are the posterior commissure (just visible) and the pineal gland, the two crura of which extend forwards along the inner and upper margins of [illegible] corpora quadrigemina, *h*, superior crus of cerebellum, close to *k* is [illegible], which has been divided so as to expose the fourth ventricle, *l*, hippocampus and corpus fimbriatum, or tænia hippocampi, *m*, calcar avis, *n*, eminentia colla teralis, *o* fourth ventricle [illegible] posterior surface of medulla oblongata, *r*, section of cerebellum, *s*, upper part of left [illegible] cerebellum exposed by the removal of part of the posterior cerebral lobe (Hirschfeld and Leveillé)

band of transverse commissural fibres known as the *corpus callosum* The interior of each hemisphere contains a cavity of complicated

shape, called the *lateral ventricle*, the lateral ventricles open into the third ventricle (fig 243)

Each hemisphere is covered with grey matter, which passes down into the fissures This surface grey matter is called the *cerebral cortex* It varies in amount directly with the amount of convolution of the surface Under it white matter is situated, and at the base there are masses of grey matter These masses consist of the *thalamus* and the *basal ganglia*, of which the most important are the *lentiform* or *lenticular nucleus* and the *caudate nucleus*, which together form the *corpus striatum*

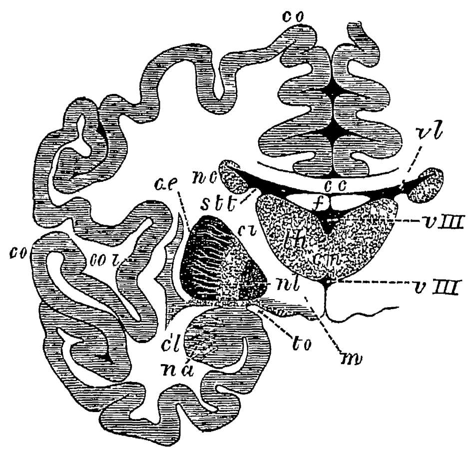


FIG 244 —Vertical section through the cerebrum and basal ganglia to show the relations of the latter *co*, Cerebral convolutions, *c c.*, corpus callosum, *v l*, lateral ventricle, *f*, fornix, *vIII*, third ventricle, *n c.*, caudate nucleus, [illegible] *n l*, lentiform nucleus, *c i*, internal capsule, *cl*, claustrum, *c e*, external capsule, *m*, corpus mammillar[illegible] tract [illegible] *t t*, stria terminalis, *n a*, nucleus amygdalæ, *cm*, massa intermedia, *co i*, [illegible] (Schwalbe)

The relationship of these parts is best seen in a vertical section, such as is represented in figure 244

On the floor of the lateral ventricle is seen the thalamus (*th*), and the tail end of the nucleus caudatus (*n c*), the section being taken somewhat posteriorly The nucleus lentiformis is marked *nl*, and the band of white fibres passing up between it and the thalamus is called the *internal capsule* (*c i*), the narrow piece of white matter between the claustrum and the lentiform nucleus is called the *external capsule* (*c e*)

For the student of medicine the internal capsule is one of the most important parts of the brain

The importance of the internal capsule is rendered evident when one considers the blood supply of these parts, at the *anterior and*

posterior perforated spots, numerous small blood-vessels enter for the supply of the basal ganglia, these are liable to become diseased, and if they rupture, *apoplexy* or *stroke*, with paralysis if not death, is the result This is dealt with further in relation to our study of voluntary movement

Fig 245 represents a horizontal view through the hemisphere The internal capsule (*c*) at the point * makes a bend called the *genu*

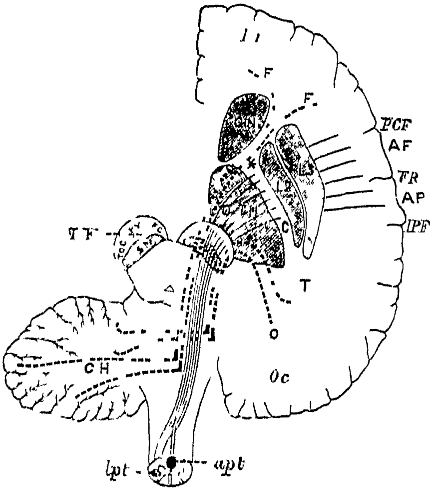


FIG 245 —Diagram to show the connection of the frontal and occipital lobes with the cerebellum, etc The dotted lines passing in the crusta (T OC), outside the motor fibres, indicate the connection between the temporo occipital lobe and the cerebellum F C, The fronto cerebellar fibres, which pass anteriorly to the motor tract in the crusta, I I, fibres from the caudate nucleus to the pons *Fr*, frontal lobe, *Oc*, [illegible] A [illegible] ding frontal, AP, ascending parietal convolutions, [illegible], frontal convolution, FR, fissure of Rolando, IPF, [illegible] A section of the pedunculus is lettered on the left side S N, Substantia [illegible] motor fibres, which on the [illegible] lines converging to pass through the posterior limb of I C, internal [illegible] of which is shown [illegible] through the pons to cross at [illegible] decussation *lpt*, Crossed pyramidal tract, *apt*, direct pyramidal tract (Gowers)

or knee, behind which the motor-fibres and, more posteriorly still, the sensory-fibres pass Some of the connections between cerebrum and cerebellum are also indicated

The Convolutions of the Cerebrum

The surface of the brain is marked by a great number of depressions which are called *fissures* or *sulci*, and it is this folding of the surface that enables a very large amount of the precious material called the grey matter of the cortex to be packed within the narrow compass of the cranium In the lowest vertebrates the surface of

the brain is smooth, but going higher in the animal scale the fissures make their appearance, reaching their greatest degree of complexity in the higher apes and in man

FIG 246

A Cerebral hemisphere of adult Macacque monkey
B Cerebral hemisphere of child shortly before birth

The two brains are very much alike, but the growth forwards of the frontal lobes even at this early stage of development of the human brain is quite well seen S, fissure of Sylvius, R, fissure of Rolando

In an early embryonic stage of the human fœtus the brain is also smooth, but as development progresses the sulci appear, until the climax is reached in the brain of the adult

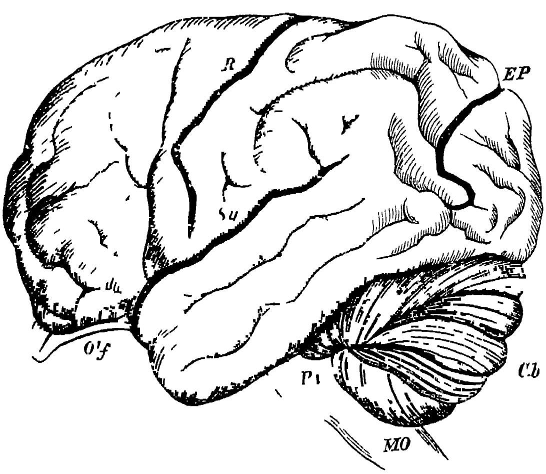


FIG 247 —Brain of the orang, ⅔ natural size, showing the arrangement of the convolutions *Sy*, fissure of Sylvius, *R*, fissure of Rolando, *EP*, external parieto occipital fissure, *Olf*, olfactory lobe, *Cb*, cerebellum, *PV*, pons, *MO*, medulla oblongata As contrasted with the human brain, the frontal lobe is short and small, the fissure of Sylvius is oblique, the temporo sphenoidal lobe prominent, and the external parieto occipital fissure very well marked Note also the bend or genu in the Rolandic fissure, this is found in all anthropoid apes

The above figure (fig 246), comparing the brain of one of the lower monkeys with that of the child shortly before birth, shows the close family likeness in the two cases

Fig 247 gives a representation of the brain of one of the higher monkeys, the orang-outang, where there is an intermediate condition of complexity by which we are led to the human brain

The sulci, which make their appearance first, both in the animal scale and in the development of the human fœtus, are the same They remain in the adult as the deepest and best-marked sulci, they are called the *primary fissures* or *sulci*, and they divide the brain into *lobes*, the remaining sulci, called the *secondary fissures* or *sulci*, further subdivide each lobe into *convolutions* or *gyri*

On the outer surface of the human hemisphere the primary fissures are—

1 *The fissure of Sylvius*, this divides into two rami, the posterior of which is the larger, and runs backwards and upwards, the anterior

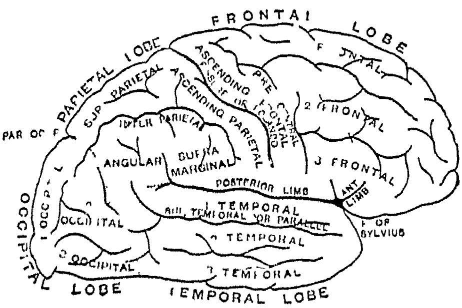


Fig 248 —Right cerebral hemisphere, outer surface

ramus passes forwards and usually divides into two limbs which enclose between them the pars triangularis of the inferior frontal gyrus

2 *The fissure of Rolando* (the *central fissure*) runs from about the middle of the top of the hemisphere (fig 248), downwards and forwards

3 *The external parieto-occipital fissure* (PAR OC F) is parallel to the fissure of Rolando, but more posterior and much shorter, in monkeys it is longer (see fig 247), as it is not interrupted by annectent gyri

These three fissures divide the brain into five lobes —

1 *The frontal lobe*, in front of the fissure of Rolando

2 *The parietal lobe*, between the fissure of Rolando and the lateral part of the parieto-occipital fissure

3 *The occipital lobe*, behind the parieto-occipital fissure

4 *The temporo-sphenoidal lobe*, below the fissure of Sylvius

5 *The island of Reil* or *insula*

In addition to these there is the *hippocampal* or *limbic lobe* on the inner aspect

It will be noticed that the names of the lobes correspond to those of the bones of the cranial vault which cover them

Each lobe is divided into convolutions by secondary fissures which are principally of anatomical interest

The White Matter of the Cerebrum

The white matter of the cerebrum, like white matter elsewhere, is made up of medullated nerve-fibres According to the direction of

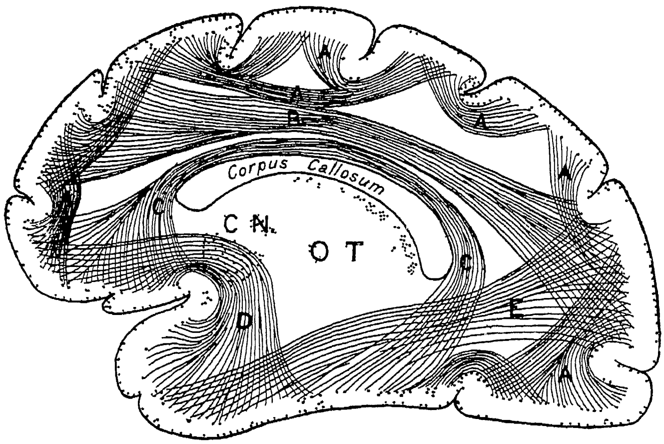


FIG 249 —Lateral view of a human hemisphere, showing the main bundles of association fibres (Starr) A, A, between adjacent convolutions, B, between frontal and occipital areas, C, between frontal and [illegible] (cingulum), D, between frontal and temporal areas (fasciculus uncinatus), E, [illegible] and temporal areas (fasciculus longitudinalis inferior), C N, caudate nucleus, O T, [illegible]

the fibres, they may be divided into three principal groups (see figs 249 and 250) —

1 *Association fibres*—These pass from convolution to convolution

2 *Commissural fibres*—These pass by the commissures of the brain, of which the most important is the corpus callosum, so as to link the convolutions of one hemisphere with the corresponding convolutions in the opposite hemisphere, where they terminate in arborisations (synapses) round the cells of the grey cortex

3 *Projection fibres*—These are the fibres which run more or less vertically and link the cerebrum to the lower portions of the central nervous system They may be divided into the efferent and

afferent systems which are composed of fibres which convey impulses from and to the cortex respectively These can best be studied from figs 249 and 250

Histological Structure of the Cerebral Cortex

The cortex may be divided into five primary laminæ (fig 251) —

1 *The outer fibre layer or superficial lamina*—The fibres are largely derived from the dendrons of the cells of the next layer and

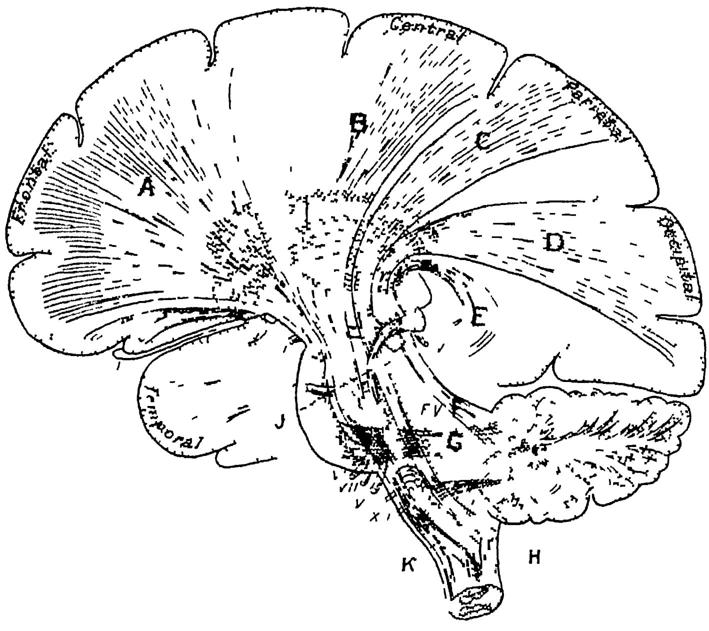


FIG 250 —Diagram of the projection fibres within the brain (Starr) A, tract from the frontal gyri to the pons nuclei and so to the cerebellum, B, motor pyramidal tract, C, sensory tract for touch, D, visual tract or visual radiation, E, auditory tract or auditory radiation, F, G, H, superior, middle, and inferior cerebellar peduncles, J, fibres between the auditory nucleus and the inferior corpus quadrigeminum, K, motor decussation in the bulb, F, V, fourth ventricle The numerals refer to the cranial nerves The sensory radiations are seen to be massed towards the occipital end of the hemisphere

many are afferent fibres from the white matter The nerve-cells (F in fig 252) intermingled with these are branched, and have several processes which lie horizontally beneath the surface (tangential fibres) There are doubtless association units linking the incoming afferent neurones to those which are motor Neuroglia cells are also present

2 *The outer cell lamina*—The cells are several deep, and the largest are situated most deeply Each of these has an apical process

running to the surface, where the branches run tangentially The lateral processes are also branched dendrons The axon originates from the base The layer of small pyramids increases in depth as we ascend the animal scale, thus it is poorly developed in Insectivora,

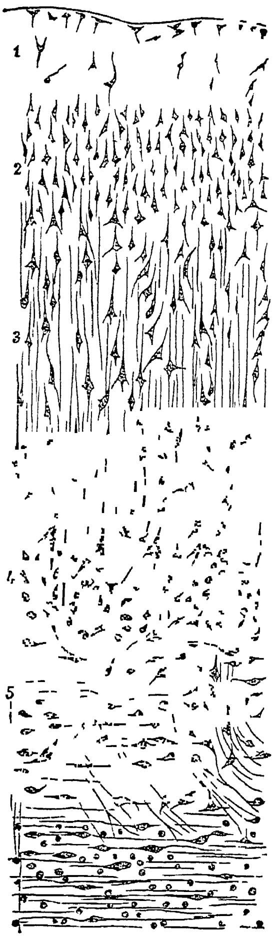


FIG 251 —The layers of the cortical grey matter of the cerebrum (Meynert)

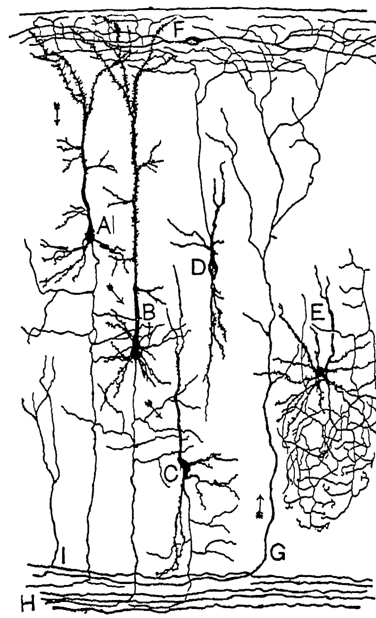


FIG 252 —Principal types of cells in the cerebral cortex

A, medium sized pyramidal cell of the second layer
B, large pyramidal cell
C, polymorphic cell
D, cell of which the axis cylinder process is ascending
E, neuroglia cell
F, cell of the first layer, forming an intermediate cell station between sensory fibres and motor cells Notice the *tangential* direction of the nerve fibres
G, sensory fibre from the white matter
H, white matter
I, collateral of the white matter (Ramon y Cajal)

and shows an increasing degree of development in Rodentia, Ungulata and Carnivora The maximum thickness is reached in man Embryologically, this is the latest layer to develop, reaching its zenith after birth The cells of this layer are believed to be association units

subserving the higher mental processes It is greatly developed in the frontal and parietal regions where the highest associations are believed to occur

3 *The middle cell lamina* (numbered 4 in figure 251)—This consists of small cells called *granules* This layer is a distinguishing mark of sensory areas, and is practically absent in the pre-Rolandic or motor convolutions

4 *The inner fibre layer*—In certain regions of the cortex this contains the giant pyramids or Betz cells, which are characteristic of the motor areas In the visual cortex the so-called solitary cells of Meynert are present here

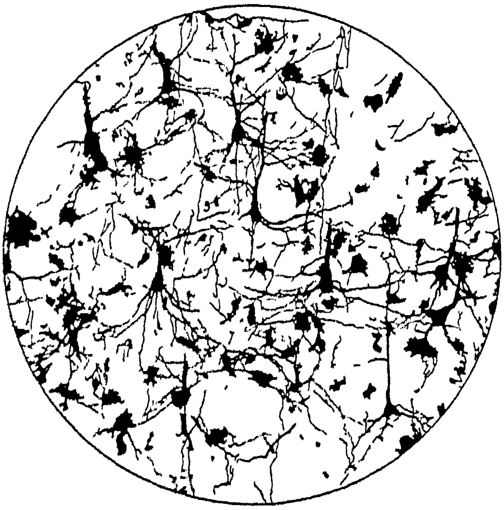


FIG 253—Human cerebral cortex Golgi's method Low power (Mott)

5 *The inner cell lamina or polymorphic layer*—These are small scattered cells, many of a fusiform shape Certain cells send their axons vertically towards the surface (cells of Martinotti) In the island of Reil this layer is hypertrophied, and is separated from the rest of the grey matter by a stratum of white fibres, it is known then as the *claustrum* It is the first layer to appear and is almost fully developed at birth

Nerve-fibres pass in vertical streaks through the deeper layers of the grey matter, some of these are axons conveying impulses downwards, others are sensory in function and carry impulses upwards Some strands lie parallel to the surface of the cortex, this is specially noticeable in the layers we have numbered 1 and 4 In

the portion of the occipital lobe which is the visual sphere, the granule layer (No 3), which is so specially characteristic of sensory function, is of great depth and is divided into two by the optic radiation running horizontally, which constitutes the white *line of Gennari*

The functions of the cell layers have been suggested by the degree to which each is developed in the different regions (Lewis and Clarke, 1878) and in different animals by the order of their development and by the mental capacity of those individuals in whom the layers are defective

Bolton regards the inner lamina as the fundamental cell layer, the

FIG 254.—Human cerebral cortex, showing a Betz cell or giant pyramid, Golgi's method. High power (Mott)

others being formed from it from within outwards, in both embryonic and historical development Defect of development of the outer layers leads to various forms of *amentia* (inborn lack of mental development, or idiocy), in *dementia* (degenerative mental change coming on later in life) there are retrograde changes in the upper layers of cells The inner cell layer is probably concerned with the performance of organic and instinctive activities, and there is but little difference seen here between man, monkey, and dog The middle cell lamina may be considered to be concerned with the reception and transformation of afferent impulses The outer cell lamina, on the other hand, is concerned with the intellectual or associational functions

In the hippocampal region the cortex is simpler in structure than elsewhere Here only the inner and middle cell laminæ are represented The pyramids are reduced to a single layer, but the granular or sensory layer is well marked, as is the plexiform layer which in the anterior part of the hippocampal gyrus contains islets or nests of (1) polymorphous cells and (2) small pyramidal cells, each type being confined to its own nest This part of the cortex is concerned with the sense of smell, which is a primitive sense, and is therefore subserved by a primitive type of cortex representing the archipallium or primitive brain

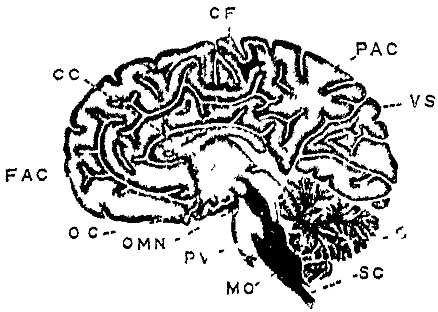


FIG 255 —Diagram of vertical section through brain of new born child, drawn from one of Flechsig's photographs The section was treated by Weigert's method, by which myelinated fibres are deeply stained Attention is drawn to the deep shading indicating myelination around the central fissure, which corresponds to the sensory motor area, and also around the calcarine fissure in the visual sphere The association fibres are not myelinated The fibres of the pyramidal efferent system have also no myelin M O, medulla oblongata, P V, pons, O M N, oculo motor nerve, O C, optic chiasma, F A C, frontal association centre, C C corpus callosum, C F, central fissure, or fissure of Rolando, P A C, posterior association centre, V S, visual sphere, C, cerebellum, S C, spinal cord

Embryology of the Cerebrum in relation to Function

Flechsig's embryological method has given us valuable knowledge of the structure and functions of the human brain The method depends on the fact that various tracts of fibres become myelinated, *i e*, acquire their medullary sheath at successive periods of time in development The myelin sheath appears three or four months after the axis cylinder is formed The Weigert method of staining renders the detection of a medullary sheath an easy task. Flechsig's method is in short the complement of the Wallerian method In the former method the tracts are isolated by the differences in the origin of the myelin sheath, in the latter method, the same object is obtained by observing the degeneration which is most noticeable in the same sheath

In the central nervous system, the afferent projection fibres are myelinated first, the efferent projection fibres and the association fibres are myelinated later Thus in the human fœtus the peripheral nerves and nerve-roots become myelinated in the fifth month of intra-uterine life, of the tracts in the cord, those of Burdach and Goll (*exogenous* fibres springing from the cells of the spinal ganglia) are the first to be myelinated, next come the tracts of Flechsig (dorsal cerebellar) and of Gowers (ventral cerebellar) these are *endogenous* fibres springing from cells within the cord All these tracts are afferent The pyramidal tracts, the great efferent or motor channels, are not myelinated until after birth The whole afferent tract is myelinated

at birth, these fibres are *in utero* exercised in conveying impressions to the afferent reception centres, the stimuli arising from contact of the fœtal integuments with the maternal tissues There is also early myelination round the calcarine fissure in the visual sphere, and in connection with the areas related to other special senses This is shown in figs 255 and 256, where the condition at birth and that some months later are compared

Ambronn and Held confirmed Flechsig in finding that the afferent fibres are myelinated before the efferent, in the central nervous system, but in the nerve-roots this is reversed, the anterior root-fibres being myelinated before the posterior

Held also demonstrated the important influence of stimulus on myelination His experiments were made on cats, dogs, and rabbits, which are born blind If light is admitted to one eye by opening the lid, more obvious myelination is subsequently found in the corresponding optic nerve than in that of the opposite side This is not due to the irritation caused by forcibly opening the lid, for if the lid is opened and the animal kept in the dark, no difference in the myelination of the two

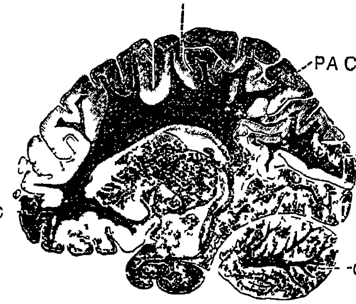


FIG 256 —Diagram of vertical section of the brain of a child 5 months of age The greater part of the white matter now shows myelination, thus indicating development of the association centres The letters have the same meaning as in fig 255 (After Flechsig, Weigert method of staining)

optic nerves is observable Flechsig also showed that a child born at eight months had more marked myelination of its optic nerves, a month later, than a child born in the usual way at the ninth month

The richness of the brain in myelinated fibres increases for many years after birth with the progress of intellectual development. Kaes states this continues up to forty years of age, and that in old age the number diminishes Myelin appears to be necessary for the functional activity of nerve tracts, and its development progresses *pari passu* with development of function, the reverse change (atrophy and degeneration) correspondingly accompanies marked disturbances of function

Flechsig's Myelogenetic Cortical Fields

In the cerebral convolutions the fibres become myelinated in a strictly regular sequence, some convolutions have their fibres medullated three months before birth, while in others complete myelination has not occurred six months later Fibres of equally great importance become medullated at the same time, those of primary importance first, and so on In this way, cortical fields can be mapped out thirty-six in number Flechsig divided them chronologically into three groups, *primary*, *intermediate*, and *terminal* The primary fields, the seats of sensory representation, are most darkly shaded in figs 257 and 258 These are also

CHAPTER XLVII

THE NUTRITION OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

THE local peculiarities of the circulation through the brain have already been described. Nowhere else in the body is the maintenance of an adequate blood-supply more important than in the central nervous system. Deprivation of the arterial blood-supply leads to irrecoverable death of the cortical nerve-cells in eight minutes; the cells of the spinal cord are somewhat more resistant (forty-five to sixty minutes); temporary interference with blood-supply to the cortex causes fainting, whilst anæmia of the bulb is soon fatal. The stage of depression or coma caused by anoxæmia (due to asphyxia or cerebral anæmia) is frequently preceded by a stage of excitation evidenced by convulsions. If the circulation is restored in time recovery of function occurs in the following order: (1) respiratory reflexes; (2) spinal reflexes; (3) cerebral function. For normal nervous activity to be maintained the blood must also have the correct chemical composition; for example, if the percentage of sugar falls below 0.04 per cent, coma ensues, preceded in animals by convulsions (see Hypoglycæmia, p. 508). A rise in intracranial pressure, by stimulating the vasomotor centre, evokes a marked rise of arterial blood-pressure. Since a raised intracranial pressure, due to a foreign body such as blood-clot, implies a corresponding diminution in the amount of blood in the cranial chamber, it is apparent that the rise in arterial pressure is in a sense protective, as it causes an increased blood-flow through the brain. The brain so adapts the circulation that it secures for itself the optimal blood-supply. In disease, however, the mechanism may no longer act beneficially; thus in the case of cerebral hæmorrhage the rise in the blood-pressure tends to cause greater bleeding.

The nervous axis is further in relation with the cerebrospinal fluid. Whilst the exact rôle which this fluid plays in connection with the nutrition of the nerve-tissue is uncertain, it is conveniently discussed here.

The Cerebrospinal Fluid

The cerebrospinal fluid is a watery fluid (specific gravity about 1005) which is found in the ventricles of the brain and in the cerebrospinal subarachnoid spaces. The fluid is formed by the

choroid plexuses which project into the ventricles, it escapes into the subarachnoid space through the foramina in the roof of the fourth ventricle (foramen of Magendie and foramina of Luschka) A choroid plexus is a much-folded process of the pia mater, rich in blood-vessels, the ventricular aspect of the tufts is covered by ependyma modified to form a glandular epithelium, *i e*, the cells are not ciliated, are cuboidal, and often contain vacuoles The proof that the plexus forms the fluid is threefold (1) there are histological changes (swelling of the cells, etc) after excessive formation of cerebrospinal fluid, (2) when the exit from a ventricle, *e g* the foramen of Monro, is blocked, the ventricle distends, if previously the choroid plexus of the ventricle is removed no distension occurs (Dandy and Blackfan), and (3) fluid has been seen exuding from the surface of an exposed plexus

The total quantity of the cerebrospinal fluid in man is perhaps about 150 c c Normally it is being slowly formed and absorbed The chief absorption occurs after the fluid has left the ventricles, *i e*, while it is in the subarachnoid space, and takes place mainly into the blood-stream A smaller fraction is absorbed into the perineural lymphatics of the cranial and spinal nerves The exact path of absorption into the blood-vessels is, according to Weed, through the arachnoidal villi which project as blind processes of the arachnoid into the sinuses of the dura mater, especially the superior longitudinal In later life the arachnoidal villi hypertrophy to form the Pacchionian bodies

The cerebrospinal fluid exerts a certain pressure, about 120 mm of water, so that when a cannula is inserted into the cisterna magna through the occipito-atlantal ligament or into the lumbar sac the fluid escapes freely at first, afterwards more slowly, till finally the flow practically ceases

The fluid contains the crystalloid constituents of the blood-plasma, the chlorides are normally about 0 74 per cent Glucose (0 09 per cent), urea and creatinine are present in small amounts, together with a trace of protein (0 02 per cent) The gases resemble those of lymph, but the proportion of carbon dioxide which is "fixed," *i e*, which cannot be removed by ebullition *in vacuo* without addition of acid, is greater than in lymph, which contains more protein

The fluid obtained by cistern, or lumbar, puncture is said to be slightly richer in protein than that which fills the ventricles, for this and other reasons it is generally believed that there is added to the subarachnoid fluid a certain amount of fluid coming from the tissue of the brain and spinal cord *via* the perivascular spaces The latter are inward prolongations of the subarachnoid space along the vessels which enter the brain at right angles, and communicate with the perineuronal spaces around the nerve-cells

In health the cerebrospinal fluid contains but few cells (lymphocytes), the normal maximum rarely exceeds 5 per cubic millimetre In meningitis the number of cells is enormously increased The few cells normally present are supposed to be derived from the meningeal vessels

The functions of this remarkable fluid are not by any means settled It obviously affords mechanical protection to the central nervous system, and apparently receives such waste products from the central nervous system as are not absorbed by the blood-stream Moreover, the fluid can to a limited extent be displaced (*i e* absorbed) into the venous sinuses so as to accommodate an increased amount of blood in the cranial chamber

Weed and M'Kibben showed that the intracranial pressure can be profoundly influenced by alterations in the osmotic pressure of the blood, the injection of hypotonic saline into a vein raises, while the administration of hypertonic saline lowers the pressure The intravenous administration of hypertonic saline is frequently used therapeutically to lower excessive intracranial pressure

The fluid can be regarded as an ideal Ringer-Locke solution in close relationship with the nerve-tissue Dixon and Halliburton found that injection of extract of brain or choroid plexus into a vein, or inhalation of carbon dioxide, caused an increased flow of cerebrospinal fluid, they suggested that the amount of fluid formed was perhaps controlled by the quantity of waste products produced by the brain Pilocarpine is said to increase the formation of cerebrospinal fluid

Substances introduced into the fluid readily pass into the blood, but the converse does not hold, for the choroid plexus permits the passage of certain substances only It is noteworthy that alcohol readily enters the cerebrospinal fluid from the blood

CHAPTER XLVIII

THE REFLEX ACTIVITIES OF THE ANIMAL

THE function of a nervous system, however simple or however complicated, is to adjust the activities of the animal within itself and towards its environment It is the function of the central nervous system to receive impulses by means of the afferent nerves, to correlate them, and to send out appropriate stimuli by the efferent nerves to the various parts of the body

A large amount of this adjustment takes place without conscious effort and is purely automatic or reflex We may indeed look upon the reflex as being the physiological unit of the nervous system **A reflex** may be defined as the response by an effector organ to a stimulus received by a receptor and transmitted by a conductor which is itself incapable of the end-effect

In considering the nervous system of an animal from this point of view, we are reminded of that of a simple segmented animal, such as a crustacean, where it is evident that, while each segment has a considerable degree of local control, by means of connecting fibres the various segments may act in unison for the benefit of the animal A very similar, but more elaborate mechanism is seen in the higher animals, and it will be seen that each part of the nervous system exercises a certain degree of local control, yet is connected and acts when necessary with the higher parts of the system

Before studying reflex action in detail it is convenient to consider briefly the functions of the spinal cord and its roots As would be expected from what has been said above, the spinal cord connects together different parts of the nervous system and at the same time is a centre for local control or reflex action

The Functions of Spinal Cord

These functions will be considered in more detail later and need only be summarised at this stage

As an **organ of conduction** the spinal cord carries impulses to and from the brain, some of which are related to conscious activity

and others to more automatic or reflex activities of the body, such as the maintenance of posture The actual pathways concerned have already been described

In addition, the **association tracts** link together various levels of the cord and bring about co-ordination of activity between different levels of the body

As a **reflex centre** the cord brings about a considerable correlation of the activities of the animal For the most part these are concerned with the protection of the animal, with movements, such as walking, and with the control of the excretory mechanism of the bladder and rectum The actual reflexes are dealt with in detail below

Functions of the Roots of the Spinal Nerves

Each spinal nerve we have seen originates from the spinal cord by two roots The *anterior* or *ventral* root consists of nerve-fibres which originate from the large multipolar cells in that portion of the grey matter in the interior of the spinal cord which we call the anterior horn These nerve-fibres are all medullated, the large ones join up with the posterior root to form the spinal nerve, the small nerve-fibres leave the root and pass to the sympathetic chain, which then distributes non-medullated fibres to the involuntary muscles of the blood-vessels and viscera

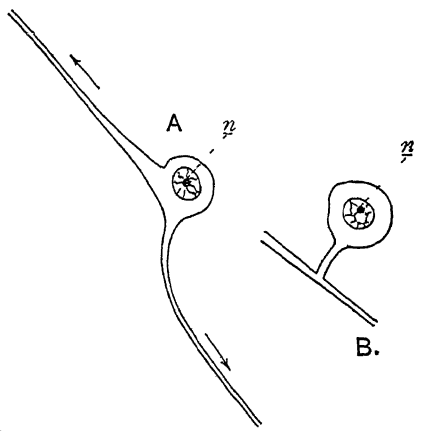


FIG 259 —A, Bipolar cell from spinal ganglion of a 4 weeks embryo, *n*, nucleus, the arrows indicate the direction in which the nerve processes grow, one to the spinal cord, the other to the periphery B, a cell from the spinal ganglion of the adult, the two processes have coalesced to form a T shaped junction (Diagrammatic)

The other root, *the posterior* or *dorsal* root, has upon it a collection of nerve-cells forming the spinal ganglion Each nerve-cell is enclosed within a nucleated sheath of connective-tissue, and it is from these nerve-cells that the fibres of the posterior roots grow In the embryo, each nerve-cell has two processes (fig 259, A), one of which grows to the spinal cord, where it terminates by branching round the multipolar cells of the grey matter, the other process grows outwards to the periphery In the adult mammal (not in fishes) the two processes coalesce in the first part of their course, forming a T-*shaped junction* (fig 259, B)

The great discovery that the anterior roots are motor and the posterior sensory is usually attributed to Sir Charles Bell (1811), but an examination of his writings shows that the deductions he drew were incorrect It was Magendie (1822) who solved this fundamental problem, and Herbert Mayo, the first Professor of Physiology at King's College, London, who elucidated similar facts in relation to the cerebral nerves which supply motion and sensation in the face region Magendie found that on section of the anterior roots there was paralysis of the muscles supplied by the nerves, on section of the posterior roots there was loss of sensation These experiments clearly pointed to the conclusion that the anterior roots contain the efferent (motor) fibres, and the posterior roots the afferent (sensory) fibres This conclusion was confirmed by the experiment of stimulation Stimulation of the peripheral end of the cut anterior root caused muscular movement, of the central end, no effect Stimulation of the central end of the cut posterior root caused pain and reflex movements, of the peripheral end, no effect on voluntary muscle

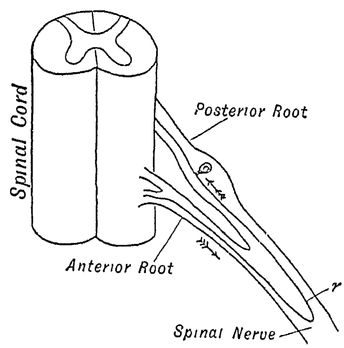


FIG 260 —Diagram to illustrate recurrent sensibility See text

The latter causes vascular dilatation (see Autonomic Nervous System)

Recurrent sensibility —One of the statements just made requires a slight modification, namely, that excitation of the peripheral end of a divided anterior root will evoke pain and what are known as reflex movements, as well as direct movements, that is to say, the anterior root, though composed mainly of motor fibres, contains a few sensory fibres coming from the membranes of the spinal cord, and then running into the posterior root with the rest of the sensory fibres They often, however, run down the mixed nerve a considerable distance before returning to the posterior roots

The preceding diagram (fig 260) illustrates the course of one of these recurrent fibres (r), the arrows represent the direction in which it conveys impulses

REFLEXES

Reflexes may be classified according to the stimuli which produce them —

1 *Proprioceptive* from stimuli which arise in muscles or sense organs affected by the position of the body,
2 *Enteroceptive* from stimuli originating in the viscera,
3 *Exteroceptive* from stimuli arising in the external environment,
4 *Nociceptive* from harmful or painful stimuli,

but in a consideration of the nervous system as a whole, we may conveniently deal with them as they involve increasing amounts of the nervous system

The simplest form of reflex activity known is the **axon reflex**, which is concerned with the protection of the skin If an irritant, *e g*, a mustard blister or croton oil, is applied to the skin, a reddening due to dilatation of blood-vessels is produced If the nerve-supply is cut, as is sometimes done by surgeons to relieve pain, *e g* in neuralgia of the 5th nerve, the reddening on application of the irritant can be obtained for a few days but is no longer possible after the peripheral fibres have degenerated This demonstrates the dependence of the action on a local nervous mechanism, apparently in the peripheral part of the axon the axon appears to divide, giving a branch to the skin and another to the wall of a blood-vessel It may be, however, that the sensory impulse somehow passes to vasodilator fibres which we know are distributed from the sensory posterior nerve-roots

The Spinal Reflexes

The **spinal reflex** is the simplest form of reflex involving the central nervous system It depends on the co-operation of a receptor organ, an afferent sensory nerve, a system of nerve-cells in the spinal cord, an efferent motor nerve, and an effector organ, the whole constituting the **reflex arc** (figs 261 and 262)

The reflex activities of the spinal cord may be studied in a *spinal animal, i e* an animal in which the brain has been destroyed or the spinal cord cut across in the cervical region In the case of a mammal artificial respiration is necessary since the respiratory centre is cut off, unless the section is made below the origin of the phrenic nerves

A mammal so operated upon, after a longer period of shock has passed off, assumes a characteristic position of flexion, it curls up If a limb is pinched or pricked it is at once withdrawn (**flexion withdrawal reflex**) This is obviously a defence reflex to remove the limb from the injuring force or noxious stimulus Sometimes the stimulus throws the whole animal into extreme flexion (mass reflex)

Similar reflexes may be seen in man The flexion withdrawal reflex is seen in ordinary sleep It is also obtained in individuals suffering from paralysis due to injury to pyramidal tracts and who may be unable to move the part voluntarily

After destruction of the brain of a frog the shock of the operation renders the animal for a variable time motionless and irresponsive to stimuli, but later on it gradually assumes a position which differs but little from that of a conscious animal If thrown into water it will swim, if placed on a slanting board it will crawl up (Goltz), if stroked on the flanks it will croak (Goltz), if it is laid on its back, and a small piece of blotting-paper moistened with acid is

placed on the skin, it will generally succeed in kicking it off, if a

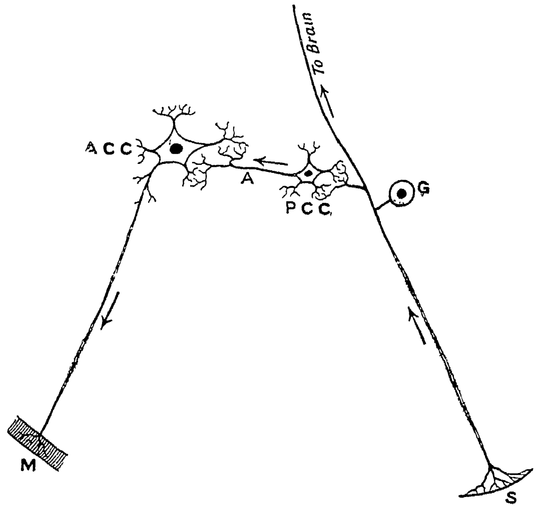


FIG 261 —A reflex arc. See legend to fig 262

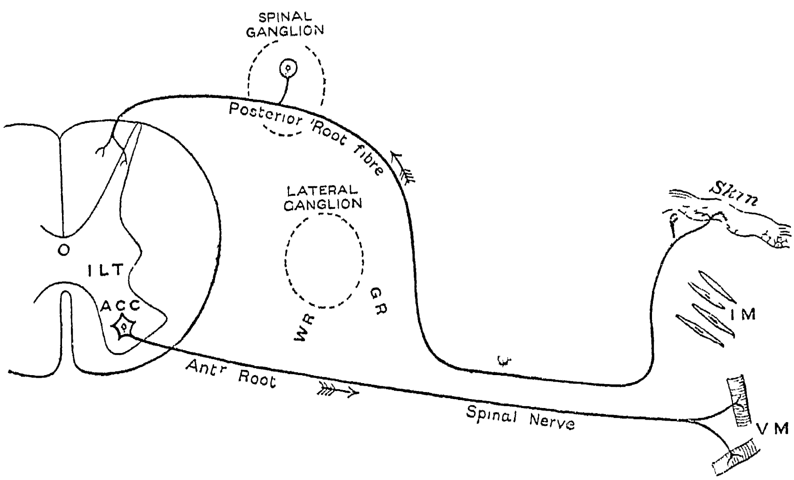


FIG 262 —Diagram of a spinal reflex arc A C C, an anterior cornual cell giving rise to a motor fibre which forms part of a mixed spinal nerve and is distributed to muscle V M From the skin is shown a posterior root fibre which passes to a spinal ganglion (a cell of which nourishes it) and thence by the posterior root to the posterior horn The intermediate neurone between the anterior and posterior horns is seen in fig 261

foot is pinched it will draw the foot away, if left perfectly quiet it remains motionless

The Properties and Characteristics of Reflex Arcs

Reflex arcs have certain characteristics which may be seen in the study of the spinal reflex These are of importance, as there is reason to believe that similar characteristics are exemplified in higher arcs also Our knowledge of this subject we owe largely to the school of Sherrington at Oxford

Resistance —If the time which a reflex ought to take be calculated from our knowledge of the rate of the nerve impulse as conducted by nerve-fibres, it is found that the actual time taken is appreciably longer This extra time or *reduced reflex time* has presumably been spent in traversing the central nervous system and especially in passing across the synapses or junctions between one neurone and another It has been calculated that the time lost at a synapse is 0 002 sec The evidence of the existence of these synapses, it must be understood, depends less on histological than on physiological evidence, from experiments we have very definite evidence that they impart to a reflex many of its characteristic properties

Effect of Repetition of Stimulus —Once a reflex has been produced it is found that it becomes, up to a point, increasingly easy to elicit the reflex, and the reduced reflex time becomes lessened This is known as **facilitation** This fact is of obvious importance in relation to increase of skill in various manual occupations Beyond this point, however, **fatigue** may readily set in This must occur on the afferent side of the arc at the synapse, since nerve is not fatiguable in the ordinary sense, it is found that when fatigue is present and a reflex can no longer be elicited, the muscle concerned can still be made to contract through its nerve or through another afferent nerve Fatigue of a spinal reflex appears to be recovered from with remarkable speed, provided the blood circulation is good

Summation —Although a stimulus may be insufficiently strong to elicit a response, the repetition of the stimulus may be effective The fact suggests that there is in the synapse something of the nature of supranormal phase (see Nerve), during which there is a temporary diminution of the synaptic resistance It may be possible also to bring about a response with two separate stimuli, each of which is insufficient, or, if each is sufficient, the total effect will be greater than with each independently

Summation of chemical stimuli is well illustrated by Turck's method If a number of beakers of water are prepared, acidulated with 1, 2, 4, etc, parts of sulphuric acid per 1000, and the tips of a frog's toes are immersed in the weakest, the frog at first takes no notice, but in time the cumulation or summation of the

sensory impulses causes the animal to withdraw its feet If this is repeated with the stronger liquids in succession, the time that intervenes before the muscles respond becomes less and less This method also serves to test reflex irritability when the frog is under the influence of various drugs

Dependence on Oxygen —We have noted that fatigue may set in if a stimulus is too often repeated If, however, the oxygen supply is deficient, fatigue more readily sets in Synapses are apparently particularly sensitive to the effects of oxygen-want A fall of blood-pressure markedly depresses the reflexes, which disappear in man when the mean arterial pressure drops below 50 mm Hg It is possible that the height of the blood-pressure is of considerable importance in relation to nervous activity, but it is extremely difficult to obtain definite data on this point

Spread —The effect of a given stimulus which is capable of evoking a reflex depends very largely on its strength A relatively weak stimulus may cause a simple response confined to one limb, but a stronger stimulus may spread not only to the opposite side but also to the adjacent segments of the cord, bringing about a generalised movement It appears likely that in the first instance the afferent impulses take the easiest path, which suggests that the resistance of the synapses in the various paths may vary appreciably. It is considered that such a grading of synapses may play an important part in the general activity of the nervous system

Local Sign —If a portion of the body be stimulated, *e g*, the flank pinched, it is observed that the reflex is definitely purposeful and the movement is directed towards the removal of the stimulation

Irreversibility of Conduction —We have noted that a nerve impulse may be carried in both directions along a nerve In a reflex arc the impulse can go in one direction only

Inhibition —One reflex can inhibit another, the reflex more important for the welfare of the animal predominating Thus if in the spinal dog, the scratch reflex (see p 699) be initiated by gentle stimulation of the skin of the shoulder, and then a harmful stimulus be applied to the pad of the hind paw, the scratch reflex is immediately interrupted and the foot withdrawn by means of the flexor reflex Another example of inhibition is seen in the reciprocal action of antagonistic muscles (see below)

The Nature of the Reflex Response —If a motor nerve is stimulated by a single shock the resulting response is a muscular twitch of short duration, but that which follows a sensory stimulus is of the nature of a tetanus, *i e* the stimulus sets up not a single contraction but a series of fused contractions, which may be demon-

strated by recording the electrical changes in the effector muscle It is seen also that rise of the contraction is not abrupt like that of the twitch but gradual It should perhaps be added that in order to demonstrate such rapid changes it is necessary to use a photographic recording system as the inertia of an ordinary lever system is too great The movement or other activity produced reflexly does not cease directly the stimulus is removed, but continues for a time after cessation of stimulation This phenomenon is called **after-discharge**, and is one of the most striking features of reflex action

If during tonic contraction an inhibitory afferent nerve is stimulated, the contraction at once becomes less, but the muscle again contracts the moment the inhibitory stimulus is removed, often to a larger extent than before This is known as *rebound*, but is a very variable phenomenon

Reflex Action in Man

Superficial Reflexes—These are obtained by a gentle stimulation, such as a touch on the skin, the muscles beneath are usually affected, but muscles at a distance may be affected also, for example

a *Gluteal reflex* a contraction in the gluteus when the skin over it is stimulated

b *Cremasteric reflex* a retraction of the testicle when the skin on the inner side of the thigh is stimulated

c *Abdominal reflex* a contraction of the muscles of the abdominal wall when the skin over the side of the abdomen is stroked, the upper part of this reflex is a very definite contraction at the epigastrium, and has been termed the *epigastric reflex*

d. A series of similar reflex actions may be obtained in the muscles of the back, the highest being in the muscles of the scapula

These reflexes commonly disappear if the pyramidal tracts are destroyed

Tendon Reflexes may be elicited from a spinal animal but appear later than the flexion reflexes after the operation They are brought about by sudden stretching of the muscle, conveniently by tapping the tendon, and in virtue of their nature are known as **stretch** or *myotatic reflexes* As the latter term indicates, the reflexes are set up by impulses which arise in the muscles themselves Such reflexes, as we shall see, are of great importance in the maintenance of posture and in walking For example, the stretching of the quadriceps extensor of the knee, which takes place as the foot is about to leave the ground in walking, causes it to contract The *thrust reflex*, as it is called, is also an important propelling force in walking or hopping in the frog and is brought about by pressure on the sole of the

foot and stretching of its muscles It is best seen in an animal in which the cerebrum only has been removed (see Decerebrate Animal) The tendon reflexes which are generally examined are the patellar tendon reflex or *knee-jerk*, the tendo Achillis reflex or *ankle-jerk*, and the phenomenon known as *ankle-clonus*

The knee-jerk—The quadriceps muscle is slightly stretched by putting one knee over the other, a slight blow on the ligamentum patellæ causes a movement of the foot forwards, as indicated in the dotted line of fig 263 The reflex is present in health

The *ankle-jerk* is one of great importance, for in such diseases as locomotor ataxy, in which the tendon reflexes are lost, it usually disappears before the knee-jerk It is best elicited if

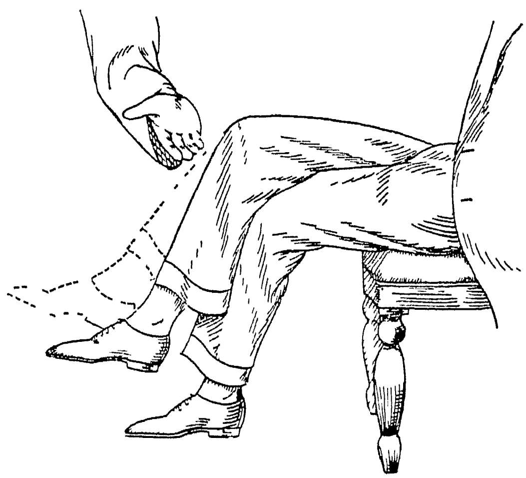


Fig 263 —The knee jerk (Miss Barclay Smith)

the patient kneels with one knee upon a cushioned chair, whilst standing on the other leg by the side of the chair The calf muscles of the kneeling leg are thus slightly stretched by the weight of the foot, and a sharp tap upon the tendo Achillis elicits the jerk

Ankle-clonus—This is elicited as depicted in the next figure the hand is pressed against the sole of the foot, the calf muscles are thus put on the stretch and they contract, and if the pressure is kept up a quick succession or clonic series of contractions is obtained This is not readily obtained in health

The exact course of the reflex arc concerned in the knee-jerk has been worked out by Sherrington in the monkey The nerve-fibres are mainly those which pass (1) to and from the crureus by the anterior femoral nerve, and (2) to and from the hamstrings by the sciatic nerve The fibres which supply the crureus arise from the

spinal nerve-roots which in man correspond to the 3rd and 4th lumbar, the hamstring supply is from the 5th lumbar and 1st and 2nd sacral roots

Lombard's experiments upon the knee-jerk indicate that it is sometimes more readily obtained even in the same person than at other times It varies with changes in mental activity, and during sleep may be entirely absent It is increased and diminished by whatever increases or diminishes the relative state of irritability of the nervous system as a whole

Closely related to this is the phenomenon known as *reinforcement of the knee-jerk*, which was first described by Jendrassik in 1883, and has since been studied by numerous observers The extent of the jerk may be increased if at the time the patellar tendon is struck, a strong voluntary contraction, such as clenching the fists or the jaw,

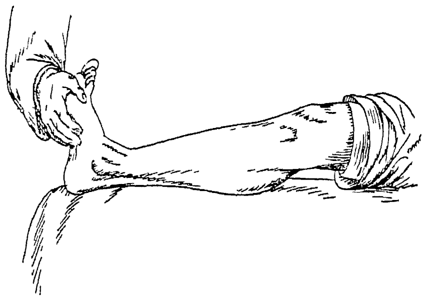


FIG 264 —Ankle-clonus (Miss Barclay Smith)

is made by the individual In many normal persons the knee-jerk is difficult to elicit, but it must never be regarded as absent until reinforcement has been tried After the reinforcing action has occurred it is followed by an interval in which the knee-jerk is lessened (inhibition or negative reinforcement)

Absence of Reflexes—The spinal reflexes must obviously disappear if any part of the arc on which they depend is destroyed Disease or injury of the afferent nerve, efferent nerve, or spinal grey matter, abolishes them Thus they cannot be obtained in locomotor ataxy (damage to the posterior nerve-roots), or in infantile paralysis also known as anterior poliomyelitis (damage to the anterior horns of grey matter) This absence of the reflexes is therefore an important diagnostic sign of disease of the spinal cord or of the nerve-roots Especially is this so if the tendon reflexes which are usually elicited are affected, but the superficial reflexes are more variable and may be unobtainable even in the absence of nervous disease

Alteration of the Character of the Reflex—This is well seen in the case of the knee-jerk In lesions of the pyramidal tracts as in the decerebrate animal the knee-jerk is too well sustained, but on the other hand in cerebellar disease the leg falls quite limply The normal is midway between the two These facts indicate that the knee-jerk is intimately related to higher mechanisms It is indeed a fractionated stretch reflex or part of the more complicated reflex by which we stand (see Mid-Brain Animal, p 683)

The Influences of the Higher Centres on Lower Reflex Arcs—If, in the frog experiments referred to on p 674, the cerebrum only is destroyed and the optic lobes left intact, the reflex reactions are found to be appreciably slower, thus showing the inhibitory effect of the remaining parts of the brain

In man, this influence is of considerable clinical importance in the diagnosis of nervous disease, in which an **exaggeration of the reflexes** may, in certain circumstances, be considered to indicate that the higher centres have been cut off, *e g*, by disease of the pyramidal tracts or cerebral cortex The reflex may be exaggerated in any condition which increases the irritability of the nervous system

The effect of reinforcement referred to above is a closely allied phenomenon, but a generally accepted explanation has not yet been found On the other hand, we are familiar with the fact that reflexes may be largely inhibited by volition, *e g* sneezing Cranmer when burnt at the stake, held his hand in the fire till it was consumed

The Plantar Reflex—We have seen in the frog experiment described above that two reflexes may be produced by stimulation of the foot Two similar reflexes are seen in man the *withdrawal reflex*, involving extension of the toes (extensor plantar response), and the *thrust reflex*, involving flexion of the toes (flexor plantar response) Normally they are elicited by two distinct varieties of stimulation, but, as a result of walking, the protective withdrawal reflex is in partial abeyance and a *gentle* scratch of the sole of the foot with the finger-nail causes flexion of the toes In disease of the pyramidal tracts, however, or in very deep sleep, when local protection is more essential, the withdrawal reflex is more prominent and such stimulation causes extension of the toes, especially the great toe This is an important diagnostic sign of interference with the pyramidal tract (Babinski's sign)

The Relation of Reflexes to Muscle Tone—Commonly, changes in the reflexes are associated with alterations in muscle tone which we know to be a reflex phenomenon, but for convenience this is considered separately

Visceral Reflexes —The spinal grey matter contains centres which regulate the operation of many involuntary muscles Some of these centres are —

The *cilio-spinal* centre which controls the dilatation of the pupil, it is situated in the lower cervical region, reaching as far down as the origin of the first to the third thoracic nerve

Subsidiary *vasomotor* centres The principal vasomotor centre is situated in the bulb, and subsidiary centres are scattered through the spinal grey matter (see p 618)

Centres probably exist for all the muscular viscera, but particular study has been directed to those in the pelvis, and centres for *micturition, defæcation, erection,* and *parturition* are contained in the lumbo-sacral region of the cord If the spinal cord is cut through above the situation of these centres, the result is, in general terms, that any influence of the higher (voluntary) centres over these actions is no longer possible The actions in question are then simply reflex ones occurring unconsciously at certain intervals, and set in movement by the peripheral stimulus (fullness of bladder, of rectum, etc) If the portion of the cord where these centres are placed is entirely destroyed, the result is paralysis of the muscles concerned, though in certain cases, even after such a severe injury, some amount of recovery has been noticed, which must be attributed to the peripheral ganglia being able to play the part of reflex centres

The phenomena of micturition and defæcation have, however, already been described at length

Muscle Tone and the Postural Reflexes

In our consideration of the tendon reflexes we saw that certain reflexes occurred when tendons are stretched by tapping or otherwise These reflexes are, however, really part of a most elaborate mechanism by which the body maintains its posture and co-ordinates its muscular activities The so-called "stretch reflex" is therefore of fundamental importance in the maintenance of posture

It is found in animals and in man that certain of the muscles are not fully relaxed, but appear to be constantly maintained in a state of partial contraction This state we know as **tonus**

This may readily be seen in a decerebrate frog, which, if held up by the head, is seen to maintain its legs in a slightly flexed position If, however, the anterior *or* posterior lumbar roots are cut, or the spinal cord in the lumbar region destroyed, the legs hang flaccid It is evident from such experiments that the muscular tone which was present was dependent not only on impulses which pass out from the cord but also on those which pass in by the posterior roots

Similarly, in man, if any condition is present which interferes with the spinal arc, either on the afferent or the efferent side, there is unusual flaccidity On the other hand, if the pyramidal tracts are destroyed by disease there is found in association with the increased reflexes a marked rigidity of the lower limbs due to increased tone of the extensors Generally we may say that loss of reflexes is associated with loss of tone and increase of reflexes with increase of tone

We may arrive at some, as yet incomplete, explanation of these facts if we study the phenomenon of tone in animals

The Spinal Animal has already been studied (p 674), and it has been seen that it is possessed of flexion defence reflexes After the shock of the operation has passed off the flexor muscles are in a state of tone the spinal cord may be looked upon as placing the animal in a protective position by drawing in the limbs

The Mid-Brain Animal—If, however, the section is made through the mid-brain, through or just below the red nucleus, quite the opposite state of affairs is produced, namely, that first described by Sherrington as **decerebrate rigidity** * In this condition the limbs are fully extended and are rigid as the result of increased tone in the muscles of the back and neck, in the quadriceps, the extensor of the knee, and in the gastrocnemius at the back of the leg There is produced, in other words, a condition of reflex standing, since all the anti-gravity muscles are contracted and the preparation can therefore maintain its own weight if placed on its feet, but cannot right its position if pushed over The reflex paths concerned in the phenomenon may be investigated by studying the condition of the tone present in the quadriceps extensor of the knee It is found that the maintenance of the tone depends on both the anterior and posterior roots (lumbar 5 and 6 in the case of the quadriceps in the cat), indicating that tonus is dependent on afferent impulses arising in the muscle itself These impulses may be shown to depend on the slight stretch imposed on the muscle by its bony attachments from the tendency for the legs to bend, since, if the tendon is severed, the tonus and the impulses which are found by the electrical method to pass up its nerve at the rate of 15 per second at once disappear The stretch reflex has been dealt with on p 678 It is also known as the *shortening reaction* and depends on impulses passing up from the tendon organs (Denny Brown) That the skin is not involved is seen by the fact that decerebrate rigidity is fully present in a skinned limb

* Section of the rubrospinal tract only without the pyramidal tracts does not cause rigidity, but different animals vary appreciably in this respect

It is seen, however, that the central nervous system, as high as the pons, is concerned in the reaction, since section below Deiters' nucleus or section of the antero-lateral tract removes the rigidity Thus we may conclude that this condition of decerebrate rigidity depends on a reflex arc, of which the afferent side is the afferent nerves from the muscles, the posterior roots, and the antero-lateral tract, while the efferent side is the vestibulo-spinal tract from Deiters' nucleus (Bazett) in the upper medulla and lower pons, the anterior roots and the motor nerves to the muscles A similar condition of decerebrate rigidity is found occasionally in man, *e g* in tumours involving the mid-brain

It must be understood that the amount of muscular tension thus kept up is only a fraction of the maximum which can be produced by the same muscles, and the amount of oxygen required is only 25 per cent above that required at rest The liability to fatigue is, therefore, very little indeed, the rigidity can be kept up for many days It is of interest to observe that the posturing limb shows the phenomenon of *plasticity* which tends to keep the limb in whatever position it is placed

The degree of tone in posturing muscles is related to the body as a whole (see tonic reflexes, pp 686 and 687)

An interesting phenomenon of posturing muscle is the *lengthening reaction* If the muscle is severely stretched it is felt to give way owing to a sudden disappearance of the tone as a result of inhibitory impulses which pass up from the muscle spindles This reaction is important in preventing the tearing of muscles

The Thalamic Animal—If a section is made above the red nucleus, the postural reactions of the animal are complete For convenience the thalamus also is left intact in order that the animal shall be able to regulate its own body temperature The animal possesses *righting reflexes*, that is, is capable of righting itself from any position in which it may be placed, although of course by the removal of the cerebrum it is deprived of all volition and is a mere automaton

Experiments on the decerebrate and thalamic animal, which we owe largely to the schools of Magnus in Utrecht and of Sherrington in Oxford, show that certain parts of the body bear a definite relation to each other in the maintenance of posture, and that when one part of the body is moved, a reflex alteration in tone changes the position of other parts of the body Thus, if the neck is flexed, the fore legs bend and the hind legs extend, while the opposite occurs if the head is extended (*i e* a *tonic neck reflex* occurs) Such movements, it is realised, take place together normally in the life of the animal when it is eating or looking up Also if one leg is bent the other may extend as in walking This is known as the

crossed extension reflex Similarly if the head is turned to one side the limbs on that side show increased extensor tonus as if to support the weight of the body while the tonus of the opposite side decreases

Thus we see that the central nervous system, as high up as the optic thalamus, is possessed of a very large degree of reflex activity which automatically promotes the interests of the animal

The Maintenance of Posture

The facts which have been given above show quite definitely that the maintenance of posture is purely a reflex phenomenon which does not involve the cerebrum or conscious effort The experiments given above suggest that the muscular reflexes with which the nervous system of the elementary spinal animal is concerned are those of protection of the animal With the greater development of locomotion are developed the antigravity reflexes which are exhibited by the decerebrate animal Such extensor reflexes have arcs through the medulla and pons They do not, however, depend, as used to be thought, on the cerebellum Normally, however, these extensors appear to be held in check by a still higher set of reflexes involving the mid-brain * In the higher mammals this part of the brain is quite small, but in lower animals, especially those who have to maintain posture in vertical as well as horizontal planes, *e g* birds and fishes, the so-called optic lobes of the mid-brain are more conspicuous than any other part of the brain These are represented in the mammal by the corpora quadrigemina, which are quite small

Muscular Co-ordination and the Maintenance of Equilibrium — Although posture and equilibrium are closely allied phenomena they are not quite identical Equilibrium includes the maintenance of posture, but involves also maintenance of steadiness during muscular movement, such as walking In this, the maintenance of proper co-ordination of muscular activity is essential The reflexes concerned are very similar to those of posture, but, apparently, normally they involve to a greater extent the cerebellum and the semicircular canals

Receptors and Reflexes concerned in Posture and Equilibrium

The afferent impulses originate from the following four sources — skin, joints and muscles, retinæ, labyrinths

In the accurate investigation of these reflexes decerebrate animals are used for the tonic postural reflexes, and thalamic animals (p 684)

* Since the above was written a paper has been published by Blair and McDowall indicating that the cortex has a flexor effect especially well marked on the fore-limbs

for the righting reflexes. When one kind of receptor is being investigated it is necessary to exclude the others, *e.g.* by blindfolding, by removing the labyrinths, or by immobilising muscles.

1. **The Skin.**—Sherrington has shown how comparatively unimportant is the loss of tactile sensibility from the feet. A cat, in which the feet have been completely desensitised by division of nerves, can stand and walk without obvious inconvenience.

It has been shown, however, by Rademaker that certain *body righting reflexes* which tend to bring the body from the lateral to the normal position have their origin in the skin.

2. **The Muscles and Joints.**—We have already seen that stretching or tapping of a muscle may originate nerve impulses. This occurs from stimulation of the specialised nerve-endings, the tendon organs, and muscle spindles which become compressed. The shortening reaction appears to depend on the tendon organs (Denny Brown) which, however, are not confined to the tendons as originally thought, while the lengthening reaction depends on the spindles. The spindles give rise to impulses by which we become aware of the movement and position of our muscles, but in this connection we are concerned with those impulses which do not reach consciousness. The fibres which carry the latter are off-shoots of the sensory fibres and reach the mid-brain and cerebellum *via* Clarke's column and the cerebellar and tecto-spinal tracts.

The reflexes which are set up are known as tonic and righting reflexes, which may arise from the muscles of the body or the neck. Some cause the body to follow the head (*neck righting reflexes*), others (*tonic neck reflexes*) cause a change in tone in certain muscles (p. 684) in accordance with the requirements of the head.

The difficulty experienced by quite normal persons in standing on one leg with the eyes shut, is due to a reduction of the number of these impulses, for the same subjects with the eyes shut can stand quite easily on both legs; displacement of the centre of gravity, caused by standing on one leg, must however be taken into account. In many cases of tabes there is but little loss of tactile sensibility, and the condition of inco-ordination is chiefly due to the loss of impressions from muscles and joints. In these cases, however, the sense of equilibrium is not lost; the man realises that he is unsteady.

3. **The Eyes.**—The eyes are important sensory receptors in relation to posture and equilibrium.

They are the receptors of the *optical righting reflexes*. It can be shown that if a labyrinthectomised monkey be blindfolded and suspended in any position it makes no attempt to right itself, but does so as soon as the bandage is removed. The centres for such reflexes are in the occipital cortex.

The importance of the eyes is increased when the other receptors are interfered with. This is well illustrated by the case of the tabetic who has deficient joint and muscle sense due to disease of the

posterior nerve-roots, the visual postural reflexes have become educated to replace the diminished reflexes from the muscles, and directly the individual is deprived of them he becomes unsteady or even falls This phenomenon is known as Romberg's sign Since, however, the labyrinths are normal the subject is quite aware of his unsteadiness

As has been indicated above, the capability of an individual to stand on one leg depends, to a considerable extent, on impulses from the eyes In some individuals the paralysis of accommodation by the instillation of atropine into the eyes causes interference with the maintenance of posture This suggests that the actual focussing of objects is of special importance

Destruction of the eyes in animals often causes them to spin round and lose their balance The giddiness experienced by many people on looking from a height or at moving water, or after the onset of a squint, or when objects are viewed under unusual circumstances, as in the ascent of a mountain railway, is due to the same thing It should be understood that visual impressions in themselves are not wholly the guide It is the projection of what is seen in relation to the position of the body (ascertained by the innervation of the head muscles and ocular muscles) which is the chief guide

4 **The Labyrinth**—An external view of the labyrinth, which is enclosed within the petrous portion of the temporal bone, is shown in fig 309 (p 801) The labyrinth consists of three parts—the vestibule (1), the three **semicircular canals** (3, 4, 5) which open into the vestibule, and the tube, coiled like a snail's shell, called the cochlea (6, 7, 8) The cochlea is the part of the apparatus which is concerned in the reception of auditory impressions, it is supplied by the cochlear division of the eighth or auditory nerve The remainder of the internal ear is concerned not in hearing, but in the reception of the impressions we are now studying, it is supplied by the vestibular division of the eighth nerve Within the vestibule are two chambers made of membrane, called the **utricle** and the **saccule**, these communicate with one another and with the canal of the cochlea (fig 311, p 802) Within each bony canal is a membranous canal of similar shape Each canal is filled with a watery fluid called *endolymph*, and separated from the bony canal by another fluid called *perilymph* Each canal has a swelling at one end called the *ampulla* The membranous canals open into the utricle the *horizontal* canal by each of its ends, the *superior* and *posterior* vertical canals by three openings, these two canals being connected at their non-ampullary ends

Fig 265 shows in transverse section the way in which a membranous canal is contained within the bony canal, the membranous

canal consists of three layers the outer layer is fibrous and continuous with the periosteum that lines the bony canal, then comes the *tunica propria*, composed of homogeneous material, and

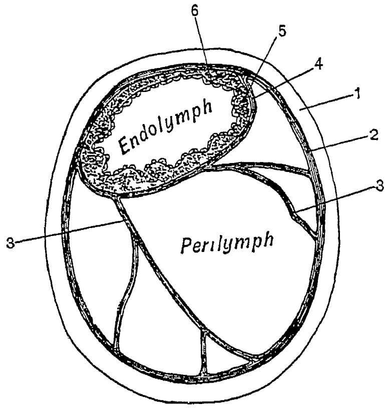


FIG 265 —Section of human semicircular canal (After Rudinger) 1, Bone, 2, periosteum, 3, 3, fibrous bands connecting the periosteum to 4, the outer fibrous coat of the membranous canal, 5, tunica propria, 6, epithelium

thrown into papillæ except just where the attachment of the membranous to the bony canal is closest, the innermost layer is a somewhat flattened epithelium

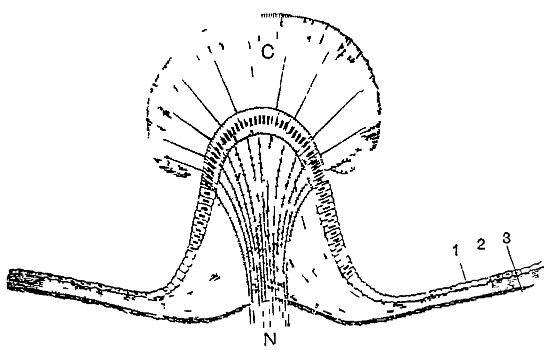


FIG 266 —Section through the wall of the ampulla of a semicircular canal, passing through the crista acustica 1, Epithelium, 2, tunica propria, 3, fibrous layer of canal N, bundles of nerve fibres, C, cupula, into which the hairs of the hair cells project (After Schafer)

At the ampulla there is a different appearance, the tunica propria is raised into a hillock called the *crista acustica* (see fig 266), the cells of the epithelium become columnar in shape, and to some of them fibres of the eighth nerve pass, arborising round them,

these cells are provided with stiff hairs, which project into what is called the *cupula*, a mass of mucus-like material Between the hair-cells are fibre-cells which act as supports (fig 267) When the pressure of the endolymph in the interior of the canals is altered, the hairs of the hair-cells are affected, and a nervous impulse is set up in the contiguous nerve-fibres, which carry it to the central nervous system The stimulation of the hairs is brought about by small bodies entangled in the hairs (see below)

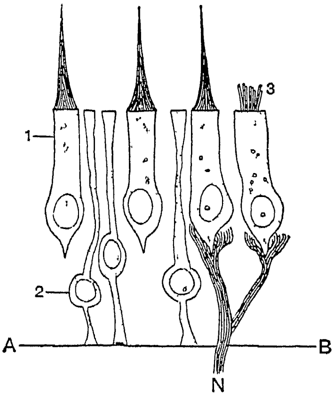


FIG 267 —1, Hair cell, 3, hair cell, showing the hair broken, and the base of the hair split into its constituent fibrils, 2, fibre cell, N, bundle of nerve fibres which have lost their medullary sheath, and terminate by arborising round the base of the hair cells, A B, surface of tunica propria (After Retzius)

The Function of the Otolithic Cavities

Since the position of the head is of such importance in maintaining posture, a special mechanism has been developed within the utricle and saccule which is affected by gravity and in which impulses are set up which are carried to the brain also by the vestibular nerve

In each saccule and utricle is the macula, resembling in structure the cristæ acusticæ of the semicircular canals (p 688), but in addition there are entangled in the hairs of the hair-cells calcareous bodies known as *otoliths,* which stimulate the hairs by pulling The function of an otolithic cavity was first discovered in the crayfish, whose cavity is open to the exterior and which replaces the otoliths periodically by grains of sand, when Kreidl replaced the sand by iron filings and approached the animal with a magnet, the animal could be made to turn somersaults or to adopt any position, according to the direction of pull of the magnet In the mammal, definite alterations in the tone of muscles is caused by change in position of the head, even when the reflexes due to stretching of the neck muscles are excluded by fixing the neck in plaster of Paris The reflexes from the labyrinths have a longer latent period than those from the neck, the effects from neck and labyrinth are summated

The reflexes are of two categories (1) *tonic labyrinthine reflexes* which are shown by the decerebrate animal and which relate the position of the body and limbs to that of the head These depend on the utricle whose otoliths lie above the horizontal maculæ, and (2) *labyrinthine righting reflexes* which are shown by the thalamic

animal and which are concerned with maintaining the head in the normal position in relation to the earth's surface If the body is moved in such an animal the head is automatically righted The asymmetric righting reflexes depend on the saccules whose otoliths lie lateral to the vertical maculæ, the symmetrical righting reflexes arise probably in both utricles and saccules

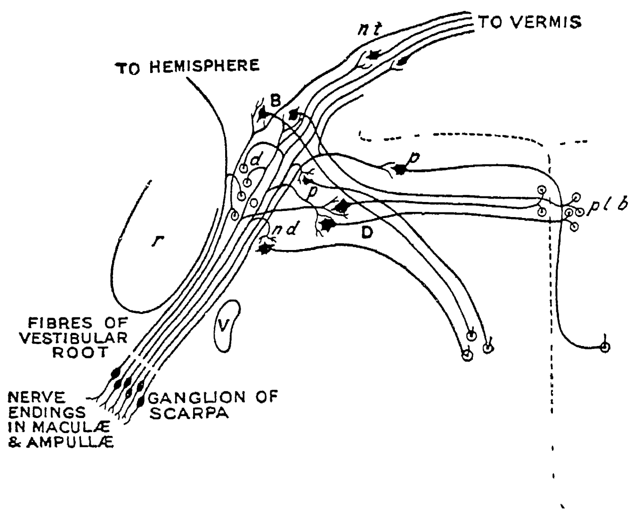


FIG 268 —Vestibular division of the auditory nerve *r*, Restiform body, *V*, descending root of the fifth nerve, *d*, fibres of descending vestibular root, *n d*, cell of descending vestibular nucleus, *D*, nucleus of Deiters, B, nucleus of Bechterew, *n t*, nucleus tecti of cerebellum, *p l b*, posterior longitudinal bundle, *p*, principal nucleus (Schafer)

After bilateral destruction of the labyrinth an animal soon recovers from the effect of the operation, because of its visual postural reflexes, but certain functions are never recovered The cat, for example, never regains its proverbial power of falling on its feet if thrown from a height, and ceases to be able to rise to the surface and swim when thrown into water

The function of the otolithic cavities only may be destroyed by centrifuging the animal, a procedure which causes it to be unable to regain its posture, but it may still respond to some extent to sudden movement of the head as the semicircular canals act normally

The **vestibular nerve** (see fig 268) arises from the bipolar cells of the *ganglion of Scarpa*, which is situated in the internal auditory meatus The peripheral axons ramify among the hair-cells of the epithelium in the utricle, saccule, and semicircular canals The central axons enter a collection of small nerve-cells between the restiform body and the descending root of the fifth, this is termed the *principal*

nucleus, here they bifurcate, the descending branches run towards the lower part of the bulb, and arborise round the cells of the neighbouring grey matter (descending vestibular nucleus) The ascending branches pass upwards, some to the cerebrum, but most by the restiform body to the cerebellum, in their course they give off many collaterals which form synapses with the cells of two nuclei near the outer angle of the ventricular floor, known as the *nucleus of Deiters* and *nucleus of Bechterew* The fibres which arise from Deiters' nucleus pass into the posterior longitudinal bundles of both sides (see p 638), those which start in *Bechterew's nucleus* become longitudinal, but their destination is uncertain

The Function of the Semicircular Canals

It will be noticed that the canals on each side are in three planes at right angles to each other, and we learn the movements of the head with regard to the three dimensions of space by means of impressions from the ampullary endings of the vestibular nerve, these impressions are set up by the varying pressure of the endolymph in the ampullæ

Thus a sudden turning of the head from right to left will cause movement of the endolymph towards, and therefore increased pressure on, the hair-cells connected to the ampullary nerve-endings of the left horizontal canal, and diminished pressure on the corresponding apparatus of the right side It is probable that resulting from such a movement two impulses reach the brain, one the effect of increased pressure in one ampulla, the second the effect of decreased pressure in its fellow It may even be that increased pressure on one side of a crista is accompanied by diminished pressure on the opposite face of the same crista

"One canal can be affected by, and transmit the sensation of rotation about one axis in one direction only, and for complete perception of rotation in any direction about any axis, six canals are required in three pairs, each pair being in the same or parallel planes, and their ampullæ turned opposite ways Each pair would thus be sensitive to any rotation about a line at right angles to its plane or planes, the one canal being influenced by rotation in one direction, the other by rotation in the opposite direction" (Crum-Brown)

The two horizontal canals are in the same plane, the posterior vertical of one side is in a plane parallel to that of the superior vertical of the other side (see fig 269)

When these canals are diseased in man as in Menière's disease, there are disturbances of equilibrium a feeling of giddiness, which may lead to the patient's falling down, is associated with nausea and vomiting In animals similar results are produced by injury, and the subject has been chiefly worked out on birds by Flourens, where the canals are large and readily exposed, and in fishes by Lee

Thus, if the horizontal canal is divided in a pigeon, the head is thrown into a series of oscillations in a horizontal plane, which are

increased by section of the corresponding canal of the opposite side After section of the vertical canals, the forced movements are in a vertical plane, and the animal tends to turn somersaults

"When the whole of the canals are destroyed on both sides the disturbances of equilibrium are of the most pronounced character Goltz describes a pigeon so treated which always kept its head with the occiput touching the breast, the vertex directed downwards, with the right eye looking to the left and the left looking to the right, the head being incessantly swung in a pendulum-like manner Cyon says it is almost impossible to give an idea of the perpetual movements to which the animal is subject It can neither stand, nor lie still, nor fly, nor maintain any fixed attitude It executes violent somersaults, now forwards, now backwards, rolls round and

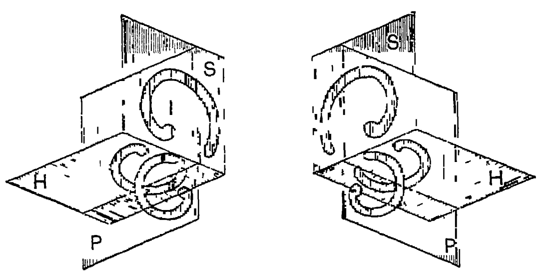


FIG 269 —Diagram of semicircular canals, to show their positions in three planes at right angles to each other It will be seen that the two horizontal canals (H) lie in the same plane and that the superior vertical of one side (S) lies in a plane parallel to that of the posterior vertical (P) of the other (The student will understand that, though in the diagram the canals are entirely separated from one another, they are really connected) (After Ewald)

round, or springs in the air and falls back to recommence anew It is necessary to envelop the animals in some soft covering to prevent them dashing themselves to pieces by the violence of their movements, and even then not always with success The extreme agitation is manifest only during the first few days following the operation, and the animal may then be set free without danger, but it is still unable to stand or walk, and tumultuous movements come on from the slightest disturbance After the lapse of a fortnight it is able to maintain its upright position At this stage it resembles an animal painfully learning to stand and walk In this it relies mainly on its vision, and it is only necessary to cover the eyes with a hood to dispel all the fruits of this new education, and cause the reappearance of all the motor disorders" (Ferrier)

It is these canals which enable the individual to know in which direction he is being moved, even though the eyes are bandaged, and the feet are not allowed to touch the ground On being whirled

round, such a person knows in which direction he is being moved, and feels that he is moving so long as the rate of rotation varies, but when the whirling stops he seems, especially if he opens his eyes, to be whirling in the opposite direction, probably owing to the rebound of the fluid in the canals. The forced movements just described in animals are due both to the absence of the normal sensations from the canals and to delusive sensations arising from their irritation, and the animal makes efforts to correct the movement which it imagines it is being subjected to.

Functions of the Cerebellum

In the past several views have been held concerning the functions of the cerebellum. One of the oldest of these was the idea that the cerebellum was associated with the function of generation; another view, first promulgated by Willis, was that the cerebellum contained the centres which regulate the functions of organic life; this arose from the circumstance that diseases of the cerebellum are often associated with nausea and vomiting. The third and last of these older theories was that the cerebellum was the centre for sensation. This arose from the fact that certain of the afferent channels of the spinal cord were traced into the cerebellum. The impulses that travel along these, however, though afferent, are not truly sensory, and their reception in the cerebellum is not associated with consciousness.

The true function of the cerebellum was first pointed out by Flourens, who showed that the cerebellum is, as has been indicated already, the great centre for the co-ordination of muscular movement—that is, the harmonious adjustment of the working of the muscles; in doing so the cerebellum co-operates intimately with the postural mechanisms described above.

The functions of the cerebellum have been investigated by observing the effects of *removal* in animals and of *disease* in man. *Stimulation* of the vermis of the cerebellum inhibits the rigidity of the same side of the body in decerebrate rigidity (Sherrington), presumably *via* Deiters' nucleus. Various movements of the head and eyes have been described. Stimulation of the cerebellar nuclei causes movements of the head and eyes.

The disturbed condition of the gait and co-ordination of an animal deprived of the cerebellum (fig. 270) contrasts very forcibly with the sleepy state produced by removal of the cerebrum. For such work birds have been extensively used since the cerebellum is relatively large and easily accessible in these animals.

In **man** disease, such as tumour or abscess, of the cerebellum leads to the condition of cerebellar ataxia. This *ataxia* is part of a

general disturbance of co-ordination There is general weakness (*asthenia*) and loss of tone (*atonia*) of the muscles concerned The muscles, therefore, feel flabby and the limbs unduly loose and flail-like if moved The individual is slow and clumsy and cannot bring his movements smoothly to an end This may be seen if the patient attempts to touch the nose, he not only has difficulty in reaching the nose, but he may strike the nose forcibly, while in attempting to make such an accurate movement the muscles act inco-ordinately instead of acting smoothly together (*asynergia*)

The weakness, if unilateral, tends to render him liable to fall to

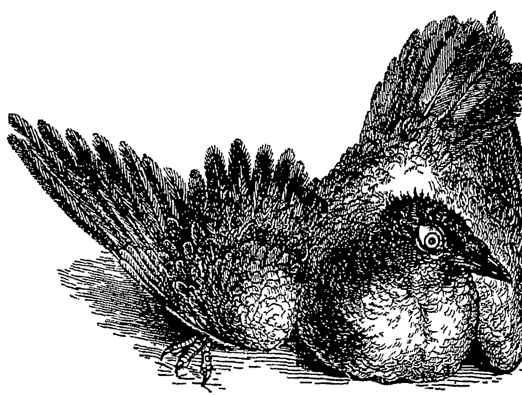


FIG 270 —Pigeon after removal of the cerebellum (Dalton)

the affected side, since, as we have seen, the cerebellar tracts are uncrossed The head is commonly rotated to the opposite side

Speech may be similarly affected, being typically staccato in character or laboriously slow There are also interference with the compensating movement of the eyes, the production of nystagmus (see p 696) and deviation of the eyes These disturbances result not only from disease of the cerebellum, but also when the paths to and from the organ have been impaired The normal mechanism of the knee-jerk is disturbed It is less sustained than normally so that the leg appears to fall limply The after-swing so produced has caused the term pendulum knee-jerk to be given to the response

The effects of removal of the cerebellum in animals is, however, not permanent, indeed, dogs, in which the cerebellum has been removed, recover their normal gait and do not appear otherwise abnormal In man also, considerable degrees of recovery may be seen

This recovery appears to be the result of other parts of the

central nervous system, especially the cerebrum, taking over the functions of the cerebellum, since, if in recovered animals the cerebrum is now removed, the disturbance of gait returns

By removing small portions of the cerebellum and by the study of disease, attempts have been made to find out the function of the cerebellum in more detail From such investigations the vermis appears to be related to the movements of the trunk, the hemispheres to the limbs

The upper surface is responsible for the thorax, neck, face, and arms, especially for adduction, abduction, and flexion, the lower surface controlling the lower part of the body, especially adduction and abduction of legs (Bolk and v Rijnberk)

It has also been established, as would be expected from the fact that the tracts to the cerebellum are uncrossed, that one half of the cerebellum controls the same side of the body The more intimate details are, however, as yet of little practical importance

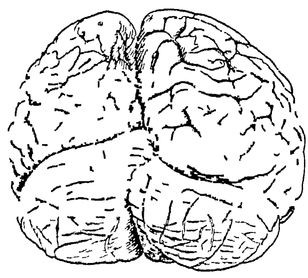


FIG 271 —This is a reproduction of a photograph of a lunatic's brain by Dr Fricke One cerebral and the opposite cerebellar hemisphere are atrophied

The cerebellum is connected with other parts of the nervous system by the various paths already described on p 645, and these pathways are so arranged that the cerebellum acts upon the muscles of the same side of the body in conjunction with the cerebral hemisphere of the opposite side The close interrelation of one cerebral with the opposite cerebellar hemisphere is shown in cases of brain disease, in which atrophy of one cerebellar hemisphere follows that of the opposite cerebral hemisphere (see fig 271) In order that the cerebellum may send out impulses, it is necessary that it receive impulses which guide it by keeping it informed of the position of the body in space These impulses, as we have already insisted, though afferent are non-sensory, they travel by paths which at the start, however, are offshoots from those which carry the real sensory impulses to the cerebrum

Compensating Movement of the Eyes — Of considerable interest and importance is the movement of the eyes, which takes place automatically when the head is moved, so that they may remain fixed on an object It may be observed in an animal whose cerebrum has been removed If the head is moved up, the eyes move down, and *vice versa* These eye movements depend on impulses from the labyrinth and from the muscles

Similar movements may be observed in man for instance, in an individual who attempts to look at passing objects from a

rapidly moving train. The eyes appear to jump from one object to another. The jump is due to the cerebrum, but the lag behind which permits a series of objects to be focussed depends on cerebellar and brain-stem reflexes. The alternation of slow and fast movements of the eyes is known as **nystagmus**. A similar nystagmus, or difficulty in keeping the eyes fixed on an object held at the side of the head, is produced normally by heating or cooling the labyrinth, and is now a test for the efficiency of the latter in suspected disease. We have already remarked the interference with the normal position and movements of the eyes in cerebellar disease.

Reciprocal Innervation of Antagonistic Muscles.—Interest in this branch of muscle physiology we owe to the researches of Sherrington. In brief, he shows that the inhibition of the tonus of a voluntary muscle may be brought about by excitation of its antagonist. It is a good illustration of proprioceptive reflexes.

Movement at a joint in any direction involves the shortening of one set of muscles and the elongation of another (antagonistic) set. The stretching of a muscle produced by the contraction of its antagonist mechanically stimulates the sensory nerve-endings in the muscle-spindles of the muscle which is under extension; in this way a reflex of pure muscular initiation may be started. Experiments show that electrical excitation of the central end of an exclusively muscular nerve produces inhibition of the tonus of its antagonist. For instance, the central end of the severed hamstring nerve is faradised. This nerve contains in the cat 4510 nerve-fibres, and of these about 1810 are sensory in function,* these come from the flexor muscles of the knee, not from the skin. The effect of the stimulation of the nerve on the tonus of the extensor muscles of the knee is seen (*a*) in elongation of those muscles, and (*b*) in temporary diminution of the knee-jerk. The experiment may be varied as follows: the exposed flexor muscles detached from the knee, and therefore incapable of mechanically affecting the position of the joint, are stretched or kneaded. This produces a reflex elongation of the extensor muscles of the knee and a temporary diminution of the knee-jerk. The effects are in fact the same as those produced by faradisation of the central end of the nerve supplying them. It may therefore be that reciprocal innervation, which is a common form of co-ordination of antagonistic muscles, is secured by a simple reflex mechanism, an important factor in its execution being the tendency for the action of a muscle to produce its own inhibition reflexly by mechanical stimulation of the sensory apparatus in its antagonist.

When we study the anatomical path of the entering posterior

* The number of sensory nerve-fibres is determined by counting the healthy fibres in the nerve after section of the anterior nerve-roots.

roots (p 625) we see that there are several ways by which an afferent impulse may affect the motor discharge from the anterior horn-cells of the cord, there is the short path by the collaterals of the entering fibre which pass directly to these cells, and there are the longer paths, *via* the cerebellum and cerebrum respectively In the execution of a voluntary action all paths are in activity to produce the co-ordination and due contraction and elongation of antagonistic muscles which characterise an effective muscular act Section of the posterior roots produces not only an inability to carry out reflex actions, but also leads to an inability to carry out effectively those more complicated reflex actions which are called voluntary, and in which the brain participates Locomotor ataxy, or tabes dorsalis, is a slowly progressive disease, the anatomical basis of which is a degeneration of the posterior nerve-roots It is, therefore, analogous to a physiological experiment in which the posterior roots are divided, and although some fibres may remain which still allow of the passage of nervous impulses, the action of the three circles is greatly interfered with, the spinal reflex arc is at fault, this is shown by the loss of reflex action, the disappearance of the tendon reflexes, and the want of tonus in antagonistic muscles, the main symptom of the disease is want of muscular co-ordination, and this is produced not only by the lesion in the spinal cord, but is accentuated by the want of continuity in the other two paths, so that the brain is unable effectively to control the motor discharge from the anterior cornual cells

The Nature of Excitation and Inhibition —The older theories of reflex excitation and inhibition of central origin have now been abandoned it is, therefore, unnecessary to detail them

In their place will probably be accepted in some form or other, particularly for reflex inhibition, the modern "chemical" (humoral) theory advocated by Sherrington

Summarised, this suggested working hypothesis assumes that a motor nerve-cell (*e g* an anterior horn cell) is susceptible to afferent stimuli of opposite sense, which induce the creation within the cell of excitatory state (E) or inhibitory state (I)

It is assumed that these are formed in definite amounts and proportional to the strength-duration, *i e* intensity of the stimulus, and further, that E and I are mutually antagonistic and capable of neutralising each other, as if they were chemical substances

Sherrington has constructed a scheme to show how afferent impulses may produce in nerve centres accumulation of either E or I Inhibition is regarded as the result of an excess of I over E, and excitation the reverse The hypothesis can be elaborated to account for after-discharge as being due to accumulated E after cessation of the stimulation It accounts for the augmentation of strength

of stimuli (to afferent) increasing muscle response, for prolongation of unaltered stimulation of afferent causing increased reflex contraction (re-excitement), for the shortening of latent reflex interval by increase of stimulus strength, for the fact that stimulation of an inhibitory afferent induces an inhibitory state in the absence of an excitatory state, and for increase of inhibitory stimulus increasing amount of relaxation in an excitation reflex contraction

Sufficient has been said to indicate the ideas which forerun this modern conception (Senior students are referred to Sherrington's paper *Proc Roy Soc*, B 97, 1925)

The Principle of the Common Path (Sherrington)—At the commencement of every reflex arc is a receptive neurone extending from a sensory surface to the brain or cord, and this is a *private* path exclusively occupied by impulses from its own receptive points on the surface of the body These impulses pass along certain association tracts or internuncial paths in the central nervous system, and at the termination of the arc we have a final neurone which acts as the conducting link between the central nervous system and the muscle or gland which it supplies This final neurone does not subserve exclusively impulses generated at one receptive source, but can be used in the conduction of impulses generated at many points of the body's surface The arm muscles, for instance, can be thrown into play in response to visual, auditory, tactile, and other stimuli The final neurone thus differs from the initial neurone in being *public*, not private, and may be spoken of as the *final common path* Of course, in every reflex action we are not really concerned with individual neurones, but with thousands of them acting in harmony, still, for descriptive purposes, it is well to speak of one set of neurones only as a sample of the rest An ordinary motor nerve is thus a collection of many final common paths This flowing of afferent impulses towards a common point has been called **The Principle of Convergence**

Now let us suppose that two stimuli are acting on different parts of the body's surface, each of which would produce impulses that converge upon the same final common path, though they may throw the motor organ into action in rather a different way In such circumstances, it is found that the occupation of the public path by one impulse prevents it being simultaneously used by the other, one reflex or the other takes place, but not both of them

For the investigation of such a problem, the "*scratch reflex*" of the dog is one that lends itself admirably This can best be studied in the "spinal" dog, that is in a dog in which cerebral influence is shut off by division of the spinal cord in the lower cervical region If the skin over a large saddle-shaped area covering the shoulders and back is gently irritated on one side, the hind leg of the same

the ıeflex The associatıon paths ın the cord are ın the lateral paıt of the lateral column, and dıvısıon of that regıon of the cord abolıshes the ıeflex

But theıe ıs another foım of stımulatıon whıch also throws the same flexoı muscles ınto actıon, although ın rather a dıfferent way, and that ıs stımulatıon of the sole of the foot The foot and leg aıe wıthdıawn, and the actıon ıs a steady one, and not a successıon of ıhythmıc dıschaıges as ın scratchıng Both reflexes, however, end ın the same final common path, and ıf whıle scıatchıng ıs beıng elıcıted by stımulatıon of the shoulder, the foot ıs then stımulated sımultaneously, scratchıng ımmedıately ceases, one set of ımpulses has dısplaced the otheı from the final common path If then one ceases to stımulate the foot, the scratch reflex returns ıf the ırııtatıon of the shoulder ıs kept up Thıs ıs well ıllustrated by the tracıng (fig 272)

There ıs another way ın whıch the ınhıbıtıon of reflexes may be produced The contractıon of one set of muscles ıs accompanıed by relaxatıon of ıts antagonısts, and the contractıon of the flexors ın the scıatch ıeflex may thereforе be ınhıbıted by makıng the antagonıstıc muscles (the extensors) contract Further, the scratch reflex ıs unılateral, but thıs does not mean that the muscles supplyıng the other legs are ınactıve, for they must act ın such a way as to suppoıt the dog on thıee legs, whıle ıt scratches wıth the fourth So ıf the ııght shoulder ıs stımulated, the rıght hınd leg scıatches, ıf the left shoulder ıs stımulated, the left hınd leg scıatches, but ıf both shoulders are stımulated together, only one or the other leg scratches, not the two at once, parts of the final paths are common to both sıdes, and there ıs a stıuggle for theır occupatıon Instances of reınforcıng actıon may be found, foı example, ıf two poınts of the skın of one shoulder are stımulated wıth a very feeble current, neıther stımulus alone may be suffıcıent to evoke the scratch reflex, but the two together may elıcıt ıt, ın order to attaın thıs ıesult the two poınts of skın must be faırly close together

The afferent neurones (prıvate paths) of the body are about five tımes more numerous than the efferent (final common paths), and ın the struggle foı the occupatıon of these publıc paths by the ımpulses that enteı the central nervous system by the more numerous prıvate paths, thıee factors are specıally concerned —(1) Strength of stımulus, the stıongeı the stımulus the better chance the resultıng ımpulse has of gettıng round to the motor organ (2) Character of ımpulse, sensatıons of paınful nature and sexual feelıngs wın the final path easıly, ıt ıs a matter of common experıence that such sensatıons domınate and even exclude other sensatıons, a man wıth bad toothache ıs not lıkely to take much notıce of anyone who pulls

his coat tails (3) Fatigue at the end of a long stimulation, a stimulus applied to a fresh reflex arc has a better chance of capturing the common path

Conditioned Reflexes

In this variety of reflex we have the participation of the cerebral cortex and apparently of consciousness in its formation, and it is so called because it depends largely on the condition of its establishment Conditioned reflexes are not inborn, like the reflexes we have hitherto been considering, but have become actually acquired by the animal during its life-time Our knowledge of these reflexes we owe largely to Pavlov, who has placed their study on an experimental basis His classic experiment is well known He showed that if a bell was rung each time food was given to a hungry dog, eventually the dog secreted saliva when the bell was rung, although food was not presented The showing of the food to the dog constitutes the *unconditioned stimulus*, the ringing of the bell the *conditioned stimulus* The fact that a dog will secrete saliva when food is offered is well known, and may be looked upon as an inborn or unconditioned reflex, but it has now been shown that practically any stimulus not involving serious hurt to the animal, and provided it begins to act slightly before the normal activity, may, if it occurs simultaneously with the normal stimulus, become the conditioned stimulus Even the cessation of a stimulus, *e g* of the ringing of a bell, may act as a stimulus The sight of the syringe used for the injection of apomorphine is eventually sufficient to cause vomiting although no actual injection is made Failure, however, to follow the conditioned by the unconditioned stimulus leads to weakening and eventually to *loss or extinction* of the reflex Even allied reflexes are affected, a fact which indicates that the extinction is an active inhibitory process A conditioned reflex may become established in relation to any reflex activity of the animal, even to the knee-jerk, but for the sake of simplicity most of the work has been carried out in relation to the secretion of saliva For more accurate work the duct of a salivary gland is brought to the surface, so that the saliva can be easily collected and measured Also to avoid the disturbance caused by extraneous stimuli, the animal is placed in a special chamber and is observed indirectly by means of a periscope

It is evident that in the formation of a conditioned reflex two processes occur, namely, an analysis of the stimulus which takes place in the cerebrum, which with the appropriate afferent nerve and nerve-ending comprises the **analyser**, and an association of the conditioned and unconditioned stimulus If the appropriate part of the cortex is removed, *e g* the temporal areas in a case in which the

conditioned stimulus is a sound, the reflex disappears This experiment is important, as it indicates that the reflex does not depend on any short-circuiting mechanism through lower centres as has been suggested

Conditioned reflexes are of interest as they offer a method of investigation of the analysers and the power of the lower animals to differentiate between different kinds and intensities of stimuli, for example, it has been shown that a dog can differentiate between half tones on the piano It has been possible also by their study to show that the power of localising the side from which a sound comes depends on integrity of the corpus callosum which joins the two cerebral hemispheres

Conditioned reflexes are liable to be inhibited or stopped in certain circumstances If, for example, an extraneous noise is heard this may cause a temporary **external inhibition** of the reflex If, however, the stimulus is harmful and affects the same region as the conditioned stimulus, the inhibition may be permanent

It has been found that a considerable interval may occur between the conditioned and the unconditioned stimulus, provided the former is applied first A dog may thus be taught to secrete saliva half an hour after a bell is rung (*i e* inhibition of delay) This is known as a *trace* reflex In the interval some definitely active inhibition must be present to prevent the stimulus from acting, since the introduction of an extraneous stimulus during the interval causes an immediate flow If, however, in the interval, another stimulus is applied which the dog has been taught to associate with *no* food, it is found that an inhibition of the conditioned reflex has been produced, and that the latter cannot be elicited again for some time This we call a *conditioned inhibition*, or if the animal has had to differentiate carefully between the positive and negative stimuli, *differential inhibition* All forms of inhibition other than those caused by extraneous stimuli are known as **internal inhibition**, since they involve an active inhibitory process Evidence indicates that this inhibition occurs in the cerebral cortex Further, it is found that if an inhibitory stimulus is repeated its after-effects may be summated, the inhibition may involve larger areas of the cerebral cortex, and other conditioned reflexes may become affected Not only so, but the inhibition may spread more generally and the animal appears to go to **sleep** Pavlov suggests that such sleep is closely related to hypnotic and normal sleep, which, according to this view, is due to accumulated inhibition or the receipt of stimuli which are related to cessation of activity The observance of time of night, the ceremony of preparing for bed, provide examples of such stimuli in man Experimental sleep is most likely to occur during differential inhibition, and it is of great interest that the

inhibition may involve limited areas of cortex. An inhibition produced in one analyser may spread to another adjacent, and even the motor cortex may become involved. In man also we know that sleep may be similarly patchy, and that many activities, *e.g.* walking, hearing, even reasoning, may take place during sleep.

Many attempts have been made to make diagrams of possible new paths being laid down and of short-circuits formed. Such diagrams are more fanciful than useful since the amount of exact information on such subjects is negligible. It seems indeed more probable not that new paths exist separately but that they are merely different from the old in that the impulses pass along them at too great a rate to affect consciousness.

Of interest appears to be the importance of *coincidence in time* in the formation of conditioned reflexes. Since a nerve impulse is self-propagating it is reasonably possible that two impulses arising at the same time in different parts of the body may eventually meet. It may be that this hitherto little appreciated point may be of fundamental importance in relation to the formation of conditioned reflexes.

Some very interesting observations in this relation have been made on animals which appear to throw light on human behaviour. For example, when an animal has acquired a positive response to an object of circular form and a negative one to an ellipse, great irritability and restlessness are observed if an object intermediate in shape is used. The state produced is comparable to that of neurasthenia in man or the irritability produced when one is unable "to make up one's mind."

It is evident that the learning of so-called tricks by the lower animals must depend on similar mechanisms. It may be that many of the problems of memory do so also, for we can readily say that the dog remembers the association of the conditioned with the unconditioned stimulus.

Pavlov has been able to differentiate between different kinds of nervous systems in regard to the ease with which excitatory and inhibitory states may be formed. Some are well balanced, others less so; he draws attention to similar differences which occur in human temperaments.

It is but a step from the conditioned reflexes just described to the phenomenon of acquiring **habits** or habitual actions, such as are involved in learning to ride a bicycle or drive a motor-car. The movements are, in the first instance, acquired as a result of conscious effort, but subsequently become reflex in nature and no longer involve such effort. Until we attempt to write or use a knife and fork with the unaccustomed hands we scarcely realise how many of our actions are reflex in character. In relation to posture, for

example, we have a large number of inborn reflexes, but in addition to these we may by practice acquire a vast number of others, our total capability in relation to postural equilibrium being a combination of the inborn and the acquired How far some of the still higher activities of the brain may be held to be a similar summation of inborn and acquired characteristics leads into the realm of psychology, which is outside our present province

CHAPTER XLIX

FUNCTIONS OF THE CEREBRUM

THE cerebrum is the seat of those psychical or mental processes which are called volition and feeling; volition is the starting-point in motor activity; feeling or consciousness is the final phase of sensory impressions; the correlation of sensations with one another, and with volitional impulses so generated, constitutes thought. That the brain is the organ (or anatomical correlate) of mind is to-day a matter of such common knowledge that it is almost superfluous to mention it in a physiological text-book. Yet its functions were entirely unknown or only dimly conjectured by ancient philosophers, and the overwhelming importance of the grey matter on its surface in mental phenomena is a discovery of comparatively recent date.

The functions of any organ may be discovered by a variety of procedures, each of which has been applied to the cerebrum as a whole and to its parts.

(*a*) The relative **development** of the organ according to position in the animal scale.

(*b*) The **histological structure**. A study of the cell layers suggests the relative importance of the various parts of the brain. These have already been discussed in relation to the anatomy of the cerebrum.

(*c*) **Stimulation**—usually electrical or chemical.

(*d*) **Extirpation** or removal of the whole or part of the organ.

(*e*) **Diseases** of the organ may be studied. In the case of the cerebrum these correspond either to extirpation or to stimulation.

Of recent years a considerable advance has been made in the study of the function of the cortex by the **establishment of conditioned reflexes** (see p. 701).

Effects of Complete Removal of the Cerebrum

The brainless frog which we have studied in relation to the functions of the spinal cord is also a useful object-lesson to teach us the uses of the part removed, by observing in what manner the animal differs from one which has its brain intact. If, instead of taking a frog, we take an animal lower in the scale, where the

brain is not so fully developed, the effect of removing that organ will be less marked, whereas if we remove the brain in a more highly developed animal, the simultaneous removal of the brain functions will be naturally more noticeable We have already seen that the development of the cerebral hemispheres increases in importance as we rise in the animal scale

If the cerebral hemispheres are removed in a teleostean or bony fish (and in such animals there is only a rudimentary cortex), the animal is to all intents and purposes unaffected, it can distinguish between a worm and a piece of string, and will rise to red wafers in preference to those of another colour The operation does not damage the primary centres of vision (the optic lobes, which correspond to the corpora quadrigemina of the mammal), and in these fishes the eye is the most important sense-organ

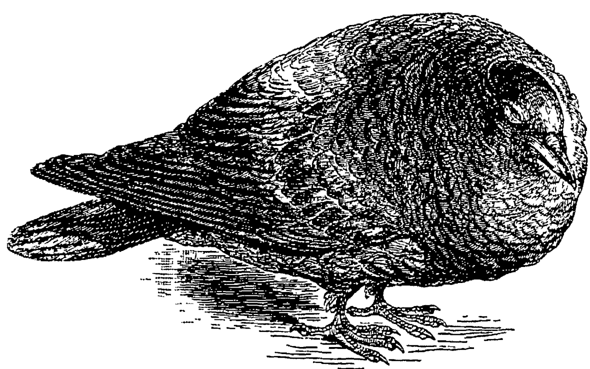


FIG 273 —Pigeon after removal of the hemispheres (Dalton)

A shark, however, subjected to the same operation, is reduced to a condition of complete quiescence, this is due to the circumstance that in this fish the principal sense organ is that of smell, and severance of both olfactory tracts produces the same result as removal of the entire cerebrum In either case the path between the olfactory bulbs and the centres that control the cord are interrupted

In the frog, we find that removal of the hemispheres only does not entirely abolish its apparent spontaneity, it still continues to feed itself, for instance, by catching passing insects It is not until the thalami are removed also that it becomes a purely reflex animal If the brain and the anterior end of the bulb are removed the lower centres of the cord are set free, and the result is incessant movement provoked by slight stimuli

A bird from which the cerebrum has been removed remains perfectly motionless, sleepy, and unconscious (see fig 273) unless

it is disturbed When disturbed in any way it will move, for instance, when thrown into the air it will fly But these movements are, as in the frog, purely reflex in character, when the animal is made to fly its movements are directed by visual stimuli, the visual apparatus being still intact, and it will select a perch to settle on in preference to the floor It will start at a noise, it will not eat voluntarily, it exhibits no emotions such as fear, sexual feeling, or maternal instincts

In mammals the operation of extirpation of the brain is attended with such severe hæmorrhage that the animals die very rapidly, but in some few cases where they have been kept alive, the phenomena they exhibit are similar to those shown by a frog or pigeon The difficulty of the operation was overcome in dogs by Goltz of Strasbourg, who removed the cerebrum piecemeal One dog treated in this way lived in good health for eighteen months, when it was killed in order that a thorough examination of the brain might be made It was then found that not only the hemispheres but the main parts of the thalamus and corpus striatum had been removed also Though it could still carry out co-ordinated movements, its reactions were entirely reflex, and memory, emotions, and the capacity to learn were absent

The higher animal loses just those characters which distinguish it from the lower ones It is difficult to prophesy what would happen if as extensive operations were carried out in a monkey or a man But so far as extirpation has been observed, the initial paralysis (which is seen also in the dog) does not disappear so rapidly or so completely In man, the tendency to recover is least

If we now compare these effects, it is seen that the results of the operation become progressively greater as we ascend the scale The higher the animal, the more fatal the effects, the immediate disturbance more severe, the return of function slower, and the permanent loss greater The long life of Goltz's dog was doubtless due to the fact that the removal was accomplished by several operations

This is anatomically explicable when we remember that in the lower animals the pyramidal pathway is insignificant, and when it is interrupted the disturbance is consequently slight In animals below the mammals it is absent, and going up the mammalian scale it becomes more and more important, as the following figures show —

In the	mouse	the pyramidal fibres	constitute	1 14	per cent	of those in the cord
,,	guinea-pig	,,	,,	3 0	,,	,,
,,	rabbit	,,	,,	5 3	,,	,,
,,	cat	,,	,,	7 76	,,	,,
,,	man	,,	,	11 87	,,	,,

We can therefore quite readily understand that in the apes and in man, a damage to the cortex which causes degeneration of these tracts will cut off many impulses to the anterior cornual cells, and produce a greater or less degree of paralysis

Decerebrate Rigidity —In addition to these effects the removal of the cerebrum reduces the normal inhibitory effect of the higher centres on the reflexes But to produce rigidity the section must pass through or below the red nucleus of the mid-brain This has already been dealt with on p 683

Localisation of Cerebral Functions

The different parts of the brain and of its cortex are related to different parts of the body The right hemisphere, for instance, controls the voluntary movements on the left side of the body, and receives sensory impulses from the left side, and *vice versâ*

In each hemisphere there are certain areas, termed *motor areas*, which are the starting-points of those volitional impulses which give rise to movements, and other areas primarily concerned in the reception of sensory impulses, these are termed *sensory areas* These various areas have been mapped out by means of experiments on animals, and by the observation of disease in man

Before these facts were ascertained it was usual for physiologists to say that "the brain acts as a whole," and although we do not now attach the same meaning to that phrase as did the physiologists of the past, it still has an underlying substratum of truth Let us take an example, and imagine the smell of an orange, such an abstract idea of an isolated sensation is impossible, we cannot think of the smell of the orange apart from the other characteristics of the fruit, the smell recalls the taste, the shape, the colour, the act of peeling it, fingering it, cutting it, eating it, and so forth One sensation due to the activity of one area, such as the olfactory area, calls into play the activity of other sensory areas, and of the motor areas, and of the links between the sensory and motor areas The brain is acting as a whole because its various parts are called into play simultaneously, though the whole brain is not concerned in each of the component sensations and volitions associated with any particular mental state

Moreover, the doctrine of cerebral localisation is not accurately expressed by the statement that a cortical centre is one, the stimulation of which produces a definite response, and the extirpation of which abolishes the response We shall, for instance, immediately see that the stimulation of certain areas in the dog's brain produces certain movements, but Goltz showed that in his dogs the removal

of an entire hemisphere did not cause permanent paralysis of the opposite side of the body.

In the central nervous system there are few or no places where only one set of nerve units are situated, with fibres passing to or from them. Every locality has several connections with other parts, and also fibres passing through it which connect together the parts on all sides of it. Hence in extirpating even a limited area, numerous pathways are interrupted, and the damage is consequently widespread. Much of the disturbance produced at first gradually passes away, and the *temporary* effects must be distinguished from those which are *permanent*; the permanent effects have the greater significance of the two. Moreover, it is clear that the relative and absolute value of any locality in the central nervous system depends largely on the degree to which centralisation has progressed, and on the amount of connection between the various areas. The closer the connection, the more numerous and intricate the pathways, the greater will be the permanent effects of an extirpation, and the recovery of function the more remote. The lower the animal in the zoological series, or the less the age of the animal, the more imperfectly developed will be the connecting strands, and so the possibility of other parts taking up to some extent the functions of those that are removed will be increased.

The earliest to work in the direction of localisation were Hitzig and Fritsch. The subject was then taken up by Ferrier and Yeo, and later by Schafer, Horsley, etc., in this country, and by Munk and others in Germany.

The main point which these researches have brought out is the overwhelming importance of the cortex; it contains the highest cerebral centres. Before Hitzig began his work, the corpus striatum was regarded as the great motor centre, and the thalamus as the chief centre of sensation. The idea that the basal ganglia were so important arose from the examination of the brains of people who had died after cerebral hæmorrhage, but more accurate comparison of the clinical symptoms with the post-mortem findings has shown that the paralysis caused by the hæmorrhage is due to injury of the pathways from the cortex *via* the internal capsule.

The Motor Area.—The elucidation of this area has been most successfully investigated by the method of **stimulation**. The best method is that of Sherrington. The brain in an anæsthetised animal is exposed and stimulated with a weak faradic current, one electrode being placed on the brain, and the other attached to an indifferent part of the animal's body. This allows of finer localisation than is possible with the ordinary double-point electrodes.

By such means it has been discovered that the part of the cortex which lies immediately *in front of the fissure of Rolando* is specially related to the motor activity of the opposite side of the body

Stimulation of the motor area produces movement of some part of the opposite side of the body, excitation of the same spot is always followed by the same movement in the same animal In different animals excitation of anatomically corresponding spots produces similar or corresponding results It is this which has made it possible to apply the results of stimulating areas of the monkey's brain to the elucidation of the function of the similar brain of man The actual muscles which contract may be caused to vary by stimulation of the sensory part of cortex, and it has been found that as one set of muscles contracts there is reciprocal relaxation of another (see Reciprocal Innervation)

If the stimulation used is too powerful the movement spreads to other parts, and a considerable portion of the body may be thrown into convulsive movements similar to those seen in epilepsy

The first work was carried out by Hitzig and Fritsch on dogs They found that the motor area was situated in the neighbourhood of the crucial sulcus, which probably corresponds to the fissure of Rolando in man

Ferrier marked out the surface of the monkey's brain into a number of circles, stimulation of each of which produced movements of various sets of muscles, face, arm, and leg, from below upwards, extirpation of these same areas produced the corresponding paralysis It will be further noticed (fig 274) that these areas are all grouped around the fissure of Rolando, particularly in the ascending frontal convolution

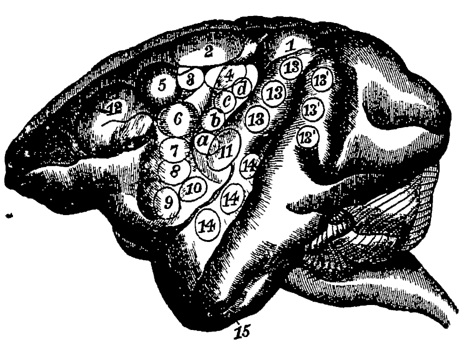


FIG 274 (Ferrier)

Much of our knowledge concerning the localisation of the motor area in the human brain has been deduced from experiments on the lower monkeys Valuable as such knowledge is, infinitely more useful knowledge, from the standpoint of the human brain, would be obtained by examining the brains of those monkeys nearest to man, which are known as the anthropoid apes The difficulty and expense of obtaining such animals have largely deterred investigators from performing experiments Horsley and Beevor examined the

brain of an orang-outang some years ago, and Sherrington and Leyton have made a number of experiments, several specimens of two species of chimpanzee, the orang and the gorilla, have been examined Their conclusions are of great importance The next figure (fig 275) of the chimpanzee's brain shows what has

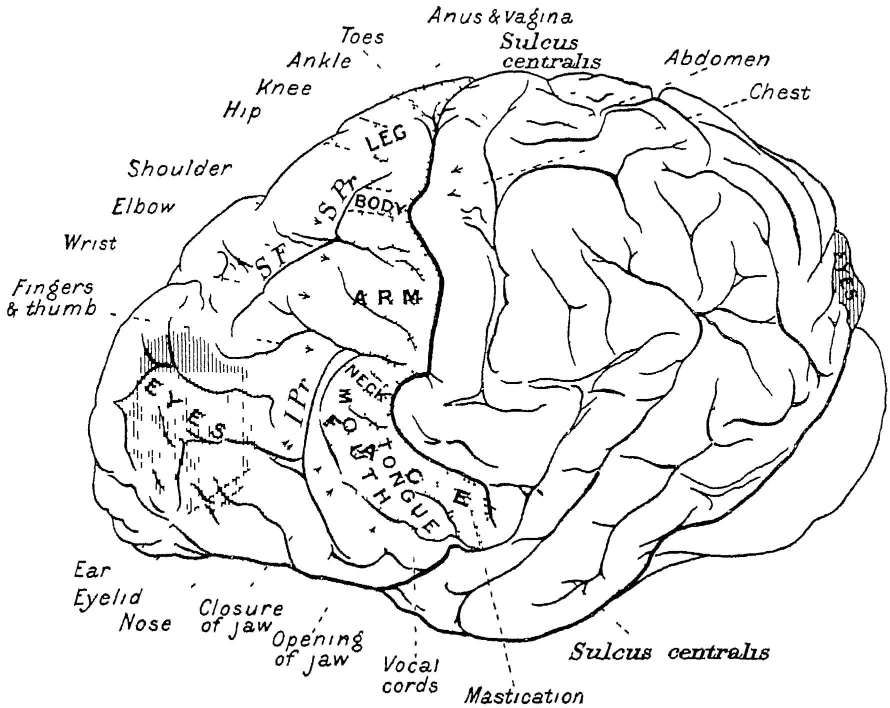


FIG 275—Brain of chimpanzee Left hemisphere viewed from side and above so as to obtain the configuration of the Rolandic area The figure involves some foreshortening about both ends of the sulcus centralis or fissure of Rolando The extent of the so called motor area on the free surface of the hemisphere is indicated by [illegible] which extends back to the central sulcus Much of the "motor" area is hidden in [illegible] it extends into both the central and precentral sulci The names printed in capitals on the stippled area indicate the main subdivisions of the "motor" area, the names printed small outside the brain indicate by their pointing lines some of the chief subdivisions of the main areas But there is much overlapping of the areas which it is not possible to indicate in a diagram of this kind The shaded regions marked "eyes" in the frontal and occipital regions indicate the areas which under faradisation yield conjugate movements of the eyeballs [illegible] sulcus S Pr = superior precentral sulcus I Pr = inferior precentral sulcus [illegible] and Leyton)

been found, the orang and the gorilla gave practically the same results, and the human brain so far as it has been examined by surgeons has given identical results

The motor area includes continuously the whole length of the ascending frontal, or as it is sometimes called, the precentral convolution It never extends behind the central sulcus (the fissure of

Rolando) On the mesial surface it extends but a short distance, and never as far as the calloso-marginal fissure The motor area extends also into the depth of the Rolandic and other fissures, the part of the excitable area thus hidden equals or may even exceed that on the free surface of the hemisphere The arrangement of the various regions of the musculature follow the segmental sequence of the cerebrospinal series to a remarkable extent, in fact, the excitable area may be compared to the spinal cord upside down The preceding figure (fig 275) indicates this better than any verbal description

It cannot fail to strike even a superficial observer how large the cortical area is which deals with movements of the head and arm regions when compared with that of the lower limb, and still more with that of the trunk The trunk itself has a larger mass of muscular tissue, but it is in the head region (which includes the complex movements of the tongue and such structures as the vocal cords) and in the arm and hand that the movements are most varied and most delicate No doubt this is the explanation of the greater size of their cortical representation

It is these finer movements which are most affected by a cortical injury, and which exhibit least recovery, in the upper limb, for instance, the shoulder muscles will be the least, and the hand the most paralysed

The marginal convolution on the mesial surface of the hemisphere was first investigated by Schafer and Horsley, in the lower monkeys They found in these animals that it contained a considerable extension of the "motor" area, including the cortical centres for the trunk muscles This, at any rate, is not the case for the higher apes, and therefore probably is not true for man

It will be noticed in the diagram (fig 275) that there are two regions from which eye movements can be elicited, one is in the frontal lobe, the other at the occipital pole The frontal eye area is the motor centre for conjugate movements of the two eyeballs, and in the lower monkeys is continuous with the rest of the motor area, but in the higher monkeys and man it is separated from the Rolandic area by a field of inexcitable cortex The occipital region from which eye movements can be obtained is the visuo-sensory sphere (see p 717)

Extirpation or removal of the motor area produces paralysis of the same groups of muscles as are thrown into action by stimulation

Destruction of the motor area leads to degeneration of the whole pyramidal tract which arises from this region (see p 624)

It is important, however, to emphasise the experiments of Goltz, who showed that even if an entire half of the cerebrum was removed, the paralysis of the opposite side of the body was

recovered from This indicates that other parts of the brain may take on this function, but there is little evidence that it occurs in man

The study of **injury** or **disease** indicates that the effect of either removal or stimulation may be produced An example of the former is seen in the effect of a hæmorrhage on the surface of the brain such as occurs sometimes at birth It results in a degeneration of that part of the pyramidal tract which is composed of fibres from the portion of the cortex injured, and a corresponding region, commonly a limb on the opposite side of the body, is paralysed (see also "Voluntary Movement")

On the other hand, a tumour or a spicule of bone after an injury may irritate the motor area and set up movements of one particular part of the body (*Jacksonian epilepsy*), which may spread and cause general convulsive seizures The cause of irritation is often removed surgically, and if the surgeon is in doubt of the exact region irritated, he may stimulate the suspected part to find if it produces the same movements No more striking proof of the value of purely scientific animal experiment exists than the cure of an individual of Jacksonian epilepsy, and such brain surgery emphasises the necessity for knowing the surface marking of the various areas

The Sensory Areas

The Sensory Areas—By similar methods it has been found, largely in the first instance by Ferrier in King's College, London, that different parts of the cortex are related to different sensations These are shown in fig 276, which has been deduced from a large variety of observations

Stimulation—In animals, it is difficult to say when a sensation is experienced, but sensation is assumed from the indirect evidence in the form of reflex movements which usually accompany sensation, thus on stimulating the *auditory area* there is a pricking up of the ears, on stimulating the *visual area* there is a turning of the head and eyes in the direction of the supposed visual impulse That such movements are reflex and not direct, is shown by the long period of delay intervening between the stimulation and the movement Some experiments have, however, been made on man (see below)

Barenne has found that chemical stimulation of a sensory area by strychnine may cause symptoms of local pain, *e g* a limp on the part of the animal

Extirpation of a sensory area leads to loss of the sensation subserved Since a study of sensation in animals is so difficult the majority of the observations have to be made on man after **injury** or **disease** In Jacksonian epilepsy, for example,

the generalised convulsion may be preceded by a sensory aura, or indefinite sensation

The Tactile Area —Volition and the tactile and muscular senses are associated together so closely physiologically, that anatomically we should expect to find the commencement of the volitional fibres not far removed from the terminations of the sensory fibres, and as a matter of fact, this is actually the case Some of the sensory fibres possibly pass direct into the ascending frontal convolution, but the vast majority terminate in its neighbour the ascending parietal convolution, which is on the other side of the central or Rolandic fissure In the early days of brain map-making, the ascending parietal convolution was believed to be a part of the motor area, and this found expression in such diagrams as those of Ferrier (see fig

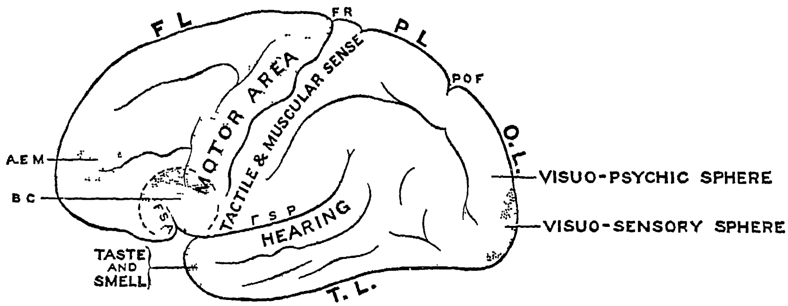


FIG 276 —Left cerebral hemisphere, outer surface The lobes and the principal sulci are indicated by their initial letters, A E M, anterior centre for eye movements, B C, Broca s convolution

274) A cortical injury in man seldom involves the ascending frontal without also involving the ascending parietal, and so loss of sensation and motion usually go together The more exact methods introduced by Sherrington and Leyton have, however, shown that stimulation of the ascending parietal produces no direct movements, secondary movements may be elicited, just as stimulation of the visuo-sensory area provokes secondary movements of the eyes Extirpation of the ascending parietal, however, leads to no motor paralysis, and no degeneration of the pyramidal tracts Histological examination of the ascending parietal grey matter shows it, moreover, to possess the structure of a sensory rather than of a motor area Before this distinction was recognised, the term *sensori-motor* was used as a comprehensive expression to include the functions of the two convolutions one on each side of the Rolandic fissure As we shall see later the cortex is particularly concerned with the finer varieties of skin sensation, especially those of touch (epicritic sensation)

The most remarkable confirmatory evidence regarding the sensory functions of the post-central convolution was first afforded by two patients, who voluntarily allowed Cushing the opportunity of experimentally testing the point after operations in which this part of the brain was exposed, and when they were conscious

In both of them characteristic motor responses were obtained from the precentral gyrus (ascending frontal convolution) without any conscious sensation, except that which accompanies forced change of position in the parts moved On the other hand, stimulation of the post-central gyrus (ascending parietal convolution) produced no movements, but gave definite sensory impressions which were likened by one patient to a sensation of numbness, and by the other to definite tactual impressions

More recent cases which have been recorded have confirmed Cushing's statements, and have further shown that the motor and tactile areas for any particular region of the body lie at the same horizontal level

There is, of course, a close connection between the two convolutions in question, by short association fibres passing from one to the other, and the necessity for sensation in normally provoking the corresponding motor outflow is also illustrated by the following experiment —If the posterior roots of the spinal nerves are divided there is a loss of sensation, and so the sense of movement cannot reach the brain from the muscles, and consequently the muscles are not called into action, when all the posterior roots coming from a limb in a monkey are cut, the muscles, so far as voluntary movements are concerned, are as effectually paralysed as if the anterior roots of the spinal nerves had been cut The muscles, however, do not degenerate as they would if the anterior roots had been cut

The parietal lobe generally is the part of the brain which shows the highest development histologically Just posterior to the sensory region is a large association area wherein we believe ideas regarding multiple sensations are associated If this region is destroyed the patient loses the power of recognising objects by touch (astereognosis)

The Visual Area —The lower the animal in the series, the more readily can its actions be controlled by sensory impulses which have not passed through the cerebral cortex A decerebrated bony fish can distinguish colours, a frog can catch flies, even a pigeon will select its perch, though it takes no notice of food or of people who try to frighten it A dog similarly operated on is practically blind, though it will blink at a bright flash of light In the lower animals the impulses pass in to the primary visual centre in the optic lobes which acts as the centre for the reflex, as we ascend the animal scale, the path *via* the cortex becomes more permeable, of

greater value, or even indispensable, and the reflexes through the lower centres are of less importance, not only so, but there are subdivisions of the visual cortical area, which correspond to different regions of the retinæ

We may in fact speak of the visuo-sensory field in the cortex as the *cortical retina* upon which the impulses from the actual retina in the eye are projected, in a manner analogous to the way in which the field of vision is projected upon the actual retina

In the fishes which have no cerebral cortex, the optic lobes, analogous to the C quadrigemina, are the centres for vision In some fishes, a small number of the fibres of the optic nerves pass into the geniculate body, which forms a cell-station on the road to the posterior region of the cerebrum, where a primitive cortex begins to appear On ascending the animal scale, this group of fibres becomes more and more abundant, and this part of the cortex becomes more elaborate in structure When we reach the monkeys, this part of the brain is cut off from the rest by the parieto-occipital fissure to form a distinct occipital lobe This fissure is called the ape's split In the lower monkeys this lobe is smooth (fig 246, A, p 652), but as the great parietal association centres get larger with increase of intelligence, the visuo-sensory area is pushed back, and the lobe thrown into folds In the highest apes, and in the lower races of mankind, a good deal of the visuo-sensory sphere is still seen on the external cerebral surface, but in the higher races, most is pushed round on to the mesial surface This *calcarine area* is also named the *striate area*, because it is characterised by the white stripe called the line of Gennari in the cortex

Some animals have *panoramic* and others *stereoscopic* vision * The former (mainly vegetable feeders) have eyes set laterally, each eye receives a different picture, and the decussation of the optic nerves is complete, each eye sends impulses to the opposite hemisphere Animals with stereoscopic vision have the eyes, as in man, in front, and the optic axes can be converged so that an object is focussed with both eyes This becomes necessary in carnivora, which have to catch moving prey, the more complex the movements of the fore-limbs, the greater becomes the necessity for fixation of the eyes to guide them In such animals each visual area corresponds with the same half of both retinæ, that is, with the opposite half of the visual field, the lower half of each area corresponds with the upper half of each half field of vision, and *vice versâ* The appearance of the macula lutea (with cortical representation in both occipital lobes) in the primates is the culminating point in visual development among the mammals

* According to Elliot Smith the development of stereoscopic vision has been an important cause of the advancement of the higher mammals

A man or animal which loses both eyes is blind, but in time manages to find its way about This is not the case when blindness is produced by removal or disease of both occipital lobes, here, the sense of orientation is lost also, for the association of sensory memories and motor impulses is then impossible

Removal of one occipital lobe will be followed by different results in the two classes of animals just referred to In those with panoramic vision, the result will be blindness of the opposite eye, because the decussation of the optic nerve is complete at the chiasma But in animals such as monkeys with stereoscopic vision (in which the only decussating fibres are those which come from the inner halves of the two retinæ) removal of one occipital lobe, or disease of that lobe in man, produces blindness of the same side of each retina, or inability to see the opposite half of the visual field This is called *hemianopsia*, the head and eyes are turned to one side, namely, the side of injury (*conjugate deviation* to the side of the injury) Such an operation does not destroy vision in the central portion (*macula lutea*) of either retina, because each macula sends impulses to both sides of the brain Stimulation of one visual area leads to a subjective sensation apparently coming from the same halves of both retinæ, and also excites the solitary cells of Meynert, this produces *conjugate deviation of head and eyes* towards the opposite side to that stimulated

These solitary cells are so called because they are few and far between, they are large cells not at all unlike the Betz cells of the motor cortex Their axons, no doubt, pass in long association tracts to the motor eye centre of the frontal region and to the corpora quadrigemina

The optic radiations consist of (1) sensory fibres from the optic tracts *via* the external geniculate bodies and in the lower animals *via* the pulvinar of the thalamus, (2) efferent fibres to the centres for eye-movements, and (3) association fibres, which are last developed The last-named link one convolution to others, and the two hemispheres together, and bring about association of ideas of vision in both hemispheres, and with other sensations A large collection of such fibres runs horizontally through the grey matter This white stripe is often visible to the naked eye, it is the anatomical mark of the *visuo-sensory cortex*, and is called the *line of Gennari* The *visuo-psychic* region (fig 276) has no line of Gennari, but possesses many small and medium-sized pyramidal cells in its outer layers, which play the part of association units, where memory pictures are stored and visual sensations correlated with those from other sense-organs, the higher one ascends the animal scale, the greater becomes the depth of this layer

The eye centre in the frontal lobe is separated, in the higher apes and man, by inexcitable grey matter from the rest of the motor area No cortical centre is purely motor or purely sensory, and this one, though usually called motor, has its sensory complement probably from the eyeballs and eyelids (trigeminal nerve region) The newly developed grey matter between it and the Rolandic region is an area probably concerned in the association of eye-movements with equilibration and the maintenance of the erect position, we know, moreover, that the fibres from the frontal lobe to the cerebellum (the centre for co-ordination) are very numerous (see fig 250, A, p 655)

The Auditory Area is in the posterior part of the upper temporal convolution (fig 276) This has been definitely proved by clinical observation in man, and supported by experiments on animals, though it is by no means easy to ascertain whether or not an animal is deaf, but Pavlov's method of producing conditioned reflexes has now furnished a test It is doubtless surrounded, as are the visuo-sensory area and other sense areas, by a psychic or association sphere, and is connected to surrounding parts, and especially to the visual area, by annectent gyri A good deal of the auditory area is situated in the depth of the posterior limb Sylvian fissure where the gyri transversales which cross it are found Destruction of one auditory area does not cause obvious deafness since the ear is bilaterally represented in the cortex

Taste and Smell are closely connected, their cerebral area is the uncinate and hippocampal gyrus, and the tip of the temporal lobe These parts are relatively more important in animals which rely upon smell and the oral sense for their guidance This part of the cortex is of simpler structure than the rest, and on account of its early appearance in the animal scale is known as the archipallium or primitive brain

The Silent Areas—On referring once more to the maps of the brain, it will be seen that there are many blanks, one of these is in the anterior part of the frontal region Extirpation or stimulation of this part of the brain in animals produces but little result The large size of this portion of the brain is very distinctive of the human brain, and it has therefore been supposed that here is the seat of the higher intellectual faculties Such a question is obviously very difficult to answer by experiments on animals A study of the symptoms of **tumour of the frontal lobe** indicates that this part of the brain plays a considerable part in the intellectual functions There are commonly described, as a result of such tumours, loss of mental acuity, stupid mistakes, loss of memory and of the power to supervise, frequently, however, the patient is certified insane, before the tumour is diagnosed

The celebrated American crowbar accident is frequently quoted in this relation, owing to the premature explosion of a charge of dynamite in one of the American mines a crowbar was sent through the frontal region of the foreman's head, removing the anterior part of his brain Although fit physically when he returned to work, he was practically useless mentally, having lost just those higher functions which are so important in the superintendence of other people Mott's observations on lunatics show that this region is important for intellectual operations, though not so important as the **parietal association area** behind the Rolandic area, the greater the intellectual development, the larger and more convoluted does this parietal region become

The association fibres have been the subject of special study by Flechsig, who has shown that in the development of the brain these are the last to become myelinated, white fibres do not become fully functional until they receive their medullary sheath This coincides with the well-known fact that association of ideas is the last phase in the psychical development of the child It has been shown that the frontal convolutions are connected by important association tracts with the more posterior regions of the brain (see fig 249, p 654), and there is therefore no difficulty in understanding that the frontal convolutions play the part of a centre for the association of ideas, or in other words for intellectual operations

CHAPTER L

SENSATION

In discussing the general functions of a nervous system we have noted that it is concerned with the collection of impulses due to stimuli which arise in the environment of the individual and from various parts of the body A certain number of these impulses reach consciousness and give rise to sensations

All sensations experienced normally depend on the stimulation by an appropriate stimulus of nerve-endings which are adapted to receive certain kinds of stimuli or to appreciate a special quality of the environment These nerve-endings have, for the special stimulus for which they are adapted, a lower threshold than have the nerve-fibres themselves, and make it possible for a nerve impulse to be set up by a degree of stimulation which would not otherwise be effective For example, a degree of pressure which would not affect the ulnar nerve (the "funny bone" of the elbow) will cause a sensation of touch if applied to the nerve-endings of that nerve in the little finger

Nerve-endings have been developed for the appreciation of a large variety of stimuli, *e g* light and colour, sound, smell, pressure It is convenient to leave the detailed study of these to later chapters, since in some instances, *e g* the ear and the eye, the specialised nerve-ending has become much elaborated

The **stimuli** must not only have a special quality but must be of adequate strength Too light a touch, too faint a sound, will produce no effect on consciousness That strength of stimulus which just suffices to evoke a sensation is called the *liminal* (from limen, a threshold) * value of the stimulus, or its *absolute threshold*

Similarly, the difference between two stimuli must not fall below a certain minimum in order that that difference may be appreciated If two musical tones are of too nearly identical pitch, if two colours are of too nearly identical hue, the difference may be imperceptible There is, therefore, a liminal value for a stimulus difference This is known as the *differential threshold* of the stimulus

Weber's law states that the just appreciable difference between

* Strictly speaking, the liminal value is that strength of stimulus which, in a series of trials, as often just fails as it just succeeds in evoking a sensation

two stimuli depends on the ratio of that difference to their magnitudes, and not on the absolute difference between their magnitudes Fechner, after bringing forward further evidence in favour of the law, endeavoured to deduce from it the conclusion that the strength of a sensation is proportional to the logarithm of its stimulus, in other words, that the stimulus must increase in geometrical proportion for the sensation to increase in arithmetical proportion Fechner's interpretation of Weber's law is, however, open to serious criticism, into which we cannot enter here

Weber's law is but an expression of everyday experience A rushlight will brighten a dark cellar, but its presence is unfelt in sunshine So, too, if a room be lighted by 100 candles, and if one candle more be brought in, the increased illumination produced by the extra candle would be just perceptible to the eye But if a room were lighted by 1000 candles, no appreciable difference would result from the introduction of an extra candle Ten candles would have to be introduced, in order to effect a just noticeable difference In each case a difference of one-hundredth of the original strength of stimulus is needful to cause a just appreciable difference in the sensation, and this is in accordance with Weber's law

For light, the fraction is about $\frac{1}{100}$, for noise, it is about $\frac{1}{3}$, for cutaneous pressure, it varies between $\frac{1}{30}$ and $\frac{1}{10}$, for weight, between $\frac{1}{70}$ and $\frac{1}{40}$, in various parts of the body

A sensation requires an appreciable time for its development Part of this time is spent at the end-organ on which the stimulus acts, part in conveying the nervous impulse along the sensory nerve to the brain, and part within the brain itself This *latent period* varies in length according to the sensation, *e g*, it is longer for sight than for sound, and longer for pain than for touch

The sensation outlasts its stimulus Such *after-sensations* are particularly noticeable in the case of sight We know, also, that unless the eye is stimulated for a sufficient length of time we do not see objects or movements

The Impulse —The evidence appears now to be complete that the nerve impulse is identical in nature in all nerves The impulse set up in the optic nerve by light is the same as that set up in the auditory nerve by sound The impulses, however, may follow each other at very different rates

Recently Adrian has recorded by means of wireless valve amplifiers and an oscillometer the action currents of many afferent nerves, and he finds that this difference in the number of impulses set up in afferent nerves in a given time may be considerable He has found the impulses set up in a nerve by painful stimulation are many more than those set up by touch, and also that the outburst of impulses continues longer A single sense-organ in a

muscle has been found to set up impulses with a frequency of thirty per second This has been discovered by using the sternocutaneous muscle of the frog, and by successively cutting off fibres to leave only one muscle-spindle An interesting phenomenon is that of *adaptation*, in which it is found that if a stimulus is continued, impulses are no longer set up in the nerve Thus is explained why a needle hurts while it is being inserted into the skin but not after it is in This adaptation appears to depend on the end-organs concerned In some, such as those of the skin, adaptation occurs rapidly, while in the nerve-endings of muscle it is very slow, a fact which no doubt permits the muscle when subjected to prolonged stretching to send out the impulses so important in posture

Adaptation plays a part as important in cutaneous as in other sensations The same room feels warm to a man who enters it from the street, and cold to another who has been in a conservatory Hering calls the point of adaptation to temperature "the physiological zero" Thus the temperature of the mouth and the lips may actually differ by several degrees, yet neither of them will feel hot or cold because each is at the physiological zero temperature Sensations of warmth or cold arise when the physiological zero is altered they persist until a new zero is formed, according to Rivers and Head, adaptation to temperature is impossible when epicritic sensibility is absent So, too, heavy weights feel unduly heavy after light weights, and *vice versa* When false teeth are first worn, then contact is well-nigh unbearable , yet later, through adaptation, the discomfort vanishes

The difference in sensation recognised by the individual must be due to the "analysers" in the central nervous system The impulses reaching certain analysers, such as those of sight, are interpreted as light however the impulse is set up This was termed by Muller "*The Law of Specific Nerve Energies*" The term energy is a bad one, and is not used in a modern physical sense, but the law simply means that a nerve of special sense, however excited, gives rise to its own peculiar sensation However the retina or optic nerve is stimulated light is appreciated Mechanical, chemical, or electrical stimulation of the chorda tympani causes a sensation of taste These experiments have been carried out during surgical operations made for other reasons

The impulse when set up passes into the central nervous system by means of **afferent nerves** In the case of the cranial nerves, some are wholly sensory In the case of the trunk and limbs, the impulses pass along fibres which become incorporated in mixed nerves and pass into the spinal cord by way of the posterior roots Some of the impulses bring about, as we have seen, reflex movements, and may never reach consciousness, *e g* the impulse set up by slight pinching of the finger during sleep The majority of the stimuli, however, during the waking hours and even during sleep, are strong, and the impulses which they generate pass up the spinal cord to the brain (see Afferent Pathways)

Classification of General Sensation

Sensation may be conveniently divided into Special Sensation and General Sensation The former is that which is appreciated by highly specialised nerve-endings localised in certain parts of the body, *e g* the nose, ear, eye, tongue The latter is not so confined

General sensation is that felt by the body generally, it may be superficial, *i e* that from the skin, and deep, *i e* that from the underlying structures If the nerves to the skin are cut, deep sensation remains Superficial sensation includes touch, pain, and temperature Deep sensation refers to the appreciation of pressure (as distinct from touch), of movement or pain in muscles and joints The fibres subserving this sense run with the muscular nerves, and accompany blood-vessels

Both superficial and deep sensations have been subdivided further according to their fundamental nature

Our knowledge of this subject owes much to the pioneer work of Head who cut one of the nerves in his own arm, and, in conjunction with Rivers, noted accurately the date and other particulars of return of function The first sensations returned about the eightieth day after the operation, they are termed by him *protopathic* Protopathic sensibility depends on definite specific end-organs distributed over the skin as sensory "spots," viz, heat, cold, and pain spots When this sensibility is alone present, the spaces between these spots are insensitive to cutaneous stimuli, the heat spots react only to temperatures above 37° C, the cold only to temperature below 26° C, the sensation radiates widely, and is often wrongly localised The tactile sensations of the skin, the intermediate temperature sensations, the power to localise them accurately, the sensibility of the spaces between the spots, and a more refined sensibility to pain, return much later, and this *epicritic* sensibility is not perfect until many months after regeneration has started It is not known whether protopathic and epicritic impulses are subserved by the same or by different nerve-fibres

Recently Stopford has investigated deep sensibility and finds that, like cutaneous sensibility, it returns in two stages after division and suture of a peripheral nerve A first stage consists of the recovery of the ability to appreciate a pressure contact and the pain induced by excessive pressure, and a second stage is demonstrated by the return of the power to localise accurately a pressure stimulus and recognise the position and passive movement of a joint Stopford points out that the elements of sensation included by Head under the term protopathic sensibility and those of stage one in deep sensibility are fundamentally protective in function and make their appeal to the thalamus which we know is capable of

appreciating crude sensation, whilst those in epicritic sensibility and stage two of deep sensibility include the higher and discriminative aspects of sensation which are dependent upon the sensory cortex In consequence he suggests the following division of sensation—

A protective system, composed of the protective elements of sensation, in which recovery occurs early and is more perfect, after suture of a peripheral nerve	Concerned with the recognition of — (*a*) Pain (whether induced by prick or excessive pressure) (*b*) Extremes of temperature (*c*) Tactile pressure
A discriminative system, composed of the discriminative elements of sensation, in which recovery occurs at a later time and is less complete and perfect	Concerned with the power of — (*a*) Tactile Localisation (*b*) Tactile Discrimination (*c*) Recognising position and passive movement Recognition of fine differences of temperature Appreciation of the lightest touch

Such a subdivision of sensation is supported by researches in comparative anatomy and is in accord with our knowledge of the evolution of the nervous system We have already observed that protective reflexes take precedence over those more recently acquired and that they do not depend on the cortex (See the Plantar Reflex)

Nevertheless, divisions of sensation such as those advanced by Head and Stopford have been criticised by a number of observers who have made human experiments, such as Trotter and Davies, who divided as many as seven of their cutaneous nerves, and Boring who severed only a small branch of a nerve More recently Sharpey-Schafer has contrasted by experiments on himself the recovery after division and crushing of corresponding peripheral nerves (posterior branch of the internal cutaneous nerve of each arm) The nerve severely crushed recovered much more rapidly than that cut He also emphasises the occurrence of a stage, hyperæsthesia or excessive sensibility to pain, which accompanies the feeling of numbness and lessened sensibility to touch, warmth, and cold Similar hyperæsthesia has been noticed by most other observers at the edge of any paralysed area Sharpey-Schafer suggests that the term "protopathic" is nothing more or less than pain, and that the hyperæsthesia is probably caused by the growing parts of the nerve-fibres which subserve pain being hypersensitive These correspond to the protective system of Stopford

Whilst it is not wise as yet to be dogmatic in regard to the division of sensation, it does appear that the evidence from both clinical experience and comparative anatomy supports strongly the main views of Head and Stopford, and their conclusions do seem to explain the facts

Stopford has given us a convenient view of sensation as a whole He points out that at first there is evolved a crude mechanism for protection against a harmful environment, later on, better perception and powers of discrimination are developed These functions are intimately related to the acquisition of better motor control and vision, and, later still, with the expansion of the cerebrum an increasing understanding of tactile perception is created It must however be understood that each higher stage overlaps, reacts upon, and modifies the lower one

Drugs—Cocaine applied locally depresses all forms of cutaneous sensibility, but especially the true tactile sense, carbolic acid acts similarly but less strongly Chloroform produces a temporary burning sensation, and then blunts sensibility, especially to temperature changes Menthol produces a feeling of local cold because it first causes hyperæsthesia of the end-organs for cold, this is followed by a depression of the activity of these organs, together with that of those subserving other forms of cutaneous sensation

CHAPTER LI

SENSORY NERVE-ENDINGS

THE end-organs are numerous They may be free, around hairs or encapsulated

Pacinian Corpuscles—These are named after their discoverer Pacini They are little oval bodies, situated on some of the cerebro-spinal and sympathetic nerves, especially the cutaneous nerves of the hands and feet, where they lie deeply placed in the true skin They occur on the nerves of the mesentery of some animals such as the cat They have been observed also in the pancreas, lymphatic glands, and thyroid glands, as well as in the penis They are about $\frac{1}{12}$ inch long Each corpuscle is attached by a narrow pedicle to the nerve on which it is situated, and is formed of several concentric sheaths of connective tissue, each layer being lined by endothelium (fig 278), through its pedicle one or more nerve-fibres pass, these lose their medullary sheaths and enter a central core, at or near the distal end of which they terminate in an arborisation Some of the layers are continuous with those of the perineurium, but some are super-added

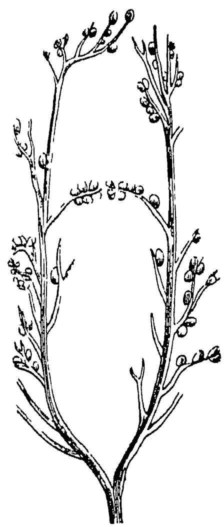


FIG 277 —Extremities of a nerve of the finger with Pacinian corpuscles attached, about the natural size (Adapted from Henle and Kolliker)

End-bulbs are found in the conjunctiva (where in man they are spheroidal, but in most animals oblong), in the glans penis and clitoris, in the skin of the lips, in the epineurium of nerve-trunks, and in tendon, each is about $\frac{1}{600}$ inch in diameter, oval or spheroidal, and is composed of a medullated nerve-fibre, which terminates among cells of various shapes (fig 280)

Touch-corpuscles (Meissner's corpuscles) (figs 279, 281) are found in the papillæ of the skin of the fingers and toes They are

FIG 278 —Pacinian corpuscle of the cat's mesentery The stalk consists of a nerve fibre (N) with its thick outer sheath The peripheral capsules of the Pacinian corpuscle are continuous with the outer sheath of the stalk A blood vessel (V) enters the Pacinian corpuscle, and approaches the end, it possesses a sheath which is the continuation of the peripheral capsules of the Pacinian corpuscle × 100 (Klein and Noble Smith)

FIG 279 —A touch corpuscle from the skin of the human hand, stained with gold chloride

FIG 280 —End bulb of Krause *a*, Medullated nerve fibre, *b*, capsule of corpuscle

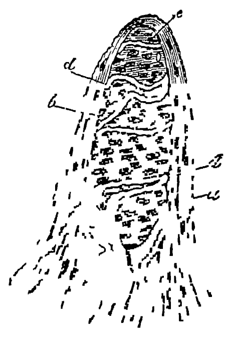


FIG 281 —Papilla from the skin of the hand, freed from the cuticle and exhibiting Meissner's corpuscles Papilla treated with acetic acid, *a*, cortical layer with cells and fine elastic filaments, *b*, tactile corpuscle with transverse nuclei, *c*, entering nerve, *d* and *e*, nerve fibres winding round the corpuscle × 350 (Kolliker)

oblong, about $\frac{1}{250}$ inch long, and $\frac{1}{800}$ inch broad, each is composed of cells cut off originally from the lower layer of the epidermis, and surrounded by a connective-tissue sheath They do not occur

in all the papillæ of the parts where they are found, and, as a rule, in the papillæ in which they are present there are no blood-vessels

The nerve winds round the corpuscle before it enters (fig 279),

FIG 282 —Termination of medullated nerve fibres in tendon near the muscular insertion (Golgi)

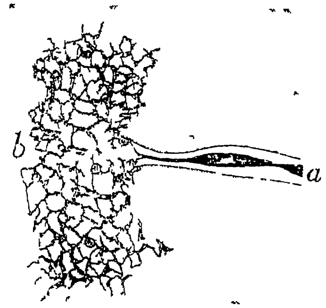


FIG 283 —One of the reticulated end plates of fig 282, more highly magnified, *a*, Medullated nerve fibre, *b*, reticulated end plate (Golgi)

then loses its medullary sheath, its axis-cylinder branches, and the branches terminate within the corpuscle

Hairs are important organs of touch, particularly in the whiskers of the carnivora Here a nerve network surrounds the base of the hair

Sensory Nerve-endings in Muscle — Nerve terminations are found in tendon and muscle They are not only sensory, but

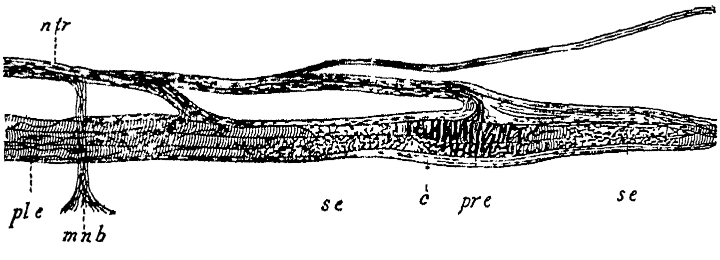


FIG 284 —Neuro muscular spindle *c*, Capsule, *n tr*, nerve trunk, *m n b*, motor nerve bundle, *pl e*, plate ending, *pr e*, primary nerve ending, *s e*, secondary ending (After Ruffini)

also give rise to the important afferent impulses concerned with the maintenance of posture and equilibrium Some of these are end-bulbs, and others appear very much like end-plates, as represented in figs 282 and 283 The **neuro-muscular spindles**, one of which is shown in the accompanying drawing (fig 284), are principally found in muscles in the neighbourhood of tendons and aponeuroses

The principal grounds for believing the neuro-muscular spindles to be sensory are, first, that the nerve-fibres that supply them do not degenerate when the anterior roots of the spinal nerves are cut, and secondly, that they do degenerate when the posterior roots are divided (Sherrington) Of recent years more and more importance has been attached to the **tendon organs** *

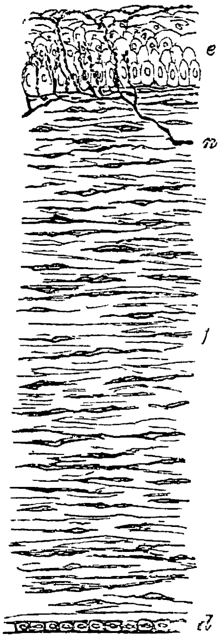


FIG 285 —Vertical section of rabbit's cornea, stained with gold chloride The nerves, *n*, terminate in a plexus under and within the epithelial layer, *e*

In addition to the special end-organs, sensory fibres may terminate in **plexuses** of fibrils, as in the sub-epithelial and the intra-epithelial plexus of the cornea (fig 285), and around the hair follicles in the skin generally (see fig 219, p 596)

These **free nerve-endings** also exist in the skin and are considered to be responsible for pain largely because the cornea of the eye, which has free nerve-endings only, appears to appreciate little else than pain There is evidence, however, that pain may be caused by the stimulation of other nerve-endings also

In some cases the nerve-fibrils within a stratified epithelium end in crescentic expansions (*tactile discs*) which are applied to the deeper epithelium cells These are found in the skin of the pig's snout

The Special Senses

It must be realised that the eye and the ear, etc, are essentially highly specialised nerve-endings which, like those of the skin, are developed from the ectoderm or outer layer of the embryo The details of their structure are considered later

Cutaneous Sensations

The surface of the skin is a mosaic of tiny sensorial areas, these areas are not set edge to edge as in the retina, but are separated by relatively wide intervals which are not sensitive to stimuli just above liminal intensity If the stimuli are made nearly minimal, the individual fields are reduced to small spots Each of these spots subserves a specific sense, touch, cold, heat or pain, and each doubtless coincides with the site of some special end-organ, placed either singly or in clusters The "touch spots," "cold spots,"

* It is considered that the tendon organs are concerned in the tendon stretch reflexes, while the spindles are protective and prevent excessive contraction as in the lengthening reaction (Denny Brown)

are the result of the stimulation of different end-organs, and that the impulses are conveyed to the central nervous system by different groups of nerve-fibres, they moreover form the clearest piece of evidence we have that pain is a distinct kind of sensation

The question is more difficult to answer, which particular end-organ is concerned with each variety of sensation There is, however, little doubt that the nerve-fibrils around the hair follicles of the short hairs are the terminations most affected by changes of pressure, and also that Meissner's corpuscles are purely tactual,

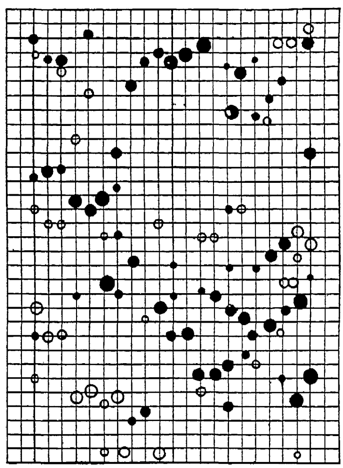


FIG 286 —Heat and cold spots on a sq cm of the back of the hand (Somewhat enlarged, after Donaldson) The black dots represent cold spots, their size indicating the strength of the reaction, the circles represent hot spots

taking the place of hairs in hairless parts In the palmar surface of the last phalanx of the index finger, there are 21 Meissner's corpuscles per square centimetre, in other parts of the palm and sole the number varies from 2 to 8 End-bulbs are believed to be the organs for cold, they are most numerous in the conjunctiva and glans penis, where "cold spots" are almost exclusively present The end-organs in "heat spots" have not been identified with certainty, but they are probably larger, and placed deeply in the skin

As compared with the sensation obtained from pain spots, touch is quicker in both development and subsidence Thus vibrations of strings are recognisable as such by the finger, even at a frequency of 1500 vibrations per second A revolving wheel with toothed edge gives a sensation of smoothness when the teeth meet the skin at the rate of from 480 to 640 per second

CHAPTER LII

THE SENSORY PATHWAYS

Grouping in the Spinal Cord.—When the impulses underlying sensation reach the spinal cord by way of the posterior roots (see p. 727), they are sorted out according to their nature and are carried up the cord by bundles of fibres, each bundle being responsible for a particular sensation. These bundles are known as the *sensory tracts* of the cord, which we must now consider. With the exception of the posterior columns of Goll and Burdach, which we have seen are composed of axons of cells in the posterior ganglion, the ascending tracts are the axons of cells in the neighbourhood of the posterior horn (*substantia gelatinosa* of Rolando and Clarke's column).

Muscle and Joint Sense.—By this sense we become aware of movement and of the position of the limbs. The efficiency of this sense can be gauged by the power of the individual to place one limb in exactly the same position as the other although the eyes are closed. Muscle sense depends on the degree of compression of the sensory nerve-endings or muscle spindles in the muscles and the analogous endings in tendons. Through this sense not only do we become aware of muscular movement, but also by the help of related associations we estimate weight. The appreciation of weight does not depend on impulses of cutaneous origin, since it is retained in an individual whose skin has been rendered insensitive by cocaine or by disease.

We have already remarked in relation to the cerebellum that all the impulses which arise in the muscle do not reach consciousness. Those which are concerned with posture and equilibrium pass up in the cerebellar tracts to the pons, mid-brain, and cerebellum.

The impulses which do reach consciousness pass into the central nervous system by the posterior nerve-roots and pass at once *via* the columns of Goll and Burdach in the posterior part of the cord of the same side, to the nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus in the medulla. Thence they are relayed by other neurones to the thalamus of the opposite side, the actual crossing taking place at the decussation of the fillet in the upper part of the medulla.

Vibratory sensation, *i.e.*, appreciation of vibrations such as those of a tuning-fork, has a similar pathway. The receptors appear to be situated in the bones.

Touch.—The nerve-endings concerned with touch appear to be the Meissner's corpuscles in the skin, and the Pacinian bodies for deeper sensation. The impulses of **tactile discrimination**, *i.e.*, the power of the individual to distinguish between adjacent points on the body surface, travel up on the same side of the cord in the posterior columns with the impulses of muscle and joint sense.

The impulses of **tactile localisation**, or power of localising a touch, on the other hand pass up the posterior columns, but *after a few segments* cross to the opposite side to occupy the anterior parts of the spino-thalamic tracts close to the fibres carrying impulses of temperature and pain.

The impulses of light touch, **tactile sensibility**, have a double pathway, some going with the impulses of discrimination, and some with those of localisation. In the mid-brain the bundles carrying the various forms of touch become somewhat separated, and a lesion may affect one variety without affecting the others.

Temperature and Pain.—The impulse in each instance begins at the nerve-ending.

There is evidence that the end-bulbs of Krause are responsible for sensation for cold, but the endings responsible for pain are probably varied. In the skin it seems that the free nerve-endings perform this function, since in the cornea of the eye, where only such endings exist, pain only is appreciated. Pain from the internal organs is more difficult, since, as pointed out by Herring, it is, for example, difficult to imagine that nature should provide a special nerve-ending for pain in the ureter, where it may never be required. It seems probable that other forms of nerve-ending may be concerned. The organs for heat are uncertain.

The impulses are conveyed by the posterior root-fibres to the central nervous system, where they pass *almost immediately* to the more posterior part of the spino-thalamic tract of the other side of the cord. We know this largely from studying the disease syringomyelia, in which there is an enlargement of the central canal of the cord, due to degeneration of the surrounding nerve-tissue; the morbid process cuts across the decussating fibres and there results loss of tactile localisation and of sensations of pain, heat, and cold in the segments in the neighbourhood of the lesion, although tactile discrimination is unaffected (dissociated anæsthesia). In this condition, severe injury, such as burning of the fingers with a cigarette, may occur unknown to the patient. He may not let the cigarette drop as his muscle sense and tactile discrimination may be normal.

It must be understood that this consideration of the pathways for pain and temperature together is merely one of convenience. The impulses conveying the sensations are carried by different bundles, as is seen by the fact that certain lesions of the cord may

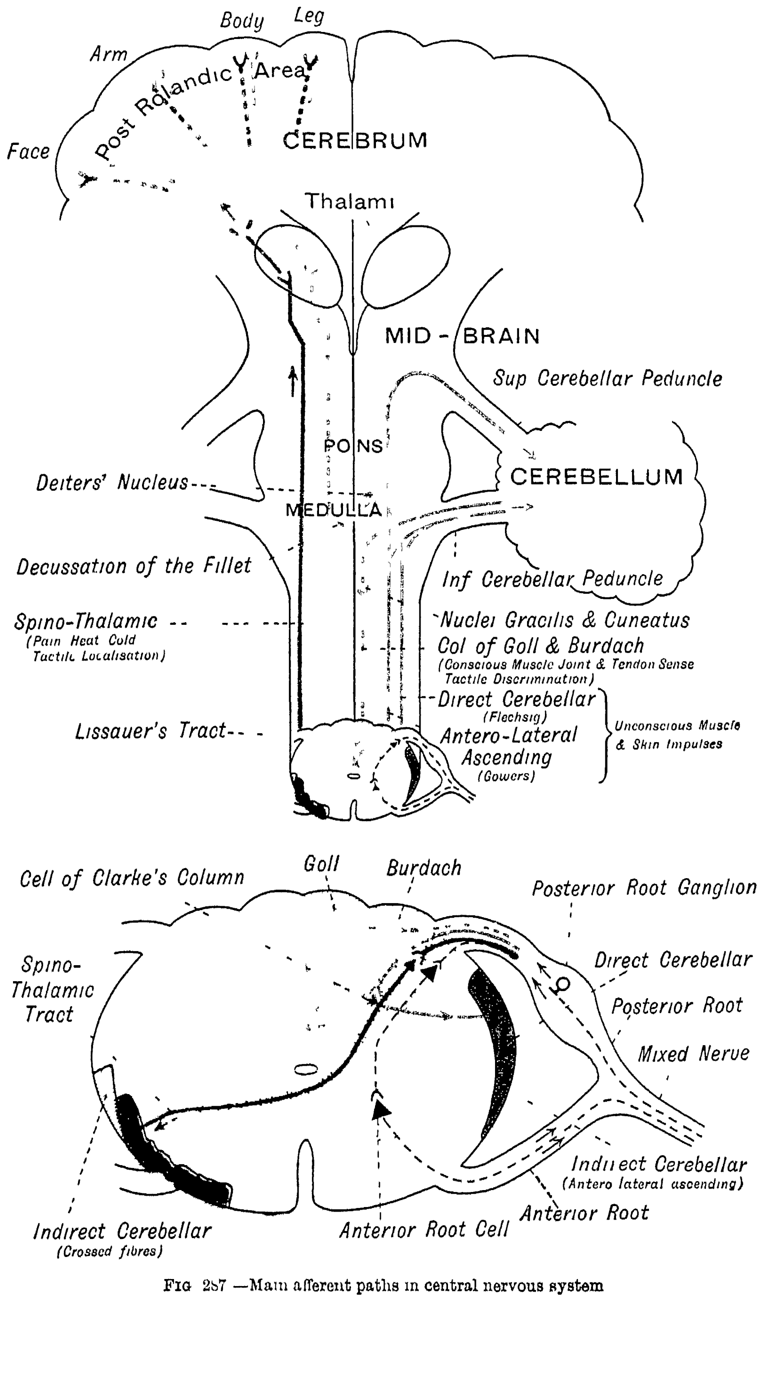


FIG 287 —Main afferent paths in central nervous system

abolish, for example, heat, and leave cold unaffected Cutaneous and deep pain may also not be affected together, but this is probably explained by the fact that the subserving fibres do not enter by the same spinal roots

The Thalamus

Eventually all the impulses of general sensation reach the thalamus where they are felt indistinctly, but from which they are sorted out again and are distributed by way of the posterior part of the posterior limb of the internal capsule to the sensory area of the cerebral cortex

The thalamus informs us if a body is hot or cold, but cannot differentiate more accurately between finer differences of temperature, nor can it tell the size or shape of an object Similarly the thalamus can appreciate only crude pain, which it cannot localise In some of the lower animals in which the cerebrum is scarcely developed, *e g* fishes, the thalamus acts also as a motor area

Sensation from the face depends on the fifth cranial nerve, the sensory nucleus of which sends fibres to the opposite thalamus

Thus we see why it is that in disease there may be a great lack of correspondence between the degree to which the various sensations are lost It is to be observed that the fibres conveying impulses concerned with posture and equilibration, and which arise as collaterals from those which carry the true sensory impulses, remain in the cord on the side of entry close to the tracts carrying the sensory impulses until the medulla is reached, when each goes its separate way, sensory to the thalamus on the other side, and non-sensory to the cerebellum of the same side

The Significance of Sensation

It is an important physiological truth that the significance of any given sensation to any individual depends on the circumstances in which it is experienced or in which a similar sensation has been experienced in the past This is simply demonstrated in the old experiment of Aristotle If a pencil be placed between the crossed fore and middle fingers there is a sensation of touching two objects The pencil is touched by two surfaces, which, under ordinary conditions, could only be touched by two separate objects, and in the light of past experience we conclude that two objects have been touched, regardless of the fact that the fingers are crossed Many other errors of judgment depend on similar past experience

We may assume that minute areas of the body surface have each their *local sign*, *i e* the sensation arising from stimulation of one area differs in some obscure quality from the sensations arising from stimulation of neighbouring areas, thereby acquiring its own

spatial colouring which enables us to identify the area when stimulated. The difference of local sign between two near points may be imperceptible in one region of the body, but fully recognisable in another. Again, the delicacy of the sense of touch may be very much increased by practice. A familiar illustration is seen in blind people, who, by constant practice, can acquire the power of reading raised letters, the forms of which are almost if not quite undistinguishable by the sense of touch to an ordinary person.

The extent to which two points of a pair of compasses can be discriminated varies appreciably in different parts of the body (Weber). A few results are as follow:—

Tip of tongue	$\frac{1}{24}$-inch	1 mm
Palmar surface of third phalanx of forefinger	$\frac{1}{12}$,,	2 ,,
Palmar surface of second phalanges of fingers	$\frac{1}{6}$,,	4 ,,
Palm of hand	$\frac{5}{12}$,,	10 ,,
Dorsal surface of first phalanges of fingers	$\frac{7}{12}$,,	14 ,,
Back of hand	$1\frac{1}{6}$,,	25 ,,
Upper and lower parts of forearm	$1\frac{1}{2}$,,	37 ,,
Middle of thigh and back	$2\frac{1}{2}$,,	62 ,,

In the skin of the limbs, it is found that before they are recognised as two, the points have to be further separated when the line joining them is in the long axis of the limb, than when in the transverse direction.

The different delicacy of local signature possessed by different parts may give rise to errors of judgment in estimating the distance between two points where the skin is touched. Thus, if the blunted points of a pair of compasses (maintained at a constant distance apart) are slowly drawn over the skin of the cheek towards the lips, it is almost impossible to resist the conclusion that the distance between the points is gradually increasing. When they reach the lips they seem to be considerably further apart than on the cheek. Then, too, our estimate of the size of a cavity in a tooth is usually exaggerated when based upon sensations derived from the tongue alone.

When, as occurs under certain conditions, an object is adjudged different from what general experience teaches us to be its "real" character, we have an *illusion*. Thus a line or figure may appear to be longer or shorter than it really is, or to take a direction different from its real direction. Or a weight may appear heavier than another which is really equal to it. Illusions are due partly to peripheral, partly to central factors. Their investigation falls within the province of experimental psychology.

Similarly it will be remembered that our estimations of size are commonly dependent on experience. We presume, for example, that lamp-posts do not change in size in the same street. A drawing of a street, therefore, in which the perspective is wrong in relation to the lamp-posts may give a completely erroneous idea of relative sizes.

The significance of a sensation also may depend on immediately

previous sensation For example, water at 30° C is hot to a hand which has previously been in ice-cold water but is cold to a hand which has been in water at 50° C

A stimulus which certainly will set up an impulse which reaches consciousness normally may, in certain circumstances, not do so Injuries received in exciting games are often not appreciated at the time of the injury Still more interesting, from the medical standpoint, is the fact that in hysteria an individual may be convinced that she cannot feel in a certain part of the body and gives no reaction to a severe stimulus to the part Purely psychical treatment causes recovery Similarly, a kiss from a mother may make better in a child a hurt which by adult standards must be quite painful All these facts point to the importance of the conscious element in sensation and are also of first importance in relation to the appreciation of pain

It is evident that the impulses which pass up certain paths have a certain significance This we have already referred to in relation to reflexes For example, an individual who has had a leg amputated may experience pain in the limb that is off if the nerve-fibres which formerly supplied the leg are stimulated through involvement of their cut ends in the scar

Referred pain is an analogous phenomenon Thus pain, the impulses of which are transmitted by the sixth dorsal root is referred to that part of the body from which we have had previous sensory experiences, namely the shoulder-blade, although in reality it may arise from the passage of a gall-stone down the bile-duct Each spinal nerve contains afferent fibres from an internal organ as well as from the skin and errors in the situation of a disease on the part of the patient may readily occur Commonly, however, as soon as the patient realises that pressure with the hand in a certain region elicits the pain, the latter is no longer referred to a superficial area but to the organ lying underneath

Conditioned pain *—Any movement which in the past has been associated with a painful stimulus, may cause a reaction like that of the painful stimulus A threatened pin-prick may cause a reaction, *e g* of the circulation, like that of an actual pin-prick (See Vasomotor Reactions)

It looks as if a process of "conditioning" was possible in relation to sensation since every sensation may acquire a significance which may bear little or no relation to the elementary quality of the sensation The subject is closely related to "conditioned reflexes" but has been little investigated

These facts are of great importance in disease For example, pain on movement may have been associated with an injury, but the

* So far as the author is aware this term has not been used elsewhere

movement may continue to cause pain long after the injury has been recovered from This state is seen also in pet animals

Visceral Sensations

Accurate and discriminative sensibility of varying nature is a special characteristic of the cutaneous area Less elaborate sensibility is found in other parts also, but in most internal structures of the body it is limited to pain The œsophagus and anal canal alone seem to be endowed with the temperature sense, the feelings of warmth and cold on swallowing liquids of different temperatures are entirely referable to the upper portion of the alimentary canal Hurst's experiments place this beyond question, immediately the food has passed into the stomach we are unaware of its temperature except by the warming or cooling of the neighbouring portion of the gullet, or the skin overlying the viscera

Pain is the most widely distributed sense in the body, but in internal organs is not localised accurately, and it is here that the "referred pains" in corresponding skin areas (see p 746) are useful for diagnostic purposes Pain, however, is not produced in the viscera by handling or even by cutting or burning it appears to be associated with excessive action, stretching, and with inflammatory conditions which involve the sensitive *parietal* layer of the peritoneum Inflammation of the serous membranes is an exceedingly painful condition—for instance, in pleurisy and peritonitis—but this condition, *per se*, does not apparently cause any referred pain or tenderness in cutaneous areas In connection with the question of referred pain, we must mention the pathological condition known as *allocheiria*, when the skin sensations in any given area are depressed, stimulation of that area may give rise to sensations which are referred to the corresponding area on the other side of the body, it appears to be a general rule, as Head first pointed out, that the mind projects sensations arising from an area of low sensibility to that area of higher sensibility which is related to it most closely by connections within the central nervous system, and this underlies the causation of referred visceral pains, and of allocheiria

There are, however, special kinds of sensation arising from internal viscera which have no counterpart in the sensations of the cutaneous surface Of these, hunger and thirst are the most familiar

Hunger

When slight, hunger is termed *appetite*, and there is some difference of opinion whether the two are separate sensations, or only different in degree Appetite is referred to the stomach, and is a normal sensation, which arises at an interval after a meal, and

as is well known it is intensified by muscular exertion, especially if the air is cool. It has been suggested that the oxidation processes which occur in the muscles produce some substance or substances which excite the sensory nerve-terminals in the stomach. In diabetes, where oxidation runs an unusual course, carbohydrates escape oxidation to a large extent, and intense appetite may be present in spite of abundant feeding.

Hunger is due to pronounced motor activity of the stomach; this excites the sensory nerve-terminals there (Hurst); these movements, and therefore the sensation of hunger, can be temporarily appeased by filling the stomach even with indigestible or non-nutritious material. Carlson has shown that the movements are reflexly inhibited when food enters the mouth and is masticated; the nerves of taste act as the afferent channel for the reflex; hence the feeling of hunger passes off long before absorption of food begins. These observations confirm the view that its origin is a local condition set up in the stomach by its condition of emptiness, and that it is not immediately due to any general change in the nutrition of the body as a whole. We must, however, recognise that the gastric sense is a complex one, as is illustrated by the aversion for food felt during monotonous diets or after over-feeding, or when certain articles of diet are taken, but the explanation of these and similar phenomena we do not know.

Thirst

Thirst is a sensation referred to the pharyngeal region rather than to the stomach, and appears, like hunger, to be a protective signal, locally excited to warn the living organism of the necessity for regularity in the intake of nutriment. Although its intensity increases with the loss of water from the body, leading to a lessening of the saliva secreted, probably as a result of a slight increase in the osmotic pressure of the blood, it occurs normally long before there is any serious upset of the normal relationship of the water percentage of the tissues. It is appeased immediately by the administration of fluid, and although fluids reach the absorbing surface of the duodenum sooner than was formerly supposed to be the case, it is unquestionable that the relief of thirst is mainly the result of moistening the local surface, the impulses from which excite the sensation. Thirst may be produced by drying the throat artificially. This accounts for the thirst which results from the taking of excessively salt or sweet articles of diet. Mere physical drying of the throat (Cannon's "false thirst") produces a similar sensation and is relieved by the local application of water without its necessarily being swallowed. A further proof of the local nature of thirst is seen in the fact that it is abolished by painting the back of the tongue

with cocaine, a drug which paralyses nerves and nerve-endings Thirst which is due to prolonged deprivation of water is not a mere local sensation, but is produced by loss of water in the tissues generally, exciting widespread sensory terminations therein, the bodily and mental anguish experienced are then of an intense character

The independence of the two sensations hunger and thirst is well illustrated in many diseases, where a loss of appetite occurs without any corresponding loss of desire for fluid

CHAPTER LIII

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF CONSCIOUS STATES

THE conscious state is of great general interest and medical importance, but unfortunately we are far from a clear understanding of its nature

It is sometimes argued that states of consciousness are the product of the activity of nerve-cells, just as bile is the product of the activity of the liver-cell, or as contraction results from the activity of the muscle-fibre But this analogy will not bear close investigation It is, however, true —

(1) That the different senses are dependent for their manifestation on the integrity of different definitely localisable areas of the cerebral cortex

(2) That such drugs as alcohol, caffeine, and chloroform, which have a known action on living substance, also affect the course of conscious processes

(3) That disease or malformation of the brain is accompanied by impairment or absence of intelligence

But because nervous substance is essential for the *manifestation* of conscious states, one cannot legitimately infer that this substance *produces* those states Indeed, by a vast number of philosophers a very different position has been upheld So far from believing that mind results from the activity of living matter, they have insisted that all matter, living and lifeless, results from the activity of mind They maintain that, were it not for mental activity, there would be no conception, nay not even existence, of those qualities (*e g*, sound, colour, force, weight, hardness) of which our non-mental world of matter is composed

There is no difficulty in accepting the statement that bile is secreted by the liver, in this case the product is physical, and it is produced by physiological (*i e*, presumably, by chemical and physical) conditions On the other hand, if we state that consciousness is secreted by the brain, we are linking together two sets of phenomena, the psychical and the physiological, between which a connection is inconceivable

Consequently, instead of stating that physiological activity is the

cause of mental (or psychical) activity, it is more satisfactory to assume that the two activities run *parallel* with one another, and to recognise that the nature of their relation is unknown This conception of *psycho-physical parallelism* affords the physiologist by far the best working hypothesis It leaves unanswered the great question whether brain ever acts on mind, or mind on the brain—which of the two is the master or the servant of the other It merely implies that a change in nerve substance underlies every psychical change, and it bids the physiologist investigate the functions of the nervous system, and determine what structures are called into activity in the development of various conscious states

We must recognise that, however completely we may one day have mapped out the functions of the various parts of the brain, we shall nevertheless not have approached a step nearer towards understanding the relation between the data of physiological and psychical activity If we knew the function of every nerve-cell of the body, the gap between the material and the mental would not be a bit less wide Just as a ray of light cannot see itself, so we cannot expect to understand consciousness from a mere study of cerebral function

It is therefore imperative to avoid confusion between the two aspects involved in this psycho-physical parallelism The psychical is one language, the physical (*i e* the physiological) is another, and the two vocabularies must be kept distinct from one another Psychology and physiology stand in the relation of an object and its mirrored reflection To confound object and image—to speak, for instance, of a sensation (instead of an impulse) being transmitted along a nerve-fibre—is to blur and to confuse two distinct sciences

The psychologist distinguishes three modes in which consciousness is manifested These are (1) the cognitive, (2) the affective, and (3) the conative modes Through the *cognitive* mode we become aware of the object thought of Owing to the *affective* mode, our state of consciousness is toned with pleasure, indifference, or displeasure The *conative* mode manifests itself as a striving or "felt tendency" towards an end In every state of consciousness these three modes are present, but their relative prominence is always different For example, in perception, in memory, or imagination, the cognitive element is to the fore, in love, sorrow, or doubt, the affective element predominates, while in intense desire, the conative element is most easily recognisable Into the physiology of affection and conation we shall not enter here They receive adequate attention in books devoted to physiological and experimental psychology

A conscious state implies also a contrast between what is outside of ourselves (the *object*) and our feelings and strivings in connection with it, which are spoken of as *subjective*. The existence of this "subject-object relation" implies the activity of an *Ego*, which experiences conscious states, which is cognisant, feels or strives. Indeed no state of consciousness is ever possible, unless experienced by the Ego. In becoming manifest, it blends with the Ego, and is modified or rather determined by the Ego's previous experiences; and in turn it modifies the Ego. Thus the Ego everlastingly moulds and is itself moulded by its own states of consciousness or experiences. Consequently, states of consciousness are not independent units. The mind, like its physiological correlate, the central nervous system, works as a single, unitary entity, despite its complex differentiation.

From one aspect, "states" of consciousness is an inaccurate expression. The essential features of consciousness are its incessant change and its intimate relation to past and future consciousness; whereas the word *state* implies a period of rest and a certain isolation or independence. Save for this difficulty, it would be possible to regard a given state of consciousness as the cross-section of a stream which is always flowing. The simile may be deemed of value, in so far as it allows us to represent different levels of conscious states. At any moment, there is always part which is in the focus, or full glare of consciousness, and part of which we are dimly conscious or wholly unconscious, but of which we may at any moment become conscious—for example, the ticking of a clock in the room or the pressure of a pipe between the teeth while these lines are being written or read. We may imagine that as the everchanging *stream of consciousness* flows on, different portions come to the surface at different times and under different conditions, while others fall below, often to such a depth that they pass beyond the margin of consciousness.

On the physiological side, we see the analogue of these streams in the streams of nervous impulses which are perpetually coursing through the brain. The pattern of these streams is likewise always changing. And we may suppose that some patterns are incompatible with the simultaneous occurrence of certain other patterns. In this way, we may form a physiological conception of the basis of inhibition; the pattern which inhibits and that which is inhibited cannot coexist. This has doubtless been developed in evolutional history owing to the necessity of adjustment to environment.

We may regard the physiological correlate of consciousness as a state of resistance to the onward passage of the nervous impulse. When the resistance is high, there is consciousness; when it is low, there is none. Thus when any new action (such as skating or

bicycling) is being learnt, the resistance is, as we should expect, high. But the more often that act is repeated, the lower becomes the resistance, until ultimately the act becomes a *habit* and is performed in the complete absence of consciousness far more surely and rapidly than in the earlier stages of learning. It must be borne in mind, however, that this conception of lowered resistance is purely hypothetical. In relation to reflexes we have seen that a resistance occurs at the synapses, where the dendritic processes of one neurone meet those of another.

The hypothesis is at all events valuable in so far as it contradicts an old and erroneous conception that, as an action becomes habitual and no longer accompanied by consciousness, the nervous impulses quit the higher parts of the brain and confine themselves to the subcortical and spinal regions. There can be no doubt that nervous impulses pursue the same course in the brain, whether at one moment consciousness is present, or at another absent. (See Conditioned Reflexes.)

In the spinal cord, on the other hand, there is no evidence of the presence of consciousness. The acts which are executed by the isolated cord are reflex. In so far as they are unaccompanied by consciousness, they are comparable to habits acquired by training in the higher parts of the nervous system.

Within certain limits, reflex actions can be predicted. If we apply a known stimulus to the afferent portion of a reflex system, we can with fair confidence predict the result of the stimulus on the efferent portions connected therewith. When, on the other hand, the stimulus involves the manifestation of consciousness, prediction is almost impossible; the nervous connections are so complex, and the nervous impulse may wander in such a variety of directions, that one cannot forecast accurately how an individual will behave under the influence of external circumstances.

It is, however, interesting to speculate how far the behaviour of an individual depends on the circumstances in which he has been placed during his life-time, *i.e.*, on the sensory impulses which he has received, and how far it depends on inborn characteristics. (See Posture.)

Loss of Consciousness

Whatever views may be held concerning the ultimate meaning of the *Ego* there is no doubt that mental activity is dependent on the physical integrity and association of the neurones which make up the central nervous system. If loss of association is produced by disease or actual rupture of these component units, the psychological manifestations of cerebral activity suffer in proportion to the amount

of injury The broken structures do not regenerate, and therefore recovery of function does not occur except in such degree as can be explained by other nervous pathways taking the place of those which are lost

There are, however, other cases where the loss of function is only temporary, the most familiar of these are due to a severe physical shock (concussion) of the brain Everyone is familiar with the fact that the loss of consciousness which follows such an accident passes off entirely In these cases there can have been no actual rupture of the associated neurones, and it is usual to speak of the temporary loss of association which occurs as "functional," although we are ignorant of the actual physical state which underlies the dissociation During the last few years these cases ("shell-shock") have been the subject of special study, and in many of these severe examples of concussion, the reassociation of the functionally sundered neurones has occurred quite suddenly, recovery of lost faculties (sight, hearing, speech, etc) has not infrequently followed as the result of a fresh perturbation, mental or physical

The accompanying diagram (fig 288), for which we are indebted to Sir F Mott, will assist the reader in grasping what Hughlings Jackson called the levels of association in the sensory receptive area, and the grades of the loss of consciousness which accompany dissociation at those levels The lowest level is the situation of the associative synapses between the entering sensory neurones, and the cortical receptors, namely, the cells of the "layer of granules" Dissociation here means loss of consciousness The next level is that at which incoming association fibres from distant convolutions arborise round these "granules", here dissociation means loss of recognition, a want of the power to associate together what one sees or hears, etc, with the usual perceptions of objects In the highest level of all (the layer of pyramids associated by the units in the tangential or molecular layer, and with the "granules" in the layer below) dissociation will involve such higher mental operations as those covered by the word recollection

Severe shocks which produce "functional" dissociation at all three levels will in time pass off, first consciousness returns as reassociation takes place at the lowest level, later, as recovery occurs at the second level, the patient is able to recognise objects presented to him, recovery at the highest level takes place last, and return of memory may often be very slow indeed

Although we do not know what consciousness is, we know of a large number of factors on which it depends in addition to the *physical integrity* of the brain just referred to One of the most important of these is the *oxygen supply* Compression of the

carotid vessels (a dangerous procedure), a fall of blood-pressure such as results from hæmorrhage or from loss of the normal activity of the vasomotor centre, cause a rapid loss of consciousness If temporary this is known as fainting It becomes evident that strangulation or section of the carotid arteries in the neck is a much less painful form of death than commonly supposed

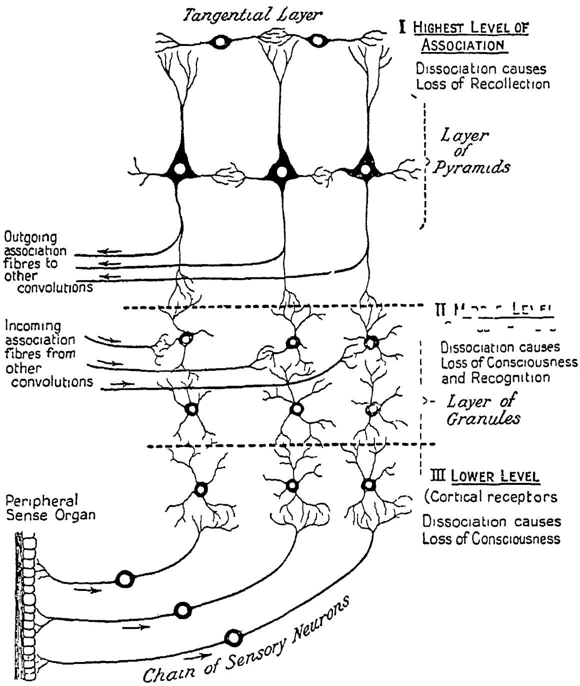


FIG 288 —Diagram to illustrate levels of association This figure if taken absolutely suggests that all three levels are in the same part of the cortex This is not the case Moreover, it is possible that the lower levels may be sub cortical

Unconsciousness also occurs if the circulation or respiratory mechanism fails to supply the oxygen, *e g* drowning

Similarly, if there is insufficient *glucose* in the blood to be oxidised, there is a loss of consciousness, as in hypoglycæmia from an excessive dose of insulin

Unconsciousness or coma also results from diseases in which *toxic products* are abnormally produced or are retained, as in diabetes mellitus or nephritis The poisonous substances probably act directly on the cerebral cells

Sleep and Narcosis

The conditions that favour sleep are —

(1) A diminution of the impulses entering the central nervous system by the afferent channels This is under our voluntary control, as, for instance, closing the eyes, or retiring to a quiet room

(2) Fatigue This diminishes the readiness of the central nervous system to respond to stimuli

The first two hours of sleep are always the most profound, later on, relatively weak stimuli will cause awakening Of the parts of the central nervous system, the spinal cord is always less deeply affected than the brain, but even the brain is never entirely irresponsive, and unless slumber is very profound, dreams are the subjective result of external stimuli Sensations of sound appear to be the last to disappear as sleep comes on, and the first to be realised on waking

Sleep has been attributed by some to changes in the blood-supply of the brain Plethysmographic records from the arm of a sleeping man show a diminution in its volume every time he is disturbed, even though the disturbance may not be sufficient to wake him This is interpreted as meaning a diminution in the blood of the body, and a corresponding increase in the blood-flow through the brain It is, however, quite possible that the vascular condition is rather the concomitant or consequence of sleep than its cause Howell among others believes it to be the cause, and attributes the sleepiness that follows a heavy meal to the mechanical effect of a dilatation of the abdominal vessels in producing a diminished blood-flow through the brain, but the sleep that normally comes on at the end of the day, he believes to be produced by cerebral anæmia following dilatation of the blood-vessels of the skin, such dilatation being due to vasomotor fatigue There can be no doubt that conditions which tend to constrict the peripheral vessels, *e g* cold feet, are very liable to prevent sleep Hence the value of a hot-water bottle or a hot drink in promoting it

Some of the theories of sleep have had a *chemical* basis Thus, certain observers have considered that sleep is the result of the action of chemical materials produced during waking hours, which have a soporific effect on the brain, according to this theory waking from sleep is due to the action of certain other materials produced during rest, which have the opposite effect Obersteiner has gone so far as to consider that the soporific substances are acid in nature, but others regard them as alkaloidal These theories all rest on doubtful foundations, and none is as yet generally accepted

Then there are what we may term *histological* theories of sleep, and these are rather unsatisfactory The introduction of the Golgi

method opened a fresh field for investigators, and several have sought to find by this method a condition of the neurones produced by narcotics such as opium and chloroform, which is different from that which obtains in the waking state

Demoor and others found in animals in which deep anæsthesia has occurred, that the dendrites exhibit moniliform swellings, that is, a series of minute thickenings or varicosities On the strength of this observation, what we may call a biophysical theory of sleep has been formulated, in the waking state, the neighbouring nerve units are in contact with each other, transmission of nerve impulses from neurone to neurone is then possible, and the result is consciousness, during sleep the dendrites are retracted in an amœboid manner, the neurones are therefore separated, and the result is unconsciousness

The most thorough histological investigation of the effect of anæsthetics on nerve-cells was carried out by Hamilton Wright

He used rabbits and dogs, and subjected them to ether and chloroform narcosis for periods varying from half an hour to nine hours In both animals he found that the nerve-cells are affected, but in rabbits much more readily This accords quite well with what is known regarding the susceptibility of rabbits as compared with dogs towards the influence of these narcotising agents In a rabbit, the nerve-cells, especially of the cerebrum, show changes even after only half an hour's anæsthesia, but in dogs at least four hours' anæsthesia must be employed By the Golgi method the moniliform enlargements can be seen These become more numerous, larger, and encroach more and more on the dendritic stems, the longer the anæsthesia is kept up (fig 289)

Wright started his work with a bias in favour of Demoor's biophysical theory, but he soon found that the theory was untenable, the results of his observations have shown him that the action of anæsthetics is biochemical rather than biophysical, and he was led to this conclusion by the employment of other histological methods, particularly the most sensitive one we possess, namely, the methylene-blue reaction

Owing to the chemical action of the anæsthetic on the cells, the Nissl bodies have no longer an affinity for methylene-blue, and the cells consequently present what Wright calls a rarefied appearance, when this becomes marked the cells appear like the skeletons of healthy cells In extreme cases the cells look as though they had undergone a degenerative change, and after eight or nine hours' anæsthesia in dogs, even the nucleus and nucleolus lose their affinity for basic dyes The change, however, is not a real degeneration, and passes off when the drug disappears from the circulation Even after nine hours' anæsthesia the cells return rapidly to their normal

condition, stain normally, moniliform enlargements disappear, and the nerve-fibres show no trace of Wallerian degeneration The pseudo-degenerative change produced by the chemical action of the anæsthetic no doubt interferes with the normal metabolic activity of the cell-body, and this produces effects on the cell-branches In the early stages of Wallerian degeneration, the branch of the nerve-cell which we call the axis cylinder presents swellings or varicosities, produced by hydration or some similar chemical change The moniliform enlargements seen during the temporary pseudo-degenerative effects produced by anæsthetics are comparable to this

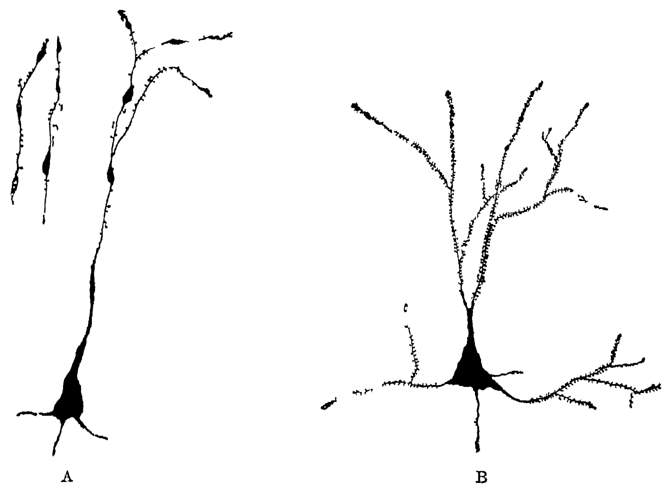


FIG 2[illegible] --Mo[illegible] dendrites of nerve cells, rendered evident by Cox's modification [illegible] l cell of a rabbit, B, in a corresponding cell of a dog s brain, after [illegible] her in each case (Hamilton Wright)

These enlargements are therefore not the primary cause of loss of consciousness, but are merely secondary results of changes in the cell-body When a tree begins to wither the earliest apparent change is noticed in the branches most remote from the centre of nutrition, the root, as the changes in the centre of nutrition become more profound, the larger branches become implicated, but the seat of the mischief is not primarily in the branches This illustration may serve to render intelligible what is found in nerve-cells and their branches

Moore and Roaf have suggested that it is the protein in the nerve-cells (as well as the other cells of the body) which is affected by chloroform They have shown that unstable compounds of protein and chloroform are obtainable, hence the greater solubility of chloroform in blood than in water They compare the chloroform-

protein compound to oxyhæmoglobin, for it undergoes dissociation in the same sort of way Just as oxyhæmoglobin parts with its oxygen to the tissue-cells, so the chloroform parts company from the blood-protein, and enters into combination with the cell-protein, limiting its activity and producing quiescence or anæsthesia When the administration of the chloroform ceases, the tension of chloroform in the blood is no longer maintained, so the combination between the cell-protein and chloroform dissociates, and anæsthesia passes off

The theory which has met with most favour in relation to anæsthetics, however, is that known as the Meyer-Overton hypothesis, this theory, which has received abundant confirmation by numerous observers, points out that the cells are easily permeable to the volatile anæsthetics owing to the presence of fat and lipide material in their plasmatic membrane It can hardly now be doubted that the solubility of the volatile anæsthetics in the lipides of the membrane (or, what comes to the same thing, the solubility of the lipides in the anæsthetic) is an important factor in anæsthesia, the anæsthetic thus enters the cell easily, and throws the lipide constituents of the protoplasm (and perhaps secondarily the protein constituents also) out of gear, the net result being a lessening of the oxidative changes which are essential in active vital processes

But the artificial sleep of a deeply-narcotised animal is no criterion of what occurs during normal sleep The sleep of anæsthesia is a pathological condition due to the action of a poison The drug reduces the chemico-vital activities of the cells, and is, in a sense, dependent on an increasing condition of exhaustion, which may culminate in death. Natural sleep, on the other hand, is the normal manifestation of one stage in the rhythmical activity of nerve-cells, and though it may be preceded by fatigue or exhaustion, it is accompanied by repair, the constructive side of metabolic activity This is true for many other organs in addition to the central nervous system, sleep is a time of repose for them also, but the amount of rest varies, the voluntary muscles, except those concerned in breathing, will rest most, but the heart continues to beat, the urine is still secreted, the processes of digestion go on, so that for such organs activity is only diminished

Of recent years considerable attention has been given to the *inhibition theory* of Pavlov, who has been able to produce experimentally in dogs a condition resembling normal sleep He considers that normal sleep and hypnotic sleep are much more closely related than has been usually thought, and that both are due to the irradiation of inhibition The subject has already been dealt with under "Conditioned Reflexes" This view makes it possible that the inhibitory process need not occupy the whole of the cortex at a given time, and thus gives interesting

explanations regarding sleep-walking, dreams, persistence of the sense of time during sleep, etc Incidentally, it suggests that the popular idea that certain individuals are at times only half-awake has some scientific justification!

It is not, however, agreed by psychologists that hypnotic and normal sleep are so alike as Pavlov would have us understand

Sleep occurring naturally or produced by narcosis, provided the narcotic does not stimulate, is always associated with diminished sympathetic as distinct from parasympathetic action The pupil is constricted and digestion continues These facts have been made the basis of an important theory by Hess of Zurich, who supports his argument by the fact that if ergotamine is injected into the 3rd ventricle of the brain sleep results He also has succeeded in producing sleep by stimulating the mid-brain with a slowly rising and falling direct current This view does not contradict that of Pavlov but rather supports it, for we know that parasympathetic activity is very commonly conditioned As examples we may take the secretion of saliva, vomiting, constriction of the bronchi in asthma, and erection of the penis

It should be recognised by the public that sleep is the period of anabolism, repair and growth, and a large allowance is therefore necessary in growing children, who, amongst the lower classes, are often seriously harmed by insufficiency of sleep

A thorough investigation of the effect of sleeplessness in adults was made on himself and his colleagues by Kleitman of Chicago, they voluntarily went without sleep for periods varying from 40 to 115 hours They could easily remain awake when actively engaged, but became drowsy when sitting and fell asleep immediately on lying down or on complete muscular relaxation It is remarkable how normal they remained otherwise, their blood, urine, etc, were examined, so was also the condition of their heart, respiration, blood-pressure, temperature, appetite, digestion, basal metabolism, and reflexes Any departures from the normal, if present at all, were trivial, subjectively the feeling of sleepiness was alone marked, ability to do mental arithmetic was unimpaired The most essential factor in causing sleep is muscular relaxation, this causes a loss of proprioceptive reflexes which in activity are always in action Hughlings Jackson's highest level (see p 757) is the most fatigued and the least responsive part of the brain The lower levels may still be active and so cause dreaming

The effect of loss of sleep not exceeding one night has been shown experimentally to have a beneficial effect during the first half of the following day, but thereafter there is a fall in efficiency which, in spite of sleep, may not be fully recovered for three days

CHAPTER LIV

VOLUNTARY MOVEMENT HYPOTHALAMUS AND BASAL GANGLIA

WHEN a decision is made to make a certain movement we may look upon the effective impulse as starting in the motor area of the cerebrum and passing down the **pyramidal tracts** The pyramidal tracts arise in the Betz or giant pyramidal cells of the motor area Thence the fibres converge, like the frame of a fan, through the

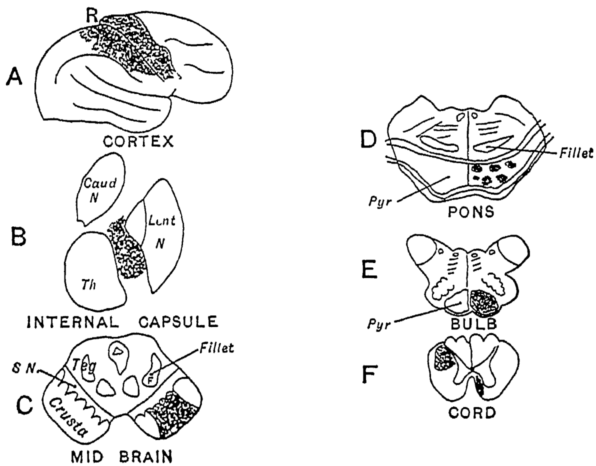


FIG 290—Degeneration after destruction of the Rolandic area of the right hemisphere The black degenerated area shows the position of the pyramidal tracts throughout its course (After Gowers)

corona radiata to the internal capsule (fig 290), where the fibres become bunched together between the lentiform nucleus externally and the thalamus and caudate nucleus on the inside (see also fig 245) In horizontal section, the internal capsule appears bent The pyramidal tracts lie at the bend and in the anterior two-thirds of the posterior limb, and from before backwards the fibres are arranged in order for the head, arm, trunk, legs The posterior third of this limb is occupied by sensory fibres on their way from the thalamus to the cortex and by the final visual and auditory path The anterior

limb of the capsule is occupied by fibres passing from the frontal lobe to the pons The importance of this arrangement lies in the fact that a destruction of the fibres very readily occurs as a result of cerebral hæmorrhage in this region, and the localised paralysis which results depends on the actual damage done These anatomical details have been ascertained by studying the detailed effects of destruction of the motor area The effect of this is shown in fig 290

In the crus the fibres occupy the middle of the region in front of the substantia nigra (S N), in the pons the fibres are more scattered, but in the medulla they become again concentrated in the anterior aspect In the lower part of the medulla most of the fibres cross to the opposite side at the decussation of the pyramids, the **crossed pyramidal tract** occupying the lateral column of the cord until it reaches its destination The fibres of the tract end by arborising round cells to the posterior horn (not the anterior), whence they are relayed to the anterior horn cells, whose axons pass out from the spinal cord to the muscles, etc Some of the pyramidal fibres do not cross but remain as the **direct pyramidal tract** in the anterior aspect of the cord throughout, crossing, however, lower down Throughout its course in the brain the pyramidal tract gives off fibres *via* sensory cells (such as those in the substantia nigra) to the cranial nuclei

In clinical work the Betz cell and the pyramidal fibre are commonly known as the upper motor neurone, while the anterior horn cell with its axon is known as the lower motor neurone

Destruction or damage to the pyramidal tracts results in paralysis of the particular part of the body supplied If above the decussation of the pyramids in the medulla, as it commonly is in cerebral hæmorrhage, the paralysis is on the opposite side of the body, although it may affect the muscles of the same side of the face * If the motor area is damaged, as it may be at birth, paralysis of a single limb may occur Even when both limbs of one side are affected (hemiplegia), the trunk, chest, and abdomen which are bilaterally innervated usually escape The state of the muscles is somewhat reminiscent of decerebrate rigidity, the paralysed muscles have excessive tone (spasticity) and the deep reflexes of the part are increased

Damage to the tracts in the spinal cord is less common It may occur in injury and disease, *e g* tumour In such conditions the interference with voluntary movement is, as a rule, accompanied by impairment of sensation also

* This crossed paralysis involving the face on one side and the limbs on the other is characteristic of hæmorrhage into the pons Lesions higher up, *e g* in the internal capsule, cause paralysis of the opposite face and limbs

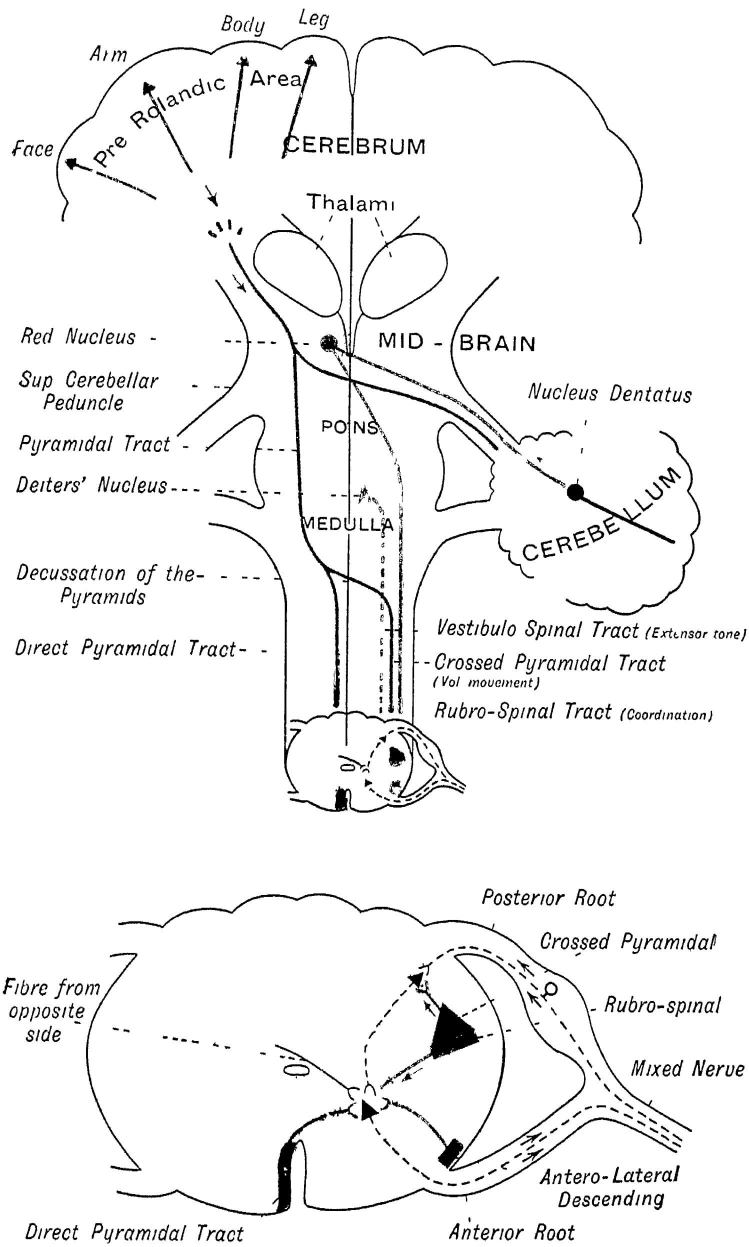


FIG 291 —Main efferent paths in central nervous system

It is, however, to be understood that to consider the voluntary impulse as beginning in the motor area is merely convenient, as it is the first point which we know of accurately No doubt, impulses reach this area from the association areas and there is evidence that the frontal area may be specially concerned (Kinnier Wilson) The close relationship of the sensory to the motor area suggests that many of the stimuli come from the sensory area and there is little doubt that many of our so-called voluntary actions are more in response to direct sensory stimulation than at first sight appears It is of interest also to observe that repetition of voluntary movement to a given stimulus (as in taking reaction times) does cause an increased speed of response such as occurs in a reflex, while drugs which act on reflexes, *e g* bromides, similarly affect the mental responses The striking effect of the general metabolic rate on mentality is seen in the conditions of myxœdema and exophthalmic goitre In the former reflexes are slow and so also are the mental responses, while in the latter the reverse is the case

Reaction Time in Man —The term reaction time is applied to the time occupied in the central nervous system in that complex response to a pre-arranged stimulus in which the brain as well as the cord comes into play It is sometimes called the *personal equation* It may be most readily measured by the electrical method, and the accompanying diagram (fig 292) illustrates one of the numerous arrangements which have been proposed for the purpose

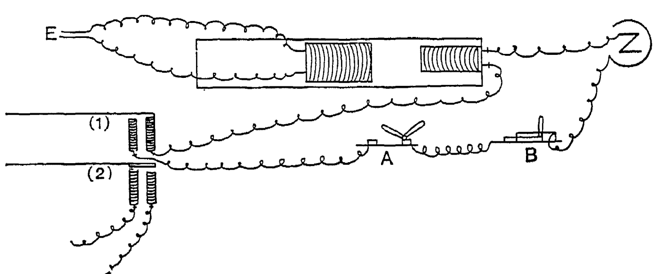


FIG 292 —Diagram of apparatus for recording reaction time

In the primary circuit two keys (*A* and *B*) are included, and an electro-magnetic signal (1), arranged to write on a revolving cylinder (fast rate) A time marker or chronograph (2), marking 1-100ths of a second, is placed below this The experiment is performed by two persons C and D The key *A*, under the control of C, is opened. The key *B*, under the control of D, is closed The electrodes *E* are applied to some part of D's body C closes *A* The primary circuit is made, and the signal (1) moves As soon as D feels the shock he opens *B*, the current is thus broken, and the lever of the signal returns to rest The time between the two movements of the signal (1) is measured by means of the time-tracing written by chronograph (2) From this, the time occupied by transmission along the nerves has to be deducted, and the remainder is the *reaction time* It usually varies from 0 15 to 0 2 second, but is increased in —

The Dilemma —The primary circuit is arranged as before The wires from the secondary coil lead to the middle screws of a reverser without cross wires To

each pair of end screws, a pair of electrodes *E* and *E′* pass, these are applied to different parts of D's body (fig 293) It is arranged previously that D is to open *B*, when one part is stimulated, but not the other, C adjusting the reverser unknown to D In these circumstances the reaction time is longer

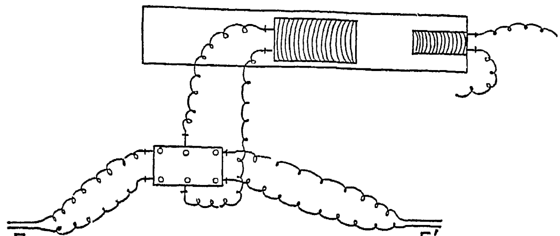


FIG 293 —The dilemma

The reaction time in response to various kinds of stimuli, sound, light, pain, etc, varies a good deal, the condition of the subject of the experiment is also an important factor

The Effect of Injury to the Spinal Cord

The study of paths makes it evident that an injury of, or a tumour pressing on, the spinal cord will affect its motor sensory and reflex functions On an accurate study of the changes brought about will depend the power of the surgeon to diagnose the exact position of the lesion and possibly to treat it It is convenient to consider the effects of partial and complete section of the spinal cord

Complete transverse section of the spinal cord leads to —

1 Loss of motion of the parts supplied by the nerves below the section on both sides of the body The paralysis is not confined to the voluntary muscles, but includes the muscle fibres of the blood-vessels and viscera Hence there is fall of blood-pressure, paralysis of sphincters, etc, immediately after the operation, but there is considerable recovery of involuntary muscles, as they are supplied by autonomic nerves, any voluntary control over the sphincters is, however, permanently lost

2 Loss of sensation in the same regions

3 Hyperæsthesia at the junction of the areas of normal and abnormal or lost sensation

4 Degeneration, ascending and descending, on both sides of the cord

Complete transverse section of the spinal cord may produce immediate death if the operation is performed sufficiently high in the cervical region, for the paralysed muscles will then include those of respiration The spinal cells from which the phrenic and other respiratory nerves originate are then cut off from the respiratory centre in the bulb above them, and the animal will die of

asphyxia One sees the same thing after severe injury to the upper cervical cord in man, as when he "breaks his neck" After such an injury, if the individual does not actually die from cessation of respiration, there is a period of shock (about three weeks) during which no reflexes can be obtained, but thereafter flexion withdrawal and later some tendon reflexes return The patient shows at this stage the reaction of a spinal animal

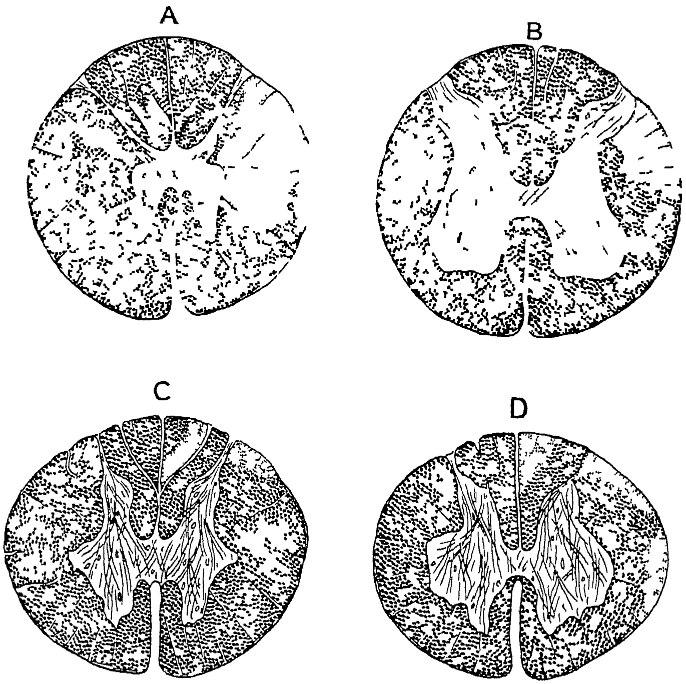


FIG 294 —The above diagrams are reproductions of photo micrographs from the spinal cord of a monkey, in which the operation of left hemisection had been performed some weeks previously (Mott) The sections were stained by Weigert s method, by which the grey matter is bleached, while the healthy white matter remains dark blue The degenerated tracts are also bleached A is a section of the cord in the thoracic region below the lesion, the crossed pyramidal tract is degenerated B is a section lower down (in the lumbar enlargement), the degenerated pyramidal tract is now smaller C is a section in the thoracic region some little distance above the lesion The degenerated tracts seen are in the outer part of Goll s column, and the direct cerebellar tract D is a section higher up in the cervical region, the degeneration in Goll s column now occupies a median position, the degenerations in the direct cerebellar tract and in the tract of Gowers are also well shown Notice that in all cases the main degenerated tracts are on the same side as the injury

Hemisection —If the operation performed is not a complete cutting of the spinal cord transversely, but a cutting across of half the cord, it is termed hemisection, or semi-section This leads to —

1 Loss of voluntary control of the muscles of the same side below the level of the section

2 Loss of sensation below the divided segment, approximately as follows (*a*) Loss of joint and muscle sense, of sense of vibration, and of tactile discrimination, on the *same* side as the section, (*b*) Loss of the senses of pain, heat, and cold on the side *opposite* to the section The reason for this peculiar distribution of sensory loss is the presence of an inferior and a superior sensory decussation, the former occurs within the cord as the decussation of the spino-thalamic fibres, the latter in the medulla as the decussation of the fillet

Results similar to those caused by hemisection in animals follow a unilateral lesion of the spinal cord in man, and constitute the syndrome of Brown-Séquard who first described them

3 Hyperæsthesia occurs commonly at the junction of the areas of normal and lost or abnormal sensation

4 Degeneration, ascending and descending, largely confined to the same side of the cord as the injury The most important of these are shown in the preceding diagrams (fig 294), the small text beneath which should be carefully studied

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE HYPOTHALAMIC REGION

Of recent years a great deal of attention has been directed towards the region of the brain which lies just below the thalamus and above the mid-brain and the region adjacent to the floor of the third ventricle, and evidence appears to be accumulating that this region plays an important part in the elemental reactions of the body It is claimed that from this region are controlled the important functions of the pituitary body in relation to sex It would also seem that in this region is the upper end of the autonomic nervous system, since it has been found that stimulation in this region may have the same effects as stimulation of the cervical sympathetic It has also been observed by Bard that if progressive sections through the brain are made, as soon as the hypothalamus is reached a remarkable condition of rage is produced, *e g* snarling, clawing, lashing of the tail, erection of the hairs, a rise of blood pressure and heart-rate, and dilatation of the pupil such as might be produced by the injection of adrenaline When the hypothalamus is removed these symptoms disappear

The region of the tuber cinereum is considered to be the heat-regulating centre, and to the region generally is ascribed the regulation of water content, sweating, fat and carbohydrate metabolism, while Hess has related the floor of the third ventricle to sleep (see Sleep) Much doubt, however, exists regarding many of the alleged functions of this region.

THE FUNCTION OF THE BASAL GANGLIA

The difficulty of removing the basal ganglia such as the caudate or lenticular nuclei (see fig 245), which are large masses of grey matter, has made it difficult to obtain information regarding their function Evidence has, however, accumulated to indicate that disease of the lenticular nucleus produces motor disturbance of the face resembling laughter, increased reflexes and muscle tone, and in the condition of paralysis agitans or shaking palsy, which is characterised by great tremor of the hands or head, degeneration of the corpus striatum has been found post-mortem It would seem, then, that the region of the basal ganglia probably controls some of the primitive movements

CHAPTER LV

SPEECH AND VOICE

Speech

THE discovery of a part of the cerebral cortex which was specially associated with speech was one of the first steps towards cerebral localisation The French physician Broca came to the conclusion that patients who died from cerebral hæmorrhage and who had, previous to death, lost the power of speech, had invariably

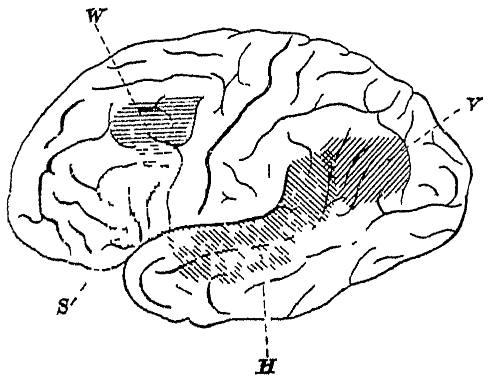


FIG 295 —Lateral view of the left cerebral hemisphere of man (after Donaldson) V is the cortical area, damage to which produces "word blindness", it is situated in the angular gyrus, and is called the *visual word centre* H is the area in the superior temporal convolution, called the *auditory word centre*, damage to which produces "word deafness" S is Broca's convolution, damage to which produces loss of audible speech (motor aphasia), just behind is the motor area for the movements of the tongue, vocal cords, etc, concerned in speaking, Bastian termed it the *glosso kinæsthetic area* The area W, called by Bastian the *cheiro kinæsthetic area*, is the corresponding region concerned in hand movements, damage to which abolishes the power of writing (agraphia)

hæmorrhage in the region of the pars triangularis of the inferior frontal convolution—marked B C and surrounded by a dotted line in fig 276 The most curious fact about this so-called speech centre is that it is situated only on the left side of the brain in right-handed persons

Subsequently, Marie and Moutier pointed out that loss of speech may occur with lesions of other parts of the brain and that the loss may be confined to certain parts of speech, thus, the individual may be unable to read aloud, to write to dictation and

the like, without any other part of speech being seriously affected Few will go so far as to suggest, as did Marie, that Broca's area has not a special relation to speech, indeed, there is overwhelming evidence that it has Head has gone to the other extreme, and has almost denied that it is possible to differentiate *aphasia, i e*, loss of speech, into isolated affections of speaking, writing, etc, due to destruction of visual, auditory, or motor images

The Formation of Speech.—Probably all these views may be reconciled when we consider how speech is evolved in the individual Speech in its wide sense may be considered the mode of interchange of ideas between oneself and one's fellow-creatures It may be looked upon as depending upon three distinct mechanisms

(1) **A receptor mechanism** which may involve any sensation, although normally hearing and seeing are utilised In close relationship to the cortical centre for these sensations are the association areas, in which memories of sensation appear to be stored Thus, in the second and third temporal convolutions are stored the names of objects and these are lost if this region becomes the seat of disease, *e g* abscess secondary to inflammation of the middle ear

(2) **Association Mechanism** —Our knowledge of this mechanism is, as yet, quite crude, and we cannot relate its facts in any detail to anatomical areas, but from a study of disease a large amount of interesting material has been collected

There is general agreement, however, that in right-handed persons the area concerned is on the *left* side of the brain, within a well-defined cortical region extending from the lower and posterior part of the frontal lobe, by the island of Reil, to the temporal and lower parietal and occipital region (Kinnier Wilson) Of this region, it is clear that the anterior part is concerned with expression, and the posterior part, or area of Wernicke, with reception

To each sensation is attached a certain significance according to the circumstance in which it is experienced If an idea has to be communicated, or a reply made, the impulse passes to that part of the association mechanism concerned with expression, where the proper means of expression is determined Broca's area (as its histological structure suggests) may be considered an association area in close relation to the vocal effector mechanism

(3) **An Effector Mechanism** —The message is then conveyed to the appropriate part of the motor cortex concerned with the vocal organs, but it may be, according to circumstances, the area for hand movements or any other part A nod of the head, or placing a finger to the mouth, may be even more significant than a spoken word It is, then, fairly easy to understand why it is that certain parts of the general speech mechanisms may become impaired, leaving other

parts normal Head does not consider that an aphasic individual is ever quite normal mentally, nor, indeed, can this be expected, unless the disease is limited to a small area of the motor cortex When we learn to speak, we learn to think and to form ideas by a similar mechanism, and we know how impaired the general mentality of a deaf person may be, simply because he has not the normal facility of communicating with his fellows

The effect of any given lesion on mentality will then depend on how the individual has acquired his knowledge If, for example, there is a lesion of the association fibres connecting the visual association area to the motor area for the vocal organs, not only will the individual be word-blind, *i e* unable to read aloud, but probably other associations and ideas, which depend on knowledge acquired by reading, will be affected, although he may reply quite well to verbal questions, and knowledge acquired by hearing may be unaffected

Voice Production

The fundamental tones of the voice are produced by the current of expired air causing the vibration of the vocal cords, two bands

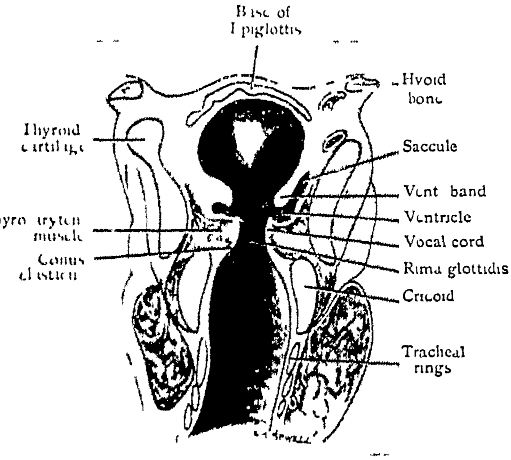


FIG 296 — A vertical section through the larynx It emphasises the fact that the vocal cords are not in reality cords but the apices of sharp folds Note the valvular appearance of the laryngeal folds The vocal cords prevent the entry of air into the chest, the ventricular bands hinder the exit of air (V E Negus)

contained in a cartilaginous box placed at the top of the windpipe or trachea This box is called the *larynx* The sounds produced here are modified by other parts such as the tongue, teeth, and lips, as will be explained later on

For a detailed description of the larynx reference should be

made to a text-book of Anatomy It is composed of the thyroid cartilage, the prominence in front of which constitutes Adam's apple, the cricoid cartilage and the two arytenoids, together with several minor cartilages These are all held together and to the neighbouring structures by fibrous tissue and muscle

Mucous Membrane —The larynx is lined with a mucous membrane continuous with that of the trachea, this is covered with ciliated epithelium except over the vocal cords and epiglottis, where it is stratified The vocal cords are bands of elastic tissue in this mucous membrane which run from before back They are continuous below with the conus elasticus, and are attached as stated above The chink between them is called the *rima glottidis* (see fig 296) Two ridges of mucous membrane above and parallel to these are called the *false vocal cords*, between the true and false vocal cord on each side is a recess called the *ventricle*

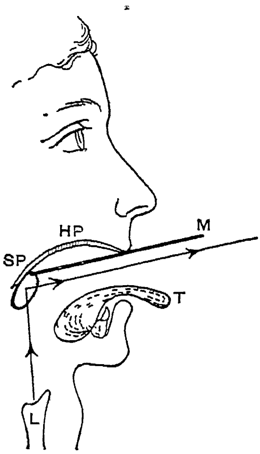


FIG 297 —Diagram to illustrate the method of observing the larynx The illumination may be from a forehead lamp or a lamp in the handle of the mirror L, larynx, T, tongue, HP, hard palate, SP, soft palate The arrows indicate a reflected beam of light from the larynx

The laryngoscope is an instrument employed in investigating during life the condition of the pharynx, larynx, and trachea It consists of a large concave mirror with perforated centre, and of a smaller mirror fixed in a long handle The patient is placed in a chair, a good electric light is arranged on one side of, and a little above, his head The operator fixes the large mirror to his head in such a manner that he looks through the central aperture with one eye He then seats himself opposite the patient, and so alters the position of the mirror, which is for this purpose provided with a ball-and-socket joint, that a beam of light is reflected on the lips of the patient.

The patient is now directed to throw his head slightly backwards, and to open his mouth, the reflection from the mirror lights up the cavity of the mouth, and by a little alteration of the distance between the operator and the patient the point at which the greatest amount of light is reflected by the mirror—in other words, its focal length—is readily discovered The small mirror fixed in the handle is then warmed, either by holding it over the lamp, or by putting it into a vessel of warm water, this is necessary to prevent the condensation of breath upon its surface The degree of heat is regulated by applying the back of the mirror to the hand or cheek, when it should feel warm without being painful

After these preliminaries the patient is directed to put out his tongue, which is held by the left hand gently but firmly against the lower teeth by means of a handkerchief The warm mirror is passed to the back of the mouth, until it rests upon and slightly raises the base of the uvula, and at the same time the light is directed upon it an inverted image of the larynx and trachea will be seen in the mirror If the dorsum of the tongue is alone seen, the handle of the mirror must be slightly lowered until the larynx comes into view, care should be taken, however, not to move the mirror upon the uvula, as it excites retching The observation should not be prolonged, but should rather be repeated at short intervals

The structures seen will vary, according to the condition of the parts, during inspiration, expiration, phonation, etc , they are (fig 298) first, and apparently at the posterior part, the *base of the tongue*, immediately below which is the arcuate outline of the *epiglottis*, with its cushion or tubercle Then are seen in the central line the *true vocal cords*, white and shining in their normal condition The cords approximate (in the inverted image) posteriorly, between them is left a chink, narrow whilst a high note is being sung, wide during a deep

inspiration On each side of the true vocal cords, and on a higher level, are the pink *false vocal cords* Still more externally than the false vocal cords is the *aryteno-epiglottidean* fold, in which are situated on each side two small elevations, of these the most external is the *cartilage of Wrisberg*, the inner is the *cartilage of Santorini* The *rings of the trachea*, and even the bifurcation of the trachea itself, if the patient be directed to draw a deep breath, may be seen in the interval between the true vocal cords

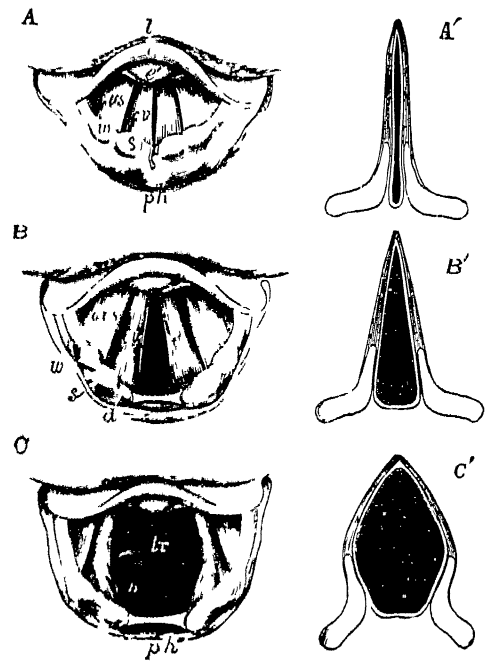


FIG 298 —Three laryngoscopic views of the superior aperture of the larynx a [illegible] A, the glottis during the emission of a high note in singing, B, in easy a[illegible] air, C, in the state of widest possible dilatation, as in inhaling a very deep [illegible] A′, B′, C′, show in horizontal sections of the glottis the position of the vocal cords and arytenoid cartilages in the three several states represented in the [illegible] In all the figures so far as marked, the letters indicate the parts as follows, viz *l*, the base of the tongue, *e*, the upper free part of the epiglottis, *e′*, the tubercle of the epiglottis, *ph*, part of the anterior wall of the pharynx behind the larynx, in the margin of the aryteno[illegible] swelling of the membrane caused by the cartilages of Wrisberg, *s*, that of [illegible] *a*, the tip or summit of the arytenoid cartilages, *c v*, the true vocal cords or lips of the rima glottidis, *c v s*, the superior or false vocal cords, between them the ventricle of the larynx, in C, *tr* is placed on the anterior wall of the receding trachea, and *b* indicates the commencement of the two bronchi beyond the bifurcation which may be brought into view in this state of extreme dilatation (Quain, after Czermak)

Movements of the Vocal Cords.

In Respiration —The position of the vocal cords in ordinary tranquil breathing is so adapted by the muscles, that the opening of the glottis is wide and triangular (fig 298, B) The glottis may remain unaltered during ordinary quiet breathing, though in some people it becomes a little wider at each inspiration, and a little

narrower at each expiration In the cadaveric position the glottis has about half the width it has during ordinary breathing, during life, therefore, except during vocalisation, the abductors of the vocal cords (posterior crico-arytenoids) are in constant action (F Semon) On making a rapid and deep inspiration the opening is widely dilated (fig 298, C), and somewhat lozenge-shaped

In Vocalisation—At the moment of the emission of a note the chink is narrowed, the margins of the arytenoid cartilages being brought into contact, and the edges of the vocal cords approximated and made parallel (fig 298, A), at the same time their elasticity is regulated by contraction of the thyro-arytenoid muscles As the pitch of the note increases it is probable that the degree of contraction —and with it the elasticity—of the thyro-arytenoid muscles becomes greater, and the range of a voice depends, in the main, on the extent to which the degree of elasticity of the vocal cords can be thus altered In the production of a high note the vocal cords are brought well within sight In the utterance of low-pitched tones, on the other hand, the epiglottis appears to be brought over them, and the arytenoid cartilages look as if they were trying to hide themselves under it (fig 299)

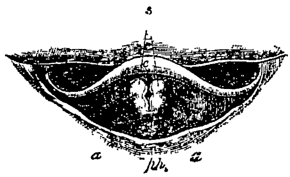


FIG 299 —View of the upper part of the larynx as seen by means of the laryngoscope during the utterance of a bass note *e*, Epiglottis, *s*, tubercles of the cartilages of Wrisberg, *a*, cartilages of Santorini, *z*, base of the tongue, *ph*, the posterior wall of the pharynx (Czermak)

The approximation of the vocal cords also usually corresponds with the height of the note produced, but the width of the aperture has no influence on the pitch of the note, as long as the vocal cords have the same tension, only with a wide aperture the tone is more difficult to produce and is less perfect, the rushing of the air through the aperture being heard at the same time

No true vocal sound is produced at the posterior part of the aperture of the glottis, namely, that which is formed by the space between the arytenoid cartilages (pars intercartilaginea)

The Voice.

The human musical instrument is often compared to a reed organ-pipe certainly the notes produced by such pipes in the *vox humana* stop of organs is very like the human voice Here there is not only the vibration of a column of air, but also of a reed, which corresponds to the vocal cords in the air-chamber composed of the trachea and the bronchial system beneath it The pharynx, mouth, and nasal cavities above the glottis are resonating cavities, which, by

alterations in their shape and size, are able to pick out and emphasise certain component parts of the sounds produced in the larynx The natural voice is often called the *chest voice* The *falsetto voice* is differently explained by different observers, on laryngoscopic examination, the glottis is found to be blown open, it is probable that only the inner fibres of the thyro-arytenoid muscle are in contraction

Musical sounds differ from one another in three ways —

1 *In pitch* —This depends on the rate of vibration, and in a string, the pitch increases with the tension, and diminishes with the length of the string The vocal cords of a woman are shorter than those of a man, hence the higher pitched voice of women The average length of the female cord is 11 5 millimetres, this can be stretched to 14, the male cord averages 15 5, and can be stretched to 19 5 millimetres

2 *In loudness* —This depends on the amplitude of the vibrations, and is increased by the force of the expiratory blast which sets the cords in motion

3 *In "timbre"*—This is the difference of character which distinguishes one voice, or one musical instrument, from another It is due to admixture of the primary vibrations with secondary vibrations or overtones The range of the voice is seldom, except in celebrated singers, more than two-and-a-half octaves, and for different voices this is in different parts of the musical scale

Records may now be taken of the voice with accuracy as in the making of gramophone records, but the magnification required is such that they do not lend themselves readily to reproduction here

Vocal Speech

Speech is due to the modification produced in the fundamental laryngeal notes, by the resonating cavities above the vocal cords By modifying the size and shape of the pharynx, mouth, and nose, certain overtones or harmonics are picked out and exaggerated this gives us the vowel sounds, the consonants are produced by interruptions, more or less complete, of the outflowing air in different situations When the larynx is passive, and the resonating cavities alone come into play, we get whispering

The pitch of the **Vowels** has been estimated musically, *u* has the lowest pitch, then *o*, *a* (as in father), (*a* as in cane), *i*, and *e* We may give a few examples of the shape of the resonating cavities in pronouncing vowel sounds, and producing their characteristic timbre when sounding *a* (in father) the mouth has the shape of a funnel wide in front, the tongue lies on the floor of the mouth, the lips are wide open, the soft palate is moderately and the larynx slightly raised

In pronouncing *u* (*oo*), the cavity of the mouth is shaped like a capacious flask with a short narrow neck The whole resonating cavity is then longest, the lips

being protruded as far as possible, the larynx is depressed and the root of the tongue approaches the fauces

In pronouncing *o*, the neck of the flask is shorter and wider, the lips being nearer the teeth, the larynx is slightly higher than in sounding *oo*

In pronouncing *e*, the flask is a small one with a long narrow neck The resonating chamber is then shortest as the larynx is raised as much as possible, and the mouth is bounded by the teeth, the lips being retracted, the approach of the tongue near the hard palate makes the long neck of the flask

The **Consonants** are produced by a more or less complete closure of certain doors on the course of the outgoing blast If the closure is complete, and the blast suddenly opens the door, the result is an *explosive*, if the door is partly closed, and the air rushes with a hiss through it, the result is an *aspirate*, if the door is nearly closed and its margins are thrown into vibration, the result is a *vibrative*, if the mouth is closed, and the sound has to find its way out through the nose, the result is a *resonant*

These doors are four in number, Brucke called them the *articulation positions* They are—

1 Between the lips
2 Between the tongue and hard palate
3 Between the tongue and soft palate
4 Between the vocal cords

The following table classifies the principal consonants according to this plan.—

Articulation position	Explosives	Aspirates	Vibratives	Resonants
1	B, P	F, V, W		M
2	T, D	S, Z, L, Sch, Th	R	N
3	K, G	J, Ch	Palatal R	Ng
4		H	R of lower Saxon	

The introduction of the phonograph has furnished us with an instrument which it is hoped in the future will enable us to state more accurately than has hitherto been possible, the meaning of the changes in nature and intensity of the complex vibrations which constitute speech

CHAPTER LVI

TASTE AND SMELL

Taste

CERTAIN anatomical facts must be studied first in connection with the tongue, the upper surface of which is concerned in the reception of taste stimuli

The tongue is a muscular organ covered by mucous membrane This membrane resembles other mucous membranes in essential points, but contains *papillæ*, peculiar to itself The tongue is also beset with mucous glands and lymphoid nodules

The lingual *papillæ* are thickly set over the anterior two-thirds of its upper surface, or *dorsum* (fig 300), and give to it its characteristic roughness Three principal varieties may be distinguished, namely, the (1) *circumvallate*, the (2) *fungiform*, and the (3) *conical and filiform* papillæ They are all formed by a projection of the corium of the mucous membrane, covered by stratified epithelium, they contain special branches of blood-vessels and nerves The corium in each kind is studded by microscopic papillæ

(1) *Circumvallate*—These papillæ (fig 301), eight or ten in number, are situate in a V-shaped line at the base of the tongue (1, 1, fig 300) They are circular elevations, from $\frac{1}{20}$th to $\frac{1}{12}$th of an inch wide (1 to 2 mm) each with a slight central depression, and surrounded by a circular moat, at the outside of which again is a slightly elevated ring or rampart, their walls contain taste-buds Into the moat that surrounds the central tower, a few little glands (*glands of Ebner*) open These glands form a thin, watery secretion

(2) *Fungiform*—The fungiform papillæ (3, fig 300) are scattered chiefly over the sides and tip, and sparingly over the middle of the dorsum, of the tongue, their name is derived from their being shaped like a puff-ball fungus (see fig 302)

(3) *Conical and Filiform*—These, which are the most abundant papillæ, are scattered over the whole upper surface of the tongue, but especially over the middle of the dorsum They vary in shape, some being conical (simple or compound) and others filiform, they are covered by a thick layer of epithelium, which is either arranged

over them, in an imbricated manner, or is prolonged from their surface in the form of fine stiff projections (fig 303) In carnivora they are developed into horny spines These papillæ have a mechanical and tactile function, rather than one of taste, the latter

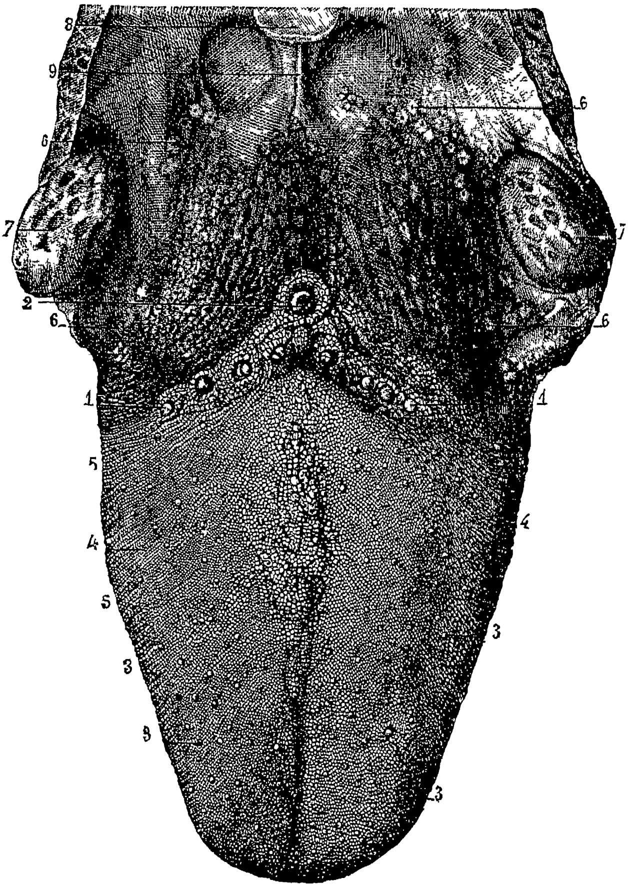


FIG 300 —Papillar surface of the tongue, with the fauces and tonsils [tonsillæ palatinæ] 1, 1, Circumvallate papillæ in front of 2, the foramen cæcum, 3, fungiform papillæ, 4, filiform and conical papillæ, 5, transverse and oblique rugæ, 6, mucous glands at the base of the tongue and in the fauces, 7, tonsils, 8, part of the epiglottis, 9, median glosso epiglottidean fold (frænum epiglottidis). (From Sappey)

sense is seated especially in the other two varieties of papillæ, the *circumvallate* and the *fungiform*

In the circumvallate papillae of the tongue of man peculiar structures known as *taste-buds* are found They are of an oval

shape, and consist of a number of closely packed, very narrow and fusiform, cells (*gustatory cells*) This central core of gustatory cells is enclosed in a single layer of broader fusiform cells (*encasing*

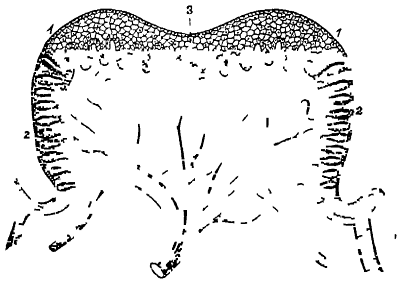


FIG 301 —Vertical section of a circumvallate papilla of the calf 1 and 3, Epithelial layers covering it, 2, taste buds, 4 and 4′, duct of Ebner's gland opening out into the pit in which the papilla is situated, 5 and 6, nerves ramifying within the papilla (Engelmann)

cells) The gustatory cells terminate in fine stiff spikes which project on the free surface (fig 304, *a*)

Taste-buds are also scattered over the posterior third of the tongue, the palate and the pharynx, as low as the posterior (laryngeal)

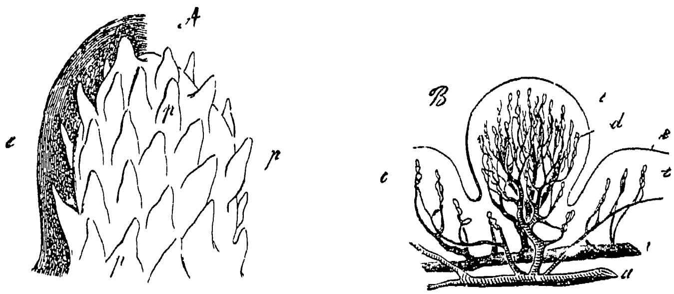


FIG 302 —Surface and section of the fungiform papillæ A The surface of a fungiform papilla, partially denuded of its epithelium, *p*, secondary papillæ, *e*, epithelium B Section of a fungiform papilla with the blood vessels injected, *a*, artery, *v*, vein, *c*, capillary loops of papillæ in the neighbouring structure of the tongue, *d*, capillary loops of the secondary papillæ, *e*, epithelium (From Kolliker, after Todd and Bowman)

surface of the epiglottis The gustatory cells in the interior of the taste-buds are surrounded by arborisations of nerve-fibres

The arrangement of papillæ, taste-buds, etc, varies a good deal in different animals The papilla foliata of the rabbit's tongue consists of a number of closely packed papillæ very similar to the circumvallate papillæ of man, this forms a convenient source for the histological demonstration of taste-buds

The middle of the dorsum of the tongue is but feebly endowed with the sense of taste, the tip and margins, and especially the posterior third of the dorsum (*i e*, in the region of the taste-buds), possess this faculty The anterior part of the tongue is supplied by the chorda tympani, which runs

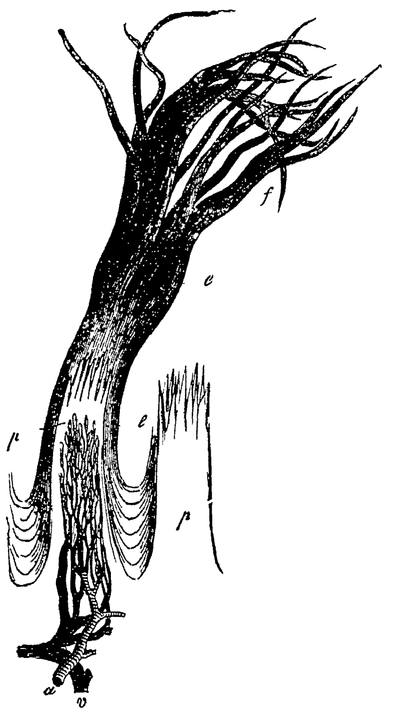


FIG 303 —Filiform papillæ, one with epithelium, the other without it —*p*, The substance of the papillæ dividing at their upper extremities into secondary papillæ, *a*, artery, and *v*, vein, dividing into capillary loops, *e*, epithelial covering laminated between the papillæ, but extended into hair like processes, *f*, from the extremities of the secondary papillæ (From Kölliker, after Todd and Bowman)

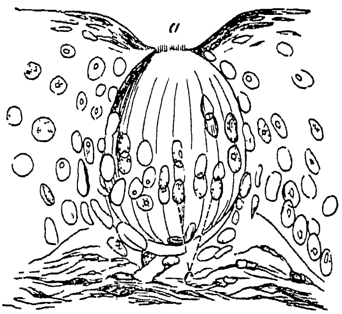


FIG 304 —Taste bud from dog s epiglottis (laryngeal surface near the base), precisely similar in structure to those found in the tongue *a*, Depression in epithelium over bud, below the letter are seen the fine hair like processes in which the cells terminate, *c*, two nuclei of the axial (gustatory) cells The more superficial nuclei belong to the superficial (encasing) cells, the converging lines indicate the fusiform shape of the encasing cells × 400 (Schofield)

with the lingual branch of the fifth nerve and the posterior third by the glosso-pharyngeal nerve The lingual nerve is the nerve of general sensation of the tongue The taste fibres from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue run in the lingual branch of the fifth nerve, leave it to enter the chorda tympani, and join the facial (seventh nerve) Their cells of origin lie in the geniculate ganglion of the facial The central axons go in the pars intermedia to end in the upper end of the nucleus solitarius The taste fibres from the posterior third of the tongue pass in the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, their parent cells are in the petrous ganglion and their central axons constitute the main part of the fasciculus solitarius The taste nuclei in the brain stem are interconnected, and relay fibres eventually reach the cerebrum in the region of the uncus

Tastes may be classified into—

1 Sweet 2 Bitter
3 Acid or Sour 4 Salt

Whether alkaline and metallic tastes are elementary is as yet undecided All the above affect to a varying extent the nerves of tactile sense as well as those of touch proper, sweet having the least, acids the most marked action upon the latter Sweet tastes are best appreciated by the tip, acid at the side, and bitter tastes at the back of the tongue

The substance to be tasted must be dissolved, here there is a striking contrast to the sense of smell, flavours are really odours In testing the sense of taste in a patient, the tongue should be protruded, and drops of the substance to be tasted applied with a camel's hair brush to the different parts, the subject of the experiment must signify his sensations by signs, for if he withdraws the tongue to speak, the material gets widely spread The more concentrated the solution, and the larger the surface acted on, the more intense is the taste, some tastes are perceived more rapidly than others, saline tastes the most rapidly of all The best temperature of the substance to be tasted is from 10° to 35° C Very high or very low temperatures deaden the sense

Individual papillæ, when thus treated with various solutions, show great diversity from some only one or two tastes can be evoked, from others all four The papillæ may also be stimulated electrically

Cocaine and gymnemic acid, prepared from the leaves of the plant Gymnema sylvestre, act deleteriously, chiefly on the bitter and sweet tastes, cocaine abolishes especially the bitter, gymnemic acid especially the sweet, leaving the salt and acid tastes almost untouched

It will thus be seen that there are many facts pointing to the conclusion that the varieties of gustatory, like those of cutaneous sensation, are due to the stimulation of different end-organs

When diluted sweet and salt solutions are simultaneously applied to the tongue, they tend to neutralise one another, but a true indifferent point is difficult or impossible to reach Sweet and bitter, sweet and acid liquids are antagonistic to a similar but less perfect extent Contrast-effects of one taste upon another are matters of common observation, but can be experimentally investigated only with difficulty

Smell

The entrance to the nasal cavity is lined with a mucous membrane closely resembling the skin The greater part of the rest of the cavity is lined with ciliated epithelium, the corium is thick and contains numerous mucous glands The olfactory region

in man is limited to a portion of the membrane covering the upper turbinal bone, and the adjacent portion of the nasal septum, it is only 245 square millimetres in area The cells in the epithelium here are of several kinds —first, columnar cells not ciliated (fig 305, *st*), with the broad end at the surface, and below tapering into an irregular branched process or processes, the terminations of which pass into the next layer the second kind of cell (fig 305, *r*) consists of a small cell body with large spherical nucleus, situated between the ends of the first kind of cell, and sending upwards a process to the surface between the cells of the first kind, and from the other pole of the nucleus a process towards the corium The latter process is very delicate, and may be varicose The upper process is prolonged beyond the surface, where it becomes stiff, and in some animals, such as the frog, is provided with hairs These cells, which are

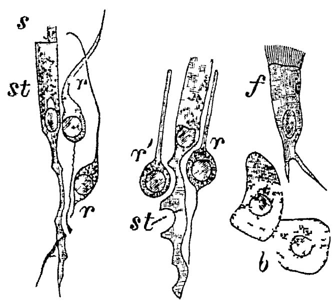


FIG 305 —Cells from the olfactory region of the rabbit *st*, Supporting cells, *r*, *r'*, olfactorial cells, *f*, ciliated cells, *s*, cilia like processes, *b*, cells from Bowman's glands (Stohr)

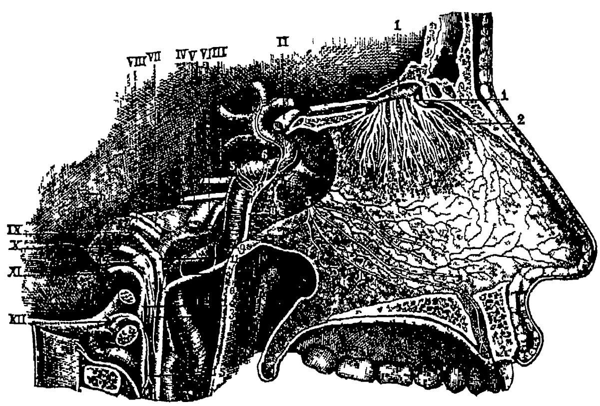


FIG 306 —Nerves of the septum nasi, seen from the right side ⅔ —I, the olfactory bulb, 1, the olfactory nerves passing through the foramina of the cribriform plate, and descending to be distributed on the septum, 2, the internal or septal twig of the naso ciliary branch of the ophthalmic nerve, 3, naso palatine nerves (From Sappey, after Hirschfeld and Leveillé)

called *olfactorial cells*, are numerous, and the nuclei of the cells not being on the same level, a comparatively thick nuclear layer is the result They are in reality bipolar nerve-cells In the corium are a number of serous glands called Bowman's glands They open upon the surface by fine ducts passing up between the epithelium cells

The distribution of the olfactory nerves which penetrate the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone and pass from this region to the olfactory bulb is shown in fig 306 The nerve-fibres are the central axons of the bipolar nerve-cells we have termed olfactorial, the columnar cells between these act as supports to them

The olfactory bulb has a more complicated structure, above there is first a continuation of the olfactory tract (white fibres enclosing neuroglia), below this four layers are distinguishable, they are shown in the accompanying diagram from Ramon y Cajal's work, the histological method used being Golgi's

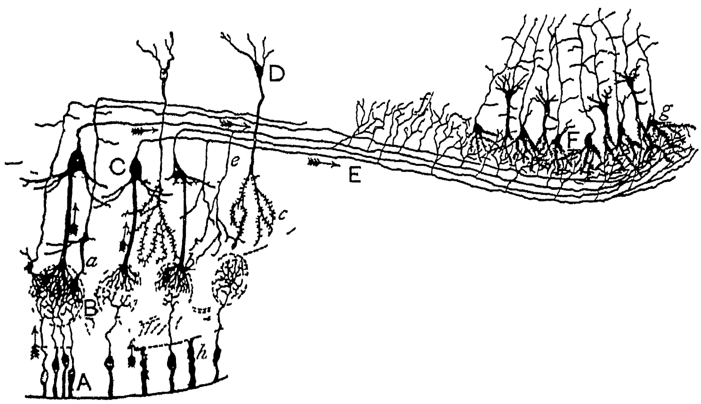


FIG 307 —Nervous mechanism of the olfactory apparatus A, bipolar cells of the olfactory apparatus (Max Schultze's olfactorial cells), B, olfactory glomeruli, C, mitral cells, D, granule of white layer, E, external root of the olfactory tract, F, grey matter of the sphenoidal region of the cortex, *a*, small cell of the mitral layer, *b*, basket of a glomerulus, *c*, spiny basket of a granule, *e*, collateral of the axis cylinder process of a mitral cell, *f*, collaterals terminating in the outer fibre layer of the olfactory cortex (archipallium), *g*, superficial triangular cells of the cortex, *h*, supporting epithelium cells of the olfactory mucous membrane (Ramon y Cajal)

(1) A layer of white fibres containing numerous small cells, or "*granules*" (D)

(2) A layer of large nerve-cells called "*mitral cells*" (C), with smaller cells (*a*) mixed with them The axons of the mitral cells pass up into the layer above and eventually become fibres of the olfactory tract E, which passes to the grey matter of the base of the brain F They give off numerous collaterals on the way (*e, f*)

(3) The layer of *olfactory glomeruli* (B) Each glomerulus is a basket-work of fibrils derived on the one hand from the terminal arborisations of the mitral cells, and on the other from similar arborisations of the non-medullated fibres which form the next layer

(4) *The layer of olfactory nerve-fibres*—These are non-medullated, they continue upwards the *bipolar olfactory cells*, which are placed among the epithelial cells of the mucous membrane

The fibres from the olfactory mucous membrane pass through the cribriform plate at the base of the skull to end round cells in the olfactory bulb, which in animals which depend on smell is very well developed A new relay arises here constituting the olfactory tract

The olfactory tract is an outgrowth of the brain, which is originally hollow, and remains so in many animals, in man the cavity is obliterated, and the centre is occupied by neuroglia outside this the white fibres lie, and a thin superficial layer of neuroglia covers these The two white "roots" of the olfactory tract have been traced to the uncinate gyrus and hippocampal regions of the same side of the brain, which is the portion experimentally found to be associated with the reception of olfactory impulses (see fig 276, p 623) From the cells of the grey matter here fibres pass by a complex path to the corresponding regions of the opposite side There is also a communication *via* the fornix and corpora mammillaria with the thalamus and tegmentum of the mid-brain

Animals may be divided into three classes —those which, like the porpoise, have no sense of smell (*anosmatic*), those which possess it in comparatively feeble degree (man, most primates, monotremes, and some cetacea), these are called *microsmatic* In man the thickness of the olfactory membrane is only 0 06 mm Most mammals are in contradistinction *macrosmatic*, the thickness of the membrane being 0 1 mm or more, and its area larger

The mucous membrane must be neither too dry nor too moist, if we have a cold we are unable to smell odours or appreciate flavours (which are really odours) When liquids are poured into the nose, their smell is imperceptible, as they damage the olfactory epithelium, owing to the difference of osmotic pressure But even if a "normal" saline solution of an odorous substance is substituted, the sense of smell is still lost so long as air-bubbles are carefully excluded from the nasal cavity It is therefore necessary that odorous substances should be in a gaseous state in order to act upon the olfactory nerve-endings, they are normally conveyed to the olfactory surface by the air currents passing through the nose

Generally, the odours of homologous series of compounds increase in intensity with increase of molecular weight, but bodies of very low molecular weight are odourless, while vapours of very high molecular weight, which escape and diffuse slowly, have little or no smell A slight change in chemical constitution may produce marked alteration in the character of the odour of a substance, certain modes of atomic grouping within the molecule appear to be more odoriferous than others Attempts have been made to discover the elementary sensations of smell, but hitherto with scant success Many odours have unquestionably a complex physiological effect For example, when

nitrobenzol is held before the nose, it yields first the smell of heliotrope, next the smell of bitter almonds, and finally the smell of benzene, just as if different end-organs became successively fatigued Some substances have a very different smell according to their concentration Chemical dissociation, too, unquestionably plays a prominent part

Nevertheless, there are certain observations which indicate the existence of primary sensations of smell First, some persons are congenitally insensible to one or more odours, but yet smell others quite normally Hydrocyanic acid, mignonette, violet, vanilla, benzoin, are substances which appear to certain people to have no smell Secondly, some odorous bodies, when simultaneously given, antagonise one another, others produce a mixed smell Thirdly, fatigue of the epithelium with one odour will modify or abolish the effect of some smells, but will leave that of others untouched

The delicacy of the sense of smell is most remarkable even in man Valentin calculated that even $\frac{8}{100,000,000}$ of a grain of musk can be distinctly smelled Solutions of camphor afford a good means of testing olfactory acuity Two tubes of camphor solution are presented to the subject along with two tubes of water, and the former pair is replaced with weaker and weaker solutions until it is indistinguishable from the tubes containing water Pungent substances, such as ammonia, are unsuited for olfactometrical experiment They stimulate the endings of the fifth (trigeminal) as well as those of the olfactory nerve

CHAPTER LVII

HEARING

Anatomy of the Ear

THE Organ of Hearing is divided into three parts, (1) the external, (2) the middle, and (3) the internal ear

External Ear —The external ear consists of the *pinna* and the *external auditory meatus* The central hollow of the former is named the *concha* The auditory meatus, with a slight arch directed upwards, passes inwards and a little forwards to the membrana tympani, to which it thus serves to convey the vibrating air

Middle Ear or **Tympanum** —The middle ear, or tympanum or drum (fig 308), is separated by the *membrana tympani* from the external auditory meatus It is a cavity, the only opening of which to the external air is through the Eustachian tube (E T, fig 308) The walls of the tympanum are osseous, except where apertures in them are closed with membrane, as at the *fenestra rotunda* and *fenestra ovalis*, and at the outer part where the bone is replaced by the membrana tympani Its cavity is lined with mucous membrane, which is continuous through the Eustachian tube with that of the pharynx A chain of small bones extends from the membrana tympani to the fenestra ovalis

The *membrana tympani* is placed in a slanting direction at the bottom of the external auditory canal, and consists of fibres, some running radially, some circularly, its margin is set in a bony groove, its outer surface is covered with a continuation of the cutaneous lining of the auditory canal, its inner surface with the mucous membrane of the tympanum

The *ossicles* are three in number, named malleus, incus, and stapes The malleus, or hammer-bone, has a long slightly-curved process, called its handle, which is inserted vertically between the layers of the membrana tympani The head of the malleus is irregularly rounded, its neck, or the line of boundary between the head and the handle, supports two processes a *short* conical one, and a *slender* one, *processus gracilis*, which extends forwards, and is attached to the wall of the cavity at the Glaserian fissure The *incus*, or anvil-bone, shaped like a bicuspid molar tooth, is articulated

by its broader part, corresponding with the surface of the crown of the tooth, to the malleus Of its two processes, one, directed backwards, has a free end attached by ligament to the wall, the other, curved downwards, longer and more pointed, articulates with the *stapes*, a little bone shaped like a stirrup, of which the base fits into the membrane of the fenestra ovalis

The muscles of the tympanum are two in number The *tensor tympani* arises from the cartilaginous end of the Eustachian tube

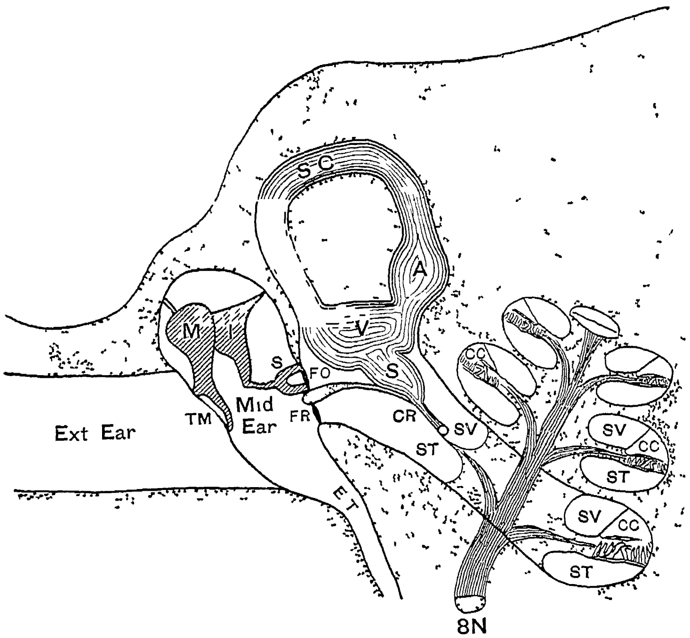


FIG 308 —Diagram of ear TM tympanic membrane, M, malleus, I, incus, S, stapes, SC, semicircular canal, FO, foramen ovale, FR, foramen rotundum, ET, Eustachian tube, A, ampulla, V, vestibule and utricle, S, saccule from which CR, the canal reuniens (cut across) connects with CC, the canal of the cochlea, SV, scala vestibuli, ST, scala tympani, 8 N, eighth nerve In constructing the diagram the various structures have been shown in one plane, but actually the cochlea lies anterior to the semi-circular canals The lengthening of the basilar membrane towards the apex of the cochlea is shown in the left side only

and the adjoining surface of the sphenoid, and from the sides of the canal in which the muscle lies, the tendon of the muscle bends at nearly a right angle over the end of the processus cochleariformis and is inserted into the inner part of the handle of the malleus The *stapedius* is concealed within a canal in the bone in front of the aqueductus Fallopii Its tendon is inserted into the neck of the stapes posteriorly

The Internal Ear —The proper organ of hearing is formed by the distribution of the auditory nerve, within the internal ear, or *laby-*

rinth, a set of cavities within the petrous portion of the temporal bone The bone which forms the walls of these cavities is denser than that around it, and forms the *osseous labyrinth,* the membrane within the cavities forms the *membranous labyrinth* The membranous labyrinth contains a fluid called *endolymph,* while outside it, between it and the osseous labyrinth, is a fluid called *perilymph* This fluid is not pure lymph, as it contains mucin

The **osseous labyrinth** consists of three principal parts, namely, the *vestibule,* the *cochlea,* and the *semicircular canals*

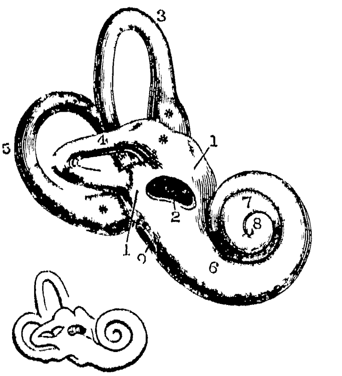


FIG 309 —Right bony labyrinth, viewed from the outer side The specimen here represented is prepared by separating piecemeal the looser substance of [illegible] the dense [illegible] close the [illegible] 1 [illegible] 2, fen[illegible] [illegible]micircular canal, 4, horizontal or external canal, 5, posterior canal, *, ampulla of the semicircular canals, 6, first turn of the cochlea, 7, second turn, 8, apex, 9, fenestra rotunda The smaller figure in outline below shows the natural size $\frac{2\frac{1}{2}}{1}$ (Sommering)

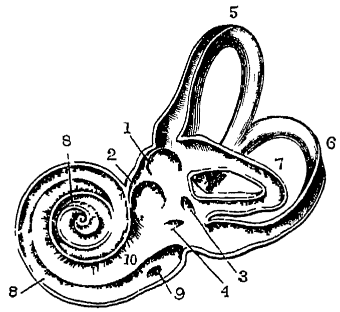


FIG 310 —View of the interior of the left labyrinth The bony wall of the labyrinth is removed superiorly and externally 1, Recessus ellipticus, 2, Recessus sphæricus, 3, common opening of the superior and posterior semicircular canals, 4, opening of the aqueduct of the vestibule, 5, the superior, 6, the posterior, and 7, the external semicircular canals, 8, spiral tube of the cochlea (scala tympani), 9, opening of the aqueduct of the cochlea, 10, placed on the lamina spiralis in the scala vestibuli $\frac{2\frac{1}{2}}{1}$ (Sommering)

The *vestibule* is the middle cavity of the labyrinth, and the central chamber of the auditory apparatus It presents, in its inner wall, several openings for the entrance of the divisions of the auditory nerve, in its outer wall, the *fenestra ovalis* (2, fig 309), an opening filled by membrane, in which is inserted the base of the stapes, in its posterior and superior walls, five openings by which the *semicircular canals* communicate with it in its anterior wall an opening leading into the *cochlea* The *semicircular canals* have already been described in relation to Posture

The **membranous labyrinth** corresponds in general form with the osseous labyrinth The vestibule contains two membranous sacs, named the *utricle* and the *saccule* (fig 311), the utricle com-

municates with the three membranous semicircular canals, the saccule communicates with the utricle and with the *canal of the cochlea* The vestibular division of the auditory nerve is distributed to the five spots shown in the diagram, namely, the maculæ of utricle and saccule, and the cristæ of the semicircular canals The cochlear division of the auditory nerve is distributed to the whole length of the canal of the cochlea

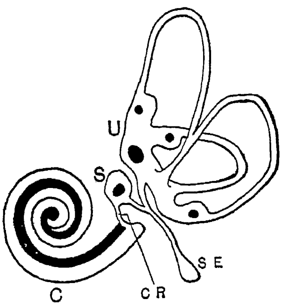


FIG 311 —Diagram of the left membranous labyrinth U, utricle, into which the three semicircular canals open, S, saccule, communicating with the cochlea (C) by C R, the canalis reuniens, and with the utricle by a canal having on it an enlargement, the saccus endolymphaticus (S E) The black shading represents the places of termination of the auditory nerve, namely, in the maculæ of the utricle and saccule, the cristæ in the ampullary ends of the three semicircular canals, and in the whole length of the canal of the cochlea (After Schafer)

The Cochlea —This is shaped like a snail's shell It is traversed by a central column or *modiolus,* around which a spiral canal winds with two and a half turns from base to apex It is seen in vertical section that this canal is divided partly by bone (the *spiral lamina*), partly by membrane (the *basilar membrane*), into two spiral staircases or scalæ, the *scala tympani* and *scala vestibuli* (fig 312) The scala vestibuli is separated from the tympanum by the membrane of the fenestra ovalis, and the scala tympani is similarly separated from the tympanum by the membrane of the fenestra rotunda Both scalæ are filled with perilymph The basilar membrane increases in breadth from the base towards the apex of the cochlea It contains fibres (about 24,000 in all) embedded in a homogeneous matrix and running radially, from the spiral lamina to the *spiral ligament,* where its other end is again attached to the bone At the apex of the cochlea, the lamina ends in a small *hamulus,* the inner and concave part of which being detached from the summit of the modiolus, leaves a small aperture named the *helicotrema,* by which the two scalæ, separated in all the rest of their length, communicate (fig 316)

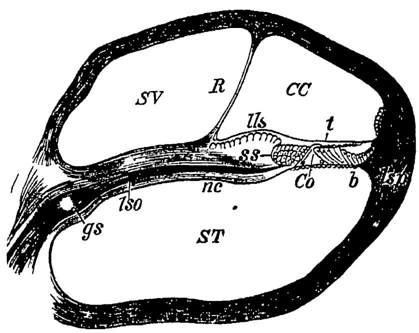


FIG 312 —Section through one of the coils of the cochlea (diagrammatic) *ST*, scala tympani, *SV*, scala vestibuli, *CC*, canalis cochleæ, *R*, membrane of Reissner, *lso*, lamina spiralis ossea, *lls*, limbus laminæ spiralis, *ss*, sulcus spiralis, *nc*, cochlear nerve, *gs*, ganglion spirale, *t*, membrana tectoria (below the membrana tectoria is the lamina reticularis), *b*, membrana basilaris, *Co*, rods of Corti, *lsp*, ligamentum spirale (Quain.)

Besides the scala vestibuli and scala tympani, there is a third space between them, called *scala media* or *canal of the cochlea* (*CC*, fig 312) In section it is triangular, its external wall being formed by the wall of the cochlea, its upper wall (separating it from the scala vestibuli) by the membrane of Reissner, and its lower wall (separating it from the scala tympani) by the basilar membrane, these two meet at the outer edge of the bony lamina spiralis Following the turns of the cochlea to its apex, the scala media there terminates blindly, at the base of the cochlea a narrow passage (canalis reuniens) unites it with the saccule The scala media (like the rest of the membranous labyrinth) contains *endolymph*

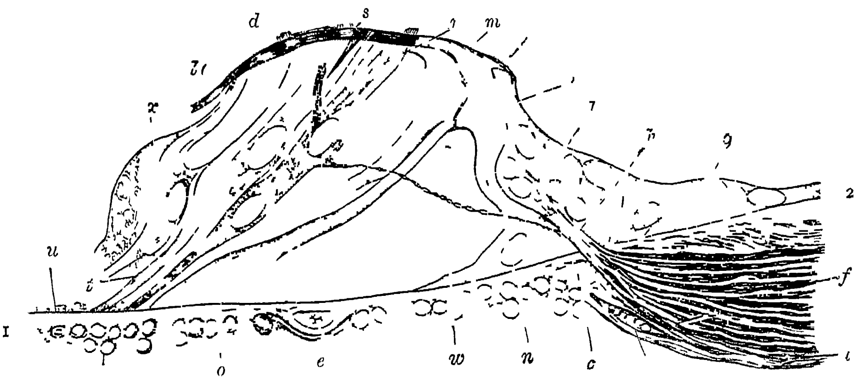


FIG 313 —Vertical section of the organ of Corti from the dog 1 to 2, Homogeneous layer of the membrana basilaris, *u*, vestibular layer, *v*, tympanal layer, with nuclei and protoplasm, *a*, prolongation of tympanal periosteum of lamina spiralis ossea, *c*, thickened commencement of the membrana basilaris near the point of perforation of the nerves *h*, *d*, blood vessel (vas spirale), *e*, blood vessel, *f*, nerves, *g*, the epithelium of the sulcus spiralis internus, *i*, internal hair cell, with basal process *k*, surrounded with nuclei and protoplasm (of the granular layer), into which the nerve fibres radiate, *l*, hairs of the internal hair cell, *n*, base or foot of inner pillar of organ of Corti, *m*, head of the same uniting with the corresponding part of an external pillar, whose under half is missing, while the next pillar beyond, *o*, presents both middle portion and base, *r*, *s*, *p*, three external hair cells, *t*, bases of two neighbouring hair or tufted cells, *x*, supporting cell of Deiters, *w*, nerve fibre arborising round the first of the external hair cells, *l l* to *l*, lamina reticularis × 800 (Waldeyer)

Organ of Corti—On the basilar membrane are arranged cells of various shapes About midway between the outer edge of the lamina spiralis and the outer wall of the cochlea are situated the *rods of Corti* Viewed sideways, they are seen to consist of an external and internal pillar, each rising from an expanded foot or *base* attached to the basilar membrane (*o*, *n*, fig 313) They slant inwards towards each other, and each ends in a swelling termed the *head*, the head of the inner pillar overlies that of the outer Each pair of pillars forms a pointed roof arching over a space, and by a succession of them a tunnel is formed

The pillars in proceeding from the base of the cochlea towards its apex progressively increase in length, and become more oblique,

in other words, the tunnel becomes wider, but diminishes in height as we approach the apex of the cochlea Leaning against the rods of Corti are certain other cells called *hair-cells*, which terminate in small hair-like processes There are several rows of these on the outer and one row on the inner side Between them are certain supporting cells called *cells of Deiters* (fig 313, *a*) This structure rests upon the basilar membrane, it is roofed in by a fenestrated membrane or lamina reticularis into the fenestræ of which the tops of the various rods and cells are received When viewed from above, the organ of Corti shows a remarkable resemblance to the keyboard of a piano The top of the organ is roofed by the *membrana*

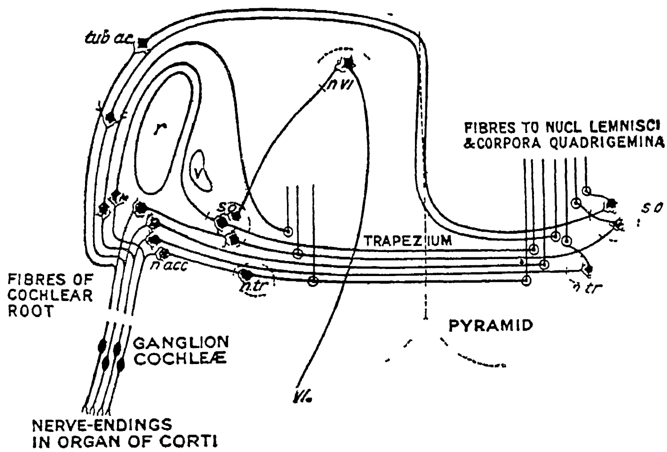


FIG 314 —Cochlear division of the auditory nerve *r*, Restiform body, *V*, descending root of the fifth nerve, *tub ac*, acoustic tubercle, *n acc*, accessory nucleus, *s o*, superior olive, *n tr*, trapezoid nucleus, *n VI*, nucleus of the sixth nerve, *VI*, issuing fibre of sixth nerve (Schafer)

tectoria (fig 312, *t*) which extends from the end of the limbus (*lls*, fig 312), a connective-tissue structure on the spiral lamina The *spiral ganglion* from which the cochlear nerve-fibres originate is situated in the spiral lamina

The fibres of the cochlear nerve take origin from the bipolar nerve-cells of the spiral ganglion of the cochlea, the peripheral axons ramify among the hair-cells of the organ of Corti, and the central axons pass towards the pons, as they enter they bifurcate, and some pass to and arborise round a collection of nerve-cells situated between the two roots and the restiform body, called the *accessory auditory nucleus*, the remaining fibres terminate similarly in a collection of cells in the grey matter overlying the restiform body, and extending into the ventricular floor in its widest part This is called the ganglion of the root, and the mass of grey

matter is termed the *acoustic tubercle* The auditory path is continued by new axons that arise from these cells Those from the accessory nucleus enter the trapezium, and pass in it partly to the superior olive and trapezoid nucleus of the same side, but mainly to the corresponding nuclei of the opposite side, some fibres end here, others traverse the nuclei, and merely give off collaterals to them, they then turn upwards in the lateral fillet, and so reach the inferior C quadrigemina The fibres which arise in the acoustic tubercle pass superficially over the floor of the ventricle, forming the *striæ acousticæ,* having crossed the raphe, they join the fibres from the accessory nucleus in their course to the superior olive and fillet Here again, however, a few fibres pass to the fillet of the same side Fibres from the superior olive reach the nucleus of the sixth nerve and through the posterior longitudinal bundle the third and fourth nerve nuclei Their presence partly explains movements of the eye in response to a sound The lateral fillet communicates with the inferior corpus quadrigeminum and the internal geniculate body From the latter the auditory radiation is distributed to the cortex of the temporal lobe, especially the transverse temporal gyri which lie on the upper surface of the superior temporal gyrus concealed within the posterior limb of the fissure of Sylvius

Physiology of Hearing

Sounds are caused by vibrations, when a piano-string is struck, it is thrown into a series of rapid regular vibrations, the more rapidly the vibrations occur the higher is the *pitch* of the musical note, the greater the amplitude of the vibration, the louder or more intense is the tone, if the vibrations are regular and simple (pendular), the tone is pure, if they are regular but compound, the tone is impure, and its quality or *timbre* is dependent on the rate and amplitude of the simple vibrations of which the compound vibrations are composed The vibrations are transmitted as waves, and ultimately affect the hair-cells at the extremities of the auditory nerve in the cochlea In the external ear the vibrations travel through air, in the middle ear through solid structures—membranes and bones, and in the internal ear through fluid

This is the normal way in which the vibrations pass, but the endolymph may be affected in other ways, for instance through the other bones of the head, one can, for example, hear the ticking of one's watch when it is placed between the teeth, even when the ears are stopped From this fact is derived a valuable practical method of distinguishing in a deaf person what part of the organ of hearing is at fault The patient may not be able to hear a watch or a tuning-fork when it is held close to the ear, but if he can hear it when it is placed between his teeth, or on his forehead, the malady is localised in either the external or middle ear, if he can hear it in neither situation, it is a much more serious case, for then the internal ear or the nervous mechanism of hearing is at fault In disease of the middle ear the hearing of low tones is especially affected, high tones appear to be transmissible by bone-conduction more readily than low

In connection with the *external ear* there is not much more to be said, the pinna in many animals is large and acts as a kind of natural ear-trumpet to collect the vibrations of the air, in man this function is to a very great extent lost, and though there are muscles present to move it into appropriate postures, they are not under the control of the will in the majority of people, and are functionless, ancestral vestiges

The Membrana Tympani —This membrane, unlike that of ordinary drums, can take up and vibrate in response to an immense range of tones differing from each other by many octaves This would clearly be impossible if it were an evenly stretched membrane It is not evenly nor very tightly stretched, but owing to its attachment to the chain of ossicles it is slightly funnel-shaped the ossicles also damp the continuance of the vibrations

When the membrane gets too tightly stretched, by increase or decrease of the pressure of the air in the tympanum, then the sense of hearing is dulled The pressure in the tympanic cavity is kept the same as that of the atmosphere by the *Eustachian tube,* which leads from the cavity to the pharynx, and so to the external air The Eustachian tube is not, however, always open, it is opened by the action of the *tensor palati* during swallowing When the tube is closed—this often happens owing to swelling of the mucous membrane in inflammation of the throat—an interchange of gases takes place between the imprisoned air and the blood of the tympanic vessels In time, as in the aerotonometer, equilibrium is established and the tension of the imprisoned gases becomes equal to that of the blood gases, not to that of the atmosphere The membrane is therefore cupped inwards by the atmospheric pressure on its exterior, it is by this increased tightening of the membrane that deafness is produced There is also an accumulation of mucus When one makes a violent expiration, as in sneezing, some air is often forced through the Eustachian tube into the tympanum The ears feel as though they were bulged out, as indeed the membrana tympani is, and there is again partial deafness, which sensations are at once relieved by swallowing, so as to open the Eustachian tube and thus re-establish equality of pressure

The ossicles communicate the vibrations of the membrana tympani to the membrane which closes the fenestra ovalis (to which the foot of the stapes is attached) Thus the vibrations are communicated to the fluid of the internal ear, which is situated on the other side of the oval window

The handle of the malleus vibrates with the membrana tympani, and the vibrations of the whole chain take place round the *axis of rotation* AB (fig 315) Every time C comes forwards D comes forwards, but by drawing perpendiculars from C and D to the axis of rotation, it is found that D is about $\frac{2}{3}$ of the distance from the axis

that C is So in the transmission of the vibrations from membrane to membrane across the bony chain, the amplitude of the vibration is decreased by about $\frac{1}{3}$, and the force is correspondingly increased This increase of power is augmented by the fact that the tympanic membrane concentrates its power upon an area (the membrane of the oval window) only one-twentieth of its size The final movement of the stapes is, however, always very small, it varies from $\frac{1}{15}$ to less than $\frac{1}{10000}$ of a millimetre

In one direction the ossicles move as if they were one The advantage of their being several is that movements which move the membrane outwards do not move the incus The increase of pressure on the inner side of the tympanic membrane caused therefore by blowing the nose is not communicated to the cochlea

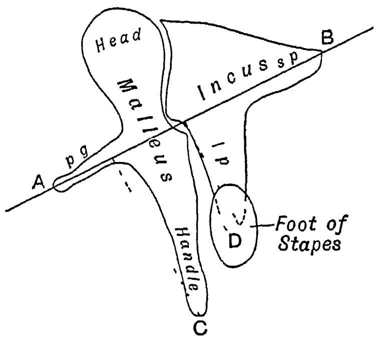


FIG 315 —Diagrammatic view of ear ossicles

The action of the *tensor tympani*, by pulling in the handle of the malleus, increases the tension of the membrana tympani It is supplied by the fifth (trigeminal) nerve It is opposed by the strong external ligament of the malleus The *stapedius* attached to the neck of the stapes tilts it backwards and diminishes the intra-tympanic air-pressure It is supplied by the seventh (facial) nerve

The next very simple diagram (fig 316) will explain the use of the *fenestra rotunda*

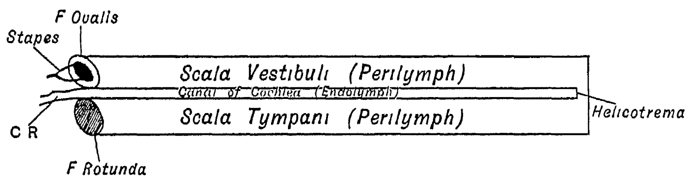


FIG 316 —Diagram to illustrate the use of the fenestra rotunda The intervention of the vestibular perilymph between the f ovalis and the scala vestibuli is not shown

The cochlea is supposed to be uncoiled, the scala vestibuli leads from the vestibule, in which is situated the fenestra ovalis, to the other side of which the stapes is attached, the scala tympani leads to the fenestra rotunda, the two scalæ communicate at the helicotrema, and are separated from the canal of the cochlea by the basilar membrane, and the membrane of Reissner C R is the canalis reuniens leading to the saccule The cochlea is filled with incompressible fluid in an inexpansible bony case, except

where the windows are closed by membranes. Hence every time the membrane of the oval window is bulged in by the stirrup, the membrane of the round window is simultaneously bulged out to the same extent, and *vice versa*. These changes of pressure are transmitted from one scala to the other directly through the cochlear canal, which is set into vibration, and through the helicotrema.

The range of hearing extends over 10 or 11 octaves, the lowest audible tone having about 20, the highest about 25,000, vibrations per second. The range varies in different people, and diminishes from childhood onwards. The upper limit of hearing may be tested by minute tuning-forks, metal rods, or by Galton's whistle. Many animals appear to be able to detect high tones which lie beyond the human limit. The lower limit may be determined by very large tuning-forks, or by employing very low difference-tones.

Difference-tones are produced when two tones of different pitch, *m* and *n*, are sounded together. A tone having the pitch *m* minus *n* is then heard in addition to the tones *m* and *n*; also a summation tone of pitch *m* plus *n* may be heard, but with greater difficulty. When *m* and *n* are nearly equal, a beating tone, instead of a difference-tone, results, having a pitch somewhere intermediate between *m* and *n*. If the difference between *m* and *n* is exceedingly small, this beating-tone alone is heard. The frequency of the beats corresponds to the difference in vibration-rates, *m* and *n*. Under certain conditions the difference and summation-tones (which are collectively called combination-tones) exist in the air; their presence is demonstrable by their reinforcement before appropriate resonators. More generally, however, they appear to be produced within the ear, *i.e.*, they have merely a subjective origin. The smallest perceptible difference in pitch between two successive tones is about 0.2 vibrations in the middle region of the piano for trained subjects. Practice effects extraordinary improvement, even among the most unmusical.

The Analysis of Sound

It is now generally agreed that the appreciation of sound depends on the basilar membrane. This membrane, as we have seen, separates the scala tympani from the canal of the cochlea and it is evident that it may be caused to vibrate by pressure waves set up in the perilymph of the scala tympani. The wave movements of the perilymph are made possible by the flexibility of the membrane closing the foramen rotundum. There has, however, been different opinions how and where the analysis of the sound takes place. It has been suggested (Rutherford and Wrightson) that the basilar membrane vibrates like a telephone receiver and impulses are set up which are conveyed to the brain as by telephone, the actual

analysis taking place in the brain This appears unlikely, as, on one hand, we know of no cerebral mechanism by which such an analysis would take place and it has been calculated that the nerve could not carry the required number of impulses because of its refractory period Moreover, it would not seem necessary to have such an elaborate structure as the cochlea for such a function It has also been suggested (Waller-Ewald) that the basilar membrane itself might analyse such wave patterns according to the different parts thrown into motion This avoids the difficulties suggested in relation to the Rutherford hypothesis, but like the latter cannot explain the loss of the power to recognise certain groups of notes when the membrane is injured in certain parts

The view which is now most generally accepted is that originally put forward by Helmholtz that the different parts of the basilar membrane can vibrate in resonance with a particular wave to which it is, as it were, tuned, just as a wire of a piano can be made to sound if a note of suitable pitch is struck on another instrument

Helmholtz's view is based on the fact that the fibres of the basilar membrane vary appreciably in length, its longest fibres at the apex of the cochlea being more than three times the length of those at the base, while the structures attached to the upper part of membrane have probably more than ten times the mass of those attached below Between the structures are intermediate The long fibres vibrate to notes of 40 vibrations per second only, while the short fibres vibrate to those of 4000 per second Support to this view is given by the result of damage to the cochlea Animals in which conditioned reflexes have been established to low notes lose these reflexes if the apex is removed Boilermakers who become deaf to high notes show degeneration of the base of the cochlea, and similarly it is claimed that prolonged subjection of an animal to a certain sound leads to a corresponding cochlear degeneration It has further been found possible to make a model which will respond in a way similar to that suggested for the cochlea

It may be considered that the vibration of the basilar membrane causes a movement of the hair cells which rest upon it The actual stimulation probably takes place as a result of the contact of the hair cells with the tectorial membrane which rests upon them In these cells are the endings of the auditory nerve which convey the impulses to the brain where their significance is appreciated It is not, however, to be imagined that only one fibre of the basilar membrane vibrates at a time, rather we must presume that banks of fibres vibrate in harmony with the tones and overtones which stimulate the membrane

emotion overflows the lower lid in the form of tears The secretory nerves are contained in the lachrymal and temporo-malar branches of the fifth nerve, and in the cervical sympathetic

The Eyeball

The eyeball (fig 317) consists of the following structures —

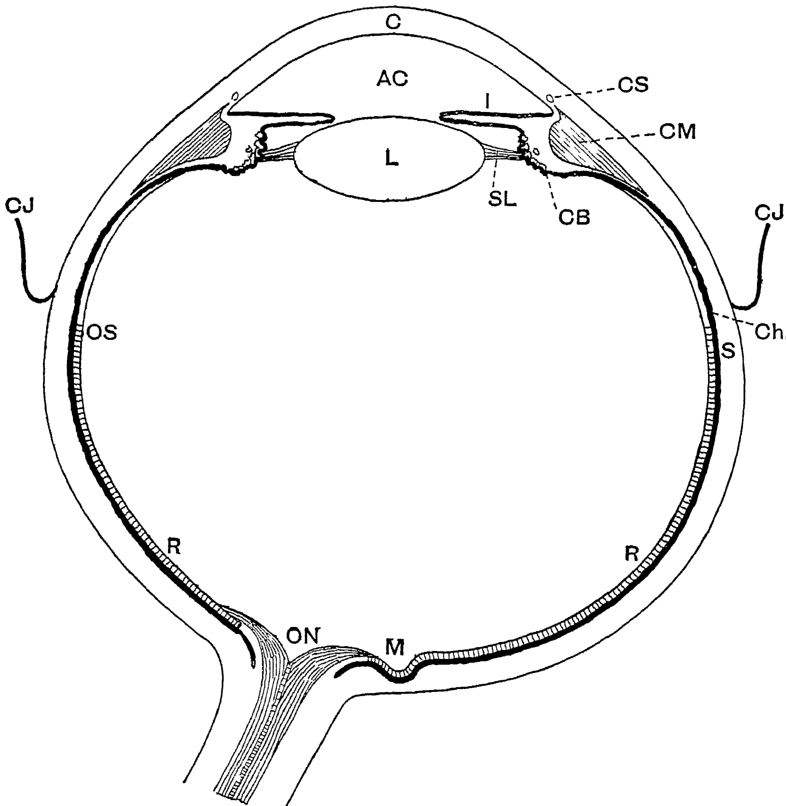


FIG 317 —Diagram of eye C, cornea, AC, anterior chamber, I, iris, L, lens, CS, canal of Schlemm, CM, ciliary muscle, SL, suspensory ligament, CB, ciliary body, CJ, conjunctiva, Ch, choroid, S, sclerotic, R, retina, M, macula, ON, optic nerve, OS, ora serrata

The *Sclera* or *Sclerotic*, the outermost coat, is made of white fibrous tissue and envelops about five-sixths of the eyeball continuous with it, in front, and occupying the remaining sixth is the transparent *cornea* (fig 318) Immediately within the sclerotic is the *choroid* coat, and within the choroid is the *retina* The interior of the eyeball

is filled by the *aqueous* and *vitreous humours* and the *crystalline lens*, but, also, there is suspended in the interior a contractile and perforated curtain, the *iris*, which is continuous with the choroid, it regulates the admission of light, at the junction of the sclera and cornea is the ciliary muscle, the function of which is to adapt the eye for seeing objects at various distances

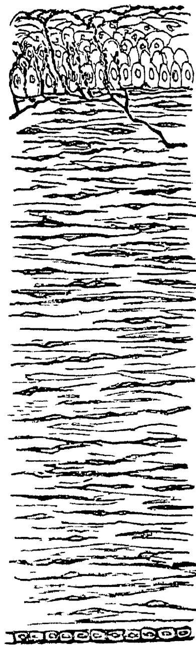


FIG 318 —Vertical section of rabbit's cornea, stained with gold chloride *e*, Stratified anterior epithelium Immediately beneath this is the anterior elastic lamina of Bowman *n*, Nerves forming a delicate sub epithelial plexus, and sending up fine twigs between the epithelial cells to end in a second plexus on the free surface, *d*, Descemet's membrane [lamina elastica posterior], consisting of a fine elastic layer, covered by a layer of cubical epithelium, the substance of the cornea, *f*, is seen to be fibrillated, and contains many layers of branched corpuscles, arranged parallel to the free surface, and here seen edgewise (Schofield)

The Choroid Coat is the vascular coat of the eyeball, and its connective tissue contains abundance of branched pigment cells It is separated from the retina by a fine elastic membrane (*membrane of Bruch*)

The choroid coat ends in front in what are called the *ciliary processes* (figs 319, 320) These consist of from 70 to 80 meridionally arranged radiating plaits, made up of blood-vessels, fibrous connective tissue, and pigment corpuscles They are lined by a continuation of the membrane of Bruch The ciliary processes terminate at the margin of the lens The *ciliary muscle* (13, 14, and 15, fig 319) takes origin at the corneo-scleral junction It is a ring of muscle, 3 mm broad and 8 mm thick, made up of fibres running in three directions (*a*) Meridional fibres near the sclera and passing to the choroid, (*b*) radial fibres inserted into the choroid behind the ciliary processes, and (*c*) circular fibres (muscle of Muller), more internal, they constitute a sphincter

The Iris is a continuation of the choroid inwards beyond the ciliary processes It is a fibro-muscular membrane perforated by a central aperture, the pupil Posteriorly is a layer of pigment cells (*uvea*), which is a continuation forwards of the pigment layer of the retina The iris proper is made of connective tissue in front with corpuscles which may or may not be pigmented, and behind of similar tissue supporting blood-vessels The pigment cells are usually well developed here, as are also many nerve-fibres radiating towards the pupil Surrounding the pupil is a layer of circular unstriped muscle,

the *sphincter pupillæ* In some animals there are also muscle-fibres which radiate from the sphincter in the substance of the iris forming

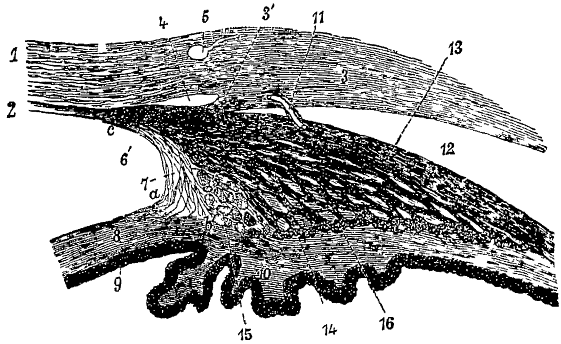


FIG 319 —Section through the eye carried through the ciliary processes 1, Cornea, 2, membrane of Descemet, 3, sclera, 3′, corneo scleral junction, 4, canal of Schlemm, 5, vein, 6, nucleated net work on inner wall of canal of Schlemm, 7, lig pectinatum iridis, *a b c*, 8, iris, 9, pigment of iris (uvea), 10, ciliary processes, 11, ciliary muscle, 12, choroid tissue, 13, meridional, and 14, radiating fibres of ciliary muscle, 15, ring muscle of Muller, 16, circular or angular bundles of ciliary muscle (Schwalbe)

the *dilator pupillæ* The iris is covered anteriorly by a layer of epithelium continued upon it from the posterior surface of the cornea

The Lens is situated behind the iris, being enclosed in a distinct capsule, the posterior layer of which is not so thick as the anterior

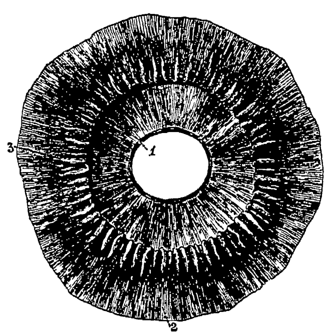


FIG 320 —Ciliary processes, as seen from behind 1, Posterior surface of the iris, with the sphincter muscle of the pupil, 2, anterior part of the choroid coat, 3, one of the ciliary processes, of which about seventy are represented.

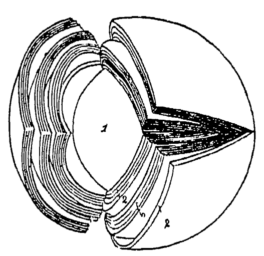


FIG 321 —Laminated structure of the crystalline lens The laminæ are split up after hardening in alcohol 1, The denser central part or nucleus, 2, the succes sive external layers (Arnold)

It is supported in place by the suspensory ligament, fused to the anterior surface of the capsule The suspensory ligament is derived from the hyaloid membrane, which encloses the vitreous humour

The lens is made up of a series of concentric laminæ (fig 321), which, when it has been hardened, can be peeled off like the coats of an onion The laminæ consist of long ribbon-shaped fibres, which in the course of development have originated from cells The fibres are united together by a scanty amount of cement substance The central portion (*nucleus*) of the lens is the hardest

The epithelium of the lens consists of a layer of cubical cells anteriorly, which merge at the equator into the lens fibres The development of the lens explains this transition

Corneo-scleral junction —At this junction the relation of parts (fig 319) is so important as to need a short description In this neighbourhood, the iris and ciliary processes join with the cornea The proper substance of the cornea and the posterior elastic lamina become continuous with the iris, at *the angle of the iris*, and the iris sends forwards processes towards the posterior elastic lamina, forming the *ligamentum pectinatum iridis*, and these join with fibres

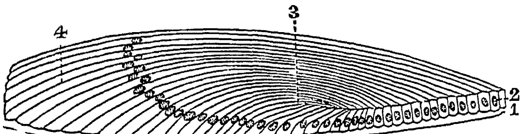


FIG 822 —Meridional section through the part of the lens of a rabbit 1, Lens capsule, 2, epithelium of lens, 3, transition of the epithelium into the fibres, 4, lens fibres (Bubuchin)

of the elastic lamina The epithelial covering of the posterior surface of the cornea is, as we have seen, continuous over the front of the iris At the iridic angle, the compact inner substance of the cornea is looser, and between the bundles are lymph spaces called the *spaces of Fontana* They are but little developed in the human cornea

The spaces between the bundles of corneal tissue at the angle of the iris are continuous with the larger lymphatic space of the anterior chamber Above the angle at the corneo-scleral junction is a canal, which is called the *canal of Schlemm* It is a venous channel

The Retina apparently ends in front, near the outer part of the ciliary processes, in a finely-notched edge—the *ora serrata*—but is really represented by the uvea to the very margin of the pupil The nerve-cells in the retina remind us that the optic, like the olfactory nerve, is not a mere nerve, but an outgrowth of the brain

In the centre of the retina is a round yellowish elevated spot, about 1 mm in diameter, having a depression in the centre, called the *macula lutea* or *yellow spot* The depression in its centre is called the *fovea centralis* About 2 5 mm to the inner side of the yellow spot, is the point (*optic disc* or *white spot*) at which the optic

nerve leaves the eyeball The optic nerve-fibres are the axons of the nerve-cells of the retina, the dendrons of these cells ultimately communicate with the visual nerve-epithelium (rods and cones)

The optic nerve passes backwards to the ventral surface of the brain enclosed in prolongations of the membranes, which cover the brain This external sheath at the exit of the nerve from the eyeball becomes continuous with the sclera, which at this part is perforated by holes to allow of the passage of the optic nerve-fibres, the perforated part being the *lamina cribrosa* The fibres of the nerve themselves are exceedingly fine, and are surrounded by the myelin sheath, but do not possess the ordinary external nerve sheath In the centre of the nerve is a small artery, the *arteria centralis retinæ* The number of fibres in the optic nerve is said to be upwards of 500,000

The retina consists of certain elements arranged in ten layers from within outwards (figs 323, 324)

1 *Membrana limitans interna*—This so-called membrane in contact with the vitreous humour is formed by the junction laterally of the bases of the *sustentacular* or *supporting fibres of Muller*, which bear the same relation to the retina as the neuroglia does to the brain

2 *Optic nerve-fibres*—This layer is of very varying thickness in different parts of the retina, it consists of non-medullated fibres which interlace, and most of which are the axons of the large nerve-cells forming the next layer

3 *Layer of ganglion cells*—This consists of large multipolar nerve-cells with large and round nuclei, forming either a single layer, or in some parts of the retina, especially near the *macula lutea*, where this layer is very thick, it consists of several strata of nerve-cells They are arranged with their single axis-cylinder processes inwards These pass into and are continuous with the layer of optic nerve-fibres Externally the cells send off several branched processes which pass into the next layer

4 *Inner molecular layer*—This presents a finely granulated appearance It consists of neuroglia traversed by numerous fibrillar processes of the nerve-cells just described, and the minute branchings of the processes of the bipolar cells of the next layer

5 *Inner nuclear layer*—This consists chiefly of numerous small round cells, each with a very small quantity of protoplasm surrounding a large ovoid nucleus The large oval nuclei (fig 323) belonging to the Mullerian fibres occur also in this layer

6 *Outer molecular layer*—This layer closely resembles the inner molecular layer, but is much thinner It contains the branchings of the rod and cone fibres on the one hand and of the bipolar cells on the other

7 *External nuclear layer*—This layer consists of small cells resembling at first sight those of the internal nuclear layer, they are classed as rod and cone granules, according as they are connected with the rods and cones respectively, and will be described with them

8 *Membrana limitans externa*—This is a well-defined membrane, marking the internal limit of the rod and cone layer, and made up of the junction of the sustentacular or Mullerian fibres externally

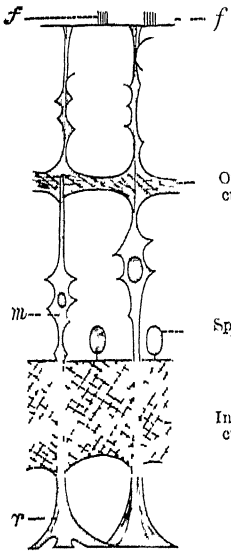


FIG 323 —Diagram showing the sustentacular fibres of the retina, *f*, fibre-basket above the external limiting membrane, *m*, nucleus of the fibre, *r*, base of the fibre
(From M'Kendrick, after Stohr)

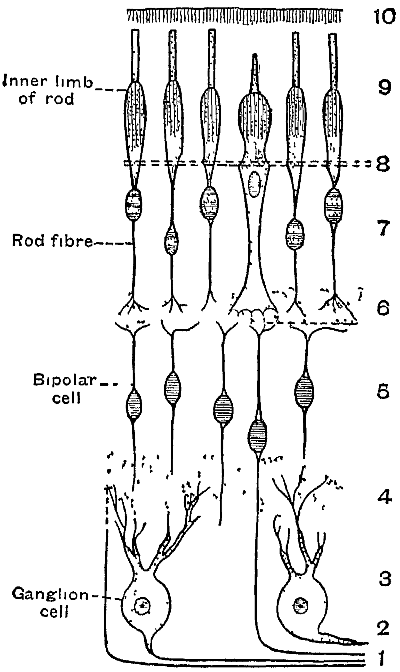


FIG 324 —Diagram of retinal elements In a section of the retina the pigment and molecular layers are most evident (Modified from Schultze) For explanation of numbers see text

9 *Layer of rods and cones*—This layer is the nerve-epithelium of the retina It consists of two kinds of cells, rods, and cones, which are arranged at right angles to the external limiting membrane, and supported by hair-like processes (*basket*) proceeding from the latter for a short distance (fig 323)

Each rod (fig 324) is made up of two parts, very different in structure, called the outer and inner limbs The outer limb of the rods is about 30 μ long and 2 μ broad, is transparent, and doubly

refracting It is said to be made up of fine superimposed discs It stains brown with osmic acid but not with hæmatoxylin, and resembles in some ways the myelin sheath of a medullated nerve It is the part of the rod in which the pigment called *visual purple* is found In some animals a few rods have a greenish pigment instead The inner limb is about as long but slightly broader than the outer, is longitudinally striated at its outer, and granular at its inner part It stains with hæmatoxylin, but not with osmic acid Each rod is connected internally with a *rod fibre*, very fine, but here and there varicose, in the middle of the fibre is a *rod granule*, really the nucleus of the rod, striped broadly transversely, and situated about the middle of the external nuclear layer, the internal end of the rod fibre terminates in branchings in the outer molecular layer

Each cone (fig 324), like each rod, is made up of two limbs, outer and inner The outer limb is tapering and not cylindrical like

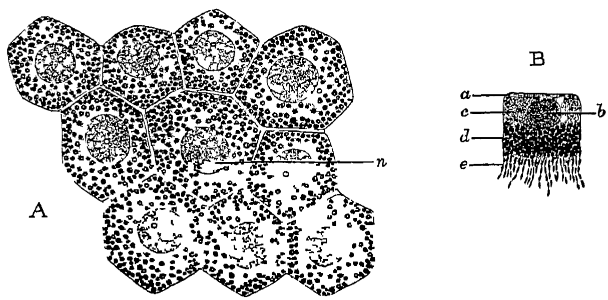


FIG 325 —Pigmented epithelium of retina (after Greeff) A, Surface view, *n*, nucleus B, Single cell in profile view, *a*, free surface, *b*, nucleus, *c*, pigment free cytoplasm, *d*, pigmented cytoplasm, *e*, pigmented processes

the corresponding part of the rod, and about one-third only of its length There is, moreover, no visual purple found in the cones The inner limb of the cone is broader in the centre It is protoplasmic, and under the influence of light has been seen to execute movements In birds, reptiles, and amphibia, there is often a coloured oil globule present here Each cone is in connection by its internal end with a *cone fibre*, which has much the same structure as the rod fibre, but is stouter and has its nucleus (*cone granule*) quite near to the external limiting membrane Its inner end terminates by branchings in the external molecular layer

In the rod and cone layer of birds, the cones usually predominate largely in number, whereas in man the rods are by far the more numerous, except in the fovea centralis, where cones only are present The number of cones has been estimated at 3,000,000

10 *Pigment-cell layer* —This layer consists of a single layer of polygonal cells, which send down a beard-like fringe to surround the outer ends of the rods

Differences in structure of different parts —Towards the centre of the *macula lutea* all the layers of the retina become greatly thinned out and almost disappear, except the rod and cone layer, and at the *fovea centralis* the rods disappear, and the cones are long and narrow At the margin of the fovea the layers increase in thickness, and in the rest of the macula lutea are thicker than elsewhere The ganglionic layer is especially thickened, the cells being six to eight deep (2, fig 326) Cone nuclei are obliquely disposed (fig 326) on the course of the cone fibres, and are situated at some distance from the *membrana limitans externa*, which is cupped towards the fovea (fig 326) The yellow tint of the macula is due to a diffuse colouring matter in the interstices of the four or five inner layers, it is absent at the centre of the fovea

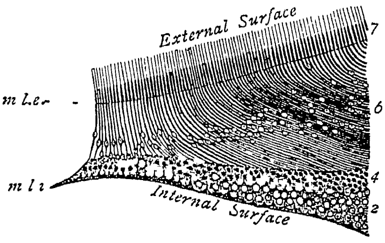


FIG 326 —Diagram of a section through half the fovea centralis 2, Ganglionic layer, 4, inner nuclear, 6, outer nuclear layer, the cone fibres forming the so called *external fibrous layer* 7, cones, *m l e*, membrana limitans externa, *m l i*, membrana limitans interna (Schafer and Golding Bird)

It is important to notice what is clearly brought out in fig 324, that at the fovea each cone is connected to a separate chain of neurones, whereas in other regions the rods and cones are connected in groups to these chains, this explains the greater sensitiveness of foveal vision which has been confirmed by measurement of the excitability of the retina at different points

At the *ora serrata* the layers are not perfect and disappear in this order nerve-fibres and ganglion cells, then the rods, leaving only the inner limbs of the cones, next these cease, then the outer molecular layer, the inner and outer nuclear layers coalescing, and finally the inner molecular layer also is unrepresented

At the *pars ciliaris retinæ*, the retina consists of a layer of columnar cells, which probably represent the Mullerian fibres These cells externally are in contact with the pigment layer of the retina, which is continued over the ciliary processes and back of the iris Nervous structures are absent

At the exit of the optic nerve the only structures present are nerve-fibres

The anterior chamber is the space behind the cornea and in front of the iris Between the iris and the lens is the **posterior chamber** They are filled with **aqueous humour** (dilute lymph)

The **vitreous humour**, which is a jelly-like connective tissue, is situated behind the *crystalline lens* It is enclosed in the hyaloid membrane which in front is continuous with the capsule of the lens, round the edge of the lens the canal left is called the **Canal of Petit**, the membrane itself being the *Zonule of Zinn* The hyaloid membrane separates the vitreous humour from the retina

Blood-vessels of the Eyeball.—The eye is very richly supplied with blood-vessels In addition to the conjunctival vessels which are derived from the palpebral and lachrymal arteries, there are at least two other distinct sets of vessels supplying the tunics of the eyeball

(1) These are the short and long *posterior* ciliary arteries which pierce the sclera in the posterior half of the eyeball, and the *anterior* ciliary which enter near the insertions of the recti These vessels anastomose and form a rich choroidal plexus, they also supply the iris and ciliary processes, forming a highly vascular circle round the outer margin of the iris and adjoining portion of the sclera The distinctness of these vessels from those of the conjunctiva is well seen in the difference between the bright red of blood-shot eyes (conjunctival congestion), and the pink zone surrounding the cornea which indicates deep-seated ciliary congestion

(2) The *retinal vessels* are derived from the *arteria centralis retinæ*, which enters the eyeball along the centre of the optic nerve They ramify all over the retina, in its inner layers They can be seen by ophthalmoscopic examination

Intraocular Pressure

The fluids in the eye are under a pressure of 20 to 30 mm Hg, and may be measured accurately by plunging through the sclera a hollow needle attached to a manometer The general tension of the eyeball can be appreciated also on oneself by palpation with two fingers Clinically the pressure is measured by a tonometer in which a piston works against a standardised spring In the condition of glaucoma the pressure may so increase that it interferes with the blood supply of the retina, and may cause blindness The mode of formation and drainage of the fluid of the eye is therefore of much practical importance The aqueous humour appears to be produced like lymph, its pressure depending on capillary pressure and the osmotic pressure of the blood rather than arterial pressure Normally, as pointed out by Duke-Elder, since the pressure in the exit veins is greater than the intra-ocular pressure there is an equilibrium, but if the latter pressure is increased as in glaucoma, the region of the canal of Schlemm, into which open the spaces of Fontana at the outer edge of the iris (the filtration angle), is of great importance as a drainage area, as shown by the injection of dyes Some fluid may also escape by the crypts on the anterior surface of the iris and by the vitreous humour to the lymphatics or retinal veins

The Eye as an Optical Instrument

In a photographic camera images of external objects are thrown on a screen at the back of a box, the interior of which is painted black In the eye, the camera is represented by the eyeball with its

black pigment, the screen by the layer of rods and cones of the retina, and the lens by the refracting media In the camera, the screen is enabled to receive clear images of objects at different distances, by an apparatus for focussing The corresponding contrivance in the eye is called *accommodation*

The iris, which allows more or less light to pass into the eye, corresponds with the diaphragms used in the photographic apparatus

The refractive media are the cornea, aqueous humour, crystalline lens, and vitreous humour The most refraction or bending of the rays of light occurs where they pass from the air into the cornea, they are again bent slightly in passing through the lens Alterations in the anterior curvature of the lens lead to accommodation

We may first consider the refraction through a transparent spherical surface, separating two media of different density

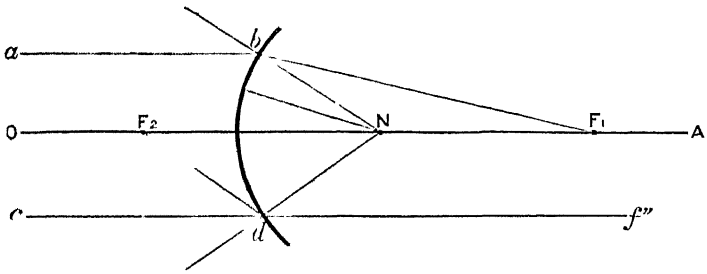


FIG 327 —Diagram of a simple optical system (after M Foster) The curved surface, *b*, *d*, is supposed to separate a less refractive medium towards the left from a more refractive medium towards the right

The rays of light which fall on the surface exactly perpendicularly do not suffer refraction, but pass through, cutting the optic axis (O A, fig 327), a line which passes exactly through the centre of the surface, at a certain point, the *nodal point* (fig 327, N), or centre of curvature Any rays which do not so strike the curved surface are refracted towards the optic axis Rays which impinge upon the spherical surface parallel to the optic axis meet on the optic axis at a point which is behind the nodal point and is called the *chief posterior focus* (fig 327, F_1), and again there is a point on the optic axis in front of the surface, rays of light from which so strike the surface that they are refracted in a line $d\ f''$ parallel with the axis, this point (fig 327, F_2) is called the *chief anterior focus* The optic axis cuts the surface at *the principal point*

It is quite obvious that the eye is a much more complicated optical apparatus than the one described in the figure It is, however, possible to reduce the refractive surfaces and media to a simpler form when the refractive indices of the different media

and the curvature of each surface are known These data are as follows —

Index of refraction of cornea		= 1 37
,, ,,	aqueous and vitreous	= 1 34 to 1 36
,, ,,	lens	= {1 4 in outer to 1 45 in inner part
Radius of curvature of cornea		= 7 8 mm
,, ,,	anterior surface of lens	= 10 ,,
,, ,,	posterior	= 6 ,,
Distance from anterior surface of cornea to anterior surface of lens		= 3 6 ,,
Distance from posterior surface of cornea to posterior surface of lens		= 7 2 ,,
Distance from posterior surface of lens to retina		= 15 0 ,,

It is important to note that the cornea plays the greatest part in refraction in man although it is less important in fishes With the aid of glasses a human being can still see quite well after the lens has been removed for cataract

With these data it has been found comparatively easy to reduce, by calculation, the different surfaces of different curvature into one mean curved surface of known curvature, and the differently refracting media into one mean medium the refractive power of which is known

The simplest so-called schematic eye formed on this principle, suggested by Listing as *the reduced schematic eye*, has the following more important dimensions —

Retina lies behind cornea	= **22 8237 mm**
The nodal point lies in front of posterior surface of lens	= 0 4764 ,,
From the nodal point to retina, *i e* focal length	= **15 4700** ,,
Radius of ideal surface	= 5 1218 ,,

The term *index of refraction* means the ratio of the sine of the angle of incidence to that of the angle of refraction, this is explained in the small text beneath fig 328

In this reduced or simplified eye, the principal posterior focus, about **23 mm** behind the spherical surface, would correspond to the position of the retina behind the anterior surface of the cornea The refracting surface would be situated about midway between the posterior surface of the cornea and the anterior surface of the lens

The *optical axis* of the eye is a line drawn through the centres of curvature of the cornea and lens, prolonged backwards to touch the retina between the porus opticus and fovea centralis, and this differs from the *visual axis* which passes through the nodal point of the reduced eye to the fovea centralis, this forms an angle of 5° with the optical axis But for practical purposes the optical axis and the visual axis may be considered to be identical

The *visual* or *optical angle* (fig 329) is included between the lines drawn from the borders of any object to the nodal point, if the lines are prolonged backwards they include an equal angle It has been shown by Helmholtz that the smallest angular distance between

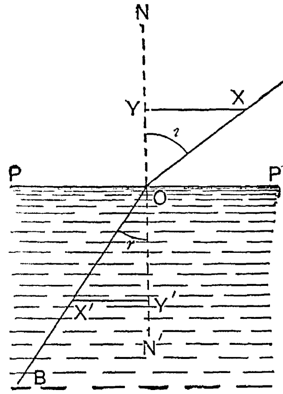


FIG 328 —If P P′ is a line which separates two media, the lower one being the denser, and A O is a ray of light falling on it, it is bent at O towards the normal or perpendicular line N N′ A O is called the incident ray, and O B the refracted ray, A O N is called the angle of incidence (i), N′ O B the angle of refraction (r) If any distance O X is measured off along O A, and an equal distance O X′ along O B, and perpendiculars drawn to N N′, then $\frac{XY}{X'Y'}$ = index of refraction

two points which can be appreciated as two distinct points = 50 seconds, the size of the retinal image being 3 65 μ, this is a little more than the diameter of a cone at the fovea centralis which = 3 μ, the distance between the centres of two adjacent cones being = 4 μ If the two

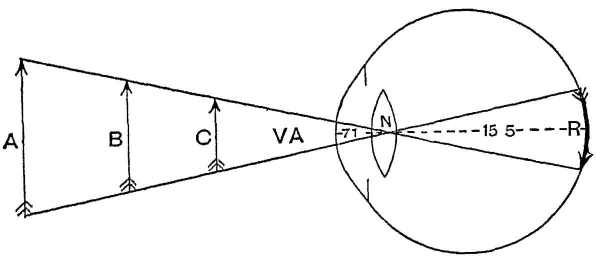


FIG 329 —Diagram to show the formation of an image in the retina VA, visual angle, N, nodal point, R, retina

points are so close together that they subtend a visual angle less than 50 seconds, both images will fall upon one cone, and the two points will therefore appear as one

The Formation of a Retinal Image —Any object, for example the arrow A B (fig 330), may be considered as a *series of points*

from each of which rays of light diverge towards the eye Take, for instance, the rays diverging from the tip of the arrow A, C C represents the curvature of the schematic or reduced eye, the ray which passes through the centre of the lens system, *i e* the nodal point, is not refracted (the asterisk in fig 330), it is near the posterior surface of the crystalline lens, the ray A C, which is parallel to the optic axis O O′, is refracted through the principal posterior focus P, and cuts the first ray at the point A′ on the retina The other rays from A meet at the same point to form an image Similarly the other end of the arrow B is focussed at B′, and rays from all other points have corresponding foci

It will thus be seen that an inverted image of external objects is formed on the retina The retina is a curved screen, but the images

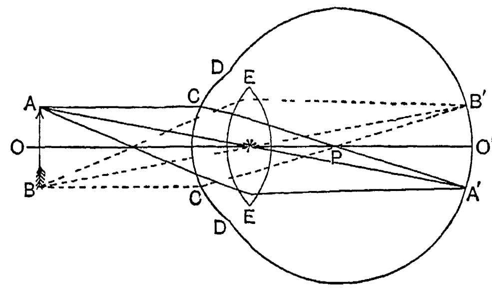


FIG 330 —Diagram of the course of the rays of light, to show how an image is formed upon the retina in an [illegible] The [illegible] C C should be supposed to represent the ideal curvature In [illegible] only at the cornea, but also at the surfaces of the lens and at the vitreous humours In the unaccommodated eye the point P is on the retina (see fig 336) A and B are to be considered points from which rays of light radiate

fall only on a small area of the retina under normal conditions, hence, for practical purposes, this small area may be regarded as flat

The question then arises, Why is it that objects do not appear to us to be upside down? This cannot be satisfactorily answered without entering into matters which require a previous psychological training Suffice it to say here that the localisation of objects in space depends not only on the retina, but also on tactile and general experience, that the mind localises objects with reference to its own body, and that from the first it knows nothing of the inversion of the retinal image, as its powers of localisation only appear with developing general experience

The **size of a retinal image** may readily be calculated as indicated by fig 329, from a knowledge of the size of the object and its distance from the eye (nodal point), the distance of the nodal point from the image on the retina being taken as 15 5 mm Thus an object 1 metre

long and 5 metres from the eye produces an image x times the size of the object, which is $\frac{15\ 5}{7\ 1}$ + the distance of the object from the cornea, *i e* $1000 \times \frac{15\ 5}{5007\ 1} = 3$ mm (approx) In a similar way, by mapping out the blind spot on a blackboard a given distance away we may measure the size of the optic disc

Accommodation

The power of accommodation is primarily due to an ability to vary the shape of the lens, its front surface becomes more or less convex, according as the distance of the object looked at is near or far The nearer the object, the more convex, up to a certain limit, the front surface of the lens becomes, and *vice versa*, the back surface takes no share in the production of the effect required The posterior surface, which during rest is more convex than the anterior, is thus relatively the less convex of the two during accommodation The following simple experiment illustrates this point If a lighted candle is held a little to one side of a person's eye an observer looking at the eye from the other side sees three images of the flame (fig 331) The first and brightest is (1) a small erect image formed by the anterior convex surface of the cornea, the second (2) is also erect, but larger and less distinct than the preceding, and is formed at the anterior convex surface of the lens, the third (3) is smaller, inverted, and indistinct, it is formed at the posterior surface of the lens, which is concave forwards, and therefore, like all concave mirrors, gives an inverted image If now the eye under observation is made to look at a near object, the second image becomes smaller, clearer, and approaches the first If the eye is now adjusted for a far-point, the second image enlarges again, becomes less distinct, and recedes from the first In both cases the first and third images remain unaltered in size, distinctness, and position This proves that during accommodation for near objects the curvature of the cornea, and of the *posterior surface* of the lens, remain unaltered, while the *anterior* surface of the lens becomes more convex and approaches the cornea

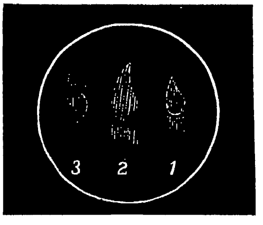


FIG 331 —Diagram showing three reflections of a candle 1, From the anterior surface of cornea, 2, from the anterior surface of lens, 3, from the posterior surface of lens

The experiment is more striking when two bright images (represented by arrows in fig 332) are used, the two images from the

front surface of the lens during accommodation not only approach those from the cornea, but also approach one another, and become

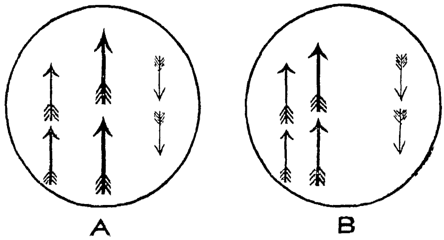


FIG 332 —Diagram of Sanson s images A, when the eyes are not, and B, when they are focussed for near objects The arrow to the right in A and B is the inverted image from the posterior surface of the lens

somewhat smaller (*Sanson's Images*) Helmholtz's phakoscope (fig 333) is a box with arrangements for demonstrating this experiment

Mechanism of Accommodation—The lens having no inherent power of contraction, its changes of outline must be produced by

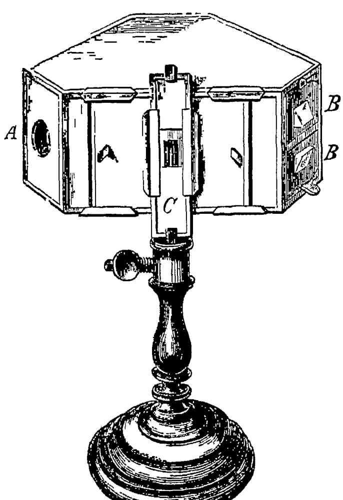


FIG 333 —Phakoscope of Helmholtz At *B B* are two prisms, by which the light of a candle is concentrated on the eye of the person experimented with, which is looking through a hole in the third angle of the box opposite to the window *C* *A* is the aperture for the eye of the observer The observer notices three double images, represented by arrows, in fig 332, reflected from the eye under examination when the eye is fixed upon a distant object, the position of the images having been noticed, the eye is made to focus a near object, such as a reed pushed up at *C*, the images from the anterior surface of the lens will then be observed to move as described in the text

some power from without, this power is supplied by the ciliary muscle Its action is to draw forwards the choroid, and by so

doing to slacken the tension of the suspensory ligament of the lens which arises from it The anterior surface of the lens is kept flattened by the action of this ligament The ciliary muscle during accommodation, by diminishing the tension of this ligament, diminishes to a proportional degree the flattening of which it is the cause On diminution or cessation of the action of the ciliary muscle, the lens returns to its former shape (fig 334) From this it will appear that the eye is usually focussed for distant objects In viewing near objects the ciliary muscle contracts, the ciliary muscle relaxes on withdrawal of the attention from near to distant objects

During accommodation two other changes take place in the eyes (1) *The eyes converge* owing to the action of the internal rectus muscle of each eyeball (2) *The pupils contract*

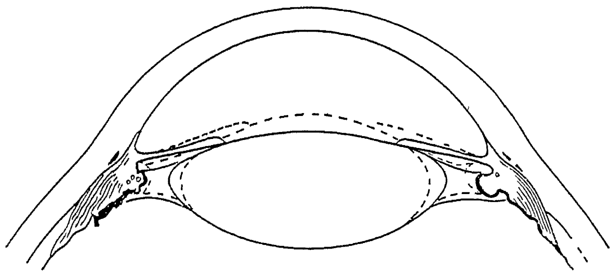


FIG 334 — Diagram representing, by dotted lines, the alteration in the shape of the lens on accommodation for near objects (E Landolt)

The contraction of all of the muscles which have to do with accommodation, viz, of the ciliary muscle, of the internal recti muscles, and of the sphincter pupillæ, is under the control of the third nerve It should further be noted that although the act is a voluntary one, the fibres of the ciliary muscle and of the sphincter pupillæ are of the plain variety

The account of accommodation as given in the preceding pages is true for man and other mammals, some birds, and certain reptiles

Beer has, however, shown that in many animals lower in the scale, the mechanism of accommodation varies a good deal, and is often very different from that just described, consisting, in fact, in a power of altering the distance between the lens and the retina

In bony fishes, the eye at rest is accommodated for near objects, in focussing for distant objects the lens is drawn nearer to the retina by a special muscle called the *retractor lentis* In cephalopods the same occurs, but the retractor lentis is absent, here the approach of the lens to the retina is brought about by an alteration of intra-ocular tension In amphibia and most snakes, the eye at rest is focussed for distant objects, in accommodating for near objects the lens, by alteration of intra-ocular tension, is brought forward, that is, the distance between it and the retina is increased There appear to be not a few animals in all classes which do not possess the power of accommodation at all Indeed Barrett states this is so for most mammals

Range of Distinct Vision *Near-point*—In every eye there is a limit to the power of accommodation If a book is brought nearer and nearer to the eye, the type at last becomes indistinct, and cannot be brought into focus by any effort of accommodation, however strong This, which is termed the **near-point**, can be determined by *Scheiner's* experiment Two small holes are pricked in a card with a pin not more than a-twelfth of an inch (2 mm) apart, at any rate their distance from each other must not exceed the diameter of the pupil The card is held close in front of the eye, and a small needle viewed through the pin-holes At a moderate distance it can be clearly focussed, but when brought nearer, beyond a certain point, the image appears double This point where the needle ceases to appear single is the near-point Its distance from the eye can be readily measured It is usually about 5

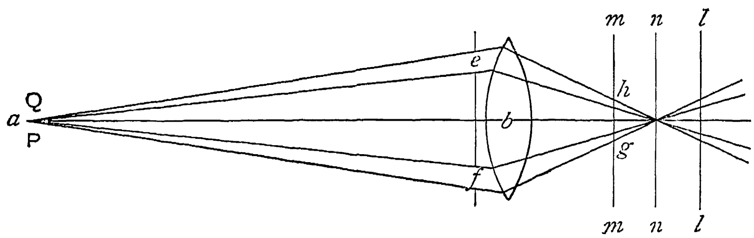


FIG 335 —Diagram of experiment to ascertain the minimum distance of distinct vision

or 6 inches (13 cm) In the accompanying figure (fig 335) the lens *b* represents the refractive apparatus of the eye, *e* and *f* the two pin-holes in the card, *nn* the retina, *a* represents the position of the needle When the needle is at a moderate distance, the two pencils of light coming through *e* and *f* are focussed at a single point on the retina *nn* If the needle is brought nearer than the near-point, the strongest effort of accommodation is not sufficient to focus the two pencils, they meet at a point behind the retina The effect is the same as if the retina were shifted forward to *mm* Two images *h*, *g* are formed, one from each hole It is interesting to note that when two images are produced, the lower one *g* really appears in the position Q, while the upper one appears in the position P This may be readily verified by covering the holes in succession

Defects in the Optical Apparatus

Under this head we may consider the defects known as (1) Myopia, (2) Hypermetropia, (3) Astigmatism, (4) Spherical Aberration, (5) Chromatic Aberration, and (6) Presbyopia

The normal (*emmetropic*) eye is so adjusted that at rest parallel

rays are brought exactly to a focus on the retina (1, fig 336) Hence all objects except near ones (practically all objects more than twenty feet off) are seen without any effort of accommodation, in other words, the far-point of the normal eye is at an infinite distance

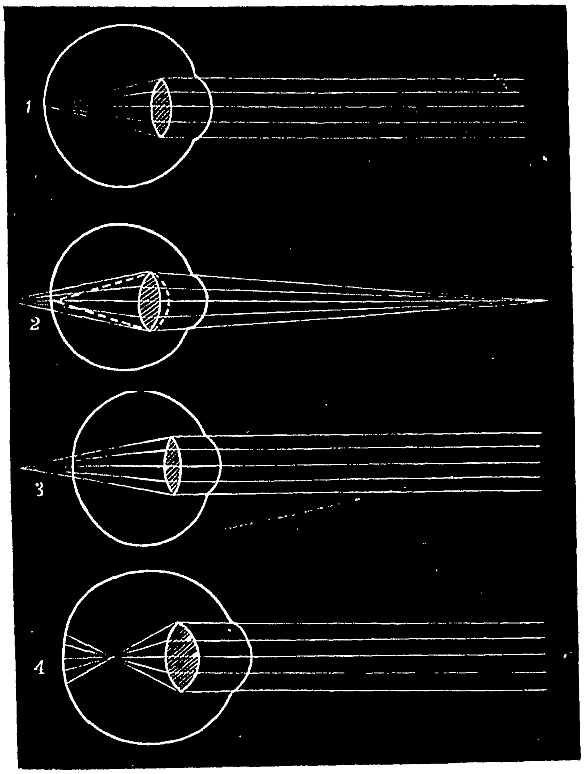


FIG 336 —Diagram showing—1, normal (*emmetropic*) eye bringing parallel rays exactly to a focus on the retina, 2, normal eye adapted to a near point, without accommodation the rays would be focussed behind the retina, but by increasing the curvature of the anterior surface of the lens (shown by a dotted line) the rays are focussed on the retina (as indicated by the meeting of the two dotted lines), 3, *hypermetropic* eye, in this case the axis of the eye is shorter than normal, parallel rays are focussed behind the retina, 4, *myopic* eye, in this case the axis of the eye is abnormally long, parallel rays are focussed in front of the retina The figure incorrectly represents the refraction as occurring only in the crystalline lens, the principal refraction really occurs at the anterior surface of the cornea

In viewing near objects we are conscious of the effort (the contraction of the ciliary muscle), by which the anterior surface of the lens is rendered more convex, and rays which would otherwise be focussed *behind* the retina are converged upon the retina (see dotted lines, 2, fig 336)

1 **Myopia** (short-sight), (4, fig 336)—This defect is due to an abnormal elongation of the eyeball The retina is too far from the lens, and consequently parallel rays are focussed *in front of* the retina, and, crossing, form little circles on the retina, thus the images of distant objects are blurred and indistinct The eye is, as it were, permanently adjusted for a near-point Rays from a point near the eye are exactly focussed on the retina But those which issue from any object beyond a certain distance (*far-point*) cannot be distinctly focussed This defect is corrected by *concave* glasses which cause the rays entering the eye to diverge hence they do not come to a focus so soon Such glasses, of course, are only needed to give a clear vision of distant objects. For near objects, except in extreme cases, they are not required

2 **Hypermetropia** (3, fig 336)—This is the reverse defect The eyeball is too short Parallel rays are focussed *behind* the retina an effort of accommodation is required to focus even parallel rays on the retina, and when they are divergent, as in viewing a near object, the accommodation is insufficient to focus them Thus, in well-marked cases, distant objects require an effort of accommodation, and near ones a very powerful effort, and the ciliary muscle is, therefore, constantly acting This defect is obviated by the use of *convex* glasses, which render the pencils of light more convergent Such glasses are, of course, especially needed for near objects, as in reading, etc They rest the eye by relieving the ciliary muscle from excessive work

3 **Astigmatism**—This defect, which was first discovered by Airy, is due to a greater curvature of the eye in one meridian than in others The eye may be even myopic in one plane, and hypermetropic in others Thus vertical and horizontal lines crossing each other cannot both be focussed at once, one set stands out clearly, and the others are blurred and indistinct This defect, which is present in a slight degree in all eyes, is generally seated in the cornea, but occasionally in the lens as well, it may be corrected by the use of cylindrical glasses (*i e*, curved only in one direction)

4 **Spherical Aberration**—The rays of a cone of light from an object situated at the side of the field of vision do not meet all in the same point, owing to their unequal refraction, for the refraction of the rays which pass through the edge of a lens is greater than that of those traversing its central portion This defect is known as *spherical aberration*, and in the camera, telescope, microscope, and other optical instruments, it is remedied by the interposition of a screen with a circular aperture in the path of the rays of light, cutting off all the marginal rays, and only allowing the passage of those near the centre Such correction is effected in the eye by the iris, which prevents the rays from passing through any

part of the refractive apparatus but its centre The image of an object will be most defined and distinct when the pupil is narrow, the object at the proper distance for vision, and the light abundant, so that, while a sufficient number of rays are admitted, the narrowness of the pupil may prevent the production of indistinctness of the image by *spherical aberration*

Distinctness of vision is further secured by the pigment of the outer surface of the retina, the posterior surface of the iris and the ciliary processes, which absorbs most of the light which is reflected within the eye, and prevents its being thrown again upon the retina so as to interfere with the images there formed

5 **Chromatic Aberration**—In the passage of light through an ordinary convex lens, decomposition of each ray into its elementary colours commonly ensues, and a coloured margin appears around the image, owing to the unequal refraction which the elementary colours undergo In optical instruments this, which is termed *chromatic aberration*, is corrected by the use of two or more lenses, differing in shape and density, the second of which continues or increases the refraction of the rays produced by the first, but by recombining the individual parts of each ray into its original white light, corrects any chromatic aberration which may have resulted from the first It is probable that the unequal refractive power of the transparent media in front of the retina may be the means by which the eye is enabled to guard against the effect of chromatic aberration The human eye is achromatic, however, only so long as the image is received at its focal distance upon the retina, or so long as the eye is properly accommodated If these conditions are interfered with, a more or less distinct appearance of colours is produced

From the insufficient adjustment of the image of a small white object, it appears surrounded by a sort of halo or fringe This phenomenon is termed *Irradiation* It is partly for this reason that a white square on a black ground appears larger than a black square of the same size on a white ground The phenomenon is naturally more marked when the white object is a little out of focus

6 *Defective Accommodation*—**Presbyopia**—This condition is due to the gradual loss of the power of accommodation which is an early sign of advancing years In consequence, the person is obliged in reading to hold the book farther and farther away in order to focus the letters, till at last the letters are held too far for distinct vision The defect is remedied by weak convex glasses It is due chiefly to the gradual increase in density of the lens, which is unable to swell out and become convex when near objects are looked at, and also to a weakening of the ciliary muscle, and a general loss of elasticity in the parts concerned in the mechanism

Retinoscopy

The refractive power of a lens is expressed in terms of its principal focal distance, if this is 1 metre, it is said to have the refractive power of 1 diopter (1 D), a lens 2 D has a focal length of ½ a metre, and a lens ½ D has a focal length of 2 metres, and so on The lenses necessary for correcting errors of refraction in an eye are best determined by a simple instrument called a retinoscope, this is a small circular plane mirror, perforated by a hole in the centre through which the observer looks If one reflects a spot of light from this on to a flat surface, any movement of the mirror produces a movement of the spot of light in the same direction, if the surface selected, however, is the eye of another person, the direction of movement of the illuminated spot on the retina may or may not be the same as that in which the mirror is moved, according as whether the observed eye is normal, hypermetropic, or myopic If the observed eye is just a metre away from the observer, and is emmetropic, then as the mirror is tilted from side to side the spot moves in the same direction If a convex lens is placed in a spectacle frame in front of the observed eye, the parallel rays which emerge from the retina are brought to a focus and cross before reaching the eye of the observer Then the spot will move in the opposite direction to the mirror A lens of less than 1 D will not, however, accomplish this reversal, a lens of more than 1 D will So that a lens of 1 D marks the exact point of reversal If the observed eye is hypermetropic, the movement of the spot of light is also with the mirror, but stronger lenses than 1 D must be introduced to get the point of reversal If the lens in any particular case necessary for this purpose is 5 D, then the error of refraction is 4 D and spectacles may be ordered accordingly *, for one always has to subtract 1 D, since that is required to get reversal with the normal eye

When the spot of light moves against the mirror's movements from the first, then the observed eye is myopic, and the myopia is greater than 1 D The "point of reversal" is determined by introducing concave lenses of increasing strength into the spectacle frame until the spot moves in the same direction as the mirror, the degree of myopia is equivalent to the value of the lens which accomplishes the reversal *plus* 1 D to allow as before for the normal eye

Many people have differences in the refractive error of their two eyes, so each should be tested separately If the observed eye is astigmatic, the observations are more complicated, and must be made in the different meridians of the eye, and the point of reversal determined in each meridian by means of suitable cylindrical lenses

* The full correction often causes discomfort, and in practice is rarely ordered

Functions of the Iris

The iris has the following two uses —

1 To act as a diaphragm in order to lessen spherical aberration in the manner just described This is specially necessary when one wishes to obtain a clearly defined image of an object, the pupil therefore contracts when accommodation for a near object takes place

2 To regulate the amount of light entering the eye In a bright light the pupil contracts, in a dim light it enlarges This may be perfectly well seen in one's own iris by looking at it in a mirror while one alternately turns a gas-light up and down

The muscle-fibres (unstriped in mammals, striped in birds) of the iris are arranged circularly around the margin of the pupil, and radiatingly from its margin The radiating fibres are best seen in the eyes of birds and otters, some look upon them as elastic in nature, but there is little doubt that they are contractile Those who believe they are not contractile explain dilatation of the pupil as due to inhibition of the circular fibres But if the iris is stimulated near its outer margin at three different points simultaneously the pupil assumes a triangular shape, the angles of the triangle corresponding to the points stimulated, this must be due to contraction of three strands of the radiating muscle, inhibition of the circular fibres would occur equally all round

The iris is supplied by three sets of nerve-fibres contained in the ciliary nerves

(*a*) The third nerve *via* the ciliary ganglion and short ciliary nerves supplies the circular fibres (fig 344, p 852)

(*b*) The cervical sympathetic supplies the radiating fibres The cilio-spinal centre which governs them is in the cervical region of the cord The fibres leave the cord by the anterior roots of the first and second thoracic nerve, pass into the cervical sympathetic, and reach the eyeball *via* the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal, and long ciliary nerves (fig 344)

(*c*) Fibres of the trigeminal nerve which are sensory

Certain drugs dilate the pupil These are called *mydriatics*, atropine is a well-known example Others cause the pupil to contract These are called *myotics*, physostigmine and opium (taken internally) are instances Different drugs act in different ways, some exerting their activity on the muscular, others on the nervous structures of the iris, while some act centrally on the brain

We may sum up the principal conditions under which the pupil contracts and dilates, in the following table —

Causes of—

Contraction of the Pupil	Dilatation of the Pupil
1 Stimulation of third nerve	1 Paralysis of the third nerve
2 Paralysis of cervical sympathetic	2 Stimulation of the cervical sympathetic
3 When the eye is exposed to light	3 In the dark
4 When accommodation occurs	4 When the accommodation is relaxed
5 Under the local influence of physostigmine	5 Under the local influence of atropine This drug also paralyses the ciliary muscle
6 Under the influence of opium	6 In asyphxia This is an important danger-signal in anæsthesia
7 During sleep	7 The injection of adrenaline
8 In chloroform anæsthesia in which a dilated pupil is a sign of danger	8 Under the influence of certain emotions, such as fear
	9 During pain
	10 In ether anæsthesia

There is a close connection of the centres that govern the activity of the two irides If one eye is shaded by the hand, its pupil will of course dilate, but the pupil of the other eye will also dilate The two pupils always contract or dilate together but may be prevented from doing so by local injury to the nerves of one side or the local action of drugs

Functions of the Retina

The retina is the nervous coat of the eye, it contains the layer of nerve-epithelium (rods and cones) which is capable of receiving the stimulus of light, and transforming it into a nervous impulse which passes to the brain by the optic nerve

The layer of rods and cones is at the back of the other retinal layers, which the light has to penetrate before it can affect this layer The proofs of the statement that this is the layer of the retina which is capable of stimulation by light are the following —

(1) The point of exit of the optic nerve from the retina, where the rods and cones are absent, is insensitive to light, and is called the **blind spot** This is readily demonstrated by what is known as Mariotte's experiment If we direct one eye, the other being closed, upon a point at such a distance to the side of any object, that the image of the latter must fall upon the retina at the point of

entrance of the optic nerve, this image is lost If, for example, we close the left eye, and look steadily with the right eye at the dot here represented, while the page is held about six inches from the

eye, both dot and cross are visible On gradually increasing the distance between the page and the eye, still keeping the right eye steadily on the dot, it will be found that suddenly the cross disappears from view, because its image has fallen on the blind spot, on removing the book still farther, it comes in sight again The question has arisen why we are not normally conscious of a gap in the image We can only say that owing to the spot being blind from birth onwards we have come to neglect its blindness The size of the blind spot at a given distance may be used to measure the optic disc (see p 827)

(2) In the fovea centralis which contains the rods and cones, but in which the other layers of the retina are thinned down to a minimum, light produces the greatest effect In the macula lutea cones occur in large numbers, and in the fovea centralis cones without rods are found, whereas, in the rest of the retina which is not so sensitive to light, there are fewer cones than rods

(3) If a small lighted candle is moved to and fro at the side of and close to one eye in a darkened room, while the eyes look steadily forward on to a dull background, a branching figure (**Purkinje's figures**) is seen floating before the eye, consisting of dark lines on a reddish ground As the candle moves, the figure moves in the opposite direction, and from its whole appearance there can be no doubt that it is a reversed picture of the retinal vessels projected before the eye * This remarkable appearance is due to shadows of the retinal vessels cast by the candle, and it is only when they are thrown upon the retina in an unusual slanting direction that they are perceived The branches of these vessels are distributed in the nerve-fibre and ganglionic layers, and since the light of the candle falls on the retinal vessels from in front, the shadow is cast behind them, and hence those elements of the retina which perceive the shadows must also lie behind the vessels Here, then, we have a clear proof that the light-perceiving elements are not the inner, but one of the external layers of the retina, further than this, calculation has shown it is the layer of rods and cones The data for such a calculation are—the dimensions of the eyeball, the distance of the screen from the eye, the angle through which the candle is moved, and the displacement of the figure seen

* Purkinje's figures can be more readily seen by simply looking steadily down a microscope, and moving the whole instrument backwards and forwards, or from side to side, while so doing

The Function of the Rods and Cones—The concentration of the *cones* in the macula immediately behind the centre of the pupil and the fact that each cone has a separate nerve-fibre indicate that the cones are concerned with acuity of vision

The rods on the other hand are grouped together and are located more in the periphery In birds which fly at night the cones are absent

Changes in the Retina during Activity

The method by which a ray of light is able to stimulate the endings of the optic nerve in the retina in such a manner that a visual sensation is perceived by the cerebrum is not yet understood It is supposed that the change effected by the agency of the light which falls upon the retina is a physico-chemical alteration in the protoplasm, and that this change stimulates the optic nerve-endings A certain temporary reddish-purple pigmentation (**visual purple**) is found in the outer limbs of the retinal rods in certain animals (*e g* frogs) which have been killed in the dark The visual purple is bleached when the retina is exposed to light, and reappears when the light is removed, and it also undergoes distinct changes of colour when other than white light is used If the operation is performed quickly enough, the bleached image of a bright object may be fixed on the retina by soaking the retina of an animal which has been killed in the dark, in alum solution

The visual purple is derived in some way from the black pigment (melanin or fuscin) of the polygonal epithelium of the retina, since the colour is not renewed after bleaching if the retina is detached from its pigment layer

Certain pigments, not sensitive to light, are contained in the inner segments of the cones These are oil globules of various colours, red, green, and yellow, and are found in the retinæ of marsupials (but not other mammals), birds, reptiles, and fishes Nothing is known about the yellow pigment of the yellow spot

In the lower vertebrates another change produced by the action of the light upon the retina is the **movement of the pigment cells** On being stimulated by light the granules of pigment in the cells which overlie the outer part of the rod and cone layer of the retina pass into the processes of the cells, which hang down between the rods these *melanin* or *fuscin* granules are generally rod-shaped, and look almost like crystals A **movement of the cones** and possibly of the rods also occurs, as has been already mentioned, in the light the cones shorten, and in the dark they lengthen (Engelmann) In mammals rapid changes in the size of the pupil appear to make this unnecessary

Red light has no action on visual purple; the maximum bleaching effect takes place in greenish-yellow light. Now, when the living eye is brought into a condition of "dark adaptation," that is, when the retina has become adapted to light of low intensity, the colours of the spectrum alter in brightness; the red end becomes shortened and much darker, the blue end becomes brighter, and the region of maximum brightness is in the green. This change of brightness with change of adaptation, known as Purkinje's phenomenon, is absent in the fovea, where there are no rods. The selective action of the colours of the spectrum on the visual purple is so strikingly similar to the altered conditions of brightness just described, that changes in the visual purple of the rods have been supposed to be the cause of sensations excited by feeble illumination (*i.e.* in the "dark-adapted" eye), while the cones are affected under more ordinary conditions of illumination. This conclusion gains support from several interesting facts. Visual purple is specially abundant in the retinæ of almost all animals whose habits are nocturnal, or which live underground. Further, if the intensity of a colour stimulus is gradually increased, it is at first too faint to produce any sensation; then it produces a sensation of greyness, and at last the colour itself is seen; the interval between the appearance of the grey or white-black effect and of the true colour effect of the stimulus is spoken of as the "*photo-chromatic interval*." Red light has no effect on visual purple, and has no photo-chromatic interval (that is, it appears either red or nothing), and according to several observers, there is no such interval at the fovea, where the rods, and therefore visual purple, are absent. Thirdly, a very similar effect has been described by M'Dougall; when the retina is momentarily stimulated by a coloured light, the sensation arising from the stimulus is followed by a series of "primary responses" or after-sensations; the first members of the series have the same colour as the stimulus, and these are sometimes followed by a series of colourless (grey) sensations; these grey sensations are only present outside the fovea, and under conditions of "dark adaptation" are absent with red and brightest with green stimuli. Here again we are able to differentiate between a visual-purple (rod) effect, and a cone effect, the former, active under conditions of feeble illumination, affected most by green and unaffected by red light, and yielding colourless sensations; the latter being more specially concerned in developing sensations of colour under conditions of adaptation to ordinary light. The fovea centralis thus becomes the region where the colours of objects are best distinguishable, and where with ordinary illumination visual acuity is most marked. In the dark, however, extra-foveal (rod) vision is more sensitive than foveal (cone) vision; astronomers see faint stars more readily in the periphery of the field of vision.

Two abnormal conditions may be described here, for they throw light on these phenomena In cases of *achromatopsia* (total colour blindness) the spectrum is seen as a band of light differing only in brightness, the region of maximum brightness is the same as in extra-foveal vision of the normal eye, in many of these cases there is a central *scotoma* (blind spot), that is, the rodless fovea is blind, there is reduced acuity of vision as in the "dark-adapted" eye We are thus in typical cases of achromatopsia dealing with cases of cone blindness In *nyctalopia* (night blindness), on the other hand, we meet the converse condition Here there is an abnormal slowness of "dark adaptation," and a pathological change known as *retinitis pigmentosa* is present, suggesting an impaired function of the visual purple Pilocarpine has been found an effective drug in such cases, and this is also interesting because it hastens the regeneration of visual purple in the extirpated eye

The **electrical variations** in the retina under the influence of light were discovered by Holmgren (1866), and since then have been investigated by M'Kendrick and Dewar, Einthoven, Waller, and others The excised eyeball of a frog is led off by non-polarisable electrodes to a galvanometer One electrode is placed on the front, the other on the back of the eye If the eyeball is quite fresh, a current is observed passing through the eyeball from back to front When light falls on the eye this current is increased, on shutting off the light there is a momentary further increase, and then the current slowly returns back to its previous condition Waller explains this by supposing that anabolic changes in the eye predominate during stimulation by light With the onset of darkness, the katabolic changes cease at once, and the anabolic more slowly, hence a further positive variation

More recently the currents of action in the optic nerve of the eel (which is a conveniently long nerve) have been investigated by Adrian, who has found that the general laws applying to general sensation are applicable to the currents of action set up in the eye The general law of Weber has been shown to apply, and adaptation occurs as in the nerve-endings concerned in pain

The **limits of visibility** are 3800 A U in the violet and 8000 A U in the red

Duration of Visual Sensations—The duration of the sensation produced by a luminous impression on the retina is always greater than that of the impression which produces it However brief the luminous impression, the effect on the retina always lasts for about one-eighth of a second Thus, supposing an object in motion, say a horse, to be revealed on a dark night by a flash of lightning The object would be seen apparently for an eighth of a second, but it would not appear in motion, because, although the image remained on the retina for this time, it was really revealed for such an extremely short period (a flash of lightning lasting only a millionth of a second) that no appreciable movement on the part of the object could have taken place in the period during which it was revealed to the retina of the observer The same fact is proved in a reverse way The spokes of a rapidly revolving wheel are not seen as distinct objects, because at every point of the field of vision over which the revolving spokes pass, a given impression has not faded before another replaces it Thus every part of the interior of the wheel appears occupied

The stimuli which excite the retina are exceedingly slight, for instance, the minimum stimulus in the form of green light is equal in terms of work to that which is done in raising a ten-millionth part of a milligramme to the height of a millimetre, and even some of this is doubtless wasted in the form of heat The time during which the stimulus acts may be excessively small, thus light from a rapidly rotating mirror is visible even when it only falls upon the retina for one eight-millionth part

of a second Some physiologists have drawn an analogy between retinal and muscular excitations There is no complete analogy, but the following points of resemblance may be noted —

1 The retina, like the muscle, possesses a store of potential energy, which the stimulus serves to fire off

2 Fatigue on action, and recovery after rest are noticeable in both

3 The curve of retinal excitation, like the muscle curve, rises not abruptly but gradually to its full height, and on the cessation of the stimulus takes a measurable time to fall again, the retinal impression outlasting the stimulus by about one-eighth of a second

4 With comparatively slow intermittent excitation, the phenomenon known as *flicker* takes place, this may be shown by the slow rotation on Maxwell's machine of a disc painted with alternate black and white sectors This roughly corresponds with what in a muscle is called incomplete tetanus

5 When the rate of stimulation is increased, as by increasing the speed of rotation of the disc just alluded to (say to twenty or thirty times a second) the resulting sensation is a smooth one of greyness This fusion of individual stimuli into a continuous sensation does not by any means correspond to the complete tetanus of muscle, for the resultant sensation has a brightness corresponding not to a summation of the individual fusing sensations, but to a brightness which would ensue if the stimuli were spread evenly over the surface of the disc (Talbot's Law)

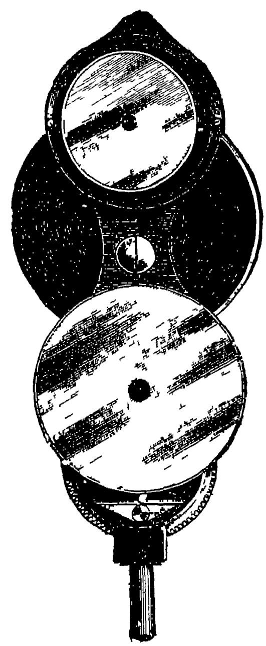


FIG 337 —The ophthalmoscope The small upper mirror is for direct, the larger for indirect, illumination

The Ophthalmoscope

Every one is perfectly familiar with the fact, that it is quite impossible to see the *fundus* or back of another person's eye by simply looking into it The interior of the eye forms a perfectly black background * The same remark applies to the difficulty we experience in seeing into a room from the street through the window unless the room is lighted within In the eye this fact is partly due to the feebleness of the light reflected from the retina, most of it being absorbed by the retinal pigment, but far more to the fact that every such ray is reflected straight to the source of light (*e g* candle), and cannot, therefore, be seen by the unaided eye without intercepting the incident light from the candle as well as the

* In some animals (*e g* the cat), the pigment is absent from a portion of the retinal epithelium, this forms the *Tapetum lucidum* The use of this is supposed to be to increase the sensitiveness of the retina, the light being reflected back through the layer of rods and cones It is probably the case that these animals are able to see clearly with less light than we can, hence the popular idea that a cat can see in the dark In fishes a tapetum lucidum is often present, here the brightness is increased by crystals of guanine

reflected rays from the retina This difficulty is surmounted by the use of the *ophthalmoscope*

The ophthalmoscope was invented by Wharton Jones, forgotten, then reinvented by Helmholtz, as a mirror for reflecting the light into the eye, he employed a bundle of thin glass plates, this mirror was transparent, and so he was able to look through it in the same direction as that of the rays of the light it reflected

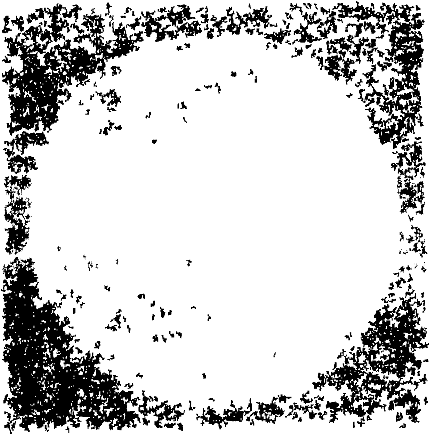
In its most modern form a concave mirror is mounted on a handle, and is perforated in the centre by a small hole through which the observer can look while the light is supplied from a small electric bulb in the handle of the instrument

The methods of examining the eye with this instrument are—the *direct* and the *indirect* both methods of investigation should be employed A drop of a solution of atropine (two grains to the ounce) or of homatropine hydrobromide, should be instilled about twenty minutes before the examination is commenced, the ciliary muscle is thereby paralysed, the power of accommodation is abolished, and the pupil is dilated This will materially facilitate the examination, but it is quite possible to observe all the details to be presently described without the use of such drugs The room being now darkened, the observer seats himself in front of the person whose eye he is about to examine, placing himself upon a somewhat higher level Let us suppose that the right eye of the patient is being examined If the instrument is not supplied with an electric light, a brilliant and steady light is placed close to the left ear of the patient

Direct method —Taking the **small mirror** in his right hand, and looking through the central hole, the operator directs a beam of light into the eye of the patient A red glare is seen, due to the illumination of the retina The patient is then told to look at the little finger of the observer's right hand as he holds the mirror, to effect this the eye is rotated somewhat inwards, and at the same time the reflex changes from red to a lighter colour, owing to the reflection from the optic disc The observer now approximates the mirror, with his eye to the eye of the patient, taking care to keep the light fixed upon the pupil so as not to lose the reflex At a certain point, which varies with different eyes, but is usually reached when there is an interval of about two or three inches between the observed and the observing eye, *the vessels of the retina* become visible Examine carefully the fundus of the eye, *i e*, the red surface—until *the optic disc* is seen, trace its circular outline, and observe the small central white spot, the porus opticus, or *physiological pit* near the centre is the central artery of the retina breaking up upon the disc into branches, veins also are present, and correspond roughly to the course of the arteries Trace the vessels over the disc on to the retina Somewhat to the outer side, and only visible after some practice, is the *macula* or *yellow spot*, which appears red with the ophthalmoscope, with the smaller lighter-coloured *fovea centralis* in its centre This constitutes the direct method of examination, by it the various details of the fundus are seen as they really exist, and it is this method which should be adopted for ordinary use (fig 339)

If the observer is myopic or hypermetropic, he will be unable to employ the direct method of examination until he has remedied his defective vision by the use of proper glasses

In the **indirect method** the patient is placed as before, and the operator holds the **large mirror** in his right hand at a distance of twelve to eighteen inches from the patient's right eye At the same time he rests his left little finger lightly upon the patient's right temple, and holding a convex lens between his thumb and forefinger, two or three inches in front of the patient's eye, directs the light through the lens into the eye The red reflex, and subsequently the white one, having been gained, the operator slowly moves his mirror, and with it his eye, towards or away from the face of the patient, until the outline of one of the retinal vessels becomes visible,



when very slight movements on the part of the operator will suffice to bring into view the details of the fundus above described, more of the retina is seen at a time, but the image will be much smaller and inverted The appearances seen are depicted in fig 338 The lens should be kept fixed at a distance of two or three inches, the mirror alone being moved until the disc becomes visible should the image of the mirror, however, obscure the disc, the lens may be slightly tilted

Figures 339 and 340 show diagrammatically the course of the rays of light

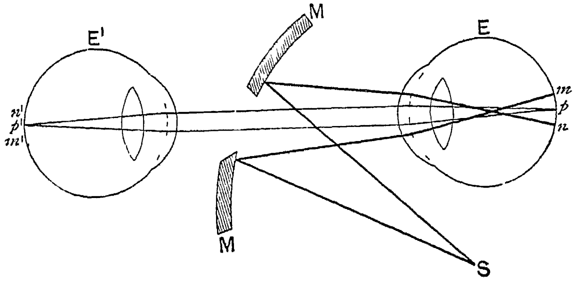


FIG 339 —The course of the light in examining the eye by the direct method (T G Brodie)

Fig 339 represents what occurs when employing the direct method S is the source of light, and M M the concave mirror with its central aperture, which reflects the rays, these are focussed by the eye E, which is being examined, to a point in the vitreous humour, and this produces a diffuse lighting of the interior of the eyeball Rays of light issuing from the point p emerge from the eye parallel to one another, and enter the observer's eye E^1, they are brought to a focus p^1 on the retina as the eye is accommodated for distant vision Similarly the point m and n will give rise to images at m^1 and n^1 respectively

Fig 340 represents what occurs in examining the eye by the indirect method

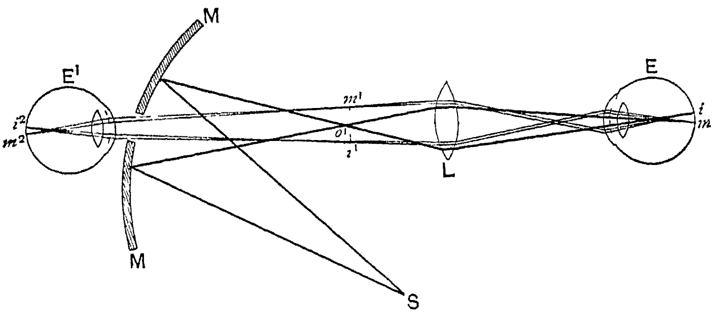


FIG 340 —The course of the light in examining the eye by the indirect method (T G Brodie)

S is the source of light, M M the mirror, E the observed, and E^1 the observing eye as before The rays of light are reflected from the mirror and form an image at o^1, they then diverge and are again made convergent by the lens L held in front of the eye by the observer, by this means a second image is focussed just behind the crystalline lens of the eye E They then again diverge and diffusely light up the interior of the eyeball The rays of light reflected from two points i and m on the retina diverging from the eye are refracted by the glass lens L, and give an inverted real image i^1 m^1 larger than the object i m These latter rays then diverge, and are collected and focussed by the observing eye E^1 to give an image i^2 m^2 on the retina

The Perimeter.

This is an instrument for mapping out the field of vision It consists of a graduated arc, which can be moved into any position, and which when rotated traces out a hollow hemisphere In the centre of this the eye under examination is placed, the other eye being closed The examiner then determines on the surface of the hemisphere those points at which the patient just ceases or just begins to see a small object moved along the arc of the circle These points are plotted out on a chart graduated in degrees, and by connecting them the outline of the field of vision is obtained

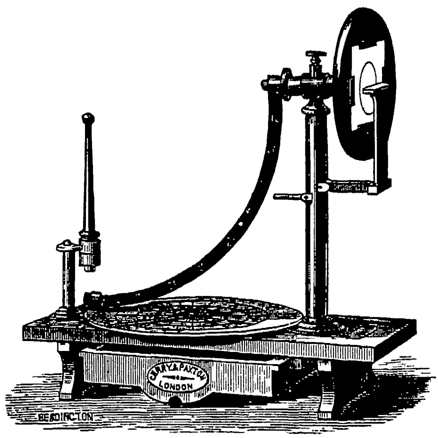


FIG 341 —Priestley Smith's perimeter

Fig 341 shows one of the forms of perimeter very generally employed, and fig 342 represents one of the charts provided with the instrument The dark line represents the normal average field of vision for the right eye and the blind spot may be mapped out It will be seen that the field of vision is most extensive on the outer side, it is less on the inner side because of the presence of the nose Considerable personal variation occurs

By the use of the same instrument, it is found that the colour of a coloured object is not distinguishable at the margin, but only towards the centre of the field of vision, but there are differences for different colours, thus a blue or yellow object is seen to be blue or yellow over a wider field than a red or green object

In disease of the optic nerve, contraction of the field of vision for white and coloured objects is found This often occurs before any change in the optic nerve is discoverable by the ophthalmoscope

The yellow spot of one's own eye can be rendered evident by what is called Clerk-Maxwell's experiment —On looking through a solution of chrome-alum in a bottle with parallel sides, an oval purplish spot is seen in the green colour of the alum This is due to the pigment of the yellow spot

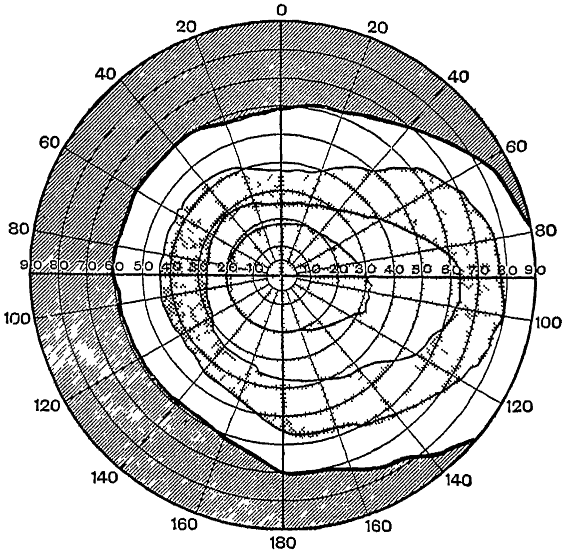


FIG 342 —Perimeter chart showing average fields of vision for white and three colours The outer limit of the colours is shown, but they all overlap towards the centre The dark area is caused by the nose, etc

Visual Sensations.

Visual sensations are of two kinds, colour sensations and colourless sensations Colour sensations differ (1) in *hue*, for instance, blue, red, yellow, (2) in *saturation*, for instance, pale green and full green, this depends upon the degree of admixture with white light, and (3) in *intensity*, for instance, a weak sensation or a strong sensation These differences are in part dependent respectively on the length, the purity, and the amplitude of the light-wave, but they are also dependent on the local or general condition of the cerebro-retinal apparatus at the time of stimulation Colours also differ (4) in *brightness* or *luminosity*, this is a purely psychological quality devoid of any known physical counterpart The brightness of a colour may be measured by determining the shade of grey to which it appears equivalent Even the most saturated colours (for instance, yellow and blue) have different degrees of brightness

Colourless sensations include the grey series from the deepest black to the most blinding white

If a ray of sunlight is allowed to pass through a prism, it is decomposed by its passage into rays of different colours, which are called the colours of the spectrum, they are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet The red rays are the least turned out of their course by the prism, and the violet the most, whilst the other colours occupy in order places between these two extremes The differences in the colour of the rays depend upon the rapidity of vibrations producing each, the red rays being the least rapid and the violet the most In addition to these, there are other rays which are invisible but which have definite properties, those to the left of the red are less refrangible, being the calorific rays which act upon the thermometer, and those to the right of the violet, which are called the actinic or ultra-violet rays, have a powerful chemical action

White light may be built from its constituents in several ways, for instance, by a second prism reversing the dispersion produced by the first, or by causing the colours of the spectrum to fall on the retina in rapid succession The best way to study the effects of compounding successive colour stimuli is by means of a rapidly revolving disc to which two or more coloured sectors are fixed Each colour is viewed in rapid succession, but owing to the persistence of retinal impressions, the constituent colour stimuli give a single sensation of colour

A colourless sensation can be produced by the mixture of three colours, or even of two colours in certain hues and proportions These pairs of colours, of which red and greenish-blue, orange and blue, and violet and yellow are examples, are called *complementary*

Thus blue and orange, when rotated on the colour-wheel, produce a colourless sensation, but it is well known that a mixture of blue and orange paint gives green This is explained on the supposition that the colours used are not pure and that each contains green, the true blue and orange present neutralise each other to produce white, and thus green is the only colour sensation obtained

Colour Vision

Three properly chosen colours will not only produce a colourless sensation, but when combined in appropriate amounts they can be made to yield any other colour sensation It is on this principle that Thomas Young based his trichromatic theory of colour vision, which was subsequently elaborated by Helmholtz and Clerk-Maxwell It is known as the Young-Helmholtz theory. The theory selects red, green, and violet as the three primary colour-sensations These were chosen, partly because of their position within the spectrum, partly on account of the phenomena of colour-blindness, and for other reasons

The Young-Helmholtz theory teaches that there are in the retina certain elements (? within the cones) which answer to each of these primary colours, whereas the innumerable intermediate shades of colour are produced by stimulation of the three primary colour terminals in different degrees, the sensation of white being produced when the three elements are equally excited Thus, if the retina is stimulated by rays of certain wave-length at the red end of the spectrum, the terminals of the other colours, green and violet, are hardly stimulated at all, but the red terminals are strongly stimulated, and the resulting sensation is red The orange rays excite the red terminals considerably, the green rather more, and the violet slightly, the resulting sensation being that of orange, and so on (fig 343)

Another theory of colour vision (Hering's) supposes that there are six primary colour-sensations, viz three antagonistic (complemen-

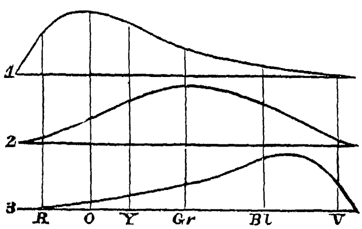


FIG 343 —Diagram of the three primary colour sensations (Young Helmholtz theory) 1 is the red, 2, green, and 3, violet primary colour sensation The lettering indicates the colours of the spectrum The diagram indicates by the height of the curve to what extent the several primary sensations of colour are excited by vibrations of different wave lengths

tary) pairs, black and white, red and green, and yellow and blue, and that these are produced by the changes either of disintegration or of assimilation taking place in certain substances, which (the theory supposes) exist in the cerebro-retinal apparatus Each of the substances corresponding to a pair of colours is capable of undergoing two changes, one of disintegration, and the other of construction, with the result of producing one or other colour For instance, in the white-black substance, when disintegration is in excess of construction or assimilation, the sensation is white, and when assimilation is in excess of disintegration the reverse is the case, and similarly with the red-green substance, and with the yellow-blue substance When the repair and disintegration are equal with the first substance, the visual sensation is grey, but in the other pairs, when this is the case, no colour-sensation occurs The rays of the spectrum to the red end produce changes in the red-green substance, with a resulting sensation of red, whilst the (orange) rays further to the right affect both the red-green and the yellow-blue substances, blue rays cause constructive changes in the

yellow-blue substance, but none in the red-green, and so on All colours act on the white-black substance as well as on the red-green or yellow-blue substance

Neither theory satisfactorily accounts for all the numerous complicated problems presented in the physiology of colour vision One of these problems is *colour-blindness*, a by no means uncommon visual defect Some people are completely colour-blind (see also p 849), but the commonest form is the inability to distinguish between red and green Helmholtz's explanation of such a condition is, that the elements of the retina which receive the impression of red or green are absent, or very imperfectly developed, and Hering's would be that the red-green substance is absent from the cerebro-retinal apparatus

Hering's theory appears to meet the difficulty best, for if the red element of Helmholtz were absent, the patient ought not to be able to perceive white sensations, of which red is a constituent part, whereas, according to Hering's theory, the white-black visual substance remains intact It has, however, been recognised that many facts cannot be reconciled with either theory, and modifications of one or the other have been introduced from time to time

C J Burch found that by exposing the eye to bright sunlight in the focus of a burning-glass behind transparent coloured screens, it is possible to produce temporary colour-blindness After red light, the observer is for some minutes red-blind, scarlet geraniums look black, yellow flowers green, and purple flowers violet After violet light, violet looks black, purple flowers crimson, and green foliage richer than usual. After light of other colours, corresponding effects are produced If one eye is made purple-blind, and the other green-blind, all objects are seen in their natural colours, but in exaggerated perspective, due to the difficulty the brain experiences in combining the images from the two eyes

By using a brightly-illuminated spectrum, and directing the eye to certain of its colours, the eye in time becomes fatigued and blind for that colour, so that it is no longer seen in the spectrum Thus, after green blindness is induced the red appears to meet the blue, and no green is seen. If, however, the eye is exposed to yellow light, it does not similarly become blind for yellow only, but for red and green too This supports the Young-Helmholtz theory, that the sensation yellow is one compounded of the red and green sensations By an exhaustive examination of the different parts of the spectrum, in this way it thus becomes possible to differentiate between the primary colour sensations and those which are compound By a study of this kind, Burch concluded that the phenomena of colour vision are in accordance with the Young-Helmholtz theory, with the important addition that there is a fourth primary colour sensation, namely, blue He could not discover that colour sensations are related to each other in the sense indicated by Hering Each may be exhausted without either weakening or strengthening the others These observations were confirmed by examining in a similar way the colour sensations of seventy other people, but there are individual differences in the extent to which the colour sensations overlap

Edridge-Green aims at describing facts, rather than theories Normal people are hexachromic, *i e*, they can name six colours (and eighteen shades) in the spectrum, a few people are more expert and can see a seventh colour—indigo between blue and violet, and can distinguish more shades Colour-blind people may be (*a*) those who can see the whole spectrum and cannot distinguish its colours, some can see only two colours in it, (*b*) those who cannot see either the red or the violet end, but can nevertheless discriminate the colours in the parts

that are visible, and (c) those who combine both defects There may be all grades of these defects The colour-blind person is usually a dichromic and can distinguish only the two ends of the spectrum as different colours, if this is combined with a shortening of the red end, the defect is more pronounced and more dangerous, others are trichromic and can distinguish red, green, and violet, between this and the normal there may also be tetra- and pentachromic people

Tests for Colour-Blindness—The test formerly adopted by the Board of Trade consisted in matching skeins of wool from a heap of skeins of different colours (Holmgren's worsteds) It has, however, been shown that the test is not trustworthy, and it has been supplemented by one in which the subject is required to name the colours of lights in the Edridge-Green lantern, in it the intensity and colour of the light and the order in which the colours are shown can be easily varied

A Japanese method is coming more into use This consists of a number of cards covered with dots of various shades, amongst which are numbers in shaded dots which are evident to the normal but not to the colour-blind person

After-Images—These are the after-effects of retinal excitation, and are divided into *positive* and *negative* Positive after-images resemble the original image in distribution of brightness and colour In negative after-images bright parts appear dark, dark parts bright, and coloured parts in the complementary colours

If a bright white object is looked at, and the eyelids are then closed, a positive after-image is seen which fades gradually, but as it fades it passes through blue, violet, or red to orange, according to the Young-Helmholtz theory, this is explained on the hypothesis that the excitation does not decline with equal rapidity in the three colour terminals A positive after-image is readily obtained by momentarily looking at a bright object, *e g* a window, after waking from sleep Negative after-images may be seen either by closing the eyes or by turning them to a uniform grey surface after viewing an object steadily If the object looked at is coloured, the negative after-image seen upon such a background is in its complementary colour, this is explained by the Young-Helmholtz theory, on the supposition that the colour-perceiving element for the colour looked at is the most fatigued, and the terminals for its complementary colour least fatigued On the Hering theory, one colour produces anabolic or katabolic effects as the case may be, on withdrawing the eye from stimulation by that particular colour, the opposite phase of metabolism takes place and produces the complementary colour

Simultaneous and Successive Contrast—Negative after-images are frequently spoken of as phenomena of *successive contrast* The phenomena of *simultaneous contrast* are well illustrated by the four figures of the accompanying Plate In all these figures the oblong grey strip is actually of the same brightness This can easily

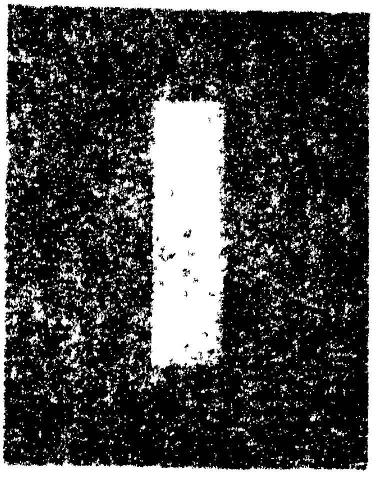
be proved by screening from view the surrounding parts of the figures, which cause the greys to appear different The grey in I appears darker than that in II, while the grey in III appears yellowish, and in IV reddish If these effects are not sufficiently obvious, they immediately become so when the entire surface is covered over with a sheet of thin tissue paper

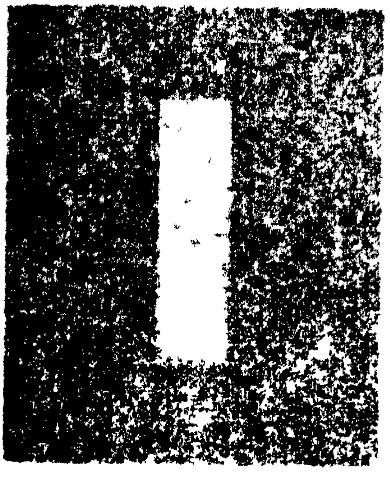
Figs I and II are examples of *brightness contrast*, Figs III and IV of *colour contrast* The effects of these two varieties of simultaneous contrast may be stated thus a given grey object looks darker when viewed against a bright background than when viewed against a dark background, when the background is coloured, it is tinged with the complementary colour of the former

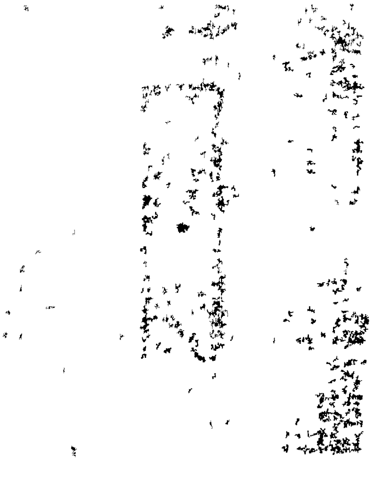
Helmholtz attributed the effects of simultaneous contrast to errors of judgment, and not to altered conditions of the retinal apparatus * But there can be no doubt that simultaneous contrast has as simple a sensory origin as successive contrast (negative after-images) For if either of the two lower figures of the Plate is carefully fixated for about a minute (fixation of the central dot will help to prevent involuntary movements of the eyes), and if the gaze is then transferred to a spot on a sheet of white or grey paper, not only will the outer squares appear in their complementary colour, but also the grey strips will appear tinged, now likewise in a complementary colour So, too, if a point midway between Figs I and II is fixated, and the Plate held at a sufficient distance for both figures to be simultaneously visible, the after-image of the grey strip of II will appear darker than that of I

Seeing that simultaneous contrast persists in after-images, and seeing how generally recognised are its effects (for instance, by the painter, who depicts in *blue* the shadows cast by an object on the yellow sand), it seems far more probable that the part played by the higher mental processes consists, not, as Helmholtz supposed, in causing the illusion, but in reducing or overcoming it According to this view, experience educates us to see objects in what we know to be their real colour, instead of in the colour which would result from the operation of simultaneous contrast Some support is lent to this view by the fact that contrast is much enhanced when all irregularities are, as far as possible, eliminated from the surface of the object (here, the grey oblong) in which the contrast colour is induced, or when that object is made to appear, *e g* by covering the whole with tissue paper, to combine with the object (the coloured square) which induces the contrast colour, so as to form an apparently single object On the other hand, colour contrast is very markedly

* By "retina" here and elsewhere we mean "cerebro-retinal apparatus" We have no knowledge of the precise share of retina and brain in the development of visual sensations and after-sensations







reduced, if the grey object is outlined in pencil on the tissue paper through which it is viewed Thus, whatever tends to the apparent independence of the object in which the contrasting colour is induced tends to the reduction of the contrast effect

Insisting on the sensory nature of simultaneous contrast, Hering explained it in the following way He supposed that excitation of an area of the retina by a stimulus of given colour or brightness simultaneously induces an opposite metabolic process in the same colour apparatus in neighbouring areas of the retina When, for example, a part of the retina is being stimulated by blue, the anabolic change thus evoked in the yellow-blue apparatus simultaneously is supposed to induce a katabolic change in the same apparatus in the neighbouring retinal area which is being excited by a grey stimulus Consequently, the grey acquires a yellowish tinge

Binocular Colour-mixture —By means of the stereoscope, binocular combinations of colour can be obtained Thus, if one eye is exposed to a red disc, and the corresponding portion of the other eye to a yellow one, the mind usually perceives one disc of an orange tint, but frequently, especially if there be differences of brightness or of form in the two objects, we notice that "rivalry of the fields of vision" occurs, first one then the other disc rising into consciousness A stereoscopic combination of black and white produces the appearance of metallic lustre, this is very beautifully shown with figures of crystals, one black on a white ground, the other white on a black ground The combination of black and white is interpreted as indicating a polished surface, because a polished surface reflects rays irregularly, so that the two eyes receive stimuli of unequal intensity

Nervous Paths connected with Vision

The correspondence of the two retinæ and of the movements of the eyeballs is produced by a close connection of the nervous centres controlling these phenomena, and by the arrangement of the nerve-fibres in the optic nerves The crossing of the nerve-fibres at the optic chiasma is incomplete, and the next diagram (fig 344) gives a simple idea of the way the fibres go

It will be seen that it is only the fibres from the inner portions of the retinæ that cross, and that those represented by shaded paths from the right side of the two retinæ ultimately reach the right hemisphere, and those represented by interrupted lines from the left side of the two retinæ ultimately reach the occipital cortex left hemisphere The two halves of the retinæ are not, however, separated by a hard-and-fast line from one another, the two halves slightly overlap, which means the central region of each retina is

represented in each hemisphere It has been found that the macula is represented by a relatively large area on the cortex

The part of the hemisphere concerned in vision is the occipital lobe, and the reader should turn back to our previous consideration of this subject in connection with cerebral localisation, the pheno-

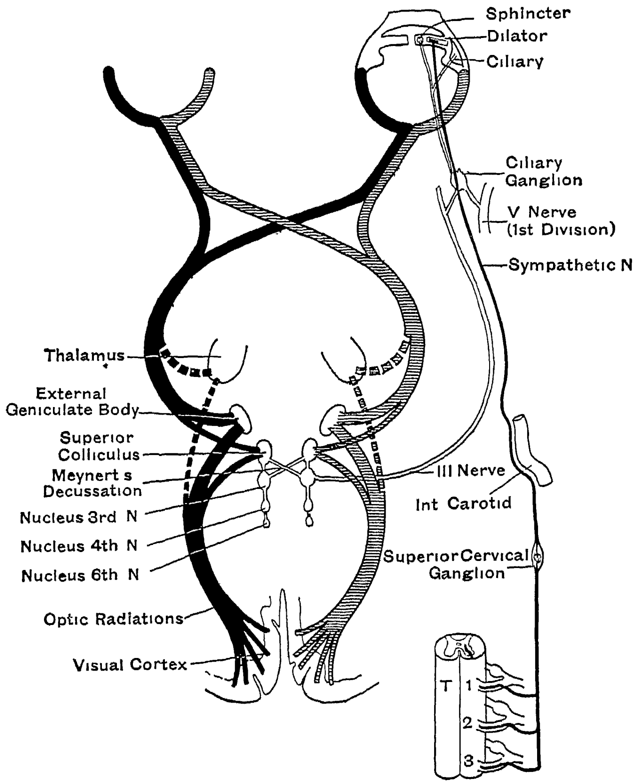


FIG 344 —Diagram to show the paths of the nervous impulses concerned in sight, also those connected with the innervation of the pupil (From McDowall s *Clinical Physiology*)

mena of hemianopsia and the conjugate deviation of head and eyes

Fig 344, though diagrammatic, will assist the reader in more fully comprehending the paths of visual impulses, and the central connections of the nerves and nerve-centres concerned in the process The fibres from the retina to the external geniculate body end there by arborising round its cells, and a fresh relay of fibres from these cells passes in the posterior part of the internal capsule to the cortex of the occipital lobe Those to the anterior corpus quadri-

geminum are continued on by a fresh relay to the nuclei of the nerves concerned in eye-movements (represented by the oculo-motor nucleus in the diagram), the axons of the cortical cells pass to the tegmentum, whence a fresh relay continues the impulse to the oculo-motor nucleus

Sherrington's observations on binocular flicker have shown that there are difficulties in accepting fig 344 as a complete anatomical basis for the psychological processes involved in binocular vision, although it is probably correct so far as the motor mechanisms involved are concerned

The Reflexes of the Eye

The reflexes in the region of the eye are not only of physiological interest, but not infrequently of valuable diagnostic significance

The Conjunctival Reflex —This reflex is designed to protect the cornea from injury, and has for its afferent path the fifth nerve and its endings in the conjunctiva When this path is stimulated the impulse passes backwards to the Gasserian ganglion, and thence *via* the pons to the oculo-motor nerve, which brings about closure of the eyelid If the stimulation is sufficiently severe, the nucleus of the seventh nerve is also stimulated, producing constriction of the orbicularis palpebrarum

Reflex closure also occurs if a blow is seen coming towards the eye, but in this instance the path must depend on association fibres between the optic tract with which the optic nerve is continuous and the nuclei of the third and seventh nerves

The Light Reflex —By the light reflex the retina is protected from an excessive or dangerous amount of light It is a true reflex, the afferent path being the optic nerve and tract to the corpora quadrigemina and thence by Meynert's fibres to the nucleus of the third nerve (see fig 344) It seems likely from the action of atropine, that the fibres of the third nerve which supply the iris sphincter are really parasympathetic in nature, although they have their origin in close association with the nucleus of the third nerve in the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius Atropine is known to paralyse all the parasympathetic nerve-endings

It is important to remember the bilateral nature of the stimulus in any attempt to elicit the reflex The stimulus for each pupil arises from half the retina of both sides To obtain the reaction, both eyes must be shaded and one suddenly uncovered, when, if the patient has been asked to look towards the light, the pupil is seen to contract

In tabes, and general paralysis, the absence of the light reflex with the retention of the reaction to accommodation—the so-called Argyll-Robertson pupil—is often obtained It will be seen from

fig 344 that such a condition can be brought about by degeneration of Meynert's fibres which cuts off the efferent from the afferent neurone in the light reflex It is clear from the figure that it is necessary to keep the eye not under investigation covered, for the third nerve nucleus may be influenced by impulses reaching it from both eyes

The Reaction to Accommodation, although strictly speaking not a reflex, is commonly investigated with the reflexes of the eye It is really a motor movement associated with convergence, and designed to cut off those parts of the field of vision less accurately focussed More detailed images are produced by focussing on the macula which is straight behind the centre of the pupil As the mechanism of accommodation is so closely related to that of refraction, it has been considered in relation to "Vision"

Visual Judgments.

The psychical or mental processes which constitute the visual sensation proper have been studied to a far greater degree than is possible in connection with other forms of sensation

We have already seen that in spite of the inversion of the image in the retina, the mind sees objects in their proper position (see p 826)

We are also not conscious of the blind spot This is partly due to the fact that those images which fall on the blind spot of one eye are not focussed there in the other eye But even when one looks at objects with one eye, there is no blank, for the reason explained on p 837

Our estimate of the size of various objects is based partly on the visual angle (p 825) which they subtend, but much more on the estimate we form of their distance Thus a lofty mountain many miles off may be seen under the same visual angle as a small hill near at hand, but we infer that the former is much the larger object because we know it is much farther off than the hill Our estimate of distance is, however, often erroneous, and consequently the estimate of size also Thus persons seen walking on the top of a small hill against a clear twilight sky appear unusually large, because we overestimate their distance, and for similar reasons most objects in a fog appear immensely magnified

The action of the sense of vision in relation to external objects is, therefore, quite different from that of the sense of touch The objects of the latter sense are immediately present to it, and our own body, with which they come in contact, is the measure of their size The part of a table touched by the hand appears as large as the part of the hand receiving an impression from it, for the part of our body in which a sensation is excited, is here the measure by which we judge of the magnitude of the object In the sense of

vision, on the contrary, the images of objects are mere fractions of the objects themselves, realised upon the retina, the extent of which remains constantly the same But the mind, into which the sensations of vision are incorporated, invests the images of objects, together with the whole field of vision in the retina, with very varying dimensions, the relative size of the image in proportion to the whole field of vision, or of the affected parts of the retina to the whole retina, alone remains unaltered

The estimation of the form of bodies by sight is the result partly of the mere sensation, and partly of the association of ideas Since the form of the images perceived by the retina depends wholly on the outline of the part of the retina affected, the sensation alone is adequate to the distinction of superficial forms from each other, as of a square from a circle But the idea of a solid body such as a sphere, or a cube, can only be attained by the action of the mind

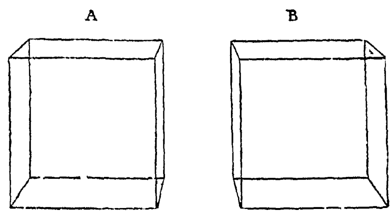


FIG 345 —Diagrams to illustrate how a judgment of a figure of three dimensions is obtained

constructing it from the different superficial images seen in different positions of the eye with regard to the object, and, as shown by Wheatstone and illustrated in the *stereoscope*, from two different perspective projections of the object being presented simultaneously to the mind by the two eyes

Thus, if a cube is held at a moderate distance before the eyes, and viewed with each eye successively while the head is kept perfectly steady, A (fig 345) will be the picture presented to the right eye, and B that seen by the left eye Wheatstone has shown that on this circumstance depends in a great measure our conviction of the solidity of an object, or of its projection in relief If different perspective drawings of a solid body, one representing the image seen by the right eye, the other that seen by the left (for example, the drawings of a cube, A, B, fig 345), are presented to corresponding parts of the two retinæ, as may be readily done by means of the stereoscope, the mind will perceive not merely a single representation of the object, but a body projecting in relief, the exact counterpart of that from which the drawings were made

By transposing two stereoscopic pictures a reverse effect is produced, the elevated parts appear to be depressed, and *vice versa*

An instrument contrived with this purpose is termed a *pseudoscope* Viewed with this instrument a bust appears as a hollow mask, and as may readily be imagined the effect is most bewildering

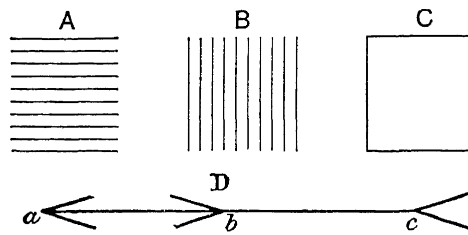


FIG 346 —Diagrams to illustrate visual illusions

The clearness with which the details of an object are perceived irrespective of accommodation, would appear to depend largely on the number of rods and cones which its retinal image covers Hence the nearer an object is to the eye (within moderate limits) the more clearly are all its details seen Further, if we want carefully to

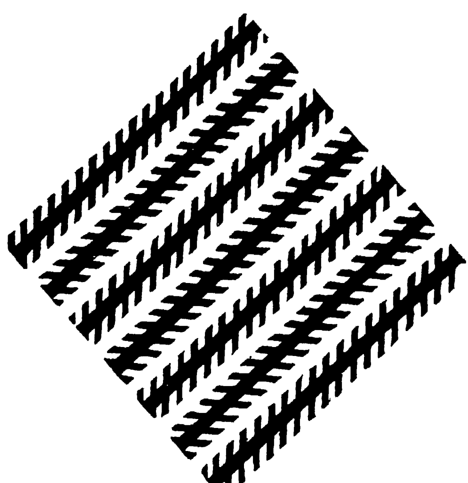


FIG 347 —Zollner's lines

examine any object, we always direct the eyes straight to it, so that its image shall fall on the two maculæ, where an image of a given area will cover a larger number of cones than anywhere else in the retina Moreover, as previously pointed out, each cone in the macula lutea is connected to a separate chain of neurones

The importance of binocular vision is very great If an object is looked at with one eye only, it is impossible to estimate its distance by the sense of vision alone For instance, if one eye is closed and the other looks at a wire or bar, it is impossible to tell whether, if someone drops a small object, it falls in front of or behind the bar

Visual judgments are not always correct, there is a large number of puzzles and toys which depend on visual illusions One or two of the best known are represented in the accompanying diagrams

In fig 346, A, B, and C are of the same size, but A looks taller than B, while C appears to cover a less area than either The subdivision of a space or line increases its apparent size or length In fig 346 D, *ab* is equal to *bc* Vertical distances also are usually overestimated In fig 347 the long lines are parallel, though they do not appear so, owing to the influence of the intercrossing lines

CHAPTER LIX

THE ENDOCRINE ORGANS

THESE organs, which occur in various regions of the body, have received the name *endocrine* because they form what is known as an *internal secretion* The function of a gland which has a duct is a comparatively simple problem, for the secretion can be collected from the duct and its composition and properties can then be investigated But an internal secretion leaves the organ where it is formed by the venous blood or lymph issuing from the organ, hence its composition is difficult to determine, for it is mixed with and masked by the blood or lymph into which it is poured In many cases, however, it has been found possible to extract from the gland the substances manufactured by its cells and to investigate their activities

There are some glands which possess ducts, and which form both internal and external secretions

The pancreas is an example of a gland forming two secretions, the external secretion is the pancreatic juice, which like the bile is concerned with digestive processes in the intestine Scattered through the pancreas are little collections of cells from which no duct leaves, these islets of Langerhans form the internal secretion which leaves the pancreas by its venous blood, and is concerned in carbohydrate metabolism

The term usually employed for the specific product of an endocrine organ is *hormone* (stimulating agent) This word was coined by Bayliss and Starling when they discovered that the formation of pancreatic juice is stimulated by a chemical substance (secretin) which is formed in the intestine Sir E Sharpey Schafer has pointed out that the word hormone is unsuitable for all chemical messengers, for there are some which inhibit and do not stimulate, he suggests the word *autacoid* as a general term, it means self-produced drug, and includes those which stimulate (*hormones*) and those which inhibit (*chalones*) The chalones are the less numerous The complex mechanism of the body is regulated and controlled not only by the nervous system but also by these chemical messengers, and each of them is essential for healthy life An increase or

decrease in the amount of internal secretion produced by a gland, as in disease, may have disastrous results

It was the study of such diseases or of the results of extirpation of these endocrine organs which first pointed out to investigators their importance This led observers to attempt to replace the missing organ by transplantation of the same gland from another animal, in some cases (*e g* the thyroid) this led to cure, in other cases injection of extracts prepared from such organs was sufficient, and in others mere feeding on the gland was sufficient In some cases, however, the method was not an effective cure In time chemical investigators analysed the extracts, and this led to identification of the autacoid, in many instances this consummation has not yet been reached

Some of these methods have proved much more successful than others in the investigation of the function of the ductless glands, and in the descriptions below only the most important results are given Much work on this subject has still to be done Gley has laid down the three following characteristics which must be fulfilled before an organ can be admitted to the class of endocrine glands These are —

(1) Anatomical, the absence of a duct
(2) Chemical, the separation from the organ extract, or to be quite convincing, from the blood which leaves the organ, of a definite and specific chemical material
(3) Physiological, the proof that this substance has definite physiological actions

Only in one or two cases, in the present state of our knowledge, have these three postulates been completely fulfilled

The following is a list of the **endocrine organs** —

1 The islets of Langerhans in the pancreas
2 The interstitial tissue in testis and ovary
3 The corpus luteum of the ovary

The first we have already considered, the other two we may postpone until we consider the organs of generation in the next chapter. The remainder, which we will discuss now are —

4 The Thyroid gland
5 The Parathyroid glands
6 The Suprarenal glands

7 The Pituitary body
8 The Thymus
9 The Pineal gland and the Coccygeal and Carotid glands

We are using the words autacoid and hormone in a restricted sense, and not including all the chemical messengers of the body, thus hæmoglobin the oxygen carrier, carbonic acid a metabolic product of all tissues and useful in stimulating respiratory activity as has been seen in relation to Respiration, the various substances absorbed from the alimentary canal from the food, the sugar produced in hepatic and other cells and so forth, are all definite chemical substances and fulfil some of the duties of messengers, but they are not the specific products of certain special glands set apart for their formation, and so are all excluded from the title of hormones proper

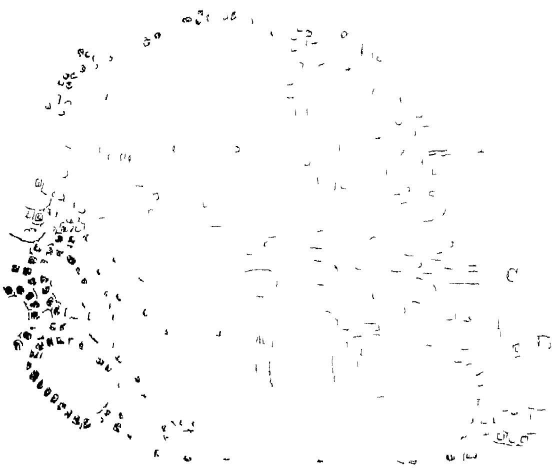


FIG 848 —Section through thyroid (B) and parathyroid (A), C is the intervening connective tissue with blood vessels (After Vincent and Jolly)

THE THYROID GLAND

The thyroid gland is situated in the neck It consists of two lobes, one on each side of the trachea, these lobes are connected across the middle line by a middle lobe or isthmus It is highly vascular

The gland is encased in a capsule of dense areolar tissue This sends in strong fibrous trabeculæ, which enclose the thyroid *vesicles*—which are rounded or oblong sacs, consisting of a wall of thin hyaline membrane lined by a single layer of short cylindrical or cubical cells These vesicles are filled with transparent colloid nucleo-protein material The colloid substance increases with age, and the cavities appear to coalesce In the interstitial connective-tissue is a capillary plexus, and a large number of lymphatics

Function—It has been definitely established that the thyroid gland regulates the metabolic rate, and in the young, the growth

FIG 349—Myxodœma (From Sir E Sharpey Schafer s *Endocrine Organs*)

FIG 350—Exophthalmic goitre (From Sir E Sharpey Schafer s *Endocrine Organs*)

of the body This conclusion has been arrived at by observations, both on man and on animals

The Effects on Metabolism

The effect of Thyroid Deficiency (hypothyroidism) — This condition may be produced experimentally in animals, it may occur spontaneously, or be produced surgically in the human subject The **basal metabolism** becomes very low and the outstanding feature is slowing down of mind and body There is, as a result, an accumulation of fuel in the form of fat, the pulse slows, and in man there is peculiar degeneration of the subcutaneous tissues which has caused the condition to be called *myxœdema* (fig 349) The face and hands become grossly swollen, and this, together with the accumulation of fat, makes the body very unwieldy The skin is dry and scaly and the hair falls out The mentality is dull The condition is completely cured by the administration of extract of thyroid from other animals

The effect of Thyroid Excess (hyperthyroidism) — This occurs when the thyroid becomes excessively active in man, and rarely from excessive administration of the extract There is an increased activity of mind and body The **metabolic rate** is markedly above normal, the individual uses up all his stores of fuel and becomes thin, the heart rate becomes excessive, there is sweating The nervous system is hyperexcitable, *e g* the reflexes are increased and there are fine tremors of the hands In man there is often produced a characteristic protrusion of the eye-balls, which has caused the name *exophthalmic goitre* to be given to the condition (fig 350) This does not occur when the hyperthyroidism is caused by administration of the extract, but is produced in animals if the long-acting sympathetic stimulant ephedrine is administered Death occurs from exhaustion, especially of the heart, but is prevented by partial removal of the organ or its destruction by X-rays

The success of such treatment furnishes complete proof that the disease is really due to the thyroid, but it has also been found that the blood of patients suffering from the condition has, like thyroid extract, the power of protecting mice against the poisonous effects of aceto-nitrile (CH_3CN)

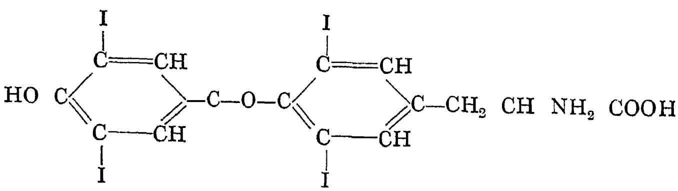
The Relation of the Thyroid to Growth —In young animals in which the thyroid has been removed, and in children in whom the thyroid is deficient, there is a marked retardation of physical and mental growth Such children are called *cretins,* and are a species of idiot, but nothing is more striking than the way in which these potential idiots, under the influence of thyroid extract, grow into useful members of society Here, as in the treatment of myxœdema, the results of experimental investigation (for the facts were not fully established until Schiff performed his experiments on dogs) have proved of the greatest service to mankind

The effect on growth appears to depend not wholly on metabolism, but also on the relationship of the thyroid to the growth of cells It is found that tadpoles fed on thyroid develop much more rapidly into frogs, although smaller than normal, than do controls not so fed (Gudersnatch) Indeed, this is now a usual method for standardising thyroid extract The Mexican axolotl, which in nature remains permanently in the tadpole stage, develops proper legs and becomes a land animal under the influence of thyroid The administration of iodine appears to have a similar effect which is probably due to an increase in the ease with which thyroxine can be elaborated since the effect depends on the presence of the thyroid

The activity of the thyroid is closely linked up with the metabolism of **iodine**, interference with the supply or absorption of which may lead to a form of thyroid disease known as simple goitre, which is a swelling of the gland due, apparently, to an accumulation of colloid material, but not necessarily associated with any symptoms It is specially prevalent where chalk abounds, as in Derbyshire, and in many districts iodine is administered to children as a precautionary measure Simple goitre may be produced also by bacterial conditions in the intestine, which apparently interfere with the absorption of iodine Small doses of iodine are also found to be of advantage in exophthalmic goitre

Thyroxine

Long before the above facts were known it was realised that the thyroid gland contained iodine in varying amounts according to the diet of the animal Delicate chemical methods have shown that many of the common articles of diet, milk, eggs, onions, carrots, etc , contain this element in sufficient quantities for our needs It has now been shown that the active principle of the thyroid contains iodine in conjunction with the amino-acid tyrosine, and it has been possible to produce thyroxine synthetically (Harington) Its formula is—



This should be compared with the formula of tyrosine on p 870 This constitution of thyroxine emphasises the importance not only of iodine but also of tyrosine in the diet

The Control of Thyroid Activity

The thyroid is probably thrown into activity by the sympathetic, since stimulation of this nerve or the injection of adrenaline causes a current of action to be produced in the gland Increased secretion has not, however, yet been demonstrated It has been claimed that some cases of exophthalmic goitre have resulted from fright, but the most suggestive experiments regarding the control of the thyroid by the sympathetic are those of Cannon who obtained the symptoms of hyperthyroidism by anastomosing the phrenic with the peripheral end of the cervical sympathetic Exophthalmos may also be produced by the administration of the sympathetic stimulant ephedrine which has a more prolonged action than adrenaline

THE PARATHYROIDS

These are small bodies, usually four in number, situated near or embedded in the substance of the thyroid They are made up of elongated groups of polyhedral cells, bound together by connective tissue, and well supplied with blood-vessels In addition to these *chief cells*, *eosinophile* cells are found in small numbers Some have supposed that parathyroid is only immature thyroid tissue, but a study of development shows that the parathyroids have a different embryonic origin from the thyroid, and in the lower vertebrates the two organs are entirely distinct Most of the facts concerning the thyroid were discovered previous to the recognition of the parathyroids, and it has gradually become evident that in removing the thyroid it was really the simultaneous removal of the parathyroids which caused the nervous symptoms The most prominent symptom after extirpation of the parathyroids is tetany (muscular spasms and twitchings)

The parathyroids are concerned with calcium metabolism In 1909 MacCallum and Voegtlin found that in tetany there was a reduction of the blood calcium, but it was not until Collip prepared an active extract in 1925 that the relationship was accepted An animal in which the parathyroids are removed is convulsive, has an excessively rapid heart, and would die from exhaustion within forty-eight hours, but it may, by the injection of the extract, be kept alive Further, the blood calcium, which may have fallen to about half the normal 10 mgr per 100 c c of blood, will rise, possibly well above normal

On the other hand, it is found that if excessive parathyroid is administered the blood calcium may become double the normal, and instead of there being the hyperexcitability seen above, there is a general depression of the nervous system with drowsiness,

muscular flaccidity and unconsciousness, which results in death Clotting of the blood occurs in the vessels immediately after death The source of the excess of calcium in the blood is the bones, which must be regarded as storehouses of calcium to be called upon if need arises When depleted the bones become soft

Glandular tumours of the parathyroid giving rise to similar symptoms have now been described in man An excessive loss of calcium may occur in cows after calving from the secretion of milk This is known as "milk fever" in cows, and the condition is rapidly fatal unless calcium is administered or the udder distended with air to prevent calcium excretion

We must understand that in the regulation of calcium metabolism the parathyroid co-operates with other agencies, *e g*, with the vitamin D of the diet, which influences calcium retention in the body

More recently J H Thompson has found that extracts of parathyroid have a remarkable power of retarding normal growth, but it is not yet certain whether this effect is due to minute quantities of the calcium factor or to a separate substance in the gland

In addition to the above function, considerable evidence has been put forward by Noel Paton and his colleagues that the parathyroid is also concerned with the protection of the body against the substance guanidine, which is closely related to the creatine of muscle or methyl-guanidine acetic acid It may be that the calcium is concerned in the protection, but definite evidence is not yet available

THE SUPRARENAL OR ADRENAL CAPSULES.

These are two triangular bodies, each resting upon the upper border of the kidney

The gland is surrounded by an outer sheath of connective tissue, and consists of an outside firmer cortex and an inside soft, dark medulla Each portion is developed separately

(1) The **cortex** is divided into (fig 351) columnar groups of cells (*zona fasciculata*) Immediately under the capsule, however, the groups are more rounded (*zona glomerulosa*), while next to the medulla they have a reticular arrangement (*zona reticularis*) The cells are polyhedral, each with a nucleus, and contain lipoid globules

(2) The **medulla** consists of a coarse meshwork of fibrous tissue, in the alveoli of which are masses of multinucleated protoplasm (fig 352), numerous blood-vessels (sinusoids, see p 869), and an abundance of nerve-fibres and cells

The tissue of the suprarenal medulla is often called *chromaphil* tissue, on account of the ready way in which it stains with chromic salts Such tissue is, moreover, not confined to the suprarenal, but is found in scattered patches in the retro-peritoneal region and in many sympathetic ganglia, especially in the

abdomen. The histological resemblance is accentuated by the presence of numerous sympathetic cells in the suprarenal medulla. The chromaphil tissue wherever found always yields adrenaline.

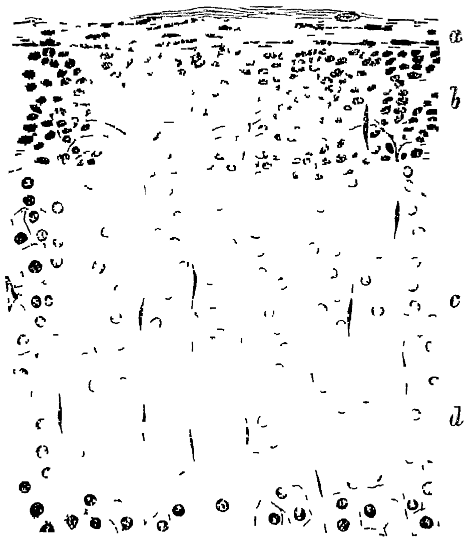


FIG. 851.—Vertical section through part of the cortical portion of suprarenal of guinea pig. *a*, Capsule; *b*, zona glomerulosa; *c*, zona fasciculata; *d*, connective tissue supporting the columns of the cells of the latter, and also indicating the position of the blood vessels. (S. K. Alcock.)

The importance of the suprarenal bodies was first indicated by Addison, who, in 1855, pointed out that the disease now known

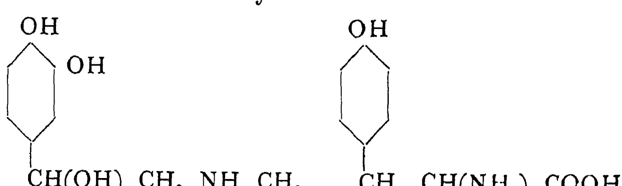
FIG. 852.—Section through a portion of the medullary part of the suprarenal of guinea pig. The vessels are very numerous, the fibrous stroma more distinct than in the cortex, and is, moreover, reticulated. The cells are irregular and larger, clear, and free from oil globules. (S. K. Alcock.)

by his name is associated with pathological alterations of these glands Brown-Séquard found a few years later that removal of the suprarenals in animals is invariably and rapidly fatal The symptoms are practically the same (although more acute) as those of **Addison's disease**, namely, great muscular weakness, loss of vascular tone, and nervous prostration The pigmentation (bronzing) of the skin, however, which is a marked symptom in Addison's disease, is not seen in animals These experiments have been confirmed by Abelous, Langlois, Schafer, and others, but more and more evidence has accumulated to show that it is the cortex rather than the medulla which is essential to life

Effects of Extracts of the Suprarenal

The activity of suprarenal extract was discovered by Schafer and Oliver in 1894, and since that time a large amount of work has been done

Adrenaline—The active principle may be extracted from the medulla of the gland and has been isolated by Takamine and synthesised It is shown to be closely related to tyrosine, but the exact significance of this fact is not yet understood



[Adrenaline] [Tyrosine]

Its various actions suggest a preparation for muscular activity The immediate **effect on the circulation** of intravenous injection is most striking It causes a marked rise of blood pressure, as a result of great constriction of the arterioles and, probably, the capillaries If the vagus nerves have been cut the effect on blood pressure is still greater, since the drug then causes the heart to contract with greater force and speed This effect may be shown on the isolated heart perfused with Locke's solution The slowing of the heart when the vagi are intact is due partly to the operation of the depressor and carotid reflexes (Heymans), and partly to direct action of the drug or increased cranial pressure (Anrep and Starling) on the vagus centre

The action of adrenaline appears to be more particularly marked on the vessels of the alimentary canal and the skin, although, in large doses, it probably constricts all vessels If a limb is skinned, moderate doses, as shown by the plethysmograph, cause the vessels

to *dilate*, although the control normal limb diminishes in volume The coronary arteries are also considered to be exempt

The action of adrenaline is reversed by ergotoxin and ergotamine

Very small doses of adrenaline, 1 in 1,000,000, in etherised animals cause a fall of blood pressure, due it appears to the skin and alimentary vessels being thrown out of action by the ether and to the fact that the effect on the vessels of the muscles is able to show itself (Dunlop)

Effect on Metabolism and Respiration—Adrenaline has also an important action in the mobilisation of glucose It reduces the glycogen in the liver, at the same time causing a hyperglycæmia and consequent glycosuria It thus counteracts the effects of insulin

It has been shown also to increase the metabolic rate In the unanæsthetised animal, or in an animal which has been allowed to rest under chloralose anæsthesia, a marked and prolonged increase of respiration is evident, but whether this is secondary to the metabolic effect is not clear

This is to be distinguished from the better known "apnœa," which occurs immediately after the injection of a large dose of adrenaline, and which has now been shown to be due to impulses which pass up in the vagus and from the carotid sinus as a result of the rise of blood-pressure (Heymans, Samson Wright)

Effects on the Alimentary Canal—If a piece of intestine is placed in a bath of Ringer's solution (which contains in addition phosphate ions), spontaneous contraction occurs This is stopped by small doses of adrenaline This and other experiments indicate that the movements of the alimentary canal are brought to a standstill by the action of adrenaline The sphincters, ileocolic and pyloric, are stimulated and food is thereby prevented from moving from one region to another (Elliott) The muscularis mucosa is also inhibited (Gunn)

Other Effects—Adrenaline also causes dilatation of the bronchi, and for this reason it is extensively used in the treatment of spasmodic asthma

Of recent years considerable attention has been focussed on the action of adrenaline on voluntary muscle in consideration of the sympathetic supply of the latter It appears, however, to be established that adrenaline has no effect on muscle tone, but that it does definitely have an effect in improving muscular contraction (Schafer), and in diminishing muscle fatigue (Nice and Cannon) This may be looked upon as subsidiary to the effects described above

Adrenaline dilates the pupil and erects the hairs in lower animals The dilatation of the pupil occurs after all nerves to the eye have been cut, indeed, if the nerves have been allowed to degenerate, the pupil reaction becomes more sensitive than before, a fact which shows clearly that adrenaline, although it acts like

the sympathetic, does not act on nerve-endings but possibly through an intermediate substance

In amphibia, adrenaline causes a contraction of the pigment cells of the skin, causing the animal to be pale in colour The one sympathomimetic action which adrenaline lacks is on the sweat glands

Development—This relationship to the sympathetic is also seen in the mode of development of the gland The *medulla* of the organ is developed, quite separately from the cortex, from that part of the neural crest which subsequently becomes differentiated into the sympathetic and the posterior root ganglia It is, therefore, of interest that sensory stimulation, adrenaline, and stimulation of the sympathetic all bring about similar reactions

The medulla gradually grows into the *cortex* which is developed in relation to the upper part of the Wolffian body and therefore to the ovary and testis In certain fishes this amalgamation does not take place, and so in them it has been possible to note the effects of removal of one part or the other From these experiments, and from others in mammals where operations for removing one part only have been attempted, as well as from the study of disease, the conclusion has been reached that of the two the cortex is the more essential for life

The Functions of the Suprarenal Glands—The exact function of adrenaline and whether or not it is circulated in the blood in the resting animal has been much debated, but on the whole it is agreed that probably it is not A large number of facts, however, go to show that it may be thrown into the circulation under conditions of stress The secretion of adrenaline is certainly under control of the medulla, since, if this is excited by asphyxia or if the splanchnic nerves which supply the gland are stimulated, adrenaline is secreted Great difficulty has been experienced in arriving at any method of demonstrating the secretion of adrenaline, the best evidence is acceleration of the denervated heart and dilatation of the pupil in an animal whose eye reaction has been made specially sensitive by the previous section of the sympathetic nervous supply According to Cannon, adrenaline is secreted under conditions of emotional stress, such as rage and fear, and from what has just been said regarding the action of adrenaline and of the sympathetic, it will be seen that the secretion of adrenaline will be of considerable advantage in augmenting the action of the nervous mechanisms and, in exercise that of carbon dioxide, in increasing the heart rate, metabolic rate, blood-sugar, and respiration

A secretion of adrenaline is produced by cold and by fever (Cramer), for if after these conditions are caused the amount of adrenaline in the glands is estimated it is found to be much less than the normal resting value No doubt the action of adrenaline assists in protecting the animal against cold by constricting the

vessels of the skin Estimations of the amount of adrenaline in the suprarenal are made by extracting the gland and finding the minimum which will inhibit a piece of spontaneously contracting intestine, or by estimating the depth of the blue colour the extract produces with certain reagents

Another important function of the suprarenal is undoubtedly the annulling of the effects of toxic substances, such as histamine, which may be absorbed from the intestine or from wounds Histamine is the degradation product of the amino-acid histidine, which is produced by the digestion of protein It has been shown by Kellaway and Cowell that an animal in which the medulla of the suprarenal has been destroyed is especially sensitive to the capillary dilator effects of histamine, while it may also be demonstrated that under suitable conditions there may be a secretion of adrenaline when histamine is injected intravenously (Dale and Burn) In certain circumstances this rise due to adrenaline may be permanent or at least very prolonged (McDowall), a fact which may have an important bearing on the production of high blood-pressure in man

The precise function of the **suprarenal cortex** is still unknown Removal of the cortex brings about death in one to three weeks, apparently because the capillaries become excessively permeable (Swingle) It has recently been possible to keep adrenalectomised animals alive by means of extracts of the cortex (Swingle and Pfiffner, Hartmann) and the substance has been found valuable in Addison's disease It is claimed that the extract protects against the action of histamine, and it may be suggested that the active principle affects the permeability of membranes generally in which lipides play an important part (Leathes) The cortex is particularly rich in vitamin C having three times the amount in orange juice (Szent-Gyorgyi) The cortical cells contain large amounts of lipide material and choline That being so, one would expect a relationship between the cortex and the organs of the body which are specially rich in lipide substances, namely the generative organs and the central nervous system The view that it has an effect on the development of the generative organs is supported by observations that tumour-overgrowths of the cortex lead in male children to premature development of the sexual organs and pubic hair, and in females to the appearance of masculine characters, such as the growth of hair, enlarged clitoris with diminution of the breasts, and by the facts of its development (p 872)

The cortex is appreciably larger in the female and enlarges appreciably in pregnancy when the blood cholesterol is increased This suggests that it has some importance in regulation of body activities during pregnancy M'Carrison emphasises also that the cortex is antagonistic to the thyroid

THE PITUITARY BODY, OR HYPOPHYSIS

This occupies the sella turcica of the sphenoid bone It may be divided into several parts, which show developmental, structural, and functional differences (P T Hering)

(1) *The anterior lobe* is developed as a tubular prolongation from the ectoderm of the buccal cavity, but the growth of intervening tissue soon cuts off all connection with the mouth It consists of large granular cells and numerous blood-vessels

(2) *The posterior lobe*—This is connected to the floor of the third ventricle, of which it forms a developmental outgrowth, in some animals (cat) it remains hollow throughout life, in others (dog) the neck alone remains hollow, and in most (including man) both body and neck are solid, with traces of a cavity in the neck Though developed from the brain, it contains in the adult no nerve cells, but consists mainly of neuroglia It is surrounded and invaded by the epithelium cells and colloid matter derived from the pars intermedia It plays the part of a gland in virtue of these epithelial cells

(3) *The pars intermedia*—This lies between the anterior and posterior lobes, and forms a closely fitting investment of the latter lobe It is developed in association with the anterior lobe, and consists of finely granular cells arranged in layers closely applied to the body and neck of the posterior lobe and the under-surface of adjacent parts of the brain Colloid material occurs between the cells and passes into the interior of the posterior lobe, and so into the cerebrospinal fluid third ventricle of the brain

(4) *The pars tuberalis*—This surrounds the stalk by which the pituitary body is connected to the brain, at the tuber cinereum just in front of the optic chiasma, II in fig 247 It has a glandular structure and is very vascular and has a special importance because tumours of this region lead to a great deposition of fat and upset of carbohydrate metabolism Similar results occur from damage to the hypothalamic area which probably controls the pituitary secretions

The Functions of the Pituitary Body

It was first recognised by Marie and Marinesco in 1889, that increase in the size of the pituitary led to abnormality in growth, but it was not until 1894 that Oliver and Schafer demonstrated that extracts of the gland had certain important actions Since that time a large mass of evidence has accumulated to show that, as the development would lead one to expect, the two main parts of the organ have apparently different functions

The Anterior Lobe—Experiments on animals show that this part of the gland appears to be essential to life, but if a portion

only of it is removed it is observed that the animal fails to grow (Sutherland Simpson) By far the most important observations have been made in man when the pituitary becomes diseased

Hypopituitarism—In man, a variety of changes may occur, but there are several outstanding features of which the most marked are dwarfism, the failure of skeletal and mental development, lack of development of the genital and the secondary sexual characteristics, and the tendency to store fat (dystrophia adiposo-genitalis) There is often also a simple polyuria (diabetes insipidus) In certain cases, only some of the characteristics appear, *e g*, the adiposity or lack of sexual development These differences are possibly due to the extent to which the posterior lobe is affected Cushing has emphasised that the Frohlich's syndrome (adiposity) is specially related to disease of the pars tuberalis

Hyperpituitarism—Experimentally the administration of extract to young animals has been shown to produce an increase in size

FIG 353—Acromegaly, successive stages (From Sir E Sharpey Schafer's *Endocrine Organs*)

The administration has apparently, however, to be made by injection into the peritoneum in mammals, but successful experiments by feeding have been recorded in salamanders (Uhlenhuth)

In man, the effect of increased activity of the gland depends on whether growth has stopped when the increase begins If the epiphyses have not joined, the bones of the limbs, etc, become excessively long, or gigantism is produced The Irish giant, described by John Hunter in the eighteenth century, was shown by Keith to have an enlarged sella turcica Later, only the overgrowth in the other bones occurs This is especially seen in the lower bones of the face and the bones of the hands and feet, which become grossly enlarged, a characteristic appearance results which has caused the condition to be known as acromegaly (fig 353)

Relation to Organs of Reproduction—It is now evident that the anterior lobe is also related to the function of the ovaries In animals injected intraperitoneally Evans and Long have found that

although the ovaries develop they do not ovulate while the extract stimulates the production of corpora lutea. Similarly Parkes has shown that transplantations induce premature puberty and mammary activity in rabbits. In man it has been recorded that hypopituitarism is accompanied by a general depression of sexual functions.

The Posterior Lobe and Pars Intermedia.—These do not appear to be so important for life, but they elaborate the substance, **pituitrin**, which causes some very characteristic reactions. Much of the early work was carried out with watery extracts, which contain also the depressor substances present in most tissues; but by preliminary alcoholic extraction these can be removed, and a purer substance is thus obtained. The active principle of the posterior lobe is not destroyed by boiling.

Effect on the Circulation.—The effect of intravenous injection is to produce a marked temporary rise of blood-pressure, which, however, is more prolonged than that due to adrenaline. Unlike the rise caused by adrenaline, however, the effect is not repeated, or is at any rate diminished, when a second injection is made soon after the effects of the first has worn off; the reason for this is not yet clear. Many commercial preparations still contain some of the depressor substances present in most tissues, and when the pressor action has passed off the depressor effect becomes evident. The constriction of the skin vessels is very marked, and often the pallor caused thereby creates alarm, although it has not necessarily any serious significance. In spite of this vasoconstriction the blood-pressure of man does not rise appreciably, if at all, indicating that there is considerable vascular compensation. The slowing of the heart, which takes place, may be part of the compensation.

Effect on the Kidney.—The effect of the extract on the secretion of urine depends on whether or not the animal is anæsthetised. In man, or unanæsthetised animals, there is a reduction in the amount of urine and, for this reason, pituitrin may be used to reduce the amount of urine in *diabetes insipidus*, a condition in which large quantities of dilute urine are passed. Since it has now been shown that pituitary extract increases the amount of chloride in the urine (Starling and Verney), it appears probable that the increased facility to excrete this salt diminishes the need to excrete large quantities of water.

In anæsthetised animals, pituitary extract increases the flow of urine, apparently as a result of dilatation of the kidney vessels. This fact is not related to the rise of blood-pressure which may be caused, since it may be brought about by later doses, which do not cause the rise.

Effect on Plain Muscle.—In lactating animals it causes the milk to flow, not because it is an active galactogogue, but because it produces constriction of the muscle fibres around the mammary

ducts and alveoli Similar plain muscle surrounding tubes, *e g* Fallopian, and blood-vessels are constricted, but if the extract is free from histamine the intestine is not affected

Effect on the Uterus (oxytocic action)—Of all varieties of plain muscle this appears to be the most sensitive The uterus of the virgin guinea-pig is the favourite test object It is suspended in oxygenated Ringer's solution at 37° from a weighted lever which records the contractions The extract is standardised by comparing the contraction of an unknown sample with that caused by a standard sample, extraordinary dilute solutions of the extract cause contraction, Abel states that 1 part in 250 millions is sufficient "Oxytocic" means "quick delivery," and the extract is used with due precautions in obstetric practice, but too large doses have been known to cause rupture of the uterus The fact that cerebro-spinal fluid gives the oxytocic test suggests that the pituitary secretion enters that fluid It has been suggested that such pituitary secretion is responsible for the onset of labour, but since its injection does not cause labour in an animal not at full time it is evident that other factors are concerned Recently Kamm has prepared a product "oxytocin" which is claimed to be almost free from the vasoconstrictor ("vaso-pressin") fraction

Effect on Pigment Cells of Amphibia—Unlike adrenaline, pituitary extract injected into a frog causes a darkening of the skin from dilatation of the melanophores This result is brought about with very small doses—a fraction of a cubic centimetre of a one in a million solution—and it may therefore be used as a test Removal of the posterior lobe in the frog, on the other hand, causes constriction of the skin melanophores and, consequently, pallor The substance which produces this effect appears to be concentrated in the pars intermedia (Hogben and Winton)

Effect on Carbohydrate Metabolism—The extract may cause a slight rise of the blood-sugar, but it appears quite definitely to have the power of antagonising insulin (Burn) The fact that in diseases of the pituitary body there is a tendency to fat storage and marked increase in sugar tolerance, *i e*, a much greater amount of sugar can be ingested without causing glycosuria, indicates that in such cases there has been a loss of this function On the other hand, in diseases of the anterior lobe there may be some initial stimulation of the other parts of the gland, which brings about a hyperglycæmia and glycosuria, later this gives place to evidences of loss of function of those portions when they degenerate as a result of the pressure of the enlarged anterior lobe

The function of the pituitary body may be looked upon as that of a regulator of some of the most important processes in the body The anterior lobe is intimately connected with growth, while the

pars intermedia is concerned with metabolism, the exact function of the pars nervosa is as yet undetermined Both parts of the organ appear to control the reproductive functions, the anterior part being concerned with sexual development and the posterior with many of the adaptations and mechanisms of pregnancy

THE THYMUS.

This gland attains its greatest size soon after birth, and after the second year it gradually diminishes, until in adult life hardly a vestige remains, it is then replaced by adipose and connective tissue This, at any rate, has been the general belief until the last few years Some recent observations, however, appear to show that the thymus persists longer, and may grow until puberty, and that some true thymus tissue may persist throughout life The removal of the thymus is not fatal

FIG 354 —The reticulum of the thymus *a*, Lymph cells, *b*, corpuscles of Hassall (Cadiat)

The gland is surrounded by a fibrous capsule, which sends in processes, forming trabeculæ, that divide the gland into lobes, and carry the blood- and lymph-vessels The large trabeculæ branch into small ones, which divide the lobes into lobules The lobules are further subdivided into follicles by fine connective tissue A follicle is polyhedral in shape, and consists of cortical and medullary portions, both of which are composed of adenoid or lymphoid tissue, but in the medullary portion the matrix is coarser, and is not so filled up with lymphoid corpuscles as in the cortex Scattered in the lymphoid tissue of the medulla are the *concentric corpuscles of Hassall* (fig 354), which are nests or islands of epithelial cells cut off from the epithelium of the pharynx in process of development

It has generally been assumed that the lymphoid tissue of which it is composed forms colourless corpuscles, Stohr's contention that it is not true lymphoid tissue has not met with acceptance

It has been stated that in hibernating animals, in which it undoubtedly persists throughout life, that as each hibernating period approaches the gland enlarges, and its cells become laden with fat In this case, the store of fat will help to maintain combustion processes during the winter sleep

Lately it has been suggested that there is some relationship between the thymus and the generative organs, and this view is supported by the circumstance that castration retards the atrophy of the thymus, whilst removal of the thymus hastens the growth of the testes

The evidence that the thymus has any internal secretion is thus very slender It should perhaps be better classed with the lymphoid organs we have already studied

The Pineal Gland.

This gland, which is a small reddish body, is placed beneath the corpus callosum, and rests upon the corpora quadrigemina It is composed of tubes and saccules lined and sometimes filled with epithelial cells, and containing deposits of earthy salts (brain sand) A few small atrophied nerve-cells without axons are also seen

In certain lizards, such as Hatteria, and in certain fishes such as the lamprey, the pineal outgrowth is better developed and may be paired One division corresponds to the pineal gland, the other becomes developed into an eye-like structure connected by nerve-fibres to the habenular ganglion, this third eye is situated centrally on the upper surface of the head but is covered by skin

The chief claim the pineal gland has to be considered an endocrine organ is that it has possibly some obscure relationship to the development of the sexual organs

The Coccygeal and Carotid Glands

These are situated, the one in front of the tip of the coccyx and the other at the point of bifurcation of the common carotid artery They are made up of a plexus of small arteries, and are enclosed and supported by fibrous tissue They contain also polyhedral cells collected into spheroidal clumps (carotid gland) or irregular nodules (coccygeal gland) Some of the cells of the carotid gland stain brown with chromic acid like those of the suprarenal medulla

General —From what has been said it is evident that the endocrine organs form important chemical substances for the control of the body, but it must be understood that they themselves are controlled by the nervous system The advantage of chemical over nervous control of organs is that it can be more generalised and more prolonged As yet, however, we know very little of the way in which the secretions of the ductless glands are brought into relationship with the requirements of the animal

CHAPTER LX

REPRODUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT

AN adequate discussion of this large subject would require a book as long as the present volume It would lead us far into biological fields and into discussions of a philosophical and hypothetical nature which would be quite out of place in a physiological text-book All we can do is to put down the important facts, and specially to dwell on those which have a physiological bearing Evolution has in the past been specially studied from the anatomical point of view, but it has its physiological counterpart, for as structures increase in complexity, so also does function become correspondingly differentiated and varied

The explanation of heredity is a subject on which much difference of opinion prevails It does, however, appear to be pretty well accepted that the material of the nucleus of the male and female reproductive elements is of special importance in the transmission of hereditary characters That the chromosomes of the nucleus are of vital importance is clearly shown by several facts For instance, they are constant in number not only in the cells of the body but in all individuals of any particular species of animal or plant, though differing in number in different species The equal halving of each chromosome, which occurs during mitosis, maintains this numerical constancy, except in a certain period of the life-history of each individual, and this period occurs in the formation of the reproductive cells (often called *gametes*) During one step in the karyokinetic cell-division, half of the normal number of chromosomes are thrown out, and the act of fertilisation consists in the fusion of the male and female gametes, each parental nucleus provides half the normal number of chromosomes, and thus the fertilised egg-cell starts with the full complement once more Many biologists regard the chromosomes as the actual bearers of the characters which an organism inherits from its parents, or, at any rate, they adopt this view as a working hypothesis Weismann's view that characters acquired after birth are not transmissible rests on negative evidence only, and so cannot be considered as proved

fowl is comparable to what Mendel supposed to exist in his hybrid peas The gametes of the breed, according to this hypothesis, instead of being all similar and carrying the blue character, are of two different kinds, those of the one kind being bearers of the black character, and those of the other being bearers of the splashed-white character Such gametes, uniting by chance when the fowls mate together, give rise to three kinds of offspring, one black-white (becoming blue, actually, like the parents), one black-black, and one white-white, these appearing (on an average) in the proportion of 2 1 1 according to the law of probability The segregation of gametes carrying different characters is the essential principle in Mendel's theory, the existence of dominant and recessive characters, though often observable, being by no means universal Thus in the case of the Andalusian fowl neither the black character nor the "splashed-white" is dominant, and neither is recessive

In a simple unicellular organism such as the amœba, there is not only no differentiation of sex, but there is also no differentiation between the reproductive element (Weismann's germ plasm) and the remainder of the body (Weismann's somatoplasm) When the amœba propagates itself by dividing into two new amœbæ, the whole animal is concerned in the act of reproduction, and, barring accidents, the new amœba may behave in this way indefinitely, and so may be spoken of as immortal In this sense the only part of the body which is immortal in the higher animals is the germ-plasm

THE GENERAL POST-NATAL LIFE-HISTORY OF MAN

The new-born child, which in the uterus was obtaining its nutriment and oxygen from its mother's blood, is severed from the organ called the placenta, by means of which this was accomplished, by cutting through the umbilical cord The want of oxygen is met by the child beginning to breathe, and its nutriment is supplied by its mother's milk, which later on is supplemented and replaced by other articles of diet Immediately after birth certain changes occur in the circulatory system, the foramen ovale, the opening between the two auricles, begins to close, and so do the ductus arteriosus and the ductus venosus The now functionless umbilical vessels close also until they are reduced to mere fibrous cords These changes are completed in a few days, and the circulation then takes the course it traverses for the rest of life

In addition to this there are changes of a more general kind, the most obvious of which is growth, this is accompanied with the completion in the formation of certain organs and tissues which are in a comparatively immature condition when the child is born Thus medullation of the fibres in the central nervous system is

taking place, and the process of ossification continues until the bony skeleton is perfected. The generative organs reach maturity at the period of life known as *puberty*.

The rate of growth after birth is not so rapid as it is *in utero*, and every year the relative increase in size gets less and less. On the average, girls in the earlier years grow more than boys, but at the onset of puberty this relationship is usually reversed. At puberty there is generally an acceleration of the rate of growth in both sexes, but this gradually declines, and finally growth ceases.

Puberty then is the period at which the sexual organs become matured and functional. In girls this occurs on the average at about fourteen or fifteen years of age, and is marked by the onset of menstruation. Menstruation, or the monthly flow, continues until the age of forty-five to fifty, when it ceases either gradually or suddenly, and after this period (the menopause or climacteric) further production of offspring is not possible. The menopause may be accompanied with great depression and other disturbances of a physical and mental nature.

In boys, puberty is usually a little later developed than in girls, but there is no limit at the other end of life corresponding to the menopause.

In both sexes the onset of puberty is accompanied by the secondary sexual characters becoming pronounced, such as the increase in fullness of the mammæ in the female, and the growth of hair on the face and the increase in size of the larynx which leads to the deepening of the pitch of the voice in the male.

THE MALE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

These consist of the two testes which produce spermatozoa, and the ducts which lead from them.

The testis is enclosed in a serous membrane called the *tunica vaginalis*, originally a part of the peritoneum, which descends into the scrotum before the testis and subsequently gets entirely cut off from the remainder of the peritoneum. There are, however, many animals in which the testes remain permanently in the abdomen. The external covering of the testicle itself is a strong fibrous capsule, called, on account of its white appearance, the *tunica albuginea*. Passing from its inner surface are a number of septa or trabeculæ, which divide the organ imperfectly into lobules. On the posterior aspect of the organ the capsule is greatly thickened, and forms a mass of fibrous tissue called the *corpus Highmorianum* (body of Highmore) or *mediastinum testis*. Attached to this is a much convoluted tube, which forms a mass called the *epididymis*. This receives the

ducts of the testis, and is prolonged into a thick-walled tube, the *vas deferens*, by which the semen passes to the urethra

Each lobule of the testicle contains several *convoluted* tubes Every tube commences near the tunica albuginea, and terminates after joining with others in a *straight tubule*, which passes into the body of Highmore, where it ends in a network of tubes, the *rete testis* From the rete about fifteen efferent ducts (*vasa efferentia*) arise, which become convoluted to form the *coni vasculosi*, and then pass into the tube of the epididymis

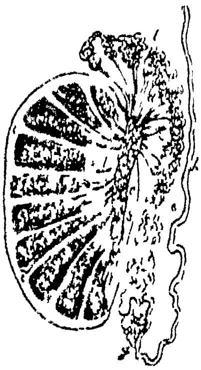


FIG 855 —Plan of a vertical section of the testicle, showing the arrangement of the ducts The true length and diameter of the ducts have been disregarded *a a* Tubuli seminiferi coiled up in the separate lobes, *b*, tubuli recti, *c*, rete testis, *d*, vasa efferentia ending in the coni vasculosi, *l*, *i*, *g*, convoluted canal of the epididymis, *h*, vas deferens, *f*, body of Highmore, *i i*, fibrous processes running between the lobes

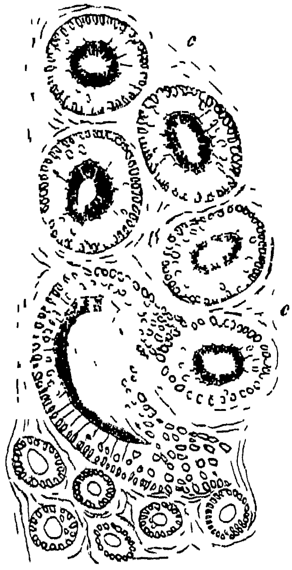


FIG 856 —Section of the epididymis of a dog —The tube is cut in several places, both transversely and obliquely, it is seen to be lined by a ciliated epithelium, the nuclei of which are well shown *c*, Connective tissue (Schofield)

The *convoluted* or seminiferous tubes have the following structure each consists of (1) an outer wall of flattened connective-tissue cells intermingled with elastic fibres, (2) a fine membrana propria, (3) a lining epithelium of several layers of germinal cells Next to the membrana propria is a layer consisting of *spermatogonia* and supporting or nurse cells (*Cells of Sertoli*) which provide nutriment for the developing spermatozoa More internally, between the projecting processes of the nurse cells, are large *primary spermatocytes*, derived from the division of the spermatogonia Still nearer the lumen of the tube lie the *secondary spermatocytes*, which are the

daughter-cells of the primary spermatocytes, the secondary spermatocytes give rise by division to the *spermatids* which lie next the lumen The spermatids become embedded in the inner ends of the nurse cells, where they grow and become converted into spermatozoa

The interstitial connective tissue of the testis is loose, and contains numerous lymphatic clefts Lying in it, accompanying the blood-vessels, are strands of epithelial cells, of a yellowish colour (*interstitial cells*)

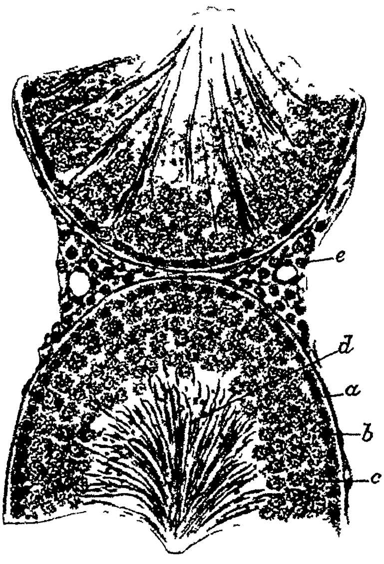


FIG 357 —Section through portion of two seminiferous tubules of the testis, showing also interstitial tissue *a*, Basement membrane, *b*, spermatogonium, *c*, spermatocyte, *d*, spermatozoa in cavity of tubule, *e*, interstitial tissue with blood vessels (Marshall)

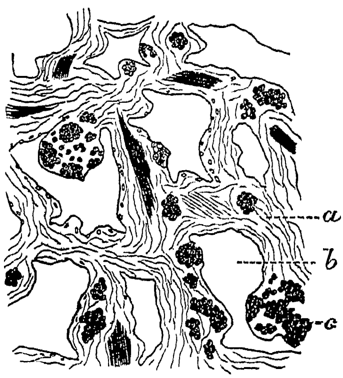


FIG 358 —Erectile tissue of the human penis *a*, Fibrous trabeculæ with their ordinary capillaries, *b*, section of the venous sinuses, *c*, muscular tissue (Cadiat)

The *straight tubules* consist of basement membrane and lining cubical epithelium only The *tubules of the rete testis* are lined by cubical epithelium, the basement membrane is absent The *vasa efferentia* and *epididymis* are lined by columnar cells, some of which are ciliated, while others are devoid of cilia, and probably possess secretory functions There is a good deal of muscular tissue in their walls The *vas* or *ductus deferens* consists of a muscular wall (outer layer longitudinal, middle circular, inner longitudinal), lined by a mucous membrane, the inner surface of which is covered by columnar epithelium

The *vesiculæ seminales* are outgrowths of the vasa deferentia Each is a much convoluted, branched, and sacculated tube of structure similar to that of the vas deferens, except that the wall is thinner, their secretion is added to the semen, as is also the secretion of the glands of the prostate

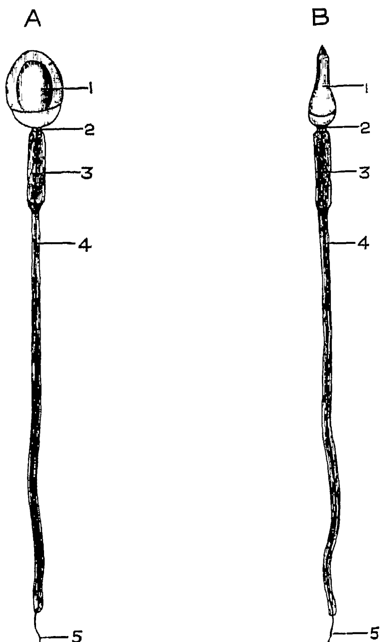


FIG 359 —Semi diagrammatic representation of human spermatozoa A, front view, B, side view 1 Acrosome, surrounding head, 2, neck, 3, middle piece, 4, tail, 5, end piece The axial filament runs through the body and tail into the end piece

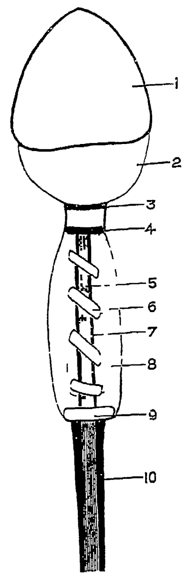


FIG 360 — Diagram of part of a human spermatozoon highly magnified (after Meves) 1, Acrosome, 2, head, 3, anterior centriole in neck, 4, posterior centriole in neck, 5, axial filament, 6, spiral sheath, 7, sheath of axial filament in middle piece, 8, mitochondrial sheath, 9, annulus, 10, thick sheath of axial filament in tail

The *penis* is composed of cavernous tissue covered by skin The cavernous tissue is collected into three tracts, the two *corpora cavernosa* and the *corpus spongiosum* in the middle line inferiorly All these are enclosed in a capsule of fibrous and plain muscular tissue, the septa which are continued in from this capsule, form the boundaries of the cavernous venous spaces of the tissue The arteries run in the septa, the capillaries open into the venous spaces The arteries are often called *helicine,* as in injected specimens they

form twisted loops projecting into the cavernous spaces (see also "Circulation")

The Spermatozoa —The semen is a richly albuminous fluid in which are suspended the spermatozoa Each spermatozoon consists of a head, a middle-piece and a tail The head is oval and flattened It is composed of a nucleus, in which the chromosomes are so compressed together as to be indistinguishable, and an acrosome The acrosome forms a cap over the anterior end of the nucleus The sperm effects entrance into the ovum at fertilisation by means of this acrosome, which probably liberates substances which assist in perforating the zona-pellucida of the egg The middle-piece is composed of a neck, containing one or two centrioles, and the middle-piece proper The axial filament of the tail originates in the centrioles contained in the neck immediately behind the nucleus It traverses the middle-piece and the whole length of the tail The cytoplasm surrounding the axial filament in the middle-piece contains the granular structures known as mitochondria and Golgi bodies A delicate cytoplasmic sheath surrounds the axial filament throughout the greater part of the length of the tail, but this is absent at the extreme posterior end, which is known as the end-piece

THE FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS

These consist of the two ovaries which produce ova, and the uterus with the Fallopian tubes and vagina which are continuous with it

The Ovary is composed of fibrous tissue (stroma) containing, near its attachment to the broad ligament, a number of plain muscle fibres It is covered by a layer of cubical cells, called the germinal epithelium, which, in young animals, is seen dipping down, here and there, into the stroma The stroma generally contains a number of interstitial cells

Sections of the ovary show that the stroma is crowded with a number of rounded cells, the *oocytes*, which are contained in numerous vesicles of different sizes called *Graafian follicles* The smallest follicles are near the surface, the largest are deeply placed, but as they expand they again approach the surface, and ultimately rupture upon it

The smallest follicles consist of a single layer of epithelium surrounding the oocyte, and an outer layer of fibrous connective tissue derived from the stroma In larger follicles the epithelium is many-layered and is known as the **membrana granulosa** The outer layer is also differentiated into an inner vascular layer, the **theca interna**, and an outer fibrous layer, the **theca externa**

During the later growth of the follicle a cavity, the **antrum**, appears in the membrana granulosa and enlarges until it occupies the major

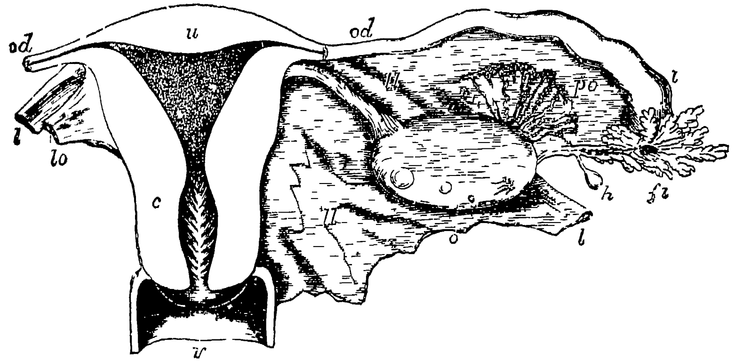


FIG 361 —Diagrammatic view of the uterus and its appendages, as seen from behind The uterus and [illegible] e vagina have been laid open by removing the posterior wall, the Fallopian tube, [illegible] and ovarian ligament have been cut short, and the broad ligament removed on the [illegible] upper part of the uterus, *c*, the cervix opposite the os internum, the triangular shape of the uterine cavity is shown, and the dilatation of the cervical cavity with the rugæ termed arbor vitæ, *v*, upper part of the vagina, *od*, Fallopian tube or oviduct, the narrow communication of its cavity with that of the cornu of the uterus on each side is seen, *l*, round [illegible] of the ovary, *o*, ovary, *i*, wide outer part of the right Fallopian tube, [illegible] *po*, parovarium, *h*, one of the hydatids frequently found connected with the broad ligament ½ (Allen Thomson)

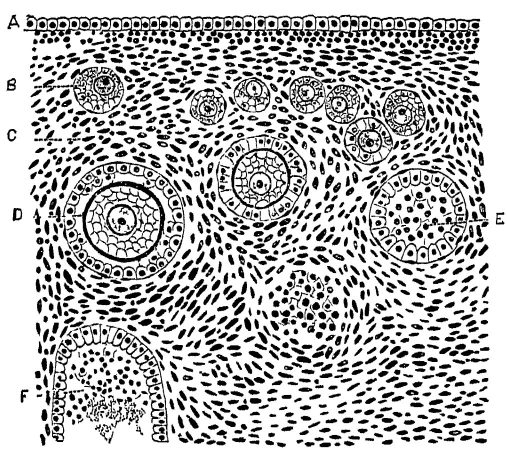


FIG 362 —Section of the ovary of a cat A, germinal epithelium, B, immature Graafian follicle, C, stroma of ovary, D, zona pellucida [illegible] the primary oocyte, E, Graafian follicle showing lining cells, F, follicle from which [illegible] fallen out (V D Harris)

part of the follicle The cells of the membrana granulosa line this cavity and form a discus proligerus around the oocyte which projects

into it The antrum is filled with fluid, the liquor folliculi The Graafian follicle finally ruptures and liberates the discus proligerus with the contained oocyte, which then enters the Fallopian tube This process of ovulation probably occurs in woman about every four weeks

After ovulation a glandular structure, the **corpus luteum**, develops in the cavity of the ruptured follicle The corpus luteum is formed by the ingrowth of the cells of the membrana granulosa

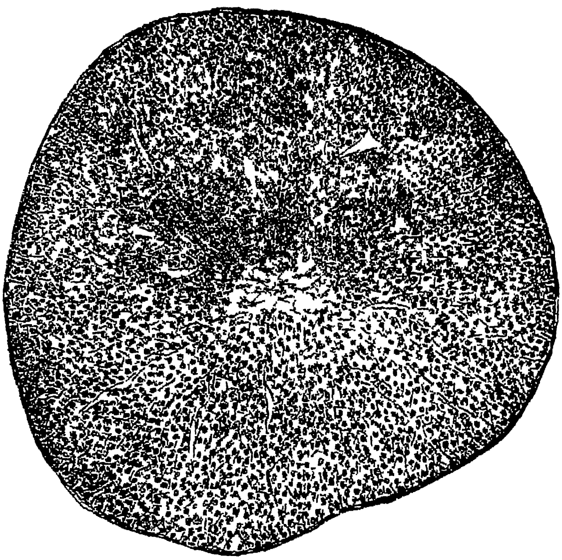


FIG 363 —Corpus luteum of mouse, showing its formation completed The central cavity is occupied by jelly like connective tissue, the converging trabeculæ anastomose with one another so as somewhat to break up the columnar arrangement of the luteal cells (Sobotta) (From Schafer's *Text book of Microscopic Anatomy*)

and theca interna into the antrum These cells hypertrophy and globules of yellow pigment and lipides make their appearance in them Strands of cells and blood-vessels grow in from the theca interna and divide the lateral cells into columns The centre of the corpus luteum is often occupied by a clot formed from blood, liberated when the follicle is ruptured, and from the remains of the liquor folliculi which did not escape The corpus luteum begins to degenerate after a short time and always before the next ovulation, if pregnancy does not supervene It persists when fertilisation is effected, and only degenerates shortly before the child is born The following table gives the chief facts in the life-

history of the ordinary human corpus luteum, compared with that of pregnancy —

	Ordinary Corpus Luteum	Corpus Luteum of Pregnancy
At the end of three weeks	Three-quarters of an inch in diameter, central clot reddish, convoluted wall pale	
One month	Smaller, convoluted wall bright yellow, clot still reddish	Larger, convoluted wall bright yellow, clot still reddish
Two months	Reduced to the condition of an insignificant cicatrix	Seven-eighths of an inch in diameter, convoluted wall bright yellow, clot decolorised
Six months	Absent	Still as large as at end of second month, clot fibrinous, convoluted wall paler
Nine months		One half an inch in diameter, central clot converted into a radiating cicatrix, the external wall tolerably thick and convoluted, but without any bright yellow colour

The ovarian ovum or primary oocyte (fig 364) is a large spheroidal cell surrounded by a transparent striated membrane called the *zona*

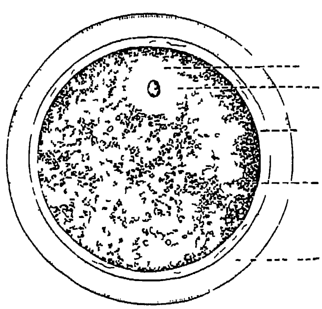


FIG 364 —A human ovum (Cadiat)

pellucida, or *zona striata* The protoplasm is filled with large fatty and albuminous granules (*yolk spherules*), except in the part around the nucleus, which is comparatively free from them It contains a nucleus, and usually one very well-marked nucleolus The nucleus and nucleolus are still often called by their old names, *germinal vesicle* and *germinal spot* respectively An attraction sphere, not shown in the figure, is also present, and a fine membrane, the *vitelline membrane*, immediately invests the protoplasm within the zona pellucida

The Fallopian Tubes or tubæ uterinæ which lead to the uterus have externally a serous coat from the peritoneum, then a muscular

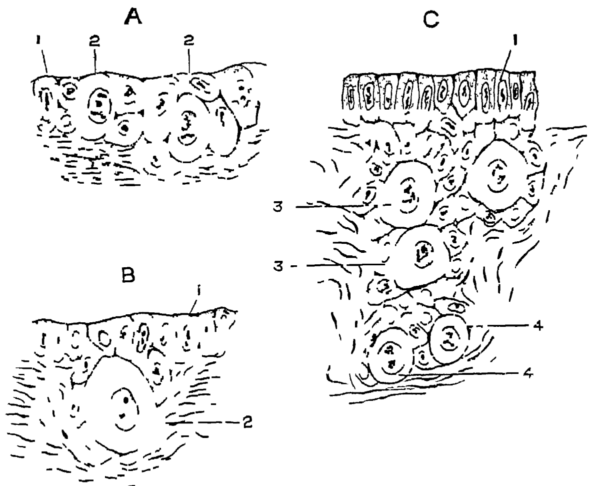


FIG 365 —Diagram showing mode of development of primary oocytes from primitive germ cells in mammalian ovary 1, Germinal epithelium, 2, primitive germ cells, 3, oogonia, 4, primary oocytes In A, two primitive germ cells are seen imbedded in the germinal epithelium In B, a primitive germ cell has descended into the stroma of the ovary accompanied by cells proliferated from the germinal epithelium which will become the cells of the membrana granulosa In C, the oögonia derived from primitive germ cells, and primary oocytes produced by division of the oogonia, are seen (After Buhler)

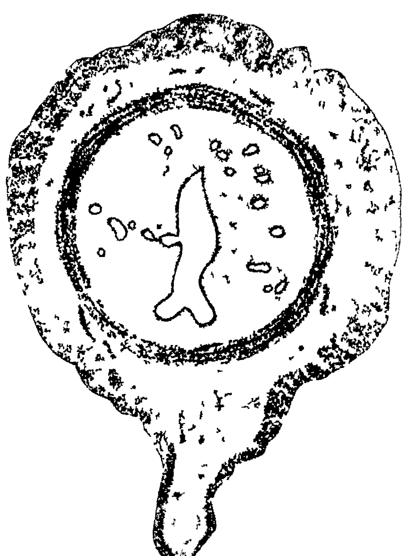


FIG 366 —Transverse section through normal uterus of rat (Marshall and Jolly)

coat (longitudinal fibres outside, circular inside), and most internally a vascular mucous membrane thrown into longitudinal folds, and covered with ciliated epithelium

The Uterus (for transverse section, see fig 373) consists of the same three layers The muscular coat is, however, very thick, and is made up of two strata imperfectly separated by connective tissue and blood-vessels Of these the thinner outer division is the true muscular coat, the fibres of which are arranged partly longitudinally, partly circularly The inner division is very thick, its fibres run chiefly in a circular direction, the extremities of the uterine glands extend into its internal surface It is in fact a much hypertrophied muscularis mucosæ The mucous membrane is thick and consists of a corium of soft connective tissue, lined with ciliated epithelium this is continued down into long tubular glands which have, as a rule, a convoluted course In the cervix the glands are racemose Near the os uteri the epithelium becomes stratified, stratified epithelium also lines the vagina

The Formation of the Gametes

The production of ova by the ovary is known as *oogenesis* The formation of spermatozoa by the testis is known as *spermatogenesis* The prodigality of nature in providing for the continuance of the species is well illustrated by the fact that at birth the human ovary contains about 70,000 immature oocytes Quite a small minority of these attain maturity, and get situated in Graafian follicles many follicles, moreover, never burst, after attaining a certain degree of maturity, even during childhood, they atrophy more or less completely On the average, one follicle ripens every four weeks, so that in the period between the onset of puberty and the menopause, say from fifteen to forty-five years of age, there is a possibility in the thirty intervening years of the production of about 400 ripe ova Of these again a very small minority become fertilised Still more is the lavishness of the provision illustrated in spermatogenesis, it has been calculated that in the semen ejaculated at an act of coitus there are more than two hundred million spermatozoa, and only one of these is needed for the fertilisation of an ovum

Spermatogenesis —The germ cell divides into spermatogonia which undergo several divisions, two of which are shown in the diagram (fig 367) Each spermatogonium in the end grows and becomes a primary spermatocyte, it divides into two secondary spermatocytes, and each of these into two spermatids which develop into spermatozoa In the division of the primary into the secondary spermatocytes, the mitosis is heterotypical and the number of chromo-

somes is reduced to half the normal somatic number This phenomenon is paralleled in the history of the oocyte, and it will be convenient to postpone the histological details until we come to the oocyte

The result is that the secondary spermatocyte and its descendants, the spermatids and spermatozoa, have only half the number of chromosomes characteristic of the species The maturing of the spermatozoa takes place within the seminiferous tubes

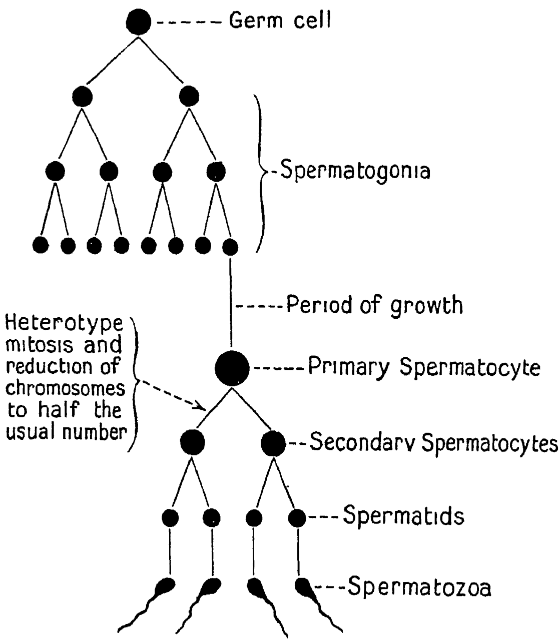


FIG 367 —Diagram to illustrate spermatogenesis

Oögenesis takes place on the same general lines as spermatogenesis, but with some rather important differences in detail In the first place, the changes in the ovary are correlated with certain changes in the uterus which result in menstruation A second important difference is that maturation of the ovum occurs after the oocyte has left the ovary when it is on its journey along the Fallopian tube to the uterus A third difference is that the ovum is considerably larger than the spermatozoon

The ova arise from oogonia which are present in the ovary probably only during embryonic life The oogonia are capable of multiplication by division Finally each oogonium divides into two primary oocytes The primary oocytes then undergo a reduction division, the first maturation division, which results in the production

of the first polar body The reduction division is characterised by a clumping together of the chromosomes at one stage, known as synapsis, and by the subsequent reappearance and pairing of the individual chromosomes These preliminary changes are completed in all the oocytes in a human ovary shortly after birth The subsequent stages of the division do not take place until the oocyte is about to be ovulated

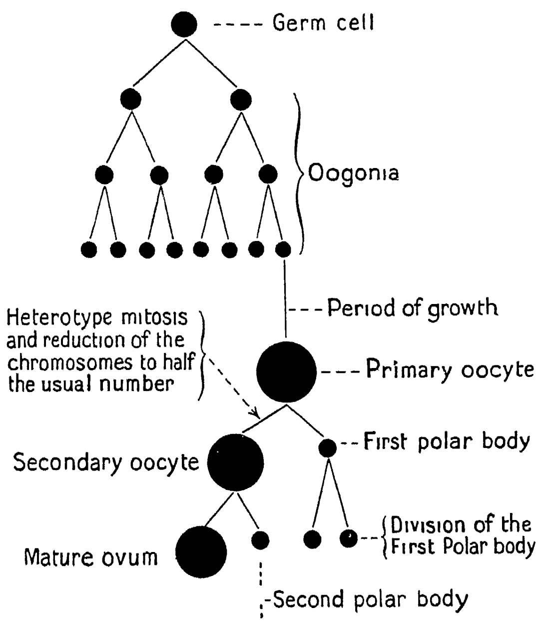


FIG 308 —Diagram to illustrate oogenesis

Maturation —Then a spindle is formed and one chromosome of each pair goes to each pole The spindle is eccentric in position and projects, in a small protuberance of protoplasm, from the surface of the oocyte The division causes the separation of the little protuberance, the first polar body, from the oocyte This reduction division results in half the chromosomes being extruded with the first polar body and half being retained in the oocyte, which is now known as a secondary oocyte The process of reduction in the female is very similar to that in the male, where it results in the formation of two secondary spermatocytes from a primary spermatocyte In both sexes the number of chromosomes in the daughter-cells is half that of the parent-cells After the secondary oocyte is ovulated, another division occurs, resulting in the produc-

tion of a second polar body This division does not reduce the number of chromosomes, as each is split in two in the normal manner Simultaneously, the first polar body divides into two The resulting three polar bodies remain in the zona-pellucida, of the now mature ovum, and degenerate (fig 368)

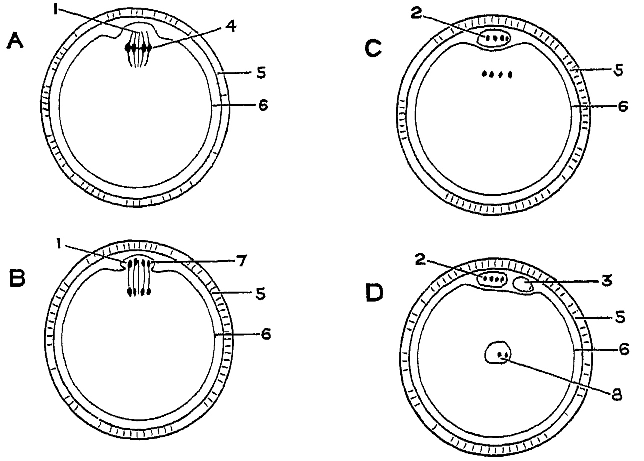


FIG 369 —Diagram showing the formation of the polar bodies (maturation of the ovum) A, B, and C show stages in the formation of the first polar body by heterotypical mitosis A is a primary oocyte at the commencement of mitosis, when only half the usual number of chromosomes appear Thus if eight is the normal number, they unite into four pairs of double chromosomes B shows a later stage in mitosis and the formation of the first polar bud C is a secondary oocyte, it has no distinct nucleus, because no resting stage occurs, after the separation of the first polar body, the chromosomes which remain in the secondary oocyte at once rearrange themselves on a new spindle D is the mature ovum, with the female pronucleus and the two polar bodies 1, First polar bud, 2, first polar body, 3, second polar body, 4, chromosomes on spindle of primary oocyte, 5, zona striata, 6, vitelline membrane, 7, daughter chromosomes in first polar bud, 8, female pronucleus The chromosomes shown in B, C, and D both in the ovum and the polar bodies are all single chromosomes

The meaning of the polar bodies has been the subject of much speculation, it is supposed that the female cell casts out certain constituents in order to make room for the addition to it of material from another individual, namely, the male Some animals multiply without the intervention of the male sex, or the intervention occurs at long intervals with many intermediate generations, this is known as *parthenogenesis* One must therefore suppose that the female cell has within it a male component which can be transmitted to future generations

The ovum after it is liberated from the ovary by the rupture of a Graafian follicle, enters the Fallopian tube, the cilia on the fimbriæ of which are the main instruments for the transportation It travels along the Fallopian tube, and finally reaches the uterus, and again this is accomplished by ciliary action During this journey, which probably occupies some days, it becomes mature, it is fertilised, and some of the early steps in further development may also occur

The Sex Chromosome—In the majority of animals a sex or X chromosome is present in duplicate (homozygous) in the female, but is single or accompanied only by a small Y chromosome (heterozygous) in the male In consequence, the reduction division will result in half the spermatozoa containing a Y chromosome each, while the other half and all the ova will contain each an X chromosome Those ova which are fertilised with a sperm containing a Y chromosome will develop into males, while those which are fertilised with sperms bearing X chromosomes will develop into females In birds

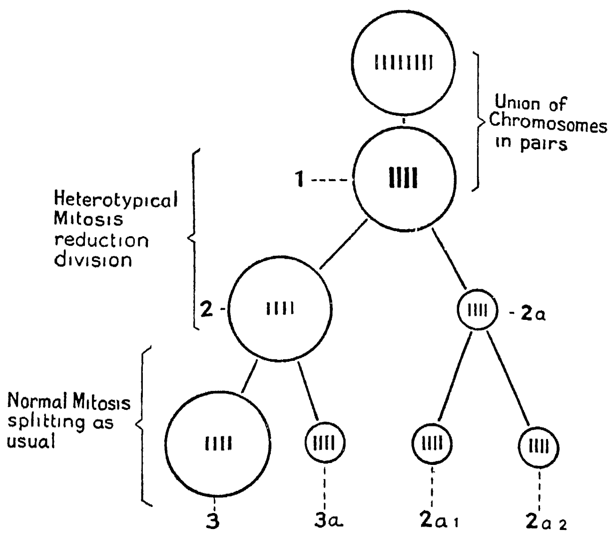


FIG 370 —Diagram showing the stages in the maturation of the ovum 1, Primary oocyte, 2, secondary oocyte, 2a, first polar body, 3, mature ovum, 3a, second polar body, 2a1, and 2a2, daughter cells of the first polar body

and moths, the reverse mechanism is present, the females being heterozygous and the males homozygous The theory, which is supported by an enormous amount of evidence, postulates that sex is definitely determined at fertilisation Recent work has, however, shown that in rare cases the influence of the sex chromosomes may be overridden by grafting and the sex reversed even in adult life

This brings us to the stage in our story when both male and female elements are ripe and ready for union Logically we should next study how the union is accomplished But first we must step into a bypath, and before leaving the ovary and testis enquire whether they have any other functions than those we have already discussed

Internal Secretions of Ovary and Testis

The operation of castration, that is, the removal of the essential generative organs, naturally leads to a loss of reproductive power, but it has other effects of a more general kind on the organism, which mainly influence what are known as the secondary sexual characters Although there may be also skeletal changes this effect is believed to be due to the lack of certain internal secretions formed by testis and ovary respectively

Testis

Some years ago Brown-Séquard, then an old man of seventy-two, stated that the subcutaneous injection of testicular extracts into himself produced marked rejuvenating effects The supposed tonic effects of such injections are regarded with great suspicion, and temporary benefit, if it does occur, is mainly attributable to suggestion

The principal evidence upon which the assumption rests that the testis forms an internal secretion, is derived from the effects of castration, or from cases in which the testes have atrophied or become diseased If the operation of castration is performed before puberty, the reproductive apparatus which is left (vesiculæ seminales and prostate, but not the penis) atrophy, the secondary sexual characters (growth of hair on the face, deepening of the voice, etc) do not develop, the body remains sexually infantile, but never assumes female characters The body, however, grows, and in some cases there is overgrowth of the skeletal and adipose tissues Advantage is taken of this fact *e g* the castration of cocks to provide table birds (capons) In eunuchs the legs often grow unusually long

In animals there is corroborative evidence of the same nature Thus in the cock castration arrests the development of the comb and spurs, in the stag of the antlers In the eland and in horned cattle where both sexes have horns, their growth is not inhibited by castration, though their shape may be affected In Herdwick sheep, where the males are horned and the females hornless, the presence of the testes is essential, not merely for the initiation but also for the continuance of horn growth Castration stops further horn growth forthwith, and at every stage of development (Marshall)

Ligature of the ductus deferens leads to atrophy of the seminiferous tubules, whilst the interstitial cells are not affected, or hypertrophy (Steinach), and the secondary sexual characters develop as usual It is on this ground that most investigators agree that the interstitial cells of the testis are the source of the internal secretion These cells have all the appearances of secreting cells and their full development coincides with the first appearance of spermatogenesis Transplantation of a testis in an abnormal position

in the body cavity in a castrated animal is followed by development of the secondary sexual characters, it is evident, therefore, that the internal secretion acts chemically on the parts concerned and not through the intermediation of the nervous system

The hormone which is now called *proviron* has recently been obtained in crystalline forms as an oxyketone having the empirical formula $C_{16}H_{26}O_2$, and its strength has been standardised according to its power of promoting comb growth in castrated fowls

The Prostate —The function of Cowper's glands and the glands of the prostate is probably to add to the semen, and to cleanse the urethra from urine prior to ejaculation, the first fluid to come out certainly contains no spermatozoa

Ovary

Extirpation of the ovaries prevents the onset of puberty and the occurrence of menstruation, but produces no noticeable effects on the form and appearance of a woman There may, however, be a tendency to adiposity Ovariotomy after puberty brings menstruation to an end, and there may be slight atrophy of the breasts and external genital organs The uterus always undergoes atrophic changes after ovariotomy In animals the same operation prevents the occurrence of the œstral cycle, but the "periods" continue to recur if one of the ovaries is grafted into the abdomen, the uterus remaining normal and undergoing the usual periodic changes

Removal of the ovaries or the menopause is in some instances associated with general metabolic changes, particularly a liability to become fat, but this is by no means a constant feature

The Corpus Luteum —Special interest attaches to the function of the corpus luteum which is formed in the Graafian follicle after ovulation We have already seen that this structure increases in size if pregnancy ensues The luteal cells are formed from the cells of the follicle It has been generally assumed that the corpus luteum forms a hormone or hormones, and there is direct evidence that the developmental progress of this structure is correlated with hypertrophic changes in the uterus and mammary glands

Thus in the rabbit, in which ovulation ordinarily occurs only as a consequence of coitus, the growth of the corpora lutea as associated with uterine and mammary growth, even if the animals are prevented from becoming pregnant by the employment of sterilised males (Ancel and Bouin) In such cases the uterine mucous membrane undergoes changes (vascularisation and glandular development) similar to those occurring in pregnancy, and the mammary glands develop to an extent sufficient to admit of secretion Such a condition has been called "pseudo-pregnancy" It is known to occur also in the dog and in the marsupial, *Dasyurus,* in cases

where pregnancy does not supervene after ovulation In these animals the corpus luteum of pseudo-pregnancy persists for nearly as long as that of pregnancy On the other hand, in man, etc, where the periods recur frequently, the corpus luteum persists only for a short time if pregnancy does not supervene after ovulation

Moreover, the fact that ovariotomy performed during the first part of pregnancy brings that process to an end is further evidence that the corpus luteum is partly responsible for the raised nutrition of the uterus at this period, and consequently for the fixation and retention of the young

The part played by the corpus luteum in relation to menstruation is discussed later

The corpus luteum is also known to be intimately associated with lactation, although the mechanism of this relation is not clear In some animals the corpus luteum persists during lactation, as during pregnancy, and its activity is responsible for the postponement of œstrus in the lactating animal In man, however, the corpus luteum regresses before lactation is over and its function appears to be taken over by other organs Lactation, moreover, is not entirely dependent on the presence of the corpus luteum for its maintenance, as is shown by the normal activity of the mammary glands after double ovariotomy performed during lactation It is probable, however, that the corpus luteum is essential for the preparatory hypertrophy of the mammæ and for the initiation of lactation

The active principle of the corpus luteum has been called *progestin* and may from what has been said be considered to be antagonistic to œstrin (see below) In animals pregnant or injected with extract corpus luteum, œstrin is excreted in the urine and this is the basis of the Ascheim-Zondek test for pregnancy The urine is injected into immature mice, the ovaries of which in a positive case show precocious ovarian activity

It is certain that the connection between the generative organs and mammary glands is not nervous, since the glands can grow and secrete milk under conditions which preclude the possibility of such a connection, as when the mammary tissue is transplanted to an abnormal position

Relation to the Pituitary Body—It is suspected that the anterior lobe of the pituitary somehow controls the production of corpus luteum, since the injection of extracts causes a stimulation of the lutein cells and the occurrence of marked luteal formation in the ovary, while ovulation does not take place

The therapeutic use of ovarian extracts appears, from the evidence available, to stand in the same uncertain position as that of testicular extracts

The structure of the mammary glands and the composition of milk have already been treated at length in our chapter on Foods (see pp 414-416)

The Regulation of the Œstrous Cycle — It has long been known as indicated above that the occurrence of periodic changes in the sexual organs of females depends on the presence of the ovaries, but of recent years the facts, largely owing to the work of Marshall and his pupils, have become much clearer

A hormone known as *œstrin* (Parkes) has been extracted from the ovary which, when injected into ovariotomised animals, produces the uterine and vaginal changes characteristic of the **œstrous** period, or "heat" That the hormone is not produced by the Graafian follicles is shown by the fact that mice continue to have a regular cycle after all the follicles have been extirpated and the ovaries completely sterilised by exposure to X-rays The hormone must, therefore, be produced by cells other than those of the follicles and corpora lutea, possibly by the so-called "interstitial cells" This hormone has been successfully extracted from pig, sheep, horse, cow, and human material, has been shown to produce œstrus in all the usual laboratory animals, and is excreted in the urine in pregnancy (see corpus luteum)

Menstruation —In the human subject menstruation occurs on an average every four weeks The flow lasts for three to five days, and the amount of blood lost may be as much as 300 c c After the cessation of the flow the mucous membrane repairs itself, this takes about a fortnight and then, after a brief period, the preparations for the next period begin again Menstruation is absent during pregnancy, and, as a rule, also during the subsequent period of lactation It occurs in the higher primates only

The exact relation of menstruation to œstrous is a matter of some debate In the lower animals ovulation accompanies the œstrous but in man it occurs midway between two menstrual periods That menstruation corresponds to the congestive pro-œstrous stage is suggested by the fact that in the baboon the injection of œstrin will cause menstruation, on the other hand at puberty in the baboon ovulation definitely precedes menstruation Since the regression of the corpus luteum corresponds in time to menstruation the latter may be looked upon as the result of this regression, the corpus luteum having been responsible for preparing the uterus for a fertilised ovum which did not appear The unwanted endometrium is thrown off This view conveniently explains the absence of menstruation in pregnancy and is most probable A difficulty of this view is that œstrin will produce menstruation and that a non-ovulating baboon without a corpus luteum continues to menstruate from a resting endometrium The factor causing the breakdown cannot be the regression of the corpus luteum, and evidence suggests that the pituitary body is concerned, for it has been found that in ovariectomised monkeys œstrin will not cause

menstruation There is probably a menstruation causing cycle in the interstitial cells as there is in those producing ova

FERTILISATION

We are now in a position to resume the thread of the history of the further development of a new individual The next step is the union of the male and female gametes, that is to say, of the spermatozoon and the mature ovum

The act of *coitus* or copulation is associated in both sexes with much psychical excitement, and with the phenomenon of erection The spermatozoa are thus deposited at the entrance of the uterus, and by means of the flagellar movement of their tails they make their way against the stream of ciliary movement into the Fallopian tubes, where they are found in a living condition for many days It is here that they meet the mature ovum, but fertilisation or impregnation only requires the entrance of one spermatozoon into the ovum The spermatozoon pierces the zona pellucida, and the head, neck, and possibly part of the body, enter the substance of the ovum, where they undergo transformation, and are converted into a male pronucleus which fuses with the female pronucleus to complete the fertilisation of the ovum

Loeb suggested that the action of the spermatozoon is essentially chemical, because in certain animals (for instance sea-urchins) he was able to produce artificial parthenogenesis by purely chemical methods In his latest work, he placed the ova in dilute acetic or formic acid, by this means, a membrane is formed upon the surface of the egg-cell as it is in normal fertilisation, if the ova are then transferred to concentrated sea water for a short time and then placed in ordinary sea water, they segment and produce normal larvæ He considered that the spermatozoon brings with it enzymes or other chemical substances which excite the ovum in the same way as the chemical reagents mentioned Such artificial fertilisation has now been carried out in frogs' eggs

The changes by which the fertilised ovum is transformed into the young animal may take place either inside or outside the body of the parent If they take place inside the parent, as in mammals, including the human subject, the ovum is small, and the nutriment necessary for its growth and development is derived from the surrounding tissues and fluids of the mother If the development takes place outside the parent's body, as in birds, the egg is larger, it contains a large amount of nutritive material called the yolk, and it may, in addition, be surrounded by sheaths of nutritive substance Thus, in the hen's egg, the yellow part alone is comparable with the mammalian ovum, and the larger part

of that is merely nutritive substance Upon the yolk is a whitish speck, the cicatricula, which is a small mass of protoplasm, about $\frac{1}{6}$ of an inch in diameter In the cicatricula lies the nucleus or germinal vesicle, and it is this small mass of protoplasmic substance which divides and grows to produce the chick, the yolk and the surrounding white are used as food

Ova such as the hen's, in which only a small part, the cicatricula, divides and grows, are called meroblastic Small ova, with little food yolk, such as the human ovum, divide completely during development, but numerous gradations occur between the two extreme types

The further development of the individual systems of organs by which the embryonic rudiments are converted into the more fully developed condition in which they are found at birth is a subject fully treated in works on anatomy, embryology, and obstetrics, and we shall not go into those matters here The nutrition of the embryo and the circulation of its blood are, however, matters of physiological moment, so that it will be necessary to refer to the origin of the fœtal membranes, as it is by their means that nutrition is carried on

The Decidua and the Fœtal Membranes

When the uterus is ready for the reception of an embryo it is lined by a greatly hypertrophied mucous membrane, this is called the decidua, because, after the delivery of the child, a portion of it comes away from the uterus with the other membranes

The ovum has been fertilised in the Fallopian tube, and the embryo, by the time it reaches the uterine cavity, has usually reached the stage of a morula or blastula It rapidly eats its way into the substance of the decidua which closes over it, obliterating the opening through which it passed, and thus the embryo becomes embedded in the membrane, which thereupon becomes separable into three parts 1 The part between the embryo and the muscular wall of the uterus, the *decidua basalis or serotina* 2 The part between the embryo and the uterine cavity, the *decidua capsularis or reflexa* 3 The remaining part is called the *decidua vera* Between the decidua capsularis and the decidua basalis lies the embryo, which speedily becomes differentiated into the fœtus and its membranes The outermost of the fœtal membranes is the chorion, this is covered with vascular villi, which dip into the decidua capsularis and basalis Inside the chorion is the amnion, a closed sac, which surrounds the embryo and is attached to its ventral wall at the umbilicus The amnion is filled with fluid, the *amniotic fluid* in which the fœtus floats, and it forms a sheath

for the umbilical cord by which after a certain time, the fœtus is attached to the inner surface of the chorion, or outer embryonic membrane The umbilical cord contains not only the blood-vessels which pass between a specialised portion of the chorion which forms the fœtal part of the placenta, and the fœtus, but also the remains of the yolk-sac, and the duct by which it is connected with the intestine of the fœtus

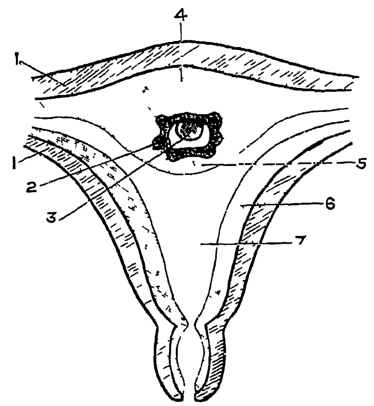


FIG 371 —Diagram representing the relation of the developing embryo to the decidua at a very early stage 1, Uterine muscle, 2, epiblast of embryo, 3, inner cell mass of embryo, 4, decidua basalis, 5, decidua capsularis, 6, decidua vera, 7, cavity of uterus

As the embryo grows the decidua capsularis is expanded over its surface, and as the growth continues the uterine cavity is gradually obliterated and the decidua capsularis is forced into contact with the decidua vera, with which it fuses

As the decidua is merely thickened mucous membrane, it naturally contains glands which become enlarged as the decidua thickens It was believed, at one time, that the villi of the chorion entered the glands, but this is now known to be incorrect The villi enter the interglandular substance, and, in the human subject, the glands of the decidua capsularis eventually disappear entirely In the decidua basalis and the decidua vera the superficial portions of the glands also disappear, their deep portions remain in an almost unchanged condition, and furnish the epithelium for the regeneration of the glands and the lining of the uterine cavity after parturition The intermediate parts of the glands in the decidua vera and the decidua basalis become very much enlarged,

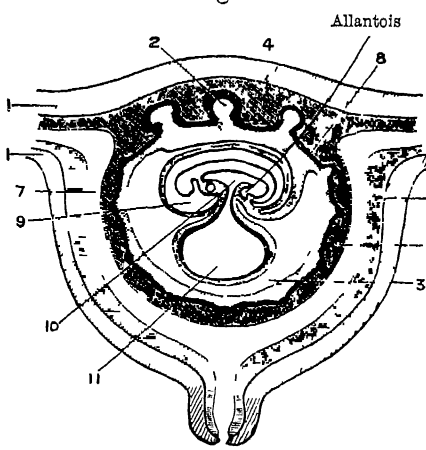


FIG 372 —Diagram representing a later stage of development than that shown in fig 371 1, Uterine muscle, 2, villi of chorion of embryo, 3, cœlom, 4, decidua basalis, 5, decidua capsularis, 6, decidua vera, 7, cavity of uterus, 8, bodystalk, 9, amniotic cavity, 10, primitive intestine, 11, yolk sac

and form a stratum of the decidua called the spongy layer, and ultimately this layer is converted into a series of clefts, and it is along the line of these clefts that the decidua is separated at birth

In some mammals in which the connection between the chorion and the decidua is less intimate than in the human subject, the

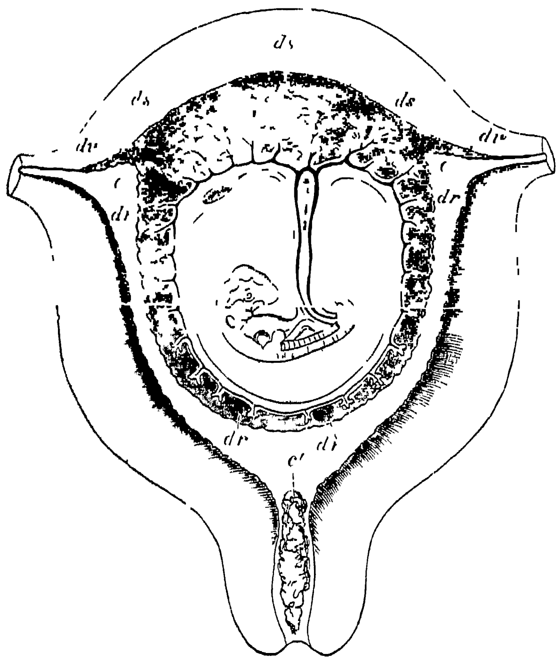


Fig 873 —Diagrammatic view of a vertical transverse section of the uterus at the seventh or eighth week of pregnancy *c, c, c′*, Cavity of uterus, which becomes the cavity of the decidua, opening at *c, c*, the cornua, into the Fallopian tubes, and at *c′* into the cavity of the cervix, which is closed by a plug of mucus, *dv*, decidua vera, *dr*, decidua reflexa, with the sparser villi embedded in its substance, *ds*, decidua basalis or serotina, involving the more developed chorionic villi of the commencing placenta The fœtus is seen lying in the amniotic sac, passing up from the umbilicus is seen the umbilical cord and its vessels passing to their distribution in the villi of the chorion, also the pedicle of the yolk sac, which lies in the cavity between the amnion and chorion (Allen Thomson.)

glands persist to a greater or less extent, and secrete a fluid called uterine milk, which is absorbed by the chorion

The portion of the decidua which undergoes the greatest change is the decidua basalis In it a number of large blood spaces is formed, and these are separated into masses or cotyledons by fibrous strands The cotyledons are penetrated by chorionic villi, and it is this conjunction of chorionic villi and decidua basalis which produces the placenta. The blood-vessels of the chorionic villi are usually formed

by the mesodermic covering of the allantois, another fœtal outgrowth Its origin from the hind-gut is shown in fig 372

The **placenta** is the organ of fœtal nutrition and excretion, and at full term it is seven or eight inches across and weighs nearly a pound Its blood sinuses are filled with maternal blood, which is carried to them by the uterine arteries and away from them by the uterine veins Into these blood-filled spaces the vascular fœtal villi project, hence it is easy for exchanges to take place between the fœtal and the maternal blood, though the two blood-streams never mix together Oxygen and nutriment pass from the maternal blood through the coverings of the fœtal vessels into the fœtal blood, and carbonic acid, urea, and other waste products pass in the contrary direction The fœtal blood is carried to the placenta by the umbilical arteries, which are the terminal branches of the aorta of the fœtus, these pass to the placenta by the umbilical cord, and the blood is returned, through the cord, by the umbilical vein.

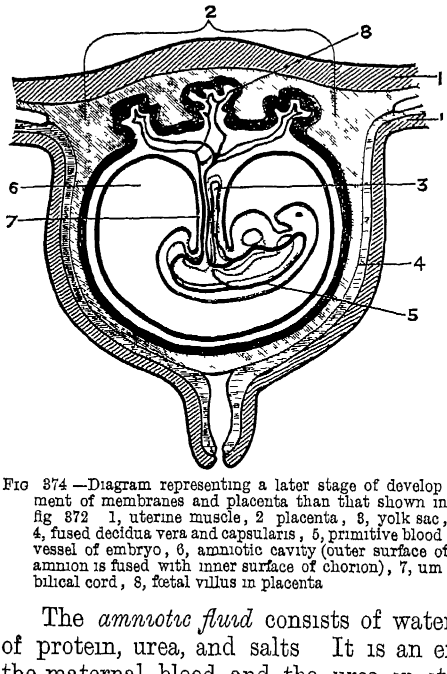


FIG 374 —Diagram representing a later stage of development of membranes and placenta than that shown in fig 372 1, uterine muscle, 2 placenta, 3, yolk sac, 4, fused decidua vera and capsularis, 5, primitive blood vessel of embryo, 6, amniotic cavity (outer surface of amnion is fused with inner surface of chorion), 7, umbilical cord, 8, fœtal villus in placenta

The *amniotic fluid* consists of water containing small quantities of protein, urea, and salts It is an exudation from the fœtal and the maternal blood, and the urea in it comes from the fœtal urine which is poured into the amniotic cavity in the later part of pregnancy Its function is mainly mechanical, it supports the embryo on all sides, and protects it from blows, other injuries to the abdomen of the mother, and from sudden irregular contractions of the abdominal walls

Intra-vitam Staining—Some years ago Goldmann of Freiburg made observations in which he injected animals (rats and mice) with certain blue solutions of which pyrrhol-blue may be taken as an example The animal suffers from no ill effects, the only outward change being that a white rat becomes a blue rat When the animal is subsequently killed, the stain is found embodied in the granules of specific cells throughout the body Although it circulates in the blood, no blood-corpuscle takes it up, nor has it any

effect on the vascular lining In the skin it is found in the fixed connective-tissue cells, but chiefly in free phagocytic cells in the lower layers of the cutis and subcutis But these migratory cells appear also in every internal organ (except the nervous system), and always in connection with interstitial fibrous tissue, they occur in muscles, glands, tendons, and especially in serous membranes. On account of their affinity for pyrrhol-blue they were originally termed pyrrhol cells, and it seems probable that they originate in the reticulo-endothelial system

By means of such intra-vitam stains one can further differentiate the Kupffer-cell of the liver, the reticulum cell of lymph glands and spleen, the interstitial cell of the testis, the follicular cell in the maturing follicles of the ovary, the cortical cells of the suprarenal, the epithelial covering of the choroid plexuses, and the cells which line the convoluted tubules of the kidney, all of which take up the blue stain

When pregnancy occurs in the stained animal, the appearance and behaviour of the placenta are most striking, the blue colour disappears from the skin and is concentrated in the uterus, and in time the latter, forming a centre of attraction for the dye, ultimately dispossesses all the remaining tissues of their blue In the uterus it is in the free cells of the decidua basalis that the stain is mainly found In quite early stages the stained cells penetrate into the primitive placenta and cast off their stained granules, which are snatched up by fœtal cells in the way nutritive material is But when once the placenta has attained maturity, the dye is found only in the fœtal cells which form the layer which separates the maternal and fœtal tissues The fœtus itself remains perfectly colourless, the stain not being able to penetrate this protective barrier Further research has shown another important point, for the same cells which vigorously absorb the stain store also glycogen, fat, and hæmoglobin temporarily before these substances pass into the fœtal circulation The avidity of such cells for the dye is thus connected with their functional activity in relation to really nutritive material, the importance of vital staining in embryological research is therefore apparent

Equally important are its applications to pathological research, but this aspect of the question is beyond our purpose

The Transference of Materials through the Placenta

Gases such as oxygen and carbon-dioxide and essential substances, glucose and amino-acids pass through the placenta by diffusion There is no evidence that glycogen is stored in the placenta Fat is probably synthesised from glucose and proteins

from amino-acids Drugs pass through and some, such as morphia, may affect the fœtus more than the mother This is one of the difficulties in the use of "twilight sleep" at labour The fœtus has the power of abstracting certain salts from the mother, whose calcium, for example, may become so depleted that her bones become soft, but little is known of the mechanism concerned The sex hormones appear to become stored in the placenta

The Fœtal Circulation

We shall not enter into the complex manner in which the heart and blood-vessels of the fœtus develop from the embryonic rudiments, but when these are fully formed the circulation of the blood is found to differ considerably from that which occurs after birth It will be convenient to begin its description by tracing the course of the blood, which, after being carried to the placenta by the two umbilical arteries, has returned, oxygenated and replenished, to the fœtus by the umbilical vein

It is at first conveyed to the under surface of the liver, and there the stream is divided—a part of the blood passing straight on to the inferior vena cava, through a venous canal called the *ductus venosus*, while the remainder passes into the portal vein, and reaches the inferior vena cava after circulating through the liver Whether, however, by the direct route through the ductus venosus or by the roundabout way through the liver—all the blood which is returned from the placenta by the umbilical vein reaches the inferior vena cava at last, and is carried by it (together with the blood from the lower part of the body and lower limbs) to the right auricle of the heart, into which cavity is also pouring the blood that has circulated in the head and neck and arms, and has been brought to the auricle by the superior vena cava It might be naturally expected that the two streams of blood would be mingled in the right auricle, but such is not the case, or only to a slight extent The blood from the superior vena cava—the less oxygenated fluid of the two—passes almost exclusively into the right ventricle, through the auriculo-ventricular opening, just as it does in the adult, while the blood of the inferior vena cava is directed by the fold of the lining membrane of the heart, called the *Eustachian valve*, through the foramen ovale into the left auricle, whence it passes into the left ventricle, out of this into the aorta, and thence to all the body, but chiefly the head and neck The blood of the superior vena cava, which, as before said, passes into the right ventricle, is sent out from there in *small amount* through the pulmonary artery to the lungs, and thence to the left auricle, by the pulmonary veins, as in the adult The greater part, however, does

not go to the lungs, but instead, passes through a canal, the *ductus arteriosus*, leading from the pulmonary artery into the aorta just below the origin of the three great vessels which supply the upper parts of the body, and there meeting that part of the blood of the inferior

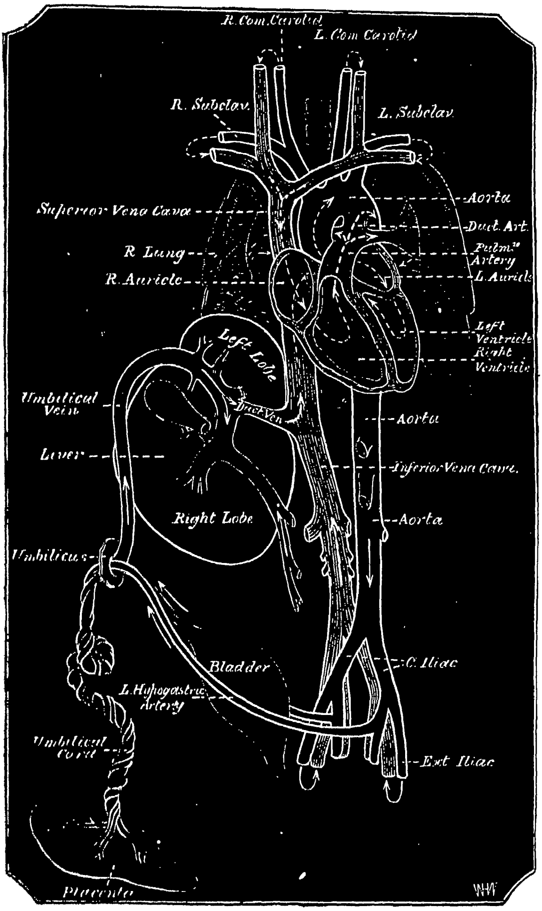


FIG 375 —Diagram of the fœtal circulation

vena cava which has not gone into these large vessels, it is distributed with it to the trunk and other parts—a portion passing out by way of the two umbilical *arteries* to the placenta From the placenta it is returned by the umbilical *vein* to the under surface of the liver, from which the circulation started.

Parturition

During pregnancy the uterus and its contents increase in size, and we have already alluded to the changes in its mucous membrane or decidua, and the formation of the placenta, the principal factor in the distension of the uterus is the accumulation of the amniotic fluid. The muscular wall of the uterus also hypertrophies, this is in part due to the formation of new muscle-fibres, and in part of the increase in size of the pre-existing muscle-fibres. The muscular wall is one of immense strength.

The fœtus "comes to term" in the human subject on the tenth menstrual epoch after conception, this averages 280 days after the last menstruation. Delivery is the result of uterine contractions or "labour pains", the liquor amnii is thus forced downward and presses the membrane formed by the fused amnion and chorion through the cervix of the uterus which is gradually distended. When the distension is sufficient the membrane ruptures, and the amniotic fluid escapes. The orifice is then fully distended, and the fœtal head enters the pelvis, the pains become more frequent and energetic, and the voluntary muscles of the abdomen are brought into play, so that ultimately the new-born child is expelled to the exterior. The process usually lasts some hours, but the time is much prolonged (ten, twenty, or even more hours) in the birth of a first child. The child is still connected with the placenta by the umbilical cord, which is about 20 inches long, and this connection should not be severed for a few minutes in order that as much blood as possible may be aspirated from the fœtal part of the placenta into the child as breathing commences.

After the child is expelled, the contractions of the uterine walls recommence after a lapse of twenty to thirty minutes, and the placenta is separated and forced out. The separation extends through the decidua along the line of the stratum spongiosum, and the fused chorion, amnion and decidua turned inside out, follow the placenta to which they are attached, constituting, with the placenta the after-birth.

After the umbilical cord is tied and separated, the umbilical arteries inside the child become filled with blood-clot, and are ultimately converted into fibrous cords, the so-called obliterated hypogastric arteries, at the same time the allantois is also converted into a fibrous strand, the urachus, which extends from the apex of the bladder to the umbilicus.

The hæmorrhage from the uterus which accompanies and follows the after-birth may be profuse at first, but under normal conditions is soon checked by the firm contraction of the uterine walls.

Although it has been shown that delivery may occur when all nerves connecting the uterus with the central nervous system are cut through, the contractions of the organ are normally influenced reflexly through the nervous system Stimulation of various sensory nerves will produce contractions of the pregnant uterus, and premature delivery may occur as the result of mental and physical disturbances

The determining factor which produces the labour pains at a particular date has been much discussed, some think it is maternal in origin, such as a degenerative condition set up in the placenta or decidua, whereas others consider that the initial impulse comes from the fœtus, which secretes certain products that stimulate uterine contraction

After delivery, the uterus undergoes reduction in size at a fairly rapid rate This has been attributed to fatty degeneration but for this there is little evidence The theory at present most in vogue to explain "involution of the uterus" is that the process is one of autolysis due to the action of intracellular digestive enzymes While it is occurring, the urine of the mother contains creatine, a substance which is normally absent from that excretion It has been supposed that this substance originates from the rapid destruction of the uterine muscle It has, however, been shown that creatine occurs after delivery even if the uterus is amputated, so that the creatine of the uterine muscle cannot then be the source of the urinary creatine, there is evidence that the creatine is associated in some way with the metabolism of the mammary gland

The atrophy or involution of the uterus which occurs at the menopause appears also to be produced in the same way, and it has been suggested with some reason, that the symptoms exhibited at that period of life may be in part explained as due to the absorption of the products of the autolysis of the uterine tissue

CHAPTER LXI

THE GROWTH AND REPAIR OF THE BODY

THE growth of the body is dependent on the growth of the individual cells of which it is composed and in which the power of growth appears to be inherent This power of the individual cells to grow, which is particularly well seen in embryonic tissues, can be shown by keeping the cells under suitable conditions The medium commonly employed is sterilised Ringer's solution or blood plasma + embryo extract By this means of **tissue culture** the cells of various organs may be kept alive for an indefinite number of years The cells, however, grow into a mass, and are liable to die after a few days In order to continue the growth of the cells it is necessary to transplant small pieces of the culture to a new medium from time to time

Local Growth—Normally in the body, the cells not only grow but appear to be influenced by the cells in their vicinity The exact mechanism which prevents the different varieties of cells from invading each other is not known, and this is a fundamental difficulty in the understanding of cancer, the great characteristic of which is such invasion

The phenomenon of general body growth is exhibited in all young mammals for a limited period which, in man, lasts until the twentieth or twenty-fifth year At the end of this period the bones reach their normal maximum size, and the individual may be considered to have reached adult life Thereafter, however, the power of growth is not lost, but continues to be exhibited by tissues especially if they are injured or if there is an increased demand for their activity Thus, for example, a broken bone will repair itself, disease in one kidney will result in an enlargement of the other, or the muscles may still grow in accordance with requirements Normally, it appears that every tissue of the body is constantly being renewed We are all familiar with the continuous growth of the hair and the nails

The continuance of the power of repair is of the utmost importance to the individual, since its cessation marks the onset of senility and lessened power to resist disease or recover from injury

The growth of the body as a whole is determined largely by heredity, but it is now realised that various factors play a considerable part Of these the most important is the diet

Diet in Relation to Growth—In order that an animal should grow it is essential that it should be supplied with adequate food, not only to supply its immediate needs in regard to tissue repair and energy exchanges, but in addition that it should have sufficient to provide for the building up of new tissue Thus a growing boy may require as much food as a man In relation to Protein Metabolism we have already seen that certain **amino-acids** are more essential than others in the synthesis of tissues It has been shown, for example, that a diet lacking in lysin and tryptophan, although it will maintain life, is insufficient for growth In addition, certain vital elements, which we designate **vitamins**, and which can only be obtained from natural foodstuffs, must be supplied if body growth and its maintenance are to be normal Specially concerned in growth is the fat-soluble vitamin A

Certain ductless glands also play an important part in growth The **thyroid**, we have seen, is specially concerned in the metabolic rate and metamorphosis of cells The anterior lobe of the **pituitary** is also intimately concerned with growth, especially that of the skeleton, and if over-active may lead to gigantism

THE SKELETON

This is the framework on which the soft parts are built It consists of the bones and cartilages which are bound together by ligaments of fibrous tissues

Cartilage

Serving a similar supporting function in the body as bone, cartilage is popularly known as gristle

In some regions, as at the ends of bones, the cartilage is *hyaline* and has a simple structure (fig 376) No blood-vessels penetrate the matrix, through which lymph simply soaks to reach the cartilage cells This relatively poor nutrition furnishes a possible reason why hyaline cartilage in many situations (costal, laryngeal, tracheal) shows a tendency to become calcified late in life

On boiling, the ground-substance of cartilage yields a material called *chondrin* This resembles gelatin very closely, and the differences in its reactions are due to the fact that chondrin is really a mixture of gelatin with varying amounts of mucoid substances

Cartilage of this kind forms the rib cartilages and prefigures most bones in development

In some regions where toughness is required, as in the semilunar cartilages of the knee-joint or the intervertebral discs, the cartilage cells lie in a dense fibrous matrix This variety is known as **white fibro-cartilage**

In others where flexibility is desirable, elastic fibres are scattered between the cells Such **yellow** *or* **elastic fibro-cartilage** is found in the pinna of the external ear and the epiglottis

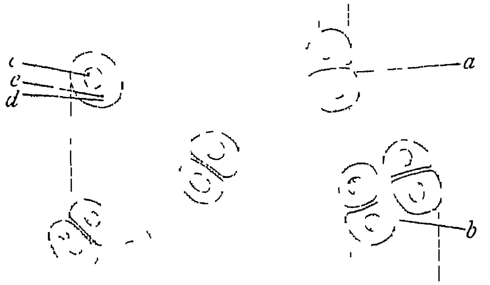


FIG 376 —Section of articular cartilage *a*, Group of two cells, *b*, group of four cells, *d*, protoplasm of cell with *e*, fatty granules, *c*, nucleus (After Schafer)

Development of Cartilage —Like other connective tissues, cartilage originates from mesoderm, the cells are unbranched, and the disposition of the cells in fully formed cartilage in groups of two, four, etc, is due to the fact that each group has originated from the division of a single cell, first into two, each of these again into two, and so on This process of cell division is accompanied with the usual karyokinetic changes

Each cell deposits on its exterior a sheath or capsule, on division each of the daughter-cells deposits a new capsule within this, and the process may be repeated

Bone

Bone is composed of organic and inorganic constituents which are so intimately blended and incorporated the one with the other, that it is only by severe measures, as for instance by a white heat in one case and by the action of concentrated acids in the other, that they can be separated Their close union, too, is further shown by the fact that when by acids the inorganic matter is dissolved out, or on the other hand when the organic part is burnt out, the shape of the bone is alike preserved

The proportion of organic matter is greater in the bones of infants than in those of adults

To the naked eye there appear two kinds of structure in different bones, and in different parts of the same bone, namely, the *dense* or

compact, and the *spongy* or *cancellous* tissue Thus, in making a longitudinal section of a long bone, as the humerus or femur, the articular extremities are found capped on their surface by a thin shell of compact bone, while their interior is made up of the spongy or cancellous tissue The *shaft*, on the other hand, is formed almost entirely of a thick layer of the compact bone, and this surrounds a central canal, the *medullary* cavity—so called from its containing the *medulla* or marrow

In the flat bones, as the parietal bone or the scapula, the cancellous structure (diploe) lies between two layers of the compact tissue, and in the short and irregular bones, as those of the wrist and foot, the cancellous tissue fills the interior, while a thin shell of compact bone forms the outside

Marrow —There are two distinct varieties of marrow—the *red* and the *yellow*

Red marrow is the connective tissue which occupies the spaces in the cancellous tissue, it is highly vascular, and thus maintains the nutrition of the spongy bone, the interstices of which it fills It contains a few fat-cells and a large number of *marrow-cells* The marrow-cells are amœboid, and resemble large leucocytes, the granules of some of these cells stain readily with acid and neutral dyes, but a considerable number have coarse granules which stain readily with basic dyes such as methylene blue Among the cells are some smaller nucleated cells of the same tint as coloured blood-corpuscles These are termed *erythroblasts* From them the coloured corpuscles of the blood are developed There are also a few large cells with many nuclei, termed *giant-cells* or *myeloplaxes*

Yellow marrow fills the medullary cavity of long bones, and consists chiefly of fat-cells with numerous blood-vessels, many of its cells also are the colourless marrow-cells just mentioned

Periosteum —The surfaces of bones, except the part covered with articular cartilage, are clothed by a tough, fibrous membrane, the *periosteum*

Histology of Bone

Examined with a rather high power, bone substance is found to contain a multitude of small irregular spaces, approximately fusiform in shape, called **lacunæ**, with very minute canals or *canaliculi* leading from them, and anastomosing with similar little prolongations from other lacunæ (fig 377) In life the lacunæ and canaliculi are occupied by bone-cells which are essentially connective-tissue cells, these form the organic matrix of the bone in which calcium becomes deposited The nutrient lymph passes from place to place by way of the canaliculi In very thin layers of bone, as in cancellous bone, only lacunæ may be visible, but on making a transverse section

of the compact tissue as of a long bone, *e g* the humerus or ulna, the arrangement shown in fig 377 can be seen

The bone is mapped out into small circular districts, at or about the centre of each of which is a hole, around which is an appearance as of concentric layers, the *lacunæ* and *canaliculi* follow the same concentric plan of distribution around the small hole in the centre, with which indeed they communicate

On making a longitudinal section, the central holes are found to be simply the cut extremities of small canals which run lengthwise through the bone, anastomosing with each other by lateral branches (fig 378), these **Haversian canals** are occupied by blood-vessels and nerves

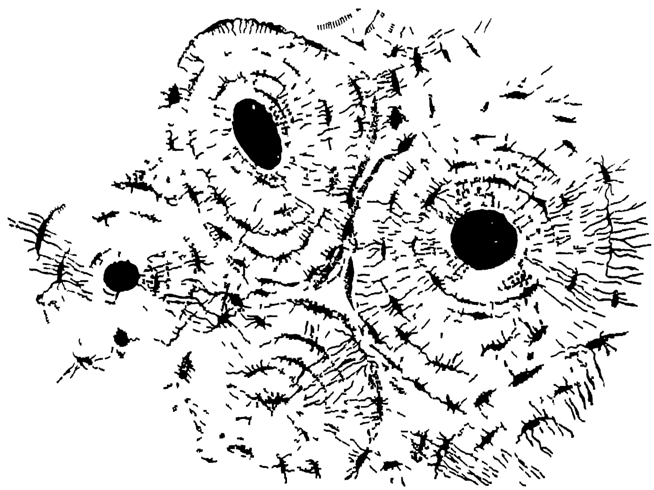


FIG 377 —Transverse section of compact bony tissue (of humerus) Three of the Haversian canals are seen, with their concentric rings, also the lacunæ, with the canaliculi extending from them across the direction of the lamellæ The Haversian apertures were filled with air and debris in grinding down the section, and therefore appear black in the figure, which represents the object as viewed with transmitted light The Haversian systems are so closely packed in this section, that scarcely [illegible] visible × 150 (Sharpey)

Lamellæ and Fibres of Compact Bone —In the shaft of a long bone three distinct sets of lamellæ can be clearly recognised

1 *Circumferential* lamellæ, these are concentrically arranged just beneath the periosteum, and round the medullary cavity

2 *Haversian* lamellæ, these are concentrically arranged round the Haversian canals to the number of six to eighteen round each

3 *Interstitial* lamellæ, these connect the systems of Haversian lamellæ, filling the spaces between them, they consequently attain their greatest development where the Haversian systems are few, and *vice versa*

Development of Bone

From the point of view of their development, bones may be subdivided into two classes —

(*a*) Those which are ossified directly in the embryonic connective tissue—*e g*, the bones forming the vault of the skull, parietal, frontal, and a certain portion of the occipital bone

(*b*) Those whose form, previous to ossification, is laid down in *hyaline cartilage*—*e g*, humerus, femur

In both cases, bone is produced by bone-formative cells called

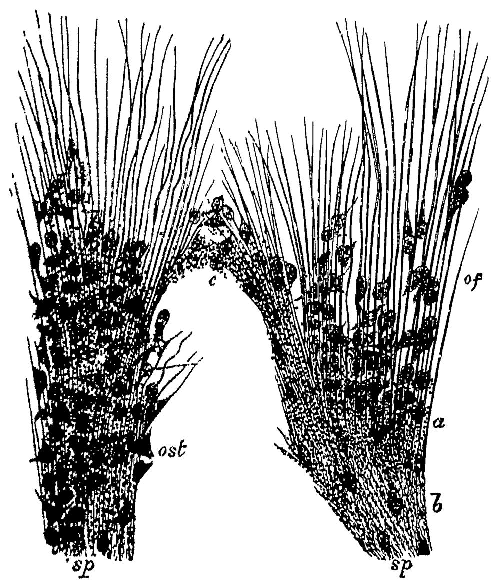


FIG 380 — Part of the [illegible] fœtal cat *sp*, Bony spicules with some of the [illegible], *of*, osteogenetic fibres prolonging the spicules [illegible] them (Schafer)

osteoblasts. In the first mode of development the osteoblasts lay down bone directly, without any intermediary stage (ossification in *membrane*), while in the second the future bone is first modelled in cartilage upon which, after it has undergone certain changes, the osteoblasts proceed to lay down bone as round a scaffolding (ossification in *cartilage*)

Ossification in Membrane —Where bone formation is about to occur the embryonic branched mucoid cells first multiply actively, become larger and apparently more crowded together and their processes disappear or at any rate become less obvious as the cell

bodies become more rounded The vascularity of the area increases At what is termed the primary centre of ossification, corresponding usually to the centre of the future bone, the altered cells, which may now be called *osteoblasts*, proceed to lay down bone between and round themselves in the ground-substance Radiating spicules of bone grow out from the original centre, each covered by a layer of osteoblasts which produce lengthening and thickening of the spicule Some of the osteoblasts become buried in the bony tissue they form round themselves, becoming then bone corpuscles each in a little lacuna Where active extension of a spicule is occurring, it is often seen to be capped by a tuft of fibres on which the advance guard of osteoblasts is arranged Such is called an *osteogenic tuft* Calcification occurring between the fibres under the influence of the osteoblasts, the fibres and the cells gradually become embedded within the advancing bone The spicules or trabeculæ of bone branch and anastomose with one another so that a meshwork of bone is formed In certain situations where bony strands are being thickened, a regular row of osteoblasts is formed on their surface In other positions a sculpturing process is at work, the newly-formed bone being demolished by large multinucleated bone - destroying cells called *osteoclasts* This continuous remodelling goes on to accommodate the developing bone to the growth changes around it As the skull cavity, for example,

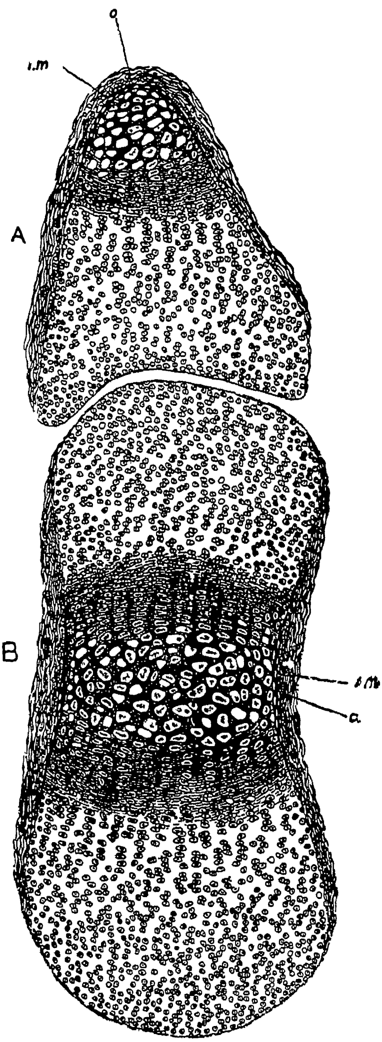


FIG 381 —Section of two fœtal phalanges, the cartilage cells in the centre of B are enlarged and separated from one another by calcified matrix *im*, Layer of bone deposited under the periosteum, *o*, layer of osteoblasts by which this layer was formed The rows of cartilage cells are seen on each side of the centre of calcification In A, the terminal phalanx, the changes begin at the tip (After Dixey)

enlarges, the curved bones in the vault have fresh material added to their convex surfaces by osteoblastic action coupled with absorption of bone on their concave surfaces by osteoclastic activity Round each individual bone the connective tissue condenses to form a fibrous sheath, the *periosteum*, beneath which are arranged the osteoblasts on those surfaces where further bone growth is taking place The trabeculæ towards the surface become altered to compact bone with typical Haversian systems, while in the interior the trabecular arrangement is retained to form the cancellous bone containing spaces filled with red marrow

Ossification in Cartilage —This process is typically seen in the development of one of the long bones of the limbs Here the future bone is first modelled in hyaline cartilage, but it must be remembered that this fœtal cartilaginous bone is many times smaller than even the medullary cavity of the shaft of the mature bone, and, therefore, that not a trace of the original cartilage can be present in the bone of the adult Its purpose is indeed purely temporary, and, after its calcification, it is gradually and entirely absorbed This cartilaginous model is at first completely sheathed in a condensation of the mucoid tissue termed the perichondrium Over the articular ends of the bone this disappears later

The process of ossification may be most conveniently described as occurring in three principal stages

The first stage consists of two sets of changes, one in the cartilage, the other under the perichondrium These take place side by side In the cartilage the cells in the middle * become enlarged and separated from one another They become arranged in rows in the direction of the extremities of the cartilaginous rod The cartilage-cells degenerate and the thinned walls between the enlarged spaces undergo a calcareous change Simultaneously with this, a row of osteoblasts appears beneath the perichondrium round the centre of the shaft and these proceed to form layer after layer of bone on the surface of the cartilage The osteoblastic layer gradually advances towards the ends of the cartilage and by it the layer of bone around the middle of the shaft is extended As the layers are formed, some of the osteoblasts get walled in between the layers and become bone-cells

We may roughly compare the two sets of cells engaged in the process to two races of settlers in a new country The cartilage-cells constitute one race, and so successfully build for themselves calcareous homes as to be completely boxed up, so they waste and disappear, leaving only the walls of their homes The osteoblasts, the other race of cells under the perichondrium, are forming layers of true

* This is the case in nearly all the long bones, but in the terminal phalanges the change occurs first, not in the middle but at their distal extremities

bone in that situation Some, it is true, get walled-in in the process, and become bone-corpuscles, but the system of intercommunicating lacunæ and canaliculi maintains their nutrition

These two races are working side by side, and at first do not interfere with each other But soon comes a declaration of war, and we enter upon the *second stage* of ossification, which is very appropriately called the *stage of irruption* (fig 382) Breaches occur

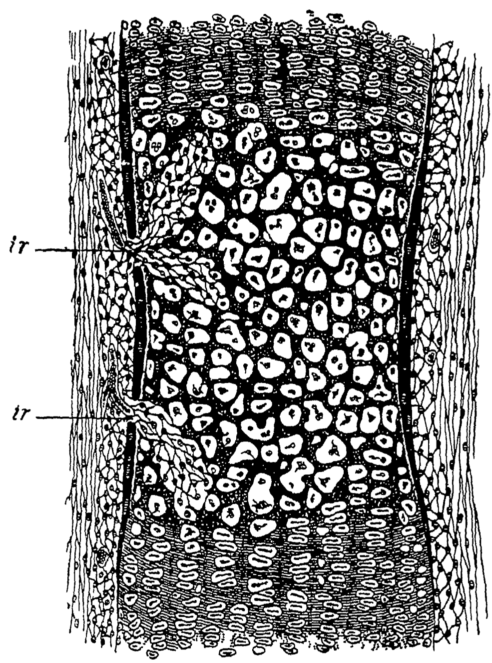


FIG 382 —Ossification in cartilage showing stage of irruption The shrunken cartilage cells are seen in the primary areolæ At *ir* an irruption of the subperiosteal tissue has penetrated the sub periosteal bony crust (After Schafer)

in the bony wall which the osteoblasts have built like a girdle round the calcifying cartilage, and through these the osteogenic tissue is poured into the calcified cartilage This consists of *osteoblasts*, *osteoclasts*, and a store of nutrient supply in the shape of blood-vessels

Having got inside, the osteoclasts set to work to demolish the calcified homes of the cartilage-cells, and thus large spaces are formed On the ruins of the calcified cartilage, the osteoblasts proceed to deposit true bone in layers, just as they were wont to do in their own country, under the periosteum

The third stage is the extension of the process of ossification thus initiated towards the extremities of the cartilage The cartilage-cells enlarge, form longitudinal rows, widen their spaces, and finally degenerate Calcification occurs in the remnants of cartilaginous matrix, and on this scaffolding the osteogenic tissue extends the area of true bone, with ultimately the complete disappearance of the calcified cartilage The first-formed bone within the shaft and the deeper layers of subperiosteal bone are absorbed by osteoclasts so that a medullary cavity is established, which continues to enlarge in all directions

The bone which is first formed is less regularly lamellar than that of the adult The lamellæ are not deposited till after birth and their formation is preceded by a considerable amount of absorption To carry our simile further, the osteoblasts are not satisfied with the rough constructions that they were first able to make, but having exterminated the cartilage, they destroy (again through the agency of the giant osteoclasts) their first work, and build regular lamellæ, leaving lacunæ for the accommodation of those who desire to retire from active warfare

After a time the cartilage at the ends of the shaft begins to ossify independently to form the epiphyses Between each epiphysis and the shaft a plate of actively-growing cartilage persists for a time (*epiphyseal plate*) But this plate does not become thicker, as ossification attacks it on both sides Thus the bone grows in length, until towards adult life the cartilaginous plate ceases to grow and becomes obliterated by bony fusion between shaft and epiphysis

At the same time bone grows in width by the deposition of layers under the periosteum, like successive rings formed under the bark of a growing tree The inner layers become absorbed, however, to provide for expansion of the medullary cavity

It must be remembered that even after growth in all directions is fully established, bone remains a living tissue containing living bone-corpuscles If need arises, as in the repair of fractures, or in structural alterations of the bones called forth to resist new strains and stresses, the bone-corpuscles can resume their original osteoblastic and osteoclastic activities

Chemistry of Bone

Of the dry weight of adult bone freed from fat, two-thirds consist of inorganic matter, the remainder being mainly the protein collagen (which gives gelatin on boiling with water) and mucoids Analyses of bones of a large variety of animals agree in assigning about 90 per cent of the total inorganic matter of bone to calcium phosphate, the majority of the remaining 10 per cent being calcium carbonate with a little magnesium phosphate The calcium phosphate

appears to be present mainly in the form of the very insoluble tertiary salt, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, though Bassett believes that a somewhat more basic salt, $[Ca_3(PO_4)_2]_3\ Ca(OH)_2$, is the main constituent The bony structure of the adult is not absolutely permanent, and in whatever form the main constituent is present it is to be realised that this apparently quite insoluble skeleton is really in equilibrium with the blood, and under various pathological conditions (some of which are controllable) may suffer absorption or overgrowth

Chemistry of Ossification

For normal ossification to take place it is necessary that there should be present not only the general requirements for growth, but also an adequate amount of calcium and phosphorus, together with sunlight and vitamin D Also since calcium and phosphorus are absorbed into the blood in solution, there must be present some mechanism by which these substances become deposited where they are required The chemical reactions which are believed to take place are as follows —

If a solution is saturated with a very slightly soluble solid such as calcium phosphate $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$, any addition to the dissolved Ca^{++} or PO_4''' will lead, by laws of mass action, to a precipitation of the solid It is known that the concentrations of calcium and phosphate ions in blood plasma are such that at the *p*H of plasma these concentrations are very near the limit of saturation of that fluid with tertiary calcium phosphate In fact, Holt, La Mer, and Chown have stated that blood is 200 per cent supersaturated with calcium phosphate It is clear that conditions would be very favourable for the local deposition of tertiary calcium phosphate if the concentrations of Ca^{++} *or* PO_4''' could be increased *at the site where deposition was necessary* A mechanism which appears to ensure that these favourable conditions actually occur in growing bone has been demonstrated by Robison and his collaborators Experimental evidence of a very convincing kind has shown that an enzyme, a phosphoric esterase, is present in ossifying cartilage, mainly in the zone of hypertrophic cartilage cells and also beneath the periosteum in young bone (*i e* in the zone in which calcium salts are being actively deposited) It is also present to a lesser extent in adult bone This enzyme will convert soluble calcium salts of phosphoric esters into insoluble calcium phosphate *in vitro*, and Kay and Robison have shown that it will hydrolyse a portion of the phosphoric esters normally occurring in circulating blood. This hydrolysis, if it takes place in the locality in which the enzyme is known to occur, will clearly lead to a local increase in inorganic phosphate concentration, *i e* to the conditions just mentioned as

being very favourable for the local deposition of tertiary calcium phosphate

The following observations increase the likelihood that this enzyme plays an essential part in the chain of processes leading to bone formation —

1 If a very young bone taken freshly from an animal is split lengthways and immersed in a very dilute solution of calcium glycerophosphate or calcium hexosemonophosphate in saline, calcium phosphate is deposited in the neighbourhood of the osteoblasts and hypertrophic cartilage cells This can be demonstrated histologically, and is particularly clearly seen in rachitic bones

2 The enzyme is also present in teeth, particularly in growing teeth

3 The enzyme is *not* found in such cartilage as does not normally ossify, such as that of the trachea

4 In embryonic cartilage in the chick, or in the cartilage of the human patella which only begins to ossify some three or four years after birth, the appearance of the enzyme and the commencement of ossification are simultaneous

5 It has recently been shown by Kay that in certain diseases (osteitis deformans and osteitis fibrosa) where there is profound disorganisation of the bones, relatively large amounts (up to twenty or more times the normal) of the phosphoric esterase occur in the plasma In the normal individual and in most diseased conditions the amount of phosphatase in the plasma is small Lesions of the bone involving a large part of the skeleton are thus associated with a faulty or abnormal distribution of the enzyme

Death

We have now completed the task we set ourselves, and having arrived at the new-born child have reached the point in the life cycle from which we set out The bearers and transmitters of the germ-plasm, its hosts, the parents, pass away in due course, making room for their successors who live, repeat the process, and likewise die in their turn

It is not altogether inappropriate to conclude a book which deals with life, by a few sentences on *Death*, which forms the final chapter for each individual As the prime of life is past, signs of old age begin to appear—the eyes become feeble, the hair becomes grey, the cartilages calcify, the muscles become weaker, digestion gets feebler, and metabolism in every way more and more imperfect If this continues, life is ultimately terminated by natural death, in which the functions get weaker and weaker and finally cease Death from old age is, however, comparatively rare, the common cause of death is

accident, in which term we include disease In the activity of youth many a disease is vanquished, but as the powers of resistance diminish with increasing years, some ailment usually upsetting more particularly some important organ will ultimately find the body unable to repel its attack

"That ends this strange, eventful history"

IMPORTANT PHYSIOLOGICAL DATA

WHICH SHOULD BE MEMORISED

Note —As far as possible average figures are given, but it must be understood that even normals may vary outside the limits given

Vascular System

Heart-rate, resting, 50 to 80 per minute
Heart-output, resting, 4 to 6 litres per minute
Heart-output in exercise, up to 30 litres per minute
Blood pressure, resting—
  Systolic, 105 to 150 mm Hg
  Diastolic, 70 to 90 mm Hg
  Capillary, 5 to 10 mm Hg
Blood-flow velocity—
  in main arteries, 1 metre per second
  in capillaries, 0 5 mm per second
Pulse-wave velocity, 6 to 7 metres per second,
Ringer's solution, NaCl 0 9 per cent, KCl 0 042 per cent, $CaCl_2$ 0 024 per cent., $NaHCO_3$ 0 015 per cent

Blood volume, $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{15}$ body-weight
Red corpuscles, 5 to 6 millions per c mm
White corpuscles 5000 to 10,000, polymorphs, 70 per cent, lymphocytes, 23 to 25 per cent, large mononuclear, 1 per cent, eosinophils, 2 to 3 per cent, basophils, 0 05 per cent
Blood *p*H, 7 4
Blood sugar, 0 08 to 0 18 gm per 100 c c
Blood urea, 30 to 40 mg per 100 c c
Blood calcium, 10 mg per 100 c c
Non-protein nitrogen, 30 to 40 mg per 100 c c
Hæmoglobin content, 14 gms per 100 c c
Oxygen capacity, 17 to 20 c c per 100

Respiratory System

Atmospheric Air	Expired Air	Alveolar Air
O, 20 96 per cent	O, 16 4 per cent	O, 13 to 14 per cent
CO_2, 0 04 per cent	CO_2, 4 1 per cent.	CO_2, 5 to 6 per cent

Vital capacity, 3000 to 4000 c c
Tidal air, 400 to 500 c c
Respiratory rate, 9 to 20 per minute

Supplemental air, 1500 c c approx
Complemental air, 1500 c c approx
Residual air, 1300 c c approx

Oxygen in arterial blood amount 18 5 c c per cent, tension 80 mm Hg
Oxygen in venous blood amount 13 5 c c per cent, tension 50 mm Hg
Carbon dioxide in arterial blood amount 54 c c per cent, tension 45 mm Hg
Carbon dioxide in venous blood amount 58 c c per cent, tension 58 mm Hg
Oxygen consumption, 200-400 c c per minute
Carbon dioxide output, 160-250 c.c per minute
resting

Basal metabolic rate, resting, 1700 calories per day or $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{40 C per sq m per hour}\\ \text{1 C per kilo per hour}\end{array}\right.$

Total Respiratory Quotient, 0 82

Foods

Calorific values per gramme and respiratory quotients—

	Carbohydrates	Fats	Proteins
	4 1 C	9 3	4 1 in body, 5 6 in calorimeter
R Q	1 0	0 7	0 8

Milk

	Proteins	Fats	Carbohydrates
Cow (Ayrshire)	3 5	3 7	4 5 } very variable
Human	1 7	3 4	6 2 } very variable

Gastric Contents, etc

HCl, not usually above 0 2 per cent
Inorganic chlorides, not usually above 0 35 per cent.

To convert HCl to chlorides multiply by $\frac{58\ 5}{36\ 5}$

Optimum pH of ptyalin, 6 7, of pepsin, 1 3, of trypsin, 8 1
Fat in dry fæces, 25 per cent

Urine

Urea 2 per cent, daily excretion 30 to 40 grammes } ratio about 50 to 1
Ammonia, daily excretion 0 3 to 1 2 gramme }
Creatinine, daily excretion 0 9 gramme
Chlorides (as NaCl), daily excretion 10 to 16 grammes
Sulphur (as SO_3), daily excretion 2 grammes
Neutral sulphur, daily excretion 0 18 gramme
Phosphates, daily excretion 2 to 4 grammes
Uric acid, daily excretion 0 5 to 0 75 gramme
Volume, 1500 (approx), pH 5 to 8, sp gr 1015 to 1030

Eye (reduced)

Distance of nodal point from cornea, 7 3 mm
Focal length, 15 5 mm
Length of eye, 22 8 mm

Muscle and Nerve

Nerve impulse rate, cold-blooded, 30 metres per second
Nerve impulse rate, warm-blooded, 120 metres per second
Refractory period of nerve, 0 015 second, absolute, 0 003
Refractory period of muscle, 0 005 second

INDEX

A

B

C

E.

G

H

I

J

K

M

N

O

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

PRINTED BY OLIVER AND BOYD LTD., EDINBURGH, SCOTLAND